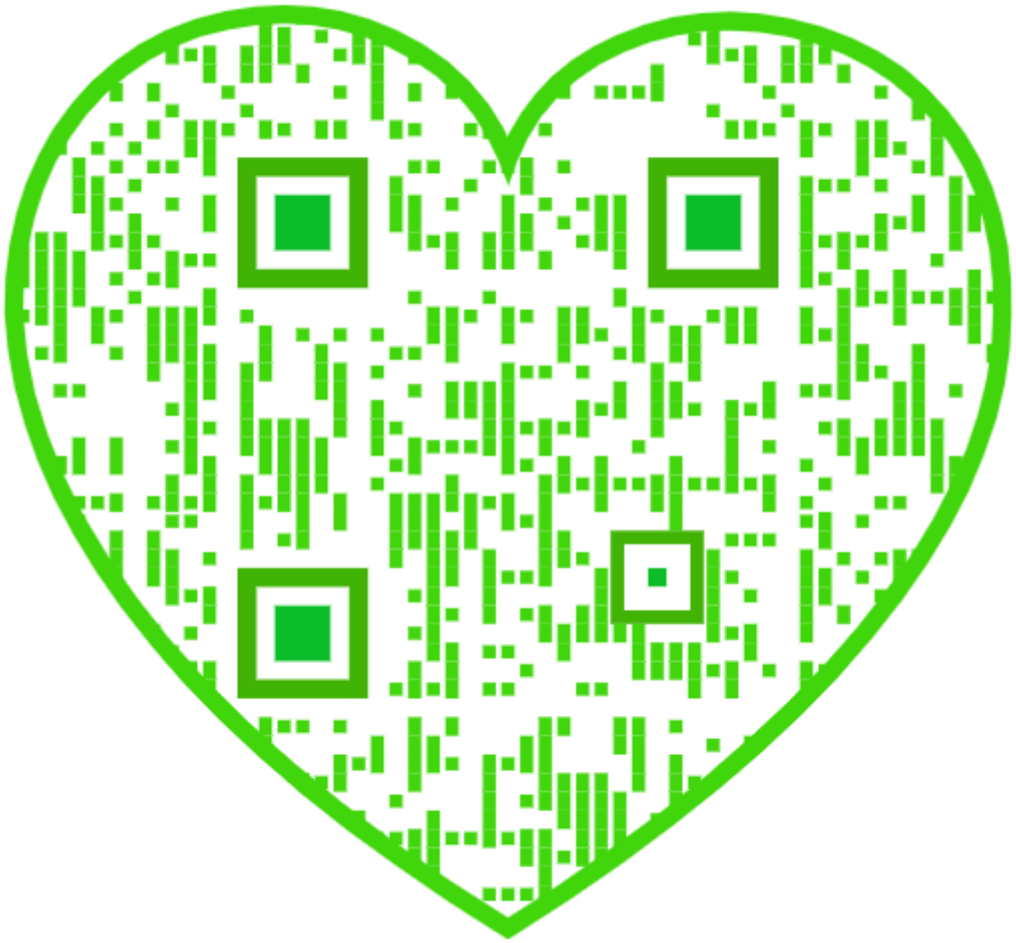


B-2

62

OXFORD Medical Publications

OXFORD

LOOSE-LEAF

SURGERY

PROPERTY OF
[illegible] CLINIC

OXFORD

LOOSE-LEAF

SURGERY

BY VARIOUS AUTHORS

EDITED BY

F. F. BURGHARD, M.S. (LOND.), F.R.C.S. (ENG.), COLONEL, A.M.S.
LECTURER ON SURGERY AND SURGEON TO KING'S COLLEGE HOSPITAL; CONSULTING SURGEON TO THE CHILDREN'S HOSPITAL, PADDINGTON GREEN, LONDON, ENG.

AND

ALLEN B. KANAVEL, A.B., M.D., F.A.C.S., LIEUT. COL. U.S.A.
ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF SURGERY, NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY MEDICAL SCHOOL; ATTENDING SURGEON, WESLEY AND COOK COUNTY HOSPITALS, CHICAGO, ILL.

IN FIVE VOLUMES

OVER 1800 ILLUSTRATIONS

VOL. II

NEW YORK
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
AMERICAN BRANCH: 35 WEST 32ND STREET
LONDON, TORONTO, MELBOURNE, AND BOMBAY
1919

LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA
DAVIS

COPYRIGHT, 1919
BY
OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS
AMERICAN BRANCH

THE QUINN & BODEN CO. PRESS
RAHWAY, N. J.

PREFACE

SURGERY is no longer "a mere mechanic art." Out of the old surgery which placed so great a stress upon technique a new surgery is being evolved, a new conception is being formed, the application of which belongs to no passing event, the future of which no one can prophesy.

Functional surgery, if one may use the term, belongs to all the future. Take, for example, abdominal diagnosis, where the mechanism of pain is a question of vast complexity, and the evaluation so essential to diagnosis. Again, the latter-day investigation of anæsthesia opens a new field and warns the surgeon that every function of the nervous system must be given detailed consideration. The study of antiseptics has linked Ehrlich's conception of chemical action with the daily technique of the operating room and extended the domain of bacteriology in the scientific treatment of wounds. It is such advances as these that we have attempted to incorporate with the portrayal of the technique of various surgical clinics. The foundation was found in Burghard's Surgery, whose various contributors in collaboration with the editors have added proved procedures from American clinics and revised the various chapters in the light of the developments in surgical practice produced by experience in war.

The loose-leaf form of the Oxford Surgery will permit the editors to present the future changes in British surgery and incorporate the best thought of the leading American clinics.

The originality and individuality obtained in these volumes will be sought rather than a colourless enumeration of operative procedures. Categorical enumeration of operations of historical interest only and procedures not demonstrated by actual experience to be of value will be avoided.

The editors wish to express to the various contributors and to those whose contributions are being prepared for future insertions the appreciation of the surgeons of America and Great Britain for their unstinted and unselfish labour during a time when they are so occupied by duties necessitated by the exigencies of war.

F. F. BURGHARD.
ALLEN B. KANAVEL.

CONTRIBUTORS TO THIS VOLUME

F. F. BURGHARD, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Colonel A.M.S.

Lecturer on Surgery and Surgeon to King's College Hospital.

Operations for Non-tuberculous Affections of Joints

SIR HAROLD J. STILES, M.B., F.R.C.S. (Edin.), Lieutenant-Colonel R.A.M.C.(T.)

Surgeon to Chalmers Hospital, Edinburgh, and to the Royal Hospital for Sick Children, Edinburgh.

Operations for Tuberculous Affections of the Bones and Joints

EDMUND OWEN, F.R.C.S. (Eng.), D.Sc. (Hon.)

Late Consulting Surgeon to St. Mary's Hospital and to the Hospital for Sick Children, London.

Operations for Hare-lip and Cleft-palate

G. LENTHAL CHEATLE, C.V.O., C.B., F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Surgeon General R.N.

Surgeon to King's College Hospital and to the Italian Hospital.

Operations for Cancer of the Lips and Face

C. H. FAGGE, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Major R.A.M.C.(T.)

Assistant Surgeon to Guy's Hospital.

Operations upon the Jaws

VILRAY P. BLAIR, A.M., M.D., F.A.C.S., Major M.R.C.

Professor of Oral Surgery, Washington University Dental School, St. Louis, Mo.

Deformities of the Lower Jaw

T. P. LEGG, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Lieutenant-Colonel R.A.M.C.(T.)

Surgeon to the Royal Free Hospital; Assistant Surgeon to King's College Hospital.

Plastic Surgery

J. M. H. MacLEOD, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P. (Lond.)
Physician for Diseases of the Skin, Victoria Hospital for Children.

Burns and Scalds

H. D. GILLIES, F.R.C.S., L.R.C.P., Major R.A.M.C.(T.)
Surgeon to the Queen's Hospital for Sailors and Soldiers suffering from Facial Injuries. Surgeon to Throat and Ear Department, Prince of Wales Hospital, W.

Principles of Plastic Surgery

H. J. WARING, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Brev. Col. R.A.M.C.
Surgeon to and Joint-Lecturer on Surgery, St. Bartholomew's Hospital.

Operations upon the Tongue

GEORGE E. WAUGH, F.R.C.S. (Eng.)
Surgeon to the Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond St.

Operations upon the Tonsils

WILFRED TROTTER, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Captain R.A.M.C.(T.)
Assistant Surgeon to University College Hospital.

Operations upon the Pharynx

SIR BERKELEY MOYNIHAN, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Lieutenant-Colonel R.A.M.C.(T.)
Surgeon to the Leeds General Infirmary.

Operations upon the Stomach

PROFESSOR RUTHERFORD MORISON, F.R.C.S., Staff Surgeon R.N.V.R.
Consulting Senior Surgeon, Northumberland War Hospital.

Surgery of the Stomach

DAVID LIGAT, M.D., F.R.C.S. (Eng.)
Late House Surgeon, Middlesex Hospital.

Hyperalgesia as an aid to Diagnosis in Abdominal Disease

SIR G. H. MAKINS, K.C.G.M., C.B., F.R.C.S. (Eng.)
Surgeon to St. Thomas's Hospital and President of the Board of Examiners for the Naval Medical Service.

Operations upon the Intestines

CONTENTS

SECTION I

OPERATIONS FOR NON-TUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF JOINTS

By FREDC. F. BURGHARD, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Colonel A.M.S.
Lecturer on Surgery and Surgeon to King's College Hospital; Consulting Surgeon to the Children's Hospital, Paddington Green

CHAPTER I

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

PAGES

Arthrotomy, 3. Arthroplasty, 5. Arthrodesis, 6. Arthrectomy, 7. Excision, 8 3–8

CHAPTER II

OPERATIONS UPON THE WRIST-JOINT

Excision of the Wrist, 9 9–12

CHAPTER III

OPERATIONS UPON THE ELBOW-JOINT

Arthrotomy and Drainage, 13. Operations for Intra-articular Fractures, 13. Operations for Fracture of the Olecranon, 15. Operations for Dislocations, 16. Excision of the Elbow, 17. Arthrodesis, 21. Arthroplasty (Murphy), 23 13–27

CHAPTER IV

OPERATIONS UPON THE SHOULDER-JOINT

Arthrotomy and Drainage, 28. Operations for Fractures involving the Shoulder-joint, 29. Operations for Dislocations of the Shoulder, 30. Operation in Recent Cases, 31. Operations for Unreduced Dislocation, 32. Excision of the Shoulder, 34; *Kocher's Posterior Resection*, 39. Arthrodesis, 41. Arthroplasty (Murphy), 42. Excision of the Scapula, 42 28–44

CHAPTER V

OPERATIONS UPON THE ANKLE-JOINT: OPERATIONS UPON THE TARSAL BONES AND JOINTS

PAGES

Arthrotomy and Drainage, 45. Arthrotomy for Fractures into the Joint, 46; *Operation for Compound Pott's Fracture*, 47; *for Simple Recent Pott's Fracture*, 47; *for Simple Pott's Fracture of long standing*, 48; *for Fractures of the Astragalus*, 49. Arthrodesis, 49. Excision of the Ankle-joint, 50. Operations upon the Tarsal Bones and Joints, 50; *Excision of the Astragalus*, 50; *Excision of the Os Calcis*, 54 45–55

CHAPTER VI

OPERATIONS UPON THE KNEE-JOINT

Removal of displaced Semilunar Cartilages, 56. Arthrotomy and Drainage, 59. Repair of the Crucial Ligaments, 61. Removal of the Synovial Membrane of the Knee, 62. Operations for Intra-articular Fractures, 64. Operations for Fracture of the Patella, 64; *for Recent Fractures*, 65; Suture of Lateral Capsule for Fractures of the Patella, 71; *for Fractures of long standing*, 72. Excision of the Knee, 77; *for Arthrodesis*, 77; *for Ankylosis*, 77; Arthroplasty (Murphy), 85 56–91

CHAPTER VII

OPERATIONS UPON THE HIP-JOINT

Arthrotomy of the Hip, 92. Drainage of the Hip-joint, 93. Osteotomy of the Neck of the Femur, 94. Operations for Fractures of the Neck of the Femur, 95. Excision of the Hip-joint by an External Incision, 100. Arthroplasty (Murphy), 103. Operations for Traumatic Dislocations, 110. Operations for Congenital Dislocations, 113 92–117

SECTION II

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE BONES AND JOINTS

PART I

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE BONES

By SIR HAROLD J. STILES, M.B., F.R.C.S. (Edin.), Lieutenant-Colonel R.A.M.C.(T.)

Surgeon to Chalmers Hospital, Edinburgh, and to the Royal Hospital for Sick Children, Edinburgh

CHAPTER I

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE DIAPHYSES OF THE LONG BONES

PAGES

Primary Tuberculous Osteomyelitis, 122. Of the Humerus, 127. Of the Radius, 133. Of the Ulna, 139. Of the Femur, 141. Of the Fibula, 146. Of the Tibia, 147 121–150

CHAPTER II

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE SHORT LONG-BONES

Of the Phalanges of the Hand, 151. Of the Interphalangeal Joints, 152. Of the Metacarpal Bones, 152. Of the Phalanges of the Foot, 153. Of the Metatarsal Bones, 154 151–154

CHAPTER III

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE BONES OF THE VAULT OF THE SKULL

Of the Skull, 155. Of the Lower Jaw, 156. Of the Upper Jaw and Malar Bone, 159 155–159

CHAPTER IV

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE SPINE AND RIBS

PAGES

Of the Spine, 160; Albee operation for Pott's Disease, 160; Hibbs operation for Pott's Disease, 163; Prevertebral Cervical Abscess, 165; Prevertebral Thoracic Abscess, 166; Lumbar Abscess, 169; Iliac Abscess, 171. Of the Ribs, 173 160–175

PART II

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE JOINTS

By SIR HAROLD J. STILES, M.B., F.R.C.S. (Edin.), Lieutenant-Colonel R.A.M.C.(T.)

Surgeon to Chalmers Hospital, Edinburgh, and to the Royal Hospital for Sick Children, Edinburgh

CHAPTER V

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE WRIST-JOINT

Operation, 179. After-treatment, 188 179–188

CHAPTER VI

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE ELBOW-JOINT

Operation, 189. After-treatment, 195. Results, 196 189–196

CHAPTER VII

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE SHOULDER-JOINT

. 197–199

CHAPTER VIII

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE FOOT AND ANKLE

Of the Tarso-metatarsal Joints, 200. Complete Anterior Tarsectomy, 200. Of the Os Calcis, 202. Of the Ankle-joint, 204. Mikulicz's Osteoplastic Resection of the Foot, 213 200–214

CHAPTER IX

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE KNEE-JOINT

PAGES

For Tuberculous Disease of the Synovial Membrane, 215. For Tuberculous Disease secondary to a Focus in one of the Bones, 223. For Primary Tuberculous Disease of the Patella, 224. Results, 226. Operation for Ankylosis with Genu Recurvatum, 230 . . . 215–231

CHAPTER X

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE HIP AND SACRO-ILIAC JOINTS

Operations upon the Hip-joint, 232. Operations for the Correction of Deformities resulting from Hip-disease—*Tenotomy of the Adductor Muscles*, 247; *Tenotomy for Flexion Deformity*, 250. Operations for Osseous Ankylosis—*Operation for producing Pseudo-arthrosis without Disarticulation of the Head*, 250; *Operations for Ankylosis with Sinuses*, 253. Operations for Abscesses and Sinuses, 254. Operations upon the Sacro-iliac Joint, 255 232–256

SECTION III

OPERATIONS UPON THE LIPS, FACE, AND JAWS

PART I

OPERATIONS FOR HARE-LIP AND CLEFT-PALATE

By EDMUND OWEN, F.R.C.S. (Eng.), D.Sc. (Hon.)

Late Cons. Surgeon to St. Mary's Hospital and to the Hospital for Sick Children, London

CHAPTER I

OPERATIONS FOR HARE-LIP

Indications and Operation, 259. Sutures and Dressings, 261. Double Hare-lip, 262. Restoration of the Lip and Nostril (Rose operation), 263. For Single Hare-lip, 264. Double Hare-lip, 269 . 259–270

CHAPTER II

OPERATIONS FOR CLEFT-PALATE

PAGES

Employment of Pressure, 271—*Time for operating*, 271; *Operation*, 272. Staphylorrhaphy after Infancy, 276—*Preparation and Operation*, 276; *After-treatment* 280; *Complications*, 281; *Results*, 282 . . 271–283

PART II

OPERATIONS FOR CANCER OF THE LIPS AND FACE

By G. LENTHAL CHEATLE, C.V.O., C.B., F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Surgeon-General R.N.

Surgeon to King's College Hospital and to the Italian Hospital

CHAPTER III

OPERATIONS FOR CANCER OF THE LIPS AND FACE

General Considerations, 287. Operations upon the Lower Lip, 289. Upon the Angle of the Mouth, 291. Upon the Upper Lip, 292. Upon the Face, 296 287–297

PART III

OPERATIONS UPON THE JAWS

By C. H. FAGGE, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Major R.A.M.C.(T.)

Assistant Surgeon to Guy's Hospital

CHAPTER IV

OPERATIONS UPON THE UPPER JAW

Complete Removal—*Indications*, 301; *Operation*, 304; *Modifications and Additions*, 308; *After-treatment*, 311; *Dangers and Difficulties*, 311; *Results*, 312. Partial Removal, 313—*Operation*, 314. Osteoplastic Resection—*Indications*, 314; *Operation*, 315; *Dangers and Difficulties*, 316 301–317

CHAPTER V

OPERATIONS UPON THE LOWER JAW AND THE TEMPORO-MAXILLARY JOINT

PAGES

Operations upon the Temporo-maxillary Joint—*for Subluxation of the Interarticular Fibro-cartilage*, 318; *for an Unreduced Dislocation*, 319; *Excision of the Condyle*, 319. Operations upon the Lower Jaw—*Partial Removal*, 321; *Removal of One Half*, 325; *Complete Removal*, 327; *Osteoplastic Resection*, 327; Operations for Closure of the Jaws, 329; Temporo-Maxillary Ankylosis (Murphy), 331; Diagnosis, 332; Details of Operation, 333; Operative Complications, 338; Post-operative treatment, 338 318–338

CHAPTER VI

CORRECTION OF DEVELOPMENTAL OR ACQUIRED DEFORMITIES OF THE LOWER JAW

By VILRAY P. BLAIR, A.M., M.D., F.A.C.S., Major M.R.C.

Professor of Oral Surgery, Washington University Dental School, St. Louis, Mo.

Forward protrusion of the Lower Jaw, 339. Transmuco-periosteal operation, 340. Fixing the Jaw, 340. Cutting the Bone, 340. Adjusting the Bone, 343. Backward recession, 343. Operation for retraction of the Lower Jaw, 343. Obliquity of the Chin, 346. Transplantation of Bone or Cartilage, 347. Open bite, 348. Deformities of the Alveolar Process, 348 339–349

SECTION IV

PLASTIC SURGERY

By T. P. LEGG, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Lieutenant-Colonel R.A.M.C.(T.)

Surgeon to the Royal Free Hospital; Assistant Surgeon, King's College Hospital

CHAPTER I

GENERAL PRINCIPLES: SKIN-GRAFTING

General Principles, 353; Methods of cutting and using Flaps, 355. Methods of suturing, 357. The Closure of Triangular Gaps, 360; of Quadrilateral Gaps, 361; of Elliptical Gaps, 362. Skin-grafting, 363; *Thiersch's Method*, 368; *Reverdin's*, 371; *Wolfe's*, 371 . . . 353–372

CHAPTER II

RHINOPLASTY

PAGES

General Principles, 373. Complete Rhinoplastic Operations; *The Indian Method*, 374; *The Italian Method*, 377. Partial Rhinoplastic Operations; *Operations for defects of the Bridge of the Nose*, 377; *Cheyne's Method*, 377; Bone transplant in Nasal Depressions, 379; Technique, 379; *Subcutaneous Injection of Paraffin for Restoration of the Bridge*, 380. Operations for Restoration of the Soft Parts, 381; *Syme's Operation*, 381; *Keegan's Method*, 382. Operations for Restoration of the Alæ Nasi and Side of the Nose, 384; *Langenbeck's Method*, 384; *by a Flap taken from the same side of the Nose*, 384. Formation of a New Columella, 387. Plastic Operations on the Auricle, 388 373–390

CHAPTER III

PLASTIC OPERATIONS ON THE LIPS, MOUTH, AND FACE

General Principles, 391. Transplantation of fat, 392. Operations on the Lips; *for Ectropion*, 394; *Restoration of the Lips*, 397; *Operations for Microstoma*, 402. Plastic Operations on the Cheek, 404; Closure of a Large Defect, 409; Closure of a Small Defect, 414; *Gussenbauer's Operation*, 415. Operations for Syphilitic Affections of the Palate, 416 391–417

CHAPTER IV

OPERATIONS FOR CONGENITAL AND ACQUIRED DEFORMITIES

Operations for Webbed Fingers; *General Principles*, 418; *Methods of operating*, 419; *Simple Division*, 419; *by Triangular Flap at Base of the Web*, 421; *Didot's Operation*, 422. Operations for Supernumerary Digits, 423. Operations for acquired Contractions of the Fingers; *General Principles*, 424; *Dupuytren's Contraction, Adams's Operation*, 426; *Division of Skin and Fascia by V-shaped incision*, 427. Excision of contracted tissue, 428. Operations for Cicatricial Deformities after Injuries; *General Principles*, 431; *Methods of using Flaps*, 431. Operations for Hammer-toe, 435 . 418–437

CHAPTER V

BURNS AND SCALDS

By J. M. H. MacLeod, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P. (Lond.).

Physician for Diseases of the Skin, Victoria Hospital for Children

Burns; Varieties and Symptoms, 438. Constitutional effects, 439. Histo-pathology, 439. Diagnosis, Prognosis, Treatment, 440 . . 438–442

CHAPTER VI

PRINCIPLES OF PLASTIC SURGERY

By H. D. GILLIES, F.R.C.S., L.R.C.P., Major R.A.M.C.(T.)

Surgeon to the Queen's Hospital for Sailors and Soldiers suffering from Facial Injuries; Surgeon to Throat and Ear Department, Prince of Wales Hospital, N.

PAGES

Face Injuries, Classification, 443. Details of Restoration, 445. The Contour, 445. Cartilage for large Cosmetic purposes, 446. Fat graft, 446. Bone graft, 447. The Skin covering, 447. Transposed flaps, 448. Bridge flap, 449. Double Epithelial flaps, 449. Sutures, 450. Dressings, 451. After-treatment, 452 443–452

SECTION V

OPERATIONS UPON THE TONGUE, TONSILS, PHARYNX, AND ŒSOPHAGUS

PART I

OPERATIONS UPON THE TONGUE

By H. J. WARING, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Brev. Colonel R.A.M.C.

Surgeon to and Joint-Lecturer in Surgery, St. Bartholomew's Hospital

CHAPTER I

OPERATIONS FOR NON-MALIGNANT AFFECTIONS OF THE TONGUE

Operations for Acute Abscess and Cellulitis, 455. For Chronic Ulcers and Leukoplakial Patches, 455. For Non-Malignant Tumours, 458. For Macroglossia, 460. For a Cyst due to a persistent Thyreo-glossal Duct, 461. For Lingual Thyreoids, 461 455–462

CHAPTER II

OPERATIONS FOR MALIGNANT DISEASE OF THE TONGUE AND FLOOR OF THE MOUTH

Choice of Operation, 463. Preliminary Preparations, 468. Choice of Anæsthetic, 468. Simultaneous removal of primary growths in the

PAGES

Tongue and of lymph glands on the affected side of the Neck, 469. Excision of one half of the Tongue through the Mouth, 469. Excision of the Tongue after Median Incision of the Lower Lip and the Submental Tissues, and Division of the Mandible, 472. Excision of a Carcinoma of the Tongue and the Floor of the Mouth after lateral splitting of the Cheek and Division or Resection of a part of the Horizontal Ramus of the Mandible, 474. Excision of a Carcinoma of the Floor of the Mouth, or one situated on the lateral and ventral aspects of the Tongue, extending to and involving the Mucous Membrane of the Floor of the Mouth, 480. Removal of a Carcinoma of the Floor of the Mouth (posterior portion) in which the disease has extended to the alveolar process of the Mandible, 483. Excision of the Cervical Lymph Glands, Submaxillary Salivary Gland, and Fascial structures of the Neck for Carcinoma of the Tongue and Floor of the Mouth, 484. Crile's Block Dissection, 486 463–491

CHAPTER III

OPERATIONS UPON THE TONSIL

By George E. Waugh, M.D., F.R.C.S. (Eng.)

Surgeon to the Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond Street

Removal of the Tonsils by Dissection 492–498

CHAPTER IV

OPERATIONS FOR PHARYNGEAL ABSCESS

Operations for Pharyngeal Abscesses arising from Disease of the Vertebral Column, 499. Operations for Acute Retropharyngeal Abscess, 500 499–501

CHAPTER V

OPERATIONS FOR MALIGNANT DISEASE OF THE ORAL AND LARYNGEAL PARTS OF THE PHARYNX

By Wilfred Trotter, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Captain R.A.M.C.(T.)

Assistant Surgeon, University College Hospital

Principles guiding the Designing of Operations, 504. Varieties of Pharyngeal Tumours, 505. Operations for the Removal of Tumours of the Oropharyngeal Group, 506. Operations for Tumours of the Epilaryngeal Group, 510. Operations for Tumours of the Recessus piriformis. Laryngo-pharyngectomy, 514. Operations for Tumours of the Hypo-pharyngeal Group, 517 502–519

PART II

OPERATIONS UPON THE ŒSOPHAGUS

By C. H. FAGGE, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Major R.A.M.C.(T.)
Assistant Surgeon to Guy's Hospital

CHAPTER VI

OPERATIONS UPON THE ŒSOPHAGUS

PAGES

Excision of Œsophageal Diverticula, 523. Cervical Œsophagotomy, 529. Cervical Œsophagostomy, 535. Cervical Œsophagectomy, 535. Operations upon Thoracic Œsophagus, 537. Trans-mediastinal Operations upon the Œsophagus—*Œsophagotomy*, 538; *Œsophagectomy*, 539; *Modifications*, 545; *Œsophago-plication*, 546. Trans-pleural Operations upon the Œsophagus, 547 523–552

SECTION VI

OPERATIONS UPON THE STOMACH AND INTESTINES

PART I

OPERATIONS UPON THE STOMACH

By SIR BERKELEY MOYNIHAN, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Lieutenant-Colonel R.A.M.C.(T.)
Surgeon to the Leeds General Infirmary

CHAPTER I

PREPARATION AND AFTER TREATMENT OF PATIENTS OPERATED UPON FOR DISEASES OF THE STOMACH

Preparation of the Patient, 555. Suture of the Abdominal Wound, 556. After-treatment, 557 555–559

CHAPTER II

GASTROTOMY: GASTROSTOMY: PARTIAL GASTRECTOMY

Gastrotomy, 560. Gastrostomy, 561—*Senn's Method*, 561; *Kader's Method*, 563; *Witzel's Method*, 563; *Frank's Method*, 564; *Tavel's Method*, 565. Partial Gastrectomy, 567; *for Simple Ulcer of the Stomach*, 574. Pólya Operation, 576. Balfour operation, 579 . 560–582

CHAPTER III

OPERATIONS FOR GASTRIC ULCERS AND THEIR SEQUELÆ

PAGES

Excision of an Ulcer from the Lesser Curvature, 583. Treatment of Gastric Ulcer by Cautery (Balfour), 587. Operation for Perforating Ulcer of the Stomach or Duodenum, 588. Operation for Hour-glass Stomach, 590 583–597

CHAPTER IV

GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY

Indications, 598. Posterior Gastro-enterostomy, 600—*Mayo's Modification*, 611; *Roux's Operation*, 611. Anterior Gastro-enterostomy, 613. Complications and Sequelæ, 615. Relative Merits of the Anterior and Posterior Operations, 620. Gastro-duodenostomy (Finney's Operation), 622. Congenital Pyloric Stenosis, 625 . . 598–628

CHAPTER V

GASTROPEXY

Indications, 629—Duret's Operation, 630; Beyea's, 631; Coffey's, 633; Rovsing's, 633 629–633

CHAPTER VI

SURGERY OF THE STOMACH

By Prof. Rutherford Morison, F.R.C.S., Staff Surgeon R.N.V.R.

Consulting Senior Surgeon, Northumberland War Hospital

Pyloric Stenosis of Infants, 634. Obstruction at the Cardiac Inlet of the Stomach, Pyloric Stricture, Simple Gastric Ulcer, 635. Hæmatemesis and Melæna, 636. Perforation of a Gastric Ulcer, 637. Physical Signs, 638. Treatment, 638. Chronic Gastric Ulcer, 638. Pyloric Ulcer, 639. Physical Signs of Chronic Gastric Ulcer, 640. X-ray examination of the Stomach contents, 640. Treatment, 640. Cancer of the Stomach, 640. Physical signs, Treatment, Appendix Dyspepsia, 641. Gall-stone Dyspepsia, 642 634–642

CHAPTER VII

HYPERALGESIA AS AN AID TO DIAGNOSIS IN ABDOMINAL DISEASE

By David Ligat, M.D., F.R.C.S. (Eng.)

Late House Surgeon, Middlesex Hospital 643–648

PART II

OPERATIONS UPON THE INTESTINES

By SIR G. H. MAKINS, K.C.G.M., C.B., F.R.C.S. (Eng.)

Surgeon to St. Thomas's Hospital, and President of the Board of Examiners for the Naval Medical Service

CHAPTER VIII

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE TECHNIQUE OF OPERATIONS UPON THE INTESTINES

PAGES

Methods of Suture, 651. Sewing Materials, 654. Clamps, 655. General Anatomical Considerations, 658 651–661

CHAPTER IX

THE REPAIR OF INJURIES, AND PERFORATIONS OF THE BOWEL

The Repair of Intestinal Injuries, 663—*Indications for Exploration*, 663; *Method of Operation*, 664; *Prognosis and Results*, 669. Operations for Gunshot Injuries to the Intestine, 670. The Repair of Injuries to the Mesentery, 673. Operations for Pathological Perforation of the Intestine, 674. Perforation in Enteric Fever, 679. Infective and Inflammatory Perforations, 683. Perforation of Stercoral Ulcers and in Diverticular Disease, 683. Perforation in Malignant Disease, 684 662–684

CHAPTER X

ENTEROTOMY AND ENTEROSTOMY

Indications, 685. Enterotomy, 686. Enterostomy, 687—*Duodenostomy*, 688; *Jejunostomy*, 688. Appendicostomy, 691. Colotomy and Colostomy, 693—*Lumbar Colostomy*, 697; *Cæcostomy, Typhlostomy, Ascending Colostomy*, 697; *Transverse Colostomy*, 699; *Iliac Colostomy*, 700. *Colostomy*, 703. Difficulties, 706. Complications, 707. Prognosis and Results, 710 685–710

CHAPTER XI

ENTERECTOMY AND COLECTOMY

General Indications for Enterectomy, 711. *Gangrenous Hernia*, 712; *Tuberculous Disease*, 713; *Chronic Inflammatory Conditions*, 715; *Malignant Disease*, 717. *Technique of Enterectomy*, 719—*Axial Union*, 719; *Lateral Union*, 729; *Lateral Implantation*, 734. Arti-

PAGES

ficial Aids to Enterectomy—*Mayo Robson's Bobbin*, 738; *Murphy's Button*, 739. Technique of Colectomy, 741—*Removal of the Cæcum and Ascending Colon*, 747; *of the Transverse Colon and the Flexures*, 751; *of the Descending Colon*, 753; *of the Sigmoid Flexure*, 754. Hirschsprung's Disease, 758. Accidents and After-consequences of Enterectomy, 758. Prognosis and Results, 761 . . 711–763

CHAPTER XII

LATERAL INTESTINAL ANASTOMOSIS AND EXCLUSION

Simple Lateral Anastomosis, 764. Methods of Exclusion, 766. Indications for Unilateral Exclusion, 768. Operation, 770. Prognosis and Results, 771 764–772

CHAPTER XIII

OPERATIONS FOR FÆCAL FISTULÆ AND ARTIFICIAL ANUS

Operations for Stercoral Fistulæ, 773. For Pyo-stercoral Fistulæ, 775. For Artificial Anus, 776. Prognosis and Results, 779 . . . 773–779

CHAPTER XIV

OPERATIONS UPON THE VERMIFORM APPENDIX

Appendicectomy—*Indications for the Operation*, 780; *Time at which to operate*, 780; *Methods of Operation*, 783; *The Operation in Quiescent Intervals*, 787; *The Operation in Acute Appendicitis*, 792. Complications and Sequelæ of Appendicectomy, 795. Operations for Peri-appendical Abscesses, 797. Prognosis and Results, 803 . 780–806

CHAPTER XV

OPERATIONS FOR INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION

General Considerations, 807. Operations upon Special Forms of Obstruction, 811—*Symptomatic Obstruction*, 811; *Obstruction due to Arterial Embolism and Venous Thrombosis*, 812; *Intussusception*, 814; *Volvulus*, 820; *Obstruction produced by Intraperitoneal Adhesions*, 824; *Obstruction by adherent Vermiform Appendix*, 827; *Obstruction by an adherent Meckel's Diverticulum*, 827; *Obstruction due to Strangulation in Openings in the Mesentery, Omentum, and Broad Ligaments*, 831; *Hernia into the Retroperitoneal Pouches*, 832; *Strictures of the Intestines*, 837; *Obstruction by Biliary or Intestinal Calculi*, 840; *Fæcal Impaction*, 842 807–842

CHAPTER XVI

GENERAL LINES OF TREATMENT OF DIFFUSE PERITONEAL INFECTION

Indications, 843. Operation, 843. After-treatment, 847. Results, 851 . 843–852

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

FIG.		PAGE
1.	Structures concerned in Lister's Excision of the Wrist	10
2.	The Parts removed in Excision of the Wrist by Lord Lister's Method	11
3.	Reflection of the Soft Parts in Excision of the Elbow	18
4.	Sawing the Humerus in Excision of the Elbow	19
5.	Sawing the Radius and Ulna in Excision of the Elbow	20
6.	Arthroplasty of Elbow for complete Bony Ankylosis between the Humerus and Ulna in a Position of Complete Extension	22
7.	Exposure of the Capsule of the Joint from the Radial Side	23
8.	Exposure of the Ulnar Nerve and Capsule of the Joint from the Ulnar Side	24
9.	Removal of Ulnar Side of Humerus	24
10.	Pedicled Fat and Fascia Flap prepared from the Outer Side of the Arm for Insertion into the Joint from the Radial Side	25
11.	Pedicled Fat and Fascia Flap prepared from the Inner Surface of the Forearm for Insertion into the Joint from the Ulnar Side	25
12.	Ulnar Flap interposed and sutured into Position between the Ulna and Humerus	26
13.	Radial Flap interposed and sutured into Position between the Humerus and the Radius and Ulna	27
14.	Incision for Excision of the Shoulder-joint	34
15.	Preservation of the Biceps Tendon in Excision of the Shoulder-joint	35
16.	Disarticulation of the Head of the Humerus in Excision of the Shoulder-joint	36
17.	Sawing the Head of the Humerus in Excision of the Shoulder-joint	37
18.	Incision for Excision of the Astragalus	51
19.	Exposure of the Astragalus	52
20.	Removal of the Astragalus	53
21.	Methods of inserting Sutures in Comminuted Fractures of the Patella	67
22.	Bone Drill for Wiring	67
23.	Passing the Wire in Fracture of the Patella	68
24.	Twisting the Wire in Fracture of the Patella	70
25.	Lateral Tension Sutures being placed through the Capsule at the Side of the Patella	71
26.	Lord Lister's Operation for Union of a Fracture of the Patella of long standing with Wide Separation of the Fragments	75
27.	Incision for Excision of the Knee	78
28.	Sawing the Condyles of the Femur in Excision of the Knee	80
29.	Sawing the Tibia in Excision of the Knee	81
30.	Howse's Excision Splint	82
31.	Incision in Arthroplasty of Knee	86
32.	Freeing Tibia from Femur with Curved Chisel	86
33.	Freeing Ankylosed Patella from Femur with 'Artist' Chisel	87
34.	Articular Surfaces of Femur and Tibia ready for Insertion of Interposing Flap	87

FIG.		PAGE
35.	Articular Surfaces of Femur and Tibia ready for Insertion of Interposing Flaps	88
36.	Shows External Tibio-femoral Flap inserted and Outer End of Internal Patellar Flap	89
37.	Shows the Overlapping of Internal and External Interposing Flaps	89
38.	Showing the Bone and Anterior Flap Relations at Completion of Operation	90
39.	Diagram illustrating the Method of pinning Fractures of the Neck of the Femur	98
40.	Excision of Hip by Kocher's External Incision	101
41.	Exposure of the Head of the Femur in Kocher's Excision of the Hip	102
42.	Arthroplasty of Hip (*Murphy*)	104
43.	Arthroplasty of Hip (*Murphy*)	105
44.	Arthroplasty of Hip (*Murphy*)	106
45.	Arthroplasty of Hip (*Murphy*)	107
46.	Arthroplasty of Hip (*Murphy*)	108
47.	Arthroplasty of Hip (*Murphy*)	109
48.	Arthroplasty of Hip (*Murphy*)	110
49.	Arthroplasty of Hip (*Murphy*)	111
50.	Anterior Incision for Exposure of the Hip-joint	115
51.	Upper Two-thirds of the Diaphysis of a Tibia resected for Tuberculous Osteomyelitis	123
52.	Instrument for introducing Gigli's Wire Saw round the Bone	125
53.	Skiagram of the Limb from which the Specimen seen in Fig. 51 was removed	126
54.	Exposure of the Upper End of the Diaphysis of the Humerus	128
55.	Skiagram showing Diffuse Tuberculous Osteomyelitis of the Lower Third of the Diaphysis of the Humerus	129
56.	Skiagram of the Arm shown in the previous Figure	130
57.	Skiagram showing re-formation of the Humerus	131
58.	Resection of the Lower Third of the Diaphysis of the Radius	133
59.	Further Stage of Resection of the Lower Third of the Diaphysis of the Radius	134
60.	Skiagram showing Diffuse Tuberculous Osteomyelitis of the Lower Half of the Diaphysis of the Radius	134
61.	Skiagram of the Limb shown in the previous Figure	135
62.	Skiagram showing Diffuse Tuberculous Osteomyelitis of the Lower Three-fourths of the Shaft of the Radius	135
63.	Skiagram from the same Case as shown in Fig. 62	136
64.	Skiagram from the same Case as shown in the Two previous Figures, Six Years after Operation	137
65.	Resection of the Upper Third of the Diaphysis of the Radius	138
66.	Skiagram of rather less than the Lower Half of the Diaphysis of the Ulna	139
67.	Skiagram showing New Formation of Bone Eleven Weeks after Resection	140
68.	Exposure of the Outer Aspect of the Lower Third of the Diaphysis of the Femur	142
69.	Exposure of a Tuberculous Focus in the Internal Supracondyloid Region of the Femur	143

FIG.		PAGE
70.	Skiagram showing Tuberculous Osteomyelitis of the Upper End of the Diaphysis of the Fibula	145
71.	Skiagram from the same Case as the previous Figure	146
72.	Resection of the Lower Third of the Diaphysis of the Tibia	148
73.	Skiagram showing New Formation of Bone	149
74.	Skiagrams from same Limb as that in the previous Figure	150
75.	Skiagram of Half the Lower Jaw	157
76.	A. Cross section of a Spinous Process split in half and Fractured at its Base	161
	B. Cross section of a Spinous Process which has been split and one half has been set over to produce a gap sufficient to receive a broad graft removed from the antero-internal surface of the Tibia having periosteum on one surface only.	
	C. A lateral view of the Spinal Column.	
77.	Excision of the Wrist by Kocher's Single Dorso-ulnar Incision	180
78.	Further Stage of the Operation shown in the previous Figure	181
79.	Further Stage of the Operation shown in the previous Two Figures	182
80.	Further Stage of the Operation shown in the previous Three Figures	184
81.	Further Stage of the Operation shown in the previous Four Figures	185
82.	Extensive Tuberculous Disease of the Wrist	186
83.	Result of Excision of the Wrist	187
84.	Excision of the Elbow by Kocher's External, slightly J-shaped Incision	190
85.	Further Stage of Excision of the Elbow by Kocher's Incision	192
86.	Skiagram of the Elbow of a Child aged Six Years	193
87.	Tuberculous Disease of the Anterior Tarsus	201
88.	A Caseous Tuberculous Focus in the Os Calcis	203
89.	A Caseous Tuberculous Focus in the Head and Neck of the Astragalus	205
90.	Excision of the Ankle by Kocher's External J-shaped Incision	206
91.	Further Stage of the Operation shown in the previous Figure	207
92.	Further Stage of the Operation shown in the Two previous Figures	209
93.	Result of Excision of the Ankle	211
94.	Result of Excision of the Ankle and Astragalus	212
95.	The Arthrotomy Stage of Excision of the Knee by Kocher's External slightly J-shaped Incision	217
96.	Further Stage of Excision of the Knee by Kocher's Incision	218
97.	Later Stage of Excision of the Knee by Kocher's Incision	221
98.	Excision of the Patella. *Anterior view*	226
99.	Excision of the Patella. *Extension flap placed in position*	227
100.	Excision of the Patella. *Showing line of Suture for the flap*	227
101.	Skiagram from a Child aged 8 Years, taken Two Years after Excision of the Knee by Kocher's Method for Diffuse Tuberculous Infiltration of the Synovial Membrane	229
102.	Tuberculous Hip-disease	233
103.	First Stage of Excision of the Hip by Kocher's Posterior Angular Incision	235
104.	Arthrotomy Stage of Kocher's Excision of the Hip	236
105.	Later Stage of Kocher's Excision of the Hip	239
106.	Photograph of the Author's Abduction Hip-splint	242
107.	Photograph of a Child with Abduction Splint applied after Excision of the Hip-joint	243

FIG.		PAGE
108.	The Method of maintaining Abduction during the Dressing after Excision of the Hip-joint	244
109.	The Result Three Years after Excision of the Hip by Kocher's Posterior Angular Incision	245
110.	The Result a Year after Excision of the Hip by Kocher's Posterior Angular Incision	246
111.	Quiescent Tuberculous Disease of the Hip	248
112.	The Operation for Hare-lip. *First stage*	259
113.	The Operation for Hare-lip. *Second stage*	259
114.	The Operation for Hare-lip. *Third stage*	260
115.	The Operation for Hare-lip. *Final stage*	260
116.	Operation for Double Hare-lip	262
117.	Showing a Modified Maas Operation for Double Hare-lip (*Blair*)	264
118.	Shows the Rose Operation for Double Hare-lip and a Case so treated. (*Blair*)	265
119.	Two Photographs taken at slightly different Angles showing Rose Incisions for Single Complete Hare-lip (*Blair*)	266
120.	The Child's Upper Lip is normally a Pyramid with the Apex at the Centre of the Vermilion Border	267
121.	Showing Cutaneous Sutures	268
122.	Showing Lane Sutures of Silkworm-gut tied on the Mucous Surface	269
123.	Outlines of Incisions in a Rose Operation for Partial Lip Cleft in which there is also a spreading of the Nostril of that Side (*Blair*)	270
124.	Incisions for Rose Operation of a Complete Single Cleft (*Blair*)	270
125.	Showing Ala replaced with one Suture and the newly pared Borders are approximated and put on the Stretch by a Tension Suture placed at the Muco-cutaneous Border (*Blair*)	270
126.	Approximating the Maxillæ by Through-and-through Wires	273
127.	Diagrammatic Reproduction of a Section of a Frozen Head of an Infant with a Single Cleft of the Palate (*Blair*)	274
128.	Lead Plate for supporting Wire Sutures	275
129.	Keyless Gag for Cleft-palate Operations	277
130.	Mechanical Needles for Cleft-palate Operations	278
131.	The Incision made near the Alveolar Process through which the Flap of Muco-periosteum is detached	278
132.	Diagrammatic Representation of the Junction of the Hard and the Soft Palate	279
133.	Diagram illustrating a Flap which has been raised from the Side of the Neck and is still attached to the Cheek	280
134.	Shows Neck Defect almost entirely obliterated by drawing the Skin Edges together	281
135.	Incisions for the Removal of a Small Cancer midway between the Angle of the Mouth and the Centre of the Lower Lip	289
136.	Incisions for the Removal of a Cancer at the Angle of the Mouth	291
137.	Incisions for the Removal of a Cancer in the Centre of the Upper Lip	293
138.	Incisions for the Removal of a Small Cancer in the Centre of one Side of the Upper Lip	295
139.	Incision for exposing the Contents of the Submaxillary and Upper Cervical Triangles	305
140.	Incisions for Removal of the Upper Jaw	305

FIG.		PAGE
141.	Lines of Bone Section in Removal of the Upper Jaw	307
142.	Incisions for Operations upon the Jaws	310
143.	Incision for Langenbeck's Osteoplastic Resection of the Upper Jaw	315
144.	Lines of Bone Section in Langenbeck's Osteoplastic Resection of the Upper Jaw	316
145.	Operations upon the Lower Jaw	320
146.	Incision for Excision of the Lower Jaw	322
147.	Incision for Lateral Division of the Lower Jaw in Osteoplastic Resection	329
148.	The Line of Incision and the Bony Outlines at the Point of Ankylosis (*Murphy*)	334
149.	Dr. Murphy's Periosteotome, Side and Back Views (*Murphy*)	334
150.	Special Periosteotomes in Position (*Murphy*)	335
151.	The Gigli Saw used to divide the Mandible (*Murphy*)	335
152.	The Gap left after the Exsection with the Curved Periosteotomes still in Position (*Murphy*)	336
153.	The Temporal Fascia and Fat Flap freed and ready for insertion (*Murphy*)	336
154.	The Flap in Place and the Wound ready for Closure (*Murphy*)	337
155.	Showing how the Sigmoid Notch is entirely filled with New-formed Bone (*Murphy*)	337
156.	Abnormally Long Jaw with Interdental Spaces in the Bicuspid Region	340
157.	Reconstructed Jaw	340
158.	Submucous Resection of the Lower Jaw	341
159.	Lateral View of Angle Splint	342
160.	Angle Splint after Operation, Lateral View	342
161.	Fixation of the Jaw by Wires and Bands	343
162.	Transverse Section of the Face at the level of the Occlusal Surfaces of the Molars	344
163.	Subcutaneous Section of the Ramus	345
164.	Needle used for passing a Carrier around the Ramus of the Jaw	345
165.	X-ray showing Condition of the Ramus some time after Section	346
166.	Showing Jaw wired in its new Position	347
167.	Showing how Correction might be made by a V-shaped Excision	347
168.	Showing Operation by S-shaped Bone Cut	348
169.	Gunning Splint applied	348
170.	Closure of a Large Defect by means of Flaps	354
171.	Method of closing a Large Defect by means of Flaps	355
172.	Different Methods of using Sutures	358
173.	The Method of using India-rubber Tubing and Silkworm-gut as 'Relief of Tension' Sutures	359
174.	Method of closing a Triangular Gap of Small Size	360
175.	Method of closing a Triangular Gap of Large Size	361
176.	Method of closing a Triangular Defect by using a Curved Incision	362
177.	Method of closing a Large Triangular Defect by means of Flaps	362
178.	Method of closing a Small Quadrilateral Defect	363
179.	Method of closing a Large Quadrilateral Defect	364
180.	The Closure of an Elliptical Area by undermining the Skin and Subcutaneous Tissues around it	365

FIG.		PAGE
181.	Closure of a Large Elliptical Area by means of Flaps	366
182.	Thiersch's Method of Skin-grafting	368
183.	Thiersch's Method of Skin-grafting. The Grafts in Position	369
184.	A Broad Smooth Metallic Spatula for transferring the Skin Grafts	370
185.	Thiersch's Knife for cutting Skin Grafts	370
186.	The Indian Method of Rhinoplasty	375
187.	Sir Watson Cheyne's Method of restoring the Bridge of the Nose	378
188.	Syme's Operation for the Restoration of the Soft Parts of the Nose	381
189.	Keegan's Method of Rhinoplasty	383
190.	Langenbeck's Method of Rhinoplasty	385
191.	Restoration of the Ala Nasi by a Flap taken from the Same Side of the Nose	386
192.	Restoration of the Ala Nasi	387
193.	Restoration of the Ala Nasi by a Flap taken from the Cheek	388
194.	Formation of the Columella from the Upper Lip.	389
195.	Formation of the Columella from the Dorsum of the Nose	389
196.	Plastic Operation with subsequent Transplantation of Fat to ensure Mobility	393
197.	Operation for Ectropion of the Lower Lip	394
198.	Operation for Severe Ectropion of the Lower Lip, with much Scar Tissue	395
199.	Restoration of the Lower Lip by means of a Flap taken from the Upper Arm	396
200.	Restoration of the Lower Lip by Submaxillary Incisions	397
201.	Restoration of the Lower Lip, after Removal of Epithelioma	398
202.	Restoration of the Lower Lip by Horizontal Incisions through the Cheeks	399
203.	Restoration of the Upper Lip, following an Injury	401
204.	Dieffenbach's Operation	402
205.	Restoration of the Lower Lip by Quadrilateral Flaps	403
206.	Restoration of the Upper Lip	404
207.	Restoration of the Upper Lip. Completion of the Operation shown in the Previous Figure	405
208.	Operation for Microstoma	406
209.	Operation for Microstoma. Formation of New Angle of the Mouth	407
210.	Method of Closure of a Large Gap in the Cheek by Transplantation of a Flap from the Submaxillary Region	408
211.	Restoration of a Large Defect in the Cheek. Completion of the Operation shown in Fig. 210	409
212.	Closure of a Defect in the Cheek by gliding a Flap from the Submaxillary Region	410
213.	Israel's Method of closing a Defect in the Cheek	411
214.	Method of closing a Defect in the Cheek by Superimposed Flaps	413
215.	To illustrate the Closure of a Small Defect by a Flap taken from the Skin over the Masseter	414
216.	Gussenbauer's Operation	415
217.	Operations for Webbed Fingers	420
218.	Didot's Method of operating for Webbed Fingers	421
219.	Didot's Method of operating for Webbed Fingers	422

FIG.		PAGE
220.	Photograph of Hand inserted in Pocket on Buttock and Final Result one year later	425
221.	Method of taking Large Flap and gradually cutting V-shaped Section	426
222.	Operation for Dupuytren's Contraction by Excision of the Contracted Fascia	427
223.	Operation for Dupuytren's Contraction by a V-shaped Incision	428
224.	Dupuytren's Contracture-Technique of Operation for excision of Palmar Fascia and Transplantation of Fat (*Kanavel*)	429
225.	Result after Operation for Dupuytren's Contracture, with removal of Palmar Fascia and Transplantation of Fat (*Kanavel*)	430
226.	To show how a Flap may be used to correct Cicatricial Contraction	432
227.	To illustrate the Use of a Flap with Two Pedicles	434
228.	To show how the Palm of the Hand may be covered with a Flap taken from the Buttock	434
229.	To show how a Flap may be taken from the Skin of the Abdomen and applied to the Forearm	435
230.	To show how a Flap taken from one Leg may be applied to the other	436
231.	Chronic Ulcer of the Tongue	456
232.	Chronic Ulcer of the Tongue	456
233.	Excision of Chronic Disease limited to the Border of the Tongue	457
234.	Removal of a Papilloma from the Tongue	459
235.	Operation for Macroglossia	460
236.	Dissection of the Submental, Submaxillary, Sublingual, and deep Cervical Regions	463
237.	Apparatus for Anæsthetization by the Intra-tracheal Method (*Boyle and Gask*)	468
238.	Excision of one half of the Tongue for localized Carcinoma by the Intra-buccal Method	471
239.	Excision of the Tongue with Median Division of the Lower Lip	473
240.	Excision of the Tongue after Division of the Lower Lip and the Mandible	475
241.	Position of Incision for Removal of the Tongue, after Splitting the Cheek and Dividing the Mandible	476
242.	Excision of a Carcinoma of the Tongue and the Floor of the Mouth after Lateral Splitting of the Cheek and Division or Resection of a part of the Horizontal Ramus of the Mandible	477
243.	Excision of a Carcinoma of the Floor of the Mouth, or of one situated on the Lateral and Ventral Aspects of the Tongue, extending to and involving the Mucous Membrane of the Floor of the Mouth	479
244.	Excision of a Carcinoma of the Tongue and Floor of the Mouth situated posteriorly	481
245.	Removal of the Cervical Lymph Glands	485
246.	Tonsillectomy by Dissection	493
247.	Tonsillectomy by Dissection	494
248.	Tonsillectomy by Dissection	495
249.	Tonsillectomy by Dissection	496
250.	The Operation of Lateral Transthyreoid Pharyngotomy	512
251.	Diagram of Mode of Spread of an Epithelioma of Recessus Piriformis	514
252.	Epithelioma of Lateral Wall of Pharynx removed by Lateral Transthyreoid Pharyngotomy	515

FIG.		PAGE
253.	Laryngo-Pharyngectomy	516
254.	Diagrams to show the Arrangement of the Skin Flaps used in reconstituting the Pharynx after removal of a Tumour of the Hypopharyngeal Group	518
255.	Incisions for Operations upon Œsophagus in the Neck	523
256.	An Œsophageal Diverticulum	524
257.	Excision of an Œsophageal Diverticulum	525
258.	Removal of Diverticulum	526
259.	Suture of the Œsophagus after Excision of the Diverticulum	526
260.	Excision of Œsophageal Diverticulum	527
261.	Incisions for Operations upon Œsophagus in the Neck	533
262.	Trans-mediastinal Œsophagectomy	541
263.	Sauerbruch's Chamber	543
264.	Skin Incision	548
265.	Normal Structures as seen with Lung drawn forward and mediannward	549
266.	Beginning of Dissection of the Œsophagus	550
267.	Tube connecting Lower End of Œsophagus with Gastrostomy opening	551
268.	Position of the Patient after Operation upon the Stomach	558
269.	Gastrostomy by Senn's Method. *The suture placed*	561
270.	Gastrostomy by Senn's Method. *The suture tied*	562
271.	Gastrostomy by Witzel's Method	563
272.	Gastrostomy by Frank's Method	564
273.	Gastrostomy by Frank's Method. *The operation completed*	565
274.	Partial Gastrectomy. *Division of the duodenum*	570
275.	Partial Gastrectomy. *Ligature of the coronary artery*	571
276.	Partial Gastrectomy. *Gastro-enterostomy. Clamps applied*	572
277.	Partial Gastrectomy. *Closure of the wound in the stomach*	573
278.	Blood-vessels tied, Glands separated, Crushing Clamps in Place and also Clamps to prevent leakage from Part to be removed (*Mayo*)	575
279.	Crushing Clamp on the Stomach (*Mayo*)	576
280.	Upper Jejunum Six to Twelve Inches from Origin brought through an Opening which has been made in the Transverse Mesocolon and united by Outer Row of Seromuscular Silk Sutures to the Posterior Wall of the Stomach (*Mayo*)	577
281.	Anastomosis completed by an Anterior Row of Seromuscular Silk Sutures (*Mayo*)	578
282.	The End of the Duodenum transfixed and tied with Catgut (*Balfour*)	579
283.	End of Duodenum closed, Vessels ligated and Fat and Glands isolated with the Carcinomatous Portion of the Stomach (*Balfour*)	580
284.	First Row of Interrupted Silk Sutures uniting the Proximal Portion of the Jejunum to the Posterior Wall of the Stomach (*Balfour*)	581
285.	Excision of an Ulcer from the Lesser Curvature	584
286.	Ulcer of Anterior Wall with Gastrohepatic Omentum dissected from Lesser Curvature (*Balfour*)	585
287.	Burning out Ulcer	586
288.	First Row of Sutures closing Opening from which Ulcer has been excised	587
289.	Hour-glass Stomach. *Double gastro-enterostomy*	591
290.	Hour-glass Stomach. *Gastroplasty*	591

FIG.		PAGE
291.	Hour-glass Stomach. *Kammerer's gastroplasty*	592
292.	Hour-glass Stomach. *Gastro-enterostomy*	593
293.	Hour-glass Stomach. *The inner suture*	594
294.	Hour-glass Stomach. *The outer suture nearly complete*	595
295.	Hour-glass Stomach. *Partial gastrectomy*	595
296.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Application of the clamp to the stomach*	601
297.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Application of the clamp to the jejunum*	602
298.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *The viscera clamped*	603
299.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Sero-muscular suture*	604
300.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Excision of the mucosa*	605
301.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *The inner suture begun*	606
302.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *The inner suture, turning the corner*	606
303.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *The loop on the mucosa*	607
304.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *The inner suture complete*	607
305.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Removal of gauze strip*	608
306.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Attachment of omentum to suture line*	608
307.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Completion of operation*	609
308.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Antiperistaltic anastomosis begun*	610
309.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Antiperistaltic anastomosis complete*	611
310.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Roux's operation*	612
311.	Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Roux's operation completed*	613
312.	Anterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Clamp applied*	614
313.	Anterior Gastro-enterostomy. *Complete*	615
314.	Finney's Operation. *The first suture*	623
315.	Finney's Operation. *Showing new disposition of the parts*	624
316.	Site of Incision over Hypertrophied Muscle	626
317.	Shows Method of separating Hypertrophied Muscle from Mucosa	627
318.	Gastropexy. *Duret's method*	630
319.	Gastropexy. *Beyea's method*	632
320.	Interrupted Lembert's Suture	653
321.	Continuous Lembert's Suture	653
322.	Purse-string Suture of the Lembert Type	654
323.	Doyen's Intestinal Clamp	656
324.	Carwardine's Intestinal Clamp	656
325.	Roosevelt's Clamp, as modified by Moynihan	657
326.	Lane's Clamp	657
327.	Makins's Clamp	657
328.	Abdominal Zones	659
329.	Non-perforating Injury to the Small Intestine	667
330.	Plicated Mesentery	668
331.	Rupture of the Small Intestine, involving nearly Half the Circumference of the Bowel	669
332.	A Rupture involving Three-fourths of the Circumference of the Intestine	669
333.	Two Pieces of Ileum from a Case of Enteric Fever	680
334.	Moynihan's Intestinal Drainage Tube	686
335.	Paul's Enterostomy Tubes	687
336.	Jejunostomy. *Witzel's method*	689
337.	Jejunostomy. *Kader's method*	689
338.	Jejunostomy. *Maydl's method*	690

FIG.		PAGE
339.	Jejunostomy. *Albert's method*	690
340.	Ulcerative Colitis	696
341.	The Sigmoid Flexure supported on a Glass Rod	701
342.	Glass Rod for Colostomy	702
343.	Burghard's Colostomy Pins	702
344.	Colostomy Cup and Belt with Receptacle attached	703
345.	The Dotted Line shows Line of Section (*Lilienthal*)	704
346.	Twist Complete and maintained in Position by Anchor Sutures holding Sigmoid to Aponeurosis (*Lilienthal*)	705
347.	Colostomy Cup and Belt	706
348.	Entero-peritoneal Disease of the Small Intestine	714
349.	Hyperplastic Ileo-cæcal Tuberculosis	715
350.	Peridiverticulitis of the Sigmoid Flexure	716
351.	Annular Malignant Stricture of the Sigmoid Flexure	718
352.	Plication of the Mesentery	721
353.	Clamped Intestine in Position	722
354.	Enterectomy followed by End-to-end Union	722
355.	Mitchell and Heamner's Mesenteric Stitch	723
356.	Shoemaker's Method of treating the Mesenteric Angle	723
357.	Enterectomy followed by End-to-end Union	724
358.	Enterectomy	724
359.	Method of dealing with Incongruence in Size	725
360.	Method of enlarging the Point of Union	725
361.	Union of the Transverse Colon by Connell's Method	727
362.	Anterior Half of Connell's Suture	727
363.	Poirier's Forceps	728
364.	Method of completing Connell's Suture	728
365.	Pure-string Suture passed for Closure of the Cut Ends	730
366.	Purse-string Suture inverted prior to Insertion of the Second Line	731
367.	Insertion of the Second Line of Suture over the Inverted End	731
368.	Lateral Union. *First tier of the sero-muscular suture completed*	732
369.	Lateral Union. *The bowel opened*	733
370.	Lateral Union. *Third line of suture complete*	733
371.	Lateral Implantation. *First stage*	735
372.	Lateral Implantation. *Second stage*	735
373.	Lateral Implantation. *Third and fourth stages*	736
374.	Lateral Implantation. *Method of enlarging a narrow element by incision of the ante-mesenteric margin*	736
375.	Robson's Bobbin	739
376.	Murphy's Circular Button for End-to-end or End-to-side Union	740
377.	Murphy's Oblong Button for Lateral Anastomosis	740
378.	Hartmann's Clamp for holding Murphy's Buttons	741
379.	The Lymphatics of the Colon	744
380.	Ileo-colic Lymphatic Area with a Colic Growth	750
381.	Some Positions in which Colo-colostomy may be performed	765
382.	Method of Monprofit	767
383.	Bilateral Exclusion	767
384.	Unilateral Exclusion	768
385.	Kocher's crushing Clamp	771
386.	Ileum crushed by a Clamp (Enterotribe)	771

FIG.		PAGE
387.	End of Ileum crushed and ligatured prior to its Inversion by a Line of Suture	771
388.	Von Mikulicz's Kentotribe	777
389.	Dupuytren's Enterotome	778
390.	McBurney's Incision	784
391.	Rectus-sheath Incision	785
392.	Kocher's Appendix Clamp. *Corner's modification*	790
393.	The Cæcum delivered	791
394.	The Appendix removed	791
395.	The Appendix Stump ligatured, and a Purse-string Suture introduced	791
396.	The Appendix sunk, and the Purse-string Suture tightened and knotted	792
397.	Routes by which Suppuration may travel from the Right Iliac Fossa	801
398.	Sargent's Intestine Retainer	809
399.	Enteric Intussusception of Eight Days' Standing	816
400.	Ileo-cæcal Intussusception	817
401.	Diagram illustrating Treatment of the Intussusception shown in Fig. 400 by the Jesset-Barker Method	817
402.	Dilatation of the Distal Segment of the Pelvic Colon, subsequent to the Removal of the Sigmoid Flexure and Union by Lateral Approximation	823
403.	Strangulation of a Loop of Intestine by a Vermiform Appendix	827
404.	Strangulation by a Meckel's Diverticulum	828
405.	Small Left Duodenal Hernia	834
406.	Large Duodenal Hernia	835
407.	Two Retrocæcal Pouches ascending behind the Colon	837
408.	Introduction of a Coaptation Mattress Stitch in Simple Enteroplasty	839
409.	Flask provided with Thermometer, Blow Tube to start the Syphon Action, and Delivery Tube to Rectum	848
410.	Stomach Lavage Tube, Bulb, and Wire Carrier (*Kanavel*)	850

SECTION I

OPERATIONS FOR NON-TUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF JOINTS

BY

FRED^{C}. F. BURGHARD, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.),
Colonel A.M.C.

Lecturer on Surgery and Surgeon to King's College Hospital; Consulting Surgeon to the Children's Hospital, Paddington Green

CHAPTER I

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

It will be best to discuss briefly the general considerations applying to each type of operation practised upon joints, reserving for special description in subsequent pages special points in these operations upon individual joints.

ARTHROTOMY

Arthrotomy, or simple incision of a joint, is useful in many affections and is much more frequently resorted to at the present day than at any previous period in the history of surgery. Formerly, to incise a joint of any size was to imperil its movements and possibly to entail amputation of the limb or loss of life. Owing to the complexity of most of the joint surfaces and the number of recesses in connexion with them they are difficult to drain and, should sepsis occur, the results are likely to be more serious than they would be in a wound that can be drained freely.

Indications. (i) Arthrotomy is often required for simple *exploration* of the joint in order to determine the nature of the lesion and to settle the appropriate treatment.

(ii) In *suppurative arthritis* a free incision must be made into the joint in order to establish effective drainage.

(iii) Arthrotomy is called for in cases of *acute non-purulent effusion* of rheumatic, gonorrhœal, or traumatic origin in which the effusion refuses to respond to other measures and threatens to weaken the joint permanently by overstretching its ligaments. It is especially indicated in those cases in which there is any doubt as to the exact nature of the case, as the possibility of some internal derangement must always be borne in mind.

(iv) For the extraction of a *movable body* in the joint, or in the rarer cases of a foreign body.

(v) At the present day arthrotomy is probably most frequently practised as a preliminary to the removal of a *displaced semilunar cartilage*. It is also a preliminary to the operations for various other internal derangements of the joint.

Operation. In all cases the most scrupulous care must be taken

to disinfect not only everything that comes into contact with the wound but also a wide area of the patient's skin. In nearly all these cases the surgeon desires to have the joint moved in some particular direction during the course of the operation so that he may obtain better inspection of or better access to certain parts of the joint. For this purpose the assistant has to bend the joint, and it is quite common to see him grasp the limb by some portion that has escaped purification prior to the operation; this mistake, of course, may lead to very serious consequences. The limb on both sides of the joint should be securely wrapped up in sterilized cloths bandaged firmly on so that they cannot get displaced.

The position of the limb and the surgeon and the site and length of the incision will be determined partly by the individual joint and partly by the particular object of the operation; this is dealt with more fully in connexion with the individual joints. In all cases it is important to arrest all hæmorrhage before the joint is opened, and it is well to distinguish between the capsule of the joint and the synovial membrane and open each by a separate incision. In the earlier stages of the operation, before the joint has been incised, the use of chemical antiseptics is admissible, if the surgeon be in the habit of employing them. When, however, the synovial cavity has been opened, all chemical antiseptics should be abandoned, as their use is likely to irritate the synovial membrane; sterilized salt solution at a temperature of 100° F. should be substituted.

All manipulations of the joint cavity should be of the gentlest description consistent with the object in view. The edges of the synovial membrane may be caught in fine-toothed catch forceps and held apart by an assistant. If retractors be used they should be blunt hooks, and no force should be employed. All manipulations inside the joint should be done with forceps if possible, and the finger should only be introduced if it be absolutely necessary; in this way unnecessary bruising is avoided. All traction should be as light as possible and any incisions should be cleanly made with instruments as fine as is consistent with the effective performance of their duties.

When the object of the operation has been attained, great care must be taken to see that bleeding from the joint cavity has ceased entirely before the synovial membrane is sutured. Hæmorrhage generally ceases readily, except when an artery has been wounded, and this should be picked up and tied. Exposure to the air or douching with saline solution at a temperature of 115° F. usually suffices to stop oozing quickly; it is inadvisable to employ drainage if it can be avoided. The articular cavity should be closed in two separate layers if possible, one suture

of the finest catgut taking up the cut edges of the synovial membrane, the other, rather stouter, approximating the incision in the capsule; the skin wound is sewn up separately. When possible a flap should be raised over the proposed incision in the capsule, so that when the wound is sutured the cicatrices in the various structures do not correspond.

ARTHROPLASTY

From the early days of surgery it has always been an important object to obtain mobility in ankylosed limbs. Many plans have been adopted and much time and trouble have been expended, but it must be confessed that the results have hitherto been disappointing. Within recent years, however, the work of Murphy has opened up wider possibilities in this direction. Briefly stated, his method may be said to imitate by art what occurs in nature when an ununited fracture results from the interposition of soft structures between the fractured ends.

The operative technic for arthroplasty on the knee, hip, elbow, and shoulder joints as originated by John B. Murphy and modified in some of the details by Kreuscher, deals entirely with attached pedicled flaps of fat and fascia. In every instance the part to be operated upon is most carefully prepared by shaving and cleansing the skin thoroughly the day preceding the operation. Immediately before the operation is begun and after the patient has been placed in the proper position on the operating table, the skin is again cleansed with alcohol and ether, followed by a coating of gutta-percha solution, which is a 1% solution of gutta-percha in acetone. Throughout the entire operation the strictest asepsis and the non-hand-contacting technic is used. No portion of the instrument which has touched the gloved hand is introduced into the wound. The ligatures and sutures are all tied with forceps.

Operation. The actual details of the operation will vary with the individual joint for which the operation is done, but generally speaking the steps of the operation are as follows:—The joint is fully exposed by whatever incision may be most suitable. The union between the bones is divided by knife, saw, or chisel according to the nature of the uniting medium. The articular surfaces are then shaped in any way that the surgeon may think will best facilitate movement, the most essential point being that the surfaces are chiselled or scraped until they are perfectly smooth. The next step is to see that there are no contracted structures that will interfere with the desired movements of the joint, and with this object attempts are made to carry the limb through the full range of the movements desired. This is done by the assistant whilst the surgeon examines for the presence of tight bands or liga-

mentous structures and divides them freely. If the obstacles to movement be contracted muscles, their tendons should be lengthened instead of being divided.

The contraction preceding the ankylosis may have been so great that vessels or nerves may be endangered by the straightening process. Here it will be a consideration whether the limb should be gradually stretched by extension and the arthroplasty finished at a subsequent date when the limb is straight, or whether sufficient bone should be cut away to enable the limb to be brought into the desired position without endangering these important structures. This question will be largely determined by the joint in question. For instance, the sacrifice of bone in the upper extremity is a matter of small importance as compared with the lower extremity, in which it affects locomotion considerably.

The most important part of the operation is the means adopted for maintaining the movement thus obtained, and the work of Murphy holds out considerable promise in this direction. A thick layer of the neighbouring soft structures is detached in the form of a flap corresponding in its dimensions to the cross-section of the joint, and is laid in between the bone ends and fastened in position by sutures. The origin of this flap is not a matter of great importance, but it should contain plenty of fat and areolar tissue. This substance seems to be most suited for promoting movement, as it develops bursæ readily, and in practice it has been found to answer the purpose better than anything else. The incision in the capsule is closed without a drainage tube.

After-treatment. Passive movement is begun as soon as possible. When the ligamentous connexions between the articular ends have not been divided too freely it may be practised from the third or fourth day; when the contrary is the case a week or ten days should be allowed to elaspse. At first passive movement will have to be done under gas, but it must be persisted in regularly and the range of movement should be steadily increased; this should be accompanied by massage. The object is to develop a fairly thick layer of connective tissue between the two joint ends, and the formation of a bursa in this to act as a synovial cavity. Very promising results have been obtained by persevering attempts in this direction.

ARTHRODESIS

This operation is the converse of the one just described and has for its object the replacement of an unduly movable joint by a stiff one.

Indications. The aim of this operation is to produce ankylosis in

a paralysed and flail-like joint, and so to allow movements to be carried out in a limb which were previously impossible. The operation is applicable in both extremities, and is called for in bad cases of infantile paralysis in which it is impossible to restore movement by tendon-grafting or muscle-transplantation. Thus it may be very useful to stiffen a flail knee-joint, as the patient will then be able to walk, provided that there be enough power left in the muscles moving the ankle to allow the weight to be borne upon that joint without its giving way. Similarly, by fixing a flail shoulder-joint the upper extremity may be moved by the scapular muscles, or by fixing a flail elbow the hand may be rendered much more useful.

Operation. The operation has for its object removal of the articular cartilage so as to leave large areas of raw bone, which are then brought into apposition and kept immovable until bony union has taken place between them. Removal of the cartilage is best effected with a chisel, and the operation should be done with the least possible damage to the soft parts, so as not to weaken the limb more than is necessary. The steps of the operation for the exposure of the articular surfaces must of course vary with the joint operated upon.

Results. The limb is kept rigid until firm bony union has occurred. Unfortunately, however, although this would probably follow in healthy subjects, it may not occur in these cases, possibly owing to defective nutrition of the parts. However, union may occur later on if the limb be kept in some light casing. Even when the operation fails to secure firm bony union the patient's condition is often considerably improved. Fibrous union takes the place of the useless flail-like limb, and at the worst some light splint has to be employed in the place of the cumbersome and heavy metal apparatus that would otherwise have to be worn.

ARTHRECTOMY

The term arthrectomy strictly implies the removal of the joint surfaces. As the term is generally applied at the present day to removal of tuberculous disease from a joint it is therefore somewhat of a misnomer. Strictly speaking, operations such as excision and arthrodesis are also arthrectomies. The term is a bad one and should be banished from surgical terminology; its true significance being the extirpation of tuberculous disease from a joint it does not fall into the scope of this article and will be dealt with by Mr. Stiles.

EXCISION

By excision of a joint is understood the removal of the articular surfaces.

Indications. In non-tuberculous cases this operation is done chiefly for extensive injury to the bones entering into the formation of a joint. It may also be required for a dislocation which is not reducible by other methods, or to rectify ankylosis by producing a movable joint or by removing the deformity. The primary object of the operation in non-tuberculous cases is to remove the articular ends of the bone in order to produce either mobility or stability, or, in cases of extensive injury, to preserve a limb which would otherwise have to be amputated. The synovial membrane is only excised in so far as it is removed along with portions of the bone. Operations of this type are done in adults for tuberculous disease of the joints; they will be dealt with by Mr. Stiles.

As these operations vary entirely according to the joint affected, no general rules apply to them, and each individual joint will be treated separately in the following chapters.

CHAPTER II

OPERATIONS UPON THE WRIST-JOINT

THE only operation of importance in connexion with the wrist-joint is excision. The joint may be opened in an operation for a badly united Colles's fracture, but in that case the operation is not primarily one upon the joint itself.

EXCISION OF THE WRIST

Indications. Complete excision of the wrist will scarcely ever be required for any condition save tuberculous disease—a condition that does not come into the scope of this article. Partial excisions are, however, not infrequently practised for fractures of various carpal bones, the knowledge of which is becoming increased by the use of radiography. When these fractures are compound, the bones, or portions of them, may be extracted by enlarging the existing wound; otherwise one or both of the incisions recommended by Lord Lister (*vide infra*) may be used.

Operation. Several methods of excising the wrist have been introduced; of these only Lord Lister's will be described here, as it is an excellent dissecting-room exercise, and may also be used for a partial excision in cases of injury. It is described as follows by the late Mr. Timothy Holmes (see Holmes's *System of Surgery,* vol. iii, p. 748) :—

'An incision is made commencing in front over the second metacarpal bone internal to the tendon of the extensor secundi internodii pollicis, and running along the back of the carpus, internal to the same tendon, as high as to the base of the styloid process of the radius. The soft parts, including the extensor secundi internodii and the radial artery, being cautiously detached from the bones external to this incision, and the tendons of the radial extensors of the wrist being also severed from their attachments, the external bones of the carpus will be exposed. When this has been done sufficiently, the next step is to sever the trapezium from the other bones with cutting-pliers, in order to facilitate the removal of the latter, which should be done as freely as is found convenient. The operator now turns to the ulnar side of the incision and cleans the carpal and metacarpal bones as much as can be done easily. The

ulnar incision is now made (see Fig. 1). It should be very free, extending from about 2 inches above the styloid process down to the middle of the fifth metacarpal bone, and lying near the anterior edge of the ulna. The dorsal line of this incision is then raised along with the tendon of the extensor carpi ulnaris, which should not be isolated from the skin, and should be cut as near its insertion as possible. Then the common

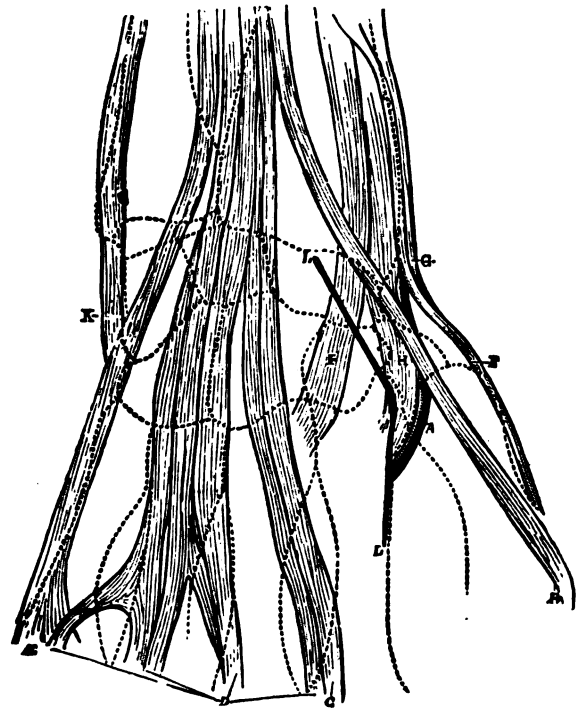


FIG. 1. STRUCTURES CONCERNED IN LISTER'S EXCISION OF THE WRIST (Holmes's *System of Surgery*). A, The radial artery; B, Tendon of the extensor secundi internodii pollicis; C, Metacarpal of index finger; Tendons of—D, Extensor communis digitorum; E, Extensor minimi digiti; F, Extensor primi internodii pollicis; G, Extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis; H, I, Extensor carpi radialis longior and brevior; K, Extensor carpi ulnaris; L L, Line of radial incision.

extensor tendons should be raised, and the whole of the posterior aspect of the carpus denuded, until the two wounds communicate quite freely together; but the radius is not as yet cleaned. The next step is to clean the anterior aspect of the ulna and carpus, in doing which the pisiform bone and the hooked process of the unciform are severed from the rest of the carpus, the former with the knife, the latter with the cutting-pliers. In cleaning the anterior aspect of the carpus, care must be taken not to go so far forward as to endanger the deep palmar arch.

Now, the ligaments of the internal carpal bones being sufficiently divided, those bones are to be removed with blunt bone-forceps. Next the end of the ulna is made to protrude from the incision, and is sawn off, as low down as is consistent with its condition, but in any case above its radial articulation. The end of the radius is then cleaned sufficiently to allow of its being protruded and removed. If this can be done without disturbing the tendons from their grooves, it is far better. If the level of the section is below the upper part of the cartilaginous facet for the ulna, the remainder of the cartilage must be cut away with the pliers. The operator next attends to the metacarpal bones, which are pushed out from one or the other incision and cut off with the pliers so as to

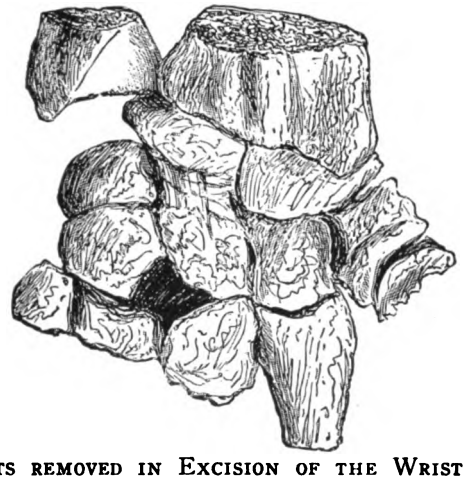


FIG. 2. THE PARTS REMOVED IN EXCISION OF THE WRIST BY LORD LISTER'S METHOD (Holmes's *System of Surgery*).

remove the whole of their cartilage-covered portions. The trapezium bone, which was left in the early stage of the operation, is now carefully dissected out, so as to avoid any injury to the tendon of the flexor carpi radialis or to the radial artery, and the articular surface of the first metacarpal bone is then exposed and removed. Lastly, the cartilaginous portion of the pisiform bone is taken away; but the non-articular part is left behind, unless it is diseased, in which case it should be removed entire. The same remark applies to the hooked process of the unciform.

'The operation is one of the most tedious and difficult in surgery, but it appears to me to give very satisfactory results, and therefore should, I think, always be adopted in such cases as are favourable for any operation at all. It is advisable, if not necessary, to put on Esmarch's bandage; so that the view of the parts should not be obstructed by blood. It is also very desirable to break down any adhesions which the tendons

may have formed while the patient is under anæsthesia previous to the operation.

'No tendons are necessarily divided in this operation except the extensors of the wrist, for the flexor carpi radialis is inserted lower down than the point at which the metacarpal bone is usually divided.

'In order to ensure motion, particularly in the fingers, passive movements should be performed from a very early period after the operation. For this purpose, Mr. Lister places the limb on a splint with the palm of the hand raised by a large wedge of cork, fixed below it; so that the joints of the fingers can be moved without taking the limb off the apparatus. Special arrangements are made for keeping the splint steady, and for preventing displacement of the hand to either side. Careful and methodical passive motion should be used to each several joint—to those of the finger and thumb almost from the day of the operation, and to the wrist as soon as the parts have acquired some firmness, each movement, pronation and supination, flexion and extension, abduction and adduction, being separately exercised; and the patient should be encouraged to make attempts at voluntary motion as early as possible. In order to exercise the fingers, the portion of the splint which supports them may be removed, while that on which the wrist is received is still left. Finally, when the rigid splint is left off, some flexible support is still to be worn for a long time.'

Lord Lister was always careful to provide against stiffness of the thumb in the adducted position by having a notch or deep groove cut in the lateral aspect of the splint, so that the thumb could hang down well away from the other fingers. The functional results after the operation are very fair, but a moulded wristlet must be worn for several months in order to counteract the tendency to displacement of the hand to the radial side.

CHAPTER III

OPERATIONS UPON THE ELBOW-JOINT

ARTHROTOMY AND DRAINAGE

Indications. (i) The elbow-joint is not infrequently the seat of *acute suppurative arthritis*, which is often of traumatic origin and follows septic wounds about the point of the elbow, leading to suppuration in the olecranon bursa and subsequent infection of the joint. It is also occasionally attacked in the course of pyæmia, but is rarely affected in acute infective osteomyelitis.

(ii) In *compound fractures of the olecranon* acute suppuration often occurs, owing to the direct nature of the injury and the certainty of infection of the joint, and will necessitate arthrotomy and drainage.

Operation. As a rule the joint can be drained effectually through vertical incisions in the posterior part of the capsule on either side of the olecranon. That on the inner side must carefully avoid the ulnar nerve; that on the outer side should be just behind the external intermuscular septum and extend downwards far enough to open the radio-humeral joint. As a rule this will give sufficient drainage, but if necessary the soft parts may be raised from the front of the internal condyle and the capsule exposed and the joint opened from the front also.

The limb should be put up on a light sterilizable metal splint with the elbow at right angles, and it will be well to practise continuous irrigation of the joint with normal saline solution circulating through the drainage tubes. Should this be impracticable the joint should be immersed in a large arm-bath containing normal saline solution or boric lotion frequently renewed.

If this fail to drain the joint satisfactorily, a vertical incision should be made down to the bone as for excision (see p. 17). The triceps tendon is split centrally as in that operation, and the olecranon process is chiselled across at its base and removed, the wound being left open widely, so as to secure efficient drainage. The limb is placed in an elbow-bath.

OPERATIONS FOR INTRA-ARTICULAR FRACTURES

Operations for fractures involving the articular surfaces of the lower end of the humerus almost invariably require operative interference if

the functional result is to be satisfactory. Owing to the complicated nature of the articular surfaces the least irregularity will give rise to limitation of movement.

Operation. The exact incision will be determined mainly by the nature and extent of the fracture, which in its turn can only be satisfactorily ascertained beforehand by means of stereoscopic radiograms. The best method of access will generally be by vertical incisions along the supra-condylar ridges reaching well down the condyles, so as to expose the lateral aspects of the lower end of the humerus. In the majority of cases it will probably be necessary to make an incision on each side. The soft parts are carefully peeled off the capsule front and back, so that the joint can be opened, the fracture examined, and the fractured surfaces got accurately into apposition and held there whilst the lower end of the bone is drilled from side to side by a long fine electrically-driven drill; fixation pins are then made to transfix the fragments from side to side. The exposure of the lower end of the humerus may have to be very free, especially in the case of a T-shaped fracture into the joint. In all these cases the soft parts should be peeled off the capsule first and the latter then incised freely; at the end of the operation the incisions in the capsule are sutured. In fractures involving the articular ends of the bone it is almost always necessary to pass the fixation pins from side to side, as nothing can be applied to the articular surfaces for fear of causing a projection upon them that would interfere with movement. When there is a T-shaped fracture, however, it will be necessary to fix the reconstructed articular end to the shaft after pinning the condyles together in this fashion, and this may be done by the application of plates, wires, tacks, or any other fixation method that the surgeon may deem most advisable. After fixation has been accomplished, the joint is kept steady in the position in which it is to be put up, which will generally be at right angles, and the wound is then sutured and a splint applied that takes a firm grip of the limb, but is hinged at the elbow to allow of flexion and extension. A metal excision splint is a useful form, as it allows flexion and extension of the elbow and pronation and supination of the forearm to be practised.

After-treatment. The chief difficulty in the after-treatment is to promote union between the fragments whilst avoiding stiffness in the joint; with this end in view the most careful attention must be paid to the after-treatment. Pronation and supination should be practised from the first, but the limb should remain undisturbed on the splint for about ten days, when the sutures may be taken out. From this time onwards careful passive movements of the elbow-joint must be practised. This should be done at first while the limb is on the splint, the region of

the fracture being steadied with one hand whilst the other grasps the forearm and flexes and extends the elbow gently. In about three weeks' time the range of movement may be increased considerably, and in a month the patient should be practising movements for himself.

OPERATIONS FOR FRACTURE OF THE OLECRANON

Indications. Operative interference is not so essential for fractures of the olecranon as it is for those of the patella, because the results of non-operative treatment in the former cases are not entirely unsatisfactory. All healthy persons under forty years of age who are the subject of the fracture of the olecranon accompanied by marked separation of the fragments, however, should have the fragments fixed by operation. For those to whom the strength of the limb is important, operation is necessary. In many cases, however, admirable mobility and even a fair amount of power follow non-operative treatment.

Operation. In all its essential details this resembles that for fracture of the patella (see p. 66). There are a few points, however, in which the two operations differ.

The incision should be crescentic or horseshoe-shaped, with its convexity upwards and its upper limit just above the point of the olecranon. Its lower extremities should be about half an inch below the line of fracture. The flap thus marked out is turned down and the olecranon bursa and the fracture are exposed. All clot is turned out and the joint is cleared of blood by irrigation with saline solution. Apposition is quite easy and it is unnecessary to pass the wire, or whatever uniting medium is employed, through the articular surfaces. The bone is drilled from its posterior subcutaneous surface to the middle of the fractured surface, care being taken to see that the point at which the drill emerges on the fractured surface corresponds on the two sides. This can be ensured by bringing the fractured surfaces into apposition when the drill is protruding through the first hole and making its point mark a depression in the opposite fractured surface. A silver wire (No. 4 French catheter gauge) is introduced through the drill holes and twisted as for fractured patella. It brings the fragments together accurately without any part of it being within the joint cavity.

Wire is probably much the best material for fastening these fractures. It should be of the gauge recommended above, and it is well to cut a shallow groove or recess in the subcutaneous surface of the olecranon, in which the twist can be embedded so as to be quite out of the way of pressure of any kind. If this simple precaution be taken there will be no necessity to remove it on account of irritation. Screws and nails intro-

duced through the upper surface of the olecranon parallel with its long axis and driven into the shaft of the ulna have been much advocated and employed. I have used them more than once and have been disappointed with them, although the result on the operating table was excellent. The softening of the bone that a foreign body like a screw sets up almost immediately weakens it as a uniting medium, and it is not uncommon to find a certain amount of separation occur in a few days' time and to see the screw pushed out from the bone.

After-treatment. The limb should be put up almost fully extended on an internal splint with a hinge at the elbow. Flexion should be increased gradually during the first fortnight, when the stitches may be taken out, and gentle massage and passive movements employed. At the end of three weeks the patient should be encouraged to move the limb freely for himself, and in a month from the operation the functions of the limb should be completely restored.

Operations for fractures of long standing. These operations are very rare indeed nowadays and do not call for any extended notice, as they follow exactly the lines for similar operations upon fractures of the patella (see p. 74). If necessary for coaptation the triceps tendon, which is fairly thick, can be lengthened (see Vol. I, p. 626).

OPERATIONS FOR DISLOCATIONS

Indications. Operation may be required for a dislocation of the elbow-joint which has passed unrecognized owing to excessive effusion in the neighbourhood of the injury, which has been deemed to be due to a fracture. Unless a radiogram be obtainable the existence of a dislocation may not be ascertained for a long time, when it may be impossible to reduce the dislocation after a careful trial under full anæsthesia. As a rule reduction may be effected safely within six weeks from the date of the injury, and it should always be attempted up to that time. After that, however, the adhesions may become so dense that the force required to break them down may fracture the humerus or stretch the ulnar nerve unduly, giving rise to paralysis; for dislocations that have lasted longer than this operation is advisable without attempting reduction first.

Occasionally it may be necessary to operate upon dislocations of recent origin. This will probably be due to the fact that the coronoid process or some other portion of the articular surface has been fractured and either causes recurrence of the dislocation or mechanically prevents reduction. These cases strictly come under the heading of operations for fractures involving articular surfaces and are dealt with in exactly

the same way, the dislocation being easily reduced before the fractured surfaces are fastened together.

In cases of unreduced dislocations of long standing, the operation will often take the form of an excision, as it may be impossible to get the dislocated surfaces into proper position. Reduction of the dislocation, however, should be possible, provided that sufficient exposure of the parts is obtained and that there is no fracture of the articular surfaces complicating reduction by altering the joint surfaces.

Operation. The best exposure of the joint is obtained by two vertical incisions, one over each condyle. The inner one should be about five inches long, the outer slightly less, as it must not extend lower down than the head of the radius for fear of damaging the radial nerve. By careful dissection the soft parts are raised from the front of the capsule, which is left intact, and a thin flexible spatula is passed beneath them from the inner to the outer incision so as to lift them out of the way. This gives perfect access to the front of the joint, and it may then be possible to effect reduction by traction, checking its effects by the fingers in the wound placed over the front of the joint. If this fail, the soft parts are peeled from the capsule behind as far as the margin of the olecranon, and the joint is opened on the inner side by dividing the remains of the internal lateral ligament. The finger can be then passed into the joint and the condition of affairs ascertained. Any tight structures should be divided, and traction should then bring the bones into position without any risk of doing damage either to the vessels or the ulnar nerve.

After reduction the joint is closed as accurately as possible and the elbow and forearm are supported in a large sling. Movement is practised early and vigorously. It will probably be necessary to move the limb frequently under anæsthesia.

EXCISION OF THE ELBOW

Indications. (i) The affection for which excision of the elbow is most frequently done is *tuberculous disease;* this is dealt with by Mr. Stiles, and the operation for it will not be described here.

(ii) *Injuries to the elbow* frequently require partial or complete excision of the joint. These are generally fractures involving the condyles, which have united with the fragments in a faulty position or with superabundant callus.

(iii) *Unreduced dislocations* may require excision of the joint, but as a rule this will not be called for unless they are complicated by a fracture of the articular surfaces, which prevents proper reduction of the dislocation (*vide supra*).

(iv) The most common non-tuberculous affection for which excision of the elbow is required is *ankylosis*. The results of excision of the elbow, both with regard to the range of movement obtained and the power that can be exerted, are so satisfactory that a patient may always be safely advised to undergo excision with the object of substituting a movable elbow for a stiff one, provided that he has reached the age when growth in the bones has ceased. Excisions prior to this age are apt to be disappointing, owing to the large amount of bone thrown out sub-

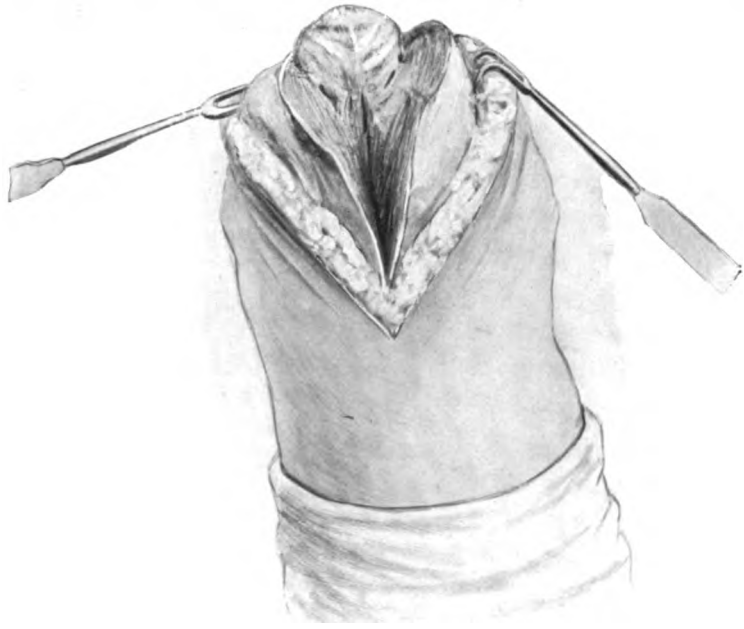


FIG. 3. REFLECTION OF THE SOFT PARTS IN EXCISION OF THE ELBOW. The triceps aponeurosis is being turned off the condyles.

sequently; this limits movement considerably, and may even reproduce the ankylosis.

(v) In *acute suppurative arthritis* the joint may have to be drained by a modified excision of the joint, namely, removal of the olecranon (see p. 13).

(vi) *A fracture of the head of the radius* may necessitate a partial excision of the joint; this will be limited to removal of the fractured portion of the bone.

(vii) *Unreduced dislocation of the radius* will necessitate a similar procedure.

Operation. Only one form of operation, that by the classical vertical incision of Langenbeck, will be described here. This is, on the whole, the most suitable method for most of the conditions enumerated above; other methods, which are more suited for tuberculous disease, will be described by Mr. Stiles.

The assistant holds the limb so that the upper arm is vertical and the elbow is flexed at an angle of 135°, while the surgeon, standing on the affected side, makes an incision four inches long with its centre over the

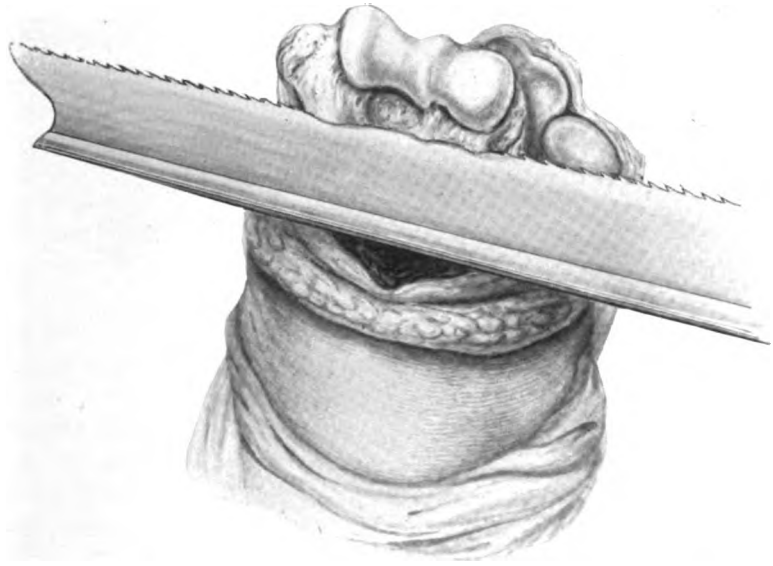


FIG. 4. SAWING THE HUMERUS IN EXCISION OF THE ELBOW. The saw is applied above the level of the condyles.

tip of the olecranon in the middle line of the limb. This incision should go down to bone throughout, the lower half reaching the subcutaneous surfaces of the ulna and the olecranon, whilst the upper half opens the joint and enters the olecranon fossa of the humerus (see Fig. 3). The tendinous expansion of the triceps and anconeus is now turned off each side of the olecranon, partly with the point of a stout short-bladed knife kept closely in contact with the bone, and partly with a Farabeuf's rugine (see Fig. 271, Vol. I), which is excellent for this purpose. The beginner is apt to damage the soft parts unduly by scraping at them with the rugine to the entire exclusion of the use of the knife. The latter is a most useful instrument provided that the surgeon knows how and where to use it, and that he keeps command over it lest its point slip and cut across the expansion of the triceps, which would seriously interfere with

the functional results of the operation. As the soft parts are turned off the sides of the olecranon the posterior ligament of the joint is reached and opened, and while this is being done the assistant extends the limb somewhat, so as to relieve the tension on the soft parts. Each condyle is cleared in turn, and, when the soft parts have been turned sufficiently far forward to clear the front of the condyle, the joint is fully flexed, so that the bones project through the incision. The lateral ligaments

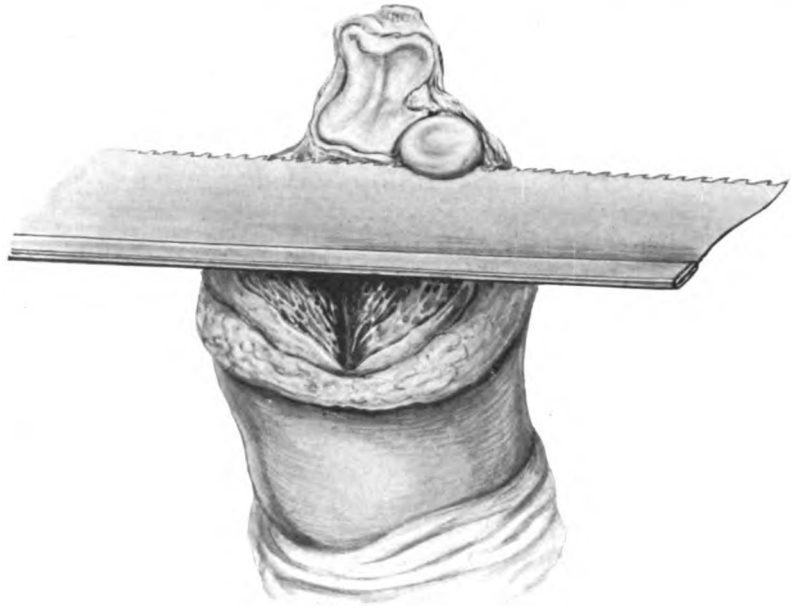


FIG. 5. SAWING THE RADIUS AND ULNA IN EXCISION OF THE ELBOW. The saw is applied above the level of the orbicular ligament.

are now divided and this allows the bones to come apart. By flexing the elbow acutely the lower end of the humerus is made to project freely from the wound, and, after clearing its lower end from the soft parts by a few touches of the knife, the saw is applied just above the level of the condyles (see Fig. 4) and the whole of the articular surface is removed.

The articular ends of the bones of the forearm are next removed. They are cleared by a few touches with the point of the knife and are made to protrude prominently from the soft parts by the assistant, who thrusts them up by grasping the wrist. The saw is applied just at the commencement of the head of the radius, so as to preserve the slightly expanded portion of the neck which retains the bone in the orbicular

ligament (see Fig. 5). This structure should be carefully preserved from injury during the operation; should it have been divided, it should be sutured before the wound is closed. Retention of the movements of pronation and supination largely depends upon the integrity of the orbicular ligament and the retention of the neck of the radius in its grasp. All bleeding points are secured, and, if any sharp projecting points have been left on the humerus, these are removed with a gouge or cutting-pliers.

The result of the removal of bone is the production of a gap of two inches or more between the ends of the bones. This may appear a formidable amount to the inexperienced operator, but, as a matter of fact, the mistake made is nearly always that too little is removed, and the result is more likely to be a stiff elbow afterwards than a flail one. The vertical incision through the triceps is brought together by a few fine catgut sutures and a drainage tube is inserted into the joint. The limb is put up in the almost fully extended position, with the forearm midway between pronation and supination, upon an internal splint furnished with an adjustable hinge at the joint. It is also well to provide a hand-piece, which is capable of rotation.

After-treatment. The arm is raised upon a pillow, slightly away from the side. The drainage tube should be removed in forty-eight hours, and after that the dressing need not be disturbed until the stitches have to be removed, which will be in about fourteen days. The movements of pronation and supination should be practised passively from the day after the operation, and flexion and extension may be begun after the first dressing, viz. about the third day. The range of the movements must be increased regularly, and after the removal of the stitches the patient should be encouraged to move the arm as fully and as frequently as possible.

Results. The results of this operation are in all respects excellent, provided it be done after the age at which growth ceases. Before that time the vigour of the reparative process is very great, and large amounts of bone are thrown out both in the region of the triceps tendon and the lower end of the humerus, and defective movement is frequently the result. In a typically good case there is perfectly good movement, and the only drawback is some loss of power when forcible movements, especially extension of the forearm, are attempted.

ARTHRODESIS

The earlier steps of the method of excision described above are eminently suited for the operation of arthrodesis. The access to the joint

is excellent and the triceps, being paralysed, offers no difficulty in peeling the soft structures off the condyles. When the lateral ligaments have been divided and the end of the humerus protruded through the wound

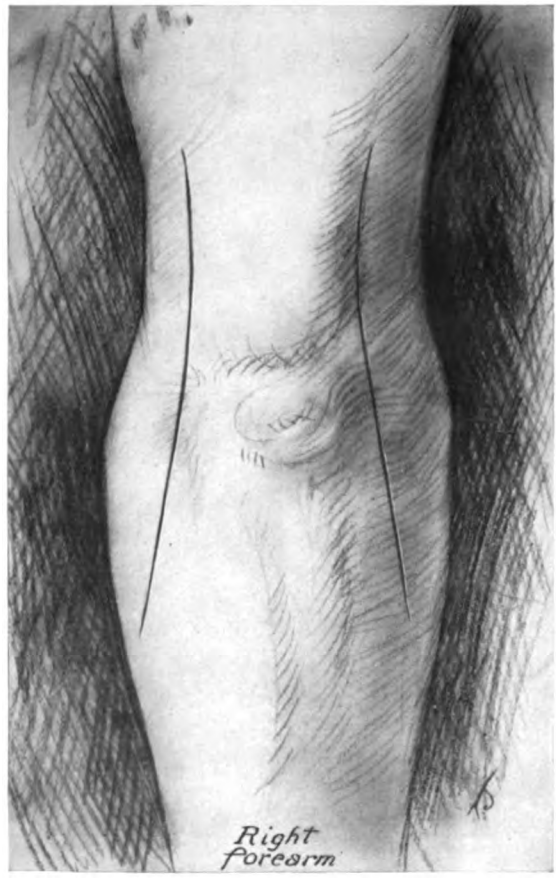


FIG. 6. ARTHROPLASTY OF ELBOW FOR COMPLETE BONY ANKYLOSIS BETWEEN THE HUMERUS AND ULNA IN A POSITION OF COMPLETE EXTENSION. Posterior view of the right elbow showing the location and direction of the two longitudinal incisions, one on the radial and one on the ulnar side of the olecranon. (*Murphy.*)

(see p. 20) the cartilage should be removed from the ulna, except that of the radio-ulnar joint and the corresponding amount from the lower end of the humerus; this is best done with a gouge. The cartilage in contact with the head of the radius should be left intact and none should be removed from the head of the radius. The limb is then fixed at right angles in a plaster of Paris casing.

ARTHROPLASTY (MURPHY)

Two lateral incisions are made, one on either side of the olecranon (see Fig. 6); although only one such incision may be necessary, depending on whether or not it is possible to work freely through an external incision without injuring the ulnar nerve.

If there is any danger of inflicting injury on this nerve, the second or inner lateral incision should be made. We must always insist on

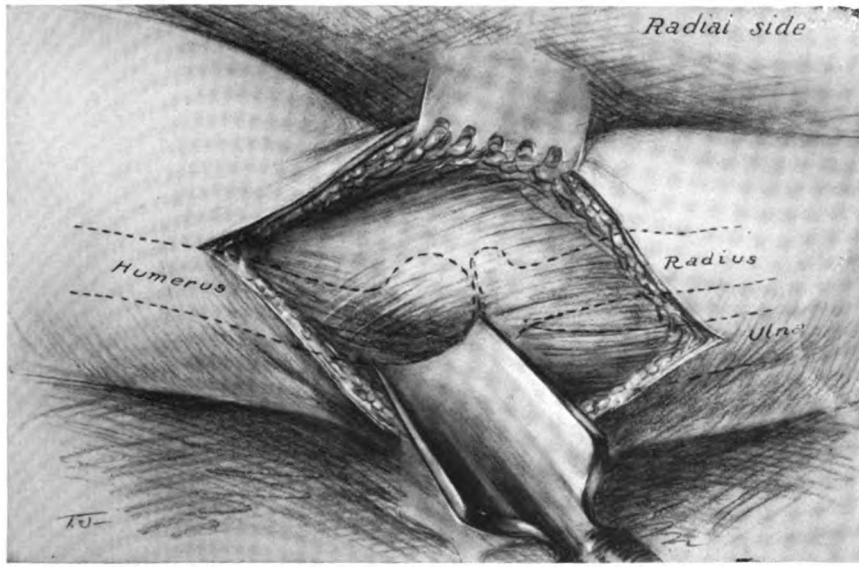


FIG. 7. EXPOSURE OF THE CAPSULE OF THE JOINT FROM THE RADIAL SIDE. The positions of the humerus, radius, and ulna are indicated by dotted lines. Note the direction in which the curved chisel is applied to separate the bones on the radial side of the joint. Note also that the curve of the chisel selected for the division corresponds exactly to the normal curve of the articular surface of the elbow joint, thus reproducing in the artificial joint the exact contour of the original. (*Murphy.*)

finding the nerve, freeing it from adhesions, and retracting it out of the field of operation (see Fig. 8).

The length of this lateral incision will depend on how much of an area one wishes to expose. As a rule, an incision about 5 inches in length is sufficient, although there is no reason why it should not be made longer if necessary. The incisions are made about one-half inch to either side of the olecranon and extend through the skin and superficial fascia. The edges of the wound are then retracted widely so as to give easy access to the joint (see Fig. 7).

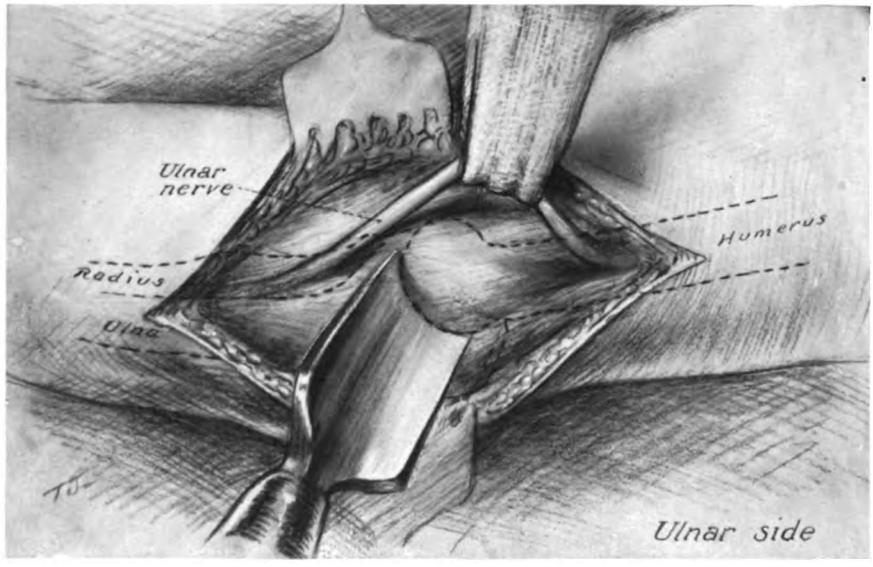


FIG. 8. EXPOSURE OF THE ULNAR NERVE AND CAPSULE OF THE JOINT FROM THE ULNAR SIDE. (*Murphy.*)

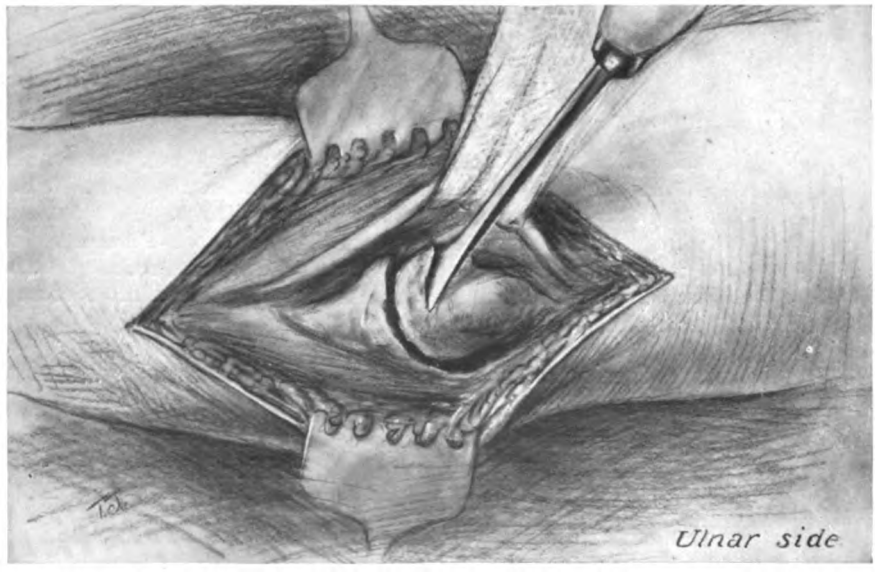


FIG. 9. REMOVAL OF ULNAR SIDE OF HUMERUS. (*Murphy.*)

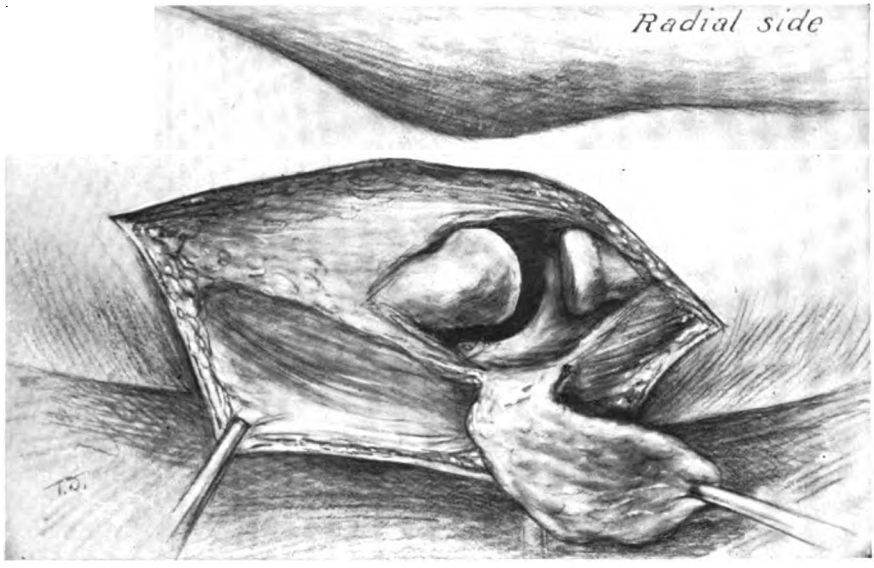


FIG. 10. PEDICLED FAT AND FASCIA FLAP PREPARED FROM THE OUTER SIDE OF THE ARM FOR INSERTION INTO THE JOINT FROM THE RADIAL SIDE. (*Murphy.*)

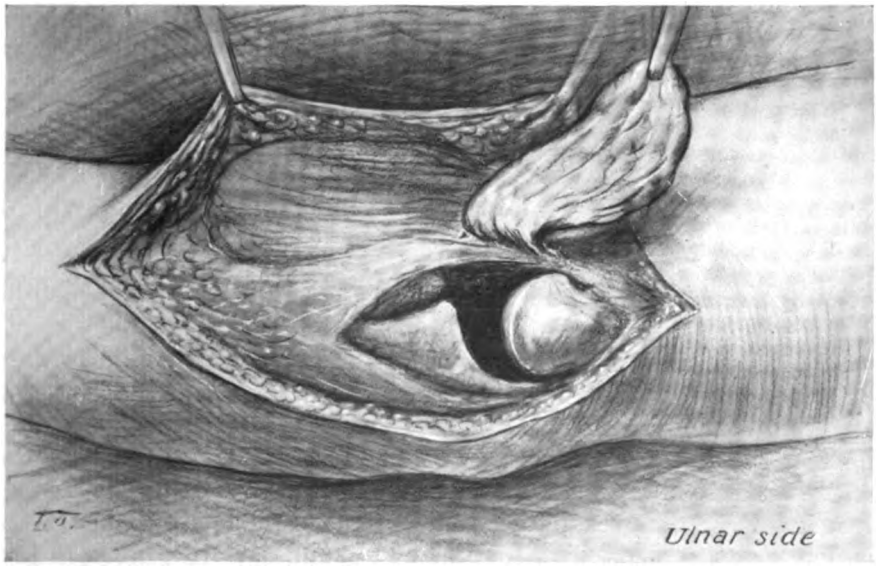


FIG. 11. PEDICLED FAT AND FASCIA FLAP PREPARED FROM THE INNER SURFACE OF THE FOREARM FOR INSERTION INTO THE JOINT FROM THE ULNAR SIDE. (*Murphy.*)

The interposing flap in these cases is taken from the aponeurosis of the supinator longus and from the fascia and fat on the inner side of the joint. The bases of these flaps are directed upward. The flaps are made sufficiently wide so as to cover the freshened surfaces of the bone and long enough so as to reach across from one side of the joint to the other (see Figs. 10 and 11).

The ankylosis in the case of the elbow usually exists between the olecranon process of the ulna and the humerus. This is carefully di-

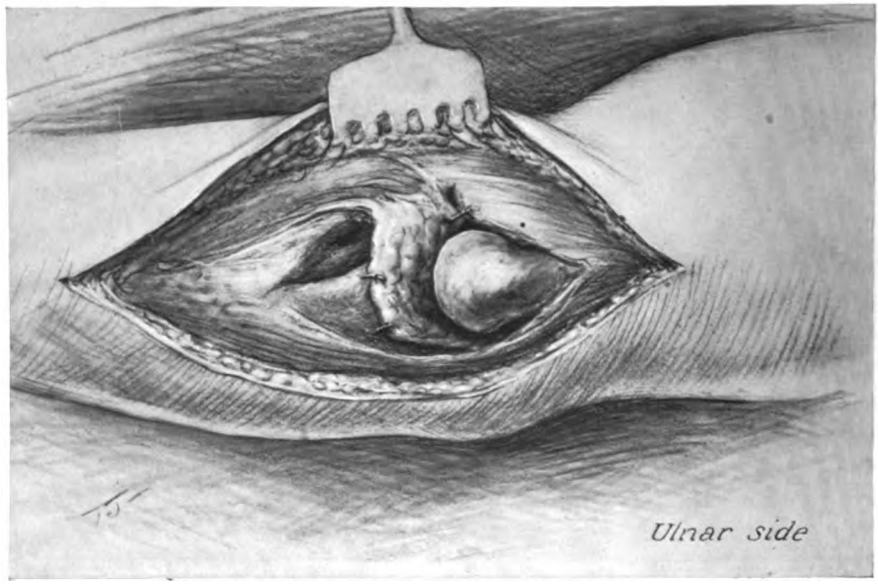


FIG. 12. ULNAR FLAP INTERPOSED AND SUTURED INTO POSITION BETWEEN THE ULNA AND HUMERUS. (*Murphy.*)

vided by means of a curved chisel, twisted laterally, until free mobility of the joint is secured (see Fig. 9).

Sometimes there is a bony ankylosis between the head of the radius and the lesser sigmoid cavity. When this exists it is also chiselled free, the bony deposit is removed, all exostoses are cut away, and absolute freedom of motion is secured. If necessary, the olecranon fossa may be deepened, so that the extension of the arm may be complete. Ample bone should be removed from the humerus and radius to permit of free flexion and extension without force and the anterior capsule of the joint fully and completely divided.

Having secured the desired mobility of the joint and having freshened all bony surfaces, the next step in the operation is to place and

secure the interposing flaps (see Figs. 12 and 13). As stated before, these flaps are drawn into the joint and secured on all sides with chromicized catgut sutures. The ulnar nerve which was exposed at the commencement of the operation, so as to protect it from injury, is now replaced in its groove and surrounded by fat. The remainder of the opera-

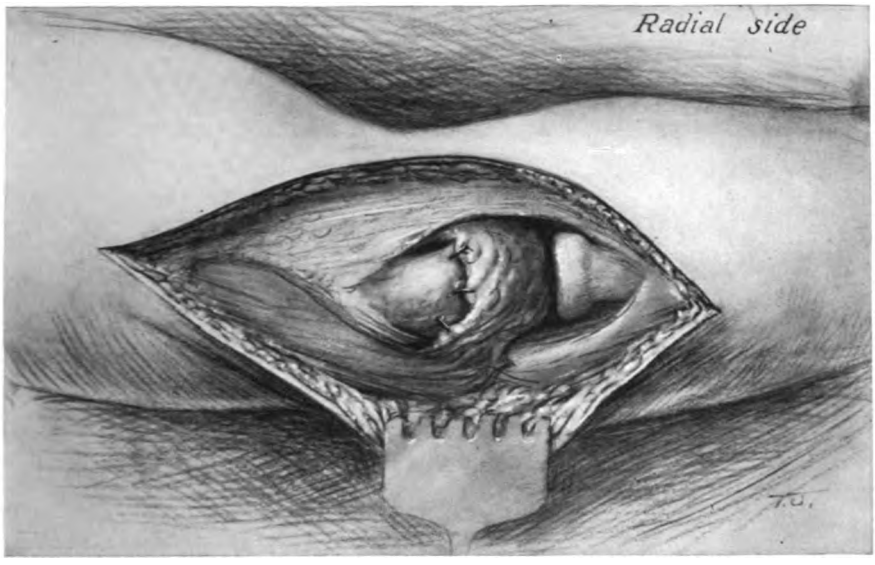


FIG. 13. RADIAL FLAP INTERPOSED AND SUTURED INTO POSITION BETWEEN THE HUMERUS AND THE RADIUS AND ULNA. The deep stitches which fasten together the radial and ulnar flaps in the depths of the wound have not been shown in these illustrations. (*Murphy.*)

tion consists of the steps already described, such as closing the wound and applying the powder and dressings.

The elbow is immobilized at an angle of about 30 to 40 degrees. The patient is encouraged to make active and passive motion and, if necessary, is ordered to carry sand-bags or other weights for the purpose of securing as much extension of the arm as is possible. Massage may now be of service in increasing the function of the joint. It should never be severely painful or prolonged.

CHAPTER IV

OPERATIONS UPON THE SHOULDER-JOINT

ARTHROTOMY AND DRAINAGE

Indications. The shoulder is not a frequent seat of suppurative arthritis, either pyæmic or secondary to acute infective osteomyelitis of the humerus or scapula; it may, however, have to be drained for either of these conditions.

Operation. The joint is difficult to drain from the front, owing to the obliquity of the insertion of the capsule, which extends much further down on the inner than on the outer side. It will be necessary, therefore, to make a counter-opening at the most dependent spot in all cases. This will be on the axillary aspect of the joint, and care will be needed to avoid damage to the important structures in that region.

The first step is to open the front of the joint, and here there will be some difficulty, owing to the necessity of avoiding injury to the tendon of the biceps, which would cause serious disability subsequently. The only safe plan is to dissect down upon the front of the joint with care and deliberation, exposing the parts fully and ascertaining the whereabouts of the structures to be avoided. An almost vertical incision downwards for about two inches from just in front of the acromion process will give good access. The deltoid fibres are separated and the muscles inserted into the outer tuberosity are exposed. By incising them vertically downwards in the line of the skin incision the joint will be opened well outside the biceps tendon, which will lie in its groove undisturbed. Its position can be felt by the finger in the wound, and if necessary it can be drawn out of harm's way by rotating the limb firmly inwards. A drainage tube is inserted into the joint beneath the acromion.

A second incision for through-and-through drainage will be required, and this must be made at the most dependent spot in the axilla. It is not easy to hit off this spot exactly as the conformation of the joint makes it difficult to pass forceps across from the previous incision. Perhaps the best plan is to raise the arm above the head so as to render the head of the humerus as prominent in the axilla as possible, and then to cut down upon this by an incision about two inches long just below the axillary vessels. These are identified and pulled upwards so as to expose the capsule below and behind. The head of the bone can be made

out by the finger in the axilla. The capsule may be opened by cutting down directly upon the head of the bone; this may be facilitated by bringing the arm down, and passing a long pair of dressing forceps across the joint from the upper incision and making their points protrude beneath the capsule so that they can be cut down upon and made to seize the drainage tube and pull it into position.

OPERATIONS FOR FRACTURES INVOLVING THE SHOULDER-JOINT

Indications. Owing to the small portion of the bone contained within the capsule of the joint and the fact that the commonest form of fracture, viz. that through the surgical neck, is outside the joint, arthrotomy is not often called for in connexion with fractures of the upper end of the humerus. Moreover the articular surfaces are in such loose apposition that slight irregularities do not materially impair the movements of the joints. However, fractures such as those of the anatomical neck, as well as those of the great trochanter, will generally require operative treatment in order to secure the best possible result. These cases are now recognized more quickly and more certainly than they were formerly, owing to the great assistance afforded by stereoscopic radiograms. By means of them it will generally be possible to tell not only the cases that should be operated upon, but also the most suitable position for the arthrotomy incision.

Operation. Into the steps of the operation it is unnecessary to go in detail. It will consist of two parts—arthrotomy, followed by removal of the detached portion of the bone or fixation of it in place by some of the mechanical methods already described (see Vol. I, p. 705). The incision for exposure of the joint will vary according to the precise affection for which the operation is done. For a fracture of the anatomical neck the incision advised for use in the reduction of dislocations (see p. 31) is perhaps the most useful, while for fractures involving the greater tuberosity the one beneath the acromion (see p. 21) will lead down to the seat of injury more directly. The treatment of the fracture after the joint has been opened will be determined by the conditions present. If the head of the bone be separated it is as well to remove it entirely, gouging and smoothing off the fractured surface left, so that movement may be unimpeded afterwards. The question of some form of arthroplasty (see p. 5) will have to be considered in this connexion. For any other form of fracture mechanical fixation will probably be required and the most appropriate method should be adopted (see Vol. I, p. 705). The joint should be closed without a drainage tube.

After-treatment. The chief point is to promote early movement. The arm should be carried in a sling only, and passive movement should be practised from the first few days and pushed vigorously.

OPERATIONS FOR DISLOCATIONS OF THE SHOULDER

It may become necessary to have recourse to operative measures for the reduction of a dislocation at various periods after the receipt of the injury. It is usual to divide the operations into two classes, viz. those done while the dislocation is recent, and those for dislocations of long standing. This is, however, not a good plan, as the distinction between recent dislocations and those of long standing is rapidly disappearing with the advance of aseptic surgery, and the conviction is growing that no dislocation should be allowed to reach the stage in which it may be said to be an unreduced dislocation of long standing. Radiograms will clear up doubts as to the nature of the condition and the remedy for it is becoming more widely agreed upon; it is, that the joint should be opened and an attempt made to replace the head of the bone as soon as a fair trial of reduction by manipulation under an anæsthetic has been made and has failed. Operation will be required for:

Indications. (i) All cases of dislocation complicated by fracture of the upper end of the humerus. These cases should be operated upon directly they come under notice. The prospects of obtaining a good result are directly proportionate to the celerity and thoroughness with which operative restoration is performed. The procedure will be reposition of the head, suture of the capsule, and mechanical fixation of the fragments.

(ii) All cases of dislocation complicated by fracture of the glenoid cavity. This accident has only received just recognition since radiographic examination has become the rule. It is likely to lead to a crippled joint unless early operation be practised for the removal of detached bone and suture of the torn structures.

(iii) Any dislocation that cannot be reduced after two or three careful attempts at reduction under full anæsthesia. These, of course, will be recent cases. Operation should be practised within the first week, preferably within the first three days.

(iv) Any unreduced dislocation that has lasted for less than six weeks after a careful attempt at reduction under anæsthesia has failed. The attempt should be by manipulation only, and operation should be carried out forthwith if it fails; this avoids further adhesions which would make an operation carried out at a later period more difficult.

(v) All cases of dislocation that have lasted longer than six weeks

without any previous attempt at reduction, provided that the patient's age, health, and degree of disability render an operation advisable. In this connexion it is well to remember that some patients have excellent, though limited, use of the arm in spite of the unreduced dislocation, and that operation will not always improve upon this. In old and fat people the restoration of function is often very defective, especially when the head of the bone cannot be replaced and the joint has to be excised.

Operation in recent cases. In recent cases very little difficulty may be met with, except when there is an extensive fracture complicating the dislocation. A very good incision is that suggested by Mr. Keetley (*Lancet*, 1904, vol. i, p. 211), following Tiling and Paulet, along the anterior margin of the deltoid, just external to the cephalic vein, from the clavicle nearly to its insertion. The anterior fibres of the deltoid are separated along the line of the incision, and a transverse cut is made from its inner edge for about two or three inches through the deltoid half an inch below the clavicle and acromion. This latter part of the incision is not always necessary in recent cases, but it is very useful, as by employing it the whole area concerned in the dislocation can be exposed quite satisfactorily and without causing any risk to the nerve-supply of the deltoid, which it is very important to preserve intact.

When this incision has been well retracted, the dislocated head of the bone will be seen, and, if the case be one of simple dislocation unaccompanied by fracture (as a radiogram will demonstrate), the arm should be manipulated for reduction by an assistant while the surgeon ascertains and overcomes any obstacle to reduction, such as the tendon of the subscapularis, by pulling it aside. When reduction has been accomplished, the rent in the capsule is sewn up if it can be reached, the deltoid, if cut, is sutured (see Vol. I, p. 623), and the wound is closed without a drainage tube. The arm is bound lightly to the side and the elbow supported in a large sling. Passive movements, while the arm is supported by the sling, are practised from the first. After the sutures have been removed, the elbow is supported in a sling for another week, but overhead movements should not be allowed for a month after operation for fear of recurrence of the dislocation. Abduction can be restricted by fixing a strap round the thorax and another round the arm, and connecting them with a light chain of suitable length.

When a fracture complicates dislocation it will be necessary to remove any loose fragments of bone from the joint cavity if the fracture involve the glenoid cavity, after which the treatment is as above, care being taken to smooth down any rough surface of bone left. When the fracture is in the upper end of the humerus, the dislocation is first reduced and the rent in the capsule sutured, after which the fragments are fixed by

mechanical means (see Vol. I, p. 705). Some difficulty may be experienced in handling the upper fragment when reducing the dislocation if the fracture be high up, since it is difficult to get a hold upon it. This may necessitate the use of special forceps (see Fig. 273, Vol. I); in one case I was successful after transfixing the head of the bone with a drill which served as a handle to manipulate the bone with. After successful reduction and fixation, the limb is put up as for fracture of the neck of the humerus, the wrist being supported by a sling and the shoulder-joint fixed by a moulded cap of poroplastic material or gutta-percha, the elbow being allowed to hang unsupported.

In the *after-treatment* the condition of the shoulder-joint must not be overlooked, and it will be necessary to guard against stiffness by practising free passive movement from an early date, steadying the seat of fracture carefully meanwhile. It is very difficult to obtain a perfectly satisfactory result in these cases; much depends upon the thoroughness with which the passive movements are carried out.

Operations for unreduced dislocation. When the dislocation has remained unreduced for a long time the operations for its cure are really two in number, viz. re-position of the head of the humerus in the glenoid cavity or excision of the joint. As it is impossible to tell beforehand which of these methods is likely to be successful, and as in practice the surgeon always attempts to replace the head of the bone before he convinces himself that it will be necessary to excise it, these two operations will be described as portions of one procedure.

The purification of the soft parts in these operations, as in the corresponding ones upon the hip, must be both thorough and extensive. The entire pectoral, scapular, and axillary region must be shaved and cleansed and the upper limb must be secured in sterilized towels, for the manipulations are likely to be severe and prolonged, and the hands have to be carried well under the back in order to fix the scapula.

For exposure of the operation area no incision is better than that advised by Keetley (*loc. supra cit.*). The anterior fibres of the deltoid are split and the posterior fibres are divided by a horizontal incision outwards below the clavicle, enabling the muscle to be pulled backwards from the upper end of the bone, thus exposing the displaced head lying beneath the coracoid process, where it will have contracted dense adhesions and have formed a false joint. Before there will be any chance of getting the head into the glenoid cavity, the muscles passing from the scapula to the humerus, which are all shortened, must be separated. The best way to do this is, as Keetley advises, to chisel off the greater tuberosity with the muscles attached to it and to divide the coracoid process with the coraco-brachialis arising from it. The tendon of the

biceps may be divided by a very oblique section if necessary, and the lesser tuberosity with the insertion of the subscapularis may also be detached if its tendon cannot be hooked out of the way. The soft structures forming the new false capsule must be opened up freely and the head and neck of the bone separated from the adjacent soft parts. This is the most difficult stage of the operation, since the axillary vessels and nerves may be closely adherent to the inner surface of the neck. By keeping very close to the bone and using Farabeuf's sharp rugines (see Fig. 271, Vol. I), this danger will be got over. Finally the glenoid cavity is examined, and if it be filled up by the remains of the capsule, which has fallen over and become adherent to its anterior surface, as will probably be the case, it must be removed with knife and scissors before the head is put in place.

Nothing now remains to be done but to attempt to replace the head of the bone in the glenoid cavity. How this is to be done each operator must determine for himself. It should be by manipulation methods if possible, after dividing any structures that oppose reduction and can be divided with impunity. Pulleys were frequently used and are still advocated, but it seems more reasonable to submit cases obstinate enough to demand such extreme force, to some form of excision. Powerful bone forceps, retractors, and levers may be required to lift the head of the bone on to the glenoid surface. When it is there, manipulations will complete the reduction. If the head of the bone should have undergone distortion from traumatic arthritis, as it may have done in cases of very long standing, it will be necessary to pare it away and leave it very smooth and of proper shape. Redundant capsule must be cut away, but any that is likely to come in useful in the formation of a new capsule should be retained.

If the attempts at reduction are successful, the next step is to restore the various muscular insertions that have been divided. The tuberosities are fastened in place with tacks, the coracoid process is wired on, and the biceps tendon sutured if it has been divided. The deltoid fibres are sutured (see Vol. I, p. 623) and any remnants of capsule are brought together to form a new capsule for the joint. The wound is closed without a drainage tube, and the *after-treatment* is similar to that for recent cases (see p. 32), except that the convalescence will be longer.

If these attempts at reduction fail, however, there is no alternative but to excise the joint (*vide infra*). In several reported cases the wound has been closed after it was found that reduction could not be effected, but this only serves to make the patient's condition worse than it was before, and excision is probably preferable.

After the head of the bone has been sawn (see p. 38) the raw surface

is rounded off and made as smooth as possible, and it will be well to practise arthroplasty (see p. 5) by bringing in a flap of soft parts over the cut surface so as to encourage movement subsequently. The detached muscular attachments are fastened in place once more (*vide supra*) and divided tendons and muscles sutured. The *after-treatment* is similar to that of excision generally (see p. 38), except that passive movement must be begun earlier and persevered in more energetically, under full

FIG. 14. INCISION FOR EXCISION OF THE SHOULDER-JOINT. This is the anterior incision described in the text. The limb is in the position in which it should be held when the incision is made.

anæsthesia, if necessary, on account of the readiness with which adhesions form in the disorganized joint.

EXCISION OF THE SHOULDER

Indications. (i) *Tuberculous disease* of the joint is the affection for which this operation is most frequently performed. This does not come within the scope of the present article, however.

(ii) *Compound fractures* of the upper end of the humerus may

occasionally be best treated by excision in order to preserve the movements of the joint.

(iii) *Unreduced dislocations* of long standing that resist all attempts to get the head of the bone into the glenoid cavity may be treated by excision and a wider range of movement thereby assured.

(iv) *Ankylosis* of the shoulder in a young subject is often a fit subject for excision with the object of obtaining a range of movement

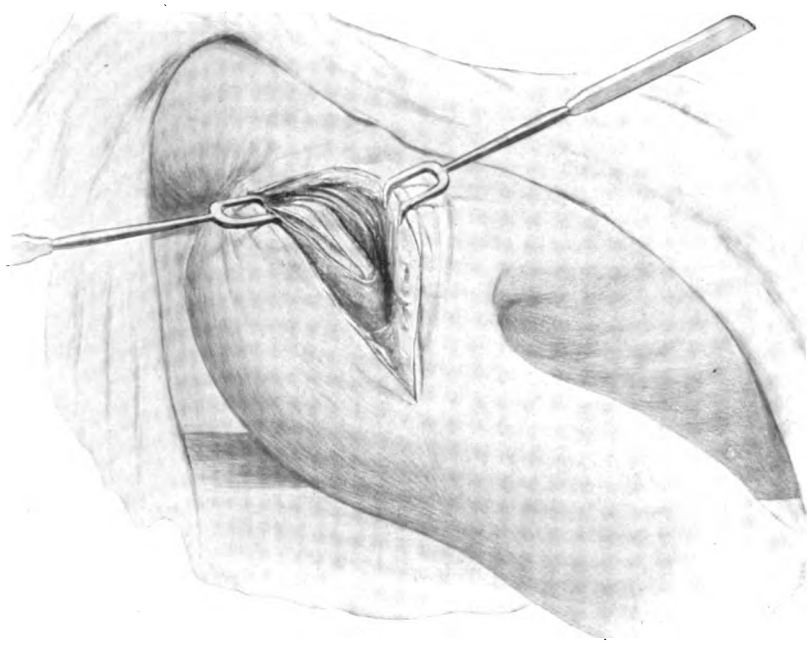


FIG. 15. PRESERVATION OF THE BICEPS TENDON IN EXCISION OF THE SHOULDER-JOINT. The tendon has been lifted out of its groove.

that is unobtainable without it. The operation should not be undertaken for this purpose, however, without a careful selection of cases, as the functional results are not nearly so good in elderly subjects as in younger people.

Operation. (*a*) **For injury.** An incision five inches long (see Fig. 14) is begun upon the clavicle above the coracoid process, and carried downwards and outwards along the anterior border of the deltoid, which is separated from the clavicular portion of the pectoralis major

by the cephalic vein. The latter is drawn to the inner side along with the pectoralis major, while the deltoid is drawn outwards. The front portion of the deltoid will probably have to be detached from the clavicle, and some of the branches of the acromio-thoracic artery ligatured.

When these muscles have been retracted, the outer surface of the capsule of the joint is exposed; in the lower part of the wound the tendon

FIG. 16. DISARTICULATION OF THE HEAD OF THE HUMERUS IN EXCISION OF THE SHOULDER-JOINT. The arm is vertical and the head of the bone can be pushed well up out of the wound.

of insertion of the pectoralis major is seen. The arm is rotated inwards and the sheath of the biceps tendon is opened along the outer lip of the bicipital groove. The sheath is slit up to the edge of the glenoid cavity, and the biceps tendon is freed and drawn inwards (see Fig. 15). The tendon must be carefully preserved throughout the operation. The incision into the sheath of the biceps tendon opens the capsule of the

joint, and the next step is to separate the attachment of the tendons inserted into the upper end of the humerus, viz. the subscapularis into the lesser tuberosity, the supraspinatus, infraspinatus, and the teres minor into the greater tuberosity. This is done by means of vertical cuts close to the bone made parallel to the bicipital groove, the humerus

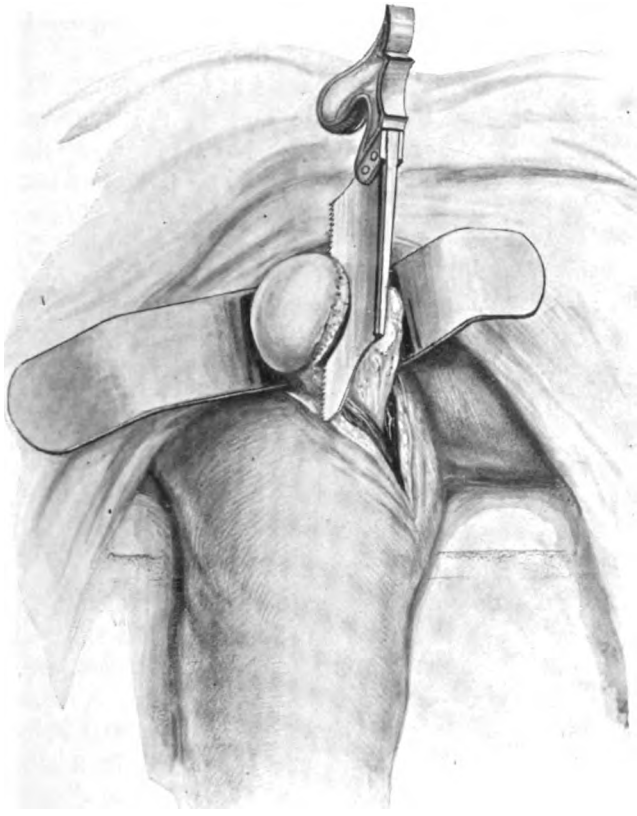


FIG. 17. SAWING THE HEAD OF THE HUMERUS IN EXCISION OF THE SHOULDER-JOINT. The soft parts are protected by a spatula.

being meanwhile rotated first outwards and then inwards; no transverse cuts should be made in the capsule, as it is essential for a good result that it should be detached undamaged. While this is being done, the assistant holds the arm nearly horizontal, and at right angles to the trunk. When the humerus must be exposed farther downwards, the anterior and posterior circumflex arteries and the circumflex nerve, which surround the surgical neck, must be borne in mind, and the

former if necessary ligatured. The nerve must on no account be injured.

The head of the bone can now be made to project from the capsule and should be pushed up out of the wound by the assistant (see Fig. 16). In determining how much bone to remove in these cases the surgeon is guided by the desire to get free movement, since there is no disease requiring to be removed. A free removal of bone may be practised if care be taken to preserve those portions of the tuberosities into which the rotators of the bone are inserted. The saw is applied parallel to and just outside the line of the anatomical neck (see Fig. 17). Whatever the amount of bone removed, the line of section should be obliquely from without downwards and inwards, so as to avoid any projecting edge against the axillary vessels or nerves. When the section is complete it is well to go over the whole of the inner aspect of the cut surface and pare this down with a gouge or a burr, so that it is as smooth as possible and presents no prominences that will interfere with movement. It is also an excellent plan to fashion a flap from the soft structures around and fasten it over the raw bone surface in order to promote movement subsequently (see p. 5). Foreign substances, such as thin sheet rubber or gold foil, have been used with a similar object.

The remaining steps of the operation are concerned with the closure of the wound. Before this is done the insertions of the supraspinatus, infraspinatus, and teres minor are sutured to the greater tuberosity and the tendon of the subscapularis to the lesser with stout catgut. The biceps tendon is replaced in its groove and its sheath is sutured over it. A drainage tube should be inserted into the joint cavity, as a large 'dead' space is left in which blood would otherwise collect. A small pad is placed in the axilla to prevent the head of the humerus being drawn inwards, and the elbow and forearm are supported in a sling. The arm is fastened lightly to the side.

Passive movements are begun from the first and the patient is encouraged to swing his arm about in the sling as much as he can. The support should be removed from the elbow about the third or fourth day, the sling only taking in the wrist.

(*b*) **For unreduced dislocation.** This has been already referred to separately in connexion with the operations for unreduced dislocations (see p. 33).

(*c*) **For ankylosis.** There is often considerable difficulty in these cases owing to the want of proper exposure of the parts. The anterior oblique incision described above does not give enough room for the very important soft structures on the inner aspect of the joint to be

properly protected while the head of the bone is being sawn or chiselled through *in situ,* as it has to be in cases of ankylosis. When the head of the bone can be protruded from the wound, as it can be in ordinary cases, there is no risk to the axillary structures, but when division has to be effected in ankylosed cases the saw or chisel may easily do very serious damage. Even when a Gigli's saw is employed and is introduced by pulling it round the bone with the aid of a suitably curved director insinuated between the soft parts and the inner aspect of the joint the procedure is difficult, as it may be hard to protrude the humerus from the wound after simple division of the ankylosis. Therefore an operation that will give the fullest exposure of the joint with the least damage to the functional powers of the muscles subsequently is greatly to be desired.

Kocher's posterior resection. On the whole these conditions are better fulfilled by the posterior method introduced by Kocher. The following is his description of the operation (*Textbook of Operative Surgery,* translated by Stiles, 1903, p. 376) :—

'The skin incision is carried from the acromio-clavicular joint over the top of the shoulder and along the upper border of the acromion to the outer part of the spine of the scapula (root of the acromion), and from thence downwards in a curved direction towards the posterior fold of the axilla, ending two fingers' breadth above it. The upper limb of the incision passes through the superior ligament right into the acromio-clavicular joint (the strong fibres of which are divided), and the rest of its course divides the insertion of the trapezius along the upper border of the spine of the scapula. The descending limb of the incision divides the dense fascia at the posterior border of the deltoid, and exposes the fibres of the latter. The thumb is now introduced beneath the smooth under surface of the deltoid so as to separate it from the deeper muscles (with which it is connected merely by loose cellular tissue) up to its origin from the acromion, and its posterior fibres are divided. The finger is now carried along the upper border of the infraspinatus muscle so as to free it opposite the outer border of the spine and the root of the acromion.

'In a similar manner the supraspinatus is detached with a blunt dissector from the upper border of the spine of the scapula, in order that the finger may be passed from above underneath the root of the acromion. The root of the acromion, which is now freed, is chiselled through obliquely, and, along with the deltoid, is forcibly pushed forwards with the thumbs over the head of the humerus.

'In chiselling through the bone care must be taken not to injure the suprascapular nerve which passes under the muscles from the supra-spinous into the infraspinous fossa; the nerve is also protected by the

transverse ligament of the scapula. It is desirable before chiselling the bone to bore the holes required for the subsequent suture.

'Instead of dividing the root of the acromion, the formation of the posterior flap may be simplified by merely detaching the scapular origin of the deltoid subcortically: this allows of very firm union subsequently.

'After reflecting the acromio-deltoid flap, the head of the bone is readily accessible in its upper, outer, and posterior aspects, covered by the tendons of the external rotators, viz. the supraspinatus, infraspinatus, and teres minor muscles. The posterior surfaces of these muscles are also exposed. An incision is now made over the head of the bone, and in order to avoid unnecessary injury this must be done accurately. The arm being rotated outwards, a longitudinal incision is carried down to the bone in the coronal plane. Commencing at the upper part of the posterior lip of the bicipital groove, it extends upwards through the capsule along the anterior edge of the insertions of the external rotator muscles and over the highest part of the head of the humerus, so as to expose the tendon of the biceps as far as its attachment to the upper edge of the glenoid cavity. The insertions of the external rotators are now separated from the greater tuberosity and drawn backwards. The biceps tendon is freed from its groove and drawn forwards, so that its sheath may be inspected.

'In this way the entire head of the humerus and the glenoid fossa can be freely exposed, and if it is not necessary to do a complete excision, the anterior wall of the capsule and the insertions of the anterior muscles can be preserved. In other cases the insertion of the subscapularis into the lesser tuberosity is detached upwards and inwards.

'The circumflex vessels and nerve which come out from under the teres minor can be preserved: indeed, if the operation be properly performed there need be no fear of injuring them.'

When the upper and back part of the joint has been freely exposed in this manner it becomes a much easier task to protect the soft parts on the anterior and inner aspects of the joint and to divide the bone. On the whole it is perhaps best to perform the section with a broad chisel which is sunk into the line of ankylosis, which can always be identified. A few gentle strokes with the hammer and a little manipulation of the arm by one assistant while another fixes the scapula will generally suffice to mobilize the head of the humerus. Fine spatulæ can then be slipped down behind the neck of the bone and the rest of the operation carried out as for an ordinary excision (see p. 38).

ARTHRODESIS

Indications. In the rare cases in which the muscles passing from the scapula to the humerus are paralysed, it will be considerable help to the patient if his shoulder-joint can be fixed firmly enough to enable the scapulo-thoracic movements to be substituted for those of the shoulder. This can be done to some extent by arthrodesis, but it must be confessed that the results may be disappointing since the bone surfaces cannot always be kept closely enough in contact for firm bony union to occur, and this is required if the arm is to be useful. The leverage is so great that fibrous union soon stretches. Close approximation of the denuded articular surfaces is difficult to maintain, owing to the dependent position of the limb and the fact that the muscles maintaining apposition in the normal joint are paralysed here. Mechanical fixation (see Vol. I, p. 705) may be employed with advantage.

Operation. The first stages of the operation will be the same as for an excision (see p. 35). It is immaterial what incision is used for the purpose. The oblique anterior one recommended above is as good as any, but in this case a large deltoid flap may be raised, if desired, as this muscle will be paralysed by the affection for which the operation is done, and there is therefore no objection to injuring it, as there is in the ordinary excision operation.

When the head of the bone has been protruded from the wound (see Fig. 16), the cartilage is carefully removed from the whole of it with a chisel. Besides this it will be advisable to flatten the rounded surface of the head somewhat so as to ensure a broad surface of contact when it rests against the glenoid cavity; otherwise, it will only touch at one point. As these operations are generally done in growing children, it will be unsafe to use the saw for this purpose, as the epiphyseal line might be injured; more delicate and certain work can be done with the chisel.

The next point is to remove the cartilage from the glenoid cavity. This is rather difficult to get at, but removal must be thorough and methodical, and is best done with a gouge. An electrically-driven burr is an excellent instrument, and it has the further great advantage that a flat surface can be made of the glenoid cavity to fit accurately against the flattened head of the bone.

The two raw surfaces of bone are now placed in apposition, and I have found it best to fasten them together in order to prevent them falling asunder and to promote bony union, which is very essential. A simple and satisfactory plan is to transfix the head of the bone with a steel pin driven in through the greater tuberosity and passing through

the head of the humerus and the glenoid cavity well into the neck of the scapula. The end of the pin protrudes through the wound and can be enveloped in the dressings and removed when union has occurred. The humerus is held in apposition to the glenoid cavity by the assistant while the peg is being driven in, and care must be taken to see that it is somewhat inwardly rotated while this is being done, otherwise it will be difficult to bring the forearm to the chest afterwards.

ARTHROPLASTY (MURPHY)

The skin and deltoid are split and the fascia is separated along its anterior margin for a distance of four inches and elevated so as to expose the bony union between the glenoid and the head of the humerus. A curved chisel is then used to separate these and an additional excavation on the surface of the glenoid is made. An incision is then made at right angles to the original incision across the chest, over the middle of the pectoralis major muscle; a flap of fat, aponeurosis of the pectoralis major muscle is then made, 4½ inches long and 3½ wide, with its pedicle left attached to the humerus. It is swung upward and interposed between the head of the humerus and glenoid, completely covering the bony surfaces. In lieu of this simple procedure, the following may be adopted, as described by Coville: He made a 4-inch incision, starting below the clavicle and passing external to the coracoid process, down along the arm, following the fibres of the deltoid muscle. This muscle is incised just outside of the delto-pectoral groove, when the shoulder-joint will be found to be exposed freely. Coville then extracted the head of the humerus and divided it from the remainder of the bone, at the level of the anatomic neck. The long strip of deltoid muscle was cut transversely, the superior portion being left adherent. A piece 4 inches wide was taken from the transverse section and interposed between the head of the bone and the glenoid cavity.

Coville perforated the capsule with a probe so as to prevent wounding the musculo-spiral nerve, and made a counter-incision at the same level, passing a thread through its opening. This thread surrounded the extremity of the muscular strip in the form of a loop, and by tightening this loop the strip of muscle is applied to the articular cavity.

Besides using a muscle flap in the manner described above, one may substitute and use as an interposing flap the anterior portion of the deltoid, inserting it anterior to the coraco-brachialis and short head of the biceps.

EXCISION OF THE SCAPULA

Indications. (i) *For sarcoma of the bone.* This is practically the only condition that is likely to require complete excision of the

scapula, although parts of the bone may be removed for other conditions.

(ii) *For necrosis of the scapula.* This results from acute infective osteomyelitis in young subjects and may require a partial excision of the bone; it is, however, hardly ever likely to demand complete removal.

(iii) The scapula is removed together with the entire upper extremity in the *interscapulo-thoracic amputation* of Berger. This, however, is a special operation which is not really excision of the scapula.

Operation. Various incisions may be employed; the one in most common use is a vertical incision along the vertebral border of the bone, from the superior to the inferior angle, joined by another along the whole length of the spine of the scapula as far as the tip of the acromion. This gives two triangular flaps which are dissected up and down. I personally prefer a somewhat I-shaped incision, the upper horizontal limb of which is longer than the lower and extends from the tip of the acromion to the superior angle of the scapula. The lower crosses the lower angle and is about four inches long. The mid-points of these two incisions are joined by an incision, which marks out two rectangular flaps which are dissected up inwards and outwards, and which expose the entire scapular area to view.

It is a great advantage to retain a portion of the acromion if this can be done with safety, but it is rarely advisable to do so since the bone is usually removed for a periosteal sarcoma. If a part of the acromion is to be left behind, it is divided at the desired spot with a saw or chisel, otherwise the incision extends right into the acromio-clavicular joint. When the operation is done for growth, the various muscles attached to the scapula must be removed as completely as possible; when this is not the case, however, they may be cut long. This is only really important as far as the deltoid and the trapezius are concerned; if they can be cut long they may be sutured together at the end of the operation with great advantage to the patient. The scapular muscles are of course not needed after the scapula has been removed.

After the flaps have been well reflected, the first muscle to be divided is the deltoid, beneath the fibres of which the fingers can be thrust so that the muscle may be hooked up and divided at its origin from the acromial spine, or its scapular fibres can be separated from the clavicular ones, and removed entirely down to their insertion. The tendons inserted into the upper end of the humerus are now cut through in order, beginning with the subscapularis and going on to divide the tendon of the biceps, the supraspinatus, the infraspinatus, and the teres minor. The insertion of the teres major will also have to be severed. The circumflex nerve must be preserved, if possible, but the dorsalis scapulæ

artery and perhaps the posterior circumflex will be exposed and should be ligatured at this stage.

The fingers are now passed beneath the fibres of the trapezius, which is lifted from the acromion, and its insertion into the spine of the scapula divided throughout. Beneath the anterior fibres of the muscle the acromial branches of the acromio-thoracic artery must be secured. This renders the borders of the scapula freely visible and the muscles which attach the bone to the trunk are then divided in regular order. Beginning along the upper border from the neck of the bone, the omohyoid will be detached and the suprascapular artery ligatured at the same time; then the levator anguli scapulæ will be cut away from the upper angle of the bone and the posterior scapular artery will be ligatured. This only leaves the rhomboids and the serratus magnus connecting the bone with the trunk, and these are divided in turn, the posterior scapular giving no trouble as it has been already divided. This separates the bone entirely, with the exception of the structures attached to the coracoid process and the front portions of the capsule of the shoulder-joint; the latter is easily divided, the finger being hooked round the neck of the scapula, which is pulled up so that the capsule is rendered prominent and can be divided. The soft parts are then pushed carefully away from the front of the neck and the under aspect of the coracoid process. This is the really difficult part of the operation, as the first part of the axillary artery and vein lie in close connexion with this structure. If the surgeon be doubtful of his ability to clear it without damaging these vessels, the coracoid process may be cut across at its base with a pair of cutting-pliers, and then dissected out. With care it is, however, easy to push the structures away sufficiently to render evident the tendons of the coraco-brachialis and the pectoralis minor, which are detached from the bone, and the latter is then removed.

The flaps are brought together, a large drainage tube is placed at the most dependent spot, and the dressings are firmly bandaged round the thorax so as to obliterate any space in which blood might collect.

Difficulties and dangers. If done as above described there will be little risk of bleeding, which is the chief danger in these operations. The great point is to secure perfect exposure of the parts, to divide the muscles *seriatim,* and to know where to look for the principal vessels.

Results. The results are excellent; the patient retains all movements of the limb, with the exception that he is unable to abduct the arm above a right angle from the trunk.

CHAPTER V

OPERATIONS UPON THE ANKLE-JOINT: OPERATIONS UPON THE TARSAL BONES AND JOINTS

ARTHROTOMY AND DRAINAGE OF THE ANKLE-JOINT

THE ankle is a difficult joint to drain effectively, since it is divided into two parts by the astragalus, which projects up into the tibio-fibular arch and separates the posterior sac between the tendo Achillis and the astragalus (talus) almost completely from the anterior one between that bone and the extensor tendons.

Indications. Fortunately suppuration in the ankle-joint is rare and drainage is not often required.

(i) *Acute suppurative arthritis,* either of pyæmic origin or due to acute infective osteomyelitis of the os calcis or the bones of the leg, will require the freest possible drainage.

(ii) *Compound fractures into the ankle-joint,* particularly the variety known as Pott's, are not infrequently followed by acute suppuration, since from the nature of the injury the wound may be contaminated with dirt which escapes the cleansing processes.

Operation. There are two chief methods for arthrotomy and drainage. Of these the simpler plan is to make free incisions on each side of the joint front and back, and to pass tubes through from side to side; this should succeed unless the infection be very virulent or the case be seen too late.

Simple arthrotomy. An incision is made behind the external malleolus, avoiding the sheaths of the peronei tendons, and the posterior ligament, which will be distended with the pus in the joint, is exposed and opened. Through this opening dressing forceps are passed across the back of the joint and made to project behind the inner malleolus; here the points are cut down upon and a drainage tube is pulled through from side to side across the back of the joint. In making this incision the tendon sheaths behind the inner ankle and the posterior tibial vessels and nerve must be avoided. The best way to do this is to dissect down with a blunt instrument after the skin has been divided until the points of the dressing forceps are reached. Similar incisions are next made in

the front of the joint and a drainage tube is drawn across from side to side in that situation. The tendon sheaths should not be opened and the dorsalis pedis must be avoided. The drainage through these tubes can be supplemented by continuous irrigation if desired.

Excision of the astragalus. In bad cases, however, it will be necessary to lay all the recesses of the joint into one large cavity if drainage is to be effectual, and this can only be done by excising the astragalus (talus). This method of treatment has been strongly advocated by Bolton (*Ann. of Surg.*, 1906, vol. xliv, p. 959); it is of course of drastic once since the utility of the foot must be permanently impaired by it, but it must not be forgotten that this will also probably be the case whenever there is suppuration in the ankle, and it is an open question whether the functions of the joint after excision of the astragalus are not better performed than after drainage followed by ankylosis with the foot in the right-angled position. In any case operation is imperative unless the temperature drops and the general conditions undergo amelioration after simple drainage practised as recommended above; no time must be lost, and the astragalus should be removed (see p. 51) as an alternative to amputation of the leg.

The wound must be left widely open, and it will be well to make a counter-opening on the inner side and insert a large tube. The large cavity left by the removal of the astragalus may be mopped out with a saturated solution of chloride of zinc, so as to hinder septic absorption from the freshly cut surfaces, and then lightly packed with strips of gauze for the first three days, after which the large drainage tubes alone will suffice. The chief care must be to keep the foot from becoming displaced on the leg.

ARTHROTOMY FOR THE TREATMENT OF FRACTURES INTO THE ANKLE-JOINT

Indications. (i) *Recent Pott's fracture.* In certain cases operative interference is required for recent Pott's fractures. These will comprise all compound fractures, and those simple forms in which reduction under an anæsthetic cannot be effected satisfactorily.

(ii) *Dupuytren's fracture or fractures of the astragalus* are frequently followed by such severe disability as to render operative interference imperative. Now that stereoscopic radiograms can show the exact displacement of fractures in this situation, immediate operation will probably be resorted to in future for all these cases, while it is comparatively easy to rectify displacements or to remove detached portions of bone which might otherwise give rise to much trouble and

possibly interfere with a satisfactory result from operation subsequently. Hitherto operation has been largely confined to cases of long standing, accompanied by great disability.

Operations for compound Pott's fracture. The seat of fracture and the ankle-joint should be fully exposed after the parts have been purified. The method of purification resembles that for compound fractures, being essentially thorough purification of the skin, after shutting off the joint cavity from the surface by means of a gauze plug, with subsequent removal or disinfection of soiled surfaces in the deeper structures. The wound, which is practically always on the inner side of the ankle, should be enlarged for the purpose of disinfection and exploration, and this gives the opportunity of discovering and removing soiled tissues both in the soft parts and the bone, and also enables the dislocation accompanying the fracture to be properly reduced and the fractured internal malleolus fastened in its normal position by means of tacks or a metal plate (see Vol. I, p. 707). Should the bone not be fractured, but only the internal lateral ligament torn, this structure should be sutured accurately. Provision must be made for drainage in case the purification of the soft parts does not suffice to prevent infection, but no opening should be left over the region of the fracture in the tibia if this can be avoided; the skin wound should be sewn up completely and a counter-opening for drainage made at a more dependent spot. If skin has been cut away in this region the raw surface that would otherwise be left may be covered by sliding a flap from the skin of the leg above. Healing will probably be more rapid if the seat of fracture about the malleolus and the mechanical fixation apparatus are covered with healthy skin.

Operations for simple recent Pott's fracture. Operative interference will be required when the surgeon cannot effect complete reduction of the dislocation under an anæsthetic. These cases are comparatively rare; they are generally due to the interposition of some structure between the bone surfaces, such, for instance, as the tendon of the tibialis posticus (posterior) or a portion of bone, generally a fragment of the internal malleolus or of the astragalus. This not only prevents reduction but interferes materially with the subsequent usefulness of the foot.

The objects of the operation will not be limited to getting the astragalus into position; the fractured surfaces of the tibia should also be fastened together. A good incision is a curved one with its concavity forward, commencing just in front of the inner border of the tibia, about two inches above the joint level, curving around the tip of the internal malleolus, and extending as far forward as the tubercle of the scaphoid (navicular). The incision is deepened down to the bone, taking care to avoid damage to the tendon of the tibialis posticus

(posterior), and the joint is opened through the fracture at the base of the internal malleolus, or, if that does not exist, through the ruptured internal lateral ligament. The parts are fully retracted and the cause of the difficulty in reduction is ascertained. Should this be the tendon of the tibialis posticus (posterior), this is hooked out of the way with a retractor, and the astragalus pushed into place. If it be a loose piece of bone, this is removed, if small, and the surface from which it has been detached is smoothed off with a gouge or burr; if large, it is re-attached to the surface from which it was broken.

The final stage of the operation consists in fastening the internal malleolus back into place or suturing the rent in the internal lateral ligament, according to which lesion is present. The wound is closed without a drainage tube, and the foot is put up at right angles to the leg in plaster of Paris, in a slightly inverted position, so as to relax all the structures on the inner side of the foot. The sutures are removed at the end of ten days, and passive movement and massage are begun, if necessary, under an anæsthetic within the first few days.

Operations for simple Pott's fracture of long standing are required when there is considerable deformity and disability, as the patient is frequently crippled and unable to follow his employment. The outward dislocation associated with this deformity throws the weight of the body upon the inner border of the foot and flattens its arch; this, combined with partial ankylosis of the joint, gives rise to much pain and disability.

The ankle-joint must be opened and an attempt made to restore the bones to their normal positions. A stereoscopic radiogram helps greatly to determine what the condition of affairs is, and therefore what procedure is most likely to be effectual. Not infrequently the inability to reduce the deformity is due to the internal malleolus having become deflected outwards and united to its base in that position. This will necessitate exposure of the joint from the inner side, through the incision recommended above, and detachment of the malleolus, after which attempts must be made to rectify the outward displacement of the astragalus. This may require re-fracture of the fibula in order to allow its lower end to be rotated upon the inferior tibio-fibular ligaments, so that the astragalus may carry with it the external lateral ligament and the tip of the malleolus as it is pushed inwards. If this can be done, the result will probably be satisfactory; it will be necessary to smooth down with a gouge any callus about the base of the malleolus and then to fasten the tip of that process in position with tacks or bone plates.

In many cases, however, this theoretically ideal operation cannot be performed, as the two articular surfaces will not work accurately

together, in spite of all attempts to make them do so. Under these circumstances there is the choice of two methods:—

(*a*) To pare down the articular surfaces until the astragalus rests in the tibio-fibular arch with the foot in its normal position, so that the patient can bear his weight upon the normal points of support. In order to do this, the fracture in the fibula will certainly have to be reproduced so as to allow the external malleolus to be pushed inwards into proper position. The bone surfaces that have been pared away to make the astragalus (talus) fit must be rendered as smooth as possible, and it is a good plan to fasten over the raw surfaces thus left a flap of the fatty structures from the immediate neighbourhood; this facilitates movement in the joint subsequently (see p. 5). The foot is put up strictly at right angles to the leg, and should be kept rigid for the first ten days, after which time careful movement may be begun; the greatest care must be taken to see that there is no lateral deflexion of the foot.

(*b*) The other alternative is to excise the astragalus (see p. 51). This operation gives a movable ankle but rather a weak joint in an adult; in children, in whom the functional results are excellent, these fractures rarely, if ever, occur.

Operations for fractures of the astragalus. The steps of the operation cannot be given in detail, as they depend so largely upon the condition of affairs present. The joint may be exposed through an internal or an external incision (see p. 51), or by both combined, and the subsequent steps are similar to those described for Pott's fracture. Detached portions of bone should be removed, if small, or fastened back into place, if large, and the most careful attempt should be made to restore the condition of the joint as accurately as possible. It may be necessary to excise the astragalus entirely (see p. 51).

ARTHRODESIS

Indications. Arthrodesis of the ankle-joint may be usefully employed in cases of advanced infantile paralysis in which all the muscles around the joint are paralysed, giving rise to a flail-limb that is unable to bear the patient's weight. By means of apparatus it will of course be possible to prevent the joint from collapsing when weight is put upon it, but this is cumbrous and expensive, and may prove too much for the patient's strength, especially when there is also paralysis of some of the muscles moving the knee. Under these circumstances a more useful limb can be obtained if the ankle-joint be steadied by producing ankylosis.

Operation. The joint may be opened by the lateral incisions described below (see p. 51), but in these cases it is quicker to open the joint by a transverse incision across the front, dividing some, or if necessary all, of the extensor tendons. The muscles moving these are paralysed, and they are therefore useless, but if desired, it is easy to identify and suture them at the end of the operation. The anterior route gives better access, and it is important in these cases to remove the cartilage as completely as possible; this is done with a chisel or gouge, which clears the articular surfaces of the tibio-fibular arch, the malleoli, and the astragalus as completely as possible. The bony surfaces are then put back into apposition, the wound and the divided tendons are sutured, and the limb is put up in plaster of Paris with the foot strictly at right angles to the leg. The stitches are removed in ten days' time and an immovable plaster casing is then put on; it should be worn for nearly six months after the operation.

Results. The chief difficulty is to obtain firm bony union. Fibrous union is obtained in many cases, and when bony union does occur it may be extremely slow.

EXCISION OF THE ANKLE-JOINT

True excision of the ankle as distinct from excision of the astragalus on the one hand and arthrotomy for fractures on the other is never performed save for tuberculous disease. By the term is meant complete removal of the articular surfaces, both bony and synovial; this will be dealt with by Mr. Stiles.

OPERATIONS UPON THE TARSAL BONES AND JOINTS

EXCISION OF THE ASTRAGALUS

Indications. Excision of the astragalus (talus) alone is fairly often done, although it is most frequently practised as a part of the modern form of excision of the ankle. Apart from excision it may be done:—

(i) *In cases of injury.* These may be either severe comminution of the bone or such extensive contamination of it with dirt that there is no hope of avoiding sepsis otherwise.

(ii) *In extreme talipes equinus following infantile paralysis.* Here the pointing of the foot gradually protrudes the astragalus from the tibio-fibular arch, with the result that the bone becomes too broad in front to enable it to be returned beneath it when the tendo Achillis is divided; in order to get the foot at right angles to the leg the astragalus must

either be removed or so cut down as to allow it to pass into position. As these cases are usually met with in children in whom the functional results of removal of the astragalus are extremely good, it is better to remove the bone than to pare it down.

(iii) *In cases of extreme congenital talipes varus.* In order to overcome the extreme deformity it may be necessary to remove the astragalus (talus), after which the foot can be got into good position.

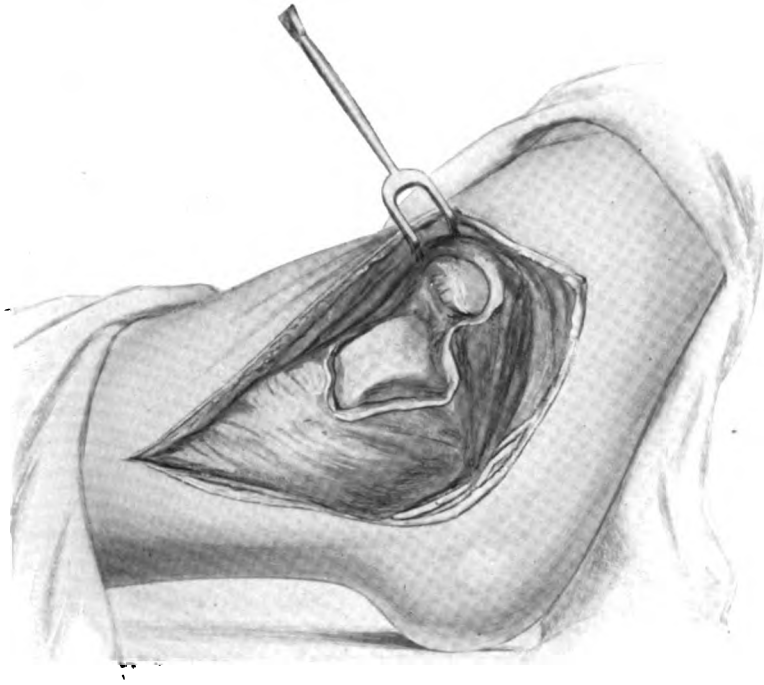


FIG. 18. INCISION FOR EXCISION OF THE ASTRAGALUS. The peronei tendons have been divided by an oblique section. The ankle-joint has been opened as well as the astragalo-scaphoid joint.

Operation. The incision that I have used most frequently for the above conditions is a crescentic one over the outer ankle, commencing immediately behind the fibula two and a half inches above the tip of the external malleolus, extending down to the tip of that structure and forwards along the outer aspect of the foot as far as the prominence on the base of the fifth metatarsal (see Fig. 18). This incision is deepened, and the structures in front of it are dissected up for a short distance in the form of a flap. The foot is now plantar-flexed and everted in order to

relax the peronei tendons, which are then separated from the back of the fibula, turned out of their groove beneath the external malleolus, and entrusted to an assistant, who keeps them out of danger beneath a hook. This may be very difficult, and a much easier plan is to divide the tendons by an oblique section and suture them at the end of the operation. The external lateral ligament is divided and the incision carried forwards so

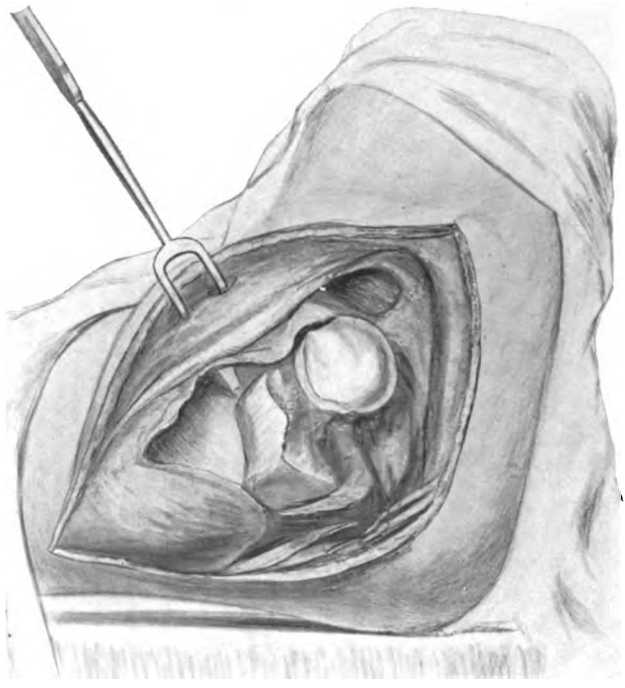


FIG. 19. EXPOSURE OF THE ASTRAGALUS. The head of the bone has been separated from the scaphoid and the interosseus ligament has been divided.

as to expose the head of the astragalus (talus) and open the joint between it and the scaphoid (navicular). In order to do this the foot is forcibly inverted and the toes bent inwards. When the astragalo-scaphoid (talo-navicular) joint has been opened, the point of the knife can be passed along the under surface of the former bone and made to divide the interosseous ligament between the astragalus (talus) and the os calcis (calcaneus), when the former bone can be made to start up prominently in the wound by further inverting the foot, which is dislocated inwards almost completely (see Fig. 19). The head of the astragalus (talus) is

seized in lion forceps, and a few touches of the knife will remove it altogether (see Fig. 20).

The os calcis (calcaneus) is then brought up against the malleoli, and in young children will fit fairly well without much risk of dislocation. In adults, however, the projection of the sustentaculum tali makes the bone too broad to fit beneath the malleoli, and it is well, therefore, to pare down the articular surfaces so as to make them fit. A portion may be

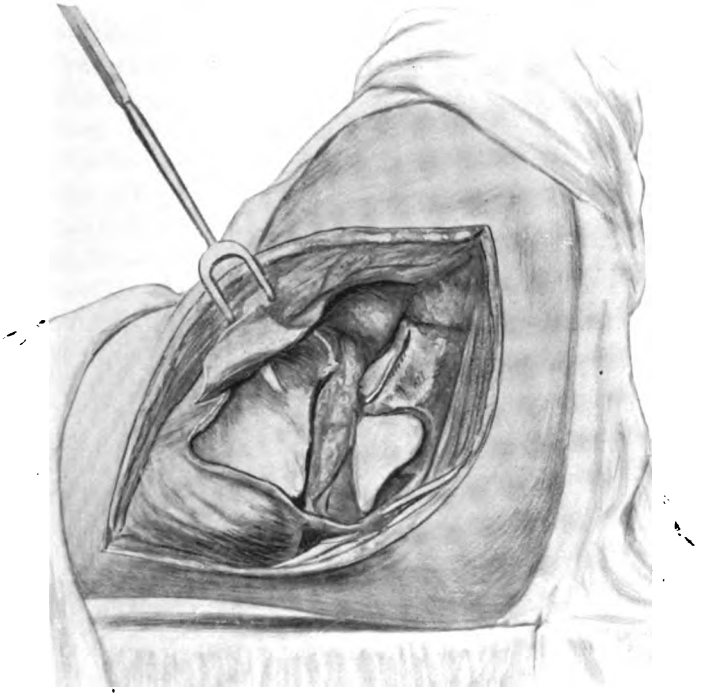


FIG. 20. REMOVAL OF THE ASTRAGALUS. The articular surfaces of the tibia and the os calcis are seen, as well as the divided interosseous membrane.

taken off each side of the os calcis (calcaneus), and the articular surfaces of the malleoli may also be cut away, but the whole of the sustentaculum tali should not be removed, as it is required for the support of the tibialis posticus (posterior) tendon passing beneath it.

The wound is closed without a drainage tube, and the limb should be put up in a plaster of Paris casing; there must be no lateral deflexion of the foot, which should be at right angles to the limb. Throughout the after-treatment the most important point is to see that no lateral displacement of the foot occurs, and for this purpose a plaster of Paris

casing strengthened with metal at the sides should be used for the first three months, followed later on by an apparatus with lateral irons and a hinge at the ankle-joint. This will have to be worn for nearly two years in the case of a child; an adult will probably have to wear it for a much longer period.

Excellent results follow the simpler method of excising the bone after dividing the extensor tendons, and the operation is preferred by some to the one described above. A large flap is made upon the front of the ankle with its convexity downwards towards the toes. The incision reaches from one malleolus to the other, and its lowest point is on a level with the tubercle of the scaphoid. All the tendons are divided over the front of the joint, and the dorsalis pedis artery and the anterior tibial nerve are cut across and the ankle-joint opened from the front. This gives very free access to the astragalus, which is first freed from its attachments to the lateral ligaments of the ankle-joint and then from the scaphoid (navicular) in front. In order to remove the bone it is then only necessary to divide its connexions with the os calcis (calcaneus). The ends of the extensor tendons are identified and united at the end of the operation; speedy union occurs in aseptic cases and there is no loss of power on this account.

EXCISION OF THE OS CALCIS

Indications. (i) *For tuberculous disease.* The operations for this condition will be described by Mr. Stiles.

(ii) *For injury.* Severe comminuted fractures of the os calcis (calcaneus), especially when they are compound, will require an operation in order to secure the best results. This, however, will usually be only a partial excision.

(iii) *For new growths of the bone.* In the majority of cases an amputation of the foot will be the safer procedure, but in innocent tumours and in myelomata the bone may be excised and the progress of affairs watched.

Operation. The operation is difficult, owing partly to the want of elasticity in the cutaneous structures, but chiefly to the difficulty of dissecting out the sustentaculum tali. A good method of gaining free access to the bone is by making a vertical incision along the outer edge of the tendo Achillis, beginning an inch and a half above the upper edge of the os calcis (calcaneus) and reaching down to just above the outer margin of the sole. A second incision is carried at right angles to the first, horizontally round the back of the heel and along the outer border of the foot, from a point a finger's breadth behind the internal malleolus to the tuberosity of the fifth metatarsal bone.

This incision gives two large flaps, of which the upper is dissected off the posterior and outer aspects of the os calcis first. In doing this the tendo Achillis is divided above, the external lateral ligament on the outer aspect of the bone, and the ligaments of the calcaneo-cuboid joint in front. The lower or plantar flap is now raised as far as the flexibility of the skin permits, and then the foot is firmly inverted, the peronei tendons are hooked out of the way, and the calcaneo-astragaloid (talo-calcaneal) joint is opened and the firm interosseous ligament divided. The remaining ligaments of the calcaneo-cuboid joint are cut through, and all that remains to be done is to sever the attachments of the bone on the inner side. In order to do this in the easiest way the foot must be very forcibly inverted and the tendon of the tibialis posticus (posterior) looked for as it passes under the sustentaculum tali in its special groove. It is raised from this and held out of the way with a hook. When this has been done, the knife is passed along the inner side of the bone from end to end, dividing the internal lateral ligament of the ankle and the ligaments connecting the os calcis (calcaneus) and astragalus (talus) on the inner side. A few touches of the knife then complete the removal of the bone.

A drainage tube should be inserted in the large and irregular cavity thus made. The cavity soon shrinks up, and the patient can walk well upon the heel provided that a small pad be placed beneath it. The stump is quite sound in about six weeks.

CHAPTER VI

OPERATIONS UPON THE KNEE-JOINT

REMOVAL OF DISPLACED SEMILUNAR CARTILAGES

Indications. In cases of recurrent displacement of the semilunar cartilage operation is now a safe and easy way of putting an end to a troublesome and often crippling affection. For a first or even a second attack it is not necessary to operate, since careful massage and suitable movements will often bring about a permanent cure; should the displacement recur in spite of this, however, early operation is indicated, since by it the displaced cartilage (which is practically always the internal one) can be removed and subsequent attacks prevented. The functions of the joint are unimpaired after removal of the cartilage, provided that this be done before the affection has lasted long enough for the recurrent inflammatory attacks to set up chronic changes in the joint resembling those of osteo-arthritis; in such cases removal of the cartilage will not necessarily be followed by complete restoration of the functions of the joint.

Operation. Various incisions may be used to expose the inner tuberosity of the tibia, along the upper border of which lies the cartilage. This should be felt for carefully before the skin incision is made, and the examination should be repeated before the capsule is opened by putting the finger on the joint and flexing and extending it. It is easy to mistake the level of the knee-joint, and, although this is not of much importance in other operations on the knee, in this particular one the difference of a quarter of an inch in the level of the incision in the capsule changes the operation from a simple to a difficult one.

In this operation, as in all of those upon the knee-joint, the limb should be purified from mid-thigh to mid-calf and wrapped up securely in sterilized cloths so that the assistant's hands cannot come into contact with unsterilized parts during the manipulations of the leg that may be necessary during the operation.

The surgeon faces the inner side of the knee, which should be semi-flexed and outwardly rotated. He makes an incision exposing the upper border of the inner tuberosity of the tibia from the inner margin of the ligamentum patellæ backwards to the junction of the inner with the

posterior surface of the tibia. A very useful incision for this purpose is a crescentic one with its convexity forwards. This gives a flap which can be extended backwards by prolonging the horns of the incision if necessary; the advantage of this is that the skin incision does not lie over that in the capsule. Before raising the flap small cuts or scratches may be made across the incision so as to identify the corresponding points when the flap has to be sutured at the end of the operation, by which time its outline will have become somewhat altered. If preferred, however, a transverse or a vertical incision may be made. The vertical incision is parallel to the vessels and nerves of the limb and so saves them from injury, but it is rather difficult to get proper exposure through it unless it be very long, and a second incision posterior to the first may be required in order to get at the cartilage satisfactorily.

The flap is dissected back and the capsule of the joint over the inner condyle exposed. After all bleeding points have been ligatured, the capsule is opened by a horizontal incision parallel to and about a quarter of an inch above the upper margin of the inner tuberosity of the tibia, which should be carefully defined by the finger; the capsule only should be divided and not the synovial membrane. There is often free bleeding from the articular arteries in doing this, and this should be checked before proceeding further. The synovial membrane which is thus exposed is caught up with fine-toothed forceps and snipped through with scissors in order to open the articular cavity, and the incision is enlarged sufficiently to give a good view into the joint.

The condition of the internal semilunar cartilage can now be made out by retracting the edges of the wound in the capsule; the limb will have to be flexed rather acutely to display the front of the joint well. Various lesions of the cartilage, such as detachment from its insertion or transverse or longitudinal ruptures, partial or entire, may be met with; but these are of little importance, since the only effective method of treatment is to remove as much of the cartilage as can be got at through the incision in the capsule.

In order to remove the cartilage, its convex edge, which will have been torn away from the head of the tibia by the accident, is seized in catch forceps, and the cartilage is raised and, if necessary, separated from its lateral attachments so that a pair of fine curved scissors can be slipped round its anterior extremity and made to divide its attachment in front, if that has not already been separated by the original injury. This is seized in forceps and the back part of the cartilage is put upon the stretch, freed by scissors, and divided as far back in the joint as the scissors can reach. The whole operation can be done without any further interference with the joint than the introduction of the scissors into it. Very little

bleeding accompanies the intra-articular part of the operation; it is easily stopped by douching the joint with hot saline solution. Some surgeons make a point of removing the entire cartilage, but this is a much more difficult matter, and, as far as my experience goes, is not necessary. The simplest way of doing it is to make a second small incision in the capsule just behind the condyle and to divide the posterior end of the cartilage through that, as it would weaken the joint unduly to divide the capsule and the internal lateral ligament over the whole of the cartilage.

When all bleeding has been arrested, a fine catgut suture unites the cut edges of the synovial membrane. A somewhat stouter one sutures the capsule, after which the skin wound is brought together with a separate suture. Outside the dressing the joint is enveloped in a thick mass of wool, bandaged on firmly so as to exert an elastic compression which will prevent effusion and restrict movement. No splint is needed; the knee is slightly flexed and the limb is elevated upon a comfortable pillow.

After-treatment. The patient may move his limb inside the dressing if he desires to do so. After a week a lighter dressing may be substituted and the patient encouraged to move the limb more freely. The sutures are removed on the tenth or twelfth day, and vigorous active and passive movements should then be employed. Perfect use of the limb should be regained within three weeks from the operation.

Difficulties and dangers. The chief danger is *sepsis*, the risk of which cannot be over-estimated. No one should perform this operation who is not confident of commanding complete asepsis throughout. Should sepsis occur, the joint must be opened immediately and drained freely (see p. 60). Another danger is *hæmorrhage* into the joint at the close of the operation, which may easily happen unless the surgeon be careful to secure every bleeding point as he goes on. It is always best to apply a ligature to all of these, as very slight bleeding in the joint may give rise to anxiety as to the progress of the case and a definite retardation in convalescence; the patient may be left with a distended capsule, for which prolonged treatment may be required. It is sometimes difficult to find the displaced cartilage; this generally results from incising the capsule too high above the cartilage. In order to get properly at the cartilage the joint has then to be opened unduly freely, and some weakness of the capsule may result. The best way to avoid this is to palpate the parts well while the joint is being moved after the skin incision has been made. The sharp edge of the tibia is unmistakable and will guide the surgeon to the right spot.

It occasionally happens that the joint remains weak for some little time after the operation. This is only likely to occur when the patient

has had recurrent attacks for a long time before seeking surgical aid. The interior of the joint at this stage will show a widely thickened and inflamed synovial membrane, and this condition may persist for a considerable time after removal of the exciting cause. In these cases massage and exercises designed to strengthen the thigh muscles and thereby tighten up the capsule are most beneficial.

ARTHROTOMY AND DRAINAGE

Indications. The knee-joint rarely requires to be drained for any affection other than suppurative arthritis. It has been proposed to incise and drain the knee-joint as treatment for gonorrhœal or simple acute rheumatism, with the view of relieving tension, alleviating pain, and promoting restoration of function more rapidly than can be done by non-operative measures. The only experience that I have in this direction is in connexion with gonorrhœal rheumatism. On five occasions I have incised freely a knee-joint which was acutely distended as the result of gonorrhœal arthritis, and in all the cases the relief of pain was very striking. In four out of the five the swelling had subsided completely within six weeks, and the functions of the joint were left unimpaired. In the remaining case the synovial membrane remained thickened for three months after the wound had healed.

Operation. The knee is a difficult joint to drain, and drastic measures have been proposed in order to effect this. In early days a large drainage tube was passed through the joint from side to side beneath the patella. A useful improvement upon this was the plan of effecting drainage by continuous irrigation, while more recently the late Mr. Harold Barnard (*Clin. Soc. Trans.*, vol. xxxvi, p. 150) proposed a very thorough drainage scheme for this complex joint. The most radical method is excision of the articular surfaces so as to open up the joint cavity and to obliterate most of its recesses. This method can hardly be recommended at the present day, however. Its chief result will be to open up large areas of cancellous bone to septic infection. A better plan would be to adopt the line of treatment suggested and practised by Mr. Eve (*loc. sup. cit.*), who cut across the front of the joint, divided the patella, and flexed the knee fully so as to expose the recesses of the joint. Such a method must of course result in a stiff limb, and nothing but the desperate state of the patient would justify recourse to it. It is hardly likely that such extreme measures would be called for when infection has followed a surgical operation, such as removal of a semilunar cartilage, or wiring of the patella. Here the surgeon would be alive to the nature of the case very early, and less radical

measures should suffice to secure recovery with a more or less movable limb. It may therefore be advisable to divide the operations for drainage of the joint into two groups: those in which the infection is slight, *e.g.* those in which the infection follows a surgical operation, and those in which the infection is severe, as in neglected cases of injury to the joint, or those accompanying infection from acute infective osteomyelitis.

In cases of mild infection. These probably form the majority of cases met with in practice at the present day, and good results may be looked for if the treatment be undertaken early enough and be sufficiently thorough. Effective drainage may be obtained by opening the joint by two free vertical incisions, each about a finger's breadth from the edge of the patella and reaching from the level of its lower margin to a full inch above its upper border. This exposes the front and lateral aspects of the joint fully, and enables the surgeon to inspect the interior and to ascertain the extent of the subcrural pouch above the patella, whereby he can judge whether it is necessary to employ direct drainage of this space. If so, a pair of dressing forceps is thrust from one of the lateral wounds to the upper limit of the pouch and its points are cut down upon through the skin in the middle line; a large drainage tube is drawn through from this opening in the skin and made to project through one of the lateral incisions, generally the inner one. In the majority of cases it is well to drain the outer side of the joint also, and this can be done by passing down a pair of sinus forceps over the outer condyle to the lowest limit of the joint and thrusting them through the capsule in that situation. An incision is made through the skin over the points of the forceps and a drainage tube introduced from behind into the outer recess of the joint. In doing this care must be taken to divide only the skin with the knife, otherwise the external popliteal nerve may be endangered. A large tube is passed across the front of the joint from the inner to the outer incision beneath the patella, and the joint cavity can be drained freely in this manner in the majority of cases. The tubes can be arranged so as to permit of continuous irrigation of the joint, the fluid being run into the joint through the tube above the patella or through one end of the tube passing across the front of the joint. Before the first dressings are applied the whole of the interior of the joint should be flushed out freely with sterilized salt solution.

In cases of acute infection. In the cases suited for the preceding operation the infection is mainly in the front and lateral aspects of the joint, but in the more severe ones there is a tendency for the posterior sacs to be acutely infected, and it is difficult to drain these from the front. The late Mr. Barnard (*loc. sup. cit.*) drew attention to the importance

of these synovial sacs which contain the corresponding condyle. They lie between the head of the gastrocnemius and the bone, and the outer pouch sends a prolongation along the popliteus. He strongly advocated separate incisions for the drainage of each of these sacs. On the inner side the prominent inner condyle can be cut down upon when the limb is extended and forceps, carrying a drainage tube, can be introduced into the joint. On the outer side a vertical incision should be made between the biceps tendon and the outer head of the gastrocnemius just behind the external popliteal nerve, going through skin only. The capsule of the joint over the condyle is exposed with a blunt dissector, incised, and a drainage tube inserted. In addition to these incisions, drainage of the front of the joint should be effected by vertical incisions on either side of the patella and a median one above it for draining the subcrural pouch. Mr. Barnard noted the frequency with which pus under pressure spurted out from the outer posterior pouch when it was incised.

After-treatment. The dressings require to be changed frequently, and it is a good plan to employ peroxide of hydrogen (10 vols. per cent.) at each dressing. As the discharge diminishes, the drainage tubes are gradually shortened and finally withdrawn. Passive movement is begun as early as possible, the limb meanwhile being kept upon a splint in order to prevent the contraction which the powerful hamstring muscles would otherwise produce. The most important point in the after-treatment is to keep the patella from becoming adherent to the front of the condyles, and this must therefore be moved freely at each dressing. It is remarkable that excellent functional results have been obtained in this manner even after the most severe infection.

REPAIR OF THE CRUCIAL LIGAMENTS

This operation is a very rare one, and has, as far as my knowledge goes, only been performed once (Mayo Robson, *Clin. Soc. Trans.*, vol. xxxvi, p. 92). The joint was opened by a curved incision across the front, dividing the ligamentum patellæ about its middle. Both the crucial ligaments had been torn from their upper attachments and had to be stitched in position with catgut sutures. The anterior ligament was fastened to the synovial membrane and adjacent tissues on the inner side of the external condyle; the posterior had to be split in order to lengthen it, and was fastened by sutures to the synovial membrane and cartilage on the outer side of the inner condyle. The patient made an uneventful recovery with perfect use of his limb. He was seen six years after the operation, when the abnormal mobility present before the operation had been entirely lost, and there was no interference with

movement except some limitation of flexion, the knee becoming fixed when it was flexed just beyond a right angle. There was fine creaking felt in the joint on movement, and the patient said it was more liable to pain in damp and cold weather.

This operation seems worthy of being added to the list of recognized surgical operations, since the injury is by no means as uncommon as might be thought. I have recently seen two cases resulting from severe hunting accidents in which, however, the degree of disability was not extreme enough to demand operative interference in a well-to-do patient. The description of the above case, however, shows that in those who follow laborious occupations the operation has a definite field of usefulness. The patient operated upon by Mr. Mayo Robson was a miner and followed his occupation from the time of his discharge from the Leeds Infirmary without any trouble.

REMOVAL OF THE SYNOVIAL MEMBRANE OF THE KNEE

Indications. The joint is frequently opened for the removal of diseased synovial membrane. As a rule, however, this affection is tuberculous, and the operation for this condition does not fall within the scope of the present article and is dealt with by Mr. Stiles.

The synovial membrane, however, or a considerable part of it, may not infrequently have to be removed for other reasons. Thus it may become hypertrophied and covered with papillary outgrowths, which give rise to so much inconvenience in locomotion as to call for active surgical interference. This affection may be diffused over almost the whole of the synovial membrane, or it may be limited to a few spots, generally in the neighbourhood of the inner condyle and the margin of the patella. This condition is apparently distinct from the ordinary osteo-arthritis. Occasionally the joint is opened for the removal of osteophytic outgrowths or polypoid masses of synovial membrane occurring in osteo-arthritis and acting as a mechanical obstruction to movement.

Operation. As a rule it is well to open the joint by a free incision, and for this purpose none is better than a long vertical incision about a finger's breadth to the inner side of the patella. This gives admirable access to the whole of the inner side and most of the anterior part of the joint, and the synovial membrane can be dissected out with ease and accuracy. Should it be deemed necessary, a similar incision can be added on the outer side of the patella, and any portion of the affected synovial membrane on the front of the joint that cannot be reached from the inner wound may be removed from that.

It is needless to say that the most scrupulous attention must be paid to disinfection of the skin. The whole of the joint must be purified carefully front and back, and the limb above and below securely wrapped up in sterilized towels, as it will be necessary to move the joint frequently during the course of the operation. It is well to raise the skin as a flap, so that the incision in it does not lie directly over the incision in the capsule. The steps of this part of the operation are similar to those for removal of a displaced semilunar cartilage (see p. 56).

When the joint has been incised, its interior is inspected and the particular portion of the synovial membrane that has to be removed is identified. This patch should then be marked out by carrying an incision around it with the knife or scissors, and the whole thickness of that part of the synovial membrane should be dissected off. This is generally effected best with blunt-pointed scissors, which serve both as cutting and dissecting instruments. An attempt should be made to remove the affected area in one mass, however large may be the extent of synovial membrane that has to be removed. After removal, all bleeding points are ligatured with fine catgut, and any oozing is stopped by douching the joint freely with sterilized salt solution at a temperature of 115° F. When all the bleeding has ceased, the incision in the joint is closed accurately, the capsule being united by a separate fine continuous catgut suture; no drainage tube is employed. The dressing should consist of a roll of gauze, which is wound round the limb so as to prevent swelling from extravasation of blood. No splint is required.

After-treatment. The patient is encouraged to bend his knee from the first, and massage and passive movements should be employed, beginning at the end of the first week. When the stitches are removed, the massage should be vigorous and the patient should be encouraged to walk at as early a date as possible.

Results. The results of some of these cases are really remarkable. I have on several occasions removed almost the whole of the excisable portion of the synovial membrane for a papillary non-tuberculous synovitis which had resisted all previous treatment for many months, and was the source of complete incapacity to the patient. The pain and swelling were not only cured, but perfect movement in the limb resulted without any difficulty whatever and without any necessity for the use of passive movements under an anæsthetic. With complete asepsis and the use of non-irritating lotions the most extensive raw surfaces may be left in contact within the joint without impairing movement.

OPERATIONS FOR INTRA-ARTICULAR FRACTURES

Although strictly speaking operation for the fixation of a fracture about the lower extremity of the femur is practically always in the nature of an arthrotomy in that the joint is always incised, yet as a rule the operation itself is performed mainly outside the joint, and the chief interest in the case centres in the approximation of the fragments rather than the technique of the joint surgery. Occasionally it may be necessary to open the joint freely for the treatment of a fracture of the spine of the tibia, in which case the operation will be very similar to that for suture of the crucial ligaments (see p. 61). A very important fracture involving the knee-joint is that of the patella, the operations for which it will be well to consider here.

OPERATIONS FOR FRACTURE OF THE PATELLA

There are several operations for fracture of the patella, all of which have for their object the close approximation and fixation of the fragments so that true bony union shall result.

Indications. Much difference of opinion has occurred during the last twenty years as to the indications for operative interference in fractures of the patella. Even at the present day there are still surgeons who consider that the age of the patient and his occupation should influence the question whether an operation should be done or not. Neither the age of the patient nor his occupation should determine the question. The only points of real importance are the nature of the fracture and the patient's ability to undergo any ordinary operation.

In a fit subject for operation, any fracture of the patella, either recent or of long standing, which is of the transverse variety and is accompanied by separation of the fragments should be operated upon, as this condition of affairs inevitably ends in fibrous union and probably in considerable disability of the joint. The stellate or longitudinal fractures which are readily differentiated by the X-rays, and which are not accompanied by any marked separation of the fragments, are excluded from this category; in them excellent bony union usually results without operation.

As the steps of the operation, and to some extent its results, differ somewhat according to whether the operation is done for recent cases or those of long standing, these two groups will be described separately.

OPERATIONS FOR RECENT FRACTURES

Before discussing the methods by which a fractured patella may be united, it is important to consider the question of *when to operate.* Some difference of opinion still exists upon this point, but the tendency is in favour of early, if not immediate, operation. It would appear reasonable that the sooner the joint is opened, the blood cleared out of it, and all bleeding points secured the better; moreover, the sooner the broken ends are brought into apposition the more accurately they fit, and this to some extent makes the operation easier, as the surgeon sees exactly what he has to do, and his view is not obscured by the blood-clot which clings very tenaciously to the fractured surfaces when the injury is a few days old. It was formerly thought that sepsis was more likely to occur if operations were carried out immediately after receipt of the injury; this was attributed partly to the inflammatory reaction following the injury, and partly to the difficulty of securing perfect asepsis of the skin. While it is now recognized that the first objection has no foundation in fact, the second one, namely, the difficulty of securing asepsis, may be of importance in certain cases. The skin over the front of the knee is rough, thick, and, in labouring men, often deeply ingrained with dirt, so that it may be a matter of extreme difficulty to get it into a condition approaching that of sterility, except after prolonged saturation of the superficial layers of the epidermis with antiseptics so that they can be actually scraped off and the surface beneath purified. Personally, it is my invariable custom to operate upon all these cases as soon after they are seen as is convenient, but in the case of a labouring man whose skin is thick and dirty there is no objection to postponing the operation for two or three days, so that in the meantime cleansing methods may have a fair chance. The old rule, however, of leaving the case for ten days or a fortnight until most of the effusion has become absorbed should not be followed. This is a bad rule, as it allows coagulation of the effused blood to take place and the clot to become so closely adherent to the broken bone and the torn synovial membrane that it is difficult to remove it without doing more damage to the delicate articular structures than the joint should be exposed to.

In preparing the limb for operation it should be shaved from mid-leg to mid-thigh and thoroughly scrubbed with ether soap, followed by 1 in 20 carbolic lotion, which has a considerable power of penetrating epidermis. A compress of sterilized gauze, wet with 1–2,000 sublimate solution, should then be bandaged over the knee and kept from evaporating by gutta-percha tissue placed outside. This forms a wet dressing,

which is removed in six hours, and the skin again scrubbed with ether soap and hot water, followed by another application of the wet 1–2,000 sublimate dressing, and a final purification with ether soap and 1–500 sublimate solution is carried out just before the operation. This method of purification applies to ordinary cases; in labouring men with dirty horny skin it should be repeated every eight hours until the operation takes place, and it should be done at least three times.

Operation. The only operation of which I have personal experience is that rendered classical by Lord Lister. I have always found it give such excellent results that I have never been tempted to practise any other.

Lord Lister's method. The surgeon and his assistants should wear gloves, and all instruments, sponges, &c., should be wrung out of sterilized salt solution. As little interference with the structures of the joint as possible should be permitted, and everything should be done with the greatest gentleness.

The best *incision* is a semilunar one, with its convexity upwards and its extremities on a somewhat lower level than the fracture. The left thumb and forefinger are placed on either side of the patella at a distance of about three-quarters of an inch from its margin and about half an inch below the level of the fracture, and between these two points the convex incision is marked out, its upper limit reaching just to the upper border of the patella. This gives a flap the cicatrix of which is nowhere exposed to pressure. In order to facilitate accurate suture of the flap at the end of the operation I always make two or three small cross cuts when marking out the incision at the commencement of the operation, so that the corresponding points on the two sides of the incision can be easily recognized when the flap has to be sewn up. The flap is turned down by a few touches of the knife; it rarely requires much dissection, as the first incision usually opens into the distended prepatellar bursa, which communicates with the fracture; a few small vessels will require clamping. The turned-down flap is covered with gauze while the fracture is inspected; this usually occurs about the junction of the lower with the middle third of the bone, and is prolonged on either side as a considerable rupture of the capsular ligament. As it is important to get a good view of the interior of the joint in order to wash out clot and effect accurate coaptation, the capsule should be incised on either side if the fracture of the patella has not already ruptured it.

The next step is to wash away all blood and clot from the fractured surfaces and the surrounding tissues, and to see how many pieces the patella is split into; it not infrequently happens that the lower fragment

is split up into two or more portions. All bleeding points should be secured, and before drilling the bone the surgeon determines whether he will put in one or two wires, and how thick the wire shall be. When the fracture is a simple transverse one, consisting merely of an upper and lower fragment, the latter being of reasonable size, I have always found

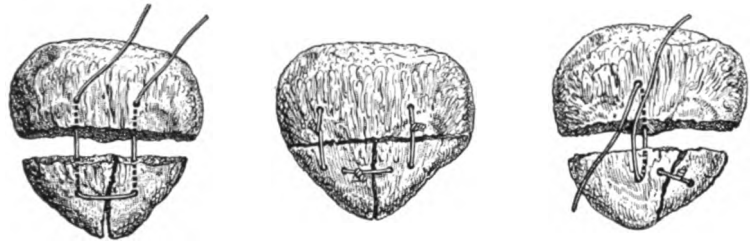


FIG. 21. METHODS OF INSERTING SUTURES IN COMMINUTED FRACTURES OF THE PATELLA. A shows a mattress suture applied so as to approximate three fragments. B shows the same fragments secured by three separate sutures, while C shows a good method when only a small portion is chipped off the lower fragment. Here the larger one is approximated by the usual stout median wire and the small portion is united to it by a fine lateral one.

it sufficient to use a single median wire of gauge No. 5 (French catheter scale).

When, however, the patella is split into three fragments, it may be necessary to use more than one wire. A simple method of fastening three fragments together by one wire is by means of a mattress suture

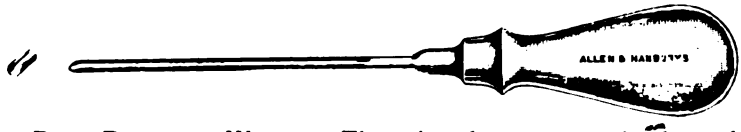


FIG. 22. BONE DRILL FOR WIRING. There is a large groove in the end of the drill which serves as a guide for the passage of the wire (see Fig. 23).

(see Fig. 21), which takes a secure hold on all three. Occasionally it may be necessary to use three sutures (see Fig. 21), a fine wire to join the lower fragments together and two stouter ones to join the united lower ones to the upper. In either of these cases the wire used need only be of gauge 4, as the strain upon it will not be so great as when a single median wire is employed.

Drilling the bone is best done by means of an electrically driven drill, as the high speed at which the drill runs enables it to penetrate the fragments with the least amount of damage to the joint structures and the least application of force; the surgeon is, therefore, able to direct the shaft of his drill more accurately and with less chance of deflexion.

The most difficult part of the operation lies in drilling the fragments so as to make the drill-holes correspond exactly to one another on the fractured surface. If a hand-drill be used Fig. 22 shows the usual pattern. The bone is drilled from its anterior surface to the fracture. Before doing this, it is advisable to make a small incision through the soft parts covering the bone, and to push them away from the spot at which the drill will enter and from which the end of the wire will have to emerge; it is convenient to keep the edges of this little cut apart by catch-

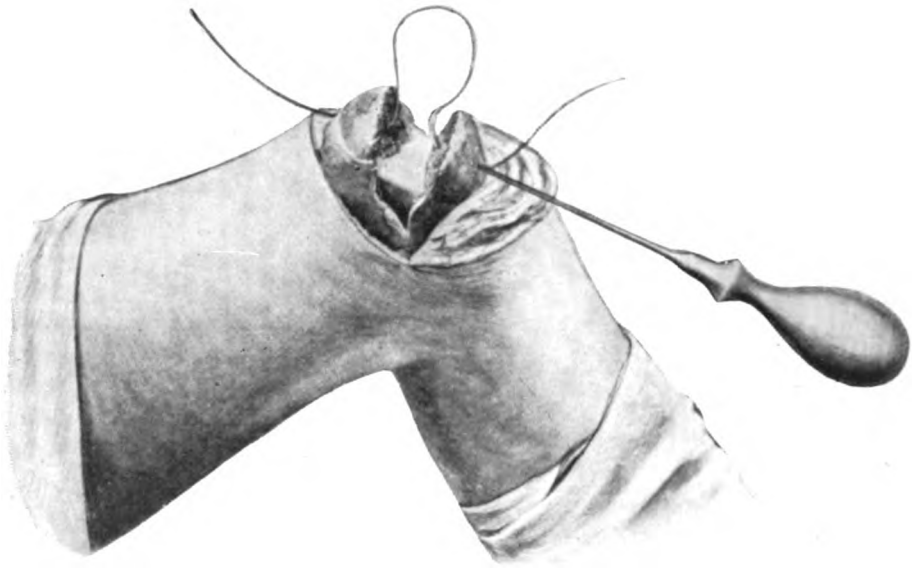


FIG. 23. PASSING THE WIRE IN FRACTURE OF THE PATELLA. The loop into which the wire is bent is shown. The wire is being guided through the lower fragment along the groove of the drill.

ing them in forceps. Unless this be done, the end of the wire as it emerges from the hole in the bone may be caught in the soft tissues and burrow its way through them for some distance without emerging directly.

The drill is made to penetrate the upper fragment first and passes from its anterior aspect to the fractured surface. It is entered nearly half an inch above the line of fracture and emerges from the fractured surface just in front of the articular cartilage (see Fig. 23). The lower fragment is drilled in a similar manner, the drill being entered on the anterior surface of the bone as near its apex as possible and made to

appear on the fractured surface exactly opposite the hole in the upper fragment and just in front of the articular cartilage. The wire passing through the fragments, therefore, will be outside the articular cavity.

After a little practice it is easy to make the two holes on the fractured surfaces correspond, but for a beginner a simple way of ensuring regularity is to drill the lower fragment first in the manner described above and then to bring the lower fragment into careful apposition while the drill remains *in situ;* if the drill be pushed on slightly, a depression is marked on the fractured surface of the upper fragment. The drill is then withdrawn from the lower fragment and entered at the puncture thus made on the fractured surface of the upper fragment and made to penetrate the fragment from below upwards instead of from above downwards as just described.

When introducing the wire certain precautions are necessary to ensure a good result. A portion of the wire about one foot long is carefully unrolled and straightened, and one end cut somewhat obliquely with cutting-pliers. Great care must be taken to avoid kinking, as a kink in stout wire of this sort is almost impossible to obliterate without removing the wire entirely. In order to introduce the wire, therefore, the portion to be used is made quite straight and one end is introduced through the upper fragment from its anterior aspect and made to emerge through the opening on the fractured surface. The fragment is rotated so that this surface looks well upwards, and the wire is pulled through until only about four inches remains projecting from the anterior surface of the patella. The remainder of the wire is then bent into an easy curve so that it can be carried through the lower fragment from the fractured surface to the anterior aspect (see Fig. 23). If the grooved hand-drill (see Fig. 22) be employed this may be used to guide the wire as it emerges from the front of the lower fragment.

When wire has been passed, its ends are grasped in suitable forceps and firm traction is made upon them in opposite directions. This straightens out the wire and allows an assistant to push the two fragments threaded upon it closely together; when they have been made to meet, the ends of the wire are brought together, twisted round in two complete twists over the upper fragment (see Fig. 24), and the ends cut short with cutting-pliers. The section of the wire should be very oblique, and the ends are hammered down with a fine punch so that they are buried beneath the soft tissues over the front of the patella; a small slit should be made for their reception. If this be done carefully the ends will be buried effectually, and it is unlikely that the wire will require removal subsequently.

All that now remains to be done is to bring together with catgut

sutures the rent in the capsule on either side of the fracture and the torn fibrous tissues over the front of the bone. The knee is dressed with gauze loosely rolled around the limb from below upwards so as to exercise a certain amount of compression, but not too much, and outside this is applied a large amount of wool bound on fairly tightly so as to exert good elastic compression and to act to some extent as a splint. No splint is required; it is sufficient to restrain any involuntary movement of the limb

FIG. 24. TWISTING THE WIRE IN FRACTURE OF THE PATELLA. The fragments have been pushed together along the wire.

by the use of sand-bags for the first few hours. Two or three pillows should be placed beneath the limb so that the hip is flexed at an angle of about twenty degrees.

After-treatment. The patient is not discouraged from moving the leg in bed if he desires to do so; he will probably keep it rigidly stiff for the first week, after which he will gradually attempt some movements; he should be encouraged to do this more and more, so that after the first ten days he will be able to effect a fair amount of flexion. The wound need not be inspected until the end of the first week, when a collodion dressing may be applied and the wool around the limb diminished, in order to allow the patient to move the limb more freely. The stitches

may be removed on the tenth day, and the patient may get up between the tenth and fourteenth day. From the fourteenth day onwards I have always been in the habit of allowing my patients to get about with the aid of a stick, trusting entirely to the wire to retain the fragments in position. The patients readily regain the use of the limb, and usually

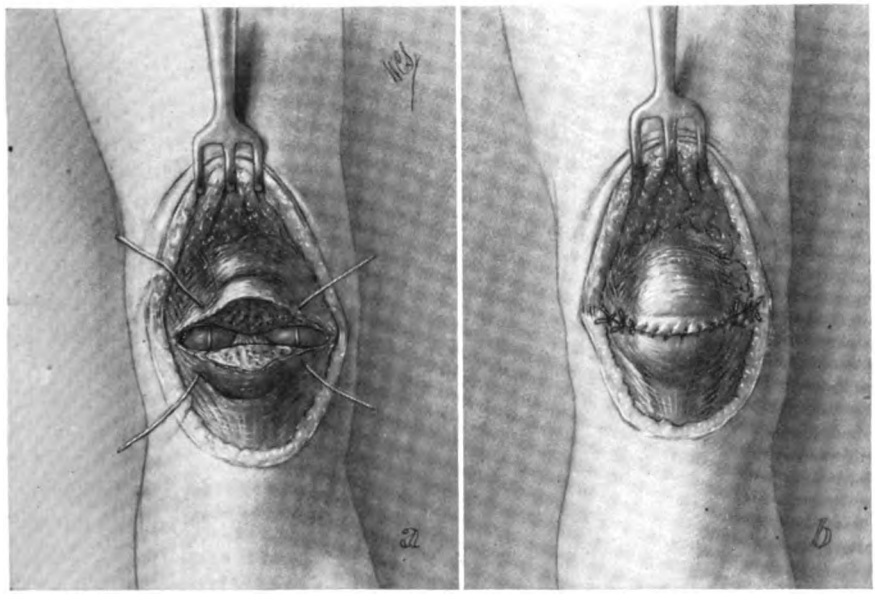


FIG. 25. SUTURING THE LATERAL CAPSULE FOR FRACTURE OF THE PATELLA. A represents the lateral tension sutures being placed through the capsule at the side of the patella. The second row of sutures shown in B represents bilateral sutures and running suture suturing the periosteum and fibrous tissue over the patella.

are walking about quite well without any artificial aid at the end of a month from the operation. It is a good plan, however, to have them fitted for the first six weeks or so after the operation with an apparatus that does not allow more than twenty degrees of flexion, so as to prevent any sudden strain from stumbling, &c.

Suture of the Lateral Capsule for Fracture of the Patella. When a simple transverse fracture of the patella exists there is always a tear in the lateral ligaments on either side of the knee-joint. The length of the tear depends upon the amount of separation of the two fragments of the patella. When the edges of the torn ligament are approximated, the fragments of the patella will of necessity be brought into position, thus

making it unnecessary to use any suture in the substance of the patella. This method of treatment is common among American surgeons.

Technic. A curved incision is made with the convexity downward. The incision is carried from a point lying just below the condyles of the femur, the lower portion of the convexity being well below the lower border of the patella when in position. A flap is dissected upward, care being taken to avoid injury to the blood-supply. As this flap is dissected upward, the tear in the soft tissues and the fracture line of the patella will come into view. The blood clots in the joint are carefully removed, preferably with tissue forceps or wiped out with soft wet sponges to avoid trauma to the articular surfaces of the joint. The edges of the torn lateral capsule are brought into view, and if ragged the contused parts should be trimmed away with a pair of scissors.

A strong suture either of kangaroo tendon or heavy chromicized catgut is passed through the lateral capsule on either side of the patella. Each suture closely hugs the lateral surface of the patella and includes both the upper and lower margins of the torn lateral capsule (see Fig. 25). When these two sutures are tied, thus closing the patellar end of the tear in the lateral capsule on either side, the fragments of the patella will be brought into close approximation. The remaining portion of the torn lateral capsule on either side is sutured with strong catgut (see Fig. 25). Under certain conditions it is possible to dissect back some of the aponeurosis lying on the dorsum of the patella and this may now be sutured, thus aiding in the fixation and approximation of the patella. The skin wound is now closed with running locked silk stitch and a dressing applied. A posterior moulded splint immobilizes the part until the patient has fully recovered from his anæsthetic.

Passive motion of the joint may be instituted within three or four days, care being taken to avoid overaction with a possible tearing of the sutured capsule.

OPERATIONS FOR FRACTURES OF LONG STANDING

Indications. Surgical interference in fractures of the patella of long standing is only practised to overcome disability of the limb. There are three principal classes of cases in which operation may be called for:

(i) Cases of *re-fracture of the patella after previous wiring.* These may be looked upon as practically recent fractures.

(ii) Cases marked by *a wide gap between the fragments* filled in with fibrous tissue. This condition is not uncommon after non-operative treatment, and in such cases the gap may either be very wide from the first, or the union, which at first was close and satisfactory, may gradually stretch owing to the inability of the fibrous union to bear the strain

put upon it. The mere size of the gap between the fragments is not necessarily any criterion as to the necessity for operation or not; the important point is the functional value of the limb. In considering the question of whether to operate on cases of long-standing fracture of the patella, it is important to remember that, quite apart from the question of sepsis, the operation is by no means as easy as it is in the recent cases, and that therefore, in a patient of fairly advanced years with a wide gap between the fragments but a fairly useful limb, it may be a rash procedure to interfere, since the amount of permanent shortening of the muscles present renders the after-treatment necessarily long and the prognosis somewhat uncertain.

(iii) Cases in which the gap between the fragments, although slight, shows distinct evidence of *widening*. Unless the patient be too advanced in years, it is best to interfere at once in these cases and unite the fractured surfaces in the hope of getting firm bony union. The results of operation at this period are more satisfactory than when further stretching has taken place.

Operation. The steps of the operation are exactly similar to those for recent fractures up to the exposure of the fragments. In cases of long standing, changes will have occurred in the fractured surfaces which will interfere with the process of union if they are simply placed in apposition; the bone surfaces require to be refreshed by cutting a thin slice from each fragment with a chisel or saw. If the conditions allow of it these surfaces should be cut at right angles to the long axis of the bone; in any case the two surfaces should be parallel to one another. The fragments are then drilled as described above (see p. 67). It is here that the greatest care is required, as the bone is soft and fatty owing to non-use, and too much traction upon the wires will make them cut their way out of the bone. One way of avoiding this very unpleasant accident is to make use of a mattress suture, as originally suggested by Sir Hector Cameron, and this is an excellent method when the size of the fragments allows (see Fig. 21). The contraction of the quadriceps must also be overcome and reduced to a minimum, and this may offer so great a resistance that it may even be necessary to divide its tendon partially. Before any attempt is made to draw the fragments together it is important to see that the upper fragment is freely mobile. The finger is passed between it and the condyles of the femur, and any adhesions are broken down so that the bone moves freely and can be pulled down. The assistant then extends the knee fully and flexes the extended limb upon the pelvis so as to relax the quadriceps to the utmost. The surgeon takes one fragment in each hand and pushes them together forcibly until they come into contact. If this can be done it will be safe to pass a wire in

the ordinary manner; the steps of this are identical with those for recent fractures (see p. 67). If, however, the fragments will not come together satisfactorily in spite of manœuvres of this sort, the surgeon has to make his choice of measures designed for still further relaxation. Three methods are open to him:—

(*a*) Division of the quadriceps extensor tendon.

(*b*) Division and lengthening of the quadriceps muscle.

(*c*) Approximation of the fragments in two stages.

Of these, division of the quadriceps extensor tendon is of very slight value as, in order for it to be effective, the patella must be cut away from its attachments very freely, and its blood-supply and consequently the union of the fragments are thereby seriously endangered. Lengthening the quadriceps muscle gives a more satisfactory result, and may perhaps be the method of choice when the patient is young and the muscular development is good. In elderly subjects, however, it is somewhat difficult to get proper restoration of muscular power after the somewhat weak muscles have been divided.

Another suggested method is to chip off the tubercle and the attachment of the ligamentum patellæ to the tibia, and thus displace the lower fragments upwards and lessen the gap. This operation is more fascinating in theory than useful in practice, and gives very little gain.

For the majority of cases the approximation of the fragments in two stages, as proposed and practised by Lord Lister, is on the whole the soundest in principle and in practice. His description of it, quoted from the *British Medical Journal*, 1908, vol. i, p. 849, is as follows:—

Realizing that a method practised by M. Lucas-Championnière, who, finding himself unable to approximate the fragments, contented himself with connecting them with a long wire and left the wire in position, was open to objections as a permanent arrangement, Lord Lister determined to adopt it as a temporary expedient in order to stretch the quadriceps, and, when the stretching had been brought about, he operated a second time and brought the fragments together. The case he describes is that of a woman who had sustained a fracture of both patellæ four years previously. There were five inches of separation on the left side and the upper fragment was very small. On the right side, however, the upper fragment was of good size and the separation less, and the following operation was performed on it:—

'I made two short longitudinal incisions (A B and C D) over the two fragments (shown in dotted line) (see Fig. 26), and having exposed them by a little dissection, drilled two holes in the upper one, and passed through them, from without inwards, the ends of a piece of the usual stout silver wire, so that, when the ends were pulled upon, the middle

of the loop of wire would press upon the surface of the fragment (see Fig. 26 A).

'Next, passing into the lower incision a blunt instrument (a broad raspatory), I detached from the front of the femur the soft parts lying between the incisions, consisting, of course, only of skin and fat, as the muscle was absent at that part. Then passing a strong pair of forceps from the lower incision under the skin till their blades appeared in the upper incision, I seized the ends of the wire and drew them down into the lower incision. I then drilled two holes in the lower fragment and

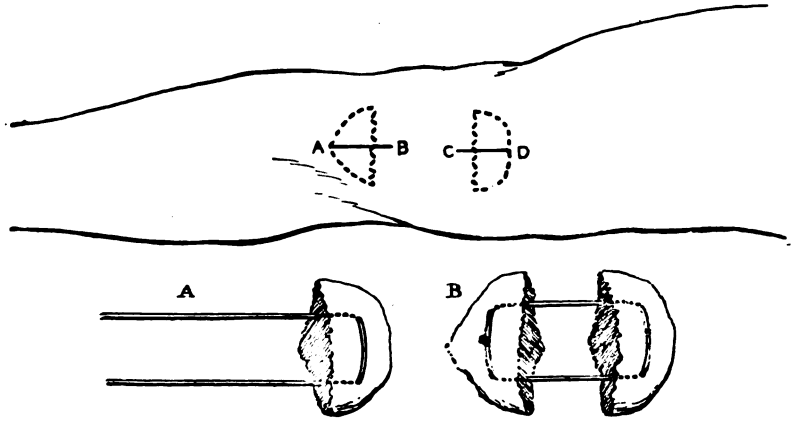


FIG. 26. LORD LISTER'S OPERATION FOR UNION OF A FRACTURE OF THE PATELLA OF LONG STANDING WITH WIDE SEPARATION OF THE FRAGMENTS.

passed the ends of the wire through them from within outwards, and, after drawing the upper fragment well down, secured them in the usual way and cut the ends short. The immediate result, so far as the fragments were concerned, is indicated in this diagram (see Fig. 26 B). The incisions in the skin were then brought together by sutures and a dressing (the double cyanide gauze) applied.

'In drawing down the upper fragment I found a great advantage from the use of a very strong sharp hook, the point of which was inserted in the tendon of the quadriceps at its attachment. By this means I was able to exert much greater traction upon the bone than can be done by simply pulling upon the wire; and, in order to relax the quadriceps as much as possible, the limb was placed in the vertical position before the fragment was pulled down. The dressing having been put on, a trough of Gooch's splint was applied to the limb still in the elevated position, and the same attitude was maintained as the patient was removed to the ward, and continued by attaching the end of the splint to a rope

connected with the tripod and pulley used in applying Sayre's plaster of Paris jacket. This position of the limb did not cause the patient material inconvenience, and after two or three days the rope was slackened a little so as to allow the end of the splint to come down every two days or so, till the limb could be placed quite horizontal.

'This preliminary operation is of the simplest character, no paring of the broken surfaces being done at this stage, and there being almost no bleeding and no shock. The wound having healed (I need hardly say without suppuration), the patient was allowed to leave her bed, and left the hospital soon after to practise using the limb.

'Before long she was readmitted, and the second operation was performed. The lower cicatrix was opened and the wire removed, and two interrupted wire sutures placed in the tracks of the previous continued one: the fragments, of course, being this time pared to clear them of fibrous tissue of new formation and produce smooth surfaces for coaptation. This was all satisfactorily effected, though not without the use of the powerful hook and the vertical position of the limb. The result was restoration of the use of the joint in a manner so satisfactory that I determined to try the same procedure in the other limb. The only difference which I made in this case was that, as the upper fragment was too small to bear drilling, I passed the ends of the wire, in dealing with that fragment, through the tendon of the quadriceps just above the upper border of the bone: the lower fragment, which was, of course, very substantial, being drilled as in the other limb. By this means, aided by the vertical position of the limb and the hook, I was able to bring down the upper fragment very satisfactorily, so much so that I did not feel it needful to have the patient use the limb in walking before proceeding to the second operation, but did this before she left her bed, soon after the wounds had healed. In the second operation I applied two interrupted sutures, passing them, as in the first operation, through the track in tendon and bone which the first wire had occupied.'

After-treatment. The after-treatment of all these cases, whatever be the operation, is similar; it consists in securing at first the maximum relaxation of the quadriceps extensor by fully extending the knee-joint and flexing the extended limb upon the pelvis at an angle of 45° or less. The flexed position is maintained for a fortnight or longer, but it is relieved by gradually lowering the limb every two days by a few degrees until, at the end of the fortnight, it lies flat on the bed. Massage should then be begun and carefully practised for another ten days, at the end of which time cautious passive movements may be performed, but flexion must be very carefully carried out, as otherwise the tension upon the wires may be too great. The patella should, however, be kept from

adhering to the condyles of the femur by moving this bone from side to side repeatedly, and these movements may be practised from the time that the wound has healed.

EXCISION OF THE KNEE

Indications. By excision of the knee is meant removal of the articular ends of the bone with or without the entire synovial membrane. The operation may be required for several conditions:

(i) *For tuberculous disease.* This is by far the most important condition for which excision of the knee is done. Operations for tuberculous disease of the joints, however, do not fall into the scope of this article and are dealt with by Mr. Stiles.

(ii) *For injury.* A true set excision of the knee is very rarely indeed performed for injury at the present day. Operative interference in cases of compound fracture involving the knee now takes a much more conservative form. If mechanical fixation of the fragments is deemed impossible or inadvisable the operative measures will probably be limited to removal of small portions of bone, followed by strenuous attempts to preserve the movements of the joint, which of course would be entirely lost after a set excision of the knee on account of the firm bony ankylosis that follows it.

(iii) *For ankylosis in a faulty position.* When the knee has become firmly ankylosed, either in the flexed or the hyper-extended position, the deformity will call for rectification, and this will generally take the form of an excision. The milder forms of these deformities may be remedied by a linear osteotomy, but as a rule the deformity is so great that an excision of the joint, which in reality, however, is a cuneiform osteotomy, will be required before the deformity can be satisfactorily remedied. It must be noted that excision necessarily involves the epiphyseal line in these cases, and therefore the operation should not be undertaken in those who are much under the age of twenty-one.

(iv) *For arthrodesis.* This operation (see p. 6) is very useful in many situations. In the knee, however, it is open to the serious objection that, although it gives a firm basis of support, a stiff leg is very objectionable to many and, except when a patient's means or vocation render the operation essential, some form of apparatus will probably be preferred.

(v) *For intractable suppurative arthritis.* This has been given as an indication for excision of the knee for many years. It seems, however, one of the worst possible methods of treatment for such a serious affection. Although excision may open up the joint cavity effectually and

render its recesses accessible, yet it exposes a patient already gravely ill to the serious risk of infection of the large cancellous bone surfaces by virulent organisms, and it is hardly surprising that a high mortality has attended these cases in the past. Unless arthrotomy and drainage (see p. 59) are successful in bringing down the temperature and relieving the symptoms amputation should be preferred.

Operation. The chief question in excision of the knee for affections other than tuberculous disease is the best method of obtaining access to the articular ends of the bones. Clearly this is by a transverse incision across the joint over the middle of the patella, followed by division of that bone, and this is the best plan if there be no objection to division of the patella. When the operation is done in order to secure ankylosis it is immaterial whether the patella be divided or not, and therefore in the operation for arthrodesis it will be best to open the joint by this transverse incision, sawing across the patella. When operating for ankylosis in a faulty position, also, this incision will be the best. In cases of injury, however, the patella should not be divided unless this step will greatly facilitate the work, since the necessary wiring of the patella afterwards may add in some degree to the tendency to ankylosis when a movable joint is desired. In these cases of excision or partial excision for injury arthroplasty (see p. 5) may be usefully employed.

FIG. 27. INCISION FOR EXCISION OF THE KNEE.

When the patella is to be preserved intact, a curved incision (see Fig. 27) extending from the back of one condyle to the corresponding point on the back of the other is made across the front of the knee. The surgeon stands somewhat to the right of and facing the knee, which is flexed at an angle of 135°. He places his left thumb and middle finger upon the two points mentioned above, and carries his knife over the front of the joint in a bold sweep with its convexity downwards, crossing the ligamentum patellæ close to its insertion into the tubercle of the tibia. This incision is carried down to the deep fascia all round and the patella is raised in the large U-shaped flap thus marked out. This may

be done either by cutting across the ligamentum patellæ about its centre and dissecting it and the patella up after opening the knee-joint, or by chiselling off the insertion of the ligament into the tuberosity of the tibia. On the whole the latter method is probably preferable, as it ensures firmer union subsequently, since the bony surfaces unite readily when replaced in contact, whereas the tendinous structures are more difficult to unite satisfactorily. The patella and the flap are raised together, the capsule of the point being opened freely right back to the posterior limits of the incision. As this is done the assistant bends the knee and renders the articular surfaces visible. There is often free bleeding from the articular arteries, which, however, is easily controlled either by pressure forceps or by under-running and tying the bleeding points with fine catgut. The subsequent steps of the operation will vary with the condition for which the operation is being performed.

(i) **In cases of excision for injury** two courses are open. The first is to excise the articular surfaces in the orthodox manner so as to leave large surfaces which subsequently become firmly united by bone, giving the patient a stiff but strong leg.

Extensive removal of the articular surfaces. In order to do this the crucial ligaments are divided, which allows the tibia to be separated from the femur and the lower end of the latter bone to be projected from the wound. A few touches of the knife divide the remnants of the lateral ligaments and clear the end of the femur for the application of the saw. The posterior ligament, with the popliteal vessels behind it, is pushed back out of the way and is protected by a spatula which is passed in behind the bones.

The saw is applied parallel to the transverse plane of the condyles, and, in order to make the section through the shaft from front to back in the right direction, it is held so that the plane of its blade corresponds with the transverse plane of the long axis of the leg when the joint is at an angle of 135° (see Fig. 28). The amount of bone removed will vary according to the affection for which the excision is done. The less taken away the better, since the shortening is thereby minimized. It is never necessary to apply the saw high enough to remove the entire cartilaginous surface on the front of the femur.

The head of the tibia is now cleared, the leg being held vertical with the sole of the foot planted firmly upon the table. It is only necessary to clear the extreme top of the tibia so as to cut a level surface; this will remove most of the cartilage together with the semilunar cartilages and the projecting spine of the tibia. The structures behind the knee-joint are not endangered in this part of the operation, as they are at some distance from the posterior margin of the articular surface. The

FIG. 28. SAWING THE CONDYLES OF THE FEMUR IN EXCISION OF THE KNEE. The retractor guards the soft parts at the back of the joint from injury.

saw is applied from before backwards, and its blade is held strictly horizontal (see Fig. 29). If the bone section has been made accurately

FIG. 29. SAWING THE TIBIA IN EXCISION OF THE KNEE. The sole of the foot rests flat upon the operating table.

the cut surfaces should fit exactly when applied together, giving the knee a slight inclination inwards.

The wound is now closed, but previous to doing this many surgeons

are accustomed to fasten the bone ends together by some mechanical means, such as wires, pegs, pins, or screws. There is no objection to using any of these means should it be thought desirable. The only reason that can be urged against them is that they are not necessary and there is a possibility of their having to be removed at some later date. I never use them and have never experienced any need for them. If the limb be put up accurately and immovably on a splint there is no risk of displacement, and bony union takes place rapidly and satisfactorily.

Various splints are employed; I prefer a roll of Gooch's splinting in which the limb is wedged with suitable pads. An excellent method is

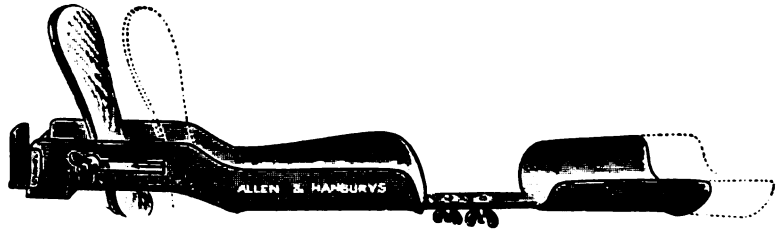


FIG. 30. HOWSE'S EXCISION SPLINT. The splint is of metal and can be sterilized. The narrow posterior bar lies behind the popliteal space, so that the region of the operation can be inspected without removing the splint. The latter may be fixed on by means of plaster of Paris or waxed bandages.

to employ Howse's excision splint (see Fig. 30), in which the limb can be fixed firmly and need not be disturbed for dressings. A similar splint can be made by placing a malleable iron bar along the middle line of the popliteal surface and incorporating its ends in plaster of Paris bandages which surround the ankle and leg up to the middle of the calf below and the upper two-thirds of the thigh above. This leaves the whole area of the operation exposed for the change of dressings. At the present day, however, this is of slight importance, as the dressings can be left undisturbed for three weeks, when the sutures may be removed without any risk of displacing the bone surfaces.

Union follows the usual course and the patient should be able to walk on the limb comfortably in six weeks.

The use of the Esmarch bandage is frequently advocated for this operation. I have no hesitation, however, in strongly condemning its use. It is essential for success that all bleeding shall have ceased when the limb is put up, so that there may be no collection of blood beneath the skin, no drainage tube employed, and no chance of sepsis. If the Esmarch bandage be employed, the oozing after its removal is persistent and difficult to stop. It has been advised that firm pressure by means

of a bandage drawn as tightly as possible over a large mass of wool and dressing should be applied before the Esmarch is removed, so as to check the bleeding by pressure. This plan is not advisable; however efficient it may be in checking serious bleeding a certain amount of blood must necessarily be extravasated into the soft parts, and all recent experience shows the risk of sepsis from such a procedure. When no tourniquet is used the bleeding vessels can be caught up and tied as they are met with, and a dry wound at the end of the operation is thereby assured.

When only a portion of the articular surface is to be removed the chief aim will be to retain the movements of the knee. As little of the bone as possible is removed, the gouge and chisel being used in such a way as to leave the raw surfaces of bone quite smooth and of such shape as to interfere least with movement. In order to prevent union between the raw bone surfaces some method of arthroplasty (see p. 5) may well be adopted. A flap of sufficient size, with a wide base so as to secure proper nourishment and containing as large a proportion of fat as possible, is fashioned if possible from the extra-articular structures, turned in over the raw surfaces, and fastened by fine sutures to any suitable adjacent structures. Throughout the operation the object should be to damage the joint structures as little as possible. The joint is closed as after simple arthrotomy (see p. 4), and the limb should not be put up on a splint; a firm mass of dressing should be applied to check synovial effusion, and the patient should be encouraged to move the limb.

Gentle attempts at passive movement may be made from the first, but after the fourth or fifth day it will be well to commence regular movement under anæsthesia. This will probably have to be repeated about twice a week for some time, but great pains should be taken to promote movement. Massage and passive and active movements should be practised freely and frequently.

(ii) **Excision for arthrodesis** does not require so extensive a removal of bone, as the object of the operation is to secure a stiff joint with the least amount of shortening. This can be done by merely removing the cartilage from the articular surfaces with a broad chisel or gouge. The joint is opened by a trans-patellar incision and the latter bone is sawn across. This gives good exposure of the joint, so that it may be possible to remove the cartilage without dividing the crucial ligaments, which is an advantage, as it prevents dislocation backwards of the tibia upon the femur; this, however, is not of great importance, since most of the muscles are paralysed in the cases for which arthrodesis is done and will therefore have little influence.

The cartilage should be removed from the under surfaces of each

condyle with a broad chisel; some amount of bone must be taken away also in order to get a sufficiently large bony area to unite with that of the tibia. It is also well to remove all the cartilage from the patella and from its articular facet on the front of the femur. The posterior ligament is not interfered with, nor are the posterior fibres of the lateral ligaments. The two halves of the patella are united by two moderately stout catgut sutures at the end of the operation; these are sufficiently strong for the purpose, as there is no tendency to separation of the fragments owing to the paralysis for which the operation is done. The limb should be put up in the extended position in a plaster of Paris splint, which may be applied either immediately after the operation or as soon as the sutures have been removed. The tendency in these cases is for non-union to occur, and the limb may have to be kept in a rigid casing for many weeks.

(iii) **Excision for ankylosis in a faulty position.** A transverse incision should be made across the prominent angle of the deformity, and the patella divided if it be adherent to the bone. If, however, the patella be even partially movable, the incision should run below the bone and the ligamentum patellæ should be detached from its insertion into the tibia, the patella being turned upwards in the flap.

When the operation is done in young children the union between the bones will rarely be entirely bony, and it will often be possible to divide it with a chisel or knife, aided by forcible flexion of the limb. This greatly facilitates the operation, as the operator can clear the articular ends and can see exactly how much bone should be removed; the operation is also simplified, because the structures in the popliteal space can be then effectually protected from injury. No attempt should be made to straighten the limb forcibly after the ankylosis has been broken down; such a procedure is likely to end disastrously to the structures in the popliteal space, which are often shortened and adherent in their new position. Enough bone must therefore be removed in order to allow the limb to be straightened without stretching them unduly. To do this it will probably be necessary to encroach upon the epiphyseal line of the femur, and therefore, as has already been pointed out, this operation should not be undertaken in young children or in any one under the age of eighteen. The subsequent steps of this form of the operation are exactly similar to those just described. Occasionally it may be possible to straighten the limb after removing so little bone that it will be worth while to attempt to obtain a movable joint by means of arthroplasty (see p. 5).

When the ankylosis is completely bony it will be necessary to do a cuneiform osteotomy and remove a wedge from the knee with its base forwards. The difficulty in this part of the operation is to avoid damag-

ing the structures in the popliteal space, either when dividing the bone or when straightening the limb subsequently. The bone should be exposed by a transverse incision across the most convex part of the limb. The patella should be sawn across if it lies beneath the incision, and in any case should be removed entirely. The seat of ankylosis should be bared completely so as to allow the surgeon to estimate the amount of bone that must be removed. In case of any doubt on this point it is well to remove less than is actually necessary, as it is easy to remove more towards the end of the operation with perfect safety. In order to guard the structures in the popliteal space the soft parts are separated from the bone just around the lateral margins of the tibia opposite the point at which the apex of the wedge is to be situated, and a narrow spatula is inserted along the posterior surface of the bone on each side between it and the soft parts. The bone can now be sawn without risk of damaging the popliteal structures, since the spatula protects the soft parts laterally and the bone will fracture before the section is complete. When this has happened there is no further risk to the structures in the popliteal space, as the soft parts can be pushed back from the bone with rapidity and safety. The opposite side of the wedge is then sawn through and the desired portion of bone is removed. The limb is cautiously straightened, and if the surfaces then fit without any projection backwards in the popliteal space or tension on the posterior ligament the wound is closed and the case is treated as an ordinary excision (see p. 82). If, however, there be a projection of osteophytic outgrowths backward into the popliteal space these must be carefully trimmed away. If there be any undue tension on the structures behind, more bones must be removed until a perfect fit is obtained.

ARTHROPLASTY (MURPHY)

The usual preparations are made. An Esmarch constrictor is placed around the thigh high up. Two incisions are made, one on the inner, the other on the outer surface of the knee, parallel to the long axis of the limb (see Fig. 31). Each of these incisions is about 5 inches in length and extends 3½ inches above and 1½ inches below the point where the new joint is to be made. These incisions pass through the skin and fat down to the fascia. The wound margins are retracted and the skin freed sufficiently to expose the field of operation.

Next the interposing flaps are prepared, the outer one including a portion of the vastus externus and such portion of the capsule and ligaments as may be present on the outer side of the knee. The inner one is made up of a portion of the vastus internus and the capsule and

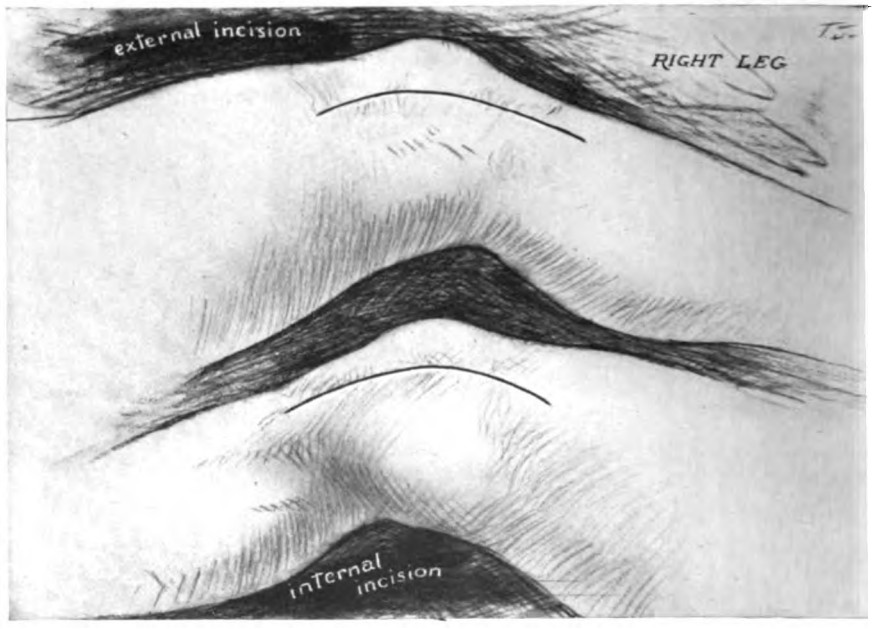


FIG. 31. INCISION IN ARTHROPLASTY OF KNEE. (*Murphy.*)

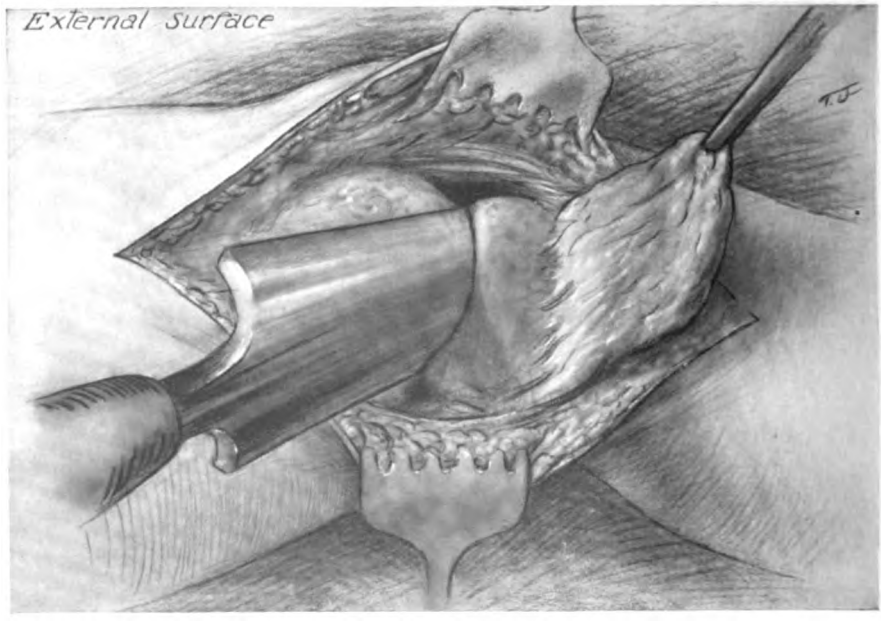


FIG. 32. FREEING TIBIA FROM FEMUR WITH CURVED CHISEL. Interposing flap prepared. (*Murphy.*)

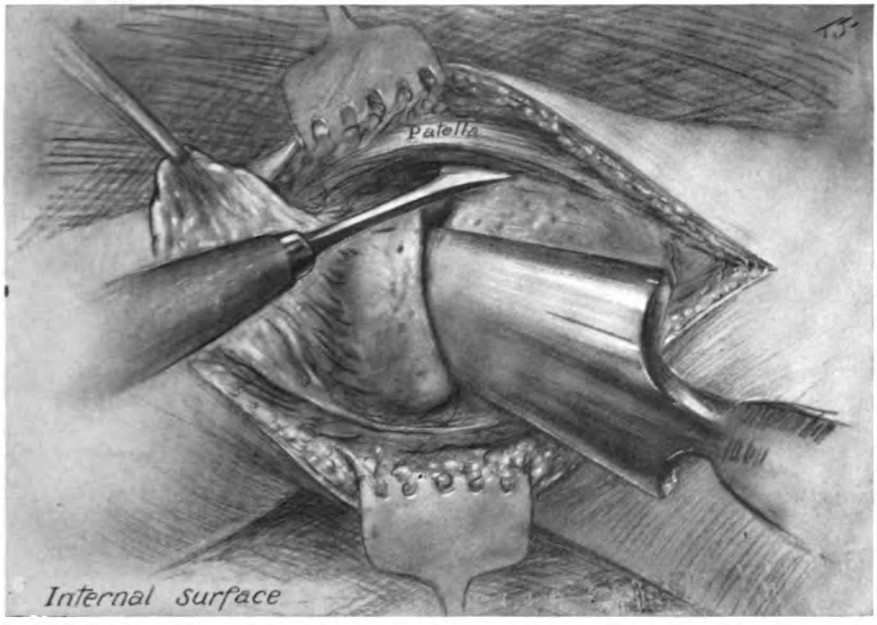


FIG. 33. FREEING ANKYLOSED PATELLA FROM FEMUR WITH 'ARTIST' CHISEL. Interposing flap prepared. Freeing tibia from femur with curved chisel. (*Murphy.*)

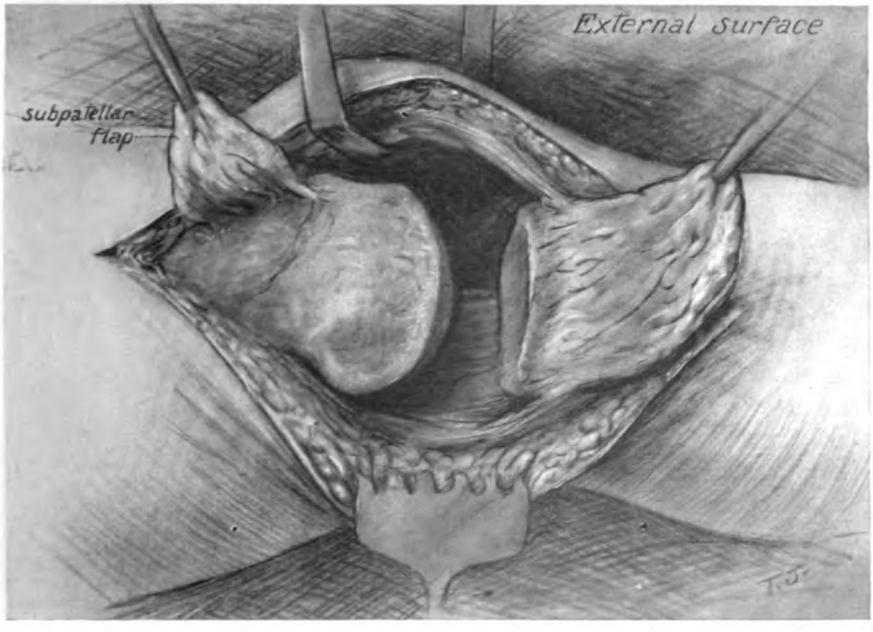


FIG. 34. ARTICULAR SURFACES OF FEMUR AND TIBIA READY FOR INSERTION OF INTERPOSING FLAP. Subpatellar flap prepared. (*Murphy.*)

ligaments on the inner side of the knee-joint. These flaps should be 3½ inches long and 2½ inches wide, with the base left attached on the tuberosities of the tibia just below the line of bone division for the new joint. After these flaps are prepared they are placed into towels or sterile gauze and held downward out of the field of operation. If the patella is ankylosed to the femur, it is freed by the use of a flat chisel, preferably the thin-bladed artist's chisel, maintaining of course the normal groove in the femur (see Fig. 33). When the skin is fully re-

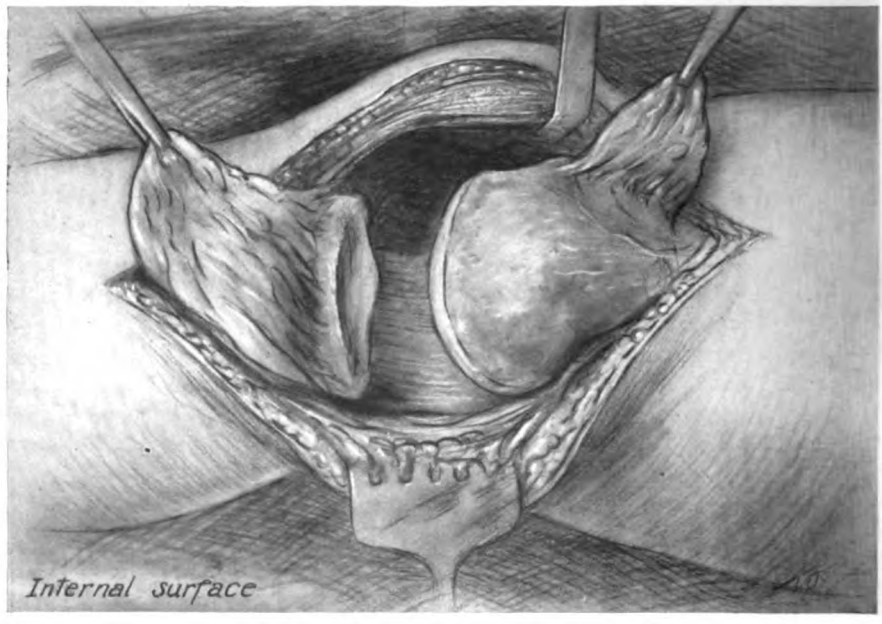


FIG. 35. ARTICULAR SURFACES OF FEMUR AND TIBIA READY FOR INSERTION OF INTERPOSING FLAPS. Subpatellar flap prepared. (*Murphy.*)

tracted the operator chooses the line in which he wishes to make the new joint, remembering that the normal joint is just under the lower tip of the patella when the leg is fully extended. The curved chisel then separates the tibia from the femur on each side, maintaining the normal anatomic conformation of the joint surface (see Fig. 32). Five-eighths of an inch distal to this incision the chisels are again driven from either side, this time cutting through the upper end of the tibia and thus taking out a wedge of bone ⅝ of an inch wide. By artistic shaping with chisel and bone rasp one makes depressions to resemble the normal articular concavities of the external and internal tuberosities of

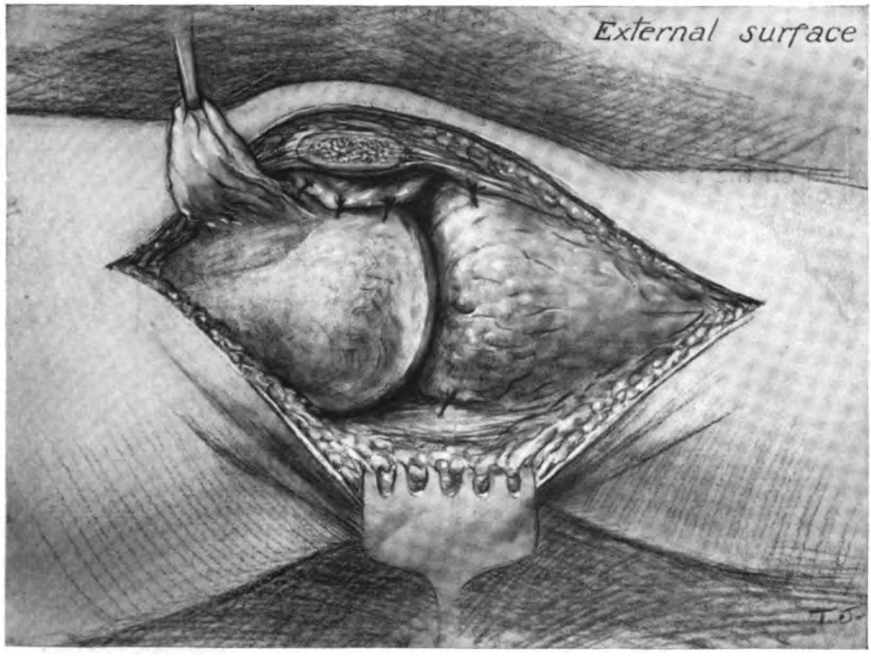


FIG. 36. SHOWS EXTERNAL TIBIO-FEMORAL FLAP INSERTED AND OUTER END OF INTERNAL PATELLAR FLAP. (*Murphy.*)

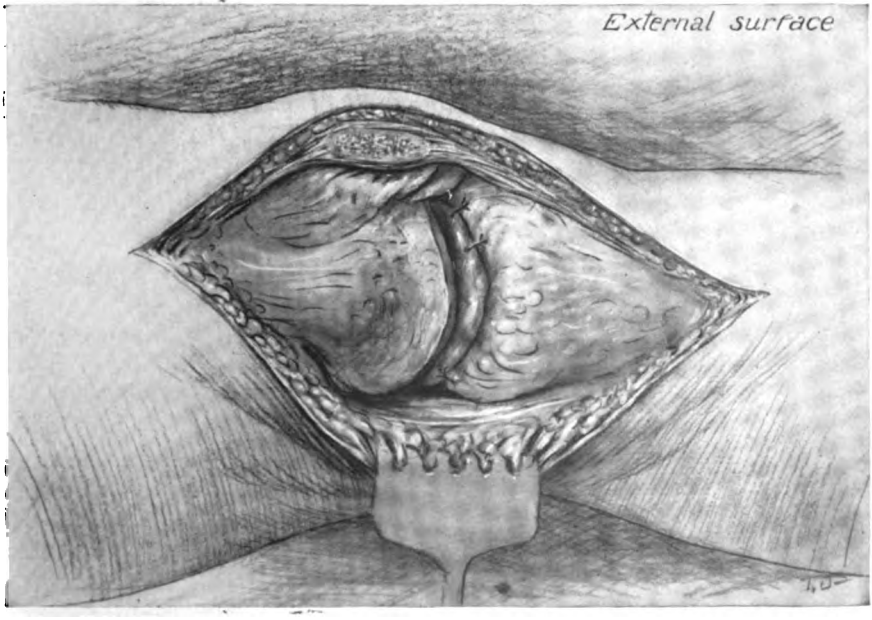


FIG. 37. SHOWS THE OVERLAPPING OF INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL INTERPOSING FLAPS. (*Murphy.*)

the tibia. The intercondyloid ridge must be preserved. The intercondyloid groove of the femur must be excavated deep enough to accommodate itself to the ridge of the tibia (see Fig. 34).

If the ankylosis is in a flexed position, then a sufficient wedge must be removed to permit the leg to be fully extended without putting undue tension on the vessels and nerves in the popliteal space. It is to be re-

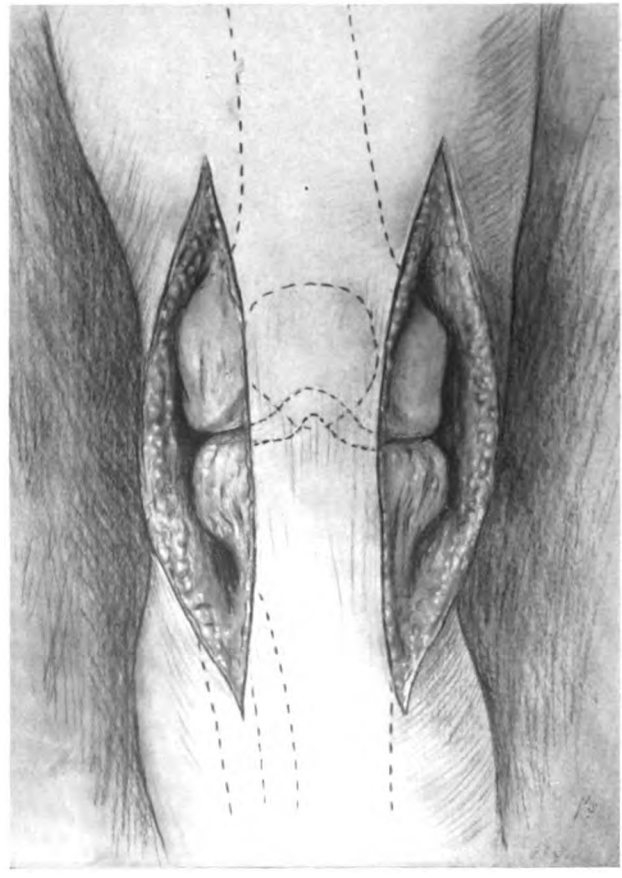


FIG. 38. SCHEMATIC. SHOWING THE BONE AND ANTERIOR FLAP RELATIONS AT COMPLETION OF OPERATION. (*Murphy.*)

membered that most of the bone is removed from the upper end of the tibia, as in this way one has the least amount of denuded bone surface to cover. The interposing flaps which were previously prepared are now drawn over the upper end of the tibia and sutured firmly in position, so that no raw surface remains exposed (see Fig. 37). It is not necessary

to cover the femur. The newly made joint is now closed, usually without drainage (see Fig. 38), and the limb is placed into a moulded wire or plaster of Paris trough. A Buck's extension of from 8 to 12 pounds is applied. Passive motion is begun about the twelfth day. If the patella is ankylosed, a small piece of fascia is passed between it and the femur and sutured in position so that it may not again adhere to the femur (see Figs. 35 and 36).

CHAPTER VII

OPERATIONS UPON THE HIP-JOINT

ARTHROTOMY OF THE HIP

Indications. The hip-joint may be exposed and opened for a large number of conditions, of which the following are the most important:—

(i) *As a preliminary to excision of the joint.* Excision of the hip is rarely performed for any other than a tuberculous affection of the joint; this is part of the subject dealt with by Mr. Stiles. Excision of the joint for injury is very rare indeed; if it be required, as possibly it may be in military surgery, it will probably take the form of an arthrotomy, followed by piecemeal removal of fragments of bone and smoothing off of the portion remaining. Excision may be necessary in septic suppurative arthritis due to acute epiphysitis or pyæmia; the head of the bone may have to be removed in order to allow satisfactory drainage to be established.

(ii) It forms the first stage of the operation for re-position of a *congenital dislocation of the hip* by the open method (see p. 113).

(iii) When it is desired to rectify *ankylosis of the hip* in a faulty position it is often employed as a preliminary to division of the neck of the femur or a trans-trochanteric division of the bone.

(iv) It must be done in all those cases of *intra-capsular fracture* of the neck of the femur in which it is desired to fasten the fragments together (see p. 95).

(v) It is a preliminary stage of a cuneiform osteotomy of the neck of the femur for *coxa vara* (see p. 94).

The steps of the operations appropriate to each of the above conditions are described separately, but to avoid unnecessary repetition the operation for exposure of the neck of the bone, which is common to them all, will be described first.

Operation. The patient lies flat on his back and the surgeon stands on the outer side of the limb. It is most important that the entire thigh and buttock should be thoroughly purified and the thigh securely fastened in a sterilized towel, as free manipulation of the limb will probably be required during the course of the operation.

The incision begins at the anterior superior iliac spine and runs downwards and inwards for four or five inches parallel with the outer edge

of the sartorius, in the interval between it and the tensor fasciæ femoris. This intermuscular space leads at once down to the neck of the bone without division of any important structure. There may be fairly smart bleeding from the anastomosis of the external circumflex when the neck of the bone is reached, but this is easily stopped. The finger defines the anterior surface of the neck of the femur, when the muscles are well retracted and the capsule of the joint is opened by an incision parallel to the long axis of the neck; whatever further steps are necessary can then be undertaken. As these vary considerably they will be described separately.

DRAINAGE OF THE HIP-JOINT

The first step towards securing efficient drainage of this joint is to remove the head of the bone. In acute suppurative affections this may be quite easy, owing to dislocation having taken place. In that case, after the joint has been opened as described above, the neck is sawn *in situ* and the head removed. The sawing is accomplished with an Adams's osteotomy saw or a Gigli's wire saw passed round the neck of the bone, and should be done without disturbing the parts until the section of the neck is complete. The head can then be turned out with a large raspatory, and this gives free access to the front of the joint. In order to provide satisfactory drainage, however, it will be necessary to perforate the posterior part of the capsule and to insert a large drainage tube, which will project posteriorly through the skin in the post-trochanteric region. For this purpose an incision is made in the posterior part of the capsule large enough to allow the passage of a pair of long dressing forceps, which are thrust through it and made to perforate the soft parts over the back of the joint until they can be clearly felt beneath the skin of the buttock about midway between the tuber ischii and the great trochanter. They are then cut down upon through an incision about two inches long and made to protrude through the skin. Their blades are cautiously dilated and the orifice in the posterior aspect of the capsule is increased until a drainage tube as large as the thumb can be grasped by the forceps and pulled into the joint from the gluteal wound. The chief danger in doing this is in damaging the sciatic nerve, which lies in close relation to the back of the hip-joint. The only safe method is to employ large dressing forceps and to insinuate them carefully through the tissues; they then pass to one side of the sciatic nerve, which escapes damage. The drainage tube should be long enough to pass through the joint from front to back, and the openings in it should be so arranged that one of them is at the most dependent part of the joint cavity.

The articulation is washed out thoroughly and may be douched with peroxide of hydrogen solution (10 vols. per cent.) with advantage. Antiseptic dressings are applied front and back, and a weight extension of four or five pounds should be put on so as to keep the joint cavity as widely open as possible for the purpose of drainage and also to prevent the tube being compressed by the pull of the muscles forcing the neck of the bone into the acetabulum.

As soon as drainage is satisfactorily established, which will be in about three or four days, portions may be gradually cut off the tube by pulling it out of the posterior wound and removing a quarter of an inch at each dressing, until the anterior end of the tube lies flush with the opening in the posterior part of the capsule. The anterior wound can safely be allowed to close, but drainage from the posterior wound should be kept up until all discharge has ceased, when the tube may be gradually shortened and the extension of the limb dispensed with.

OSTEOTOMY OF THE NECK OF THE FEMUR

The neck of the bone is exposed in the usual manner (see p. 92); the neck of the femur may be divided with the saw or a wedge of the bone may be removed.

Simple osteotomy. This is done with Adams's subcutaneous osteotomy saw with the minimum disturbance of the soft parts, which are protected above and below the neck by the interposition of a thin metal spatula. The section of the bone should be made as near the trochanter as possible, in order to leave a wide surface for subsequent union if this should be desired; if the section be made in the immediate neighbourhood of the head of the bone, union may not be obtained subsequently, owing to separation of the fragments. In this connexion it may be remarked that Mr. Robert Jones of Liverpool is in favour of what he terms a trans-trochanteric incision, extending obliquely from the top of the greater to the lesser trochanter; this gives a broad surface for bony union after rectification of the malposition for which the operation has been done.

Cuneiform osteotomy. This may be required for *coxa vara*. At the present day, however, this affection will rarely require operation, as extended experience tends to show that all cases in young children are amenable to treatment by appropriate splints. In them, moreover, this particular operation could have no sphere of usefulness, as the neck of the femur is too small a structure to be satisfactorily treated in this way. Should it be necessary, however, to operate upon these cases in adults, which is doubtful, cuneiform osteotomy of the neck of the

femur would be the operation of choice. The neck of the bone is exposed as described above, and more particularly that part of it from which the wedge is to be removed; this is best determined by previous stereoscopic radiography. As a rule the base of the wedge will be at the junction of the upper with the anterior aspect of the neck. With an Adams's osteotomy saw the surgeon marks out a wedge of a suitable size and performs the section either partially or entirely with this instrument; if there be any difficulty it may be finished with a few strokes of a broad chisel. The assistant then rotates the limb into the position in which the two cut surfaces fit one another accurately, and it is then seen whether this position returns the limb to its normal position; if not, more bone is removed to make the surfaces fit accurately when the limb is lying flat on the table with the anterior surface of the patella looking vertically upwards.

It is well not to remove any large portion of the posterior aspect of the neck, which may be retained as a sort of hinge to prevent displacement of the divided surfaces, and it is generally advisable to make use of some method of mechanical fixation to the same end; long pins or nails driven in through a separate incision over the outer surface of the great trochanter, when the limb is held in position by the assistant, answer admirably (see Fig. 39). The after-treatment will be similar to that of fractures of the neck of the femur (see p. 99).

OPERATIONS FOR FRACTURES OF THE NECK OF THE FEMUR

Indications. In theory, operative measures designed to secure accurate approximation and fixation of the fractured surfaces are called for in all cases of intra-capsular fracture, owing to the very unsatisfactory results obtained by any other method. Occasionally, it is true, actual bony union may occur, but even this is likely to be followed by much impaired mobility of the limb, either from mal-union or from the presence of osteophytic outgrowths in the region of the head of the bone. Any operation, therefore, that can bring the fractured surfaces into accurate apposition and keep them there should be welcomed as an improvement. The truth is, however, that operative interference in fractures of the neck of the femur is often very difficult to carry out and disappointing in its results. There are many reasons for this.

In the first place the hip-joint and the neck of the femur in the adult are deeply placed, covered by structures of importance, and therefore difficult of access in a wound which does not lend itself to manipulation. It is only in spare subjects that the joint is near enough to the surface to be at all amenable to surgical procedures with ease.

A second point is that the nature of the fracture renders accurate apposition of the fragments difficult to obtain and even more difficult to maintain. When the line of fracture is near the head of the bone there is no leverage by which this can be got into good position, and even if this can be done, the subjects in which this fracture occurs have such rarefied and brittle bony tissue that a fixation apparatus has not a really fair chance of keeping the fragments together. The leverage exerted by the weight of the limb is so great that displacement is very likely to occur.

Thirdly, even if union does occur, it is apt to be accompanied by the formation of so large a callus about the seat of the fracture that the movements of the limb may be seriously hampered by the mechanical contact of the callus with the acetabulum.

Finally, it must never be forgotten that the subjects of these fractures are always elderly and frequently in bad health and subject to chronic bronchitis. To them operative interference that entails the administration of an anæsthetic for a long period, and the necessarily prolonged convalescence and confinement to bed, means a risk that is not justified if good results can be obtained with early massage and the employment of a suitable splint. My own experience leads me to limit operative interference to patients who are comparatively young, spare, healthy, and active, and in whom the desire to be restored to the full vigour of life makes them willing to run some slight degree of risk.

Operation. Before operating, it is important to obtain a knowledge of the exact condition of the fracture, and for this purpose stereoscopic radiograms are essential.

The parts are thoroughly and widely purified in the usual manner, the trochanteric region and the buttock having special care devoted to them. The joint is opened and the fracture exposed in the manner already described for exposure of the neck of the bone (see p. 92). The incision should be free, and wide retraction will be required to expose the seat of fracture. A radiogram is most useful in indicating the direction in which exposure is most needed. It will probably be impossible to see the whole extent of the fracture, and it may be difficult to get the limb into proper position for fixation unless the surgeon has a clear notion of it.

In effecting apposition the greatest difficulty may be experienced in dealing with the proximal fragment, viz. the head of the bone and the adjacent portion of the neck. The distal fragment should be got out of the way by rotating the limb so as to make it clear the inner end of the fractured neck, and thus enable the surgeon to get at the head of the bone.

This must now be rotated so that, when the fractured surfaces of the neck are in apposition, the lower extremity will lie flat upon the bed with the foot pointing upwards. As there are no muscles attached to the head and neck of the femur it will remain in any position it is put, but it is often difficult to get a sufficiently firm hold of it to rotate it into the desired position.

The next step is to manipulate the lower limb so as to get the fractured surfaces into good apposition before fixing them. This is done by an assistant under the direction of the surgeon, who places the forefinger of one hand in the wound so as to ascertain the position of the fractured surfaces and the other hand upon the trochanter. When the fracture is in good position the limb is steadied and the fragments are fixed. This is the most important and the most difficult part of the operation, as the least movement may cause considerable displacement, which can neither be discovered nor rectified subsequently. Any means that may suggest themselves to the surgeon for fixing the fragments temporarily in position pending their permanent fixation should be adopted. On one occasion I have been lucky enough to be able to grasp the fragments in powerful bone forceps, such as Peters's, which have steadied them sufficiently to enable the neck to be drilled and pegged satisfactorily. On another occasion, when the fracture was somewhat oblique from before backwards, a bradawl run between the two fragments from front to back steadied the fracture until the long pins were inserted for permanent fixation.

Permanent fixation is best secured by pegs, pins, screws, or nails driven through from the outer surface of the great trochanter along the long axis of the neck well into the head of the bone. The application of wires, pins, screws, or nails to the neck itself is hardly to be recommended, since the leverage of the lower limb is likely to tear them from their place, while any foreign body projecting from the neck of the bone may mechanically interfere with the movements of the joint. On the whole I have found the best fixation apparatus to be stout steel knitting-needles or screws. I prefer knitting-needles, one end of which is sharpened and the other somewhat expanded so that it may be driven in with a hammer if necessary. This end projects through the skin, is enveloped in the dressings, and can therefore be removed when the surgeon deems it necessary. In order to introduce pins or screws, a vertical incision should be made over the outer surface of the great trochanter near its base, and the whole thickness of this structure is bored with a drill of suitable size from its outer surface right along the neck of the bone and into the head almost up to the cartilaginous surface. It is a good plan to make this incision in the skin

and to drill the trochanter and the outer part of the neck before apposition has been effected. The drill is made to penetrate the neck of the bone until its end just projects on the fractured surface, and as soon as the two fragments have been got into apposition it is driven on into the head of the bone and the fractured surfaces are thereby fixed. By adopting this plan it is easy to tell how far into the neck and head of the bone the drill may go with safety. The screw or pin is introduced for the requisite distance, and the fracture should then be firm (see Fig. 39). When a screw is used it is important that it should be exactly the right length, and therefore a number of different lengths should be at hand.

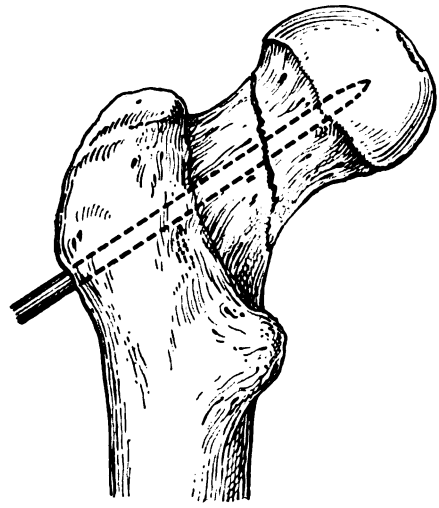


FIG. 39. DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING THE METHOD OF PINNING FRACTURES OF THE NECK OF THE FEMUR.

Steel pins should be about eight inches in total length. If they are used, it may be possible to run in two pins parallel to each other so as to give an extra firm hold. An electrically-driven drill is of the greatest service in drilling the bone; it requires no force, and the whole attention of the assistant can be directed to keeping the limb in position without having to resist the force which the surgeon must exert in using the hand-drill. ("The use of autogenous bone splints" is discussed in the chapter on Bone Transplantation in Fractures. See that section in this volume.)

From this time onwards the limb must be kept absolutely immovable in the corrected position, and this is one of the chief difficulties of the operation. The operation is greatly facilitated if some measures are adopted similar to those recommended for the application of a plaster

of Paris splint after the operation for the re-position of congenital dislocations of the hip (see p. 117). This consists essentially in propping the patient's pelvis on a suitable support, like a bootmaker's last, so that plaster of Paris bandages can be applied immediately the wound is closed, which should be done by an assistant, the surgeon making himself responsible for the position of the limb from the time that the pegs are inserted to the time the patient is put back to bed. If the pelvis is raised in this manner and the thorax is elevated to a corresponding height upon pillows, the application of an immovable apparatus is quite simple; if necessary, the foot can be supported on a suitable telescopic rest standing on the floor. The plaster of Paris bandage should take in the knee and should be the usual figure-of-eight spica around the pelvis. It is put on exactly as for the congenital hip operation (see p. 117), and the limb is enveloped in a bandage of boric lint under the plaster casing.

The patient is kept under the anæsthetic until the plaster has set and is left upon the table until it is moderately dry. He is then put to bed with the utmost care. No care and attention bestowed upon the later stages of these operations, including the transference to bed, can be too minute, and personal experience convinces me that it is upon the proper observance of them that the success or failure of many of these cases depends.

After-treatment. The patient should be propped up in bed as soon as possible. The hip-joint is of course fixed, but a good range of movement is allowed in the lumbar region, and this should be utilized to the full. The wound need not be looked at until about the eighteenth day, when an anæsthetic should be given, the plaster casing removed, the stitches taken out, and a fresh plaster applied; this should again take in the knee for about a week or more, after which the portion embracing the joint can be cut away so that the knee can be bent. The patient should be got up on crutches with a patten on the sound foot as soon as possible after this plaster has been applied. It will probably be possible to dispense with the plaster casing at the end of four or five weeks, but the patient should still go about on crutches with a patten on the sound foot for another three or four weeks, during which time massage and passive movements of the affected limb are employed; after this, weight may be gradually borne upon the limb.

EXCISION OF THE HIP-JOINT

There are three principal routes by which this operation can be performed, viz. by an anterior incision, which has already been dealt with

fully in connexion with arthrotomy (see p. 92), and will be considered again by Mr. Stiles in connexion with tuberculous disease of the hip; by a posterior incision, in which the structures behind the joint are divided and the back of the articulation exposed; or by the external route, by which both surfaces of the joint can be investigated.

Of these methods the anterior route has already been described in so far as it falls within the scope of the present subject. The posterior route sacrifices muscles whose functions the surgeon is anxious to preserve if possible; as a compensation for this it offers a very direct approach to the joint and good drainage. It might be called for in very bad tuberculous cases, but it will rarely be necessary for a non-tuberculous affection. The excision by the external incision is therefore the only one that will be described here.

EXCISION OF THE HIP-JOINT BY AN EXTERNAL INCISION

This is the method perfected by Kocher (*Operative Surgery,* trans. by Stiles, 2nd Ed., p. 360), from whom the description of the operation is taken.

Indications. There will be few non-tuberculous affections of the hip that will call for excision.

(i) In cases of bad *injury* to the joint in military surgery accompanied by extensive comminution of the upper end of the bone, it may be advisable to expose the entire neighbourhood of the joint and deal freely with it by excision.

(ii) In chronic cases of *suppurative arthritis* accompanied by sinuses and much caries the anterior incision will not suffice for proper access and safe drainage, and the external route will be preferable.

Operation. The following description follows that of Kocher very closely:—The surgeon stands on the outer side of the limb and the patient is rolled over well on to the sound side. The incision (see Fig. 40) is a somewhat curved one, running over the outer surface of the great trochanter from its base to its anterior superior angle; thence it passes obliquely upwards and backwards, following the direction of the fibres of the gluteus maximus. Over the outer surface of the trochanter the knife divides branches of the external circumflex artery and the dense aponeurotic insertion of the gluteus maximus, while it divides the fibres of the gluteus maximus in the upper part of the incision. At this stage some vessels of considerable size will be divided and must be ligatured. The insertion of the gluteus medius is seen at the outer side of the great trochanter and that of the gluteus minimus at its anterior border; these are detached from the bone and turned forwards. The anterior surface of the neck is now exposed, the limb being flexed and

rotated outwards, and the ilio-femoral ligament is separated from the anterior inter-trochanteric line. The dissection is next carried out on the posterior surface; the capsule is incised along the lower border of the tendon of the pyriformis, the latter structure being detached from its insertion into the inner surface of the trochanter and turned backwards along with the external rotators; the periosteum covering the

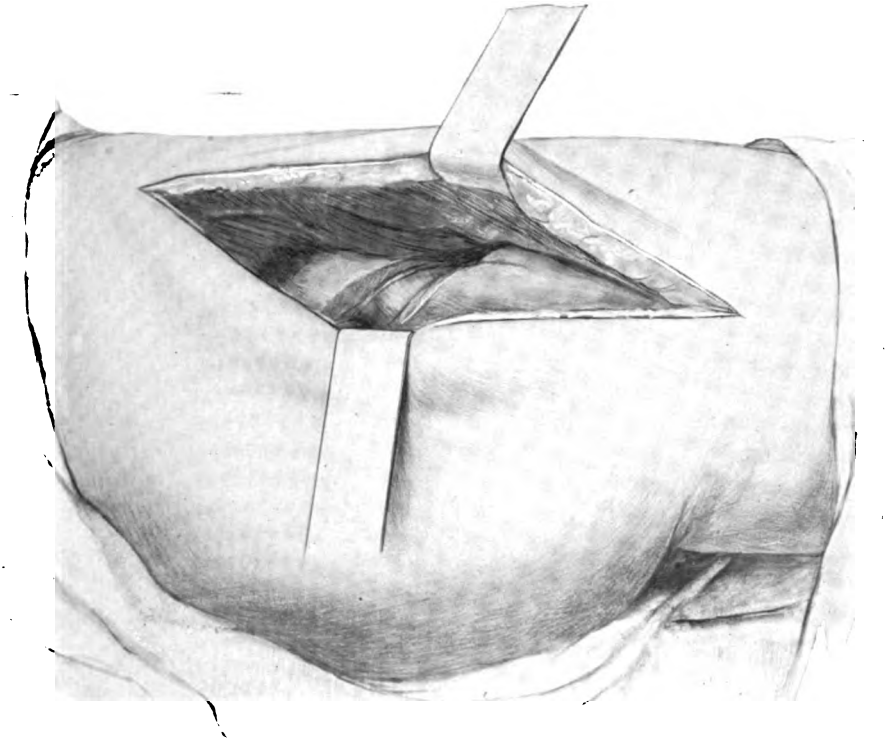


FIG. 40. EXCISION OF HIP BY KOCHER'S EXTERNAL INCISION. The muscles are separated from their attachments, exposing the neck of the bone and the capsule of the joint.

inner surface of the trochanter is reflected along with the muscles enumerated above.

Kocher recommends this particular method of approach because the gluteus medius and minimus muscles supplied by the superior gluteal nerve are drawn forwards and upwards towards the tensor fasciæ femoris, which has the same nerve-supply. All these muscles play an important part in the future abduction of the thigh. The gluteus maximus, the pyriformis, and the obturators, which are supplied by the inferior

gluteal nerve, are drawn downwards. When the joint is approached by this incision, admirable exposure of the entire posterior, external, and anterior surfaces of the head and neck of the femur is afforded, as well as of the trochanter itself. There is very little bleeding. Branches of the internal circumflex artery will be divided in front of the neck of the femur, while the transverse branch of the external circumflex artery may also need to be ligatured as it winds round the base of the trochanter

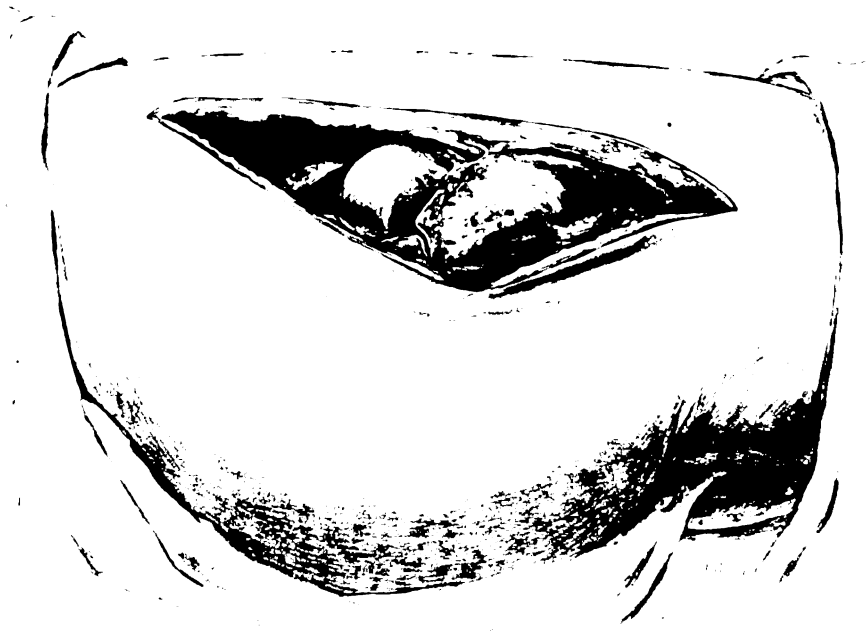


FIG. 41. EXPOSURE OF THE HEAD OF THE FEMUR IN KOCHER'S EXCISION OF THE HIP. The capsule has been opened and both sides of the neck are rendered easily accessible.

under the vastus externus. The ligamentum teres is reached and divided by cutting on to the head of the bone through the cotyloid ligament from behind and below, while an assistant fully adducts, flexes, and rotates the limb inwards. The head is thereby dislocated backwards and the acetabulum rendered visible.

This free exposure enables the necessary manipulations to be carried out with ease. In cases of injury these will be removal of the shattered portions of bone and resection of the neck to the extent required to make the surfaces smooth. No more bone should be removed than is actually necessary, and the trochanteric part of the neck should be

rounded off as accurately and as smoothly as possible with chisels or gouges, in order that it may, if possible, take the place of the head of the bone which has been removed. In suppurative arthritis the neck should be sawn through quite close to the head and well rounded off after the latter has been removed. After all bleeding has been stopped, the displaced muscles are secured in position by sutures. In cases of injury the wound should be closed, without a drainage tube if possible; a tube will only be needed in compound fractures. In cases of suppurative arthritis the wound should be flushed out with 1 in 2,000 biniodide lotion, followed by a solution of 10 vols. per cent. of peroxide of hydrogen, and it is a good plan to swab the entire raw surface over with a saturated solution of chloride of zinc in order to retard the spread of the infection to the freshly cut surfaces. A large drainage tube is then inserted into the most dependent part of the joint.

After-treatment. Extension by means of weight and pulley, beginning with 4 to 5 lb., should be employed for the first fortnight; care must be taken to prevent eversion of the foot. In aseptic cases the sutures are then removed and the patient may get about on crutches, for the first fortnight in a Thomas's hip-splint and afterwards without it. In six weeks or two months after operation weight may be borne gradually upon the stump. In septic cases the drainage tube is gradually shortened until healing occurs. Much the same line of treatment is adopted as in aseptic cases, but the convalescence will be longer.

ARTHROPLASTY (MURPHY)

After having made the usual aseptic preparations, a U-shaped incision is made (see Fig. 42), the flap measuring about 3 inches in width with the base directed upward. Incision is begun 3 inches above the trochanter and extends downward 2 inches below the trochanter, so that it is placed exactly in the center of the U. The knife passes through the skin, superficial fat, and fascia lata, so that all these tissues are dissected and displaced upwards in the flap.

The next step in the operation is to free the trochanter, leaving its muscles attached to it from the shaft.

A large, curved, flat, blunt-pointed needle, chain-saw carrier, threaded with heavy silk, is passed around the base of the trochanter from before backward under the muscles attached to it. This serves as a carrier for the chain-saw, which is next brought into position. The trochanter is carefully sawed off downward and outward and is retracted upward out of the field of operation, carrying with it the attached muscles. The obturators and pyriformis are then divided and

both ends transfixed with sutures for subsequent approximation (see Fig. 44). The joint is now freely exposed and the next step in the operation consists in incising the capsule of the joint without, however, separating it from its attachment to the acetabulum. It is loosened from the neck of the femur and stripped upward toward the head of

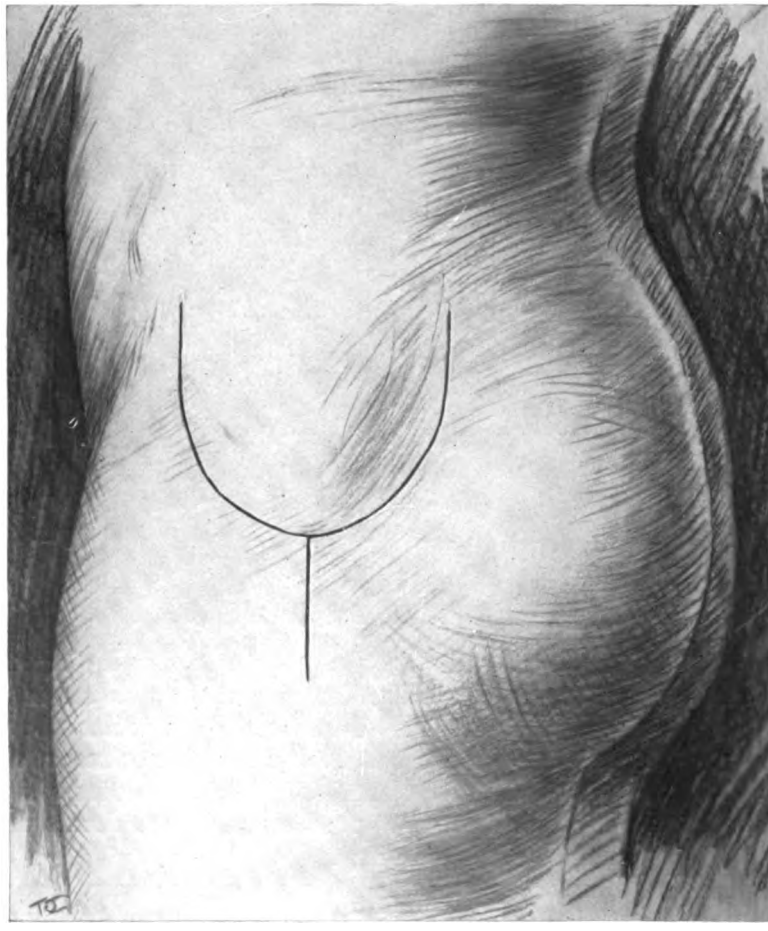


FIG. 42. ARTHROPLASTY OF HIP. (*Murphy.*)

the bone, so that it can be interposed later between the head of the bone and the acetabulum, if needed, so as to assist in the formation of a new lining for the acetabular cavity.

This is only one of the interposing tissues which may be used in the operation. It serves, in the main, to provide a perfectly smooth

acetabular margin, so that it will at no time subsequently permit of the reformation of a bony ankylosis or bone collar formation. This procedure thus far does not disturb the attachment of the gluteus maximus.

The next step is the formation of a new acetabular cavity and a new femoral head. The first thing to be done is to separate the ankylosed

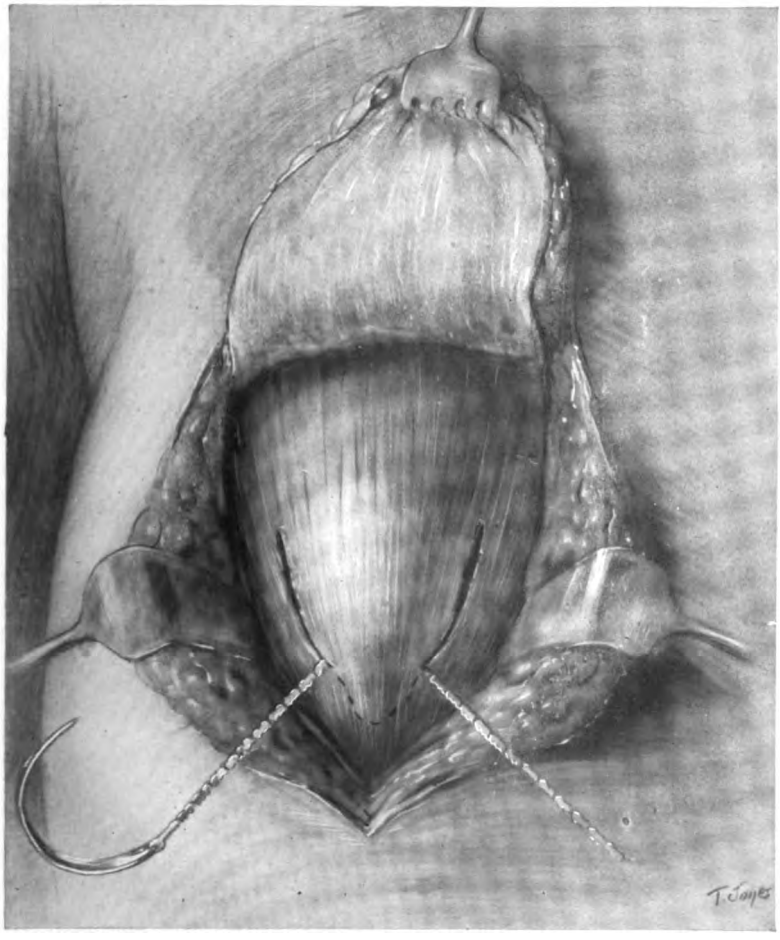


FIG. 43. ARTHROPLASTY OF HIP. (*Murphy.*)

head from the ilium as near the normal anatomic line as possible. This is done by chiselling out the bony tissue, filling the acetabular cavity by means of a curved chisel about 1½ inches in width (see Fig. 45). With properly directed blows and sufficient force, the chisel is driven obliquely toward the acetabular cavity for the depth of 1 inch all the

way around the head, as near the normal conformation as possible. When the chiselling process is complete, with the chisel as a lever and the thigh as an assistant, the head is fractured out of the acetabulum. The acetabular cavity is then fashioned with a special globular drill or

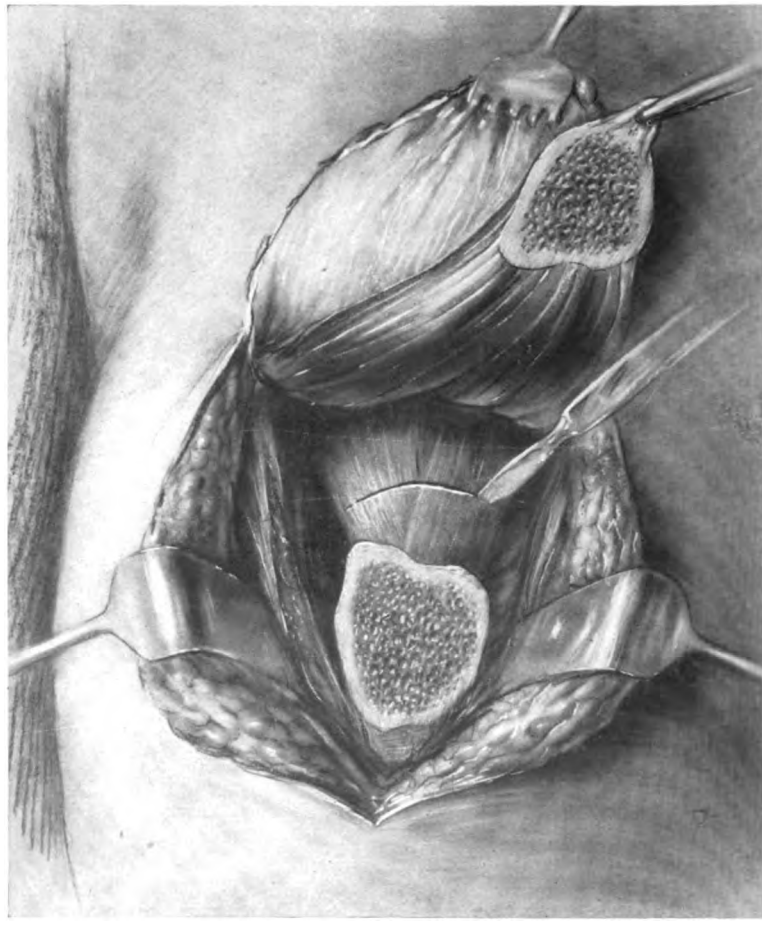


FIG. 44. ARTHROPLASTY OF HIP. (*Murphy.*)

reamer, so as to receive the new femoral head, which will be similarly fashioned from the bony mass chiselled out of the acetabulum. For this purpose use is made of a specially constructed cup-shaped end-mill, making it possible to provide a new femoral head of normal conformation and smoothness (see Fig. 46).

These two instruments used in fashioning the acetabulum and the

femoral head constitute, in reality, parts of the same appliance; the globular portion fits into the cup-shaped portion in such a manner that unless the interposing tissues are in position the fit is perfect.

The main reliance for obviating the recurrence of the ankylosis is

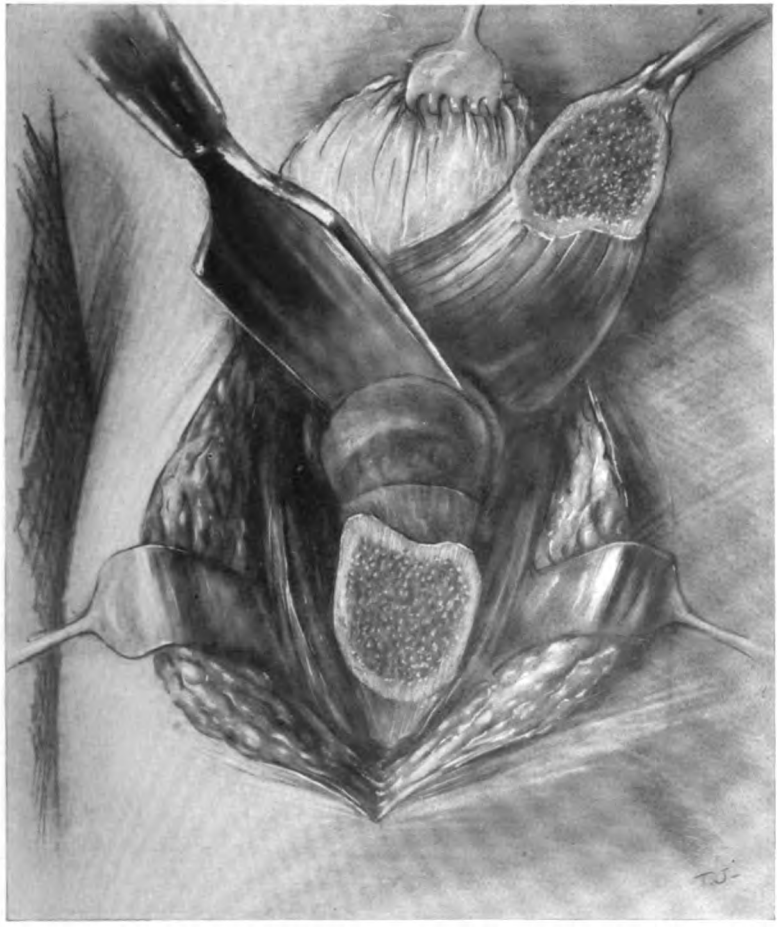


FIG. 45. ARTHROPLASTY OF HIP. (*Murphy.*)

placed on the flap of the deflected fascia lata, which is made by splitting the original U-shaped flap. This flap is dissected from the subcutaneous fatty tissue which formed a part of the original skin and fascia flap, the base of the U being directed upward so that the nutrition of the flap is preserved as much as possible to ensure its continued vitality (see

Fig. 47). Grasping the edge of the flap with tissue forceps, it is drawn into the joint and the edge sutured to the acetabular margin or to the remnant of the capsular ligament still attached to the neck of the bone with chromic catgut, thus forming a complete covering for the acetabular

FIG. 46. ARTHROPLASTY OF HIP. (*Murphy.*)

cavity (see Fig. 48). When the head is placed into the acetabular cavity, this flap also serves as a lining for this cavity, reinforcing the capsular ligament, although the latter is used mainly for the purpose of preventing a 'locking' of the joint by the formation of exostosis from the acetabular rim.

The next step is to replace the trochanter, which, it will be remem-

bered, was sawed off from the bone without disturbing the muscular attachment. Then the ends of the obturator and pyriformis muscles are reunited. The trochanter is brought down, fitted on to its original position, and secured with chromic catgut. Occasionally a small nail

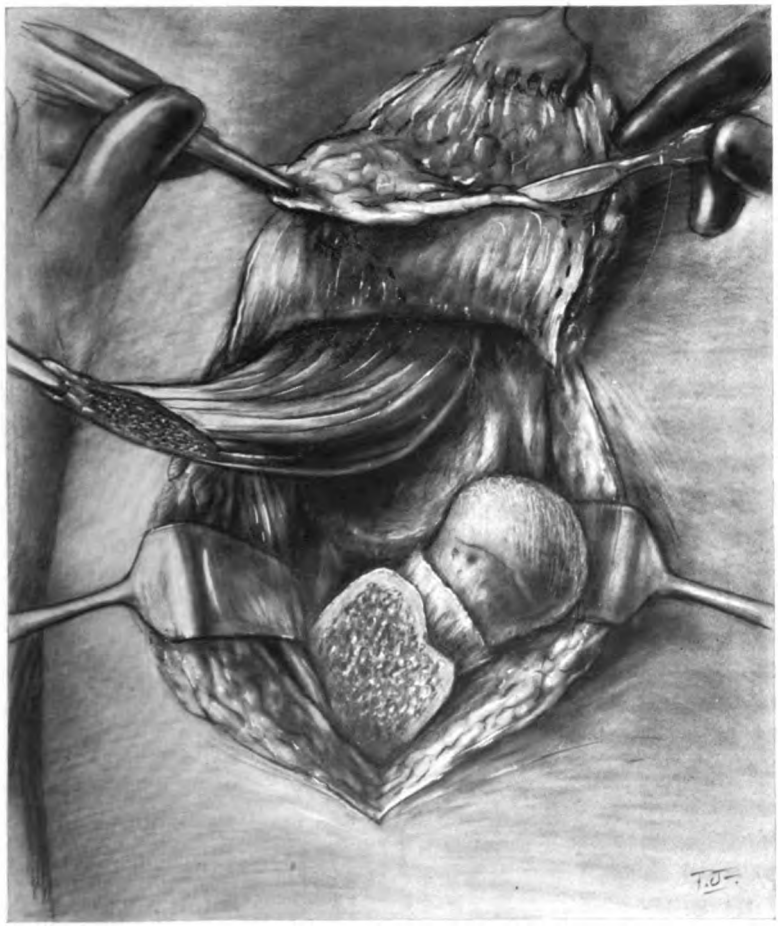


FIG. 47. ARTHROPLASTY OF HIP. (*Murphy.*)

may be used in addition to the sutures (see Fig. 49). The deep fascia is sutured and the skin closed with horsehair without drainage. The patient is placed into bed in a Travois splint and a Buck's extension with 12 to 15 pounds' weight applied to the leg. This weight prevents the pressure necrosis of the flap and overcomes the involuntary muscle

contractions which so frequently cause pain. Passive motion is begun at the end of twelve to fourteen days.

OPERATIONS FOR TRAUMATIC DISLOCATIONS

In recent cases, Strictly speaking, these operations may be divided up into those performed for recent dislocations and those for similar

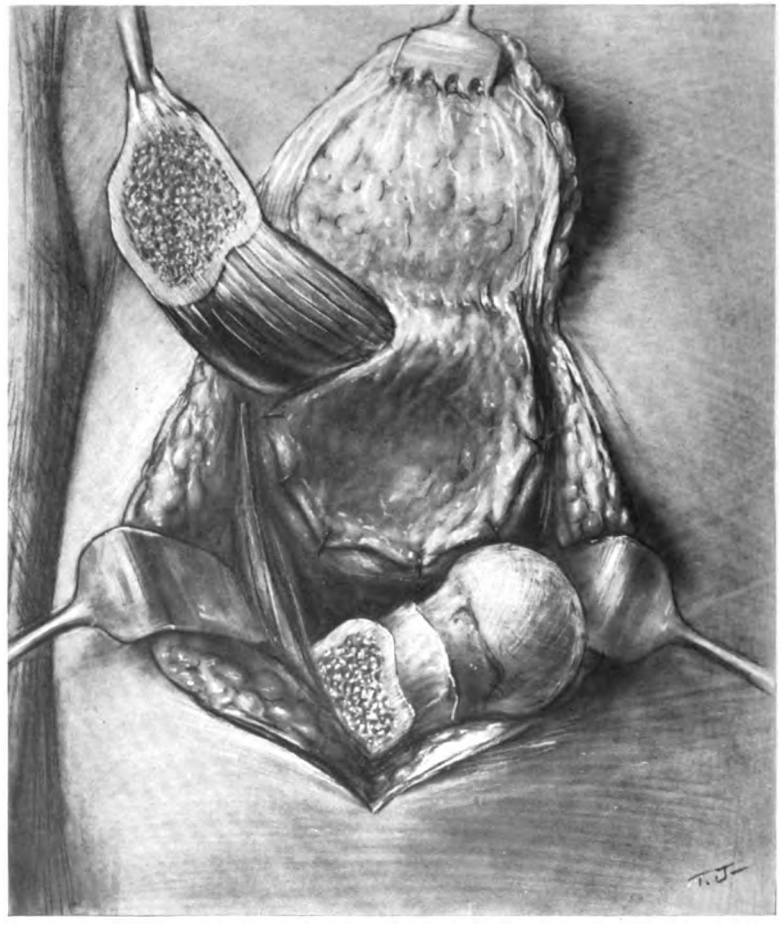


FIG. 48. ARTHROPLASTY OF HIP. (*Murphy.*)

injuries of long standing. It is, however, rare for a recent dislocation to require operative treatment for its reduction, as manipulation under an anæsthetic almost invariably succeeds. Occasionally, however, this is not so, especially when the dislocation is complicated with a fracture

either of the acetabulum or of some portion of the head or neck of the bone. Under these circumstances, which should be diagnosed with certainty by means of a stereoscopic radiogram, it will be necessary to expose the joint and effect reduction without delay.

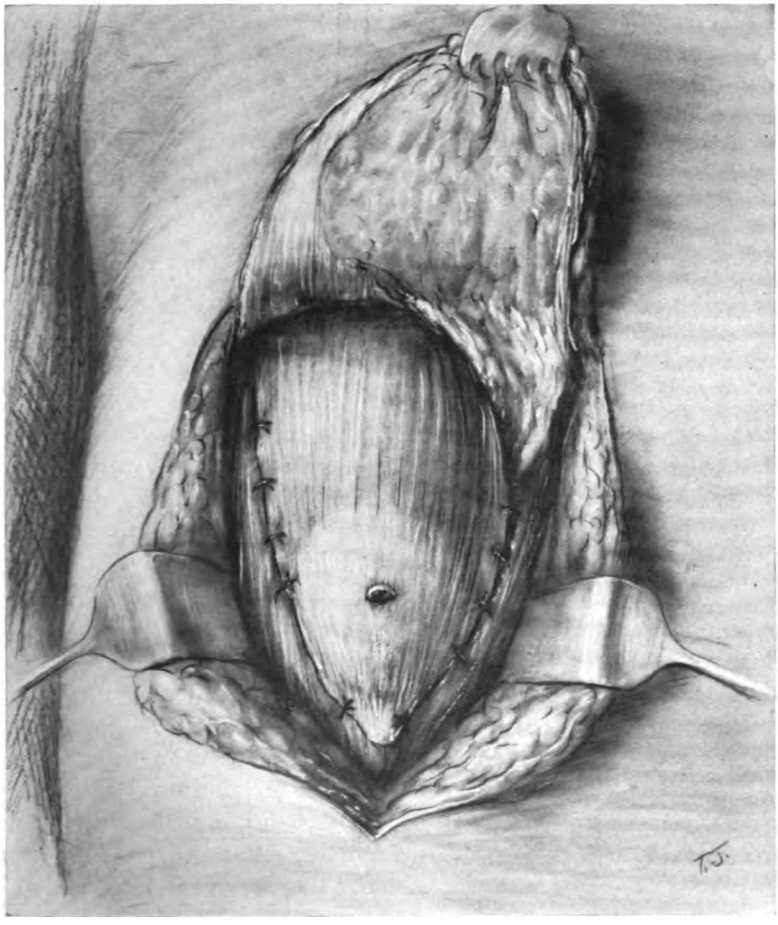


FIG. 49. ARTHROPLASTY OF HIP. (*Murphy.*)

Exposure of the joint for this purpose should be by the anterior route, since that gives the best access; the dislocation, if not primarily a posterior one, will certainly have become converted into one by the manipulations undertaken for its reduction, and the posterior route is unsuitable when the head of the bone lies behind the acetabulum. The operation need not be described in detail, since it follows the lines

already laid down for exposure of the neck of the femur (see p. 92). When the head of the bone has been exposed, the finger is introduced into the wound and the necessary manipulations for the reduction of the dislocation according to Bigelow's instructions should be carried out; any source of obstruction can be detected and removed or pulled aside. It ought not to be necessary to divide the Y-ligament or any important structures in these recent cases.

After reduction has been effected, the wound is sewn up and the limb is steadied by a long Liston's splint for about a week after the operation, when the patient may be fitted with a Thomas's hip-splint and allowed to get about on crutches. Passive movements should be begun from the second or third day and gradually increased in range and vigour. The patient should be able to walk upon the limb within a month of the operation.

In cases of long standing. It is difficult to fix the exact time at which operative interference should be preferred to attempts to reduce the dislocation by manipulations, but it is best to give the benefit in any case of doubt to operative interference, as the risk of damage to the head of the bone or to important parts in the neighbourhood during manipulation is very considerable owing to the powerful leverage that can be brought to bear by means of the lower extremity. It is probably advisable to operate upon any case of unreduced dislocation that has lasted for more than two or three weeks. The exposure of the joint adds little to the severity of the operation, while it undoubtedly simplifies re-position, since this can be performed under the direct guidance of the finger in the wound.

The operation should be done through an anterior incision. The posterior route is unsuitable because the head of the bone is always dislocated behind the acetabulum and will interfere with access to that cavity if the posterior route be chosen. The acetabulum is easily inspected through an anterior incision, on the other hand, especially if the incision be prolonged upwards so as to detach the muscles from the outer side of the ilium, and it can be prepared for the reception of the head of the bone if necessary.

There are two principal difficulties in the operation which are directly proportionate to the severity of the injury and the length of time that the dislocation has remained unreduced; they are—partial obliteration of the acetabulum and adhesions around the joint. Most writers on the subject mention the fact that the acetabulum is occupied by fibrous tissue which must be removed before the head of the bone can be got into place. The amount and consistency of this soft tissue will depend largely upon the length of time that has elapsed since the dislocation, and therefore

this serious difficulty in the operation is likely to disappear as earlier operation becomes the practice.

The presence of dense adhesions around the joint may give rise to great difficulty in replacing the head of the bone. Here again the difficulty will be proportionate to the length of time that the dislocation has remained unreduced. The adhesions may have to be divided widely, and in doing this the position of the various important structures in the neighbourhood of the head of the neck of the bone must be remembered. If the adhesions be only trivial they may be broken down by rotating the limb freely in all directions. It is better to do this after the joint has been exposed, as any bleeding it causes can be checked at once. The capsule may have to be incised freely before the head of the bone can be got into position, since it will be much contracted and distorted. The principal structure that interferes with reduction is the Y-ligament, which may have to be partially or entirely detached from the neck of the femur before the head of the bone can be got back into place. In some of the published cases the rim of the acetabulum has been found to be fractured and portions have been removed. The head of the bone should be got into place if possible by manipulation methods rather than by traction, but it may be necessary to employ firm traction of this kind by means of pulleys; this, however, will only be called for in cases of long standing with extensive adhesions and considerable shrinkage of the ligamentous structures. In cases like this the whole upper extremity of the femur may need to be separated from its muscular attachments. The ligamentum teres is torn and as a rule cannot be traced.

After the head of the bone has been got into place the remains of the capsule are sutured over it and the soft parts are brought together as accurately as possible with buried catgut sutures. The wound is sutured without a drainage tube and the limb is steadied by a long Liston's splint. The after-treatment is similar to that for recent cases (*vide supra*).

OPERATIONS FOR CONGENITAL DISLOCATIONS

There are two principal methods for replacing a congenital dislocation of the hip, viz. Lorenz's so-called 'bloodless' method, and the open operation. The former appears to be the more popular procedure at present, but in so far as it must necessarily be uncertain, since the surgeon can only guess and not see what he is doing, it is probable that, as surgeons gain more confidence in their power to treat large wounds in this region with safety, open operation will take its place, since it does with certainty what the misnamed 'bloodless operation' can only do by guess. With

regard to bleeding, there is no doubt that less blood is shed in the open operation than in the so-called 'bloodless method'; in the latter case free bleeding takes place into the tissues. Lorenz's method will not be described here, since it is not, strictly speaking, a surgical operation any more than is the setting of a fracture or the reduction of an ordinary dislocation.

Indications. (i) Operative measures are called for in congenital dislocations in children under four in which a careful attempt at re-position by Lorenz's method, checked by stereoscopic radiograms, has failed.

(ii) Operation is also required for all cases in children over the age of four as a primary measure. In these cases the alterations in the joint are so marked that experience upon the operating table shows it to be practically impossible to get the head of the bone properly into the acetabulum without a definite surgical operation. If Lorenz's manipulation be practised unsuccessfully the disturbance of the soft parts produced by it is so great as to interfere materially with the prospects of an open operation.

Operation. The writer is in the habit of dividing the operation into two stages. The first stage is the subcutaneous division of the shortened adductor muscles, which invariably offer considerable resistance to reduction and to the maintenance of the limb in position when the dislocation has been reduced. In order to avoid the severe bruising and extravasation of blood following Lorenz's manipulations the adductors are divided near their origin from the pelvis by a few sweeps of a tenotomy knife, which is inserted over the muscles as they are put on the stretch by abducting the limb. This is done a week before the main operation is undertaken, and the small wound will then have healed.

The most scrupulous care must be bestowed on the purification of the skin in these cases, and the only safe way is to purify the whole extremity as well as the groin and the buttock, as the manipulations during the operation are numerous and prolonged. The limb is enveloped in sterilized towels bandaged firmly on with a sterilized bandage wet with 1 in 2,000 biniodide solution. The child must lie upon sterilized cloths, and a sterilized towel should be pinned firmly round the waist so that there shall be no risk of the hands of the surgeon or his assistant coming into contact with unsterilized parts.

The incision, which is seen in Fig. 50, commences just below the anterior superior iliac spine, and is carried downwards and inwards between the outer margin of the sartorius and the adjacent edge of the extensor fasciæ femoris for about three inches. This incision is generally prolonged upwards parallel to and just over the outer edge of the iliac crest for about three inches. The incision below opens up the intermuscular interval which leads at once down to the neck and head of

the bone. As a rule the finger feels the rounded head projecting forwards, as the dislocation in these young children is practically always of the anterior variety. The incision is deepened above so as to divide the extensor fasciæ femoris from its origin from the outer aspect of the ilium. This gives excellent exposure of the whole hip area, and the

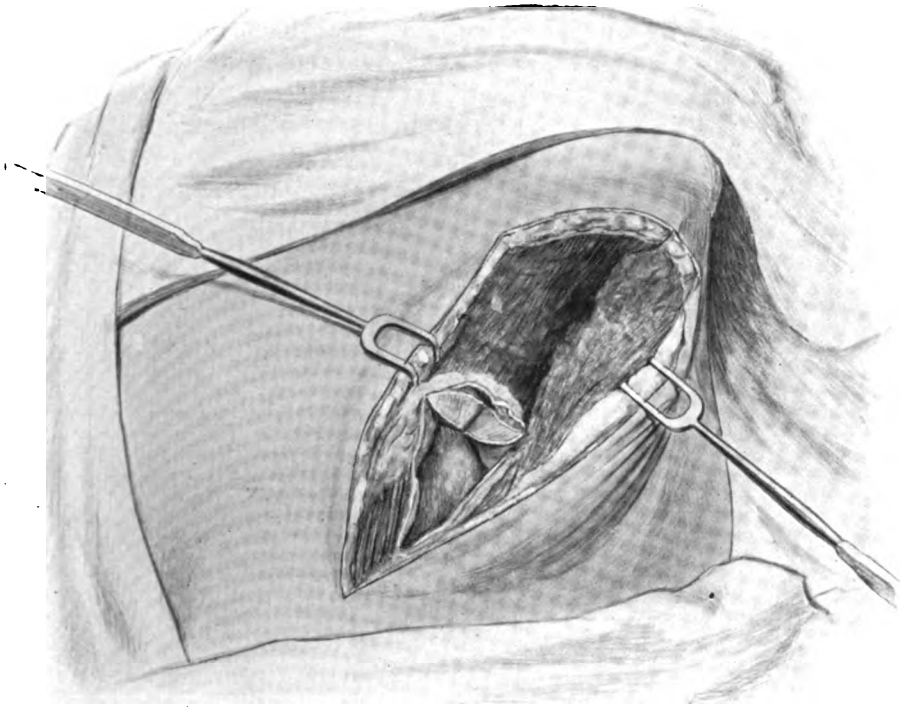


FIG. 50. ANTERIOR INCISION FOR EXPOSURE OF THE HIP-JOINT. The neck of the bone is seen exposed and the cotyloid ligament divided. The incision has been prolonged above so as to detach the tensor fasciæ femoris from its origin.

capsule is then incised over the head of the bone, which is made to protrude forwards through it.

On introducing the finger through the capsule it will be found that the head of the bone has been lying in a diverticulum above and in front of the acetabulum. The latter can always be identified by the finger and there is invariably a strong band derived from the Y-ligament stretched over its anterior aspect. Between this band and the subjacent edge of the acetabulum the head of the bone has to pass before the dislocation can be reduced. The surgeon now takes the limb in one hand

and attempts to reduce the dislocation, keeping the index finger of the other hand in the acetabulum as a guide. The best way to attempt reduction is to flex the limb fully and then to abduct it to its fullest limit, circumducting the whole limb outwards whilst doing so. This manœuvre is very like that practised for the reduction of an ordinary dislocation. No set instructions can be given for these manipulations, however, as they will vary with the alterations that have taken place in the neck of the femur. As a rule this is inclined unduly forward, so that when the head of the bone is in the acetabulum the limb is in a position of marked inward rotation. It will often be necessary to detach part of the capsule from the front of the acetabulum before the aperture becomes sufficiently large for the head of the bone to pass into it. There is never any doubt as to when reduction has been effected; the head of the bone slips in with a loud click and the joint at once becomes stable and remains so as long as that position is maintained. When the head is allowed to slip out of the acetabulum there is the characteristic sucking noise, and the finger is always able to examine the joint and see if the bone is in position or not.

When reduction has thus been attained, the position of maximum stability is determined; this is the position in which the head of the bone remains in the acetabulum with the least risk of displacement, and the limb must be kept in this position throughout the rest of the operation and must be immobilized in it subsequently. This position is often similar to that in which the limb is put up after Lorenz's manipulations, but it is not by any means always so; it is chiefly dependent upon the direction of the neck of the femur. In the last case in which I operated the limb was in a position of extreme inward rotation after reduction of the dislocation. It is nearly always necessary to keep the knee flexed in order to relax the tension of the hamstrings, which are otherwise apt to shoot the head of the bone out of the acetabulum.

The limb is entrusted to the assistant, who keeps it rigidly in the correct position. As long as this position is maintained there is no fear of dislocation recurring, and the child can be moved about with ease. The least alteration of the position, however, is apt to result in a sudden reproduction of the dislocation. The wound is now closed; before doing this I usually excise as much as possible of the redundant capsule, which is now unnecessary as the head of the bone is in the acetabulum. The edges of this are brought together with stout catgut and this forms a further barrier against reproduction of the dislocation. The soft tissues are brought together over the front of the joint with a few buried catgut sutures, and the wound is sutured completely without a drainage tube after every bleeding point has been tied.

Before sewing up the wound, the child is lifted on to the special support fixed to the table that Lorenz employs for the application of his plaster casings, and is held steady on this by an assistant, folded blankets or pillows being placed under the thorax to render the trunk horizontal. It is important to do it at this stage of the proceedings, since recurrence of the dislocation might occur from a clumsy movement on the part of the assistant, and if this occur before the wound is sewn up it is quite simple to reduce the dislocation under the guidance of the finger in the wound.

The dressings are applied and fastened in position by a few turns of a sterilized spica bandage. A pair of woollen combinations is then drawn on, and outside this a plaster of Paris spica is applied, taking in the knee in the flexed position. Before applying the bandage stout whip-cord, which has been steeped in melted beeswax, is laid over the combinations in the positions in which the casing is to be sawn for subsequent removal. These serve as guides for pulling through a Gigli's wire saw, which is the speediest and best method of removing the casing. The ends of the cord should project for several inches above and below the spica so that they may be tied together after the plaster has set, and then there will be no risk of their being pulled out. The spica is strengthened over the flexure of the knee and the front of the groin by applying strands of tow, which are teased out in plaster cream; this gives the bandages a toughness that prevents them from cracking. The child is kept under the anæsthetic during the application of the plaster and is not allowed to come round until it has set, when the edges are trimmed off and he is put back to bed.

After-treatment. The stitches are removed at the end of a fortnight. In order to do this the plaster of Paris casing must be removed. Another casing is applied immediately, and the utmost care must be taken to keep the limb in its original position throughout the removal of the plaster and the stitches and the application of the fresh casing. The child should always be under anæsthesia, from which it is not allowed to recover until the bandage has set. Fresh casings will have to be applied at intervals of two or three months, the limb meanwhile being brought down into its normal position by degrees, as each fresh plaster is applied. The knee is not included in the bandage after the first four months, and at the end of the first six months the child may be allowed to get about, the limb being still somewhat abducted. If the heel of the boot on the sound side be a little thickened it will tend to diminish the chance of the head of the bone slipping out of place. For further information upon this subject the reader may consult a paper by the author in the *Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1903, vol. ii.

SECTION II

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE BONES AND JOINTS

PART I

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE BONES

BY

HAROLD J. STILES, M.B., F.R.C.S. (Edin.), Lieutenant-Colonel, R.A.M.C.(T.).

Surgeon to Chalmers Hospital, Edinburgh, and to the Royal Hospital for Sick Children, Edinburgh

CHAPTER I

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE DIAPHYSES OF THE LONG BONES

THE operations upon the disease as it occurs in the long bones proper, that is to say, in those possessing an epiphysis at each end of the diaphysis, will be considered first. The seat of election for the disease to attack these bones is, in the writer's experience, undoubtedly the growing extremities of the diaphyses.

As the tuberculous focus in the end of the diaphysis develops, it sooner or later comes to invade the neighbouring structures. The nature of the operative treatment will not only be influenced by the particular bone involved, but will depend also on the extent and route of spread of the lesion, namely, whether it has made its way into the joint, into the soft parts outside the joint, or up the shaft of the bone. When the epiphysis is small, as is the case, for example, with the upper epiphysis of the femur and the lower epiphysis of the humerus, the adjacent diaphyseal extremities are very closely related to the cavity of the joint, as they are separated from it merely by the periosteum and the synovial membrane, with more or less intervening synovial fatty tissue. These anatomical relationships explain why the hip and elbow become so early involved secondary to a primary bone focus. In such cases the primary osseous lesion is dealt with at the same time that the joint is operated upon. When, however, the epiphysis adjacent to the juxta-epiphyseal focus is a large one, as is the case, for example, with the upper epiphysis of the humerus and the lower epiphysis of the femur, the neighbouring joint generally escapes. The disease meanwhile tends to advance either up the diaphysis or to the surface of the bone outside the joint.

In addition to the primary localized juxta-epiphyseal focus so commonly met with, we occasionally have to deal with tuberculosis of the diaphysis in a more diffuse form. It is this form of the disease which will be specially referred to under the heading of tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis. Although apparently of rare occurrence in other European countries, as well as in the American and Australian continents, it is by no means rare, at any rate in this country, as the writer has operated on upwards of fifty cases of the affection in the Royal Hospital for Sick Children, Edinburgh, during the last ten years.

OPERATIONS FOR PRIMARY TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE DIAPHYSIS

Primary tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis may start either in the spongy tissue at some distance from the epiphyseal cartilage or in the medullary canal, and in each situation the disease may present itself as a more or less circumscribed focus, or it may take the progressive infiltrating form, originally described by König. Occasionally the infiltration may involve the entire length of the medullary canal. It not infrequently happens, however, that a primary focus, beginning in the juxta-epiphyseal region (the metaphysis), spreads as a tuberculous infiltration into the medullary cavity, so that it is not always possible to draw a sharp distinction between metaphyseal and diaphyseal (medullary) tuberculosis.

The circumscribed form of the disease generally occurs as a soft, caseous, avascular focus, surrounded by an advancing zone of active tuberculous tissue, which is of a greyish colour, semi-translucent, and slightly vascular. The surrounding bone, apart from its increased vascularity, may appear almost normal; in some cases it is rarefied, while in others again, especially if the disease be very chronic and tending to heal spontaneously, it is more or less sclerosed. Sometimes the focus contains one or more small sequestra, but even when the sequestrum is single, it is seldom of large size. Only rarely is the focus represented by a chronic abscess, and when this is the case the wall of the abscess very seldom presents the smooth sclerosed surface met with in the chronic staphylococcal abscess, known as Brodie's abscess.

The congestion set up in the surrounding bone by the presence of the tuberculous focus spreads through the Haversian systems to the periosteum, with the result that a formative osteoplastic periostitis is set up, and this gives rise to the deposit of a layer of new vascular and porous bone between the periosteum and the cortex. It is this sheath of subperiosteal new bone which gives to the disease its most important and characteristic diagnostic sign, namely, thickening of the diaphysis; indeed, in the early stage of the disease this is the only physical sign present. Its importance, therefore, cannot be overestimated.

As the disease almost invariably occurs during childhood, congenital syphilis is the only affection with which it is likely to be confounded. There is seldom any difficulty in excluding the latter condition.

A good radiogram will not only confirm the diagnosis, but in many instances demonstrates quite distinctly the position, size, and shape of the focus, the presence or absence of a sequestrum, and the thickness and extent of the subperiosteal sheath of new bone. It follows, there-

fore, that a skiagram should always be taken before proceeding to operation, as it shows exactly how much bone requires to be removed.

As the tuberculous focus enlarges, first the cancellous, then the cortical, and ultimately the new subperiosteal bone becomes invaded at

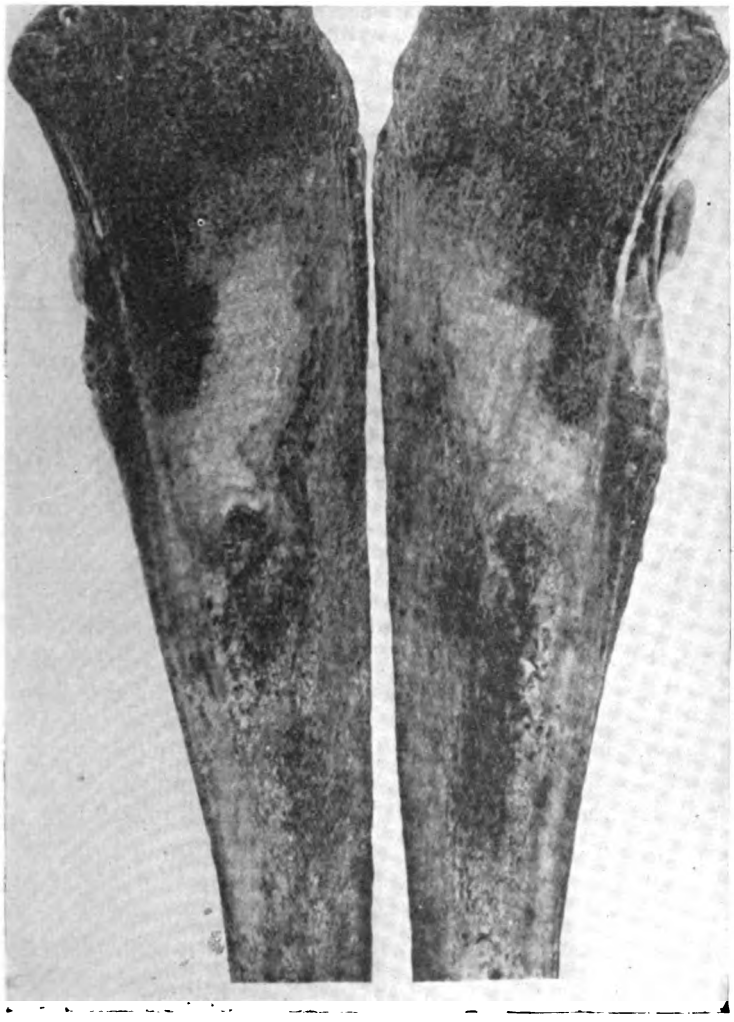


FIG. 51. UPPER TWO-THIRDS OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF A TIBIA RESECTED FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS. From a child aged 10 years. The upper end of the diaphysis was wrenched away from the epiphysis. The specimen is bisected, exposing two sawn surfaces. The light shadow represents an elongated and somewhat irregular caseous focus. Note the thick layer of new subperiosteal bone, especially posteriorly where the disease has reached the cortex. (*Photograph by Mr. Richard Muir.*)

one or other part of its circumference. Finally, the periosteum gives way, and a deep-seated abscess is produced; this sooner or later becomes superficial, and if left to itself ruptures externally, leaving a chronic sinus.

Operation. The operative treatment of primary tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis consists in the first place of freely exposing the bone for a little distance beyond the extent of the disease. The incision is so planned that the dissection occasions the minimum of injury to the soft parts. An intermuscular plane is chosen which avoids injuring more especially the nerve-supply to the muscles.

The method usually adopted is, after freely opening up the bone with a chisel, to thoroughly gouge and scrape away the diseased focus. This having been done, either some preparation of iodoform or pure carbolic acid is applied to the wall of the cavity; the latter is then stuffed with iodoform gauze or filled with Mosetig-Moorhof's iodoform-wax filling.

While the above method is that which has been invariably employed by those surgeons who have recorded cases of this disease, the writer is strongly of opinion that such a procedure should be the exception rather than the rule. The early results of such a method of treatment are satisfactory enough, but unfortunately it too often happens that the patient sooner or later returns with the scar tuberculous and the seat of a sinus leading down to further disease in the bone. Such a result is not to be wondered at when we consider that it is almost impossible to remove all the affected area by the gouging process.

After a few such disappointments the writer has, for a number of years past, treated the affection by subperiosteal resection of the diseased part of the diaphysis. Care is taken to divide the bone well above and below the focus; in short, the disease is dealt with radically, as if it were a malignant tumour.

By the aid of skiagraphy the disease can be diagnosed in its early stage, before the focus has perforated the bone. Then is the most favourable stage for operation, as the knife can be kept outside the infected area. No iodoform or other antiseptic need be applied to the wound, no stuffing is introduced, and the wound can almost invariably be closed without drainage.

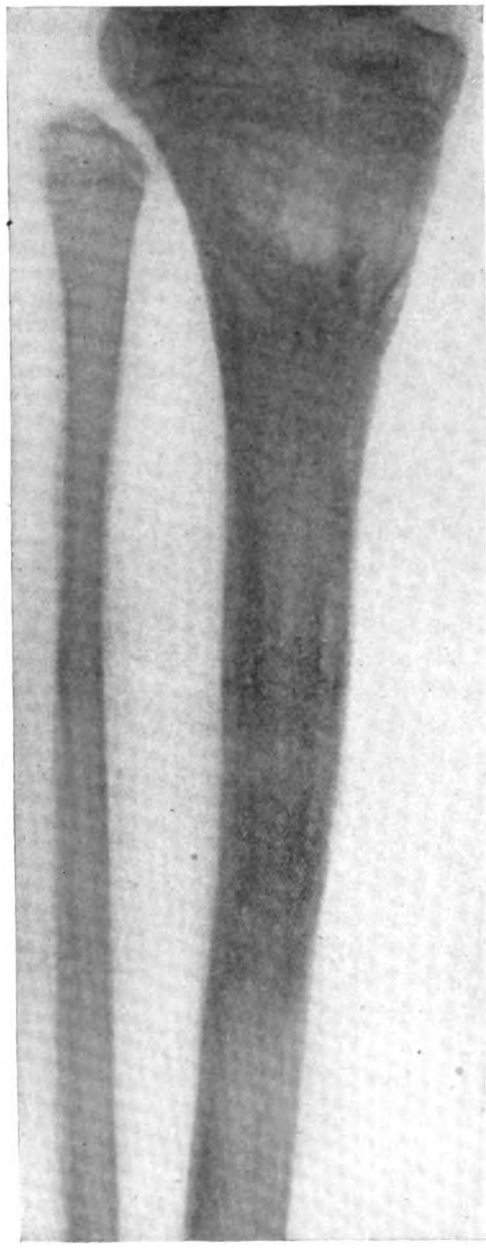
The best instrument for dividing the shaft of the bone is Gigli's wire saw. This is passed round the shaft inside the periosteum, which has been previously thoroughly separated all round with a suitable elevator. For introducing the saw behind the bone the writer uses an instrument (Fig. 52) which resembles somewhat a broad flattened aneurysm needle with an oblique slit leading into a large eye placed as close as possible to its extremity. After the instrument has been passed behind the

bone and the eye made to project on the opposite side between the bone and the periosteum, the loop at the end of the wire saw is hooked into the eye by means of the slit above mentioned. By withdrawing the instrument, the saw is carried behind the bone; the handles are then hooked on, and the bone is sawn across. In young children the bones of the forearm may be snipped across with ordinary bone-forceps, but this instrument leaves a bruised and less even section, with the result that there is often some irregularity subsequently where the new bone joins the old. By using Gigli's wire saw, on the other hand, it is often almost impossible, even with a skiagram, to tell, after the new bone has completely developed, where the bone had been divided.

After the diaphysis has been divided beyond one extremity of the lesion, a strong hook is introduced into the medullary canal, and while the divided end is forcibly dragged upwards the periosteum is separated from the deep surfaces of the bone until it is freed to a little beyond the opposite limit of the diseased focus. When this level has been reached, Gigli's saw is again applied and the bone divided. The sawn surfaces of the segment of bone removed are carefully examined to make sure that they are free from disease; if not, more bone must be removed.

If the disease has approached close to one end of the diaphysis, or if it has spread along it from a juxta-epiphyseal lesion, the diseased segment must be removed right up to the epiphysis. After sawing across the diaphysis, the separation of the diseased portion from the epiphysis is effected by seizing its divided end and wrenching it away from the epiphysis. When this has been done it will be found that the epiphyseal cartilage, instead of coming away with the diaphysis, is left firmly attached to the epiphysis. This is what one would expect on anatomical grounds; were it otherwise, the radical operation would be contra-indicated on account of the shortening which would result. As long as the disease has not actually involved the epiphyseal cartilage itself, the writer has found that the above operation does not give rise to any subsequent shortening.

FIG. 52. INSTRUMENT FOR INTRODUCING GIGLI'S WIRE SAW ROUND THE BONE. Used in resecting a portion of the diaphysis. See also Fig. 72.



The bleeding from the periosteal tube seldom amounts to more than a general oozing which soon ceases. Occasionally, the main nutrient artery needs ligaturing. After the bleeding has practically ceased, the periosteal tube is closed with a buried catgut suture; care is taken to suture carefully the two extremities of the incision in the periosteum in such a way as to completely re-cover the sawn stumps of the bone. It is this precaution, combined with the use of Gigli's saw, which enables Nature to effect such a remarkably accurate fusion of the new bone with the old stump (Fig. 53). In suturing the periosteum, the writer prefers to use an interrupted rather than a continuous suture, for, should the periosteal tube become over-distended with blood, the tension is removed by some of the blood escaping between the sutures.

A few cutaneous catgut sutures are also employed to stitch the deep fascia, and, in the case of a deep bone such as the radius or fibula, the muscles are also stitched, either along with or separ-

FIG. 53. SKIAGRAM OF THE LIMB FROM WHICH THE SPECIMEN SEEN IN FIG. 51 WAS REMOVED. Shows new formation of bone one year after the operation. Note the delicate transverse line of sclerosis at the junction of the new and old bone. Ossification is still somewhat incomplete towards the upper part of the new diaphysis. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

ately from the periosteal tube. The operation is completed by closing the skin wound with interrupted sutures of silkworm-gut.

If a sinus already exists at the time of operation it should first of all be well scraped and disinfected with pure carbolic acid. The orifice should be excised by including it in an elliptical incision, which may either form part of the main incision or be independent of it; in the latter case it may be taken advantage of for drainage.

It not infrequently happens that, by the time the patient reaches the surgeon, the focus has given rise to a chronic abscess in the soft parts. As regards situation, it may be either subperiosteal, intermuscular, or more superficial, depending on its duration. In such a case an endeavour is made to plan the incision so that it will give free access to the abscess cavity as well as to the diseased bone. If this be not possible a separate incision must be made. The whole abscess cavity should be freely laid open and any outlying pockets of pus must be followed out. After the cavity and its ramifications have been thoroughly curetted, some sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste is rubbed into the wall. This preparation, which the writer uses in all tuberculous cases, consists of a mixture of one part of iodoform and two parts of subnitrate of bismuth stored in a 1–1,000 solution of perchloride of mercury. Enough for the operation is removed from the stock jar with a spoon and transferred to a small sterilized vessel. This mixture is preferable to dry iodoform, to the glycerine emulsion, or to the ethereal solution. Its advantages are that it is less toxic, so that more can be used, and that it forms rather more of a paste than sublimated iodoform alone.

After-treatment. The after-treatment consists in keeping the limb quiet in good position for a few weeks, after which it is put up in a suitable splint or in plaster of Paris until the new bone is sufficiently well developed to allow the patient to begin to use the limb. If the disease has not involved the periosteum, the new bone, as already stated, is perfectly re-formed in from three to six months (Fig. 74). If, on the other hand, the periosteum has been invaded by the disease, the reproduction is less perfect.

The steps of the more typical operations for the localized as well as the more diffuse varieties of tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphyses of the various long bones will now be described.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE HUMERUS

If the skiagram shows a limited focus of tubercle at the *upper end of the diaphysis,* thorough scraping will usually suffice to bring about a cure. A dissection is made so as to expose the surgical neck of the

humerus, where it is free from muscular attachments, namely, beneath the posterior part of the deltoid, immediately in front of the insertion of the teres minor and the upper fibres of origin of the outer head of the triceps. As the bone is deeply placed, the incision must be a comparatively long one; it is made along the middle three-fifths of the posterior border of the deltoid. After dividing the integuments and deep fascia, the posterior border of the muscle is freed and retracted

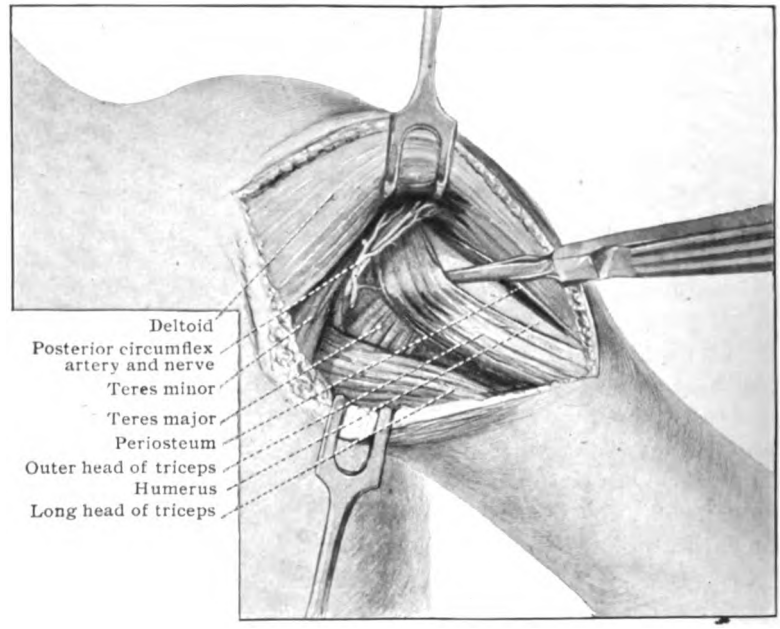


FIG. 54. EXPOSURE OF THE UPPER END OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE HUMERUS. The deltoid is retracted forwards, and the posterior circumflex vessels and nerve are seen coming through the quadrilateral space; the periosteum is divided longitudinally exactly in front of the upper part of the origin of the outer head of the triceps; a rugine is seen separating the periosteum from the bone.

well forwards. To reach the surgical neck of the humerus it will, as a rule, be found necessary to divide transversely the upper part of the posterior fibres of the deltoid. Some of the cutaneous branches of the circumflex nerve are divided, and forceps are applied to the accompanying superficial branches of the posterior circumflex artery. The lower border of the teres minor is now identified, and by following it to its insertion the humerus will be reached immediately above the surgical neck. The circumflex nerve and the posterior circumflex artery are then defined as they come through the quadrilateral space in the posterior wall of the axilla. The boundaries of this space as seen from behind are:

above, the lower border of the teres minor; below, the teres major; externally, the surgical neck of the humerus; internally, the long head of the triceps.

After carefully isolating and freeing the above vessels and nerves they may be retracted downwards so as to give sufficient room for applying the gouge. The bone is opened up in the first instance immediately below the capsule, and in gouging away the focus care is taken not to

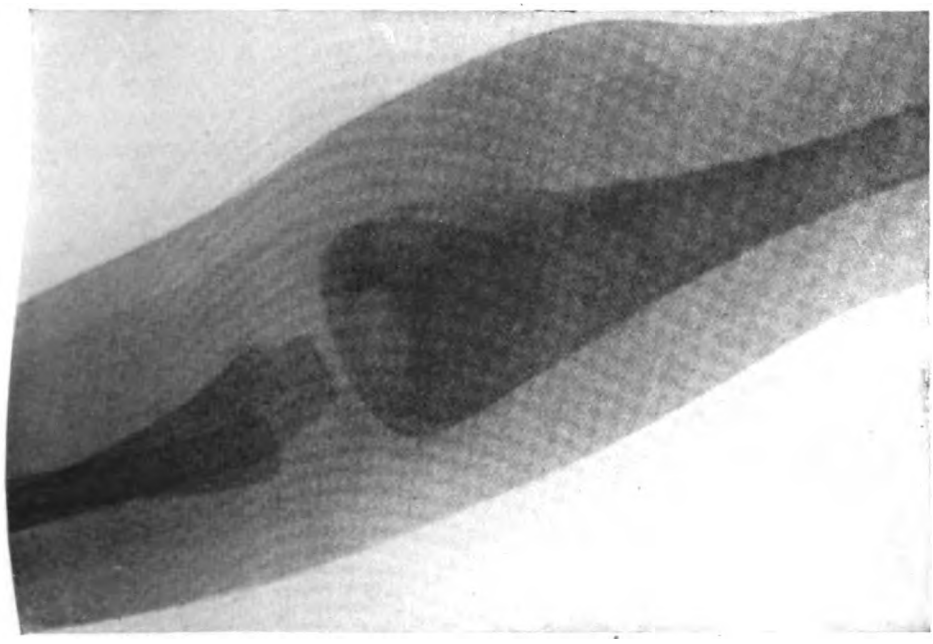


FIG. 55. SKIAGRAM SHOWING DIFFUSE TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE LOWER THIRD OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE HUMERUS. From a child aged 1 year and 4 months. The disease has perforated the bone and given rise to a secondary abscess above the internal condyle. (*By Dr. H. Rainy.*)

open unnecessarily into the joint or to injure the epiphyseal cartilage. Should the focus extend for some little distance down the shaft, the circumflex vessels and nerves are retracted upwards, and the opening in the bone is enlarged downwards immediately in front of the origin of the outer head of the triceps, the periosteum being previously incised and stripped backwards and forwards. After thoroughly scraping away all the disease, sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste is rubbed into the cavity, or the latter is filled with Mosetig-Moorhof's iodoform-wax filling. The wound is closed without drainage.

Resection of the upper third of the diaphysis of the humerus is merely an extension of the operation above described. Instead of goug-

ing into the bone, the periosteum is incised longitudinally from immediately below the capsular ligament downwards parallel to, and immediately in front of, the origin of the outer head of the triceps. The circumflex vessels and nerves are retracted upwards. The periosteum is divided in front of the outer head of the triceps, thereby avoiding the musculo-spiral nerve and the superior profunda vessels. After sawing across the humerus with Gigli's saw, and hooking up its divided end

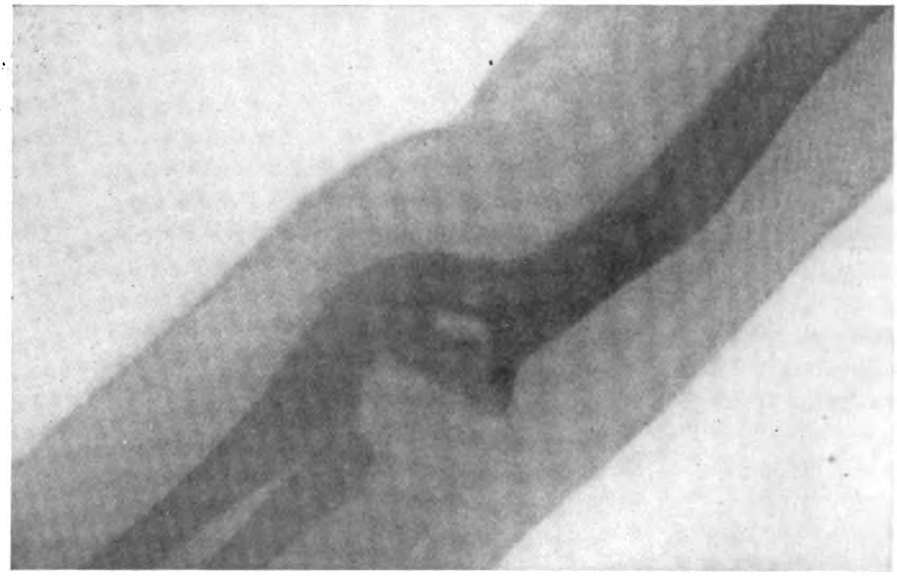


FIG. 56. SKIAGRAM OF THE ARM SHOWN IN THE PREVIOUS FIGURE. Taken four months after subperiosteal resection of the lower third of the diaphysis of the humerus. The elbow-joint has not been opened into. Note how well the lower end of the bone has modelled itself. There is slight angular deformity at the junction of the old and the new bone. (*By Dr. H. Rainy.*)

in the manner already described, the periosteum and the three muscles inserted into the region of the bicipital groove are carefully separated from the bone, which is then wrenched away from its upper epiphysis. This can be done without opening into the joint. The periosteal tube is carefully sutured with catgut and the wound closed.

After-treatment. The after-treatment must be directed towards keeping the periosteal tube on the stretch so as to prevent shortening as well as angular deformity at the junction of the new with the old bone. For the first few weeks the patient is kept on his back with extension applied to the arm in the abducted position. After this the patient is allowed to get about with the limb in a rectangular splint

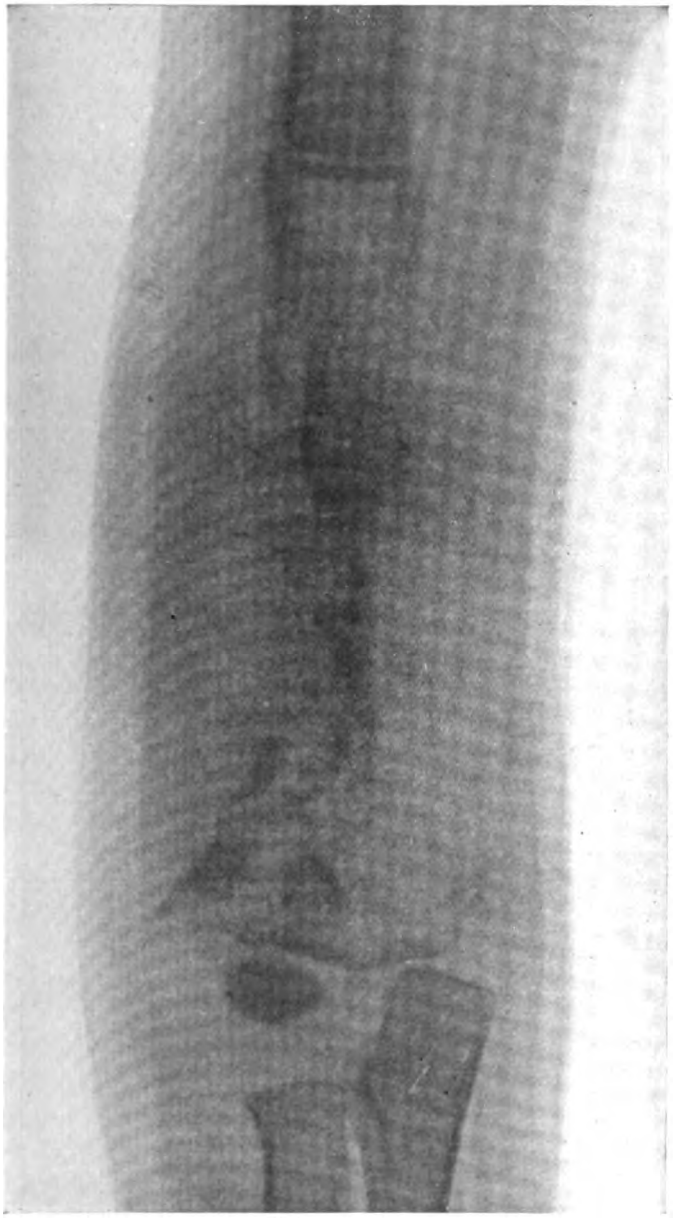


FIG. 57. SKIAGRAM SHOWING RE-FORMATION OF THE HUMERUS. Taken six weeks after subperiosteal resection of the lower two-thirds of the diaphysis for extensive tuberculous osteomyelitis in a child aged 6 years. The elbow-joint has not been opened into. Note the 'patchy' manner in which new bone is forming, and the ferrule of new subperiosteal bone surrounding the stump of the old bone. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

and light weight extension applied to the lower fragment. In three months the bone is sufficiently re-formed to allow the patient to begin to use the arm.

In resection of the lower half of the diaphysis of the humerus the incision is begun on the back of the external condyle and carried vertically upwards immediately behind the external intermuscular septum as far as the musculo-spiral groove. The bone is reached by deepening the incision through the fleshy fibres of the inner head of the triceps. The musculo-spiral (radial) nerve and superior profunda vessels are carefully freed and retracted forwards and upwards. If the disease extends higher up than the middle of the shaft, some of the fibres of the outer head of the triceps must be divided in an upward and backward direction parallel to and behind the musculo-spiral nerve, the external cutaneous branches of which are divided. The periosteum is divided along the whole length of the wound, and the bone, after having been divided at the requisite level, is completely freed from the periosteum, and then wrenched away from the lower epiphysis. In spite of the fact that the capsule of the elbow-joint is attached to the diaphysis considerably above the level of the epiphyseal cartilage, it is interesting to note that on both occasions on which the writer has done this operation he was able to wrench the lower end of the diaphysis away from the epiphyseal cartilage subperiosteally without opening into the joint.

After-treatment. The after-treatment is practically the same as for resection of the upper half of the diaphysis. As soon as the new bone has sufficiently formed to allow of the arm being flexed, passive movement is begun with the object of preventing stiffness at the elbow. It may be necessary to administer an anæsthetic on the first occasion this is done, and care must be taken not to fracture the new bone.

Results. In the four cases in which the humerus was operated on, from the lower third to the lower two-thirds of the diaphysis was resected. In all the cases there were tuberculous lesions in other bones. Primary union was obtained in three cases. One case healed slowly by second intention, but five years later the child was found to be in the best of health with no trace of tuberculous disease. In this case the humerus had re-formed unevenly and the arm was somewhat flail-like, though quite useful. In another case there was some angling at the junction of the old and new bone, which, however, was easily remedied by fracturing and splinting; six years later the functional result was found to be excellent, and the resected bone perfectly re-formed. In a third case where primary union was obtained, the child died about a year later, the cause of death being unknown. In the fourth and most recent cases the humerus is re-forming well, and the result promises to be good.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE RADIUS

Cases requiring resection are more frequently met with in the bones of the forearm than in the humerus. Resection of the *lower third* or so of the radius ranks amongst the commonest of these operations. The incision is commenced a finger's breadth below the dorso-radial tubercle on the back of the lower end of the radius,—a tubercle which separates the groove for the extensor carpi radialis brevior from that for the extensor secundi internodii pollicis (pollicis longus)—and is carried vertically

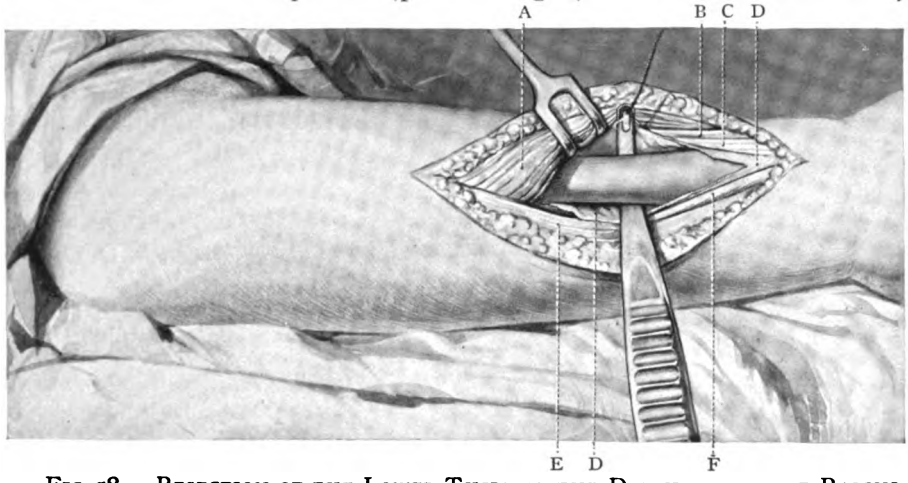


FIG. 58. RESECTION OF THE LOWER THIRD OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE RADIUS. The extensor pollicis brevis has been retracted upwards and outwards; the extensor minimi (quinti) digiti and extensor pollicis longus have been retracted inwards; the periosteum has been split, and the instrument for passing the wire saw has been introduced between the anterior aspect of the bone and the periosteum. A, Extensor pollicis brevis; B, Extensor carpi radialis longior; C, Extensor carpi radialis brevior; D, D, Periosteum; E, Extensor minimi digiti; F, Extensor pollicis longus.

up the middle of the lower half of the back of the forearm. After ligaturing the divided ends of the commencement of the radial vein, the deep fascia, along with the upper part of the posterior annular (dorsal carpal) ligament, is divided, and the outer border of the extensor digitorum communis is identified and freed. Appearing from beneath this muscle are the fleshy fibres of the extensor ossis (abductor pollicis longus) and the extensor primi internodii pollicis (extensor pollicis brevis), which pass obliquely downwards and outwards over the back of the radius and the radial extensor of the wrist. To expose the radius the extensor digitorum communis is retracted inwards, while the fleshy bellies of the extensor ossis and extensor primi internodii pollicis are retracted well

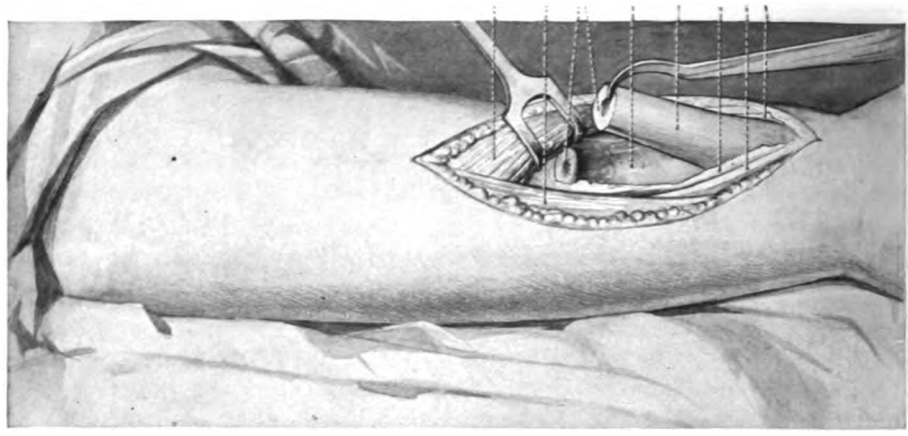


FIG. 59. FURTHER STAGE OF RESECTION OF THE LOWER THIRD OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE RADIUS. The diaphysis has been divided and hooked upwards to enable the periosteum to be separated from the anterior aspect of the bone. A, Extensor pollicis brevis; B, Extensor minimi digiti, C, C, Radius; D, Periosteum; E, E, E, Extensor pollicis longus.

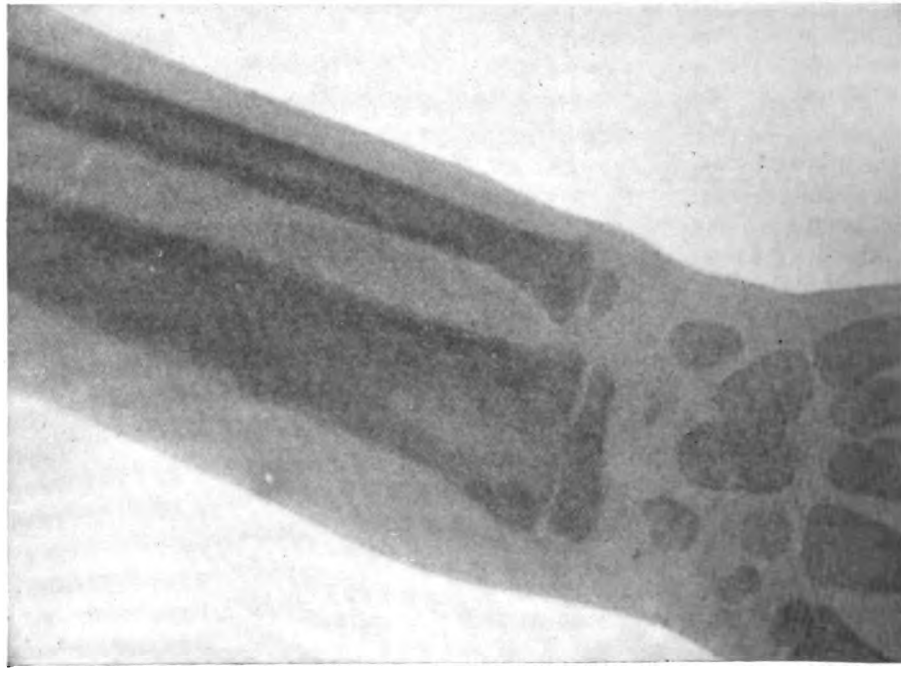


FIG. 60. SKIAGRAM SHOWING DIFFUSE TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE LOWER HALF OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE RADIUS. From a child aged 7 years. Note the thickening of the bone. The disease has commenced to invade the epiphyseal cartilage. (*By Dr. H. Rainy.*)

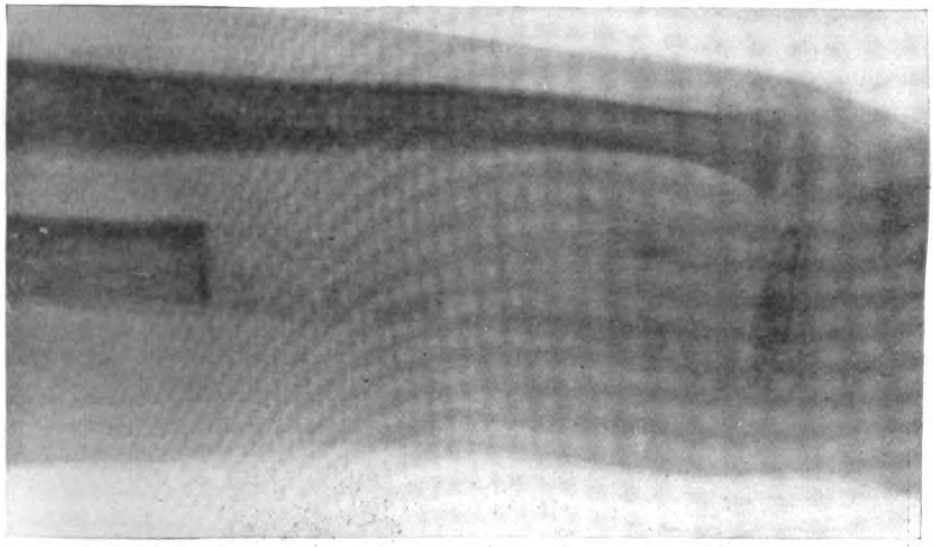


FIG. 61. SKIAGRAM OF THE LIMB SHOWN IN THE PREVIOUS FIGURE. Showing the condition six weeks after subperiosteal resection of the lower half of the diaphysis. Note the 'patchy' manner in which the new bone is forming. Owing to the involvement of the epiphyseal cartilage and adjacent periosteum the ultimate result showed some shortening of the radius and deviation of the hand towards the radial side. (*By Dr. H. Rainy.*)

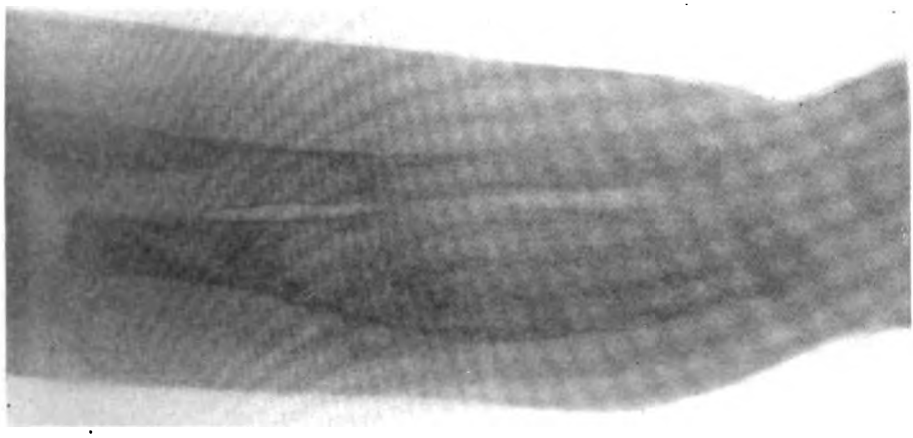


FIG. 62. SKIAGRAM SHOWING DIFFUSE TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE LOWER THREE-FOURTHS OF THE SHAFT OF THE RADIUS. From a child aged 1 year and 4 months. Note the great thickening of the bone, in the interior of which a large sequestrum is seen. (*By Dr. H. Rainy.*)

upwards and outwards. The fibres of the latter muscle are partly detached from their origin from the back of the radius. The periosteum is now divided longitudinally as far upwards as is necessary. The terminal branch of the posterior interosseous (deep radial) nerve dips beneath the extensor secundi internodii pollicis, and is therefore left uninjured at the ulnar edge of the wound. The terminal branch of the posterior interosseous artery may require to be ligatured. After dividing the radius and hooking it up into the wound, the periosteum is separated from the anterior aspect of the bone, and the latter is wrenched away from the

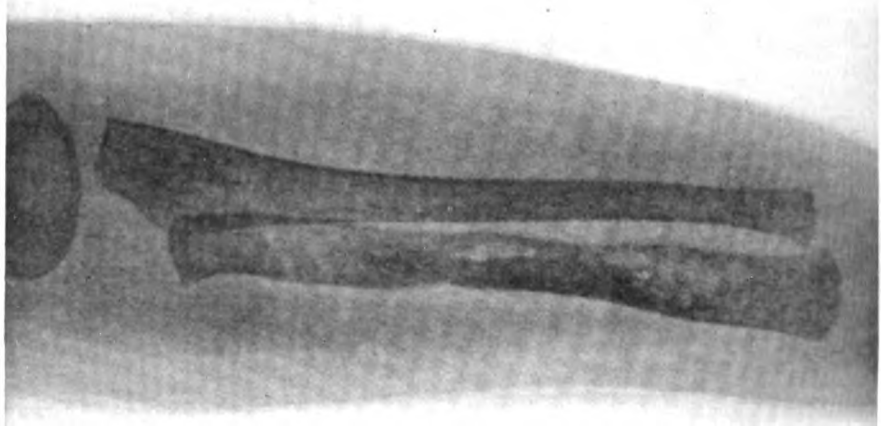


FIG. 63. SKIAGRAM FROM THE SAME CASE AS SHOWN IN FIG. 62. Showing the condition four months after subperiosteal resection of the greater part of the diaphysis. Note the rapidity with which new bone has formed; also the perfect junction (represented by the dark transverse linear shadow) between the old and the new bone towards the lower end of the diaphysis. (*By Dr. H. Rainy.*)

lower epiphysis. If the bone fractures across where it has been weakened by the disease, the lower portion can easily be shelled out separately.

In some cases operated on by the writer, the disease had involved *the greater part of the diaphysis of the radius* so that the bone had to be divided immediately below the bicipital tuberosity. In these cases the best plan is to resect the lower half or so of the bone in the first place, and then to complete the operation by continuing the dissection upwards until the bone is reached above the level of the disease. For this purpose the incision already described is continued upwards along the outer border of the extensor digitorum communis, so as to open up freely the inter-

muscular septum between it and the extensor carpi radialis brevior. In the floor of the wound there are exposed, from below upwards, the extensor primi internodii pollicis, the extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, and finally the supinator brevis. The posterior interosseous vessels emerge between the two latter muscles, while the nerve pierces the supinator brevis a little above its lower border. Forceps are applied to the divided branches of the artery, but care is taken not to injure the nerve.

To expose the radius above the middle of its shaft, the fleshy belly

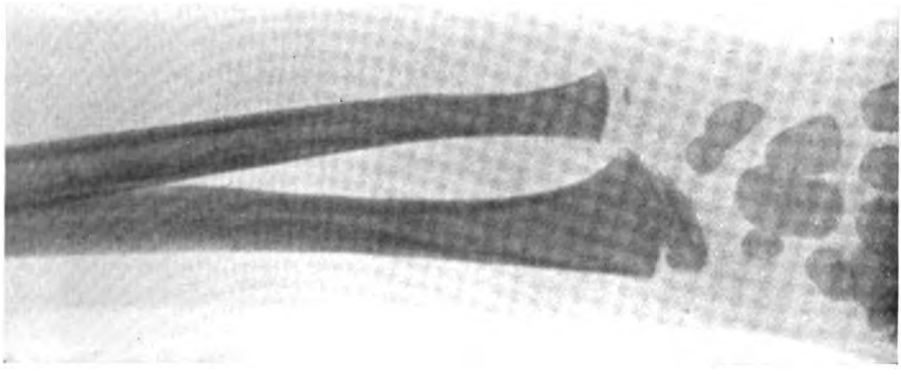


FIG. 64. SKIAGRAM FROM THE SAME CASE AS SHOWN IN THE TWO PREVIOUS FIGURES, SIX YEARS AFTER OPERATION. Note the perfect re-formation of bone. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

of the extensor carpi radialis brevior is retracted well forwards and outwards, while the extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis, previously retracted upwards and outwards, is now retracted in the opposite direction, namely, downwards and inwards. The periosteum is then incised longitudinally immediately external to the origin of the muscle, the incision being continued upwards so as to divide the lower fibres of the supinator brevis muscle parallel and external to the posterior interosseous nerve. The stump of the bone is now hooked upwards to enable the periosteum to be separated from the anterior aspect of the bone, which is then divided immediately below the bicipital tuberosity. In one case, where the disease extended still higher up, the writer was obliged to wrench the upper end of the bone away from the grasp of the orbicular (annular) ligament. When this had been done it was found that the upper epiphysis, which had not yet begun to ossify, had come away with the diaphysis.

The immediate result was satisfactory, but it is too early to say what the ultimate result will be as regards deformity and function. The operation is completed by suturing the periosteum, and after this has been done the adjacent edges of the extensor digitorum communis and the extensor carpi radialis brevior are united by a few catgut sutures so as to close the fascial envelope and repair the intermuscular septum.

If the disease be confined to the *middle third* of the radius, the bone may be more easily reached by placing the incision further outwards and passing between the fleshy belly of the supinator longus (brachio-radialis)

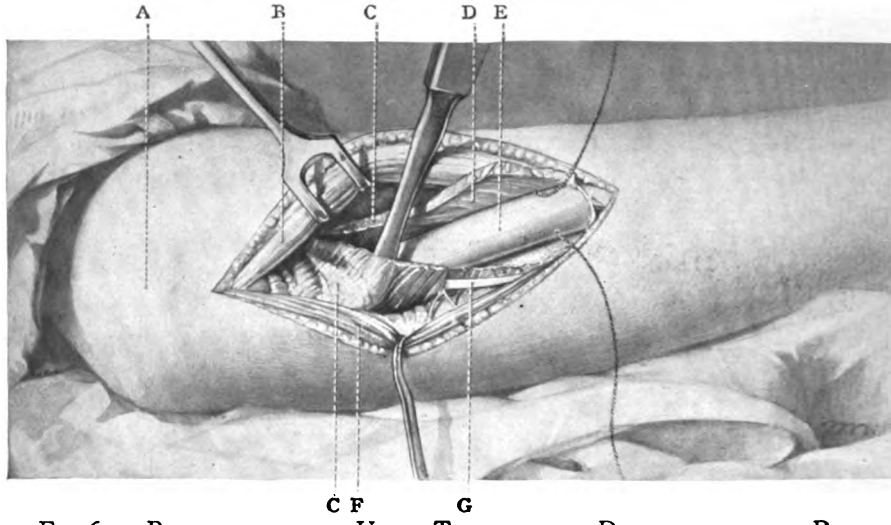


FIG. 65. RESECTION OF THE UPPER THIRD OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE RADIUS. The extensor carpi radialis brevior has been retracted forwards, the extensor digitorum communis backwards; the supinator brevis has been incised a little in front of the posterior interosseous nerve. The rugine separates the supinator brevis along with the periosteum from the upper third of the bone. A, External condyle; B, Extensor carpi radialis brevior; C, C, Supinator brevis; D, Periosteum; E, Radius; F, Extensor digitorum communis; G, Posterior interosseous nerve.

and the upper part of the tendon of the extensor carpi radialis longior. In the floor of the wound are the lower fibres of the supinator brevis, and immediately behind them the insertion of the pronator radii teres. The periosteum is incised immediately behind the latter tendon, and the incision is continued upwards through the lower fibres of the supinator brevis external to the posterior interosseous nerve.

After-treatment. The important point in the after-treatment is to prevent shortening of the radius during its re-formation. Should this occur the hand will become deviated to the radial side. The best way to prevent this deformity is to keep the hand well adducted to the ulnar

side until the bone has completely re-formed, that is to say, for about six months. This is most conveniently done by the application of a pistol-splint shaped out of a strip of aluminium.

Results. In the thirteen cases in which resection of portions of the diaphysis of the radius was performed the entire diaphysis was resected in three and the upper two-thirds in two, while the lower part of the radius to the extent of two-thirds to less than a half was resected in the other cases. As a rule the bone has re-formed well, and the functional results are excellent, but in some there is slight shortening of the radius with consequent deviation of the hand to the radial side.

FIG. 66. SKIAGRAM OF RATHER LESS THAN THE LOWER HALF OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE ULNA. From a child aged 7 years. It was resected for a localized tuberculous focus which had perforated the cortex and produced a subperiosteal abscess. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE ULNA

Tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis of the ulna is frequently met with in the region of the olecranon and upper part of the shaft. As the bone is so superficial, the thickening and tenderness produced by the secondary periostitis soon become manifest. This is fortunate, as the operation should be undertaken before the focus has had time to produce an abscess followed by a sinus, and especially before the disease has had time to extend to the joint. As the greater part of the articular extremity is developed from the diaphysis, it follows that it is impossible to remove its upper end without opening into the joint. The surgeon is obliged, therefore, to fall back on gouging as the routine operation in dealing with the disease in the upper end of the diaphysis of the ulna.

Operation. The incision is carried down to the bone over the centre of the olecranon and along the posterior border of the shaft for a variable distance, depending on the extent of the disease. Care must be taken not to open into the joint at the upper end of the incision. In separating the periosteum the anconeus will be detached along with the outer flap, while the extensor carpi ulnaris will be partly detached with the inner flap. The bone is freely gouged into and the focus thoroughly scraped out. This is one of the situations in which a sequestrum is not infrequently met with. After introducing sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste or Mosetig-Moorhof's iodoform-wax

filling into the bony cavity, the periosteum is sutured with catgut and the wound closed without drainage.

If an abscess exists, with the skin over it beginning to be involved, it is better, instead of making a vertical incision through the damaged skin, to make a longitudinal curved incision through the healthy skin just beyond the abscess. The flap having been reflected, its deep surface, which forms the superficial wall of the abscess, is carefully freed from all tubercle, partly by scraping and partly by the aid of scissors curved on the flat. If there be a possibility of the joint being involved, the above curved incision is made along the outer margin of the abscess, so that,

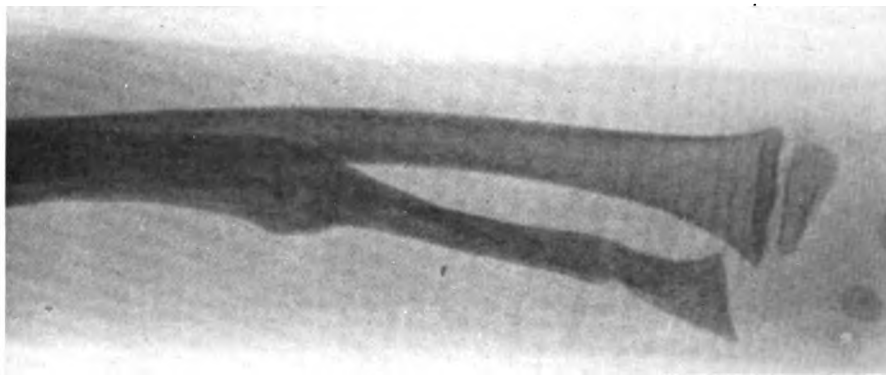


FIG. 67. SKIAGRAM SHOWING NEW FORMATION OF BONE ELEVEN WEEKS AFTER RESECTION. From the same case as the previous figure. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

should the joint require to be resected, the incision may be prolonged upwards over the posterior aspect of the radio-humeral joint and behind the external intermuscular septum. The entire incision is then practically the same as that recommended by Kocher for excision of the elbow-joint.

It is not necessary to describe in detail the steps of the operation for resection of the lower half or more of the diaphysis. The incision is of course made along the posterior subcutaneous border.

After-treatment. In the after-treatment an aluminium pistol-splint is applied so as to carry the hand as far as possible to the radial side. When the wound is healed a plaster or starch bandage may be substituted for the splint.

Results. Of the eleven cases in which a portion of the diaphysis of

the ulna was resected, the lower part to the extent of one to two thirds was resected in eight cases. The upper end was scraped in two cases, while the upper half was resected along with the elbow-joint in another case. The bone re-formed well in all the cases that could be traced except in one, where the middle third of the ulna has not re-formed at all and the other third is too thin; the consequence is that the radius is a little bent where the ulna is deficient. A perfect functional result was obtained in three cases. In one case the elbow is completely ankylosed, pronation and supination being lost, but the patient's general health is good. The other cases have either been lost sight of, or have been too recently operated on to enable one to estimate the permanent result.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE FEMUR

The epiphyseal cartilage at the upper end of the femur is at the junction of the head and neck; it follows, therefore, that a juxta-epiphyseal lesion is situated in the intracapsular portion of the neck of the bone and that the joint is soon involved. If, by the aid of skiagraphy, the focus be detected before the joint is invaded, the treatment should be conservative rather than operative, as it is almost impossible to remove all the disease without opening into and damaging the joint.

When the tuberculous focus is situated in the greater trochanter, a free incision is carried vertically over it, midway between its anterior and posterior borders. After splitting the aponeurotic insertion of the gluteus maximus (and, if necessary, nicking it a little on either side so as to admit of its being more easily retracted), the outer aspect of the trochanter is exposed, overlapped above and anteriorly by the insertion of the gluteus medius, while immediately below its root is the upper part of the vastus externus (lateralis). If the lesion be a limited one this single vertical incision is sufficient for the purpose of separating the periosteum and muscular attachments, but if it be more extensive it is better to separate them by means of an inverted T-shaped incision. The superior perforating branch of the profunda artery is divided and ligatured. The chisel (or gouge) is now applied and the bone is sufficiently opened up to allow of the disease being removed under control of the eye. After applying sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste to the cavity, the periosteum and muscular attachments are sutured back into position. A second row of sutures unites the aponeurosis of the gluteus maximus, and the wound is closed without drainage. Should a sinus be present, it must be disinfected with pure carbolic acid, or, better still, excised, and part of the wound should be left open for the introduction of a strip of iodoform gauze.

After-treatment. The limb should be kept absolutely at rest for some months, and to avoid subsequent bending of the neck (coxa vara) no weight should be borne on the limb for about a year from the date of operation. The patient, however, may be allowed to get about by means

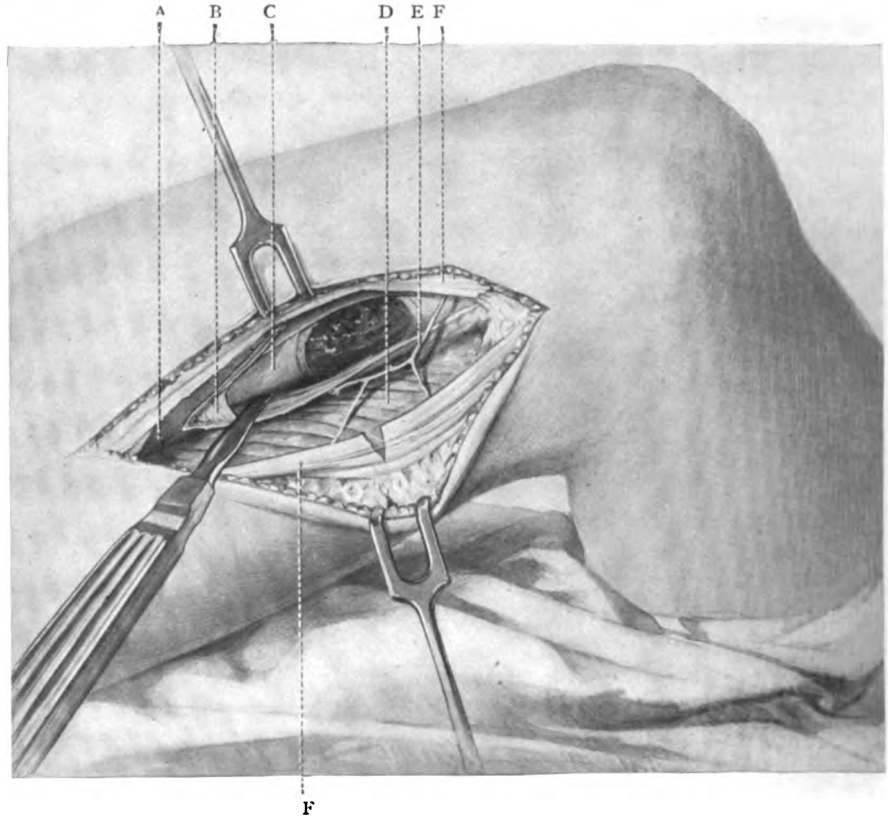


FIG. 68. EXPOSURE OF THE OUTER ASPECT OF THE LOWER THIRD OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE FEMUR. The ilio-tibial band has been split longitudinally and nicked transversely; the external intermuscular septum has been opened up, exposing the short head of the biceps and the anastomosis between the profunda artery and the superior external articular branch of the popliteal; the rugine separates the split periosteum from the posterior aspect of the diaphysis of the femur; the bone is opened into. The focus of disease is usually situated nearer to the condyle. A, Vastus externus; B, Periosteum; C, Femur; D, Biceps; E, Anastomosis between profunda and popliteal arteries; F, F, Ilio-tibial band.

of a Thomas's hip-splint, a patten being added to the boot of the sound limb.

It is advisable to have a skiagram of the hip taken every two or three

months so that the progress of the repair may be watched. By this means the surgeon is able to form a correct estimate as to when the patient should be allowed the free use of the limb.

Tuberculous osteomyelitis is comparatively common in the *lower end of the diaphysis of the femur* in the region of the trigone, and in the early stage it generally occurs as a more or less circumscribed focus limited to one or other supracondyloid region. As the disease advances the trigone becomes perforated, with the result that sooner or later a deep-seated

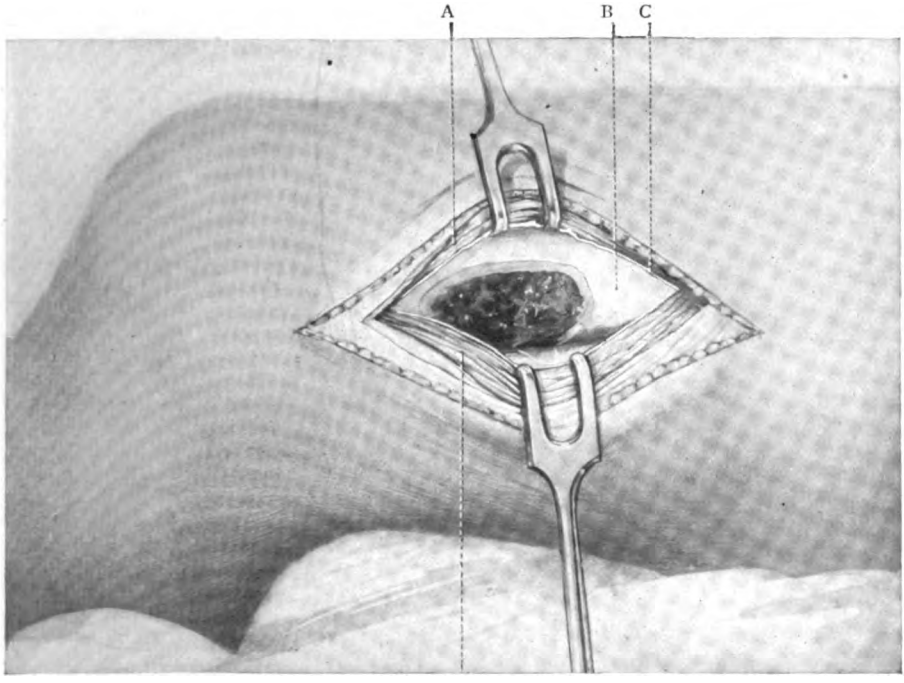


FIG. 69. EXPOSURE OF A TUBERCULOUS FOCUS IN THE INTERNAL SUPRACONDYLOID REGION OF THE FEMUR. The vastus internus (medialis) and periosteum have been split and the edges of both retracted; the bone has been opened into. A, A, Vastus internus; B, Femur; C, Periosteum.

abscess forms in the popliteal space. It is due largely to the readiness with which the focus makes its way through the trigone above the attachments of the capsular ligament, that the knee-joint itself owes its escape.

When the focus involves the *external supracondyloid region* an incision is carried from the posterior part of the outer surface of the external condyle upwards along the line of the external intermuscular septum, which separates the vastus externus from the biceps. By deepening the incision in the plane of the septum and forcibly drawing apart the

adjacent muscles by suitable retractors, the bone is at length reached. In dividing the periosteum care must be taken not to injure the superior external (lateral) articular artery, which lies close to the bone just above the external condyle. To enable the periosteum to be sufficiently stripped off the trigone it is generally necessary to make two short transverse incisions through the membrane at each extremity of the vertical incision. The lower transverse incision should be placed just above the superior external articular artery, which is displaced downwards along the periosteum.

When the disease is in the *internal supracondyloid region*, the dissection down to the bone is made either in front of or behind the tendon of the adductor magnus, depending upon the exact position of the focus.

In the first method the incision is begun over the middle of the internal condyle, and is carried upwards a little in front of the sartorius. In the floor of the wound the oblique fleshy fibres of the vastus internus (medialis) are exposed and divided a little in front of the tendon of the adductor magnus so as to avoid wounding the deep branch of the anastomotic (genu suprema) artery. The loose cellular tissue between the vastus internus and the femur is opened into, and by retracting the edges of the divided muscle the bone is freely exposed. The superior internal articular artery is avoided, if possible.

To expose the trigone behind the tendon of the adductor magnus, an incision is carried upwards from the adductor tubercle between the sartorius and gracilis anteriorly, and the semi-tendinosus and semi-membranosus posteriorly. Retractors are now introduced and the dissection is deepened until the tendon of the adductor magnus is reached. By retracting it forwards and inwards along with the sartorius and gracilis (the semi-tendinosus and semi-membranosus along with the popliteal vessels being retracted backwards and outwards), the bone is freely exposed. The periosteum is incised immediately behind the internal intermuscular septum, which passes from the tendon of the adductor magnus to the internal supracondyloid ridge.

In chiselling the bone and gouging out the focus, care should be taken not to injure the epiphyseal cartilage unnecessarily. Should the bone focus be complicated by an abscess, either in the popliteal space or under the vastus internus, it must be thoroughly curetted, and, if possible, excised completely, the incision being enlarged for the purpose. The wound may generally be closed without drainage.

After-treatment. A Thomas's knee-splint is worn for some months so as to prevent the patient bearing any weight on the limb. If this precaution be not taken, the leg is liable to become deviated in consequence of unequal growth of the two supracondyloid regions.

In dealing with tuberculous osteomyelitis of the *shaft of the femur*,

instead of resecting a complete segment of the bone, it is wiser to perform the less radical operation of gouging. In doing this, however, the medullary cavity should be very freely opened up.

The *lower half of the shaft* is best reached by dividing the vastus internus in the interval between the rectus muscle and Hunter's canal. For this purpose the incision is made in a line directed from the middle of the internal condyle towards the anterior superior spine of the ilium. No important vessels or nerves are injured. The incision is in front of the large nerve to the vastus internus. As this muscle merely covers, instead of arising from, the inner surface of the femur, there is no difficulty in retracting its divided edges so as to obtain sufficient room to incise and separate the periosteum.

To reach the *upper half of the shaft* an incision is carried down to the bone in the plane of the external intermuscular septum, which separates the vastus externus from the outer head of the biceps. To allow of sufficient retraction of these muscles the divided edges of the strong fascia lata must be deeply notched transversely. One or two perforating branches of the profunda artery will require to be ligatured.

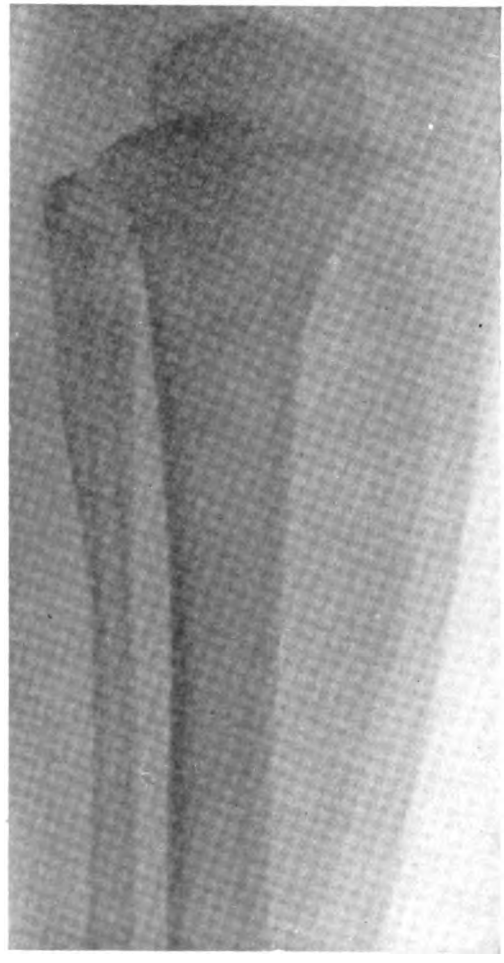


FIG. 70. SKIAGRAM SHOWING TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE UPPER END OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE FIBULA. From a boy aged 2 years. Note the sheath of new subperiosteal bone extending as far down as the junction of the upper with the middle third of the shaft. (*By Dr. H. Rainy.*)

In a boy aged twelve years, on whom the writer adopted this method

for a focus which occupied the upper third of the medulla, half the circumference of the shaft was removed for the extent of 3 inches. There was a small abscess at the bottom of the external intermuscular septum. In dealing with this the diseased portion of the septum and periosteum was excised, the remainder being united with buried sutures. Sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste was applied to the cavity, which was then lightly stuffed with iodoform gauze. The wound healed well, leaving, however, a sinus which closed two months later. The patient had been treated for some months for hip-joint disease. A skiagram was found to be a great help in revealing the exact nature and extent of the disease.

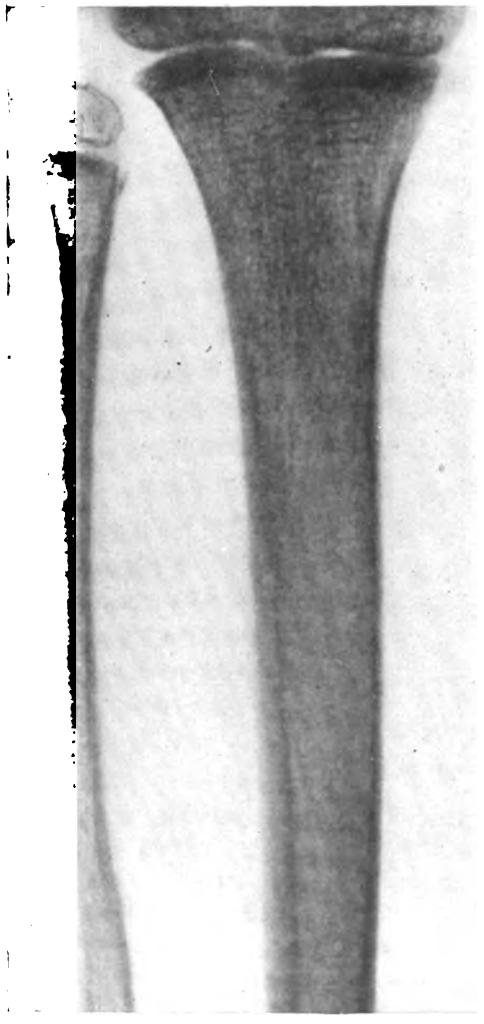


FIG. 71. SKIAGRAM FROM THE SAME CASE AS THE PREVIOUS FIGURE. Taken four years after resection of the upper third of the diaphysis of the fibula. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE FIBULA

To reach the *shaft of the fibula* the dissection should be made along the intermuscular septum (posterior peroneal), which separates the peroneal from the flexor group of muscles, so as to avoid injuring the musculo-cutaneous (superficial peroneal) nerve, which occupies the septum (anterior peroneal) between the peronei and extensors. The first-mentioned septum corresponds to a line drawn from the outer side of the head of the fibula to the posterior border of the external malleolus.

In resecting the *upper third of the diaphysis* care must be taken not to injure the external popliteal (common peroneal) nerve, which passes obliquely downwards and forwards behind the head of the fibula to pierce the peroneus longus an inch below it. After dividing the integuments in the line of the septum, the outer border of the gastrocnemius is defined and retracted inwards. The fibular origin of the soleus is now exposed, and the intermuscular septum between it and the peroneus longus is incised down to the bone, the popliteal nerve having previously been freed and retracted forwards. After separating the periosteum, the bone is divided well below the disease and either wrenched away from the upper epiphysis or snipped across at its neck. The periosteal tube is closed by catgut sutures, which should include the adjacent muscles, namely, the soleus and peroneus longus.

To resect the *middle third of the fibula*, the gastrocnemius and soleus are retracted inwards and the periosteum is divided between the flexor hallucis longus and the peronei.

The *lower third of the shaft* is resected through an incision passing between the peroneus brevis and tertius muscles. Care must be taken to keep below and external to the cutaneous termination of the musculo-cutaneous nerve.

After-treatment. After the wound has healed the limb should be put up in plaster for three months, or a Thomas's knee-splint may be worn instead.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE TIBIA

The diaphysis of the tibia is a comparatively frequent seat of diffuse tuberculous osteomyelitis. The disease may attack any part of the diaphysis, and occasionally the whole medullary canal is involved. The bone being superficial, its thickening is easily made out, and the disease is, fortunately, generally recognized before either the periosteum or the tissues outside the bone become involved.

The skin incision is carried down to the bone along the middle of its subcutaneous surface, the length of the wound depending, of course, on the extent of the bone to be resected. When the resection includes the *upper end of the diaphysis*, the incision is continued upwards on to the internal tuberosity in front of the insertions of the sartorius and inner hamstrings. In separating the periosteum it is important to keep close to the bone along the line of attachment of the interosseous membrane. The membrane is rather more firmly adherent also at the ends of the

diaphysis, and in these regions it should be separated as far as possible with a suitable elevator before attempting to wrench out the diaphyseal extremity.

The manner in which the bone is divided and shelled out has been fully described on p. 124. It is in the case of the tibia that the instrument shown in Fig. 52 is particularly useful.

If the greater part of the diaphysis of the tibia has been removed it may be necessary to insert a drain into the interior of the periosteal

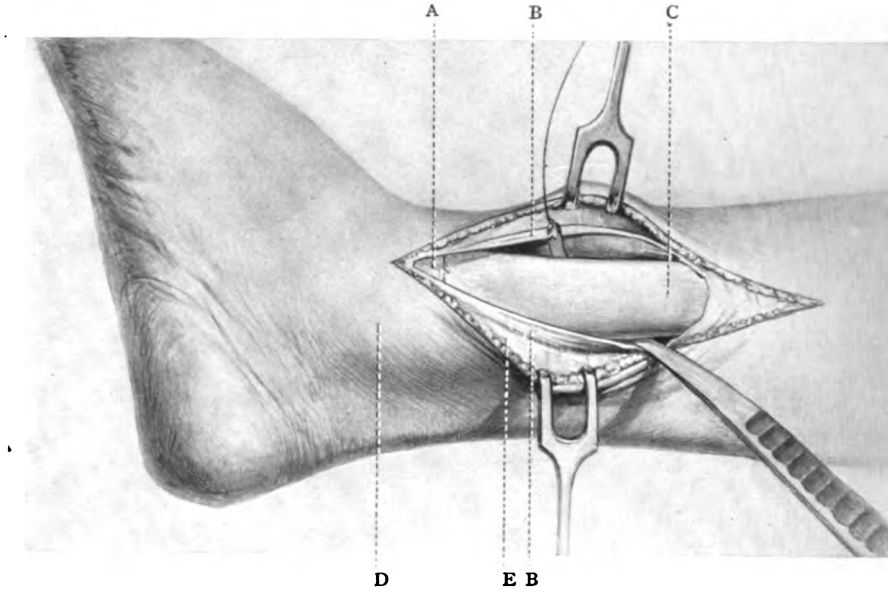


FIG. 72. RESECTION OF THE LOWER THIRD OF THE DIAPHYSIS OF THE TIBIA. The integuments and periosteum have been divided; Gigli's wire saw is hooked on to the separator, which has been passed between the periosteum and the posterior aspect of the bone. A, Epiphyseal cartilage; B, B, Periosteum; C, Tibia; D, Internal malleolus; E, Fascia.

tube for a few days, so as to drain off the serum from the blood-clot with which it becomes filled.

After-treatment. The limb should be placed either in a box-splint or on a suitable posterior splint, care being taken to keep the foot in good position. In about six weeks plaster of Paris is substituted for the splint; the bandage should extend well up the thigh, and during its application it is important to see that the foot is held in good position. The plaster case is changed at the end of two or three months, and a skiagram is taken to ascertain to what extent the new bone has formed. In the case of young children it is generally necessary to renew the plaster for another

three months, but in an older patient a Thomas's knee-splint may often be substituted at this stage.

It was in consequence of the excellent results obtained from resections of large portions of the diaphysis of the tibia that the writer was induced to adopt the same radical treatment in dealing with all the other long bones except the femur.

When there is reason to fear shortening of the new tibia, as for example in cases where the focus has involved the epiphyseal cartilage, or the periosteum in its neighbourhood, extension should be employed; and it is a good plan to fracture the fibula at the same time that the tibia is operated on. By this means compensatory shortening of the fibula can take place by overlapping of the fragments. Deviation of the foot may thus be prevented.

FIG. 73. SKIAGRAM SHOWING NEW FORMATION OF BONE. Eleven weeks after resection of the middle two-fourths of the diaphysis of the tibia for tuberculous osteomyelitis in a child aged 4 years. (*By Dr. H. Rainy.*)

Result. In the nine cases in which resection of a portion of the diaphysis of the tibia was performed, the amount of bone removed varied in extent from a third to the entire diaphysis. In almost all the cases the tibiæ have re-formed well, and the functional results are on the whole excellent. In one case where the greater part of the diaphyses of both tibiæ was removed six years ago, the bones have

re-formed so completely that their skiagraphic appearances are practically normal (see Fig. 74). In some cases there is slight shortening along with some inwards deviation of the foot.

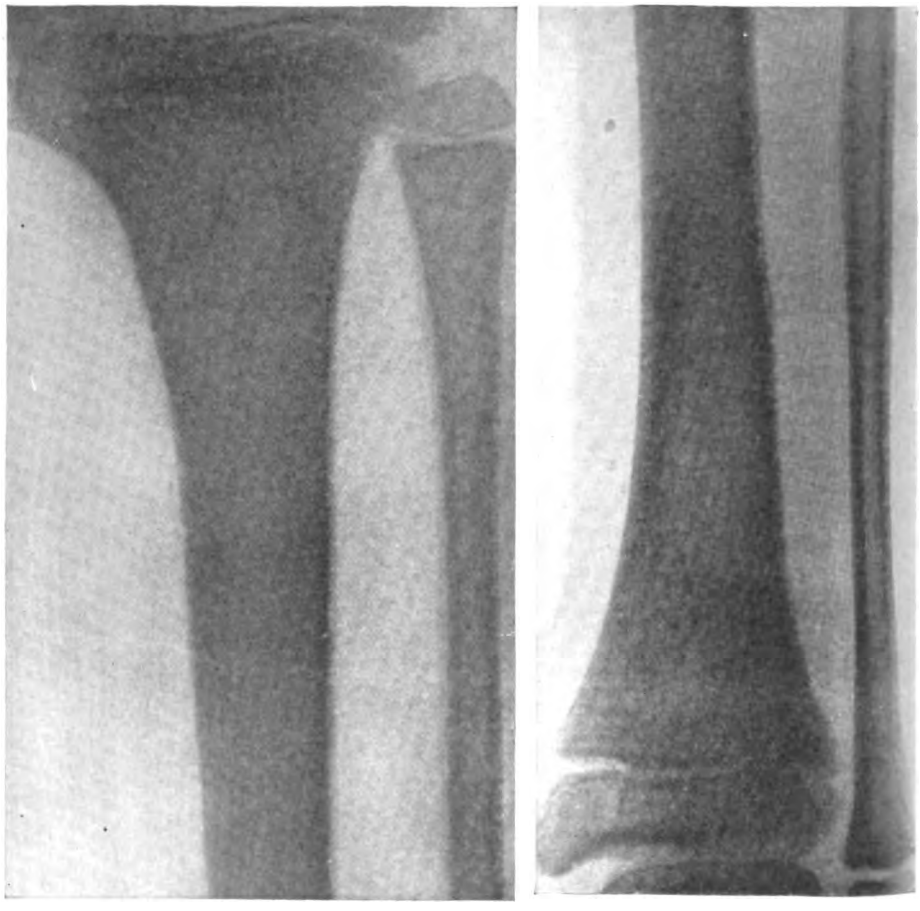


FIG. 74. SKIAGRAMS FROM SAME LIMB AS THAT IN THE PREVIOUS FIGURE. Taken six years after operation. Note the perfect re-formation of bone.

CHAPTER II

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE SHORT LONG-BONES

TUBERCULOUS osteomyelitis is very commonly met with in the short long-bones of the hands and feet, and it is very frequently associated with tuberculous bone and joint lesions in other parts of the body.

These short long-bones differ from the long bones proper, in that they have only one epiphysis, so that at one end of the bone the diaphysis forms the articular extremity, and it is through this extremity that the adjacent joint is liable to be infected. Owing to this peculiar mode of development, the shaft of the short long-bones cannot always be completely resected without opening into the joint at the anti-epiphyseal end of the bone, and, moreover, the operation of complete removal of the diaphysis is followed, comparatively, by more shortening of the digit than is the case with the long bones proper.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE PHALANGES OF THE HAND

If rest and constitutional measures fail to bring about improvement, operation should be resorted to, otherwise one or other of the adjacent joints, or the flexor sheath, is liable to become involved.

Operation. The phalanx is exposed by two dorso-lateral incisions placed between the extensor tendons and the digital vessels and nerves. As pointed out by Kocher, the object of the bilateral incision is to prevent the lateral bending of the finger which would result from the cicatrization of a unilateral incision. The periosteum is separated first on one side and then on the other; the separation is then continued distally under the capsular ligament as far as the neck of the bone, which is then snipped across with a small pair of bone-forceps. The divided end is grasped with necrosis forceps and wrenched away from the epiphysis at the proximal end. One or two buried catgut sutures are introduced at either side to bring together the tendinous expansion of the extensor tendons along with the periosteum. When the wound has healed extension should be applied to the finger with the object of diminishing shortening.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE INTERPHALANGEAL JOINTS

This condition is rarely primary, but should it occur, amputation of the finger would be much more frequently called for than excision of the joint. The latter operation is done through two dorsal-lateral incisions. If possible, the excision should be done by the extra-capsular method.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE METACARPAL BONES

When the disease affects the *first metacarpal bone,* every attempt should be made to preserve the thumb, either by scraping out the focus or by subperiosteal resection of the disease, if possible without opening into the adjacent joints.

Operation. The incision is made along the whole length of the bone immediately to the radial side of the tendon of the extensor primi pollicis (extensor pollicis brevis). If the incision be made to the ulnar side of this tendon, its proximal extremity must be kept superficial to the radial artery, and, if possible, the branches of the radial nerve should be identified and drawn aside. The periosteum is then divided between the origins of the abductor pollicis brevis and the abductor indicis muscles, which are separated from the bone along with the periosteum. In a young child the best way to resect the shaft of the bone is to cut it across with a knife at the junction of the epiphysis and the diaphysis; the extremity of the latter is then hooked upwards and the periosteum is carefully separated downwards from its palmar aspect until the neck of the bone is reached, where it is snipped across with forceps. A little sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste is applied to the inner surface of the periosteum, which is then closed by a few buried catgut sutures.

If the disease has spread to the *metacarpo-phalangeal joint,* amputation is generally necessary, in which case as much as possible of the periosteum of the metacarpal bone should be saved, with the object of obtaining a movable thenar eminence capable of approximation to the fingers.

In excising portions of the other metacarpal bones, the incision is made over the ridge separating the dorsal interosseous muscles, which are detached along with the periosteum. After dividing the skin the extensor tendon is exposed, freed, and drawn aside. The bone is dealt with in the manner above described, the epiphysis, however, being at the distal instead of the proximal end of the bone. If the disease be extensive, it may be necessary to disarticulate its carpal extremity, and an attempt should be made to do this by the subcapsular method.

If the disease has spread to the metacarpo-phalangeal joint, and if the flexor sheath and the soft parts be extensively diseased, amputation of the finger along with the metacarpal bone will be called for.

In resecting the *second metacarpal bone,* the incision is made along its dorsal ridge, between the abductor indicis and the long extensor tendon. If it be found necessary to remove the carpal extremity along with the shaft, the proximal end of the incision must be kept internal to the radial artery, and the insertion of the extensor carpi radialis longior should be separated subperiosteally.

When the *fifth metacarpal bone* is diseased, the incision is made immediately to the ulnar side of the tendon of the extensor minimi digiti (digiti quinti proprius). The proximal end of the incision is kept superficial, so as not to divide the dorsal branch of the ulnar nerve which winds to the back of the wrist round the cuneiform (triquetral) bone. If the carpal extremity of the bone be also involved, the tendon of the extensor carpi ulnaris should be separated subperiosteally before completing the disarticulation.

After-treatment. The after-treatment consists in keeping the hand and wrist quiet for a considerable time by means of an anterior splint. In a young child, after the wound has healed, a convenient way of doing this is to apply a strip of aluminium, covered with boric lint, to the palmar aspect of the hand and the forearm from a little beyond the fingers almost to the elbow. This splint must be secured to the limb, not by a bandage, but by means of strips of plaster, applied directly to the skin, which should be previously disinfected and rubbed over with boric powder. A strip of boric lint should be placed between each of the fingers. Over the strapping a narrow bandage is applied, partly to ensure thorough adhesion, and partly to keep the plaster clean.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE PHALANGES OF THE FOOT

With the exception of the first phalanx of the great toe, tuberculous affections of the phalanges of the foot are best treated by amputation at the metatarso-phalangeal joint.

The *first phalanx* is treated in the same way as in the hand, except that a single incision, made to the inner side of the extensor tendon, is preferable to a bilateral incision. The operation should be done before either of the neighbouring joints become involved. If the metatarso-phalangeal joint be allowed to become involved, the head of the metatarsal bone will generally have to be sacrificed, and this means serious damage to the foot. Fortunately the presence of the epiphysis serves

materially to arrest the spread of the disease from the diaphysis to the joint.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE METATARSAL BONES

Tuberculous osteomyelitis of the *first metatarsal bone* is unfortunately a common affection, and one which calls for early operative interference if amputation of the toe at the tarso-metatarsal joint is to be avoided. A skiagram will reveal the extent of the disease. If the focus be limited the choice of operation will lie between gouging and partial resection. The latter procedure should be followed especially when the focus can be removed subperiosteally without opening into it, and without interfering either with the head of the bone or the neighbouring joints. If the disease extends up to the proximal end of the bone, the operator should have no hesitation in extending the incision upwards and disarticulating from the internal cuneiform. This is a more conservative plan in the end than opening into the diseased focus. In clearing the end of the bone, the capsule, along with the insertions of the tibialis anticus (anterior) and peroneus longus tendons, should, if possible, be separated along with the periosteum. Every attempt should be made to save the head of the bone.

Tuberculous disease of the other metatarsal bones is dealt with in a similar manner to the corresponding bones of the hand.

CHAPTER III

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE BONES OF THE VAULT OF THE SKULL

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE SKULL

THIS is a rare affection, occurring generally in children and young adults, and usually along with other osseous lesions.

Operation. To illustrate the operative treatment, we shall take as an example the commonest condition met with, namely, a soft caseous focus in the region of the frontal eminence, with a secondary abscess beneath the pericranium. A horseshoe incision is carried at once down to the bone a little beyond the upper three-fourths of the limit of the swelling. The flap, which should include the periosteum, is rapidly dissected downwards, forceps being applied to the more important bleeding points in the scalp. The anterior wall of the abscess, which is exposed on the deep surface of the flap, consists of the pericranium covered by caseous granulations. These are thoroughly scraped away with a sharp spoon, the membrane being held taut with artery forceps to facilitate the process. If the tubercle has eaten into the pericranium it is better to dissect this portion away completely. Attention is now turned to the bone. If an area of the outer table has already been destroyed and replaced by a cheesy focus, it is scraped away, and if the inner table has also been destroyed, a sharp spoon is applied to the dura. The surrounding tuberculous bone is then removed by snipping it away with a suitable pair of skull forceps, care being taken to see that the removal is carried well into the surrounding healthy bone. To enable this to be done the skin incision should, as mentioned above, be made some distance beyond the outline of the swelling; if this be not done, one, or it may be two, additional incisions will have to be made at right angles to the original incision. In those cases in which the disease has extended downwards towards the orbital margin, it must be carefully and persistently followed up. If complete removal of the disease cannot be effected without opening the frontal sinus, this should be done without hesitation. The writer found it necessary to do this on two occasions, and in neither instance did the procedure interfere with the normal healing of the wound.

If all the disease in the bone be not removed, a persistent sinus is almost certain to result, and a second, and still more severe, operation will generally be necessary in order to bring about permanent healing.

Not infrequently, however, a cheesy abscess forms beneath the pericranium before the outer table has become destroyed. In such cases the bone subjacent to the disease has a more vascular and porous appearance than normal, and sometimes tiny buttons of granulation tissue can be seen projecting from its surface. These appearances afford sufficient indication that the diploë is diseased, but even if the above appearances are wanting, the diploë should be explored. This may be done either with a hammer and chisel, or by means of a trephine. If diploic disease be revealed the opening should be enlarged with forceps as above described.

When the disease produces a diffuse tumour-like thickening of the bone a large flap of scalp should be turned down, and the diseased bone removed either with a skull saw aided by the hammer and chisel, or, if preferred, by a circular saw driven by an electro-motor. Great care should be taken not to wound the dura. As long as this membrane is left intact, cerebral complications need not be feared.

The diseased bone having been removed, all cheesy matter and fungating granulation tissue is thoroughly scraped off the dura, which is then smeared over with a little sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste. The operation is completed by suturing the flap back into position. Drainage is seldom necessary.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE LOWER JAW

This is a less common affection than is generally supposed. It occurs especially in the children of phthisical parents, and Stockman has shown that it is almost invariably the primary lesion in phosphorus necrosis of the jaw. The tubercle generally gains access to the bone through the alveolus of a tooth, but the writer has operated on a child with a large focus of tubercle in the ramus of the jaw in whom all the teeth were perfectly sound.

Operation. The operative treatment consists in subperiosteal resection of the portion of the jaw affected. If possible, this should be done before a cold abscess has developed, and especially before the stage of sinus formation followed by mixed infection.

When the ascending ramus only is involved, an incision is carried from immediately in front of the lobule of the ear downwards along the posterior margin of the ramus, round the angle, and thence for a variable distance forwards into the submaxillary region a little below the lower margin of the jaw. While the upper part of the incision is kept super-

ficial so as to avoid injury to the facial nerve, the remainder is carried deeply down to the bone. The facial vessels are divided and ligatured, and forceps are applied to one or two veins in the substance of the parotid. After dividing the periosteum along the margin of the bone, the upper flap, together with the masseter and periosteum, is raised from the jaw with the aid of a periosteum elevator, and the same instrument is used to separate the internal pterygoid and periosteum from the inner surface of the bone. When the bone has been sufficiently laid bare, the saw is applied well in front of the disease and the division is completed with bone-forceps. The angle of the jaw is now grasped with lion forceps,

FIG. 75. SKIAGRAM OF HALF THE LOWER JAW. Taken after subperiosteal resection for tuberculous disease. Note the small sequestra, the slight carious excavations of the surface, and the displacement and loss of the teeth. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

and, by applying torsion, both the condyle and the coronoid process may be wrenched away subperiosteally without opening either into the mouth or the temporo-maxillary joint. If the disease be advanced, the bone may break across during the twisting-out process, in which case the upper portion must of course be removed separately by the same manœuvre. The end of the torn inferior dental artery may sometimes be seen dangling from the inside of the periosteal tube; the bleeding from it is usually arrested by the torsion, but, if not, the vessel is easily ligatured. The operation is completed by suturing the wound with silkworm-gut, an opening being left for the insertion of a gauze drain into the periosteal cavity.

In the cases in which the adjacent lymphatic glands are tuberculous and complicated with abscess and sinus formation, the incision may have

to be modified somewhat so as to include the sinus, while to give acce to the glands it will be necessary to prolong the incision further dov into the neck as well as further forwards into the submaxillary regio After dissecting away the sinus and glands the bone is dealt with in t manner already described.

When the disease is limited to the *portion of the mandible between t angle and the symphysis*, the subperiosteal resection of the focus is a cor paratively simple procedure. A straight incision is made parallel to, a a little below, the margin of the jaw. After detaching the periosteu along with the muscles from both aspects of the bone with a suital rugine, the mouth is freely opened into by continuing the separati until the gums are also detached. The jaw is then divided in front the lesion, after which it is seized with lion forceps and levered dow wards and outwards so as to facilitate the more complete separation the soft parts behind the lesion, where the bone is again divided. In t young child the division of the bone may be done with bone-forcep while in the adult Gigli's wire saw is the better instrument.

After removing the bone, any remains of a sinus, or suppurati pocket, must be carefully disinfected, or, still better, dissected aw altogether; care should be taken, however, not to remove more of t periosteum than is absolutely necessary. If by mixed infection t wound has been rendered very unhealthy, it should be swabbed wi turpentine. This is probably the best antiseptic for the purpose, as, addition to being a powerful antiseptic and deodorizer, it is also a val able hæmostatic; it produces no sloughing, nor does it interfere in a way with the healing of the wound.

In addition to the skin sutures, it is an advantage to partially clo the wound in the mouth by uniting the raw edges of the gums wi sutures introduced from within the mouth. Drainage of the wound provided for by the introduction of a rubber tube, one end of which stitched to the skin wound, while the other just projects into the cavi of the mouth.

When the disease involves the greater part of the horizontal ram including the symphysis, tracheotomy should be performed at the sa time that the bone is removed. If this precaution be not taken, the patie is very likely to become asphyxiated during sleep from the tongue falli back into the pharynx. Advantage may be taken of the tracheoto to plug the pharynx so as to prevent any blood gaining access to t trachea during the operation. The writer has had two cases in childr in which the tracheotomy tube had to be worn permanently. In one the cases the child lost its life from asphyxia, owing to the tube, whi had been removed during the day, not having been replaced at bedti

Results. The results of resection of the lower jaw for tubercle are, as a rule, very satisfactory, especially if the greater part of the periosteum can be preserved. Considerable re-formation of bone takes place, the mouth can be well opened, and the only deformity consists in slight deviation of the chin towards the affected side.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE UPPER JAW AND MALAR BONE

In children the upper jaw is the commonest seat of osseous tuberculosis of the face. The disease begins in the cancellated tissue in the neighbourhood of the malar process and floor of the orbit.

Operation. In the early stage of the disease (the proper time to interfere), the operation consists in making an oblique incision from a little below the middle of the infra-orbital margin outwards and slightly downwards over the malar bone for a variable length depending on the extent of the disease. This incision, which lies immediately above the infra-orbital foramen and the origin of the levator labii superioris muscle (caput infraorbitale), possesses the double advantage of running parallel to the natural folds of the skin as well as to the branches of the facial nerve. Should an abscess be present, its wall is dissected away, after which the periosteum is separated from the bone, and the tuberculous focus is removed either with a sharp spoon aided by a gouge, or by the hammer and chisel. The infra-orbital vessels and nerves should be avoided if possible, but it will often be necessary to open into the antrum. After applying sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste to the cavity, the wound is carefully sutured. An opening is left for the introduction of an iodoform-gauze plug.

When the alveolar process is involved, one or more of the permanent as well as the temporary teeth will almost certainly have to be sacrificed. After separating the gum and periosteum with a suitable elevator, the diseased portion of the jaw is snipped away with cutting forceps, the most suitable being a small pair of curved bone-forceps. In aggravated cases the greater portion of the upper jaw may have to be removed. The cavity left in the jaw is packed with a strip of gauze wrung almost dry out of turpentine.

CHAPTER IV

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS THE SPINE AND RIBS

TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE SPINE

ABSCESSES secondary to tuberculous disease of the spinal column r occur in a variety of situations depending on the part of the sp involved. The course which the pus takes as the abscess enlarges depe partly on whether the patient is going about or recumbent during its de opment, and partly on the arrangement of the adjacent fascial pla

ALBEE OPERATION FOR POTT'S DISEASE

The perfected technique of the Albee operation for Pott's diseas as follows:

With the patient in the ventral position, the tips of the spin processes are reached by a curved incision and turning up of a flap of skin and subcutaneous tissues. With a scalpel the periosteal tips of spinous processes are split in the centre, also the supraspinous ligam The interspinous ligaments are next split into approximately equal pa to a depth of about ½ inch (12.70 mm.), varying with the age size of the patient, without disturbing their attachments to the spin process. Very little hæmorrhage results, because only dense ligament tissues are incised, which is in considerable contrast to the hæmorrh resulting from the separation of the muscles from the spinous proce in a deeper operation, such as a laminectomy. With a thin, sharp ch or osteotome and mallet each process is split longitudinally into ec parts for a depth of about ½ inch (12.70 mm.), care being taken greenstick fractures are produced on one and the same side of all spinous processes so split. The unbroken halves preserve intact leverage of these processes. A separation of the halves of each spin process produces a gutter into which the transplant is later placed. all cases the full thickness of the tibial cortex is included with periosteum, endosteum, and attached marrow substance, thus produc a transplant with approximately a rectangular cross-section.

It has been found advisable for bone-grafts for all purposes to

clude periosteum and endosteum, as it is through these media that cortical bone largely receives its nourishment. Thus the graft approximates a complete organic structure, with its normal means of distribut-

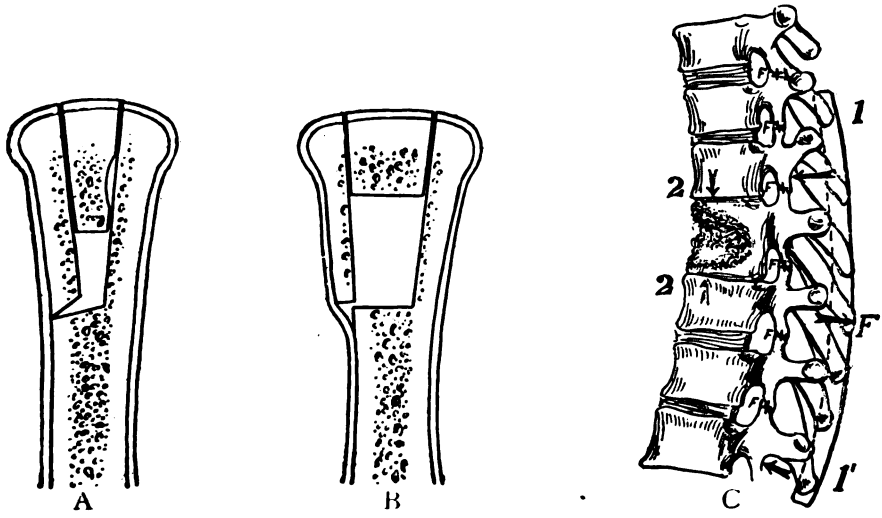


FIG. 76. ALBEE OPERATION FOR POTT'S DISEASE. A illustrates a cross-section of a spinous process split in half and fractured at its base. The deep, thin graft in cross-section has been removed from the crest of the tibia having its periosteum attached to two sides. The side in contact with the unbroken half of the spinous process is the saw-cut or the medullary surface of the graft.

B illustrates a cross-section of a spinous process which has been split and one-half has been set over to produce a gap sufficient to receive a broad graft removed from the antero-internal surface of the tibia having periosteum on one surface only; the medullary surface of the graft lies nearest the base of the spinous process in the gap.

C illustrates a lateral view of the spinal column. Each vertebra is a lever with its fulcrum point at small *F*. The arrow on the vertebral bodies at *2*, *2*, indicates lines of force from weight bearing, involuntary muscle spasm, etc., influencing crushing of vertebral bodies and progress of deformity by the approximation of the anterior lever arms, which is associated with an equal separation of the spinous processes or the posterior lever arms. This is prevented by a pull lengthwise on the graft, as indicated by the small arrows situated at each spinous process. The graft in respect to this direction of force is under a great mechanical advantage.

ing nourishment, and the early establishment of blood-supply is enhanced.

A graft of this thickness necessitates producing a full fracture of one-half of the spinous process and setting it over laterally in order to place it deep enough to be well covered with the above-mentioned liga-

ments. It is important that the spinous processes be split *in situ* wi all the ligamentous and muscular insertion undisturbed, as in this w none of the natural supports of the spine are taken away and the lig ments afford, by means of strong ligatures, an excellent medium f firmly fixing the bone-splint in place.

The depth to which the spinous processes are split varies as to ag size of patient, and amount of pressure atrophy from former apparatu etc., which may so reduce the spinous processes as to present me tubercles on the posterior aspect of the neural arches and in certa instances can be split in depth only 3/16 to 1/4 of an inch (4.75 to 6. mm.), but this affords good bone contact, and as the graft is embedd into longer spinous processes at either end, it affords the usual efficie fixation. A hot saline pack is placed over the back wound until the bo insert is obtained.

With the patient still in the ventral position, the leg is flexed on t thigh and an incision over and down to the crest of the tibia is mad The fascia and subcutaneous tissues are carefully separated from t periosteum of the anterior-internal flat surface of the tibia. From i crest and anterior-internal aspect a strip of the tibia is removed with motor saw. A motor saw affords a very rapid and exact method securing the graft and is used exclusively for this purpose. The leng of graft varies according to how many vertebræ are to be spanned, i all those diseased and two healthy ones on each side if in the dors region, and one on each side if in the lumbar region, its breadth fro 1/4 to 5/8 inch (6.35 to 15.85 mm.), its thickness from 3/16 to 3/8 in (4.75 to 15.51 mm.), according to the size of the patient. The graft inserted between the halves of the interspinous ligaments and the spino processes with its edge anterior or innermost, and its cut side or ma row side in contact with the unbroken halves of the spinous processe It is held firmly in position by interrupted sutures of heavy or mediu kangaroo tendon, which are passed through the supraspinous ligame and posterior edges of the halves of the interspinous ligaments near t tips of the spinous processes, beginning at the centre of the graft. T ligaments are then drawn over the insert posteriorly by tense sutur placed closely together. Before tying the last sutures the posteri corners of the ends of the graft are removed by the rongeur forcep and these fragments of bone, with others, are cut into small pieces a placed under and about each end of the graft; the ends of the graft a then drawn down and sutures tied. This is important, as it furnish multiple foci for a rapid proliferation of bone, as, according to Macewe the smaller the graft the greater the relative bone growth. If there a moderate kyphosis of short duration, it is entirely obliterated; a

kyphosis of a few years' or less duration becomes much diminished, either at the time of operation or during the first few days after, from the corrective effect of the lateral tension of the graft.

This sequence of the technique is important because, by preparing the back wound first and packing it with a hot saline compress, we secure hæmostasis, and control the blood clot about the graft, a condition to be desired.

Where a kyphosis is too great for implanting a straight splint properly in place in the spinous processes, the approximate contour of the knuckle is obtained by bending a silver probe over the tips of the spinous processes. The curved probe is then laid upon the anterior-internal aspect of the tibia as a pattern, and a graft of the desired shape, width, and thickness is outlined in the periosteum with a scalpel. The graft, however, is always straighter than the kyphosis and the spine is straightened by the usual pressure and drawn to the bone-splint by means of the heavy ligatures. When the deformity is too great, even for this method, the graft is placed with its wider diameter in a lateral rather than anterior-posterior plane, and then bent into place between the halves of the spinous processes and held with heavy kangaroo tendon, as above indicated.

This bending is accomplished by making numerous saw-cuts one-half to two-thirds the way through. These cuts not only shape the graft to the kyphosis, but also favour a rapid establishment of blood-supply and the throwing out of bone callus from the graft itself. The cross cuts, ⅛ to ⅜ inch (3.17 to 9.51 mm.) from each other, are always made on the marrow side. The transplants vary in size from 4 to 7½ inches (10.16 cm. to 19.05 cm.) in length, ¼ to ½ (6.35 to 12.70 mm.) in width, ¼ to ⅜ inch (6.35 to 9.51 mm.) in thickness. Care is taken that the insert has some bone marrow. The importance of this has been pointed out by several German investigators. Before placing the unbent graft in its bed, its periosteum is incised in many places, so as to allow the underlying osteogenetic cells exit for proliferation, and also an entrance of blood-supply to the graft. The graft, firmly imbedded under tension in the spinous processes and the dense intraspinous ligaments, affords immediate and excellent fixation of those vertebræ involved even before union takes place.

HIBBS'S OPERATION FOR POTT'S DISEASE

The technique of Hibbs's operation for Pott's disease is as follows:

A general preparation of the field of operation is made the night before, the back is thoroughly cleaned with soap, water, ether, and alcohol.

A sterile dressing is applied, which remains on until the patient anæsthetized, and then it is removed and the back painted with fu strength iodine. This is sponged off with alcohol.

Instead of making an ellipitical skin incision, a straight one direct over the spinous process may be used, corresponding to the disease vertebræ. The skin is turned back and hot laparotomy sponges contr the hæmorrhage. The processes of one or two healthy vertebræ abo and below the diseased ones are also included in the incision. The fir knife is now put aside and a second knife is used to divide the muscl ligament, and periosteum down to the tips of the spinous processe These are broad and shelving, and in order to get the periosteum nice lifted close to the tip, care must be used in denuding the end of th process. Hæmorrhage is controlled with very hot sponges, in the shap of a large cigarette. A special dissector is now placed under the t and at the side of a spinous process and the periosteum and musc dissected back in such a way as to free them and their laminæ. If th periosteum is cleanly peeled down the hæmorrhage is less than when th muscle is torn and cut. When there is troublesome bleeding the h cigarette sponges are packed in between the muscle and processes.

This procedure of denuding the spinous processes should includ their lower and upper edges down to the articular processes, whose su faces are cleaned away with a small curette or gouged out with a chis with the design of destroying the joints and making for ankylosis. must be remembered that in different regions of the spine the angle c entrance to the articular processes varies considerably, and this mu be taken into consideration in attempting to enter them.

Practice enables one to feel along the inferior edge of a spinou process, travelling in the direction of the articular process and thus find ing it by touch with the instrument. When the periosteum is peele back and all edges and surfaces of the spinous processes and lamin denuded and the articular processes destroyed, small bridges of bon from the lower edge of one spinous process and the upper edge of a adjoining one are shaved down to bridge over the space between th two vertebræ. The spinous processes are now split, and with a pair c special bone-cutting forceps are partly separated from their base. It desirable to turn the raw surface down over the space between the ver tebræ and in contact with the raw surfaces of the laminæ or bases c the spinous processes. This helps to complete the bridge between th vertebræ. Formerly an attempt was made to avoid complete detachmen of the split processes. In most cases, however, it is impossible to pre vent cutting the processes off. This does not lessen the efficiency o the bone plates to grow together and make a sheet of bone over the pos

terior aspect of the spine. When all processes and loose pieces of periosteum and shavings of laminæ have been thus welded together, a hot laparotomy sponge is placed over the fragments and they are pressed down as firmly and closely as possible. The strips of periosteum and ligaments are now drawn over the islands of osteogenetic material with catgut. The muscle is sutured with catgut and finally the skin is united with three interrupted catgut sutures, the needle being passed from in-out in each instance. The remaining closure is made with wound clips.

PREVERTEBRAL CERVICAL ABSCESS

The tuberculous process, after reaching the anterior surface of the diseased vertebra and perforating the periosteum, invades the prevertebral muscles and forms a collection of pus between the cervical vertebræ and the prevertebral fascia. Abscesses secondary to tuberculous disease of the retro-pharyngeal lymphatic glands are, on the other hand, situated in front of the prevertebral fascia, between it and the wall of the pharynx. As the spinal abscess enlarges, it strips the prevertebral fascia off the prevertebral muscles and at the same time extends laterally behind the carotid sheath and the posterior layer of the sheath of the sterno-mastoid, to approach the surface usually at the upper part of the posterior margin of that muscle.

Operation. The abscess should be opened not from the mouth but from behind the sterno-mastoid, a procedure which was first employed and advocated by Professor Chiene. The incision is made immediately behind the upper third of the posterior border of the muscle, care being taken not to injure the spinal accessory nerve. If the abscess be situated lower down in the neck, the nerve should be deliberately exposed and retracted out of the way before proceeding with the deeper part of the dissection. The posterior border of the sterno-mastoid is freed, and it is well to divide some of its fibres transversely a little below the mastoid process so as to allow of further retraction of the muscle forwards. Behind the sterno-mastoid are the fibres of the splenius and levator anguli scapulæ, which are traced to their origin from the transverse processes of the upper cervical vertebræ. These processes constitute the surest guide to the abscess, the wall of which may often be seen and felt immediately in front of them, while in front of the abscess again is the internal jugular vein covered by its sheath. Care must be taken not to mistake the sheath of the vein for the wall of the abscess. In opening the abscess the edge of the knife is directed towards the vertebræ. The opening should be enlarged with forceps. It is better to expose the wall of the abscess by careful dissection rather than to trust to entering it blindly with forceps through a small incision (Hilton's method).

The cavity is gently curetted to remove as much of the pyoger membrane as possible. Evacuation of the cheesy pus and membra is greatly assisted by pressure made from the opposite side of the ne with gauze pads. Occasionally a loose sequestrum may be remove The final cleansing of the cavity is most conveniently done by repeat packing with fresh strips of gauze. Before closing the wound sor sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste is introduced into the cavity a rubbed into the lining with the finger. The wound may either be clos completely, or, if the cavity be large and the pus less cheesy, an iodofor gauze drain may be left in for a few days. If, as not infrequent happens, the abscess be bilateral as well as large, a counter-opening m be made behind the opposite sterno-mastoid; this is readily done cutting carefully down on the blades of a long pair of dressing force pushed across the neck immediately in front of the vertebral colum Advantage may be taken of the counter-opening to flush out the cavi with normal saline solution.

After-treatment. The after-treatment consists in immobilizi the head by means of sand-bags, weight extension being added if need b Permanent healing of the wound sometimes occurs, but a sinus is ve liable to persist for a considerable time. A second curetting may necessary before healing is finally brought about. The duration of t subsequent fixation treatment will of course vary in different cases. T writer has seen complete paraplegia disappear very rapidly after mere opening the abscess.

PREVERTEBRAL THORACIC ABSCESS

This condition is often revealed by skiagraphy when there are symptoms indicating its presence. The pus, having reached the surfa of the vertebral column on one or other side of the anterior comm ligament, accumulates, in the first instance, under the periosteum. Aft perforating the periosteum, it forms an abscess between the mediastin pleuræ and the bodies of the vertebræ.

Indications. Under the influence of prolonged recumbency a open-air treatment, the primary disease often heals, in which case t abscess generally becomes absorbed. If, on the other hand, the absce enlarges, the tension may become so great that the œsophagus, the trache and the left recurrent laryngeal nerve may be pressed upon, or parapleg may result from the pus finding its way into the spinal canal. If t above complications occur in spite of efficient rest treatment, operatic becomes imperative.

Operation. The abscess in the posterior mediastinum is be reached by removing one, or it may be two, of the costo-transver

articulations on one or other side, preferably the right. This method of posterior mediastinotomy, which was first performed by Heidenhain, was brought into prominence in the treatment of thoracic spinal abscess by Ménard, who gave it the appropriate name of *costo-transversectomy*.

The advantages of costo-transversectomy over resection of ribs external to the transverse process are, firstly, that more direct access is got to the bodies of the vertebræ, and, secondly, that the pleura is less liable to be injured. Heidenhain employed a longitudinal incision close to the spines and separated the superficial and deep muscles outwards off the laminæ as far as the tubercle of the rib. He resected the transverse process first and then the head and neck of the rib. He showed that the removal of only one costo-transverse articulation was sufficient to enable the surgeon to introduce the finger and strip the pleura and endothoracic fascia off the lateral aspect of the diseased vertebra.

Kocher warmly recommends the principle of Heidenhain's operation, but prefers an oblique incision followed by transverse division of the muscles. He carries his incision from the most prominent spinous process involved in the curve downwards and outwards exactly in the line of the rib to be resected.

After dividing the integuments, the trapezius, and then the rhomboids, the cellular interval is reached between these muscles and the fascia covering the divisions of the erector spinæ (sacro-spinalis) muscle. The longissimus dorsi and accessorius (ilio-costalis dorsi) are divided in the line of the original incision. The cross division of the deep muscles is of no moment as they possess a segmental nerve-supply. The bleeding which occurs is, according to Kocher, much less than that which results from Heidenhain's method of separating the muscles longitudinally from the spines and laminæ.

The periosteum of the exposed rib is divided for a short distance external to its tubercle. The muscular attachments, along with the periosteum and the posterior costo-transverse ligament, are then separated from the transverse process and its base is snipped through with a pair of curved bone forceps. The divided process is seized with lion (or necrosis) forceps held in the left hand while the knife is used to free it from the remaining ligamentous attachments, namely, from the superior costo-transverse ligament passing from the neck of the rib below to its lower border, and from the middle costo-transverse ligament which passes between its anterior surface and the posterior aspect of the neck of the rib with which it articulates.

The next step consists in the removal of the head, neck, and tubercle of the rib. The periosteum is first separated from the posterior aspect of

the neck, and a strong hook is then inserted into the end of the divide rib which is dragged backwards while the periosteum is detached fro its anterior aspect, carrying with it the costal attachment of the anteric costo-vertebral (stellate) ligament. When this has been done the free portion of rib is seized with necrosis forceps and twisted away from th spine. The pleura is not injured. Care must be taken not to wound th intercostal vessels which pass outwards a little below the lower borde of the neck of the rib.

If the forefinger be now introduced into the bottom of the wounc it will enter the abscess cavity which occupies the cellular tissue of th posterior mediastinum. By directing the finger forwards and inward the lateral aspect of the corresponding vertebra, and of the one above i can be distinctly palpated, its surface scraped, or a sequestrum removec Anteriorly and externally is the reflection of the posterior mediastina pleura on to the ribs. When an abscess is present, this membran along with the intrathoracic fascia, is considerably thickened, so tha with ordinary care the pleural cavity should not be opened into. I more room be desired in order to reach the upper of the two vertebra with which the rib articulates, the upper edge of the wound must b retracted, and a second transverse process removed; this will generall suffice without removing the vertebral end of the corresponding rib but there should be no hesitation in excising it if still more room b required.

If the mediastinal abscess be small, it may be gently packed wit iodoform gauze for a few days, and the wound then allowed to hea As a rule, however, if the cavity be large, and especially if paraplegia b present, a drainage tube should be inserted and kept in for a considerabl time.

If the abscess has penetrated through an intervertebral forame into the spinal canal, or if it has encroached on the canal after destroyin the body of the vertebra, it can be drained more satisfactorily and wit infinitely less danger by costo-transversectomy than by laminectomy The latter operation is reserved for those cases in which the paraplegi is due to external pachymeningitis and thickening of the dura, and fo those rare cases in which the compression is caused by narrowing of th osseous canal itself.

Results. The results of costo-transversectomy are very satisfac tory, especially when compared with those of laminectomy, in whic the mortality is from 40 to 50%. Of the twenty-four cases of costo transversectomy collected by Ménard, nineteen recovered; two of thes had a recurrence of the paraplegia, while four died subsequently o tuberculosis. The paraplegia generally begins to disappear within

few days of the operation, and it is often completely recovered from in a month or two. The same may be said of incontinence of urine. It is not uncommon, however, for a fistula to persist for several months. If the paraplegia recurs, the fistula must be opened up and free drainage re-established.

When the disease has already found its way along the posterior branch of an intercostal artery into the erector spinæ compartment, all that is necessary is to open the abscess freely, to search for the sinus in its floor, and, after enlarging it, to follow the abscess to its source. If the sinus be found to lead into the posterior mediastinum, it should be enlarged with forceps rather than the knife; and if an intrathoracic abscess be discovered, the operator should proceed to do a costo-transversectomy.

LUMBAR ABSCESS

This is a complication of tuberculous disease in the lower dorsal and upper lumbar regions. The pus is more liable to make its way into the loin if the abscess develops while the patient is kept recumbent. The pus generally reaches the loin through one or other of its two weak areas. The upper is situated at the angle between the outer border of the erector spinæ (sacro-spinalis) and the twelfth rib, where the internal oblique is aponeurotic; the lower is at Petit's triangle.

An abscess appearing in the angle between the erector spinæ and the last rib is opened by an oblique incision a little below and parallel to the twelfth rib. The abscess is reached after dividing the latissimus dorsi (possibly also the lowest fibres of the serratus posticus inferior), the outer fibres of the quadratus lumborum, and the middle layer of the lumbar fascia. Not infrequently the abscess will be found to have already perforated the quadratus and the aponeurosis common to the internal oblique and transversalis muscles. If the opening in these structures be small, it must be enlarged, and care should be taken to avoid unnecessary injury to the last dorsal nerve and its companion artery, or to the ilio-hypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves. Occasionally one or other of these nerves can be felt crossing the cavity of the abscess.

When, on the other hand, the abscess is felt in the angle between the crest of the ilium and the outer edge of the erector spinæ (sacro-spinalis), the incision is made obliquely from above downwards and outwards, parallel to the posterior cutaneous branches of the lumbar nerves. The triangle of Petit is enlarged by dividing the outer border of the latissimus dorsi, and, beneath it, the quadratus lumborum and the middle layer of the lumbar aponeurosis. The abscess is now readily reached by blunt

dissection carried inwards close to the front of the transverse proce of the fourth or fifth lumbar vertebra.

In 1884 Treves advocated a more extensive dissection of the lo with the object not only of evacuating the abscess, but also of removi the osseous disease. Unfortunately, however, the nature and extent the disease seldom admit of this being done, so that the operation h not come into general use. The tendency has been to confine operati treatment to the abscess alone, and to rely on prolonged rest and ope air treatment to bring about a cure of the osseous disease. The intr duction of the Röntgen rays may possibly serve to revive the operatic to some extent by enabling the surgeon to pick out those rarer cas in which the disease is limited to one vertebra, and especially when it represented for the most part by a sequestrum.

The following is Sir Frederick Treves's description of the operatic (*A Manual of Operative Surgery*, vol. ii, p. 772): 'The patient's lo having been exposed, a vertical incision some 2½ inches in length made through the integuments. The centre of this cut should lie abo midway between the crest of the ilium and the last rib, and the cut shou be so placed as to correspond to a vertical line parallel with the vertebr side of the outer border of the erector spinæ. . . .

'After cutting through the superficial fascia the dense aponeurosis exposed which covers the posterior surface of the erector spinæ. . . . Tl dense aponeurosis with its attached muscular fibres having been divide in the full length of the incision, the erector spinæ is exposed. Th muscle is at once recognized by the vertical direction of its fibres. Tl outer border of the muscle should now be sought for, and the who mass drawn by means of retractors as far as possible towards the midd line of the back. In this way the anterior part of the sheath of tl muscle, known as the middle layer of the fascia lumborum, is readi exposed. Neither in front nor behind has the erector spinæ any dire adhesion to its sheath at this part.

'The anterior layer of the sheath, as now exposed, is seen to be mad up of dense white glistening fibres, which are all more or less transver in direction. Through this sheath the transverse processes of the lumb vertebræ should be sought for. The longest and most conspicuou process is that belonging to the third vertebra. It is readily felt. Th erector muscle having been drawn as far as possible towards the midd line, the anterior layer of its sheath must be divided vertically as nea to the transverse processes as convenient. By this incision the quadratu lumborum muscle is exposed. The muscle as here seen is very thi It is composed of fibres which run from above obliquely downward and outwards. Between the fibres are tendinous bundles which sprin

from the tips of the transverse processes. The muscle should be divided close to the extremity of a transverse process, and the incision cautiously enlarged until the muscle is divided to the full extent of the skin wound. It is at this stage that there is danger of wounding the abdominal branches of the lumbar arteries. The inner edge of the quadratus is overlapped by the psoas muscle, so that when the former is divided the latter is exposed. The psoas fibres, as now seen, take about the same direction as the posterior fibres of the quadratus—*i.e.* run downwards and outwards. The interval between the two muscles is marked by a thin but distinct layer of fascia, known as the anterior lamella of the fascia lumborum. Some of the tendinous fibres of the psoas having been divided close to a transverse process, the finger is introduced beneath the muscle, and gently insinuated along the process until the anterior aspect of the bodies of the vertebræ is reached. The incision in the psoas can be enlarged to any extent.

'With common care there should be no danger of opening up the subperitoneal connective tissue, much less of wounding the peritoneum. All risk on this score will be avoided by making the incision in the quadratus as near to the transverse processes as possible.

'Great care must be taken not to wound the lumbar arteries. The abdominal branches of these vessels run for the most part behind the quadratus lumborum. That, however, from the first vessel runs in front, and not infrequently those from one or two of the larger arteries follow its example. These vessels may be of large size—often as large as the lingual. They may be avoided, as well as the trunks from which they arise, by keeping close to a transverse process. The main vessel curves around the spine between the transverse processes, and between these processes also the division of the artery occurs. If, therefore, the rule be observed of always reaching the spine along a transverse process, the lumbar arteries and their abdominal branches need be exposed to no risk.'

ILIAC ABSCESS

Operation. An iliac abscess is best opened through an incision, about 2 inches in length, placed a finger's breadth internal to the anterior superior spine of the ilium. After splitting the external oblique the fibres of the internal oblique and transversalis muscles may be either separated by blunt dissection or divided in the direction of the original incision. The floor of the wound is formed by the fascia transversalis, close to its junction with the fascia iliaca. To reach the cavity of the abscess and at the same time to avoid opening the peritoneum, the operator should keep outside the transversalis fascia and close to the

anterior superior spine, so as to get behind the fascia iliaca. Either the deep circumflex iliac artery itself, or its ascending branch, is generally seen in the course of the dissection; the former should be avoided, but the latter may have to be divided and ligatured.

When the abscess has extended below Poupart's ligament into the thigh, a second opening should be made into it. The incision for this purpose is made a little below the anterior superior spine of the ilium, along either the inner or the outer edge of the sartorius, according to the direction in which the abscess has become most superficial. The abscess wall, formed by the thickened fascia covering the ilio-psoas, is reached by retracting the sartorius and by deepening the dissection internal to the tendon of the rectus.

As soon as the pus escapes the finger should at once be introduced into the abscess cavity and the opening dilated. If the abscess be allowed to empty itself before the finger is introduced there may be some little difficulty in finding the cavity again. When the abscess has been evacuated, as much as possible of the pyogenic membrane should be removed, either with the finger-nail or with a Barker's flushing spoon. If the latter be used it must be applied cautiously, especially towards the abdominal aspect of the abscess. Moreover, too vigorous use of the sharp spoon is liable to cause an unnecessary amount of hæmorrhage as well as severe shock. The detached portions of membrane and caseous débris are removed by copious irrigation aided by compression applied to the abscess through the abdominal wall. There is no advantage in adding an antiseptic to the water used to irrigate the cavity. Normal saline at 100° F. is the best solution to employ. Before closing the wound, ½ to 2 ounces (according to the size of the abscess) of glycerine containing 10% of iodoform in suspension may be injected into the cavity, as much as possible being squeezed out again before the wound is sutured. Or, instead of iodoform and glycerine, some iodoform-bismuth paste may be introduced into the abscess with a sharp spoon, and then rubbed over the wall with the finger. The same mixture should be smeared over the wound before it is sutured. Most surgeons now dispense altogether with drainage. In many instances the abscess does not re-form and the wound remains permanently healed. In other cases the abscess re-forms, the wound and scar become tuberculous, and, ultimately, a sinus results. The latter, however, often closes in the course of a few months. If not, the curetting should be repeated, after which the cavity may either be stuffed for a time, or the sinus and scar may be excised and the wound completely closed. If a mixed infection has occurred, a rubber drain must be introduced.

While many surgeons are in favour of treating spinal abscesses by

curetting followed by the introduction of iodoform, there are others who employ neither, but trust merely to evacuation and irrigation. The writer has treated many abscesses successfully by the latter more simple method. Many surgeons, again, instead of opening the abscess, prefer to empty it by aspiration through a large trocar, and to inject iodoform and glycerine.

After-treatment. The after-treatment is all-important. It consists in keeping the spine quiet with the patient constantly recumbent (as much as possible in the open air) for at least a year, and generally longer. The bed-frame introduced by Bradford is probably the most convenient apparatus for the purpose. Extension must be applied if there be any spastic condition or tendency to paraplegia.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS OSTEOMYELITIS OF THE RIBS

Operation. While spontaneous cure of the disease rarely occurs, operative treatment is almost invariably followed by recovery, provided the bone focus be completely removed. Recurrence, on the other hand, is very prone to occur if, after opening the abscess, the surgeon trusts simply to scraping the rib. The proper course to adopt is to resect the diseased portion of the rib, and care must be taken that the bone or cartilage is divided well beyond the disease. The operative procedure in the case of a limited focus at the costo-chondral junction of one of the true ribs, with a secondary abscess under the pectoralis major, is carried out as follows: A horseshoe incision is made a little beyond the lower two-thirds of the circumference of the swelling, and a flap, consisting of skin and subcutaneous tissue, is dissected upwards off the pectoralis major. The fibres of this muscle are now divided along the circumference of the abscess down to its pyogenic wall, and the latter, along with the muscle, is then dissected off the chest-wall. By excising the abscess and the affected muscle *en masse* the risk of infecting the soft tissues is greatly diminished. A careful examination is next made of the diseased rib with a view of ascertaining the nature and extent of the mischief. Should a sinus be found leading into a small focus in the interior of the rib, a portion of the latter including the diseased focus should be resected subperiosteally. The operation is simplified by resecting the bone subperiosteally in the first instance and then dissecting away any disease which may be left behind in the periosteum and adjacent muscle. The intercostal vessels will generally have to be divided and ligatured. Care must be taken, however, not to injure the pleura.

Should an abscess exist between the pleura and the chest-wall, more

of the rib, or it may be a portion also of the rib below, along with th intervening intercostal muscles, may have to be resected to enable th tuberculous lining of the abscess to be thoroughly dealt with. Th intrathoracic fascia and the pleura are markedly thickened so that wit ordinary care the pleural cavity need not be opened into. Before closin the wound sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste should be rubbed into th wall of the abscess. If the operation has been a limited one, and it b felt that no trace of disease has been left behind, the flap may be suture back into position without drainage. If, on the other hand, the woun be of large size, it is well to introduce a drain for forty-eight hours or s while in cases complicated with an abscess between the chest-wall and th pleura an iodoform-gauze tampon should be introduced for a week or s

When the disease is situated at the costo-chondral junction of on of the lower ribs, the secondary abscess is in the neighbourhood of th lower margin of the chest, and not infrequently it gravitates downward either between the lateral abdominal muscles external to the sheath o the rectus, or within the latter, between its posterior wall and the rectu muscle. When the abscess is situated within the sheath of the rectus, th pus collects as a rule behind the muscle in the first instance, and subs quently burrows through it. In a case of this kind a free longitudin incision should be made into the sheath of the muscle, and after cleanin out and curetting the superficial portion of the abscess, the deeper po tion should be laid open from end to end, by splitting the rectus an following the abscess upwards until its source from the diseased cartila is reached. The diseased portion of the cartilage is then resected, a kni usually sufficing to divide it. The deep portion of the abscess should b dissected off the under surface of the rectus muscle as far as possibl and the floor of the abscess should be thoroughly curetted.

The same line of treatment is to be followed when the disease situated in the abdominal wall external to the rectus. Here the deepe part of the abscess usually occupies the interval between the transversal muscle and its fascia, the latter being considerably thickened to for the outer fibrous layer of the pyogenic membrane.

When the diseased focus is situated posterior to the costo-chondr junction, the abscess is situated under the serratus magnus, the extern oblique, or the latissimus dorsi. In dealing with an abscess in any o these situations the operator should not hesitate to remove every partic of diseased muscle along with the abscess; if this be not done a tube cular sinus is almost certain to develop in the scar.

As pointed out by König, the operation for tuberculosis of a rib ma be very troublesome when the disease is complicated with multiple sinus which are both elongated and tortuous. Considerable patience and pe

severance may have to be exercised before the disease can be satisfactorily removed. Not infrequently more than one operation will be necessary. In the female the mamma may have to be removed in order that the operation may be sufficiently radical.

When the abscess is situated in the axilla the surgeon must satisfy himself that there is no disease of the rib before deciding that caseous glands are alone responsible for the condition.

SECTION II

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE BONES AND JOINTS

PART II

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS AFFECTIONS OF THE JOINTS

BY

HAROLD J. STILES, M.B., F.R.C.S. (Edin.), Lieutenant-Colonel, R.A.M.C.(T.).

Surgeon to Chalmers Hospital, Edinburgh, and to the Royal Hospital for Sick Children, Edinburgh

CHAPTER V

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE WRIST-JOINT

UNDER the heading tuberculous disease of the wrist-joint there are included a group of lesions which are met with either singly or in various combinations depending on the site of origin of the disease and on the direction and extent of its spread.

Fortunately conservative treatment gives comparatively good results in the early stage of tuberculous disease of the wrist-joint, and in view of the somewhat unsatisfactory functional results following excision, the former treatment should be given a fair trial. Should it fail, however, operative measures must be undertaken. If the disease be allowed to run on until the synovial sheaths and tendons become involved, and if sinuses and mixed infection be allowed to occur, the functional result following excision will be unsatisfactory, owing to deficient movement of the fingers.

Operation. The nature of the operative interference will of course depend on the extent of the disease. By a complete excision of the wrist is meant the removal of the entire carpus (with the exception of the pisiform and the hook of the unciform) along with the adjacent articular extremities of the radius, ulna, and metacarpals. If the disease be confined to the carpus, the lower ends of the bones of the forearm may be left, and the same may be said of the proximal ends of the metacarpal bones when the disease has begun in the wrist-joint proper. The rule in operating on a tuberculous wrist should be to remove all the disease, but at the same time to sacrifice no more bone than is absolutely necessary; the greater the amount of bone removed the more are the flexors and extensors of the fingers left unnecessarily long, and the more is their action weakened.

Although a tourniquet is not essential, it has the advantage of expediting the operation and enabling the surgeon to obtain a clear view of the anatomy of the parts, which is rather more complicated than in the case of the other joints. The tourniquet should be applied to the lower third of the upper arm. Instead of placing the limb across the patient's body it will be found much more convenient to have the forearm and hand supported on a separate table of small size. The operator

will find it an advantage to be comfortably seated while perform the operation.

Access to the diseased structures may be obtained either by a sin dorsal incision (Langenbeck, Kocher) or by a dorso-radial incisi combined with an ulnar incision (Lister). Complete excision of wrist by Lister's double incision has been dealt with by Mr. Burgh

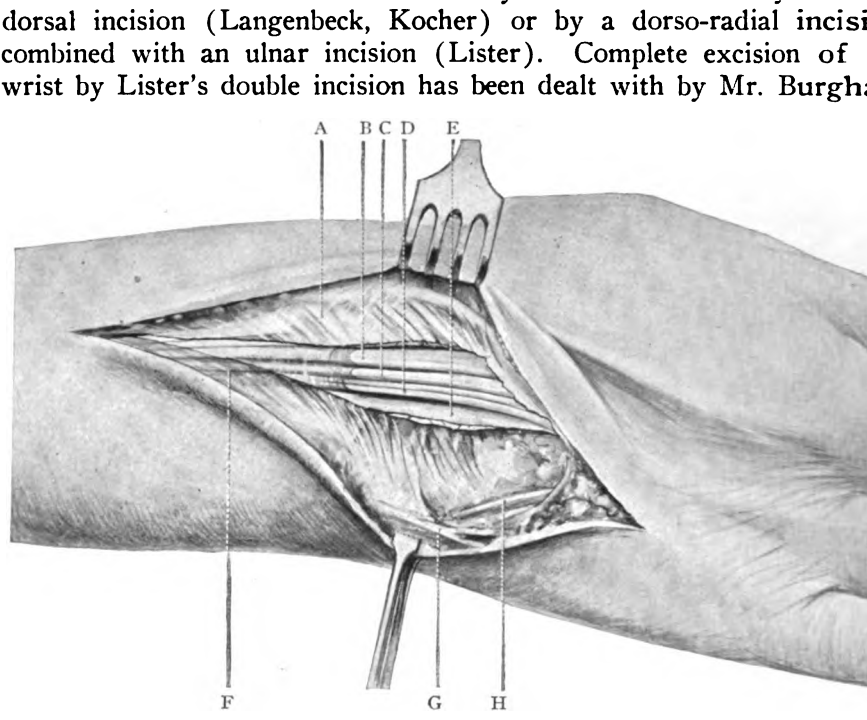


FIG. 77. EXCISION OF THE WRIST BY KOCHER'S SINGLE DORSO-ULNAR INCISI The deep fascia and the posterior annular ligament have been divided, expos the tendons of the extensor digitorum communis. The dorsal branch of the ul vein and nerve are seen at the inner border of the wrist. A, E, Posterior annu ligament; B, C, D, Extensor digitorum longus; F, Deep fascia; G, Posterior ul vein; H, Dorsal branch of ulnar vein.

in this volume, p. 9. This procedure should be reserved for cases which the disease is especially advanced at the outer aspect of the wr

For the majority of cases the writer prefers the more conservat procedure recommended by Kocher. The incision, which is dorso-uln in position, is a modification of Langenbeck's straight dorsal incisio it passes from the middle of the fifth metacarpal bone to the middle the back of the wrist, and thence for an equal distance up the mid of the back of the forearm, the entire incision measuring 4 to 5 inch

After dividing the integuments and the posterior annular ligame there is exposed, in the upper part of the wound, the inner edge of t extensor digitorum communis and the extensor minimi digiti (dig

quinti proprius), while in the lower part of the wound the dorsal branch of the ulnar nerve is seen, and, if possible, avoided.

The wound is now deepened so as to divide the thin posterior ligament of the inferior radio-ulnar joint; below it the dorsal ligaments are separated subperiosteally from the back of the cuneiform (triquetral)

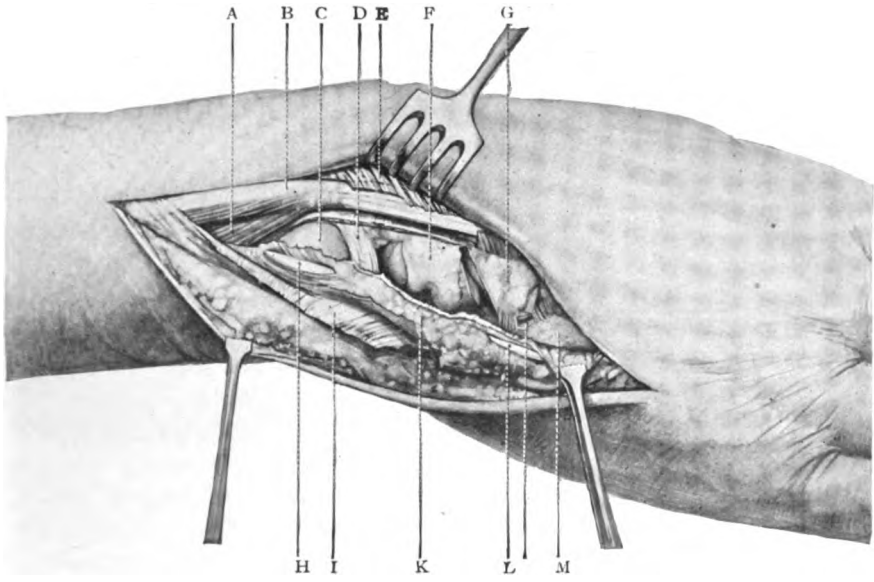


FIG. 78. FURTHER STAGE OF THE OPERATION SHOWN IN THE PREVIOUS FIGURE. The wound has been deepened, and the soft tissues, including the posterior ligaments and the periosteum, have been separated, exposing (from above downwards) the head of the ulna, the triangular fibro-cartilage, the cuneiform, unciform, and the base of the fifth metatarsal bone. The tendons of the extensor digitorum communis and the fibres of the extensor indicis are seen beneath the outer edge of the wound; the extensor minimi digiti and the extensor carpi ulnaris are seen at its inner edge. A, Extensor indicis; B, Extensor digitorum communis; C, Head of the ulna; D, Triangular cartilage; E, I, Posterior annular ligament; F, Cuneiform; G, Unciform; H, Extensor minimi digiti; K, Posterior ligament and periosteum; L, Tendon of the extensor minimi digiti; M, Base of the fifth metacarpal.

and unciform (hamate) bones, while still lower the tendon of the extensor carpi ulnaris is detached subperiosteally from the base of the fifth metacarpal bone. The inner flap, which contains the tendons of the extensor minimi digiti (digiti quinti proprius) and extensor carpi ulnaris along with the dorsal ligaments and periosteum, is now completely dissected off the head and styloid process of the ulna, the internal lateral ligament being divided. Below the ulna the flap is separated sub-

periosteally from the palmar aspect of the cuneiform (triquetral) bone until the joint between it and the pisiform is reached; the latter is detached along with the insertion of the flexor carpi ulnaris. Further down, the flap, along with the insertion of the extensor carpi ulnaris,

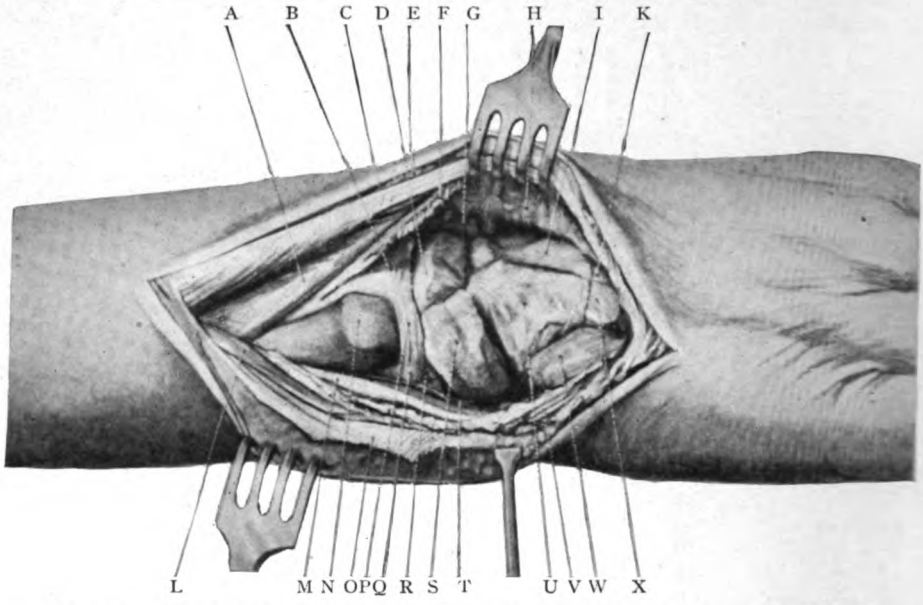


FIG. 79. FURTHER STAGE OF THE OPERATION SHOWN IN THE PREVIOUS TWO FIGURES. The extensor tendons, along with the posterior ligaments and the periosteum, have been separated from the bones at the back of the wrist and retracted inwards. The soft parts at the ulnar edge have also been more completely separated. The tendon of the extensor minimi digiti and that of the extensor carpi ulnaris have each been freed from its groove and retracted forwards, along with the other soft parts, off the bones at the ulnar edge of the wrist. A, Extensor indicis; B, Radius; C, Extensor digitorum communis; D, Semilunar; E, O, Posterior annular ligament; F, H, Periosteal and dorsal ligaments; G, Scaphoid; I, Os magnum; K, Base of the third metacarpal; L, V, Extensor minimi digiti; M, Extensor carpi ulnaris; N, Head of the ulna; P, Triangular cartilage; Q, Styloid process; R, Internal lateral ligament; S, Cuneiform; T, Pisiform; U, Unciform; W, Base of the fifth metacarpal; X, Base of the fourth metacarpal.

is still further detached so as to expose the palmar aspect of the fifth metacarpal bone.

Attention is next directed to the dorsal flap, which is reflected outwards by detaching the posterior ligament of the wrist-joint from the lower end of the radius; the extensor tendons, along with the periosteum, are at the same time separated from the grooves on the back of the bone. The separation is effected partly with the knife, and partly by

a sharp rugine. Lower down, the latter instrument is used to separate the dorsal ligaments of the carpal and metacarpo-phalangeal joints, and care is taken to separate the insertions of the extensor carpi radialis brevis and longus subperiosteally. In this way all the bones at the back of the wrist, except the trapezoid (lesser multangular), the trapezium (greater multangular), and the bases of the first and second metacarpals, are laid bare.

By removing the cuneiform (triquetral) bone, room is obtained for the finger to feel and identify the hook of the unciform (hamate), which is either chiselled off or snipped off with small bone-forceps. The operator should keep close to the bone so as to avoid injuring the deep branch of the ulnar nerve, which winds round its inner aspect. The inner flexor tendons are now exposed, and pulled aside, after which the anterior ligament of the wrist and the anterior carpal and metacarpal ligaments are separated from the palmar aspect of the bones. The parietal layer of the common flexor sheath is so closely related to the anterior ligaments that it is generally removed with the latter, but no harm is done as long as the wound is aseptic.

The operator now returns to the dorsal aspect of the wrist, and, after retracting the extensor tendons well outwards, the separation of the posterior ligament of the wrist is carried as far outwards as the styloid process of the radius, the periosteum and the two radial extensors being lifted out of their groove. While this is being done, the hand is forcibly flexed and dislocated to the radial side, so that the thumb comes in contact with the radial border of the forearm and the extensor tendons become dislocated to the outer side of the lower end of the radius. By this manœuvre the wrist-joint proper is freely opened up and the carpal bones are projected more into the wound; in short, a very free arthrotomy has been obtained.

The operator is now able to ascertain the exact distribution of the disease and to decide to what extent the resection must be carried in order to remove it completely. The carpal bones, with the exception of the trapezium (greater multangular) and the pisiform, are removed, either collectively, or, which is preferable, individually, by grasping them with necrosis forceps and partly cutting and partly wrenching them away from the remaining ligamentous attachments. Some little difficulty may be experienced in freeing the tubercle of the scaphoid (navicular) from the external lateral ligament and the trapezium (greater multangular) from the trapezoid (lesser multangular) bone.

If the disease has extended to the joint between the trapezium (greater multangular) and the first metacarpal bone, the former must be resected and the base of the latter removed, after separating the tendon

of the extensor ossis metacarpi pollicis (abductor pollicis longus). Fo
this purpose a short dorso-radial incision should be made to the outc

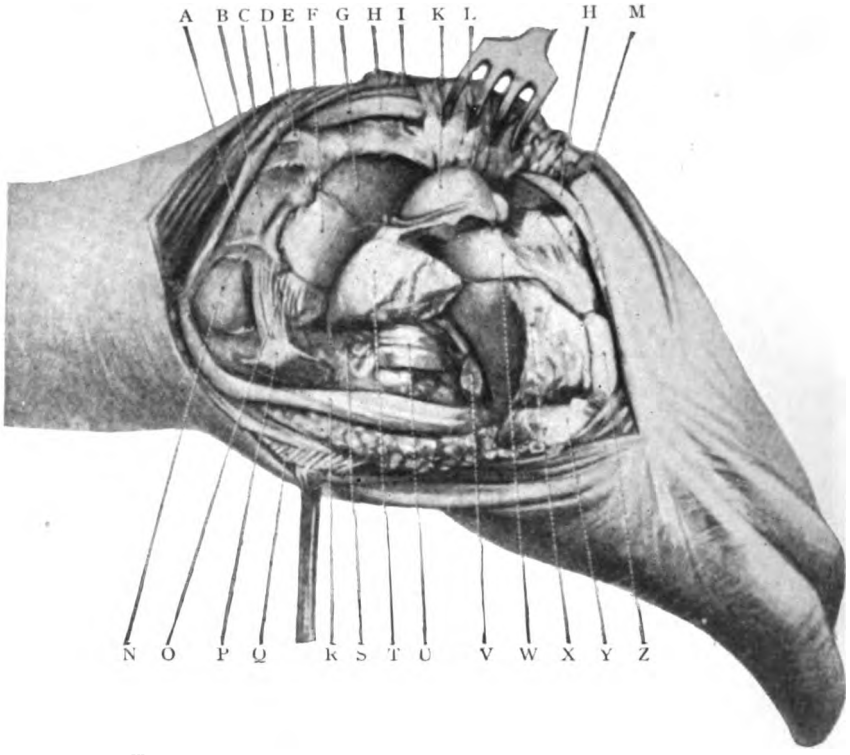


FIG. 80. FURTHER STAGE OF THE OPERATION SHOWN IN THE PREVIOUS THR
FIGURES. The cuneiform bone has been removed, and the pisiform and the ho
of the unciform have been detached. The radio-carpal and intercarpal articu
tions have been opened up, and the hand has been flexed to the radial side. T
two radial extensor tendons are seen at the outer side of the dorsum of the wri
while the tendon of the extensor carpi ulnaris is seen at the inner side. In t
floor of the wound are the flexor tendons. A, Groove for the extensor mini
digiti; B, Groove for the extensor digitorum communis and extensor indic
C, Extensor indicis; D, Groove for the extensor pollicis longus; E, Dorsal rad
tubercle; F, Radial articular surface for the semilunar; G, Radial articular surfa
for the scaphoid; H, Extensor carpi radialis brevior; I, Extensor carpi radia
longior; K, Scaphoid; L, Periosteal and dorsal ligaments; M, Base of the th
metacarpal; N, Head of the ulna; O, Triangular cartilage; P, Styloid proce
Q, Posterior annular ligament; R, Extensor carpi ulnaris; S, Anterior ligamen
T, Semilunar; U, Flexor tendons; V, Cut base of the hook of the unciform; W,
magnum; X, Unciform; Y, Base of the fifth metacarpal; Z, Base of the fou
metacarpal.

side of and parallel to the tendon of the extensor secundi interno
pollicis (extensor pollicis longus). The radial artery and nerve a

Digitized by Google

exposed and drawn aside along with the soft parts before proceeding to remove the osseous disease.

The carpo-metacarpal joint, on account of its possessing a separate synovial membrane, is often free from disease, and when this is the case the trapezium (greater multangular) may generally be left, with the result that the movements of the thumb are not interfered with.

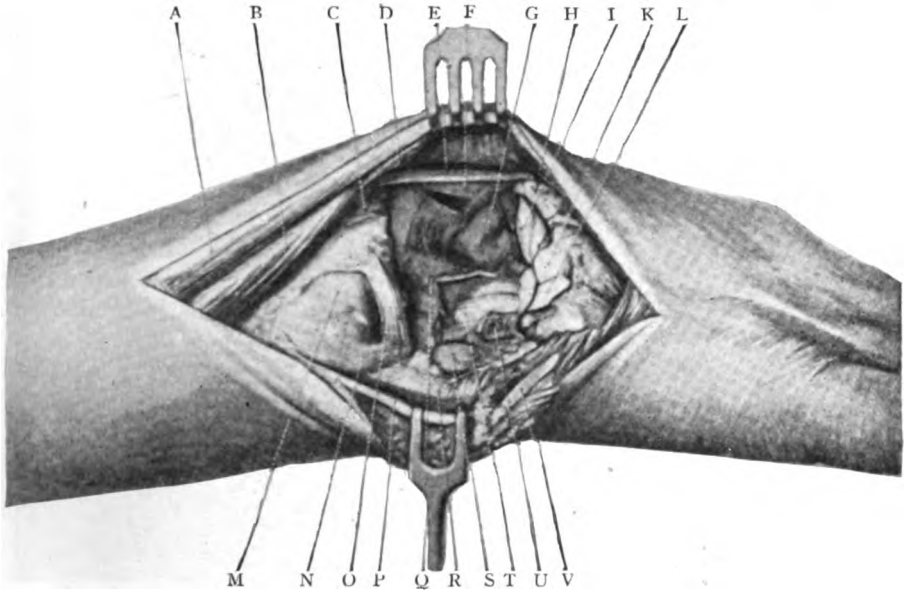


FIG. 81. FURTHER STAGE OF THE OPERATION SHOWN IN THE PREVIOUS FOUR FIGURES. All the carpal bones have been removed except the trapezium. The articular surfaces of the third, fourth, and fifth metacarpals are seen at the lower end of the wound. In the floor of the wound are the deep flexor tendons, and internal to them are seen the articular surfaces of the pisiform bone and the detached hook of the unciform. A, Extensor digitorum communis; B, Extensor indicis; C, Radius; D, Periosteal and dorsal ligaments; E, Extensor carpi radialis brevior; F, Extensor carpi radialis longior; G, Trapezium; H, Styloid process of the third metacarpal; I, Base of the third metacarpal; K, Base of the fourth metacarpal; L, Base of the fifth metacarpal; M, Head of the ulna; N, Styloid process; O, Triangular cartilage; P, Extensor carpi ulnaris; Q, Cut edge of the anterior ligaments; R, Dorsal ligaments; S, Pisiform; T, Flexor tendons; U, Cut base of the hook of the unciform; V, Extensor minimi digiti.

Unless the disease demands it, the bases of the metacarpal bones should not be sawn off; if on the other hand it be necessary to remove them, the periosteal connexions of the two radial extensors and of the radial flexor should be preserved as far as possible. If free from disease, the articular extremities of the radius and ulna along with the triangular

fibro-cartilage should also be preserved. Should the disease have com menced in the wrist-joint proper it will, of course, be necessary to remov the lower ends of these bones along with the interarticular fibro-cartilag

In removing the distal ends of the bones of the forearm and th proximal ends of the metacarpal bones, Kocher recommends that the sa should be applied so as to produce convex surfaces on a transverse axi with the object of facilitating flexion and extension.

FIG. 82. EXTENSIVE TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE WRIST. Skiagram fro a female aged thirty-two. The carpo-metacarpal (with the exception of t joint between the first metacarpal and the trapezium) and wrist-joint proper we diseased along with the intercarpal joints. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

On the removal of the carpal bones, the floor of the wound is se to be occupied by the ligamentous structures and the remains of t periosteum separated from their palmar aspects. As a rule these stru tures are so invaded with tubercle that their removal is called for, alo with the parietal layer of the common flexor sheath. The close relatio ship of the carpus to the parietal layer of the palmar sheath accounts f the frequency with which the latter is invaded by the disease. Wh this has occurred, the flexor tendons must be lifted well out of th tunnel, and the whole of the diseased sheath carefully dissected awa

Digitized by Google

It is advisable to operate before the palmar sheath has become involved, because the adhesions which follow its removal seriously interfere with the patient's ability to flex the fingers.

Cases complicated with abscesses or sinuses must be treated on the general principles already mentioned in dealing with the other joints. Fortunately the sinus is generally situated either at the radial or ulnar side of the wrist, so that in excising it the ellipse may be included in

FIG. 83. RESULT OF EXCISION OF THE WRIST. Skiagram taken six months after excision by Kocher's single dorso-ulnar incision, from the same case as the previous figure. Note the presence of the pisiform, the hook of the unciform, and the trapezium, also the healed condition of sawn surfaces of bones. The patient had good use of the fingers and especially of the thumb. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

the main incision. Before closing the wound sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste should be rubbed into the raw surfaces. Drainage may be secured by pulling a rubber tube or strip of gauze through a button-hole opening made by cutting down on forceps projected from the main wound to the palmar aspect of the wrist just internal to the median nerve. The advantage of the drain is that it allows the rest of the wound to be closely stitched, and so prevents any tendency to prolapse of the extensor tendons.

The advantages which Kocher claims for his operation are: (1) Th the incision avoids the dorsal branch of the ulnar nerve, whereas t radial nerve is injured by the dorso-radial incision. (2) The detac ment of the tendon of the extensor carpi ulnaris has not the sar disadvantage as has division of the radial extensors, because the uln extensor has much less share in dorsiflexing the hand than the rad extensors. The extensor carpi ulnaris assists mainly in producing uln flexion, a displacement which, due partly to the weight of the hand a partly to cicatricial contraction, is peculiarly liable to occur after excisi The division of this tendon is, therefore, rather beneficial than oth wise. (3) With the dorso-ulnar incision the extensor tendons have l tendency to protrude from the wound than in the dorso-radial incisi

After-treatment. The important point to attend to in the aft treatment is to see that the hand is maintained in the dorsiflexed positi with the thumb and fingers left free. For this purpose the operator m make use of Lister's anterior splint, which is thickened opposite the me carpal region by means of a cork pad. In the child the writer is in habit of using simply an anterior strip of aluminium, which can eas be bent backwards opposite the wrist so as to bring the hand into dorsiflexed position. The advantage of such a splint is that it can sterilized and applied inside the bandage which fixes on the dressi

The chief drawback to excision of the wrist from the functional po of view is the difficulty the patient experiences in acquiring suffici power of flexing the fingers. This difficulty is due partly to the fle tendons being too long after the bones have been removed, and pa to adhesion of the tendons. The former factor is minimized by allow the parts to consolidate with the hand dorsiflexed so as to put the fle tendons as much on the stretch as possible, while the latter cause combated by beginning massage and movement, both passive and act as soon as the wound is healed.

CHAPTER VI

OPERATION FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE ELBOW-JOINT

Operation. Great difference of opinion still exists as to the relative merits of conservative and radical treatment in dealing with tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint.

In the early stage of the disease a skiagram should always be taken before giving a definite opinion as to whether conservative measures (including iodoform injections and Bier's congestion treatment) should be tried, or whether operation should be recommended. If a bone focus be revealed, the writer prefers to proceed to operation at once. If, on the other hand, there is reason to believe that the disease is purely synovial, conservative measures may be employed, but should no improvement manifest itself within a few weeks, radical treatment should be advised.

When operating in the early stage of the disease, instead of proceeding to do a stereotyped excision, the first step in the operation should be a free arthrotomy. For this purpose the writer prefers the external J-shaped incision of Kocher. This gives a good exposure of the interior of the joint and at the same time inflicts the minimum of damage to the muscles and their nerve-supply. The upper part of the incision, which begins about two inches above the external condyle, is carried downwards along the back of the external supracondyloid ridge through the fleshy fibres of the triceps external to its tendon; the middle part opens into the posterior aspect of the radio-humeral joint by dividing the posterior part of the external lateral and orbicular (annular) ligaments in the interval between the tendon of origin of the anconeus and the common extensor tendon; the lower part of the incision is continued downwards along the intermuscular space between the fleshy fibres of the anconeus and the extensor carpi ulnaris, and ends by curving inwards to reach the posterior border of the ulna about two inches below the tip of the olecranon.

The inner flap, including the insertion of the triceps and practically the whole of the anconeus, is detached subperiosteally from the back of the humerus and olecranon, partly with the knife and partly with a sharp rugine. Care is taken to preserve the continuity between the insertion of the triceps and the periosteum of the ulna below it. Kocher attaches

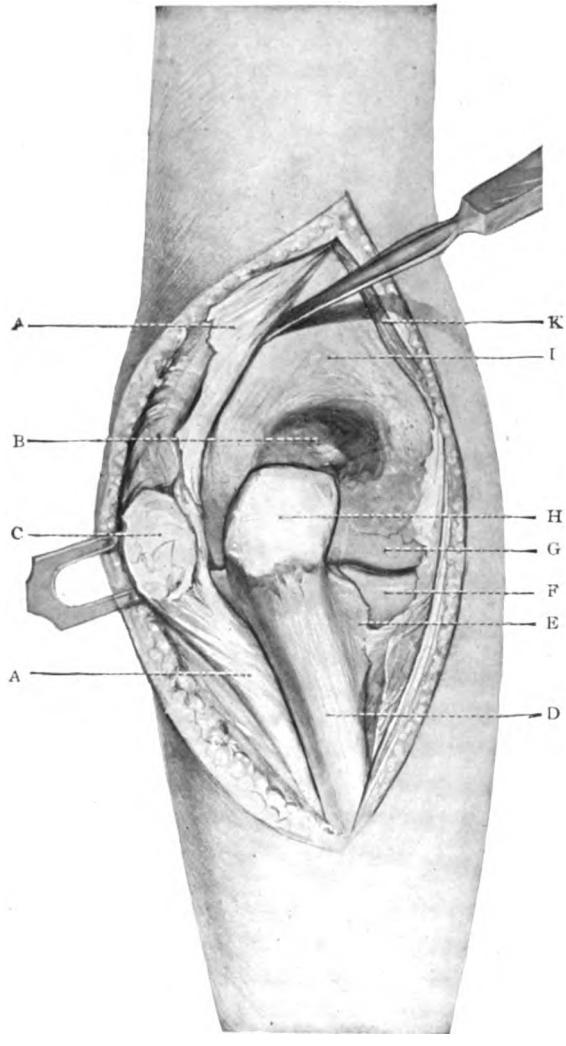


FIG. 84. EXCISION OF THE ELBOW BY KOCHER'S EXTERNAL, SLIGHTLY J-SHAPED INCISION. The extensor flap, consisting of the tendon of the triceps, a layer of cartilage detached from the olecranon, and, beneath it, of the anconeus, has been reflected outwards subperiosteally off the lower end of the humerus and the upper part of the ulna. The orbicular (annular) ligament has been divided, exposing the head of the radius. A, A, Periosteum; B, Olecranon fossa; C, Insertion of the triceps; D, Ulna; E, Orbicular ligament; F, Radius; G, Capitellum; H, Olecranon; I, Humerus; K, Triceps.

considerable importa
to the preservation
the anconeus along
the branch of the n
culo-spiral (r a d i
nerve which supplie
This nerve, which
scends vertically in
substance of the in
head of the triceps,
ters the deep surfac
the anconeus by pass
beneath its upper
der midway betw
the external cond
and the outer edge
the olecranon. A
detaching the flap fr
the olecranon, the n
step consists in refl
ing it, along with
ulnar nerve, off the
ternal condyle. In do
this the thumb of
left hand retracts
flap, while the nail p
tects the nerve fr
the edge of the kn
which should be k
close to t h e bo
Should there be con
erable swelling
thickening of the s
parts the separation
the flap is facilitated
turning back the s
and subcutaneous tis
before separating
subjacent muscular
aponeurotic t i s s u
Owing to the posit
of the incision, the

lection of the soft tissues off the external condyle and the head of the radius is a comparatively simple matter. The common tendons of origin of the flexor and extensor muscles, along with the upper attachment of the lateral ligaments, should, if possible, be preserved intact by detaching them either subperiosteally or along with a thin shell of bone. In the child the separation is easily effected by paring off a portion of the cartilaginous epicondyles along with the origins of the muscles; in the adult a strong sharp rugine should be used.

After the flaps have been completely dissected off the condyles, the assistant fully flexes the elbow and projects the lower end of the humerus well into the wound, so that the surgeon may clear it preparatory to applying the saw. Before doing so, however, the operator should carefully examine the olecranon fossa to ascertain the presence or absence of a small perforation leading into it from a limited bone focus higher up. If there be no visible focus of disease in the humerus, it should be sawn across at the level of the upper part of the epicondyles, and if no disease be detected on the raw surface, the sharp corners of the remaining portions of the epicondyles should be rounded off. It is well also to clip away the thin layer of bone forming the remains of the olecranon fossa, so as to leave a slightly crescentic extremity; this is done with the object of diminishing lateral movement subsequently. If, on the other hand, a well circumscribed focus of disease be revealed on the sawn surface, thorough curetting will generally suffice; if the focus be more diffuse it is safer to separate the periosteum and saw the bone at a higher level, well clear of the disease. In some cases it is impossible to remove all the disease without dividing the bone through the lower part of the medullary cavity. Fig. 60 is taken from a case in which the lower third of the humerus had to be resected subperiosteally at the same time that the elbow was excised. The periosteum was incised in the line of the original incision, which was prolonged further up the arm. The periosteal tube is closed by the same sutures which unite the triceps to the supinator longus (brachio-radialis) and the extensor carpi radialis longior.

Having dealt with the humerus, the operator next proceeds to clear the upper ends of the radius and ulna, the assistant meanwhile fully flexing the elbow and thrusting the bones of the forearm as far up into the wound as possible. To free the radius, the orbicular (annular) ligament should be completely removed, after which the neck of the bone is divided well below the head. The advantage of removing the greater part of the neck of the radius is twofold: (1) It ensures complete removal of the collar of diseased synovial membrane which occupies the recessus sacciformis—a diverticulum of the synovial cavity which surrounds the upper part of the neck of the radius below the level of the orbicular ligament.

(2) It diminishes the risk of firm union between the radius and humerus, and thereby helps to preserve the movements of pronation supination. To ensure still further the preservation of these movemer

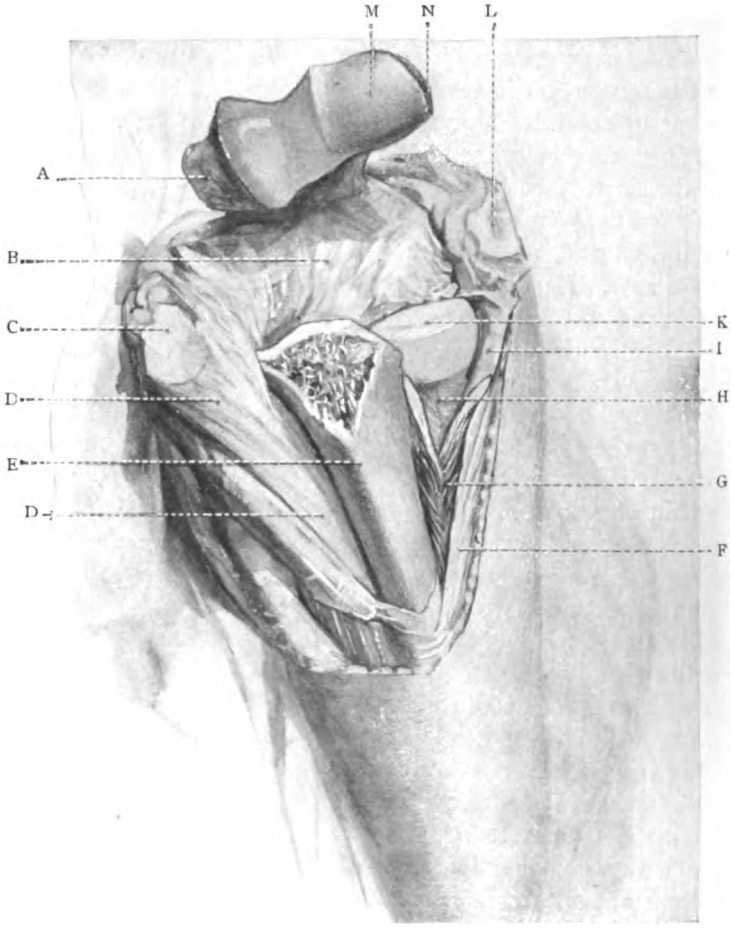
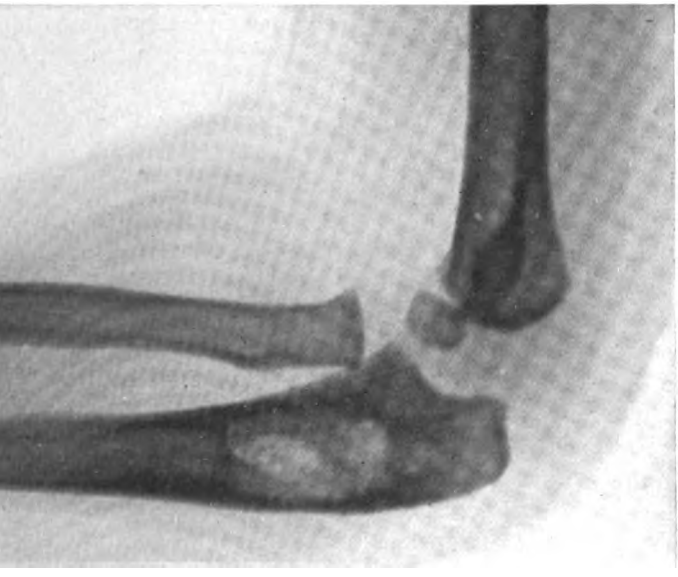


FIG. 85. FURTHER STAGE OF EXCISION OF THE ELBOW BY KOCHER'S INCIS Both flaps, along with a portion of each epicondyle, have been completely refle off the condyles, and the lower end of the humerus has been cleared anteriorly posteriorly. The elbow is fully flexed, causing the humerus to protrude. olecranon has been snipped off with bone-forceps and the periosteum stri from the portion of the ulna below it. The orbicular ligament has been div and reflected outwards, exposing the head and neck of the radius. The floo the wound is occupied by the thin anterior ligament covered by the synovial m brane. A, Internal condyle; B, Anterior ligament; C, Insertion of the tric D, D, Periosteum; E, Ulna; F, Extensor carpi ulnaris; G, Supinator brevis; H, of the radius; I, Orbicular ligament; K, Radius; L, External epicondyle; M, C tellum; N, External condyle.

Digitized by Google

fibres of the supinator brevis may be stitched over the stump
If the disease has perforated the thin part of the capsule
bicular ligament and burrowed downwards between the two
be followed up and removed either at this stage or after the
dealt with.

be no primary focus in the upper end of the ulna, the plan
d by Kocher should be adopted, namely, to saw off the
face so as to leave a concave surface. For this purpose a fine
used; the section is made from before backwards. Before



SKIAGRAM OF THE ELBOW OF A CHILD AGED SIX YEARS. Shows
lous foci in the upper end of the ulna. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

saw, the anterior ligament, along with the insertion of the
ticus, should be slightly separated subperiosteally from the
coronoid process.

e other hand, the joint has become involved secondary to
cus in the olecranon, this process should be removed as soon
or flap has been separated from it. By this means the joint
ened into and free access is obtained for the clearing and
ne lower end of the humerus. After this has been done the
rns to the bones of the forearm and completes the removal
r extremities, the ulna being sawn off below the disease.
is not infrequently the case in young children, the disease

involves the upper part of the shaft of the ulna as well as the olecranc (Fig. 86), the bones of the forearm must be resected to a still lower lev After splitting the periosteum longitudinally the ulna may be shelled ou either from above downwards after opening into the joint, or from belo upwards before the joint is opened into. The radius, whether diseased not, should be divided at the same level as the ulna, care being take not to injure either the biceps tendon or the posterior interosseous (dee radial) nerve. The edges of the split periosteum are united with buri catgut sutures before closing the skin wound.

Having dealt with the ends of the bones, attention is next directe to the disease in the soft parts. When the tuberculous mischief is st confined within the capsule, this is a very simple matter, as the arrang ment of the synovial membrane is comparatively simple. The whole the posterior ligament and the synovial pouch beneath the triceps removed to a level well above the olecranon fossa. At the floor of th wound is the diseased synovial membrane covering the anterior ligamen in front of which is the brachialis anticus muscle, which excludes th brachial artery from the immediate field of operation. As a rule it w be found necessary to dissect the thin anterior ligament off the brachial anticus along with the synovial membrane. Occasionally, however, th disease is so limited to the synovial membrane that the latter may b clipped or scraped away, leaving the ligament intact. As already ind cated, it is important to make sure that no diseased synovial membran is left in the recessus sacciformis which surrounds the neck of the radiu below the orbicular (annular) ligament.

In more advanced cases, where the disease has extended through th capsule, involved the peri-articular structures, infiltrated the muscl around the joint, and, it may be, burrowed up the arm and down th forearm, the removal of all the infected tissues is a matter of considerab difficulty. Neither time nor perseverance should be spared in followin up and removing them, as freedom from recurrence, and, which is mo important, the avoidance of subsequent amputation, depend very large upon the thoroughness with which this part of the operation is carrie out. Every particle of tuberculous capsule and peri-articular tissu should be removed, no matter how extensive the infiltration, and a caseous pockets and abscesses should, whenever possible, be excise rather than curetted. If the ulnar nerve be in danger, it is better ascertain its whereabouts by exposing it in the first instance above below the disease, and then following it through the infiltrated tissu which surrounds it. The musculo-spiral (radial) and posterior intero seous (deep radial) nerves are less liable to be involved.

The presence of sinuses still further complicates the operation. Th

should be excised whenever possible. When situated towards the outer aspect of the joint they may be included in an ellipse which is made to form a part of Kocher's incision, while if they are situated upon the inner aspect of the joint, the openings made after excising them may be taken advantage of for drainage.

After the disease is all removed, the wound is sutured in two layers. The deeper sutures (interrupted catgut) unite the following muscles from above downwards: (1) The outer edge of the triceps to the external intermuscular septum, and to the muscles arising from it, namely, the supinator longus and the extensor carpi radialis longior; (2) the tendon of origin and outer margin of the anconeus to the common extensor tendon and to the inner edge of the extensor carpi ulnaris. The superficial sutures, consisting of silkworm-gut and intermediate horsehair, unite the skin and subcutaneous tissue. In the absence of mixed infection, drainage is often unnecessary, especially if no tourniquet be used at the operation.

After-treatment. Considerable difference of opinion exists among surgeons as to the best method of carrying out the after-treatment of excision of the elbow. Some prefer to place the elbow in the extended position for two or three weeks before flexing it, while others place it in the flexed position at the outset; some begin passive movement as soon as the wound is healed, while others wait for three or four weeks; some avoid passive movement if possible, but take special steps to encourage active movement. The fact, however, is that no single line of after-treatment is suitable for all cases. Much depends on the age of the patient, on the amount of bone removed, and on the extent to which the periarticular tissues and muscles have been interfered with. The ideal result to be arrived at is a freely movable, and at the same time a muscularly strong joint, without, however, any preternatural movement.

In the young child, in a case of average severity, the writer is in the habit of keeping the forearm extended and somewhat supinated for the first fortnight or so, complete rest being ensured by bandaging the limb to the side of the chest, which is thus converted into a splint. During the next fortnight the elbow is kept alternately flexed and extended for periods of forty-eight hours, the flexion being maintained by means of a rectangular aluminium splint. At the end of a month the arm is merely supported in a sling, and the child is encouraged to begin to use it. Should the patient refuse to do so, the opposite arm should be bandaged to the chest so as to encourage the child to play with its toys with the affected limb. If the disease has been more extensive than usual, the chances of a flail joint will be lessened if the limb be placed in the flexed position from the outset.

As a rule the after-treatment in the adult consists in keeping elbow extended and somewhat supinated for the first two or three wee after which time the limb is massaged and active movement encourag If there be a tendency to stiffness, passive movements must be perseve with. Pronation and supination may be begun almost from the fi If the joint shows signs of becoming flail, the limb should be fixed plaster of Paris in the flexed position for some weeks. If, on the ot hand, it be evident that ankylosis is going to result, the patient's occu tion must be taken into account in deciding as to the position in wh the elbow is allowed to become stiff. In well-to-do patients, and in alm all females, the limb should be fixed at an angle of about 70° or 7 while in those whose employment entails the carrying and lifting heavy objects, the elbow should be fixed at an obtuse angle. In b instances the forearm should be in the mid-position between pronat and supination. Kocher points out that on no account should the fo arm be placed across the front of the chest in the flexed and adduc position. He applies a splint which maintains the forearm in the su nated and vertical position, so that the ends of the radius and ulna n rest in the coronal plane against the lower end of the humerus. begins active movement after a few days, and maintains that plas bandages are not needed.

Results. Of the forty-six primary excisions of the elbow wh the writer has done during the last ten years, the disease was found to primarily synovial in 29%. In only one case was the radius prima affected, in the others the primary disease occurred with almost eq frequency in the humerus and ulna. Of the thirty-one patients sub quently traced, one died of broncho-pneumonia four days after the sec elbow was resected, five of general tuberculosis, and two of an int current disease. Information as regards the functional after-result co only be obtained in sixteen cases. Of these eight had a strong fre movable joint; in six there was lateral movement in addition to flex and extension, and in some of these there was a tendency to a flail joi In one the limb was ankylosed at a right angle with full pronation a supination, and in another at 145°. In a little more than half the ca the child was under five years of age at the time of operation. 40% the cases were complicated with either an abscess or a sinus. In child a certain amount of shortening is inevitable, as all the epiphyseal ca lages about the elbow are removed. In the cases operated on, the sho ening of the upper arm varied from nothing to 2½ inches, and in forearm from 1 to 4 inches. Fortunately growth takes place to a l extent from the cubital epiphyses than from those of the shoulder a wrist.

CHAPTER VII

TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE SHOULDER-JOINT

EXCEPT when associated with advanced pulmonary tuberculosis conservative treatment is not to be recommended in tuberculous disease of this joint, as it almost invariably results in ankylosis, a condition attended with great disability. By excision, on the other hand—especially if undertaken before the stage of abscess formation and involvement of the peri-articular structures—an excellent result with comparatively free movement at the shoulder may generally be looked for.

When the disease has begun in the upper end of the humerus, it is usual to excise the joint by the anterior method. When, however, the disease involves more especially the glenoid cavity, or when it is more advanced and diffused throughout the joint, Kocher prefers to resect the joint from behind.

With regard to the advantages of the posterior route, this author writes as follows: 'When the head has been thoroughly cleared, and especially if it be excised, an excellent view of the glenoid is obtained, much better than is possible by the anterior incision; and as it is most important to remove all the infected tissues in tuberculous disease, this complete exposure of all parts of the joint is the great advantage of the method. Moreover, this free exposure is obtained without interfering with the function of the deltoid or other muscles of the shoulder. Yet another advantage over the anterior method is, that when the disease in the head is limited or absent, only the posterior muscles require to be separated, while the anterior part of the capsule, the coraco-humeral band, and the subscapularis muscle are preserved intact, and in this way there is no tendency of the head of the bone to be displaced upwards towards the coracoid, which so frequently occurs as the result of the anterior operation.'

Both the anterior and posterior operations have been fully described by Mr. Burghard (pp. 34–40). It will suffice therefore in this article merely to draw attention to a few points regarding the operation as performed for tuberculous disease.

When the disease in the joint is secondary to a focus in the upper end of the humerus, the muscles attached to the tuberosities must be

freely separated. The capsule is slit up from the bicipital groove as as the glenoid, and the tendon itself is freed and displaced to the in side of the inner tuberosity. The capsule, along with the rotator musc is then separated subperiosteally from the tuberosities by a str rugine or, if preferred, a thin layer of bone may be detached along v the periosteum. When a limited focus is situated in the great tuberos thorough curetting followed by the introduction of sublimated iodofo bismuth paste will generally suffice. If, however, the focus in humerus be more diffuse, the periosteum must be still further separa and the bone sawn across immediately below the disease. Care must taken not to wound the circumflex vessels, and more particularly circumflex nerve. The saw is applied parallel to the anatomical neck.

In a case of primary synovial disease, there is no necessity to rem more than the articular surface of the humerus. The bone is sa obliquely along the line of the anatomical neck, and the sharp edge wh is left is carefully clipped away with bone-forceps curved on the flat, so to prevent injurious pressure on the axillary artery.

If the glenoid cartilage be diseased, or replaced by a carious surf a thin slice of the bone must be removed, while if there be a prim focus in the neck of the scapula, the origin of the long head of the tric must be separated subperiosteally, and still more bone removed. It i these cases that the posterior route recommended by Kocher is speci advantageous.

With regard to the soft parts, in order to obtain sufficient access the removal of all the synovial membrane, it is important to lay open capsule as widely as possible; hence the importance of carrying incision along the line of the biceps tendon right up to the apex of glenoid. Transverse incisions into the capsule should be avoided possible, but any part of the ligament which is itself infiltrated v tubercle should be clipped away. Fortunately the capsule is so redund that the gap which is left in it can generally be closed with catgut sutu Care must be taken to remove all diseased synovial membrane aro the biceps tendon. If the disease has invaded the bursa beneath deltoid, the anterior part of this muscle should be divided close to clavicle, so that, with the upper arm abducted (to relax the muscle) may be everted as well as retracted. If the bursa beneath the s scapularis be involved it also must be dissected away.

All suppurating pockets and sinuses must be carefully followed and, if possible, dissected out. It is not uncommon to find a si extending down the upper arm from the bicipital groove. To get this, the original anterior incision must be prolonged downwards, the upper part of the tendon of the pectoralis major may have to

detached from its insertion. Great care must be taken not to injure the circumflex nerve.

An abscess or sinus, the result of disease of the scapula, is generally found either in the axilla or in the region of the posterior border of the deltoid; it can be got at by prolonging downwards Kocher's posterior incision.

In the presence of sinuses and mixed infection, the wound should be only partially closed, plenty of room being left for the introduction of iodoform gauze. If necessary a drainage tube may be passed into the anterior wound and brought out through a button-hole opening opposite the posterior border of the deltoid. Even in the absence of infection, a rubber tube should be introduced from the lower part of the anterior incision down to, but not into, the sutured capsule.

In applying the dressing, a pad is placed in the axilla to prevent the upper end of the humerus being displaced inwards. The dressing is secured in position by a bandage which fixes the upper arm to the trunk, the forearm being lightly supported in a sling.

Cheyne and Burghard (*Manual of Surgical Treatment*, Part IV, p. 254) recommend the following after-treatment: 'As soon as the wound has healed, the arm may be fixed in proper position by a starch or water-glass bandage, and, after two weeks more, passive movement may be begun; the period at which this passive movement should be employed depends largely upon the amount of bone removed; if the whole of the upper end of the bone has been removed and the rotators divided, as was done in the old operation, the elbow should be supported and the arm fixed for four or five weeks, as otherwise a very lax joint is likely to result; if, on the other hand, the operation we have described is sufficient, passive movement should be begun after a fortnight. Special attention must be paid to preserving rotation, which is the movement most likely to be lost; abduction should also be carefully attended to. The axillary pad and the wrist-sling should be continued for six or eight weeks.'

CHAPTER VIII

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE FOO AND ANKLE

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE TARSO-METATARSAL JOINTS

THE disease is often secondary to a focus in the base of one of t metatarsal bones. Of the three synovial cavities connected with t tarso-metatarsal articulations, the inner is confined to the joint betwe the first metatarsal and the internal (first) cuneiform, the outer to t articulation between the fourth and fifth metatarsal and the cubo When the disease involves either of these synovial cavities the choice treatment will lie, according to the extent of the disease, between local excision and amputation of the involved digit or digits along wi the adjacent tarsal bone.

To excise the joint between the base of the first metatarsal and t internal cuneiform, a semilunar flap is made to the inner side of the lo extensor tendon, which is drawn aside. The tendon of insertion of t tibialis anticus (anterior) is either divided close to the bone, or if possib separated subperiosteally. The base of the first metatarsal is sawn acro while the internal (first) cuneiform is either chiselled across, or remov entirely, according to the extent of the disease. The bones are th grasped with forceps and either wrenched or cut away from the tend of the peroneus longus.

The joint between the fourth and fifth metatarsal and the cuboid excised in a similar manner to the above, but with the convexity of t flap directed outwards. The tendons of the peroneus brevis and terti are detached from their insertions, while that of the longus is preserv by freeing it from the groove on the under surface of the cuboid. If t disease has commenced in the cuboid, the whole of it must be excised.

COMPLETE ANTERIOR TARSECTOMY

When the disease involves the tarso-metatarsal and anterior tars regions more extensively, a complete anterior tarsectomy should performed. This operation, introduced by P. H. Watson in 1874, performed as follows: Two long dorso-lateral incisions are made, t

inner extending from the middle of the first metatarsal bone to the neck of the astragalus (talus), the other from the middle of the fifth metatarsal to the outer aspect of the anterior process of the os calcis (calcaneus). These incisions should be carried down to the bone except in the case of the posterior extremity of the inner incision, which should be kept superficial so as to avoid opening either into the ankle or the astragalo-scaphoid (talo-navicular) joint.

After detaching the tibialis anticus (anterior) from its insertion, the extensor tendons, along with the vessels and nerves, are separated from

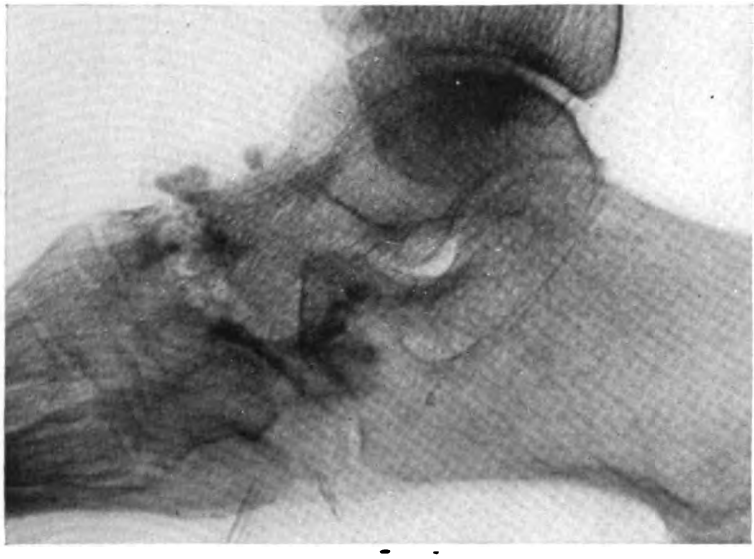


FIG. 87. TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE ANTERIOR TARSUS. Skiagram taken before operation (anterior tarsectomy). (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

within outwards from the ligamentous structures on the dorsum; the dorsalis pedis artery is divided close to where it passes through the first interosseous space. Next, after freeing and retracting the upper border of the abductor hallucis muscle, the tendon of the tibialis posticus (posterior) is detached from its insertion into the tuberosity of the scaphoid (navicular), and the dissection is then continued as far into the sole of the foot as possible, care being taken to keep close to the bones.

The patient is now placed in the semi-prone position so as to give more comfortable access to the outer side of the foot.

The external incision passes down to the bones between the tendons of the peroneus brevis and tertius; it divides the outer attachment of the lower anterior annular (cruciate) ligament and some of the fleshy

fibres of the extensor brevis digitorum. After detaching the inser of the peroneus tertius from the base of the fifth metatarsal bone, extensor tendons are separated from the outer side of the dorsum the foot until the inner wound is reached; the separation is contir in an upward and downward direction until the bridge of soft tis can be freely raised up from the bones. The soft structures are simil separated from the plantar aspects of the bones, but before doing so tendon of the peroneus brevis is detached from the prominent base of fifth metatarsal and the tendon of the peroneus longus is freed from groove on the under surface of the cuboid. The difficulty in separa the soft parts on the plantar aspect (due to the concavity formed by transverse ridge of the skeleton of the foot) is to some extent diminis by snipping off the projecting base of the fifth metatarsal bone.

The remaining metatarsal bones are divided a little below their b by a keyhole saw applied from the dorsum; the bridge of soft part meanwhile retracted well upwards. Posteriorly the saw is car through either the scaphoid (navicular) and the cuboid bones, or furt back through the head of the astragalus (talus) and the anterior pro of the os calcis (calcaneus), according to the extent of the disease. I drainage is provided for by passing through the tunnel one large or smaller rubber tubes rolled up in a strip of iodoform gauze.

After-treatment. The chief point to attend to in the after-tr ment is to keep the parts at rest with the foot maintained at a r angle. This is readily done by applying to the sole and lateral aspect the limb a stirrup splint cut out of a sheet of aluminium.

By this operation the foot is of course considerably shortened, bu the tendons inserted into the metatarsal bones are separated as far possible subperiosteally, the functional result is excellent.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE OS CALCIS

Indications. A primary focus of tubercle is more frequently with in the os calcis than in any other bone of the tarsus. It occurs q frequently in young children and is not uncommon in adults. The les takes the form of a caseous deposit which may or may not contai sequestrum. Occasionally the tuberculous mischief is more diffuse. indications are to remove the focus before the surrounding soft pa including the tendon sheaths, become infected, and especially before disease involves the astragalo-calcanean joint. The situation and nat of the focus is best determined by skiagraphy.

Operation. *When the focus is small,* it may be treated by

oft parts, together with the periosteum, off the bone in the ap. . The part of the cortex of the bone superficial to the chiselled away and the disease in the interior removed by ch should extend well into the surrounding healthy bone. has given rise to local thickening at any part of the bone, should be so planned as to expose that particular region. a flap off the outer aspect of the bone the convexity of should reach downwards well below the peroneal tendons, ng with perios- be dis- ng with n other lar flap be dis- om the of the ch case e taken ring the al ves- rves or r divi-

disease se, the o make incision ve the he heel inser- tendo

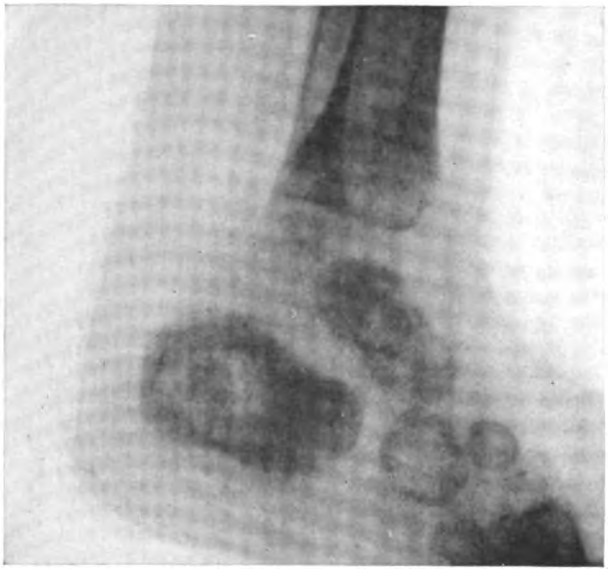


FIG. 88. A CASEOUS TUBERCULOUS FOCUS IN THE OS CALCIS. Skiagram from a child aged two years. Note the sequestrum in the centre of the tuberculous focus. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

ternally the incision may extend forwards as far as the fth metatarsal bone, while internally it should end a little ifurcation of the posterior tibial vessels about a finger's the internal malleolus. In the adult, if the whole of the os removed, a second incision must be carried from the hori- on vertically upwards along the outer edge of the tendo an inch or more. The details of the operation have been Mr. Burghard (p. 55). When the operation is being per- uberculous disease, however, it is important to remove the s possible subperiosteally.

In the child the operation is much simpler, so that the additio a vertical incision is not necessary. In making the horizontal inci the knife is carried not merely through the periosteum, but also thro the shell of cartilage which surrounds the cancellated tissue of the veloping bone. The plantar portion of the cartilage is reflected off osseous tissue along with the soft parts. By means of a gouge and sl spoon the diseased focus, along with the whole of the surrounding car lated bone, can readily be removed, leaving the cartilaginous shell in If desired, the cavity may be filled with Mosetig-Moorhof's iodofo wax. The writer's experience, however, is that the new bone forms fectly well if the cavity be allowed to fill simply with blood-clot.

A few catgut sutures are introduced posteriorly to unite the div insertion of the tendo Achillis and the adjacent cartilage. No drai is required unless a sinus exists, in which case the cavity should be stu with iodoform gauze. If the operation be performed before the artic cartilage has become infected, neither the calcaneo-astragaloid nor calcaneo-cuboid joints are opened into. As the result of leaving cartilage the bone is very largely re-formed.

After-treatment. The after-treatment consists in keeping foot at right angles and avoiding pressure on the heel. In the adult is best done by an anterior metal suspension splint, which is fixed to limb above and below the wound by means of a plaster of Paris band The splint is provided with hooks, to enable the limb to be suspen from a cradle. Though there is very little re-formation of bone in adult the result is very satisfactory, especially if a pad be worn inside heel of the boot.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF TH ANKLE-JOINT

Operation. In tuberculous disease of the ankle-joint which advanced in spite of rest and constitutional treatment, the writer alr invariably excises the joint by Kocher's method of dividing the ante and external lateral ligaments of the ankle and then dislocating foot inwards. A long J-shaped incision is made at the outer aspec the ankle. The vertical limb of the incision extends well up behind lower part of the fibula, while the curved portion, which reaches d to the peroneal tubercle, is carried up on to the dorsum, to end oppo the tendon of the peroneus tertius just external to the musculo-cutane (superficial peroneal) nerve. The external saphenous vein and n lie immediately below the incision.

The skin flap, along with the fascia and the periosteum covering external malleolus, is dissected forwards off the peronei, the exte

nalleolus, and the anterior ligament of the tibio-fibular articulation. Below and in front of the malleolus the flap is dissected off the origin of the extensor brevis digitorum, the outer attachments of the lower division of the anterior annular (cruciate) ligament, the broad anterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament, and the outer part of the thin anterior ligament. It is through the latter structure that the disease in the joint is very liable to penetrate. The abscess which results is generally

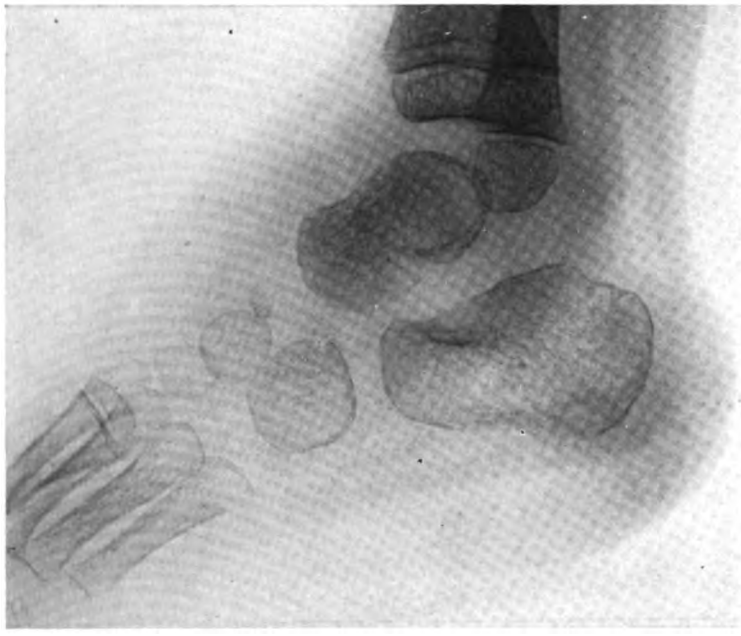


FIG. 89. A CASEOUS TUBERCULOUS FOCUS IN THE HEAD AND NECK OF THE ASTRAGALUS. This had given rise to secondary synovial disease of the ankle, the astragalo-calcanean and the astragalo-scaphoid joints. The skiagram was taken before operation from a child aged three and a half years. The astragalus was excised and the cartilages and synovial membrane of the adjacent joints removed. The foot was maintained in good position by a nail driven through the soft parts of the heel and the os calcis into the tibia. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

covered by the flap, and is therefore easily dissected off its deep surface after it has been reflected.

The sheaths of the two peroneal tendons are next slit up, the tendons themselves are divided a little in front of the external malleolus, and the portions above are detached along with the periosteum from the groove behind the fibula.

The base of the flap, including the extensor tendons, is now retracted well forwards and inwards so as to allow of the detachment of the an-

terior ligament subperiosteally from the anterior border of the lower
of the tibia as far inwards as the internal malleolus. The same ligar
is also detached from the neck of the astragalus (talus), but the a
galo-scaphoid (talo-navicular) joint is not opened into at this stage

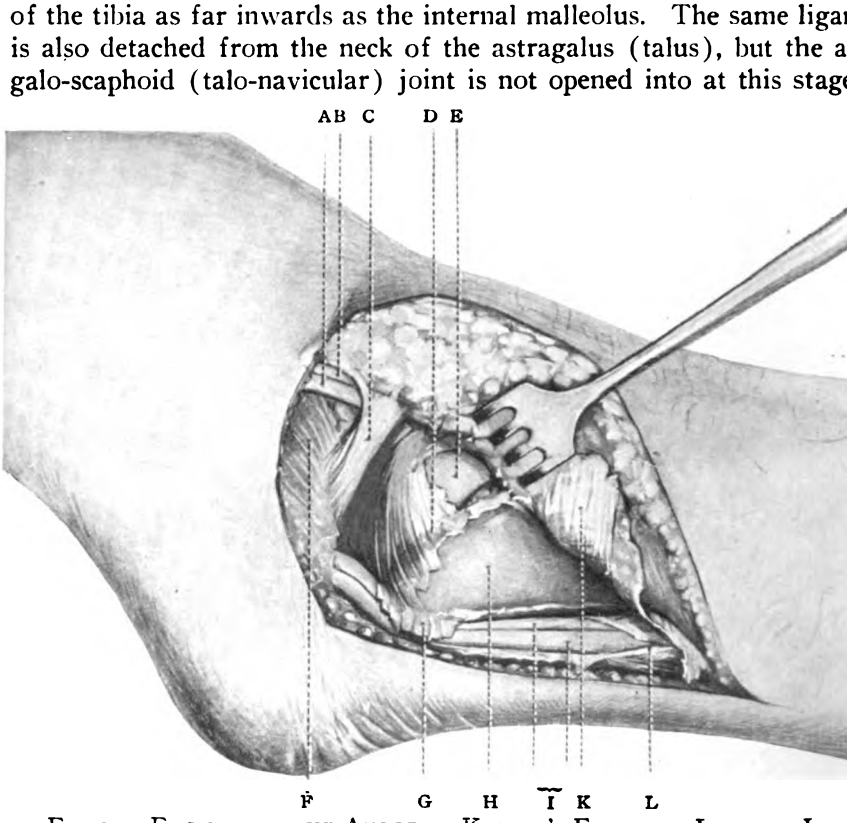
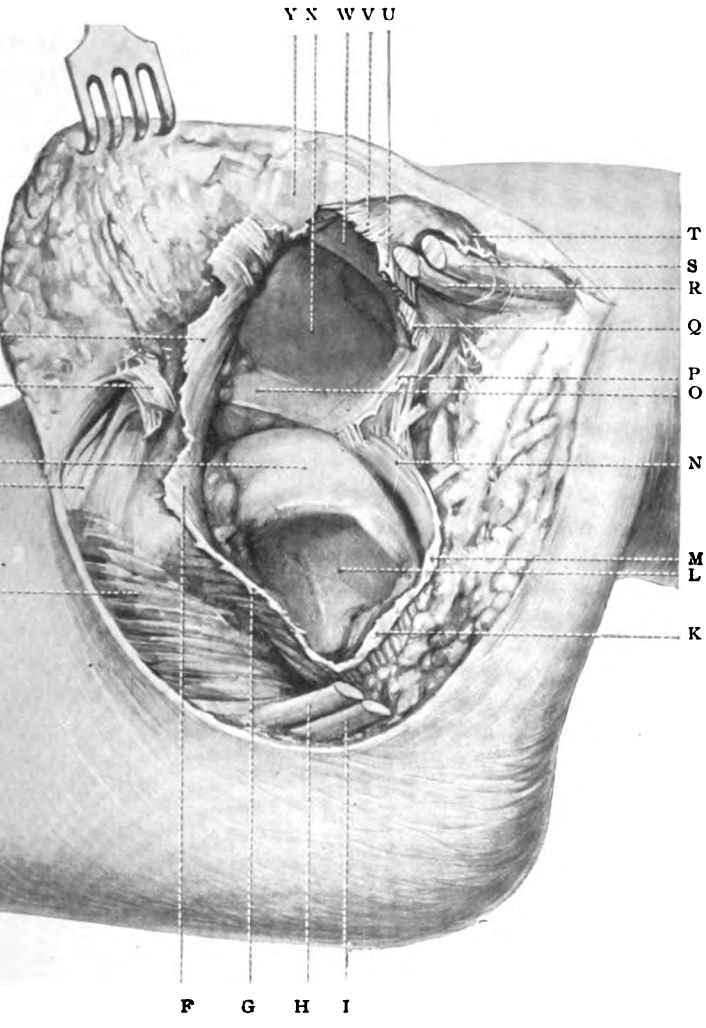


FIG. 90. EXCISION OF THE ANKLE BY KOCHER'S EXTERNAL J-SHAPED INCI
The flap, including the periosteum covering the external malleolus, has
reflected forwards; the peroneal tendons with their sheath slit up are seen b
the fibula; the body of the astragalus has been exposed by dividing the ant
ligament immediately in front of the anterior fasciculus of the external l
ligament. The external tendons, the anterior annular ligament, and the orig
the extensor digitorum brevis are exposed at the lowest part of the w
A, Peroneus tertius tendon; B, Extensor digitorum longus; C, Anterior an
ligament; D, External lateral ligament; E, Astragalus; F, Extensor digit
brevis; G, External annular ligament; H, External malleolus; I, Peronei ten
K, Periosteum; L, Sheath of the peronei tendons.

The next step consists in dividing the bands of the external la
ligament by carrying the knife well upwards under cover of the ext
malleolus. By wrenching the foot forcibly inwards, it can now be
pletely dislocated over the internal malleolus so that the sole
almost directly upwards. The upper surface of the astragalus (ta
is thus thrust downwards and outwards into the wound, and a



RTHER STAGE OF THE OPERATION SHOWN IN THE PREVIOUS FIGURE.
xternal, and posterior ligaments of the ankle have been divided,
avity fully exposed by forcible dislocation of the foot inwards.
ndons have been divided, also the outer attachment of the lower
anterior annular ligament. A, F, Anterior ligament of the ankle;
ular ligament; C, Astragalus; D, Peroneus tertius; E, Extensor
; G, K, External lateral ligament of the ankle; H, Peroneus brevis;
gus; L, Astragalus; M, Q, Posterior fasciculus of the external
; N, P, Posterior ligament of the ankle; O, Internal malleolus;
ndons; T, External annular ligament; U, Middle fasciculus of the
ligament; V, Anterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament;
lleolus; X, Tibia; Y, Periosteum.

exposure of the joint is obtained. The internal lateral (deltoid) ligan is left intact as a hinge on which the foot rotates. It not infreque happens, in forcibly dislocating the foot, that the periosteum, along the internal lateral ligament, is either partly stripped from the inte malleolus or a portion of the latter is broken off; this is rather an adv tage than otherwise, as it gives better exposure of the inner part of joint cavity.

By detaching the posterior ligament, along with the transverse l ment, from the posterior border of the tibia, the foot can be so c pletely dislocated that every part of the joint cavity is brought into view.

The next step in the operation consists in the removal of all diseased synovial membrane, care being taken to clear out the rece at the inner and posterior aspects of the joint. The thin posterior l ment of the ankle-joint had better be removed along with the syno membrane; in doing this the deep flexor tendons and the poste tibial vessels and nerve must not be injured. The internal lateral l ment may generally be left intact.

The stage is now reached when the operator decides as to whe it will be necessary to remove the whole of the astragalus. Some geons recommend its removal as a matter of routine whether it diseased or not, the reason given being that unless the whole bone excised, sufficient access is not obtained for the removal of the rest of disease. This argument does not apply, however, if Kocher's disloca method be adopted. If the astragalus itself be not diseased, the wr prefers simply to chisel off its articular surfaces. In doing this the surfaces left must be carefully shaped so that the remnant of the bone accurately into the tibio-fibular arch, which is also denuded of its ca lage. If, on the other hand, there be a primary focus in the astraga if it be the seat of extensive articular caries, or if the disease has inva the astragalo-calcanean (talo-calcanean) joint, the whole bone mus course be removed. In looking for a primary focus in the astragalus upper surface of its neck should be carefully examined, as it is in situation that a small opening is not infrequently found leading into joint.

To remove the astragalus the head should first be freed. This is d by dividing the outer attachment of the lower division of the ante annular ligament and detaching the origin and posterior part of extensor brevis digitorum. The peroneus tertius and extensor tend are retracted well upwards and inwards. The posterior and outer of the astragalo-scaphoid (talo-navicular) capsule is now exposed, by dividing it in the coronal plane the head of the astragalus (talus

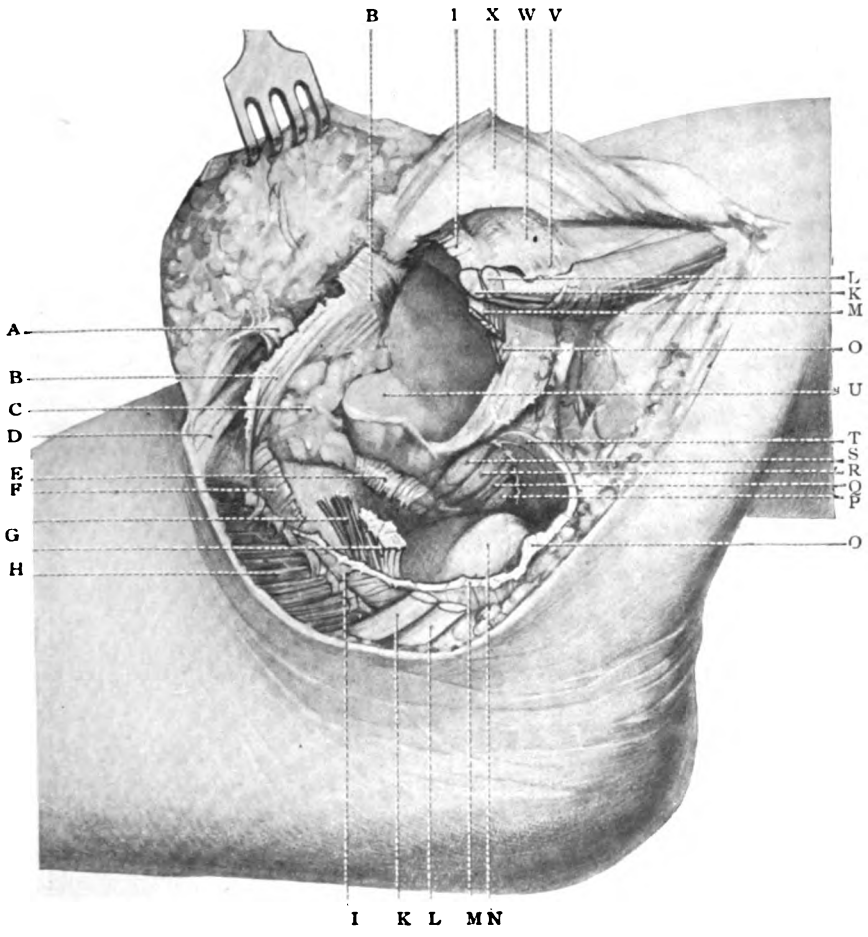


FIG. 92. FURTHER STAGE OF THE OPERATION SHOWN IN THE TWO PREVIOUS FIGURES. The astragalus has been removed, exposing the articular surfaces of the scaphoid and the os calcis. The internal lateral ligament has been partly detached subperiosteally from the internal malleolus; the posterior ligament of the ankle has been partly removed, exposing the deep flexor tendons along with the posterior tibial vessels and nerves. The extensor digitorum brevis has been divided at its origin from the os calcis. A, Anterior annular ligament; B, B, Anterior ligament of the ankle; C, Synovial membrane; D, Peroneus tertius; E, Internal lateral ligament; F, Astragalo-scaphoid ligament; G, Interosseous ligament; H, Extensor digitorum brevis; I, I, Anterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament; K, K, Peroneus brevis; L, L, Peroneus longus; M, M, Middle fasciculus of the external lateral ligament; N, Os calcis; O, O, Posterior fasciculus of the external lateral ligament; P, Posterior tibial nerve; Q, Posterior tibial artery; R, Flexor digitorum longus; S, Tibialis posticus; T, Posterior ligament; U, Internal malleolus; V, External annular ligament; W, External malleolus; X, Periosteum.

laid bare. A sharp hook is then inserted into the astragalus, and wh the bone is dragged upwards a knife is introduced beneath it so as divide the strong interosseous ligament between it and the os calc To completely free the astragalus all that is needed is to detach it fr the internal lateral (deltoid) ligament; to do this the foot is forcil inverted so that a strong sharp hook may be inserted into the inn surface of the astragalus, which is dragged downwards and outwar while the internal lateral ligament is divided close to the bone, or sep rated at its attachment with a strong sharp rugine. By keeping close the bone the tendons at the inner ankle (especially the tibialis postic and the posterior tibial vessels and nerves escape injury.

Having removed the astragalus, the upper surface of the os cal is freed from disease by removing the synovial membrane and chiselli away its articular surface. The synovial membrane of the astraga scaphoid joint is then examined; if it be found infected secondary the focus in the astragalus, the whole of the astragalo-scaphoid caps must be removed, and along with it the posterior articular surface of t scaphoid (navicular).

The removal of all disease having been effected, the next step is see that the foot is accurately fitted into the tibio-fibular arch, a securely fixed there at a right angle, with no tendency either to inversi or eversion. The ultimate functional, as well as cosmetic, result depen largely on the care with which this part of the operation is carried o

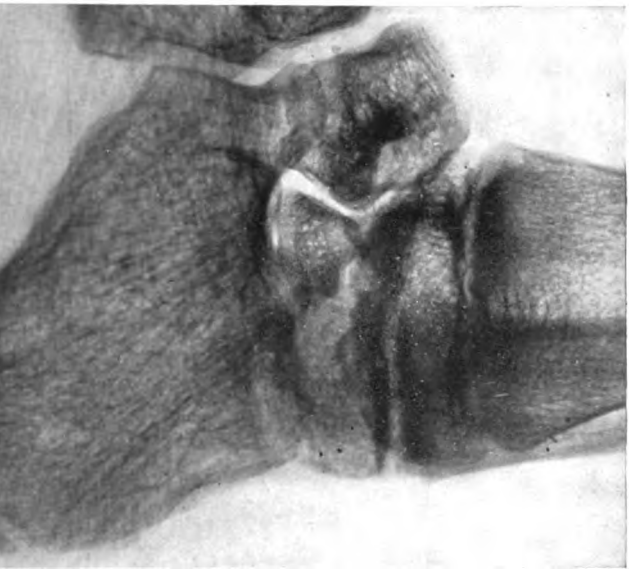
Reference has already been made to the careful shaping of t astragalus in removing its articular surfaces. When this bone has be completely removed it is generally necessary to reduce the breadth the os calcis by chiselling off the sustentaculum tali. If this precauti be not taken permanent deformity results; the foot becomes displac outwards and the internal malleolus projects unduly.

The articular surface on the upper aspect of the os calcis must removed so as to leave a horizontal surface; this is attained by maki the slice slightly wedge-shaped, the base of the wedge being direct posteriorly. If this point be not attended to, when the bones are broug into apposition it will be found that the foot is too much flexed towar the dorsum. Again, when the astragalus has been removed, the extern malleolus must be shortened somewhat, and it is an advantage to gou away part of the outer surface of the os calcis so as to leave a slight hollowed out raw surface to receive it.

To keep the bones accurately and firmly in position during the heali of the wound the writer is in the habit of using a long, square, plat nail, which is driven through the skin of the heel, the os calcis (c caneus), and the remains of the astragalus (if not completely remove

a for a couple of inches or so. Great care must be taken assistant holds the foot in the best possible position while g driven in.

ing the wound the divided peroneal tendons are sutured hind the external malleolus, and if possible secured there y remains of the sheath and deep fascia over them with utures. If the peroneal sheaths have become secondarily



ULT OF EXCISION OF THE ANKLE. Skiagram taken six years after formed when the child was nine years of age. The astragalus ly removed. There is no inversion or eversion, and no lateral he foot; the internal malleolus is a little more prominent than ne foot is shorter and narrower than its fellow. There is only ment at the ankle itself, but this is partly compensated for by ement at the mid- and posterior tarsal joints. The limb is han its fellow. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

must of course be carefully dissected away. The same heaths of the flexor tendons at the inner ankle.

mation in the region of the external malleolus has already . An abscess in the region of the internal malleolus does call for a separate incision at the inner side of the ankle. s have been dealt with, what remains of the abscess can cted away from within at the close of the operation.

drainage may be provided for by passing a tube across

the front of the ankle beneath the extensor tendon and bringing it through a button-hole opening just in front of the internal malle Drainage, however, is seldom necessary unless the disease has rea the stage of sinus formation.

After-treatment. The after-treatment is greatly facilitate the use of the nail, which is kept in for three weeks or so. The pa is quite unconscious of presence, and as it gradu becomes somewhat loose its removal is unatte with pain. The limb is pl in any convenient form posterior splint which poss a foot-piece. The woun dressed in a fortnight take out the stitches, an week or two later the na removed and a plaster of P case applied.

FIG. 94. RESULT OF EXCISION OF THE ANKLE AND ASTRAGALUS. Skiagram taken nine years after an operation performed when the child was two years old. There is no inversion or eversion, and no lateral displacement of the foot; there is movement at the ankle in the direction of dorsiflexion to the extent of 15°. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

Results. Of the six excisions of the ankle formed by the writer in last ten years, eleven been traced. Three of t died of general tubercul In the remainder there is return of the disease and wounds are all soundly he The functional result is g in all but one case in w both ankles were excised. this patient both feet are placed outwards and co erable discomfort exists f pressure on the prominent internal malleolus. In two others the slight outward displacement of the foot, which, however, gives ris no inconvenience. The remainder are able to walk well without i or lateral supports of any kind. Two indulge freely in football. Oss ankylosis is present in one case, and this is compensated for by increased mobility of the anterior and mid-tarsal joints. In the mainder there is slight flexion and extension at the ankle. In the peroneal tendons are displaced in front of the external malle

The disease was purely synovial in half the cases; in the other half, with the exception of two, the primary disease was in the astragalus. An abscess or fistula was present in one-third of the cases. The average duration of stay in hospital before dismissal with the limb in plaster of Paris was four weeks.

MIKULICZ'S OSTEOPLASTIC RESECTION OF THE FOOT

This operation is indicated in tuberculous disease of the posterior tarsus when the soft parts above the heel are so involved that disarticulation at the ankle is out of the question. The procedure consists in the removal of the soft parts of the heel together with the astragalus and os calcis, and the approximation (after sawing off the articular surfaces) of the scaphoid and cuboid to the tibia and fibula, the foot being maintained in the extreme equinus position so that the patient walks on the heads of the metatarsal bones with the toes hyperextended.

With the patient placed in the lateral or prone position, a transverse incision is made across the sole from the tuberosity of the scaphoid to a little behind the base of the fifth metatarsal bone. A second transverse incision is made behind the ankle between the centre of the bases of the malleoli. The extremities of these incisions are joined by two oblique incisions placed one on each side of the ankle. All four incisions extend down to the bone. The foot is forcibly dorsiflexed and the ankle-joint is opened from behind. With the foot still further flexed towards the leg, the ligaments of the joint are divided and the soft parts are dissected off the astragalus until the scaphoid and cuboid are reached. If the ankle-joint itself be free from disease, the dorsal bridge of soft parts should be separated as far as possible subperiosteally, while if the ankle-joint be diseased the anterior ligaments should be removed, care being taken not to wound the dorsalis pedis artery, which, through its anastomosis with the external plantar, is the main source of blood-supply to the remainder of the foot. If the mid-tarsal joint be diseased, the scaphoid and cuboid should be sawn across without opening into it, or, if necessary, the section should be made further forwards through the cuneiform bones and the cuboid; if, on the other hand, the mid-tarsal joint be healthy, the astragalus and os calcis may be removed before the articular surfaces of the scaphoid and cuboid are sawn off. The articular surfaces of the tibia and fibula are next sawn off horizontally, and, after ligaturing the vessels, the remainder of the foot is brought into a line with the leg and maintained in this position by wiring the bones. If the tarsal bones have been sawn vertically and the tibia and fibula horizontally, as they should be, the metatarsals will be in the same straight line as the leg.

The divided ends of the posterior tibial nerve should be sutu
possible, but if this cannot be done no great harm results, as the int
muscles of the foot are of very little use after this operation.
'dissects the nerve out beforehand and takes care to leave it i
(Cheyne and Burghard, *A Manual of Surgical Treatment,* vo
p. 248).

When the wound is sutured, the soft tissues on the dorsum
a redundant fold opposite what was the centre of the lateral inci
this redundancy, however, gradually disappears. Drainage is s
necessary, but if desirable a tube, or strip of iodoform gauze, m
passed across the limb beneath the redundant bridge of soft tissue

A strip of strong aluminium, or malleable iron, should be appl
the posterior aspect of the limb and bent forwards at a right ang
posite the metatarso-phalangeal joints so as to keep the phalanges h
extended. As soon as the wound is healed a plaster of Paris c
applied.

The disadvantages of this operation are (1) that should os
ankylosis not occur, the functional result is very unsatisfactory; (
is often a long time before the patient is able to bear his weight o
limb; (3) the special boot which is required is difficult to make; (4
limb is lengthened, consequently the sole of the opposite boot mu
thickened.

The above operation may be converted into a *complete tarsec*
by making the transverse incision across the sole a little further forw
and by dissecting the tarsal bones off the tissues on the dorsum a
as the bases of the metatarsal bones, which are then sawn across.

CHAPTER IX

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE KNEE-JOINT

In all cases where a doubt exists as to whether conservative treatment should be tried in the first instance, a skiagram should be taken. If a bone focus be revealed, operation should be performed without delay. If, on the other hand, there be no bone disease, conservative treatment may be tried in the early stages of the disease, but should no improvement occur within three months operation should be resorted to; this applies especially to young children, as the disease generally runs a more rapid course in them than in adolescents and adults.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE SYNOVIAL MEMBRANE

When the disease in the synovial membrane is primary, and forms a localized focus which has not yet perforated into the joint, excellent results are obtained by arthrotomy and removal of the affected area of synovial membrane. If the focus be limited, the joint may be opened by a longitudinal incision on one or other side of the patella, according to the seat of disease, or if preferred, the incision may be more or less curved so as to enable a flap to be dissected back. When the disease is less accessible, or affects a larger area, the joint should be more freely opened, either by dividing the patellar ligament by the lower curved incision of Textor, or by detaching the tubercle of the tibia and everting the quadriceps apparatus by means of Kocher's external J-shaped incision.

The diseased synovial membrane may either be clipped away after dissecting the divided capsule from its outer aspect, or the joint may be freely opened into first, and the diseased membrane then dissected off the capsule. In either case care should be taken not to cut into the tuberculous tissue.

When the disease occupies the suprapatellar pouch, a curved incision, with its convexity upwards, is made above the patella. The lower part of the quadriceps, along with the skin, is reflected downwards off the synovial pouch, and the latter is then dissected off the supratrochlear portion of the femur. Before closing the wound the quadriceps is united with buried catgut sutures. Passive movement is begun in about three weeks, and a fortnight later the patient is allowed to begin to use the limb.

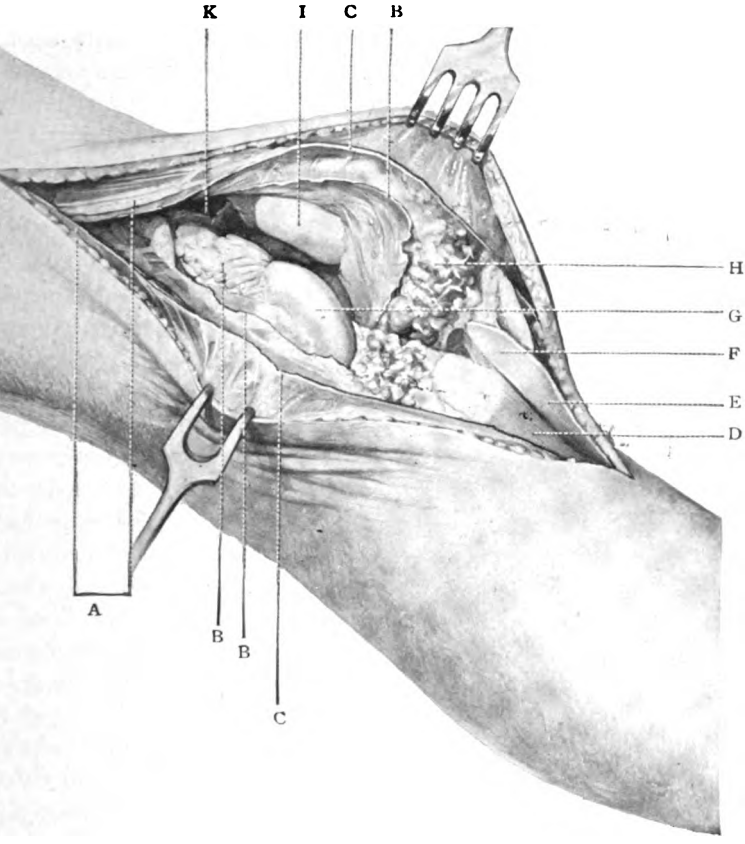
In diffuse tuberculous disease of the synovial membrane when disease is aggravated, and especially when it has extended to the articular structures, an H-shaped incision may be employed with advantage. Cheyne and Burghard recommend this as the best routine incision for arthrectomy. 'The vertical incisions should reach from the upper limit of the suprapatellar pouch well on to the anterior surface of the tibia, and should be from 1 inch to 1½ inches away from the edges of the patella. These are deepened until the tendon of the quadriceps extensor is exposed. Division of this displays the fibrous capsule of the joint covered by fat and loose cellular tissue' (*Manual of Surgical Treatment*, Part IV, p. 209). The transverse incision which unites the vertical incisions crosses the centre of the patella.

In cases of average severity the writer prefers the external J-shaped incision of Kocher. The advantage of this procedure is that, in addition to giving sufficient access to the disease, it preserves the quadriceps apparatus intact. The operation is performed as follows:—

Incision. The incision, which is external and somewhat J-shaped, begins 3 to 4 inches above the upper border of the tibia, extends vertically downwards about a finger's breadth external to the patella, crosses the outer tuberosity of the tibia, and then curves inwards about 1 inch below the tubercle of the tibia to end a little to the inner side of the crest. The integuments and the fascia lata having been divided, the fleshy fibres of the vastus externus (lateralis) are exposed in the upper part of the wound, while below is its aponeurotic tendon, which forms that part of the capsular ligament of the joint known as the external lateral patellar ligament. These structures, along with the subjacent synovial membrane, are divided along the whole length of the wound, and the outer aspect of the joint is thus freely opened into (external arthrotomy of the knee).

Free exposure of the interior of the joint. The outer border of the patellar ligament is defined and followed to its insertion into the lateral part of the tubercle of the tibia, below which the periosteum is divided downwards and inwards for a short distance. The insertion of the patellar ligament is now detached along with the tubercle of the tibia and the periosteum immediately below it, care being taken to retain the attachment of the latter to the bone lower down. In the adult the tuberosity is detached with the chisel, while in the child the knife alone suffices, as the tuberosity is cartilaginous. The interior of the joint is freely exposed to view by dislocating the whole of the lower part of the quadriceps apparatus over to the outer side of the knee, and at the same time turning it inside out, so that the cartilaginous surface of the patella becomes directed upwards. Before this can be accomplished, however, it is necessary to open the joint more freely from the front by hooking the patellar ligament forwards and outwards, and then separating

thick infrapatellar pad of fat from the anterior edge of the of the tibia. If there be no strong intra-articular adhesions, ly if the cavity of the joint contains a quantity of tuberculous



THE ARTHROTOMY STAGE OF EXCISION OF THE KNEE BY KOCHER'S IGHTLY J-SHAPED INCISION. The joint has been opened by dividing res of the vastus externus, the capsule, and the synovial membrane. rt of the infrapatellar pad of fat has been divided; below it is seen ous tubercle of the tibia and the adjacent periosteum partly detached erior surface of the tibia. A, Vastus externus; B, B, B, Synovial mem- apsule; D, Tibia; E, Periosteum; F, Tubercle of the tibia; G, External nfrapatellar pad; I, Patella; K, Suprapatellar pouch.

quadriceps flap can be dislocated without difficulty. To enable of the joint to be still more freely exposed, the crucial liga- ow divided, and, if necessary, the lateral ligaments may be ss completely detached subperiosteally from the femoral

proceeding further, the interior of the joint is carefully ex-

amined and the extent of the disease ascertained. When, as is gener
the case, the synovial membr
is diseased throughout, the cru
ligaments must be removed, oth
wise sufficient access cannot
got for the removal of the sy
vial membrane lining the pouc
behind the condyles.

Removal of the synovial m
brane. This should be done
toothed forceps and knife dis
tion, aided by scissors curved
the flat. When the right kne
being operated on, the dissec
is most conveniently effected f
below upwards. The whole of
infrapatellar pad of fat and
synovial membrane covering
upper surface is first remo
then that lining the deep sur
on the quadriceps on either sid
and above the patella, includ
the anterior wall of the subcru
bursa. When the summit of
pouch has been reached, its
terior wall, along with the
synovial fat—often considera
thickened from chronic œdem
is dissected cleanly off the su
trochlear portion of the fem
The synovial membrane cove
the lateral aspects of the cond
is more closely adherent to
bone. Care must be taken to
that all the membrane is remo
from the inner side of the jo
where it is reflected from
internal condyle on to the a
cent portion of the capsule.

With the knee fully flexed
the assistant supporting the
vertically, and at the same t

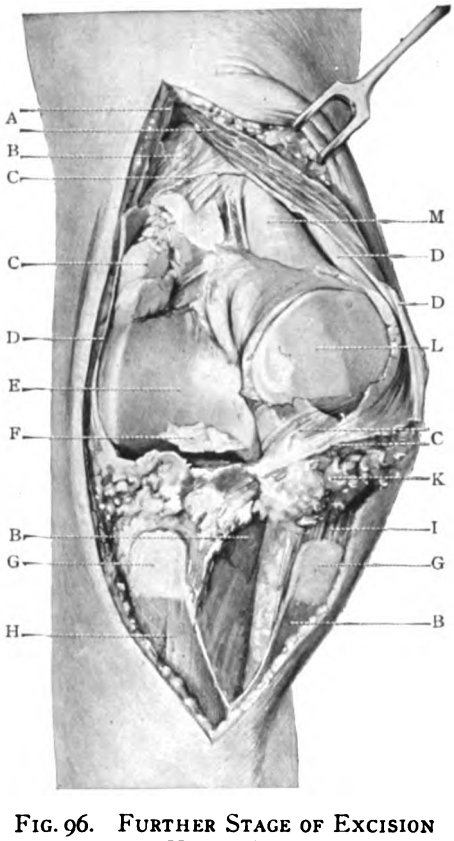


FIG. 96. FURTHER STAGE OF EXCISION OF THE KNEE BY KOCHER'S INCISION. The infrapatellar pad of fat, the synovial membrane covering its upper surfaces, the tubercle and adjacent periosteum have been more completely separated from the tibia so as to allow the lower part of the quadriceps, the patella, and the patellar ligament to be completely everted and displaced over to the inner side of the knee. The synovial membrane is well seen, as is also that lining the supra-patellar pouch. A, Vastus externus; B, B, B, Periosteum; C, C, C, Synovial membrane; D, D, D, Capsule; E, Femur; F, Ligamentum mucosum; G, G, Tubercle; H, Tibia; I, Patellar ligament; K, Infra-patellar pad; L, Patella; M, Rectus tendon.

drawing the upper end of the tibia forwards, the operator now detaches the semilunar cartilages from the upper surface of the tibia and dissects the crucial ligaments cleanly away from the intercondyloid notch; or, if preferred, he may simply clear the intercondyloid notch and leave the semilunar cartilages to be removed at the same time that the articular cartilage is sawn off the tibia.

The sawing of the bones. With regard to the articular surfaces of the bones, they may either be sawn off so as to leave two flat surfaces, or the operator may follow the advice of Kocher and saw the tibia so as to leave a concave surface, while the femur is sawn so as to leave a correspondingly convex surface. If the former plan be adopted, an ordinary amputation saw with a movable back will suffice. The latter method, which requires some little practice, necessitates the use of a bow saw so made that its blade, which should be narrow, may be fixed at any angle. In primary synovial disease only a thin slice should be removed from the tibia. The saw should be kept in a plane exactly parallel to the articular surface, and caution should be exercised when the posterior edge of the bone is approached.

In sawing the femur it must be remembered that the shaft of the femur does not occupy the axis of the thigh. The upper end is thrust outwards by its head and neck, but owing to the greater length of the internal condyle as compared with the external, the lower surfaces of both lie in the same horizontal plane when the patient stands erect. It follows, therefore, that the femur must be sawn in a plane at right angles to the axis of the limb and not to that of the femur, or, what comes to the same thing, in a plane parallel to the under surface of the condyles. Unless this rule be kept in mind, the inexperienced operator is liable to remove too much bone from the internal condyle, with the result that when the tibia is brought into position it is found to be misdirected inwards. Another error which is even more liable to be committed is the removal of too much bone from the front and too little from the back of the condyles, the result being that when the bones are brought into apposition the leg is tilted forwards so as to produce an angular genu recurvatum. It is not a bad fault, however, to err a little in the opposite direction and direct the saw a trifle upwards as well as backwards, so as to produce a few degrees of flexion, the cosmetic as well as the functional result of which is rather better than that produced by an absolutely straight limb.

When there is no osseous disease of the femur, there is no necessity to remove more than the lower third of the condyles, so that, laterally, the section should fall below the level of the attachment of the lateral ligaments. When, as in this operation, the patella is left, it is well to

saw off its articular surfaces. A corresponding flat surface is fashio for it on the femur by sawing off the remains of the prominent exter condylar portion of the trochlear surface of the femur.

The next step is the removal of the remains of the synovial membra from the back part of the joint, namely, that which covers the poster ligament as well as that which lines the pouches behind the remains the condyle. While this is being done, the knee should be flexed, and tibia and femur should be drawn as widely apart as possible so as stretch out the posterior ligament. Much assistance will be got by dr ging the lower end of the femur upwards and backwards with a stro double hook placed in what remains of the intercondyloid notch. The p terior ligament is freed from synovial membrane by means of sciss curved on the flat. The azygos artery, which generally spurts, is secu with forceps and ligatured. Unless the ligament itself is infiltrated w tubercle, it should not be removed, as it not only protects the poplit artery from injury, but forms a barrier against tuberculous infection the popliteal space. Any tuberculous membrane about the sheath of tendon of the popliteus muscle should be followed up and remov Finally, a careful search should be made for a sinus leading through posterior ligament into an abscess in the popliteal space, or into the se membranosus bursa. If necessary, a counter-opening should be m posteriorly by cutting down on the blades of dressing forceps projec backwards under the skin from the main wound so as to avoid the vess

Arrest of hæmorrhage and drainage. These may be with advant considered under the same heading. In the absence of sinuses and mi infection there is no necessity for drainage, provided (1) that no a septic solution be used to wash out the wound, and (2) that the bleed be carefully arrested before closing the wound. The best way to prev after-bleeding is not only to see that all the bleeding points are carefu ligatured, but also to avoid using a tourniquet. It is far better that wh ever bleeding occurs should take place during, and not after, the ope tion. The vessels forming the anastomosis about the knee are compa tively small, so that, with a good assistant, there should be no loss blood worth speaking about. In ligaturing some of the vessels, especi those lying in or close to the periosteum, the catgut may have to carried under the vessel by means of a curved needle, otherwise the li ture will slip. Troublesome oozing may be arrested by the pressure gauze wrung out of hot saline solution. The great advantage of be able to dispense with drainage is that the original dressing, always most secure, need not be changed for three weeks or even longer.

Fixation of the bones. Considerable difference of opinion exists to whether any step should be taken to secure firm approximation of

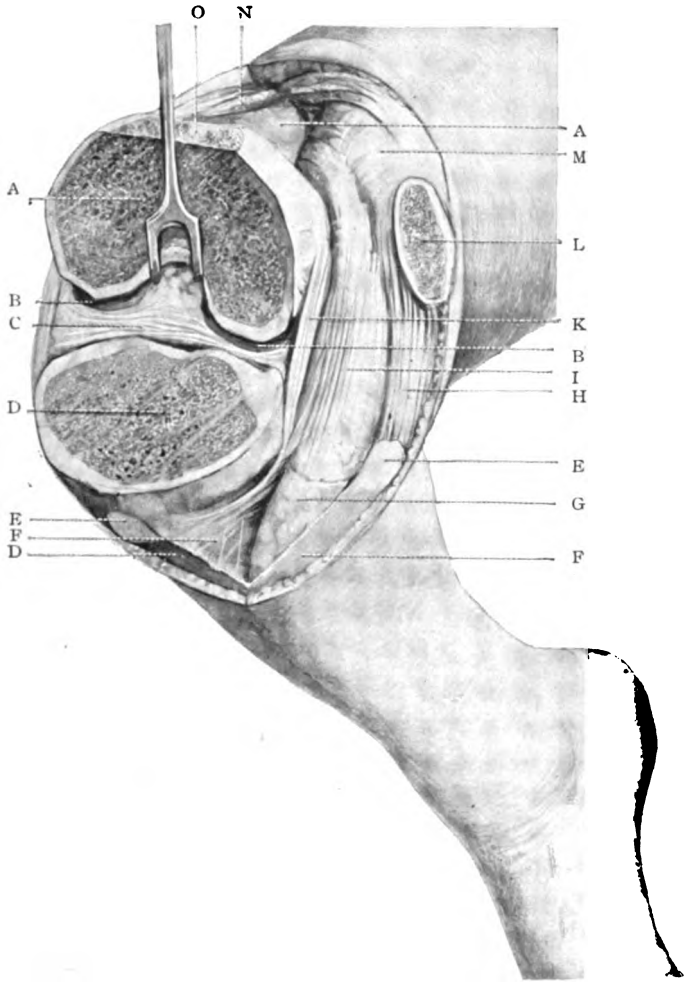


FIG. 97. LATER STAGE OF EXCISION OF THE KNEE BY KOCHER'S INCISION. The whole of the synovial membrane has been removed, with the exception of that lining the pouches behind the condyles. The articular surfaces have been sawn off the patella, the tibia, and the femur, and the upper part of the trochlear surface of the latter has been removed so as to leave a flat raw surface for the patella. Above the condyles the periosteum is seen covering the lower part of the shaft of the femur; between the patellar ligament and the internal lateral ligament appears that part of the capsule which forms the internal lateral patellar ligament; the floor of the wound between the femur and the tibia is occupied by the posterior ligament of the knee-joint, from which the synovial membrane has been removed. A, A, Femur; B, B, Synovial pouch; C, Posterior ligament; D, D, Tibia; E, E, Tubercle of the tibia; F, F, Periosteum; G, Infrapatellar pad; H, Patellar ligament; I, Internal lateral patellar ligament; K, Internal lateral ligament; L, Patella; M, Tendon of the rectus; N, Periosteum; O, Sawn trochlear surface of femur.

sawn surfaces beyond that afforded by careful external splinting. the various artificial means which have been adopted to give additic fixation the best is undoubtedly by means of two long square nails, e driven from the tibia obliquely upwards into the femur. While it can be said that the introduction of the nails is essential, especially w the capsule, the lateral ligaments, and the quadriceps apparatus h been preserved practically intact, it must be admitted, on the other ha that in cases in which the patella has been removed, and both lat ligaments divided, the nails are a distinct advantage. If properly int duced they certainly do no harm,—indeed, the patient is quite unconsci of their presence. Not only do the nails ensure osseous union, but t also render the after-treatment much easier. The firm fixation affor by the nails does away with any necessity for complicated splints, plaster of Paris need not be employed until after the wound is soun healed. For these reasons the writer makes frequent use of the n after excision in the adult, even by Kocher's method. While introduc them the surgeon should satisfy himself that the assistant is holding bones accurately and firmly in position. After the quadriceps flap been replaced, but not yet sutured, each nail is pushed through the s immediately below the tuberosity of the tibia and then driven obliqu upwards into the opposite femoral condyle. Care must be taken t the nails are kept sufficiently parallel to the bones to prevent their poi from penetrating into the popliteal surface of the femur. In some ca the bones are found to have been so firmly united by the one nail that introduction of a second is unnecessary. The nail should be of s a length that by the time it is passed well into the femur only about inch is left projecting outside the skin: the advantage of this is that head of the nail may be covered by the dressing.

Closure of the wound. Before closing the skin wound the tubercle the tibia is sutured into position with catgut (wire is seldom necessa and interrupted sutures of the same material are used to close the incis in the vastus externus (lateralis) and subjacent capsule. The skin wou is united with silkworm-gut, in preference to silk and catgut, as it can left in for a longer time without fear of setting up stitch suppurati It is better not to use intermediate horsehair sutures, as it is well to courage the blood-stained serum to escape between the silkworm- sutures.

An abundant sterilized gauze dressing should extend well above a below the wound. Plenty of wool, sterilized or sublimated, should applied outside the gauze, taking in also the foot, and the whole is fi in position with a domett bandage applied with some degree of firmn

The splint the writer prefers is the one used by Macewen after

operation for knock-knee. This is practically a Liston's long splint, with the addition of a posterior support extending from just below the fold of the buttock to a little beyond the foot. An oval opening is cut out opposite the heel, and another opposite the external malleolus. The splint is well padded, and fixed to the limb with a roller bandage and to the chest with a binder. A figure-of-eight bandage should be placed separately round the foot, to keep it at a right angle. The posterior part of the splint, besides giving good support to the knee, prevents rocking and rotation outwards. It is an advantage to keep the hip quiet, at any rate until the wound is healed. As a rule the dressing need not be disturbed until the end of the third or fourth week, when the stitches and nails may be removed. A plaster of Paris case is substituted for the splint, and the patient is allowed to get about by the aid of crutches and a patten. This first plaster case should include the pelvis. Two or three months later the plaster should be renewed, but without including the hip. As a rule it is not advisable to allow the patient to bear weight on the limb without some support until six months have elapsed from the date of operation.

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE KNEE-JOINT SECONDARY TO A FOCUS IN ONE OF THE BONES

Unless the disease is so extensive that amputation is called for, the operation is practically the same as that above described, with the addition of one or two steps directed towards the removal of the disease in the bone. Small foci, whether situated in one of the condyles or tuberosities, are dealt with by thorough curetting, either before or after the articular surface of the affected bone has been removed. A sharp spoon generally suffices for the purpose, but if the adjacent bone be sclerosed, or if the focus invades the cortex, a gouge and hammer will be required. If the focus be larger and deeper, or if a sequestrum of considerable size be present, the affected condyle or tuberosity may be sawn through beyond the seat of the disease at a deeper level than its fellow. The opposite bone is dealt with in a similar, but converse, manner. The result of this manœuvre is to produce two Z-shaped sawn surfaces, which must be so fashioned that when the limb is brought into good position they dovetail accurately, the one into the other. In other cases, instead of sawing the bones in the above zigzag fashion, an oblique section is made from before backwards or from side to side according to the position of the focus. The slice of bone removed is thus wedge-shaped, with the disease towards the base of the wedge. The extremity of the opposing bone is also sawn obliquely, and care must be taken that the surface which is left is in a plane exactly parallel to the first, otherwise when the tibia is brought into apposition with the femur it will be found to be mis-

directed. When it has been necessary to saw the bones obliquely t
should be nailed into position to prevent the risk of a gliding movem
between the two surfaces; one nail is sufficient.

In cases in which the whole epiphysis is destroyed, or in which a fo
in the end of the diaphysis, either of the femur or of the tibia, has b
allowed to run its course until first the adjacent epiphysis and then
joint has become involved, amputation will be called for. Such
unfortunate state of affairs is unlikely to occur in the case of the lo
end of the femur, but the writer has met with it in neglected cases
tuberculous disease at the upper end of the diaphysis of the tibia.

OPERATIONS FOR PRIMARY TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF TH PATELLA

This condition is probably not so rare as is generally supposed.
operator occasionally discovers it accidentally while excising a tube
lous knee. It is a good rule, therefore, always to saw off the cartilages
the patella in performing this operation. If a diseased focus be revea
the whole bone had better be removed, but the periosteum and rec
tendon should be preserved if possible. This is easily done if Koch
excision be performed. After everting the quadriceps flap, all tha
necessary is to divide the periosteum around the margin of the pate
and then to peel the bone off the periosteum covering its anterior surfa

Cheyne and Burghard (*Manual of Surgical Treatment*, Part
p. 215) recommend the removal of the patella in most cases when ex
ing the knee for tuberculous disease. After dissecting up a horsesh
shaped flap from the front of the joint and directing the assistant to h
it well up out of the way, 'a vertical median incision is made through
quadriceps from the top of the suprapatellar pouch down to the tube
of the tibia. This incision is very carefully deepened above until
muscular fibres are cut through, when the handle of the knife can
sunk between the muscle and the capsule and the two structures se
rated from one another. The periosteum over the patella is then tur
off to either side with a raspatory, and the ligamentum patellæ is s
longitudinally.'

When it is obvious, before operation, that the joint-disease is seco
ary to a focus in the patella, the technique of the operation is so plan
as to include removal of this bone at an early stage of the operation.
is in cases of this kind that the method of excision of the knee rec
mended some years ago by A. G. Miller (*Transactions of the Edinbu
Medico-Chirurgical Society*, vol. xii, p. 16), and performed by him pr
tically as a matter of routine, is particularly advantageous. The follo
ing is Mr. Miller's description of the operation:—

'1. Incision from behind and above one condyle of femur to corresponding point of opposite side, brought down to near tubercle of tibia with a well-rounded sweep. Second cut straight across about middle of patella.

'2. Flap of skin from upper incision (that across patella) reflected up till muscular fibres of vasti are seen. These carefully cut through. Tendon of rectus cut very carefully as it lies embedded in the thickened synovial membrane. Then muscles and tendon raised with handle of knife and fingers till upper border of thickened synovial membrane defined. Diseased mass of synovial membrane then dissected downwards off femur, mainly with handle of knife and fingers, till attachment at articular surface of femur is reached and cut through. Lateral attachments cut. Last of all, attachment to tibia and ligamentum patellæ cut through, and thus anterior portion of diseased synovial membrane removed *en masse,* with patella in centre and elliptical portion of skin attached.

'3. All remaining visible synovial membrane scraped away in detail from lateral ligaments and anterior crucial ligament,—joint being flexed for this purpose. Semilunar cartilages removed, and joint made clean so far. Then lateral and anterior crucial ligaments cut, and the posterior ligaments scraped and cleaned thoroughly. All ligaments scraped when *in situ* and tense, or cut away.

'4. Enough of bone removed from femur and tibia to thoroughly open the cancellated tissue to inspection, and all osseous tubercular foci dealt with.

'5. After approximation of bones, tendon of quadriceps may be stitched to remains of ligamentum patellæ, and then skin flap brought down and stitched. Drainage provided from posterior ends of incision.'

In primary tuberculous disease of the patella without involvement of the knee-joint, J. B. Murphy (*Surg. Gyn. and Obstet.,* March, 1908) operates as follows:—

'(*a*) Preliminary preparation of the joint, which consists of producing a chemical inflammation in the joint by injecting 2 to 6 drams of 2 to 5% solution of formalin in glycerine (which is prepared twenty-four hours before needed), a week or ten days before the operation. We induce this chemical inflammation preparatory to all arthrotomies for patellar fractures, movable cartilages, &c. By the preparatory treatment of the joint, a local immunity is developed, through the infiltration of the tissues and the occlusion of all the lymph-spaces, induced by the chemical inflammatory reaction. Trauma, in the way of dissection or handling in these joints, will not produce a large quantity of effusion, as it does in non-immunized joints. They offer a much greater resistance against infection.

'(*b*) Open the knee-joint by a 7-inch incision in the outer side of the patella.

'(*c*) Make a subaponeurotic excision of the patella, leaving en quadriceps tendon and ligamentum patellæ exposed.

'(*d*) Prepare the flap, for the extension of the quadriceps te downward, by splitting the quadriceps tendon and vastus externus m from point H to point E, dividing the vastus externus transv to F, and splitting it back to I; then turn the flap downward, wi fascial side to the joint, and approximate point H of the flap to ligamentum patellæ, and point F of flap to B of ligamentum pa It may be united end to end, or may overlap the patellar ligament. fascia and its fat should be turned toward the joint. This flap is us a substitute for the patella, and extension of quadriceps tendon. suture is done with kangaroo te silk, or chromicized gut, or it m accomplished with a figure-of- silkworm-gut suture, supporting outer loop with a gauze pad, so t does not cut into the skin. Th probably the most desirable, as w the strongest, method of suture.

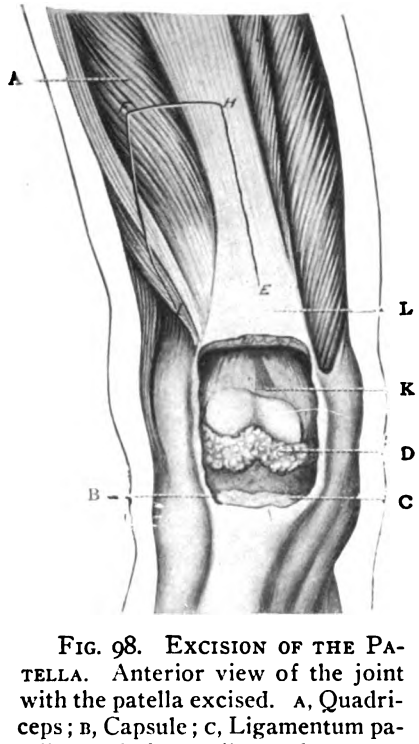


FIG. 98. EXCISION OF THE PATELLA. Anterior view of the joint with the patella excised. A, Quadriceps; B, Capsule; C, Ligamentum patellæ; D, Infrapatellar pad; E H F I, Flap from the quadriceps; K, Supratrochlear surface of the femur; L, Quadriceps tendon. (*After Murphy.*)

'(*e*) Suture the aponeurosis o tella securely to the divided edge deep fascia, and continue until the riceps tendon and muscle are en embedded. Close the rent le the vastus externus by buried sutures.

'(*f*) Insert a superficial drain the joint surface to the lower ang the wound.

'(*g*) Dress in a straight pos splint.'

Results. As far as the cert of curing the disease goes, exc gives better results in the knee th any other joint, but unfortunate the expense of loss of mobility. preservation of the other func namely, stability and weight-bearing capacity, can practically be anteed. In diffuse tuberculous disease of the knee-joint, the write practically given up all operative procedures which do not aim at ducing osseous anklyosis. Simple arthrectomy, better termed syn

omy, either alone or combined with division of the crucial and lateral ligaments, rarely gives satisfactory results. If the crucial and lateral ligaments be not divided, there is a great risk of recurrence due to incomplete removal of the disease at the posterior aspect of the joint, especially from the pouches behind the condyle; and if the patient escapes recurrence he is generally left with a more or less stiff and bent knee. If, on the other hand, the crucial and lateral ligaments be divided, an unstable

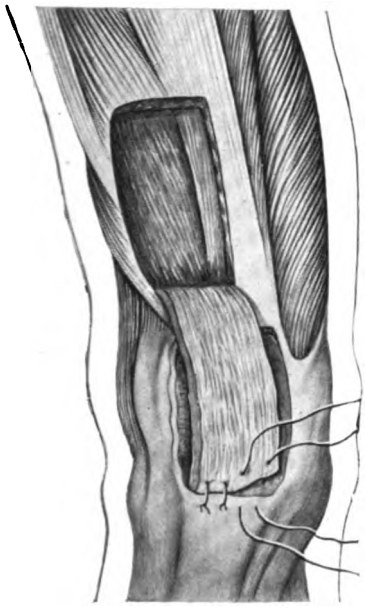


FIG. 99. EXCISION OF THE PATELLA. Extension flap placed in position. (*After Murphy.*)

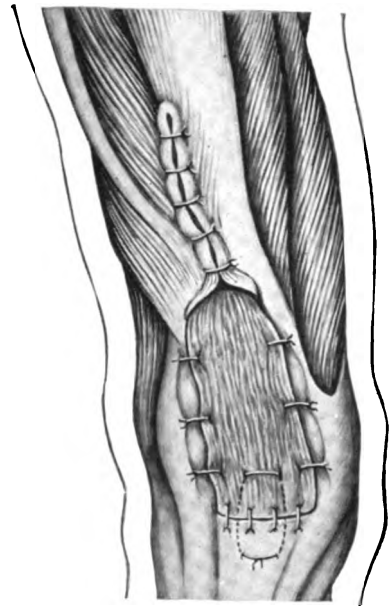


FIG. 100. EXCISION OF THE PATELLA. Shows the line of suture for the flap and closure of the rent in the quadriceps muscle. (*After Murphy.*)

knee generally results; hence the rule should be to remove enough of the articular surface to make sure of osseous ankylosis.

It is often stated that excision of the knee is contra-indicated in young children on account of the shortening which results. In primary synovial disease, however, there is no necessity to interfere with the epiphyseal cartilages. The following table prepared by Dr. W. L. Robertson, formerly House Surgeon at the Royal Edinburgh Hospital for Sick Children, gives the after measurements of as many of the writer's old cases of excision of the knee in children as could be traced. If we include the three cases in which cuneiform osteotomy was performed for bending subsequent to excision, the average amount of shortening was

1½ inches, of which the femur accounted for 1 inch and the tibia inch. Nearly all authors in referring to shortening after excision knee seem to agree that an amount which does not exceed 2 inch easily compensated for that it is of little practical importance. It noted that in four cases there was no shortening whatever. In these the excision was performed during the third year of life; the limbs were measured four years after operation, and in th nearly three years after. In compensating for the average amo shortening the sole of the opposite boot need only be heightened extent of about ½ inch, the remainder being more comfortably c acted by slight drooping of the pelvis and slight pointing of the to both limbs be the same length, the patient is obliged to swing th losed limb outwards in order to clear the ground, whereas ankylosed limb be allowed to be 1 inch shorter than its fellow, tient can advance the limb much more comfortably. This can be plished by heightening the sole of the boot on the sound side to an varying from ½ to 1 inch.

Age at Operation.	*Age at Measurement.*	*Shortening.*	*Age at Operation.*	*Age at Measurement.*	*Shorte*
1 5/12	8½	2½″ (after cun. resection)	6 1/12	13	1½″
			6 9/12	16	½″
0–2 2	9	¾″	7	14	3½″ (af re
2 8/12	8	0″			
2 11/12	6	0″	6–8 7	12	1¾″
3	9	½″	8	14	½″
4	11	2″	8	12	2″
4 10/12	13	1½″	8	11	1¼″
3–5 4 10/12	12	0″	8 8/12	12½	2″
4 10/12	12	1½″	9 2/12	15	4″ (aft re
5 1/12	14	1¾″			
5 7/12	15	0″	9–11 10	19	1½″
			10 4/12	18	1″
			11	15	1¼″
			11	13½	2½″
			11 9/12	61½	2″

A more important bad result of excision of the knee than sho is bending at or close to the seat of operation. This, if at all r gives rise to serious deformity, and greatly aggravates the shor Fortunately it is a rare complication. It occurs almost invariabl excision in children, and the rule is for it to take place in the fir or two years, after the operation.

o forms of antero-posterior bending, the more common is variety, in which the bending is due to the formation either the junction of the two bones or to curvature of the lower haft of the femur. In the other variety, namely, genu

KIAGRAM FROM A CHILD AGED 8 YEARS, TAKEN TWO YEARS AFTER IE KNEE BY KOCHER'S METHOD FOR DIFFUSE TUBERCULOUS INFIL- SYNOVIAL MEMBRANE. The lower end of the femur was pared, ex surface, the tibia leaving a correspondingly concave surface. urface of the patella was removed, also a slice of cartilage from site the patella. Note the complete osseous ankylosis, also how ses have been interfered with. Amount of shortening = ½ inch. *cc.*)

he tibia may either be bent forwards at an angle at its the femur or the upper part of the tibia may be curved. leformities at the junction of the two bones are due either ing of the bones, to their incomplete apposition, or to too he limb. The deformity, on the other hand, which is pro-

duced by a curvature above or below the junction of the two bo
a static condition due to bending of the growing bone at the end
diaphysis rather than to any error in the technique of the ope
This latter deformity comes on more gradually and is later in its
than is the case with the angular bending at the seat of operation
attempt should be made to deal actively with the curvature until a
has become stationary. In the case of the femur, the simplest p
to fracture the femur above the condyles by osteoclasis and to ma
the corrected position by means of a plaster of Paris case. Failin
a simple osteotomy should be performed. The operation of cune
resection for ankylosis of the knee in the flexed position has be
scribed by Mr. Burghard (p. 84).

OPERATION FOR ANKYLOSIS WITH GENU RECURVATUM

The principle of the operation is the same as that for ankylosis
flexed position, but the technique is a little more troublesome as
cannot be got directly to the base of the wedge owing to its being di
towards the popliteal space. The incision, which must therefore be
over the concavity of the bend, may be planned with the object o
secting upwards a single square flap, or, if preferred, two flaps m
made by means of an H-shaped incision. If the patella be present,
better be removed. The remains of the quadriceps tendon and th
jacent periosteum are separated from the bone in the form of two
flaps, a resection knife and a strong sharp rugine being used fo
purpose. In removing the wedge, the upper section is made firs
edge of the saw being directed upwards as well as backwards.
lateral soft tissues are well retracted backwards out of the way
saw, which is used cautiously towards the posterior aspect of the
the latter is not completely divided for fear of wounding the po
artery. The posterior cortex is fractured by using the leg as a le
fulcrum being provided by placing a sand-bag behind the lower p
the thigh. With the leg flexed so that the raw surface of the
fragment faces upwards, a wedge, with its base directed posterio
now removed by applying the saw to its anterior margin and dir
it downwards as well as backwards. The breadth of the base o
wedge will of course be proportionate to the severity of the defo
As soon as the saw reaches close up to the posterior surface of the
the latter is fractured across by levering the fragment upwards and
wards with the saw. In one instance, where the bone was consid
sclerosed, the writer found it necessary to complete the section w

The wedge of bone is grasped with lion forceps and partly
partly dissected away from the thickened periosteum, which
structures in the popliteal space. All sharp edges and irregu-
carefully trimmed away from the bones before they are
o position. If the deformity has not been completely cor-
cond slice must be removed from whichever bone seems the
le for the purpose. When the limb has been brought into
tion, it will generally be found that the divided quadriceps
eum have become too much drawn apart to admit of their
on by buried sutures. The integuments, however, are suffi-
ic to allow the skin wound to be closed. Drainage is not
Here, as in a typical excision of the knee, the writer has
advantage to nail the bones together. The after-treatment
as for excision of the knee.

CHAPTER X

OPERATIONS FOR TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE HIP AND SACRO-ILIAC JOINTS

OPERATIONS UPON THE HIP-JOINT

WIDELY different opinions have been expressed as to the relat value of conservative and operative measures in the treatment of tub culous arthritis of the hip-joint. It cannot be said even yet that question has been definitely settled, but the prevailing view at pres seems to be that, in the early stage of the disease, appropriate mechani treatment, aided by suitable constitutional and hygienic means, is g erally capable of arresting the disease, and that the functional result as a rule better than that which is to be obtained from an early excisi

In hospital practice, unfortunately, by the time the surgeon s the patient the disease has often already advanced beyond the fi stage, and very commonly presents some of the following clinical f tures: The region of the hip is swollen; the muscles of the thigh atrophied; the limb is more or less flexed and adducted; the trochan is thickened and frequently more or less elevated above Nélaton's li while if there has been erosion and migration of the dorsal margin the acetabulum, the head of the femur can be felt to form a prominer immediately above and behind the great trochanter. Deep-sea fluctuation may be felt beneath either the ilio-psoas or the tensor fas femoris, in the adductor region, or posteriorly in the neighbourhood the partially dislocated head of the bone. Any attempt to move joint generally gives rise to more or less severe pain, and to reflex rigic of the muscles guarding the joint. If the limb be examined while patient is anæsthetized, the rigidity will largely disappear, and on rotat the femur grating may be detected in the joint. Few will deny t such cases as the above, especially among the poorer classes, are b treated by excision.

Operation. Here, just as in tuberculous arthritis elsewhe while the chief aim of the operation is the removal of the disease, ev endeavour should also be made to obtain as good a functional result possible. Unfortunately the anatomy of the hip-joint is such t these two indications can only be imperfectly fulfilled. By excising

head and neck of the femur we can remove the primary focus, but by the time the disease has advanced far enough to demand operation, the synovial membrane and the acetabulum will almost certainly be involved. It would appear, too, that the acetabulum is more frequently the primary

FIG. 102. TUBERCULOUS HIP-DISEASE. Skiagram from a child aged 5 years, showing an elongated and slightly wedge-shaped tuberculous focus in the under surface of the neck of the femur. The joint itself is not yet involved. This is a typical case for conservative treatment. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

seat of the disease than was formerly supposed. It follows, therefore, that whatever incision be employed it should give access, not merely to the head and neck of the femur, but also to the acetabulum and to the synovial lining of the capsule.

The anterior route recommended by Hueter and Barker gives good

access to the femur but not to the acetabulum, and for this reason not to be recommended for advanced cases. The conditions for w this operation would be most suitable are cases in which the disea the head or neck of the femur has not yet given rise to secondar fection of the joint. Such cases, however, are best treated by conse tive means.

The method of Langenbeck, namely, by the external vertical inci is best adapted for those cases in which it is necessary to remove trochanter as well as the head and neck of the femur.

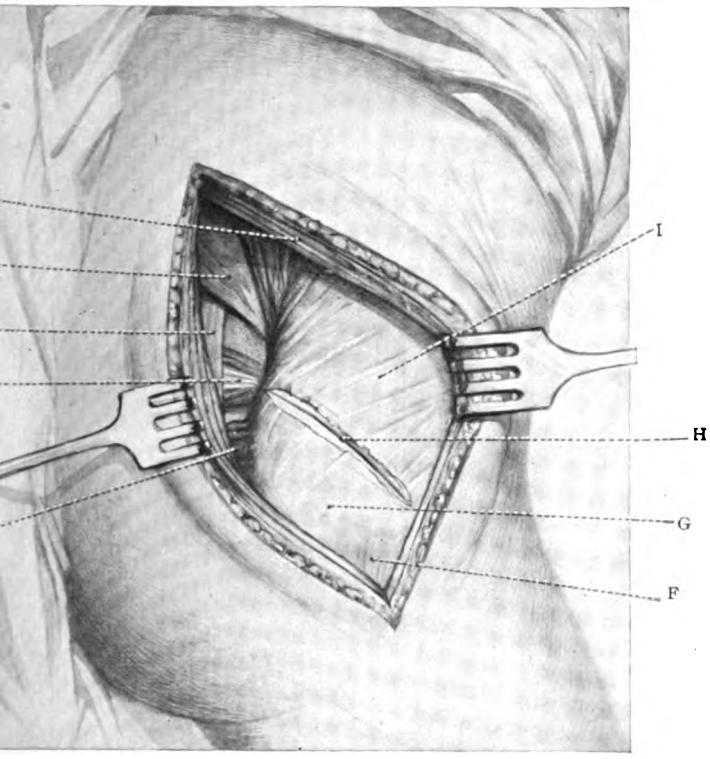
In the opinion of the writer, the operative procedure recomme by Kocher is to be preferred to any other, as in addition to giving access to the femur—trochanter as well as head and neck—it undo edly gives the best access to the acetabulum. Moreover, it has the advantage of being applicable in practically all cases in which e arthrotomy or excision is indicated, and for this reason the writer come to employ it almost exclusively.

Before describing the technique of the operation, one or two liminary points are worthy of mention. The disinfection of the must not be confined simply to the buttock; it should include the l part of the abdomen and back as well as the thigh. Special atte should be paid to the gluteal cleft and perineum. It is well also an additional precaution, to smear the anal region with sublim iodoform. In arranging the sterilized sheets, it should be rememb that during the operation the affected limb has to be manipulate various directions by an assistant; it must therefore be enveloped rately in an additional sheet from the toes up to a little below buttock, while, to prevent it from slipping, a sterilized cotton ban should be applied over it.

Supposing the right hip to be affected, the patient is placed o left side in the semi-prone position, with the left thigh extended an right flexed and adducted across it. The incision employed by K is an angular modification of Langenbeck's external vertical inci The upper half of the incision, which is placed obliquely, runs pa to the fibres of the gluteus maximus, and practically also to the of the head and neck of the femur; it extends from the posterior sup angle of the great trochanter upwards and backwards towards the terior superior spine of the ilium. The length of this portion of th cision will necessarily vary somewhat according to the obesity of th tient and according also to the amount of upward displacement o femur. The lower half of the incision extends from the posterio perior angle of the great trochanter downwards in the axis of the f to a short distance below the root of the trochanter. With the aff

n the flexed position the incision will be found to be more angular.

divided the skin and subcutaneous tissue, the gluteus maxi-



FIRST STAGE OF EXCISION OF THE HIP BY KOCHER'S POSTERIOR ANGU-. The gluteus maximus is split in the direction of its fibres; its racted, exposing the insertion of the gluteus medius into the outer e great trochanter. The periosteum of the latter has been incised below and parallel to the insertion of the gluteus medius. Above and ochanter are seen, from above downwards, the pyriformis, the edge sciatic nerve, the obturator internus with the gemelli, and the quad-s. A, Gluteus maximus; B, Pyriformis; C, Great sciatic nerve; internus; E, Quadratus femoris; F, Vastus externus; G, Root of the , Incision; I, Insertion of the gluteus medius.

sed. The fleshy portion above and behind the trochanter is direction of its fibres, while the aponeurotic portion, which outer aspect of the trochanter, is divided vertically with the he upper part of the glistening tendon of the vastus externus A branch of the superficial division of the gluteal artery is

secured in the fleshy part of the muscle, while in the aponeurotic por
forceps may have to be applied to the anastomosis between the tr
verse branch of the external circumflex artery and the first perfora
branch of the profunda. When the head of the femur is displa

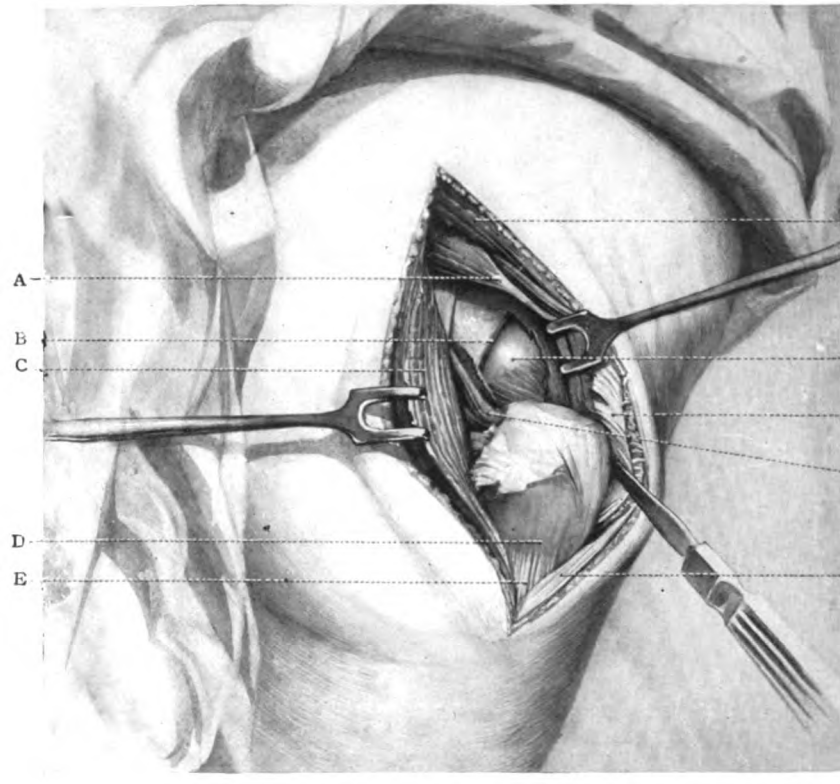


FIG. 104. ARTHROTOMY STAGE OF KOCHER'S EXCISION OF THE HIP. The i
tions of the gluteus medius and minimus, and of the pyriformis, have been
rated from the great trochanter subperiosteally and retracted upwards and
wards. The head and neck of the trochanter are exposed by dividing the pos
superior portion of the capsule in the coronal plane. A, Pyriformis; B, Cap
ligament; C, C, C, Gluteus maximus; D, Root of the trochanter; E, Vastus exte
F, Obturator internus; G, Gluteus medius; H, Head of the femur.

upwards, the upper part of the incision may be made at the level o
upper border of the gluteus maximus, which is then freed and retra
downwards. The same procedure may be adopted when the disease
spread from the acetabulum upwards into the ilium.

On retracting the edges of the gluteus maximus the following s

tures are exposed from above downwards: a layer of fatty tissue occupying the hollow above and behind the great trochanter, the insertion of the gluteus medius covering the upper and anterior part of the great trochanter, the periosteum covering its posterior and lower part, and, lastly, the upper part of the aponeurosis of the vastus externus (lateralis). After clearing away the fatty tissue above mentioned, and applying forceps to any divided vessels forming the anastomosis between the sciatic and internal circumflex arteries, the lower border of the gluteus medius is defined. Below it is the pyriformis muscle, the tendon of which cannot be followed to its insertion until after the gluteus medius has been detached from the great trochanter. Below the pyriformis are the obturator internus, the gemelli, and the upper fibres of the quadratus femoris. The sciatic vessels and nerves need not as a rule be exposed.

The next step in the operation consists in detaching the insertion of the gluteus medius. This is done by dividing the periosteum from the posterior superior to the anterior inferior angle of the trochanter, and then detaching the tendon upwards and forwards until the upper and anterior borders of the trochanter are exposed. In the child, this is readily effected by using a resection knife and including a slice of the subjacent cartilage along with the tendon; in adults, on the other hand, the operator must use either a strong sharp rugine (Farabeuf's), or he must apply the hammer and chisel and detach a layer of bone along with the tendon.

By retracting the separated insertion of the gluteus medius well upwards and forwards with a sharp double hook, the insertion of the gluteus minimus is reached and may, if necessary, be more or less completely detached from the anterior border of the trochanter. The tendon of the pyriformis, now freely exposed, is detached from the trochanter and retracted either upwards and forwards with the glutei, or downwards and backwards along with the obturator internus and gemelli. The former procedure is adopted when there is no displacement upwards of the femur, while the latter is preferable when the head of the bone is displaced upwards. The insertions of the obturator internus and gemelli are separated and retracted downwards. While the above muscles are being detached from the trochanter, a third assistant manipulates the thigh so as to render the individual tendons as accessible as possible.

The posterior part of the capsule is now fully exposed, and when there is marked flexion and adduction combined with upward and backward displacement of the femur, more or less of the head of the bone may be felt projecting outside the acetabulum, the posterior part of the capsule being stretched over it. In the cases where an abscess has formed, and

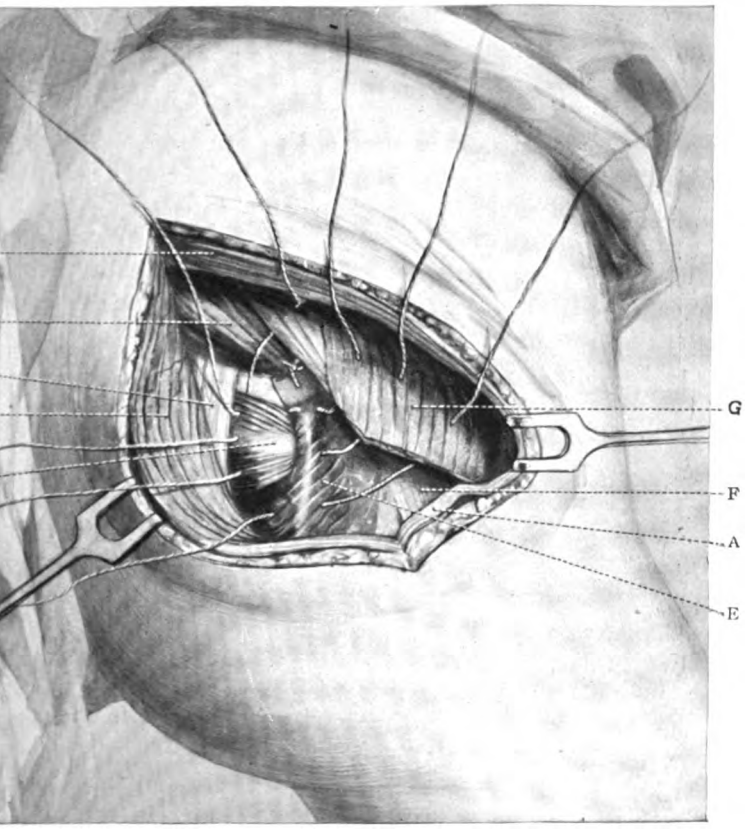
is still confined to the cavity of the joint, tense fluctuation may be beneath the capsule. When there is little or no flexion and addu deformity it is a good plan to break down any adhesions before mencing the operation. If this be done, the third assistant is gene able, by flexing, adducting, and rotating the thigh inwards, to a considerable portion of the head of the bone to project against capsular ligament.

The posterior part of the capsule, after being fully exposed, is in in the coronal plane over the projecting head of the femur parallel t pyriformis, either immediately above or immediately below it. opening is then extended right up to the margin of the acetabulum well down to the trochanter. By rotating the limb inwards as full possible, and at the same time pushing the thigh well upwards and b wards, the head of the femur is made to project through the ope Should the ligamentum teres still be present, it must be div at its attachment to the femur either with a probe-pointed knif by scissors curved on the flat. To bring the femoral attachmen the ligament into view the thigh should be flexed, adducted, and ro inwards.

At this stage of the operation it is the duty of the operator to a careful examination of the various components of the joint in ord ascertain the precise nature and extent of the tuberculous mischief. head (epiphysis) and neck (end of the diaphysis) should be examin the first place. A description of the various morbid conditions w may be met with is not within the scope of this article. Suffice it, t fore, to say that in cases of morbus coxæ which have reached the at which operation is justifiable, removal of the head and neck o femur is almost invariably demanded. Perhaps the only possible ex tion to this rule is when the disease is confined to the synovial membr but even in these cases, if the disease be at all advanced, the rem of the head of the bone is generally necessary in order to give suffi access for the removal of all the diseased synovial membrane. An conceivable exception may be mentioned, namely, the presence primary osseous focus in the lower part of the neck of the femur w has not yet given rise to secondary infection of the synovial membr It is very unlikely, however, that such a localized morbid condition w give rise to symptoms calling for operation. In cases in which radio phy has demonstrated such a condition, Huntingdon has advised tha focus should be removed without opening into the joint by tunne into the neck from the outer aspect of the great trochanter. The w has performed this operation with advantage in the early stage of a infective osteomyelitis of the neck of the femur, but it is doubtful i

can be removed in tuberculous cases without the joint being

thorities are agreed that, whether the head of the femur be



ATER STAGE OF KOCHER'S EXCISION OF THE HIP. The head and neck have been removed. The upper end of the trochanter has been d placed in the acetabulum, with the limb in the abducted position. s been closed by two deep stitches. Four other stitches, not yet tied, g the gluteus medius to the obturator internus, gemelli, and quad- A, A, A, Gluteus maximus; B, Pyriformis; C, Great sciatic nerve; internus; E, Quadratus femoris; F, Vastus externus; G, Gluteus

d or not, it is wiser to remove it. The neck of the femur, e region of the calcar, is a common situation to meet with seous focus, and when this is present the whole neck should long with the head. But even when the neck itself is free

from disease it should be removed. The reasons in favour of this cedure will be evident when the after-treatment has been consider

For dividing the neck of the bone the surgeon may use Adams's saw, or, what is generally more convenient, a broad chis Jones's gouge-chisel) and hammer. The whole of the neck shou removed. To include the lower part of the calcar it may be nec to apply the chisel a second time. The cut surface of the femur is fully examined to make sure that the disease has not extended in trochanter. If it has, it is often possible to remove it with a gouge, curetting with a sharp spoon. Should the disease be still more exte the periosteum must be completely separated from the trochante the whole of the latter removed. The separation of the perioste facilitated by adding to the oblique incision already mentioned a verse one at the level of the root of the trochanter. Unless, howeve disease has invaded the trochanter, the latter should not be ren To remove the trochanter simply for the purpose of draining the jo in the opinion of the writer, as unnecessary as it is mutilating.

Having removed the head and neck of the femur, attention i directed to the acetabulum. Any remains of the ligamentum teres, with the adjacent synovial membrane and Haversian pad of fat, be removed in the first place. If the cartilage be healthy it should with the object of obtaining a movable joint. Any pitlike or depression seen on the surface of the cartilage must be curetted a sharp spoon, to ascertain if it be connected with a tuberculous in the subjacent bone; if so, the focus must be thoroughly g out. Should the cartilage be extensively eroded, or replaced by culous granulations, the whole cavity, along with the superficial c bone, must be vigorously curetted until the surface which is left is r both in appearance and consistence. At this stage of the operatio not uncommon to find that at some point the disease has perf the acetabulum, and it may have given rise to a caseous abscess be it and the obturator internus muscle. When this is the case the op must be enlarged so as to admit of the abscess being thoroughly c out. Should a sequestrum be present, it must of course be remov

When the acetabulum is involved, Bardenheuer has recomm that it should be completely excised. The severity of such a proc together with the disability to which it gives rise, is such that mos geons prefer to trust to an extensive use of the hammer and assisted by the sharp spoon. A case sufficiently advanced to w excision of the acetabulum would almost certainly call for disartic at the hip-joint.

Attention is next directed to the diseased synovial membrane

the capsule, and also to any infected pockets or abscesses extending from it. All tuberculous débris and fungus-like granulations should be got rid of in the first place by the sharp spoon aided by vigorous wiping out with gauze, while adherent clumps of synovial membrane and diseased portions of capsule are seized with toothed forceps (Kocher's artery forceps or Leedham Green's dissecting forceps), and clipped away with strong scissors curved on the flat. This part of the operation should as far as possible be done under direct inspection, and, if necessary, the opening in the capsule must be enlarged by an incision at right angles to the original incision.

The cavity of the joint and the wound may be douched out with sterilized salt solution, or, if preferred, a Barker's flushing spoon may be used for the curetting. Following this, some surgeons swab out the joint with a strong antiseptic, such as pure carbolic acid, followed by alcohol, or with chloride of zinc (40 grs. to the ounce). The disadvantage of this procedure is that drainage of the cavity becomes necessary. Instead of using any strong antiseptic, therefore, the writer prefers simply to rub some sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste over the interior of the capsule and the raw surfaces of the bones.

The upper border of the trochanter is now rounded off with a strong resection knife so as to make it fit into the bottom of the acetabulum when the limb is abducted. With the trochanter placed in this position, the patient is rolled gently back from the semi-prone position on to the sound side, the assistant keeping the affected thigh in the abducted and extended position. The operator now unites the deeper structures over the trochanter by means of interrupted catgut sutures, introduced either with a Doyen's handled needle or a suitable needle-holder. The deepest sutures close the opening in the capsule, the next layer unites the separated gluteus medius to the pyriformis and superior gemellus, while the third layer brings together the edges of the split gluteus maximus. The integuments are united with interrupted sutures of silkworm-gut. In children the silkworm-gut tends, after some days, to cut into the delicate skin. To prevent this, and to allow the stitches to be kept in for two or three weeks without disturbing the dressing, each suture, after it has been passed, but before being tied, is threaded at one end with a piece of fine rubber drainage tubing, about ¾ inch in length; when the suture is tied the tubing is left surrounding that portion of the loop which overlies the skin.

The question of drainage has been a good deal discussed in connexion with the operation of resection of the hip. Some writers have objected to Barker's anterior operation, on the ground that the drainage is unsatisfactory. The writer quite agrees with Barker that, in the absence

of sinuses, and provided also the wound has not been washed out wi antiseptic, there is no necessity for drainage. If, as recommended a the whole of the neck of the femur be removed and the trochant thrust into the acetabulum there is no necessity to drain the joi there is no cavity left to drain. If thought desirable, however, a st

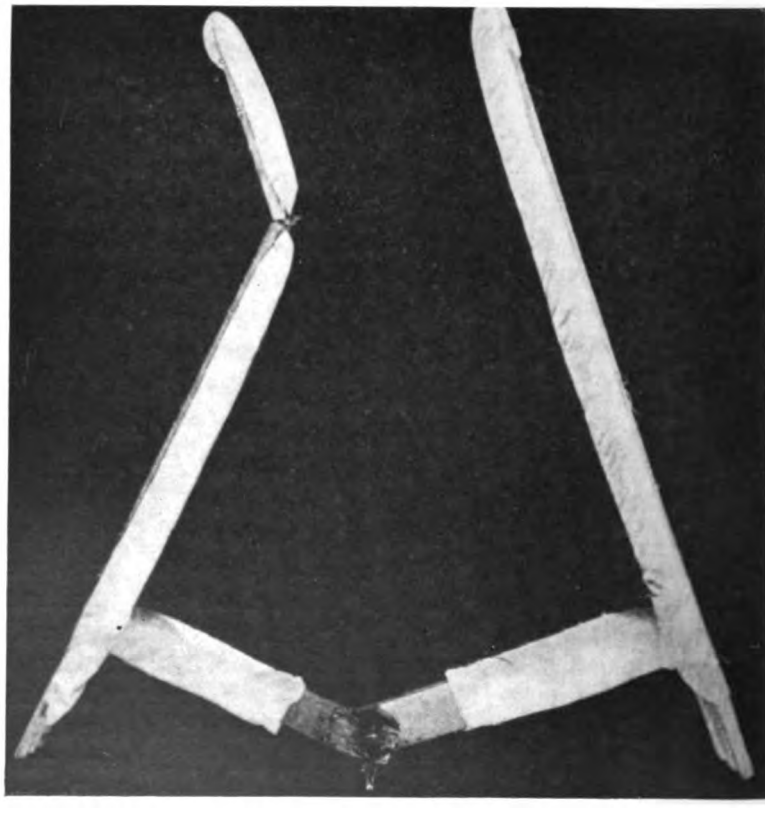


FIG. 106. PHOTOGRAPH OF THE AUTHOR'S ABDUCTION HIP-SPLINT. (*Photograph by Dr. Lewis S. Beesly.*)

iodoform gauze may be passed down into the cellular space benea gluteus maximus. In the majority of cases, drainage may safely b pensed with altogether, so that the wound need not be dressed u is time to remove the stitches.

After-treatment. Every precaution must be taken to ma the hip in the abducted position during the entire period of the treatment. For this purpose the writer uses a simple but very ef splint shown in Fig. 106. It is in reality a modification of the

ox-splint) introduced many years ago by Hamilton for ures of the lower extremity in children. The cross-piece, ng placed at the very end of the splint, as in Hamilton's, portions posteriorly a little above the heels. The splint is wool covered with jaconet waterproof. Besides giving pport to the legs, this position of the cross bar is very

OTOGRAPH OF A CHILD WITH ABDUCTION SPLINT APPLIED AFTER OF THE HIP-JOINT. (*Photograph by Dr. Lewis S. Beesly.*)

r lifting or carrying the patient while in the splint. To mple splint into an abduction hip-splint, two modifications The first is that the portion corresponding to the diseased cross opposite the hip, and the two parts united by a com- rewed on to the outer side of the splint; the other altera- e two halves of the splint are separate from each other, each cross-piece. The cross portions are made long enough extremities to overlap when the affected limb is abducted

to the desired degree. To maintain the abduction all that is ne
is to fix together the cross portions at the point where they
with a common screw-clamp. The upper portions of the splint
course secured to the chest by a broad binder.

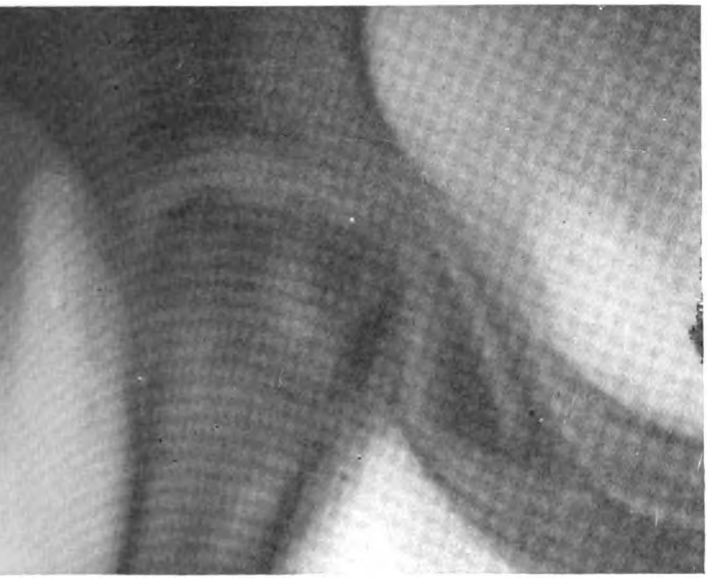
Throughout the subsequent dressings care must be taken t
the limb in the exact position it occupied while in the splint, oth
there will be a great risk of the trochanter becoming displaced fr

FIG. 108. THE METHOD OF MAINTAINING ABDUCTION DURING THE DRESSIN
EXCISION OF THE HIP-JOINT. (*Photograph by Dr. Lewis S. Beesl*

acetabulum. The splint and dressings having been removed, the
whose duty it is to maintain the abducted position of the limb, st
the sound side of the patient, and, with one hand placed behind the
back and the other grasping the leg above the ankle, she gently tu
child towards herself until it rests on its sound side (Fig. 108)
drain (or stitches) having been removed, and the wound dress
patient is rotated back into the supine position and the splint re

When the wound has soundly healed, which is generally at the
three weeks, a plaster of Paris case is substituted for the splint, t
being maintained in the abducted position. This first plaster case
extend from the metatarsus to the level of the nipples, the patien
wards being allowed to get about by the aid of crutches and a
added to the boot on the sound limb. To prevent hyperextensio
knee a special pad of cotton-wool should be placed under the p
space. From below the middle of the thigh downwards, the case

n, while in the region of the hip it should be strengthened
ting with it two strips of aluminium or Britannia metal, one
orly and the other externally. The addition of one part of
three parts of plaster of Paris makes the case much less
herefore less liable to crack.
ee months a Thomas's abduction splint may, in some cases,
l for the plaster, while in others it is easier to apply a second



HE RESULT THREE YEARS AFTER EXCISION OF THE HIP BY KOCHER'S GULAR INCISION. Skiagram from a child aged 9 years. Note how splacement is prevented by the trochanter being placed in the aceta- ie limb maintained in the abducted position. Absolute ankylosis. 2 inches. (*By Dr. E. Pricc.*)

which need only envelop the pelvis and the upper two-thirds
No attempt should be made to reduce the abduction. At
ix months or so from the operation there is, as a rule, no
ecessity for the patient to wear a splint; he should, however,
se the crutches and patten for two or three months, so as to
bearing his weight upon the excised joint. Lastly, the
oved and the patient gradually begins to bear his weight on

from the literature on the subject, considerable difference
ould appear to exist as to the best position in which to place

the limb during the after-treatment; by some the straight positi preferred, by others the abducted; some advocate extension, others disapprove of it. The writer is strongly in favour of the abd position. The reasons for, and the advantages of, this positior be found clearly set forth in a paper by my former House Sur Dr. Lewis S. Beesly (*Scottish Med. and Surg. Journ.*, Aug., 1

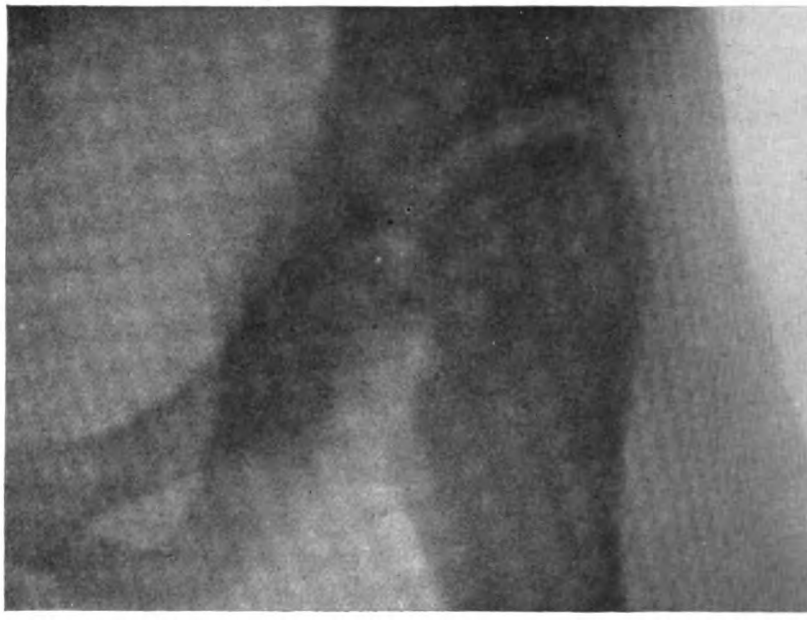


FIG. 110. THE RESULT A YEAR AFTER EXCISION OF THE HIP BY KOCHER' TERIOR ANGULAR INCISION. Skiagram from a child aged 11 years. Troc placed in the acetabulum with the limb abducted. The joint is ankylosed; t no displacement upwards of the trochanter. Two inches of shortening. *Dr. E. Price.*)

In the normal condition the weight of the trunk is not transı directly from the os innominatum to the shaft of the femur, b directly to it through the head and neck of the bone, which fo angle with the shaft varying from 160° in the new-born to 110° adult. By this arrangement the mechanical disability of the lon of the os innominatum being practically parallel to the shaft corresponding femur is overcome, and the weight-bearing stability joint maintained. If the limb be kept in the straight position aft head and neck of the femur have been removed, the osseous st of the joint is lost, for the pelvis on that side is then merely slung

limb by the remains of the capsule and certain of the muscles which pass from the pelvis to the femur. If under such conditions the patient attempts to bear his weight upon the limb the trochanter becomes displaced from the acetabulum upwards and outwards on to the ilium. The result is progressive lameness and deformity owing to shortening combined with adduction and flexion.

By placing the limb in the abducted position, on the other hand, the pelvi-femoral muscles and the weight of the body cause the femur to be pressed upwards and inwards towards the acetabulum, which furnishes a stable surface for the femur to act against. Another advantage of the abducted position is, that by drooping the pelvis on the affected side to bring the limbs parallel for the purpose of progression, the patient not only compensates for the shortened condition of the limb but at the same time maintains the abduction at the hip, and in this way prevents the tendency to upward displacement of the trochanter. The obliquity of the pelvis is of course compensated for by a secondary curvature of the spine. Instead of drooping the pelvis on the sound side, the shortening might be compensated for by providing the patient with a high boot on the affected side; but unless the operation has resulted in either osseous or firm fibrous union, the danger is that the high boot, by doing away with the necessity for the drooping of the pelvis, would favour upward displacement of the femur. It must be admitted, however, that the abducted position predisposes to ankylosis, either complete or partial. But there can be no doubt also that an ankylosed hip in good position is preferable to the progressive deformity and lameness associated with displacement upwards of the femur. For this reason the writer is not in the habit of applying extension after excision of the hip. The best position for an ankylosed hip is with the limb abducted, slightly flexed, and a little rotated outwards. The advantage of slight flexion is that the patient is able to sit with greater comfort.

OPERATIONS FOR THE CORRECTION OF DEFORMITIES RESULTING FROM TUBERCULOUS HIP-JOINT DISEASE

TENOTOMY OF THE ADDUCTOR MUSCLES

Indications. This operation is called for—

(i) As a preliminary to excision of the hip in advanced cases of tuberculous disease in which there is marked adduction combined generally with flexion, internal rotation, and upward displacement of the femur. In such cases, without dividing the adductors, it is often impossible after excising the head and neck of the femur to place the limb in the abducted position. A further advantage of dividing these muscles

is that, if the joint should become unstable, the division of the adduc by preventing adduction of the thigh, diminishes the tendency to up and backward displacement of the femur. The operation may be formed at the same sitting as the excision.

(ii) In old quiescent, or healed, cases of hip-joint disease in w the limb, without being ankylosed, has become markedly adducted. some of these cases the limb can be straightened either gradually o

FIG. 111. QUIESCENT TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE HIP. Skiagram fr child aged 6 years. The limb is slightly flexed and adducted. Note the up displacement of the femur. The adductors were divided by the open metho the limb was put up in an abduction splint, and subsequently in the same po in plaster of Paris. (*By Dr. E. Price.*)

stretching the muscles under an anæsthetic, but, unless the patient tinues to wear some form of splint or retention apparatus, the addu is very liable to recur. Division of the adductors, followed by the ing of the limb in the abducted position, is, in many instances, the s and best method of treating the deformity, along with the aggra lameness to which it gives rise.

(iii) At the close of the operation for ankylosis with adduction.

Operation. The operation is performed as follows:—

Careful attention should in the first place be paid to the disinfe of the skin, not only in the groin, but also in the perineum, and espe in the deep cleft between it and the adductor region.

assistant attempts to abduct the thigh so as to put the
ne stretch, the surgeon makes a longitudinal incision from
e adductor longus downwards along its prominent margin
ee inches. After dividing the skin and subcutaneous fat,
forming the sheath of the muscle is also divided longi-
muscle itself is divided a little below its origin. Next,
of the skin wound is retracted so as to expose the anterior
racilis, which is divided right back to its posterior border.
kness of the adductor brevis is now divided, care being
njuring the superficial and deep divisions of the obturator
ner lying superficial to the muscle, the latter behind it
ctor magnus. In some cases the inner border of the
also require division. The best method of dividing the
olate each one separately by a blunt dissector (Kocher's
nd then, while the muscle is put on the stretch, to cut it
aight blunt-pointed scissors. The dissection scissors of
swer both purposes admirably.

ening bands of fascia which are felt to be stretched must
care being taken to avoid the internal circumflex artery
es. All bleeding points which can be detected on the
the muscles should be carefully ligatured so as to allow
e closely sutured without drainage.

osition of the wound it is obviously not advisable to apply
essing fixed with a spica bandage. The writer is in the
g the wound by simply smearing it over with sublimated
ith paste and taking precautions to prevent either the
lothing from reaching it. Or, if preferred, the wound
with one or two strips of iodoform gauze over which is
r piece of gauze, the whole being secured in position by
collodion. The advantage of avoiding a collodion dress-
during the first forty-eight hours, is that if any tension
ithin the wound it is relieved by the escape of the serum
tches. At the end of forty-eight hours, when the wound
a collodion dressing may be applied. In the female great
ken to prevent the wound being soiled during urination.

tment. For the first three weeks or so the patient is
duction splint similar to that used after excision of the
a Thomas's abduction hip-splint is applied and the patient
about on crutches. Should there be a tendency for the
come adducted, the splint must be worn for a considerable
more tendency there is to shortening and upward dis-
nore should the limb be abducted.

The benefit derived from free open division of the adductor
healed cases of hip-disease with marked adduction is very s
the child, in place of being a pronounced cripple, is able to ge
with comparative comfort.

TENOTOMY FOR FLEXION DEFORMITY

Any flexion deformity which remains after dividing the ac
can generally be got rid of by manipulation under an anæsth
lowed by subsequent weight extension. Should these means fail
rect the flexion, it will be necessary to divide the sartorius, th
fasciæ femoris, the fascia lata, and, in more aggravated cases,
rectus. For this purpose a longitudinal incision is carried dow
from the anterior superior spine of the ilium in the interval
the tensor fasciæ femoris and sartorius muscles. After dividir
a little below their origin, the edges of the wound are retracted
tendon of the rectus is divided. A branch of the external cir
artery may require to be ligatured, while the external cutaneou
should, if possible, be avoided.

OPERATIONS FOR OSSEOUS ANKYLOSIS FOLLO
HIP-JOINT DISEASE

Indications. Osseous ankylosis of one hip in the straight
is of very little consequence unless it is combined with flexi
adduction. A slight amount of flexion is rather an advanta
otherwise, as it allows the patient to sit with greater comfort.
flexion be at all marked, and more especially if it be combin
adduction, the disablement becomes very great, and, unless th
weighty reasons to the contrary, operation should be urged. The
tion adds greatly to the lameness as well as to the deformity, as,
to bring the limbs parallel for the purpose of progression, the p
obliged to elevate the pelvis on the affected side and thereby to
the shortening.

Various forms of osteotomy of the femur have from time
been recommended for the treatment of ankylosis with malp
The earlier methods took the form of a simple transverse subcu
osteotomy, the femur being divided either through the neck (
or a little before the trochanter (Gant).

FOR THE PRODUCTION OF PSEUDO-ARTHROSIS OF IP WITHOUT DISARTICULATION OF THE HEAD

ıtion, which we owe to Mr. Robert Jones, is indicated in
f tuberculous disease of the hip-joint in which ankylosis
in a bad position without destruction of the head of the
operation consists in 'removing a slice of the great tro-
ling through the neck and screwing the separated portion
nter to the proximal end of the neck in order to avoid
ragments. The neck may be chiselled close to the head or
ance, or the neck may be completely removed, or, where
destruction from disease, additional bone may be removed.'
ving is Mr. Jones's description of the operation:—

udinal incision is made about 6 inches in length with the
of the trochanter in its centre.
on is made across the base of the trochanter just below the
ne gluteal muscles.
f the trochanter from this point to its junction with the
sawn or separated by a very wide osteotome and retracted
e capsule is now opened and the head separated from the
osteotome.
n is next put on the femur, and the trochanter with its
ied is screwed on to the head of the femur, which remains
ulum.
l superficial sutures complete the operation.
se of a tender joint, to avoid impinging, it may be necessary
portion of the neck. In the case of an ankylosed sound
g sepsis, it may be advisable, instead of dividing the neck
bulum, to divide it near the trochanter.'

commends the operation as a 'very suitable to those ad-
ars. It saves the shock of disarticulation, an all-important

nkylosis, where disarticulation has to be made with a chisel,
l is great, and the result is more reliable than where a flap
rvenes, unless the piece of bone removed is considerable,
noval of much bone involves the sacrifice of muscle and
of movement. The femur remaining is well supplied with
seful movement, and no stitching of capsule is needed for
ı of displacement upwards.'
ivides the bone obliquely immediately below both tro-
ique subtrochanteric osteotomy). This method possesses
s of leaving two broad osseous surfaces and of preventing

the lower fragment from being displaced inwards when the lir forcibly abducted. Cheyne prefers a cuneiform osteotomy at the tion of the neck with the trochanter, the base of the wedge being p either superiorly or superiorly and posteriorly, according to wh the limb is simply adducted or flexed as well. He makes a free in down to the bone between the sartorius and the tensor fasciæ fe muscles.

In ankylosis following tuberculous disease of the hip, howeve head of the femur is often more or less absorbed, or the neck i normally short and thick. For this reason Adams's operation is se feasible, and Cheyne's may be unnecessarily difficult. The oper which the writer is in the habit of performing is a cuneiform osteo the wedge being removed immediately above the lesser trochanter (mann) if the bone be not specially thickened; if it be, the wed removed immediately below both trochanters. The base of the we directed externally if the ankylosis be attended with adduction while if there be flexion as well the base of the wedge is directed wards as well as outwards.

The incision may be placed either transversely across the aspect of the root of the trochanter or longitudinally over the n of its outer aspect. After dividing the skin and subcutaneous t the aponeurotic insertion of the gluteus maximus is exposed and di transversely. Beneath it is the great trochanter with the glist tendon of the vastus externus lying immediately below it. The osteum is now divided transversely across the outer aspect of th of the trochanter, and, after separating it upwards and downwards a strong sharp-edged rugine (Farabeuf's), the wedge is removed the hammer and a broad, highly tempered chisel. The more the is shortened, the broader should be the base of the wedge so as to of the limb being well abducted. In removing the wedge it is we to sever the bone completely until both sides of the wedge have cut. During the operation the patient should be placed on the side, and a sand-bag (not too tightly filled) should be placed be the thighs so as to provide a firm and steady bed for the affected to rest upon. The sand-bag is covered with jaconet and comp enveloped by at least two layers of sterilized cotton sheeting. Aft wedge has been removed, the periosteum and the fascia lata are with buried catgut sutures. The skin wound is closed without dra

The limb is maintained in the abducted position by means splint already described. Before this can be done it will be nec either to forcibly stretch or divide the adductor muscles.

After-treatment. There is no necessity to apply weight

sion to the limb, as there is no fear of the osseous surfaces becoming displaced. Osseous union is aimed at, and the after-treatment is therefore conducted on the same lines as for simple fracture, care being taken that the limb is not allowed to become everted. The patient may be kept in the abduction splint for six weeks, but if desired a Thomas's abduction splint (or a plaster of Paris case) may be applied at the end of three weeks and the patient allowed to get about on crutches with a patten to raise the opposite limb. Two months after the operation the patient may begin to bear his weight upon the limb.

OPERATIONS FOR ANKYLOSIS WITH SINUSES

It is by no means uncommon to meet with old-standing cases in which the ankylosis with flexion and adduction is complicated with one or more sinuses which have persisted in spite of repeated attacks on them by the ordinary method of laying them open and curetting, followed by the application of a powerful antiseptic and gauze packing or drainage. In many of these cases the sinuses are prevented from healing by the presence of foci of osseous disease—often containing a sequestrum—imbedded in the region of the ankylosed joint, either in the innominate bone, in the remains of the head or neck of the femur, or in the trochanter. While amputation may be called for in exceptional cases, there are many cases in which by excising the joint the disease can be removed and the limb at the same time straightened.

Operation. The operation is carried out on the following lines: In the first place the sinuses are laid open, curetted, and disinfected either with pure carbolic acid or turpentine; those that lie in the region of the main operation wound may often be completely excised. Free access must be got to the ankylosed joint, and in the presence of adduction and flexion this is best effected by means of Kocher's postero-external incision. If the sinuses be carefully probed, one or more of them will be found to lead, either directly or indirectly, to the diseased focus in the bone, and whatever be its situation, this should be thoroughly gouged away, and, if necessary, the wound should be enlarged to give sufficient access to do this thoroughly. The next step consists in chiselling across the neck of the femur, and then gouging out the remains of the head of the bone from the acetabulum. Should the bone be dense this may be rather a laborious process. The writer has found the highly tempered gouge-chisels made by Weiss of London for Mr. Robert Jones very helpful for this purpose.

Should a focus of disease be discovered in the root of the neck or in the trochanter, it must be removed, after which the end of the latter should be so fashioned that it can be implanted into the gouged out

acetabulum, the adductors being stretched, or if necessary divid allow the limb to be placed in the abducted position. A drainag should be introduced into whichever sinus leads most directly do the joint, the others being packed with iodoform gauze. The treatment is the same as that described for excision of the hip.

Operations for treatment of ankylosis of the hip-joint wher designed to produce a mobile joint are described in Vol. I. The seldom be used, however, where the ankylosis follows tuberculosi

OPERATIONS FOR ABSCESSES AND SINUSES, THE RESULT TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE HIP-JOINT

Although these complications are frequently met with, their ment is so much a matter of general principles that the operative need not be fully discussed in a work of this description.

Should a small abscess form with the patient going about early stage of the disease, it will occasionally absorb if the limb b at rest. If, on the other hand, it should continue to enlarge it m opened and curetted. While there are some cases in which the join be left untouched, it is usually wiser to make the incision of such and so to place it that the joint may be investigated in order that a d decision may be come to as to whether radical measures should b ceeded with. When the abscess is situated posteriorly, excision m proceeded with by Kocher's method.

Sometimes after opening an anterior abscess along the inner l of the sartorius a suppurating track may be followed underneat iliacus to its origin from a small primary bone focus at the margin acetabulum close to the anterior inferior spine of the ilium. In s case it not infrequently suffices to curette the bone without incisi capsule. When, however, the abscess communicates with the joi latter should be explored. In other cases the abscess is confined the capsule of the joint, and is then treated either by simple arthr or by excision, according to the extent of the disease. In cases whe cision was deemed advisable the writer was formerly in the ha employing Barker's method; more recently, however, he has aban it in favour of the posterior operation.

In the case of a large abscess extending down the thigh und fascia lata, it is sometimes advisable, on account of the debilitated of the patient, to defer the excision until some time after the a has been dealt with. Should the general condition of the patient equal to it, however, it is better to proceed at once to excision; disease in the joint be left it only serves to reinfect the abscess cav

The incision used to excise the joint should be prolonged dow

thigh sufficiently to allow the whole abscess cavity to be laid open and thoroughly cleaned out. The whole wound should be sutured, except at its lowest part, where a rubber or gauze drain should be introduced, and a second drain should be introduced opposite, and down to, the joint. A counter-opening may be made if necessary. The shock, although considerable, may be counteracted by the introduction of large quantities of normal saline into the rectum by the drop method introduced by Murphy.

After opening and removing the tubercular lining of the abscess by curetting, followed by vigorous scrubbing out with dry gauze, it is customary to introduce some antiseptic with the object of destroying the few bacilli which have almost certainly escaped removal. A 10% emulsion of iodoform and glycerine has been most commonly employed for this purpose. More recently Murphy has made use of a 2% solution of formalin in glycerine. The writer uses the sublimated iodoform-bismuth paste in the proportion of one part of the former to two or three of the latter, according to the size of the abscess.

While the presence of sinuses renders the results of excision less favourable on account of their liability to set up a general infection of the wound, their presence should not *per se* be regarded as contra-indicating excision; indeed their persistence is often an argument in favour of excision, as in the majority of cases it is only by removing the joint lesion that they can be got to heal.

TUBERCULOUS DISEASE OF THE SACRO-ILIAC JOINT

The disease is generally secondary to a focus in the sacrum or ilium, and in adults it is frequently accompanied by pulmonary tuberculosis. In children it is often secondary to disease in the lower lumbar spine.

Skiagraphy is of the greatest assistance to the surgeon in enabling him to localize the situation of the bone focus at a comparatively early stage of the disease. In the absence of advanced pulmonary tuberculosis, the operation should be advised, and, if possible, it should be performed before suppuration occurs.

Operation. The joint is best exposed by a semilunar incision placed internal to the articulation. The size of the incision will, of course, depend on the extent of the disease. After retracting the flap outwards, the periosteum is incised over the back part of the crest of the ilium, while below the level of the posterior superior spine the knife is carried down to the back of the sacrum between the origin of the gluteus maximus and the lumbar aponeurosis. The posterior fibres of the gluteus medius, the upper fibres of origin of the gluteus maximus, and the upper

part of the great sacro-sciatic ligament and the subjacent perios are separated from their attachments and retracted well outwards. inner flap, consisting of the lower part of the erector spinæ, is det inwards. The posterior superior and posterior inferior spines o ilium are removed with a chisel. If the disease be limited to the i little more requires to be done except perhaps to scrape and clip some disease which has invaded the posterior ligament and adjacen parts. If, on the other hand, the sacrum be involved and the joint extensively diseased, more of the ilium may have to be removed b sufficient access can be got. The strong interosseous ligament, with the diseased portion of the sacrum, is then removed with a chi gouge. If possible, the periosteum and ligaments covering the an aspect of the joint should be left intact, and the important struc immediately in front of it, namely, the internal iliac vessels, the u and the lumbo-sacral cord, must be kept in mind.

An abscess or sinus confined to the posterior aspect of the jo easily dealt with, but considerable difficulty may arise in followir suppurating tracks and collections of pus which have burrowed int pelvis. In the presence of such complications, in order that free thr and through drainage may be established, it will generally be nece to make a counter-opening either in the iliac region, the buttock upper and inner aspect of the thigh, or the perineum, according t route taken by the abscess.

After-treatment. The after-treatment consists in prolonge cumbency, as much as possible in the open air. To ensure rest sand may be used, or the patient may be fixed to a Bradford's bed-fram

Results. The results are often very unsatisfactory; the pa not infrequently dies of meningitis or general tuberculosis. Sinuse very liable to persist indefinitely, and to lead to waxy disease.

SECTION III

OPERATIONS UPON THE LIPS FACE AND JAWS

PART I

OPERATIONS FOR HARE-LIP AND CLEFT-PALATE

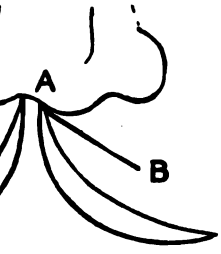
BY

MUND OWEN, F.R.C.S. (Eng.), D.Sc.(Hon.)
urgeon to St. Mary's Hospital and to the Hospital for Sick Children, London

CHAPTER I

OPERATIONS FOR HARE-LIP

ons. As is shown later on in this article, if a child has
l a cleft-palate, the palate should be operated on before the
n infant has a hare-lip and no cleft-palate, the sooner the
d on the better; it may be done any time after the tenth
lier still, if need be—but it should not be done without an
or which purpose chloroform answers best.



HE OPERATION FOR HARE-
ge. The mucous border of
of the gap is to be peeled
p on the left side which is
he incision A B is to be
s below the right side of

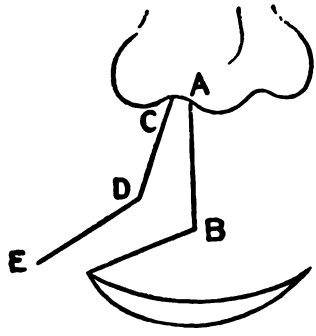


FIG. 113. THE OPERATION FOR HARE-LIP. *Second stage.* The left side of the lip being drawn well across, the incision A B becomes vertical, and a full prolabium is obtained.

on. One of the most important points in the operation is
e lip and cheek freely, so that the vivified edges may meet
p without any tension. The bleeding vessels can be caught
os, and all blood thus prevented from entering the mouth.
e labial flaps have been fully detached, the incisions are
aining the raw edges. By one of the old methods of operat-
us membrane was dissected from each side of the gap, and,
he raw surfaces were drawn together, an unsightly notch
e seen on the free border of the lip. The border of the lip
vified by a very sharp scalpel; an old scalpel which has
in by grinding does excellently for the purpose. The mucous

membrane is peeled from one side of the cleft an
deal of the free border of the smaller side of the
other side a bold flap is cut as is shown in Fig. 11
afterwards brought across to the denuded border
other side. Of its thickest part a prolabium is for
which before had been the mucous border of the
the horizontal border all along the rest of the lip. T
across is a thick, wedge-shaped flap, which is boldl
leave an angular space into which the opposite si
vivified, may be dove-tailed.

The right side of the lip having had its mucou

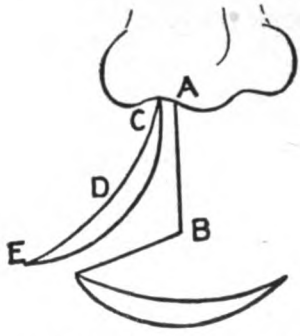


FIG. 114. THE OPERATION FOR HARE-LIP. *Third stage.* The mucous border has been removed from the right side and a flap cut from the left side.

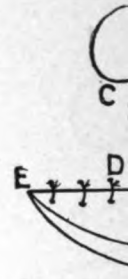


FIG. 115. TH
LIP. *Final sta*
left side has b
right half of t

pared off up to the curved line C D E (Fig. 114), th
lip are drawn together in the middle line. When
lip has been thus brought to the middle line, the in
been made obliquely into the lip (Fig. 112), becor
flap, which had previously been vertical, becoming
to form the mucous border of the restored lip. Th
being drawn inwards, some of its freshened borde
cally, whilst the rest of it, D E, becomes horizontal,
flap from the left half of the lip is adjusted, the
fitted into the angle on the left side as at B in Fi
membrane must be entirely removed in order tha
be complete, and it should be removed from aroun
of the lip. Not a particle of the skin, however, sh

The flap thus described is not the same as in Mir
method entailed the cutting with a pair of scissors

flap from the lower border of the lip which was to be arranged to form a normal prominence for the lip, as a sort of pedicle.

Sutures. For the thorough adjustment of the flaps stitches should be inserted not only down the front of the lip, but also on the dental aspect, and some of them should be placed very deeply, so as to prevent the halves of the orbicularis and the associated muscles dragging upon the wound. Prepared horsehair may be used for adjusting the edges of the skin and for securing the transplanted flap along the opposite half of the lip; silk is not suitable as it swells and becomes septic. The vivified surfaces must be kept in close contact by passing some of the posterior stitches deeply and boldly with a curved needle, the needle being brought almost through to the skin, but just missing it; these stitches are of great use in steadying the flaps. The old-fashioned hare-lip pins should never be used; they are not needed even in cases of the worst kind. The spots at which they traversed the skin were apt to be permanently marked by white scar-tissue. A great advantage of the deep sutures at the dental aspect of the lip is that they leave no mark; they also arrest bleeding, and they adjust the surfaces and edges of the wound so well, that possibly only a few stitches may be required for the front. None of the stitches should be tied very tight or they will cut their way out by ulceration; they are wanted merely to hold the surfaces gently together. Their ends should be left about ¼ inch long, so that they can be easily seized by the forceps when the time comes for their removal.

If, as often happens, the nostril be wide and flat, it should be made shapely, and fixed in the approved position; some of its cartilaginous ring may have to be cut away so as to reduce its size and round it off. It may need also to be separated from the bone, and it may be advisable to hitch up its lower and outer part by a silver-wire suture. In some cases it is well to turn up the mucous membrane from the projecting ring of the nostril, and then, having shaved off a thickish slice of the cartilage, to bring down again and suture the membrane.

Dressings. When the last stitch has been inserted, and the face has been washed and thoroughly dried, the assistant should purse up the lip with the finger and thumb whilst the surgeon applies a dressing of gauze dipped in collodion and long enough to reach well on to the cheeks. Next day this had better be removed, and it is often advisable to do this first dressing under chloroform. The nurse gently holds the slack of the cheeks towards the middle line, and the surgeon peels off the gauze by pulling the ends *inwards,* being careful not to drag upon the sutures; then, when the part has been cleaned, he may decide to remove, perhaps, every other stitch, as the edges of the wound are closely adhering. If

a thick stitch has been deeply inserted from the front, it certainly
to be removed, lest it should leave a scar. The sutures at the to
of the vertical wound may also be ready for removal. A gauz
collodion dressing is applied as before, and next day, or the nex
but one, the wound should be dressed again, a few more of the an
stitches being removed, the posterior stitches still being left.
within four or five days all the visible sutures are removed, those
tail end of the flap and at the free border of the lip being last take
For ten days or a fortnight after this the lip must be kept from di
ance by gauze and collodion or by waterproof strapping. If the su
does not think it necessary to have chloroform administered fo
dressings, the nurse should be sitting in a chair opposite to him
the child lying on her lap, whilst the surgeon grips its head firmly be
his knees, so as to keep it quite steady.

If the case be one in which the intermaxillary bone and the prola
have been sacrificed and the new
very small, the removal of a w
shaped piece from the middle o
lower lip may improve the ap
ance, a prominent lower lip being
unsightly.

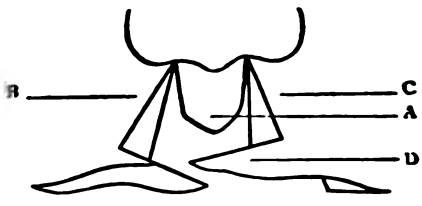


FIG. 116. OPERATION FOR DOUBLE HARE-LIP. A, Prolabium with borders denuded; B, Right side of lip denuded and flap brought down; C, Left side of lip denuded; D, Flap brought down and vivified on lower border, ready for being tucked round between the right side of the prolabium and the right labial flap.

Double hare-lip. If in the ca
a double hare-lip the prolabium c
used, it may need to be lowered
what before it can be made ava
for the new lip. This being don
mucous membrane should be
and cleanly dissected off its bo
and the two sides of the lip sho
arranged for blending with it.
ably one side of the lip is larger than the other; this, therefore, s
be chosen to build up the mid-part and the lower border of the ne
A flap is also cut from the other side of the lip, but before this is
the mucous membrane is peeled from its free border, so that the fla
be dove-tailed in between the vivified border of the median bud an
fresh-cut surface of the other flap, as shown in Fig. 116.

If this flap, which is denuded on both its upper and its lower sur
be long enough, it may be bent around the border of the mediar
towards the opposite side, lying between the median bud and the
flap, and in this position it is duly secured by a few deep sutures,
ready described, and by superficial ones of horsehair.

Sometimes the closure of the cleft in the lip causes a great diff

of breathing, for whereas the air-way had been unusually free, the infant is subsequently obliged to breathe only through the nose and mouth, and the nostrils are, perhaps, a good deal blocked by dry blood and mucus. In these circumstances the nurse has to guard the child from the risk of suffocation by gently depressing the lower lip. If the difficulty of breathing be very marked, the surgeon may feel inclined to pass a suture through the back of the lower lip and bring the two ends round the border of the lip, fixing them to the chin by a piece of waterproof strapping. The sucking in of the lower lip and the difficulty of breathing are thus done away with, and as there is no tension on the suture it does not hurt the lip.

It sometimes happens that the lower border of the lip is marked by a notch, either with or without an operation having been performed; this may be effaced by making a horizontal incision into the substance of the lip a little above the notch, and then closing the wound in the vertical manner. This operation is on the principle which is adopted for widening a short constriction in the alimentary canal, an incision being made in the length of the bowel and closed at right angles to it.

If after operating on a hare-lip the surgeon sees in a day or two that the line of sutures is 'breaking down,' and that there is no longer any chance of obtaining primary union, he may still look for a good result by the fusing together of the two layers of granulation tissue. If, therefore, the flaps fall apart, the sutures should be removed, and the lip should be bathed in warm boric lotion and covered with wet boracic gauze. So long as the tissues are acutely inflamed, nothing can, of course, be done with a view to bringing the parts together again; but as soon as the inflammation has subsided, and healthy granulations begin to cover the raw surfaces, the sides of the lip should be readjusted by gauze and collodion, or by strips of waterproof strapping. In this way a very excellent result may often be obtained for an operation which had at one time threatened a complete failure—a good example of healing by granulation.

ROSE OPERATION

Blair, in the *International Clinics,* has described this operation in detail as follows:

Restoration of the Lip and Nostril. Of the numerous plans which have been proposed for this purpose a 'Rose' type of operation is the simplest to plan and execute and is capable of giving the best anatomic results. Last but not least, disappointing results which will occur are more easily corrected after this plan of operating than any other. Many

operators use an angular in place of the curved incision of a typ
'Rose' operation, but the principle is the same. For complete dou
hare-lip the author prefers the plan that somewhat resembles a 'Ma
operation (Fig. 117), but even in the double cleft the 'Rose' opera

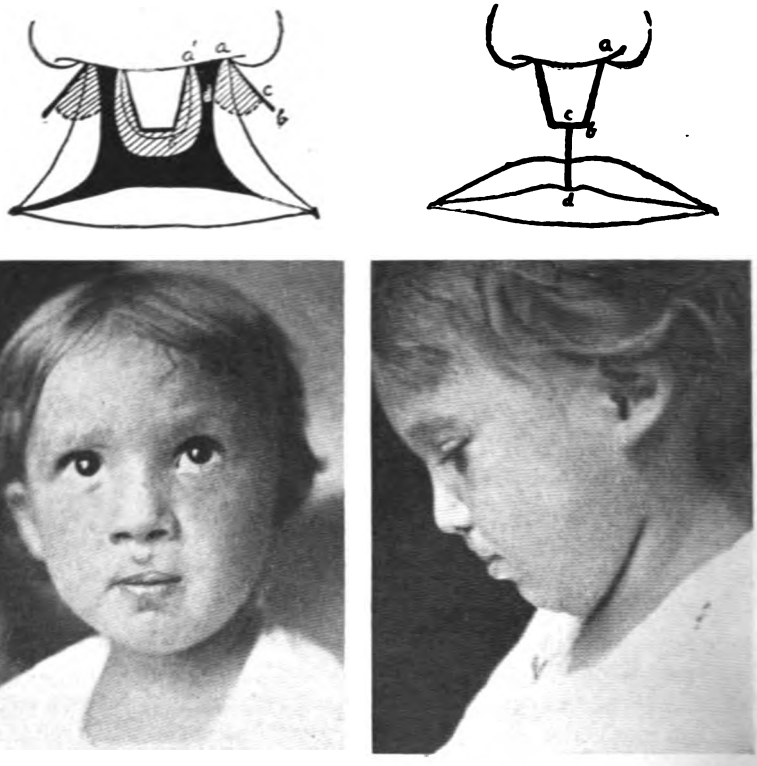
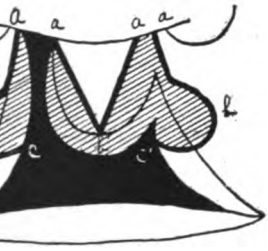


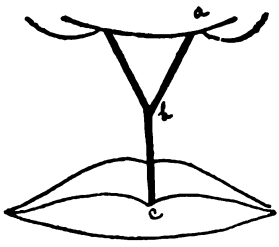
FIG. 117. SHOWING A MODIFIED MAAS OPERATION FOR DOUBLE HAR
WHICH FOR WANT OF A BETTER DESIGNATION WE HAVE CALLED THE WASHIN
UNIVERSITY OPERATION. The child shown below had this operation don
early infancy. Notice the beautiful development of the nose that has t
place spontaneously. The defect in the middle of the lip is due to inadvert
leaving a slight bit of the vermilion border of the prolabium. (Blair, *Int
tional Clinics.*)

is efficacious and, unless one has special skill, is apt to be more satis
tory in the result (Fig. 118).

Operation for Single Hare-lip. If this is accompanied by a com
palate cleft, the alveolar portion is to be dealt with according to
of the plans already given. In a simple alveolar cleft, without comp
separation, the alveolar process needs no special treatment. Whe

omplete or only a notch, the plan of operating is the same, e clefts are accompanied by a spreading of the nostril on





HOWS THE ROSE OPERATION FOR DOUBLE HARE-LIP AND A CASE SO second picture in the series shows the distortion that immediately e other two show the good later results. The only fault here is lip was made a little too long, a mistake very easy to make. *tional Clinics.*)

that side which should be remedied (Fig. 120). The following should receive special attention during the operation:

(*a*) Incision should be carefully planned and then plainly o with the point of a knife.

(*b*) Unless varied for some special adjustment, the cuts shou

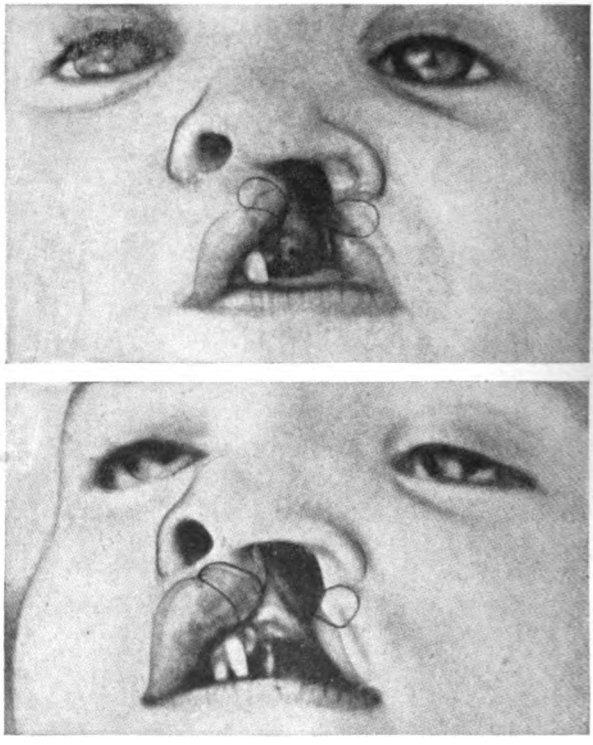


FIG. 119. TWO PHOTOGRAPHS TAKEN AT SLIGHTLY DIFFERENT SHOWING ROSE INCISIONS FOR SINGLE COMPLETE HARE-LIP. These are here chiefly to show the relation of the upper portion of the incisions nostril. On each picture the head is tilted back somewhat, which c foreshortening of the incisions. (Blair, *International Clinics.*)

tend squarely through the full thickness of the lip. A sharp straight bistoury is preferable for the purpose.

(*c*) On neither side of the cleft does the incision really en nostril, but it should end at the level of the junction of the col with the lip on the mesial side and of the ala with the lip on the side; the upper ends of the incisions run almost transversely (Fig One is rather apt to run the incisions somewhat upward along th

surface of the ala or septum, which will cause an internal obstruction of the nostril most difficult to correct. Just at the entrance of the nostril the incision should run sufficiently close to the ala on one side and the columella on the other, so as to bring them close enough together to make a nostril of a proper size (Fig. 119).

(*d*) In doing a 'Rose' operation the convexity of the curved incision should extend laterally to the fullest width of the cleft defect,

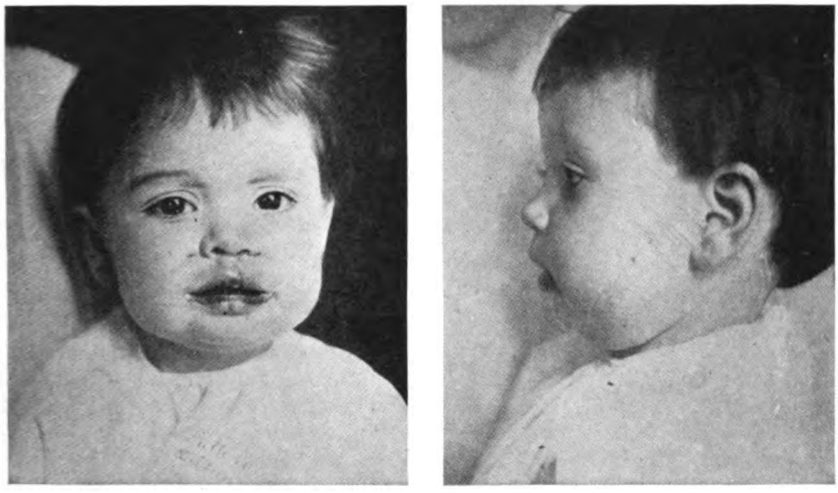


FIG. 120. THE CHILD'S UPPER LIP IS NORMALLY A PYRAMID WITH THE APEX AT THE CENTRE OF THE VERMILION BORDER. In correcting a hare-lip, this pyramidal form should be preserved. This is best accomplished by the 'Rose' operation. (Blair, *International Clinics.*)

and each curved out, if drawn out straight, should be of the same length as its fellow of the opposite side.

(*e*) The length of the cut within the vermilion border should correspond to the width that it is desired the vermilion border should be at the completion of the operation (Fig. 120).

(*f*) The ala is approximated to the columella by a deep suture of paraffined silk, placed just below the ala and the columella; this includes the full thickness of the lip and a superficial stitch that accurately approximates the skin. These are best combined in an inverted figure-of-eight suture, that is drawn up tentatively, first observing whether the ala is brought to a level symmetrical with its fellow of the opposite side. If this is not the case the suture is removed and replaced; then it is necessary to see that the cut edges of the skin in the floor of the nostril abut fairly and do not overlap. If this should not be the case, a superficial

stitch of silk or horsehair is placed in the skin above the figure-o stay suture and immediately tied; the figure-of-eight suture is the the ends being cut short.

(*g*) A somewhat superficial suture is put exactly through the cutaneous border and before tying this gentle traction is made dow to see that both freshened borders of the cleft are of the same (Fig. 121).

(*h*) The skin and mucosa of both surfaces are now accurat

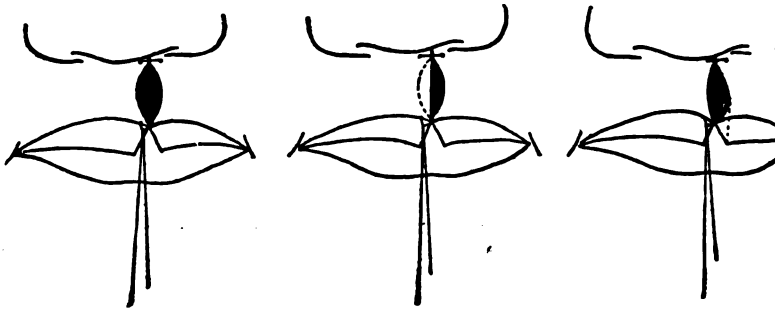
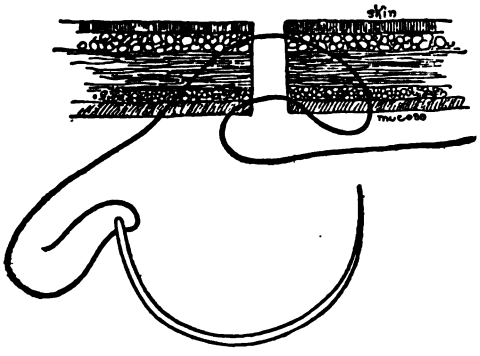


FIG. 121. AFTER PLACING THE FIGURE-OF-EIGHT SUTURE AT THE EN OF THE NOSE AND A SIMPLE SUTURE AT THE MUCO-CUTANEOUS BORDER AN DRAWING, GENTLY, DOWNWARD UPON THE LATTER, THERE SHOULD BE AN TICAL GAP, WITH SYMMETRICAL BORDERS, THAT IS TO BE CLOSED BY CUT SUTURES. If it is found that one border is shorter than the other, first it i mined if one is too short or the other too long and then dealt with as su in the other two figures; cutting along the dotted line through the full th of the lip. The central figure shows the method of lengthening the sho ment of the lip, while a cut made through the dotted line, in the figure right, will shorten the lateral part of the lip. Both sides may be short lengthened in the same way. (Blair, *International Clinics.*)

proximated by several superficial interrupted sutures of horsehair silk, the ends of all being cut very close to the knots.

If the ala has been brought into proper relation to the col any present kinking of the nostril had best be disregarded, fo rapidly and more accurately corrected by growth than by a pla the ala. When finished, the two halves of the lip should be symm with neither a notch nor a protrusion at the line of union. It ha the writer's observation that a lip which is slightly short at the line tends to correct itself with growth; that if it is made too l with a protrusion, these faults tend to persist. With this type of tion, either a moderate notch or a protrusion are easily corrected at sequent operation. After the superficial suturing is complete deep stay sutures are placed, one on the mucous surface of silkwo

little above the muco-cutaneous border, its ends being left hes long; the other of No. 26 silver wire is placed through t of the lip and shotted over lead plates that rest on the nfection takes place, these are sufficient. The lower part ually holds; in but two instances in the writer's practice and tension combined been sufficient to cause a separation



FTER BOTH THE CUTANEOUS AND MUCOUS SURFACES OF THE LIP APPROXIMATED BY FINE INTERRUPTED SUTURES, THEN IN THE F THE LIP ARE PLACED ONE OR POSSIBLY TWO OF THESE MODIFIED OF SILKWORM-GUT, TIED ON THE MUCOUS SURFACE. This suture urate approximation of the muscular surfaces, controls bleeding runt of the strain; the two ends are left four inches long so as the mouth and are not knotted together, otherwise the child finger in the loop. Care must be exercised in removing this might be cut off and the loop left in the lip. (Blair, *Interna-*

eatest tension is in the upper part, the silver wire suture ency to cut, thus allowing one or both nostrils to spread. on it is advisable to further support the face by adhesive

re-lip, complete or incomplete, is almost as well treated by peration as the modified 'Maas' operation used by the 17) and its execution is more simple. The prolabium is and the curved incision is made in each lateral piece of the sting both nostrils as described in taking care of a single muco-cutaneous border suture is placed, the lip is drawn proper length, and the remaining sutures put into place. cautions are observed as in repairing a single hare-lip, and e remembered is that a double operation is much more of ne child, and possibly more so on the operator, than the peration. Both operations are completed by putting a

modified 'Lane' suture in the lower third of the lip and a lead suture below the level of the nostril, and then strapping the face.

The figure-of-eight suture placed at the entrance of the nos not sufficient to prevent the subsequent suturing of the ala. Gar devised the plan of placing a silver wire suture through the lip, s at each end for a lead plate. If there is no infection, this may be tive, but in the presence of infection, the wire rapidly cuts throu flesh. We first supplanted the use of this wire by the use of ad straps brought around the cheeks and crossing at the root of th and under the chin. We now in addition put in a deep suture

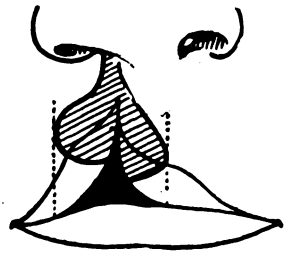


Fig. 123.

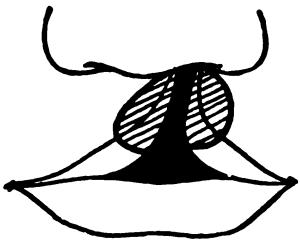


Fig. 124.

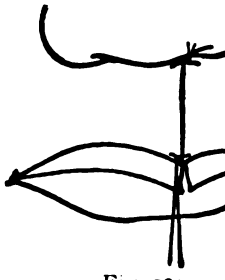


Fig. 125.

FIG. 123. OUTLINES OF INCISIONS IN A ROSE OPERATION FOR PARTI CLEFT, IN WHICH THERE IS ALSO A SPREADING OF THE NOSTRIL OF THA By the vertical dotted lines it is seen that the incisions extend laterally as the widest part of the cleft. It will also be seen that the length of ea within the vermilion border of the lip is the same. If the lengths of t curved incisions were measured, it would be found that they were of th length on each side. These are the three important points in designing th sions of a Rose operation. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

FIG. 124. INCISIONS FOR ROSE OPERATION OF A COMPLETE SINGLE (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

FIG. 125. AFTER MAKING THE INCISIONS FOR THE ROSE OPERATION, TH IS REPLACED WITH ONE SUTURE, AND THE NEWLY PARED BORDERS ARE A MATED AND PUT ON THE STRETCH BY A TENSION SUTURE PLACED AT THE CUTANEOUS BORDER. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

within the mouth of heavy silver wire at the level of the ear; this removed later. Any support or any dressing resting on the suture very objectionable. Prominent scars are almost always due to inf and the only effective way of controlling this that we have found immediate and continuous removal of all crusts or scabs as rapi they form.

CHAPTER II

OPERATIONS FOR CLEFT-PALATE

MPLOYMENT OF PRESSURE IN THE TREATMENT OF CLEFT-PALATE

lical Record of Australia for June 15, 1861 (Melbourne), y the editor, Dr. Reeves, which is apparently the first n of the pressure-method of dealing with cleft-palate. s led to try it on the dead body of a child who had died ter birth. The fissure was complete, and large enough d of the little finger. By means of a pair of clamps the ssure were readily brought together. The gums of the e then found to be within those of the lower jaw, but rmed the opinion that Nature would be able to remedy the living child grew up. Dr. Reeves insisted that *the left-palate should be performed as early as possible after bones were in their softest condition.* He suggested that he fissure should be pared, and that by the padded blades oe-shaped clamp the maxillary bones should be slowly er. He does not appear to have performed this operation ant, and his suggestion seems to have been lost sight of, robable, this treatment of congenital cleft-palate is to be ight that his suggestion should have due acknowledgment. ugh the published works of Dr. Brophy of Chicago that vas first called to the method, and I have every reason ell of it.

operating. Inasmuch as cleft-palate is an arrested he gap ought to be closed at the earliest possible moment, favourable time for operating upon it is between the age and three months. Brophy is probably right in affirming there is less shock from the operation because the nervous rudimentary condition; and, certainly, the sooner the soft palate are enabled to work with a definite scheme in view the more perfect will the voice eventually become. y recognized and disappointing fact that when operation at a later age, though the gap in the palate may be com- only a slight improvement in vocalization may take

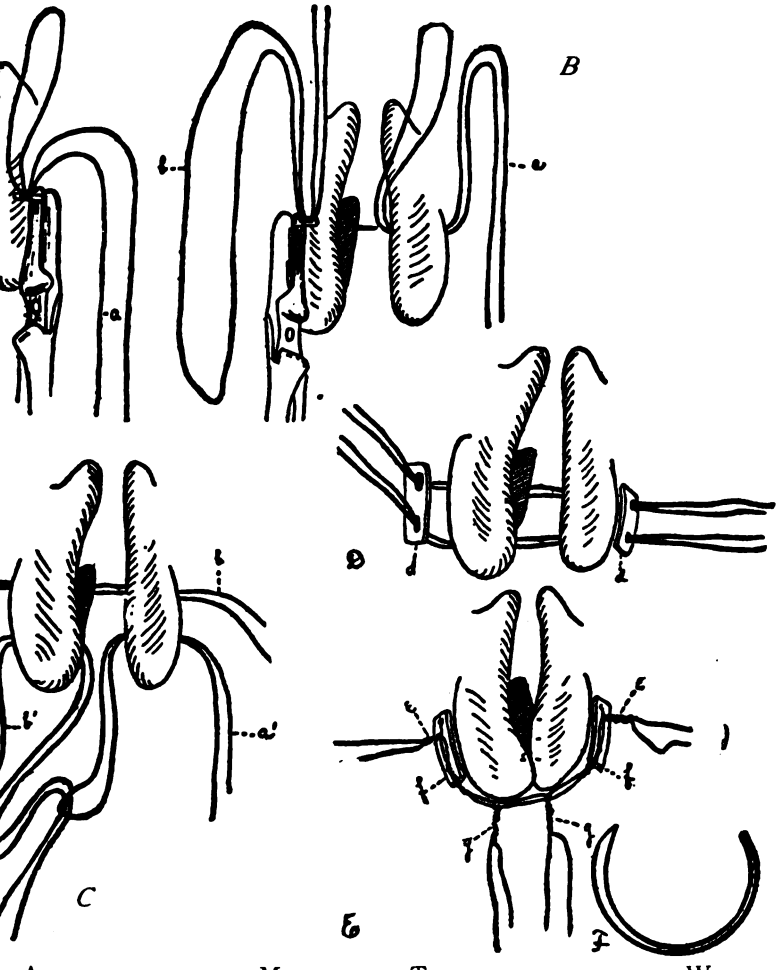
place. Still, if a new-born infant be badly nourished and ill-suit the struggle for existence, it would be wrong to submit him to any tion. He should be wrapped in wool, rubbed daily with cod-liver o brought into a satisfactory state of health before the cleft is dealt w

Once more, therefore, if it be admitted that distinct vocali depends upon the anatomical integrity of the soft palate, the that a cleft is repaired the better: it should certainly be done the hare-lip is operated on.

Some surgeons are still in favour of postponing operation up palate until the child has passed the age of infancy. But the earli cleft is closed the better will be the voice, and if the hare-lip be with before the palate the surgeon has less room for operating palate. One argument raised in favour of operating first on the that the mother may not be subjected to the constant grief of her child's serious disfigurement. But if it be explained to the m that the delay in operating on the lip is advised in the child's in she will be likely to take a reasonable view of the question. The ph well-being of the child must not be sacrificed to the sentiment mother. Certain it is that if the lip were closed the infant woul have to be brought up by a large-teat bottle or by spoon-feeding. further advised by some who are in favour of doing the lip-ope first that if, when the child has attained the age of two years or s the surgeon is about to deal with the palate, the mouth is so sma there is not room for the gag, the lip can be divided so as to get that difficulty. But those who have made themselves familiar wi operation on the palate by thrusting the maxillæ together, will be a appreciate the great help which is given in the subsequent rep the lip when the maxillæ and their labial coverings have been br together. It is all in favour of a good appearance being given hare-lip if the cleft-palate be dealt with by first approaching the m to each other.

Blair states that it is very essential that the surgeon should cov mouth and nose with thick gauze to protect the patient from the and mucus cast off during speech.

Operation. The operation by pressure consists in thrustin two superior maxillary bones together and then adjusting with s the vivified edges of the cleft. Brophy maintains that in cleft- cases the roof of the mouth is excessive in diameter by just the of the cleft, and that after the maxillæ have been thrust togethe the palatine processes united, the development of the alveolar pro becomes normal, and that when the teeth of the superior maxillæ have been shifted inwards by the radical operation are erupted the exactly meet those of the lower jaw. One of the important featu



Approximating the Maxillæ by Through-and-through Wires. placing a heavy silk loop through one maxilla posteriorly. B, second a heavy silk loop through the other maxilla posteriorly. C, ante- wn how one loop (a) is passed over the ends of a second loop (b). on the (a) loop, the (b) loop is made to traverse both maxillæ; (b) in position with wire; (c) ready to be drawn in place. D, showing vires in position, threaded at each end on a lead plate (d). If single ed, No. 20 is the proper size, while No. 22 or 24 is used double. E, ne maxillæ approximated. This is done by pressing the bones together up the slack by twisting appropriate wires. The approximation of part of the cleft is made more sure by bringing two of the wires ntermaxillary bone and twisting them at (g-g). The extra posterior arded if not needed. F, the needle used in piercing the maxillæ is vn as ⅝ circle, reverse-eyed Hagedorn. Two sizes are used; one of size of a nickel and the other of a circle the size of a quarter. ne of the broad cutting point is ground off. (Blair, *International*

this operation is that the halves of the soft palate so
can be sutured without interference with the muscles o
prospects of securing a natural voice being thereby g
And just as the approximation of the hinder part of th
cesses gives assistance in the repair of the soft palate,

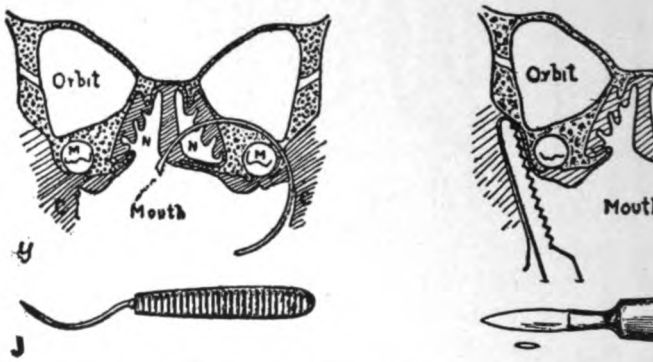


FIG. 127. G, AN ACCURATE DIAGRAMMATIC REPRODUCTION
A FROZEN HEAD OF AN INFANT WITH A SINGLE CLEFT OF THE
lustrates how a 5/8-circle needle can be made to pass from the
nix, through the jaw-bone, along the floor of the orbit and
showing position of the jaws of the forceps in forceful app
maxillæ. I, Brophy needle. Dr. Brophy has two of these ma
The shank of this needle is shorter than the original instrun
Brophy's needle is simpler than the author's method, but
placing the wires at a higher level in the jaw, *i.e.*, above t
double-edged knife occasionally used in cutting the maxilla.
high into the body of the bone through a small mucous op
forward and backward in the bone. (Blair, *International Cli*

proximation of their anterior part simplify the subsequ
the hare-lip.

The operation is begun by raising the cheek. A s
a handle is then thrust through the maxilla just behind t
of the superior maxilla, and above the level of the h
of the palate bone. This needle carries a thick silk pilo
to the cleft, and its loop is pulled down towards the m
needle is similarly passed through the opposite maxilla
brought down as before. This second loop is passed t
which, being drawn upon, is made to bring the second l
the maxilla and across the nasal fossa. The suture th
The sharply-bent end of a thick silver wire is then ho
loop, and, by pulling on the latter, the wire is made t

suture thus lies above the horizontal processes of the palate
ere it can be seen through the cleft. Similarly, a wire suture
rough the maxillæ above the front part of the cleft. Two
ng leaden plates, with a hole drilled near each end, are then
the outside of the right maxilla, under the cheek, the end of
wire being passed through the posterior hole and the end of
wire through the anterior hole. The right ends of the wires
wisted together from left to right, the plates being closely
ainst the maxilla, and after this the twisted ends of the wires
l flat. The ends of the wires under the left cheek are then
reated, and as they are being twisted up the maxillæ are
eezed together. If, however, they are too solidly fixed to be
vards each other, the bones themselves must be divided by
ufficiently to enable the surgeon to force their palatine pro-
the middle line. In this way the width of the gap in the
tly reduced and the lateral halves of the soft palate come
Fine sutures are then passed through the freshened borders
ire cleft. After the maxillæ have been thrust together, the
nding between the leaden plates have to be tightened up.
s and plates are not disturbed for three or four weeks. Some
ulceration may take place beneath or against the borders
es, but it is not of importance. The wires and plates may be
fter about the third week.

the prolabium and the incisive bone are so advanced and
at the surgeon is unable to make use of them, he must remove
it should always be his endeavour to save them. Sometimes
tion can be thrust into position only by bending down the
nose, and when it has become firmly
n its new position the connexion
nose may be divided; or it may be
after the removal of a triangular
the septum the prolabium comes
position.

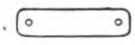


FIG. 128. LEAD PLATE FOR SUPPORTING WIRE SUTURES. Actual size.

t desirable to free the maxillæ by cutting into them, and frac-
e alveolar process is to be avoided. For these reasons the
is seldom advisable after three months. In doing this opera-
riter now makes no attempt to close completely, or even ma-
narrow, the posterior part of the cleft in the hard palate,
unnecessary, and a strenuous effort to do so is hazardous.
justment of the palate, whether it is for a single or double
premaxillary part should be placed well in front of and not
ial side of the maxiilary portion of the alveolus. In a single

cleft the maxillary bones are to be pushed toward each other a protruding premaxilla brought to lie somewhat in front of the maxillary process. No bone-cutting is required. In the double, plete cleft, where the premaxilla stands out on the end of the septum, it is usually advisable to make an oblique, single, subm cut, or a submucous removal of 5 mm. of the lower border of the s so as to allow the premaxilla to drop back into contact with the m However, this cut in the septum should not be made until it is mined that the anterior end of the maxillary processes can be suffi approximated to ensure the premaxilla of resting in front maxillæ and not dropping back into the cleft. If this cannot be then it is probably better practice not to cut the nasal septum but pushing the premaxilla as far back as possible with thumb pressu free the cheeks and alæ of the nose from the maxillary bones by cutting and to make the repair of the lips over the cleft.

After three months the Brophy operation is seldom advisable. lip may be repaired over the alveolar cleft, but as Blair has after operation the alveolar cleft may close rapidly from the lip pr or it may remain open indefinitely. Better results are obtained teeth are present by approximating the maxilla and the premax orthodontic appliances. Considerable tissue may be gained in a cleft-palate by including some of the muco-periosteum of the s with the palate flap.

Mr. Arbuthnot Lane is also an advocate of the palate being op on before the lip, and he prefers to operate on the palate when the is five weeks old. He raises a flap of muco-periosteum, and, t it over like a page of a book, tucks its free border in between th and the muco-periosteum of the other side, having previously ready the groove for its reception by detaching the muco-perio for about a quarter of an inch. The soft palate he treats in like m splitting it and turning it over, and suturing it to the other side. he has already vivified by a little splitting and unfolding. The sp and suturing of the flaps are done with special knives and needles

STAPHYLORRHAPHY AFTER INFANCY

Preparation. In the case of a child with cleft-palate wh passed beyond infancy, the sooner that the operation is unde the better. But before this is done the child must be duly pre Carious teeth should be extracted, or cleaned and filled; enlarged should be amputated, and adenoids cleared away, and the mouth as healthy as possible. And it may be well for the nurse to wa

h a hand-spray of some mild antiseptic, so that after the when its use is highly desirable, the child may not be alarmed

ıtion. The operating-table should be between 3½ and 4 (inclusive of a firm mattress), and quite narrow, so that the nay also be able to see into the mouth. The instruments laid on another table of the same height, and should be ıpon an aseptic cloth from left to right in the order in which n is likely to use them. They should not be placed in any ıe most convenient anæsthetic is chloroform, given on a flannel ch, later on, is changed for a Junker's apparatus. The chloro- ould not be called upon to help in the operative work; he n to occupy his thoughts and his hands. The child ought just 'under'; the anæsthetist should be able to feel that nent, if need be, he could wake him up. The operator should to the child making purposeless movements from time to then knows that his patient is 'upon the safe side.' If the becomes embarrassed the surgeon should stop and see if a he position of the head, or of the gag, may improve matters. osition for the child during the is upon the back, with the head ver the end of the table, so that may escape by the mouth or This position, however, some- ers the breathing; still, it should every case. It often happens the operation the child vomits sometimes when there has been vomiting, the first motion passed operation is tarry, some blood ınd its way into the alimentary pite of the child having been ed during the operation.

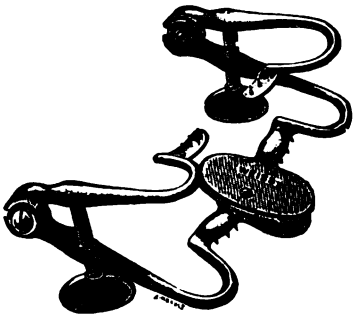


FIG. 129. KEYLESS GAG FOR CLEFT-PALATE OPERATIONS. The spikes prevent slipping even on a toothless gum.

ıg which I advise is a modi- Sir Thomas Smith's (Fig. 129). spatories, which should be slender, are made of steel, and inches long, with the ends in different curves for suitable y pitched arches. The ordinary steel aneurysm needle makes ful raspatory. The swabs can be made of tufts of absorbent l loosely tied up in gauze. They should vary in size from a plum. They should be used dry.

ost convenient needle for a cleft-palate operation is the tubular

one, with a reel containing an abundant supply of fine silver wi
the end of the needle is an arrangement by which one of the
sharp points can be rigidly fixed; the wire is made
through it by the movement of a small wheel up
handle. The points are of various curves and size
being round, do not cut the flaps (see Fig. 130).

As already stated, the best time for operatin
cleft-palate is within the first few weeks after birth
it may happen that the child has passed that age w
is brought for operation. Assuming, then, that h
a good state of health and that his mouth is clean
placed upon the table for operation. The child bei
der chloroform, the surgeon passes
suture through the tip of the tongu
gently pulls it forward, so that wh
gag is fixed the tongue may not blo
air-way.

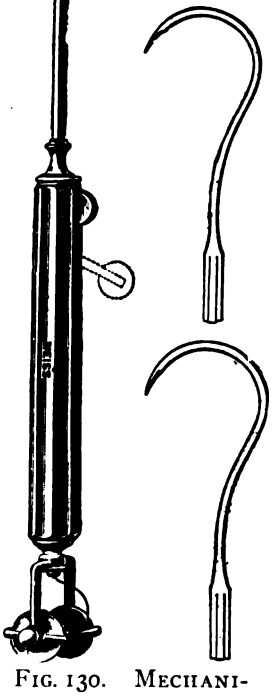


FIG. 130. MECHANICAL NEEDLES FOR CLEFT-PALATE OPERATIONS.

A strip of mucous membrane
been removed
each side of the
incisions are mad
near the teeth, p
down to the bo
shown in Fig. 1

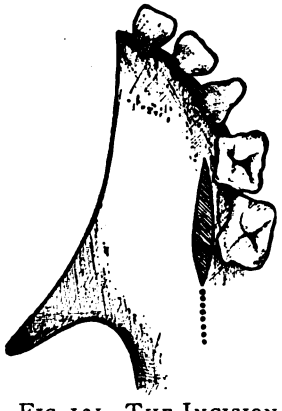


FIG. 131. THE INCISION MADE NEAR THE ALVEOLAR PROCESS THROUGH WHICH THE FLAP OF MUCO-PERIOSTEUM IS DETACHED.

Some childre
much more than
Bleeding may, as
be quickly stopp
firm pressure w
dry swab. The
that these incisio
made to the tee
less the chan
wounding branch
the descending pa
artery, the broad
be the flaps, and t
the likelihood of their blood-supply being seriously interfered
Then, by raspatories introduced through these incisions, the
periosteum is detached from the hard palate. The higher the pi
the roof the greater is the probability of the flaps being brought to
without tension. Indeed, in some cases of high roofs, the flaps

t not only their bare edges but some of their raw upper sur-
n be brought together, which much increases the chance of se-
rompt union. But they do not often come together without
nsion; this is because they are continuous with the velum
s firmly connected with the hard palate. In the velum
oneurosis which, attached to the border of the hard palate,
part of the insertion of the tensor palati and the levator
nd this aponeurosis must be detached before the velum can
l inwards. Success largely depends upon the thoroughness with
e disconnexion of the aponeurosis is made. It is best done by
ne blade of a pair of scissors (bent on the flat almost to a right
etween the detached muco-periosteum and the under surface of
of the hard palate, and the other through the cleft and over the
the velum, as shown in Fig. 132. Thus between the blades are
ne mucous membrane which is continued from the floor of the
sa and the aponeurosis of the soft palate, together with that part
ndon of the tensor palati which is inserted into the palate bone.
is scissor-cut has been made, the muco-periosteum and velum
se, and the flaps are ready for suturing. When the surgeon has
ne sutures through the flaps,
find so much tension upon
s of the flaps that he deems
o twist up the sutures only
Later, when he has in-
the length of the lateral in-
ne may tighten them up per-
with torsion-forceps. And
ne may know in which way
d twist to tighten, he should
a rule always to twist from
right, as in dealing cards.
found that, as the flaps are
gether, there is still so much
that, if the silver sutures
ly twisted up, either the wire
reak or cut its way through the flap, he must prolong the in-
ackwards well into the halves of the velum, as is indicated by
d line on Fig. 131. The incisions thus made sever the aponeu-
ertion of the tensor palati and the chief part of the insertion of
or palati.

rience shows that however wide a cleft of the hard and soft
ay be, it is advisable to operate upon the entire cleft at one

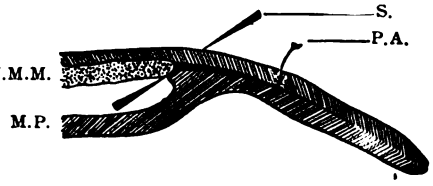


FIG. 132. DIAGRAMMATIC REPRESENTATION OF THE JUNCTION OF THE HARD AND THE SOFT PALATE. M.P., Muco-periosteum detached from the hard palate; N.M.M., Mucous membrane passing on to the floor of the nares; P.A., Aponeurosis of the soft palate; S, Blade of curved scissors about to cut through the aponeurosis and the membrane.

time rather than divide the operation into two parts, one for th palate and one for the soft. In certain cases of wide cleft of th palate of a grown child, the bone may be cut about ¼ inch fr gap on each side and the flaps of bone and mucous membrane together, the vivified edges being adjusted by sutures. After the tion, and before the gag is removed, it is a good plan (the he being dependent) to send several syringefuls of warm water up t trils. This clears away all clots and gives a free air-way.

In those cases in which the muco-periosteal flaps have be stroyed completely by previous operation, the roof of the mou

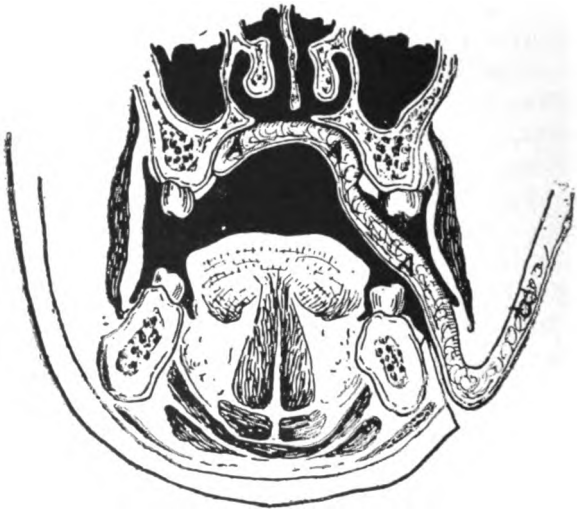


FIG. 133. DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING A FLAP (AAA), WHICH HA RAISED FROM THE SIDE OF THE NECK AND, STILL ATTACHED TO THE CHE CAN BE BROUGHT THROUGH AN INCISION IN THE LOWER BUCCAL FORN LAID IN A PALATE DEFECT. It can be seen that this flap could be used fo a cheek, instead of a palate defect. Flap is cut after union has take (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

be restored by a flap from some extraneous source, *c.g.*, cheek head, neck or finger (see Figs. 133 and 134).

After-treatment. When this is all done, and the gag a tongue suture are removed, the child should be so placed that the blood, and mucus may dribble out of the mouth without hav chance of entering the larynx or œsophagus. In the case of an the nurse had better keep him in her arms for a while, with t directed downwards. But if he is too heavy to be thus nursed, he be put in the half-sitting position, and partly turned to one sid the head bent down, so that the discharges may dribble into a

ild be collapsed it may be necessary to keep his head low and
n enema of hot water with a little brandy. He should have
by the mouth for several hours, but when the nausea has ap-
passed off, small quantities of beef jelly may be given in a
jelly slips down easily and is preferable to milk; it does
curds in the stomach and it is easily absorbed. This should
mented by rectal feeding. In the course of a day or so a little
l orange-juice, pulped strawberries or peaches, chicken or meat
s been run through a fine sieve, bread and milk, or soft custard
may be given. Fresh, home-made beef jelly, broth, and all

34. SHOWS NECK DEFECT ALMOST ENTIRELY OBLITERATED BY DRAWING EDGES TOGETHER. The upper triangular defect still remaining is n the pedicle of the flap, after it is cut and withdrawn from the mouth. *ral Surgery.*)

ods for children are far better than the various meat essences,
and juices supplied by the shops.

bly the child will allow the nurse to use a mild antiseptic spray
nouth, but it should not be persisted in if it frightens him. As
he fluid for irrigation, sanitas and water, a very mild solution
's fluid, or a solution of boracic acid with glycerine and eau-de-
answers well. It is unnecessary for the surgeon to remove
es; they will quietly ulcerate their way out. This refers, of
nly to the fine wire and horsehair sutures, not to those more
s of silver wire which pass through the maxillæ and the lead
the radical operation of infancy as described on p. 272.

plications. If, by chance, severe hæmorrhage should set in,
must be reintroduced and search made for the bleeding vessel.
should be removed, and the mouth and naso-pharynx should

be syringed out with warm water, the head being in the over-exte position. This might suffice to arrest the bleeding. If it does not, the bleeding is seen to be from one of the lateral incisions, a long of gauze dipped in a solution of adrenalin should be gently st through the gap, and to the back of the velum, and the soft palate sh be gently thrust up against this packing by means of a dry pad of g on a holder. Chloroform may be again required.

Sometimes, in spite of every precaution, septic inflammation at the mouth. The child then looks ill and yellowish, his tempera goes up, and his breath becomes foul. But with all this against i operation need not prove a failure. Some part of the cleft gene remains closed, and granulation-tissue in due course fills up more o and as soon as healthy granulations cover the surfaces (which wi in about a fortnight) the child will probably have undergone a immunization, and the operation may have some final touches g to it with a good prospect of a complete success being obtained. A foration remaining after a not entirely successful operation may of i close with time; at any rate, it will become much smaller. A hol large as a pea may, perhaps, be seen at the junction of the hard and palate after the performance of an otherwise successful operation. I after some months, the introduction of the slender blade of a ther cautery will be likely to complete its obliteration.

Results. As already insisted on, the narrower the cleft and earlier the date at which it is closed the more perfect will be the spe the closure of a wide cleft in late childhood brings but slight impr ment to the voice. Subsequent improvement depends to a large ex upon the attention which the parents devote to teaching the chil pronounce distinctly. The child should be shown the movement of lips and tongue of the teacher when the difficult words are being nounced, and he should be made to imitate them over and over ag A person accustomed to teaching deaf-mutes would give very hel instruction.

If, after the performance of the pressure operation, the maxi arch did not widen out sufficiently, this could be easily made right practical dentist. But even if it remained small, that defect woul more than counterbalanced by the fact that, owing to the approxima of the hinder ends of the maxillary processes, the surgeon had enabled to form a soft palate without tension, and without interfe with the tensor and levator palati. One constantly found, after op ing by the old method, that the velum was extremely tight and adapted for the purpose of vocalization; but, of course, it was not in that condition. It was relieved of tension by the method of Fergu

k, or in some other way. My own plan is to make a free in-
m before backwards, with a very slender scalpel, through the
ar its lateral attachment, in fact by extending still further
s the incision indicated by the dotted line in Fig. 131.

SECTION III

OPERATIONS UPON THE LIPS FACE AND JAWS

PART II

PERATIONS FOR CANCER OF THE LIPS AND FACE

BY

LENTHAL CHEATLE, C.B., F.R.C.S. (Eng.),
Surgeon General, R.N.
n to King's College Hospital and to the Italian Hospital

CHAPTER III

TIONS FOR CANCER OF THE LIPS AND FACE

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

ning incisions for the excision of cancer from the front of the are four things to be considered:—

writer has shown that a cancer originating in any part of the of the mouth, or skin over the cartilaginous part of the nose, s spread directly into the nasal and labial regions before it in any other directions.

erever squamous epithelioma or rodent ulcer exists the growth under the normal epithelium which surrounds the malignant efore the area of disease is greater than the size of the ulcer. cutaneous striated muscles of the face are in close anatomical the dermic glandular structures and almost touch the basal e epidermis. The relationship of these muscles to the skin is nd the eyelids and mucous membrane of the lips. Not only invade these muscles in its earliest stages, but the writer has rticular muscle, the levator labii superioris alæque nasi (caput picked out as its only path of spread.

re are lymphatic glands on the face, in the submental, sub- and anterior triangle regions, which must be removed; and ible it is wise to remove *en bloc* the tissue which connects the glands with the primary growth. To this necessity particular as been paid in describing the following operations.

cases of squamous epithelioma in the region of the lips, it is ate in the disease that the lymphatic glands contain cancer- lymphatic glands may become enlarged quite early, but then gement is generally due to a great proliferation of their endo-, masses of which can be seen arranged among, and isolating the normal lymphoid tissue of the glands. Therefore, al- nds may be enlarged in lip cancer, they are not necessarily ing.

egard to the group of lymphatic glands on the face there is nat their presence is exceedingly variable. In the cases from writer excised cancer in the angle of the mouth, and removed specified site of the buccinator group of lymphatic glands,

he could not find any trace of a lymphatic gland during a most dissection of the excised parts. In one case a microscopical exar was made of the whole parts removed; it revealed total abs lymphatic glands in this region.

The question will have to be considered whether it is advi remove the glands at the time the main lesion is excised. The gained by removing the growth and its attached lymphatic gl one operation is that it is possible to excise the diseased skin lymphatic vessels and glands *en bloc*, and hence to occasion less cell-transplantation. The disadvantages are that the tissues, in w the lymphatic glands, are opened during the course of a septic op

The writer has come to the conclusion that if great care in th of antiseptic work be observed and good drainage be subsequen vided, no great harm can occur should both stages be done at t operation. This statement also applies to that state of affairs w growth and the glands cannot be removed *en bloc*.

However, should it be decided to do one part first, it would b to remove the glands first, and, later, to attack the main disease, the glandular parts of the operation heal by first intention and no time would be lost before removing the primary focus. On th hand, should the primary focus be removed first, the period of would be longer in certain cases because it would remain sept longer period, which would delay the completion of the work.

The operations for cancer of the lips will be described first.

Preliminary measures. To avoid repetition of precautions to all cases it is necessary to state that (1) the mouth must be with a carbolic mouth wash, 1–60 carbolic acid lotion, or some a solution daily for a week before operation. All decayed teeth stopped and stumps extracted. This is easily done in cases cancer, but in advanced cases in which the teeth cannot be clea the mouth opened, except by inducing exquisite pain, no great a preparation can be made until the anæsthetic has been administe the diseased parts removed; then it is quite worth while to inter operation to scrape and clean the teeth and to extract stumps. proceeding with the removal of lymphatic glands and formation flaps, care should be taken to remove all soiled instruments, sponges, and gloves which have been used in this part of the prep and to protect raw surfaces from septic contamination.

(2) When practicable, before beginning the operation, th advises that the ulcerated part of the cancer should be cauter a suitable cautery at a dull red heat until the surface of the ulcer of a leathery consistence and all hæmorrhage stops. This is a pr

ainst the possibility of transplanting malignant cells of the pon the fresh cut surfaces of the normal parts. The danger of tation is further diminished by treating the parts to be removed utmost gentleness, so that cancer-cells are not squeezed from tions on to other parts, and care should be taken that the ulcer ouch the cut surfaces of the normal tissues during the manipula- ch are necessary for its removal. Each operation will be de- far as possible in three stages: (1) the removal of the growth; emoval of the lymphatic vessels and glands; (3) the plastic

OPERATIONS UPON THE LOWER LIP

r usually spreads along the margin of the lip, but more rarely downwards to a greater degree than usual before it eventually nd the angle of the mouth to upper lip. The importance servation is that in early cases ssible to say in which of the ctions the cancer is mainly . Hence it is advisable that ons should be so planned as both paths of spread.

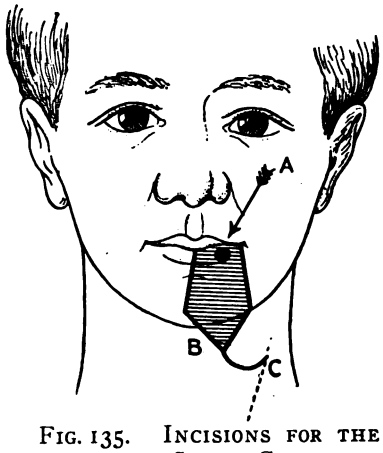


FIG. 135. INCISIONS FOR THE REMOVAL OF A SMALL CANCER, A, MIDWAY BETWEEN THE ANGLE OF THE MOUTH AND THE CENTRE OF THE LOWER LIP.

stage. If a small cancer be midway between the angle of and the centre of the lip (see), two incisions should be e external to it and the other The incisions should begin ree-quarters of an inch away edge of the ulcer. The ex- ision is carried downwards ly outwards through all the of the lip down to bone, and ends at the lower margin of the axilla. The internal incision is carried downwards and slightly hrough all the structures down to bone, and ends at the lower the inferior maxilla. The ends of these two incisions are two converging incisions which meet at a point midway be- lower margin of the inferior maxilla and the hyoid bone, and kin deep (see Fig. 135). The mucous membrane and muscles n the lip incisions are cut away from the jaw as close as pos- e bone.

The cancer-containing tissue is not cut away from its fasc platysma attachments, which will be taken away *en bloc* with th phatic glands. But before passing on to the next stage it is com enveloped in a thick layer of cyanide gauze which has been wru of a 1–20 solution of carbolic acid.

Second stage. The lymphatic glands are then dealt with by cutting the internal flap as far as the submental glands on each that all the glands in this region can be removed. The subma and anterior triangle regions are exposed by means of a curved i with its convexity downwards, and which starts at B (see Fig. 13 is to say, from the point at which the converging incisions me ends at the anterior border of the sterno-mastoid muscle, C (s 135). The flap is held upwards and backwards and the subma lymphatic glands are removed, a process which is rendered easier removal of the submaxillary salivary gland with the facial arte vein. If sufficient room has not been obtained for the efficient r of lymphatic glands in the anterior triangle, an incision is made extends downwards as far as necessary from the point C (see Fig

Third stage. In order to join the lip without tension on the s the internal and external flaps must be freely divided from their ments to the lower jaw. The parts are then stitched together a drainage tubes are inserted, one at B and the other at C (see Fig

When a small squamous epithelioma is growing on the middle lower lip, the incisions are lateral and must begin at least three-q of an inch away from the edge of the ulcer. They are carried t all structures downwards and slightly outwards to the inferior ma the lower jaw, and are ended in the same way as those just descr the first operation, and instead of removing the lymphatic gland one side only, this is done on both sides by means of incisions si planned.

Results. The resulting deformity is not so great as would be ined from so extensive a removal of tissue; in any case the import removing cancer is greater than that of leaving a picturesque appe

It will be observed that the V-shaped incisions, which are up present usually adopted for the removal of cancer from the lo are not advised in this article, because they converge towards the and cut across the possibly cancer-bearing tract which leads fr cancer to the lymphatic glands. The writer considers that the s recurrence of cancer in the lip is due to the dangerous positions o V-shaped incisions.

That the writer is justified in attempting to expel the V- incisions from surgery in connexion with cancer in this region

e figures published by Mr. C. W. Rowntree which he collected records of the Middlesex Hospital. Mr. Rowntree noted 126 ancer of the lower lip. In the majority of instances the growth removed by means of the simple V-shaped incision. There nty cases of recurrence, in forty of which the growth had n the lip.

RATIONS UPON THE ANGLE OF THE MOUTH

tage. To remove a small cancer from this part the first incision nternal to the tumour and through the lower lip; it begins at -quarters of an inch from the edge of the ulcer and is continued ls and slightly inwards as far as the lower margin of the in- xilla, and must cut through all structures down to bone (see . From this point the in- carried through skin only, ly backwards along the gin of the inferior maxilla early reaches the anterior ne masseter muscle.

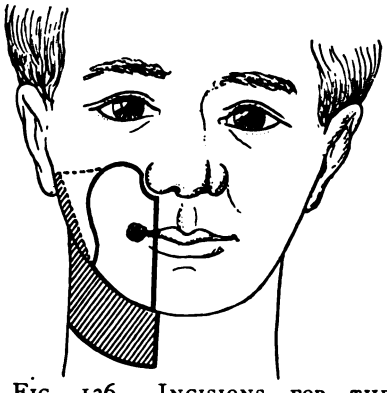


FIG. 136. INCISIONS FOR THE REMOVAL OF A CANCER AT THE ANGLE OF THE MOUTH.

ncision in the upper lip least three-quarters of an n the ulcer's edge and is ertically upwards through ures as far as the nose, ne ala of which it curves 136). It is not necessary any part of the ala. It is ed in a semicircle, the con- which is upwards, through ructures of the cheek down to the bone, and at least three- f an inch from the periphery of the ulcer until it reaches the order of the masseter muscle.

rminations of these two incisions are then joined by a curved ne convexity of which is directed backwards (see Fig. 136). nments of the parts enclosed within these incisions are then are being taken not to cut through the parts left adherent to ures below the jaw, so that they may be removed with the vessels and glands when they are taken away.

proceeding with the next stage, the disease-containing flap s been detached everywhere except at its lower margin) must

be wrapped in thick layers of cyanide gauze wrung out of 1–20 so of carbolic acid.

Second stage. The next step is to remove the lymphatic glan *bloc* and at the same time to keep in view the formation of a flap to the gap that has been created. The submental, submaxillary, and an triangle lymphatic glands are easily exposed as follows: Contin vertical incision in the lower lip downwards to the level of the hyoid and carry it back to the middle of the sterno-mastoid. Turn ba flap thus marked out, and keep it protected in cyanide gauze. region which contains the submaxillary and anterior triangle lym glands is thus exposed, but to remove the submental glands of both the skin covering the chin and upper parts of the neck must be un past the middle line and held there by a retractor. It will be see these incisions will include the supramaxillary and buccinator gro lymphatic glands on the face.

Third stage. The final stage is to cover the gap left by the re of so much of the cheek tissues.

This is easily performed by sewing the flap (marked by the s area in Fig. 136) up to the cheek, the mucous membrane and the s the normal lower lip. The raw surface of the upper lip is sewn side of the cheek near the ala of the nose. In order to prevent puck and to make the flap lie nicely in its new position, it will be neces excise the V-shaped piece of skin from the cheek, which is mar dots in Fig. 136, before attempting to place the flap in its final po The flap must be well attached to the cheek and lip of the opposi by many closely-placed interrupted stitches. The writer has neve a salivary fistula result from this operation.

It is hardly necessary to point out that the transplantation flap leaves a raw surface on the neck below it. If the skin of th be undercut it can be brought up and stitched to the inferior mar the flap without fear of undue tension.

Two tubes should be inserted, one at the lowest part of the wo the middle line, and one at the posterior and inferior angle of the

OPERATIONS UPON THE UPPER LIP

There are four anatomical conditions which complicate the of cancer in this region, and which do not concern cancers in the lip or angle of the mouth.

1. The early spread along the alveolar margin of the uppe particularly when the disease begins in, or spreads into, the centr of the lip. The upper lip at this part is naturally shorter than else

is made smaller by the contracting newly-formed connective
ch encircles and pervades cancer. Atrophy of the normal tis-
so accentuate the diminution in the natural size of the lip.
e relation of the disease to the alæ nasi and columella. When
gins in the upper lip, the columella is more invaded than the
The septal origin of the orbicularis oris forms an easy path-
nich the disease reaches the columella.
e extensive area and importance of the tissues that intervene
ne lymphatic glands in the parotid and submaxillary regions
necessary to run the risk of not removing the area and glands
s has been advised in the two operations just described.
til more trustworthy evidence is available the writer advises
arotid glands should be left out of the question in removing
cers from the upper lip, that
, unless these glands are
then of course it would be
move them.

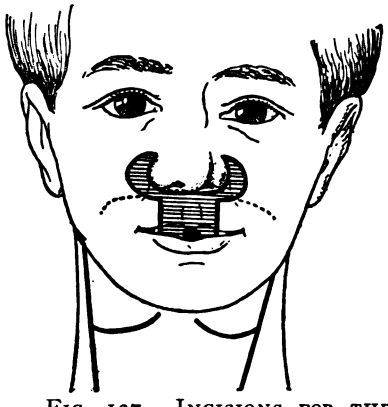


FIG. 137. INCISIONS FOR THE REMOVAL OF A CANCER IN THE CENTRE OF THE UPPER LIP. The thick lines in the neck show the incisions for removal of the glands.

ecessary steps to remove a
er in the centre of the upper
follows: First make two lat-
ons, which must include all
ures of the lip and which
ast three-quarters of an inch
n the edge of the ulcer and
d vertically upwards from
ts to the level of the ala nasi
ide. The ends of these two
are then continued into the
curving them outwards;
vardly curved incisions are to
at the groove which marks the junction of the ala with the side
e (see Fig. 137), and all the structures must be included. The
ons are then joined by a cut, which becomes transverse after
ound the grooves formed by the junction of the cheek with the
each side. In the transverse part of this incision, the base of
ella should be also removed and the septal origin of the orbi-
s must be detached. By adopting these measures the shaded
e diagram (see Fig. 137) will be removed; the levator labii
alæque nasi (caput angulare) does not come into important
ith a small cancer of this part of the lip. A new upper lip can
as follows: Make on each side an incision an inch and a half
h starts from the lateral incision at a point where the upward

direction of it ceases and the curved portion begins (see dotted
Fig. 137), and carry it downwards and outwards through all th
tures, and end when it reaches the centre of the buccinator muscle
incision must not involve Stenson's duct, the orifice of which can
in the mouth and easily avoided. These lateral incisions, besides
half a new lip, will also enable the surgeon to look for, and re
present, the buccinator group of lymphatic glands. The free end
new lip thus formed can be sutured across the middle line, and fi
cheeks can be sutured to the alæ nasi. These steps are rendered
thoroughly and extensively undercutting the attachments of the c
bone. It will be necessary to remove the submaxillary and the
maxillary lymphatic glands of both sides; this can be done by
suitable incisions in the submaxillary and anterior triangle reg
both sides (see Fig. 137).

*The necessary steps to excise a small cancer growing in the c
one side of the upper lip* are as follows (see Fig. 138) :—

An internal incision, which begins at least three-quarters of
from the edge of the ulcer, is made vertically upwards, as far as t
mella or nostrils as the case may be, through all structures dow
bone. An external incision is carried through all structures dow
bone obliquely upwards and outwards from a point at least three-
of an inch from the edge of the ulcer towards the external canthu
eye, but ends when it reaches the level of the groove which ma
junction of the ala with the side of the nose. This incision i
obliquely outwards to include the zygomaticus minor muscle
zygomaticum). The third incision joins the two previous ones by
transversely inwards through all structures down to the bone, and
from the end of the second incision to the junction of the ala
side of the nose. This must be made to include the attachments
of the levator labii superioris (caput infraorbitale), the levato
oris (caninus), and the zygomaticus minor (caput zygomaticum
cles; it cuts across the continuity of the fibres of the levator lab
rioris alæque nasi (caput angulare). It will also include the ly
glands which may be found in the naso-genial groove. The inc
then continued downwards in the groove formed by the junctio
ala with the cheek, and ends by cutting across the junction of th
lip with the nose, so as to include half the base of the columella
septal origin of the orbicularis oris. The incisions include the
portion in Fig. 138. The remaining half of the lip must be t
source of supply for the tissues which are to cover the gap thus m
its attachments to bone and to the base of the nose must be divid
to render it more adaptable, an elliptical piece of skin must be

und the ala of the normal side (see Fig. 138). These proceed- enable the remaining half of the lip to be drawn across the gap, nterfering with the appearance of the nose. The upper lip can d, and the buccinator glands can be sought for, and (if present) by making an incision, which includes all the structures of the l which starts from the external incision at the level of the junc- ne ala with the lip, and ends, after running in a downward and direction, over the centre of the buccinator muscle (see Fig. his flap is then stitched to the opposite lip and, in order to pre- ue puckering at the angle of the mouth, it may be necessary to incision into the cheek which is directed downwards and out- om the angle of the mouth, parallel with the last incision (see). In order to cover the interval between the nose and the cheek, ncision, parallel with the two just described, must be directed ls in the cheek from the top angle of the gap (see Fig. 138); the f the cheek thus separated must then be brought inwards and o the ala. These steps can be performed without undue tension sively undercutting the attach- the cheek to the bone.

lymphatic glands which can e found are the submaxillary nto which lymphatics from the p drain, but before reaching lymph-stream from the upper pass through the buccinator supramaxillary groups.

buccinator group has been th in describing the necessary the formation of the new lip 93). The submaxillary group ed through an incision made e inferior border of the lower n below the symphysis to the border of the sterno-mastoid. pramaxillary glands can be by dissecting up the upper edge of this incision, and exposing the horizontal ramus of the jaw in front of the attachment of eter. In cancers on one side of the upper lip the supramaxillary maxillary glands of the same side must be removed. If the f the normal side be enlarged they also must be excised.

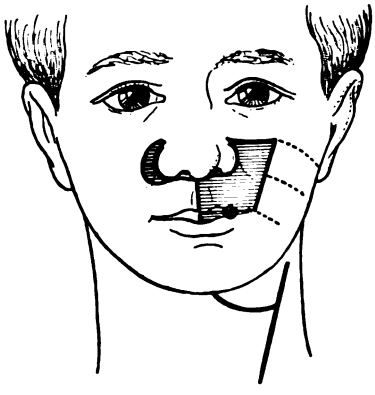


FIG. 138. INCISIONS FOR THE REMOVAL OF A SMALL CANCER IN THE CENTRE OF ONE SIDE OF THE UPPER LIP.

moving large cancers from the lips a combination and modifica- these incisions and flaps can be easily planned. For instance,

when a cancer occupies the whole of the lower lip and the angles
mouth, it means that the operation which has been described fo
removal of cancer at the angle of the mouth is necessary, only it
be done on both sides, and one broad flap must be raised from the
to take the place of the cancerous lower lip. This flap requires
support than is given it by the stitches which connect it with the
of the cheeks, and the writer has successfully kept this large flap
by four tin-tacks hammered into the lower jaw. The operations
large cancers of the lower lip and angle of the mouth which do n
volve the inferior maxilla are more favourable from the point of vi
cure than are those which occupy the upper lip, as the latter soon i
the nose and superior maxilla extensively; in the case of the low
the disease remains so localized that even when the lower jaw is a
its removal undisturbed within the areas of incision has resulted i
in two of the writer's cases, that is to say, if six years and ten
respectively can be justly accounted cures.

OPERATIONS UPON THE FACE

Cancers at the inner or outer canthus of the eye must be remov
the lines described for excision of cancer at the angle of the mou
fact the distribution of cancer of the lower lid and angles of the
very much resembles the spread of cancer in the lips. For insta
cancer beginning in the lower lid near the free margin, or at the in
or external canthus, will occupy the area around the eyes and will i
the upper lid before spreading to other parts; for this reason the
advises diverging lines as in the mouth operations, if the edge of
must be removed. When the cancer occurs elsewhere on the
it is essential to keep the incisions at least three-quarters of an inch
from the periphery of the growth, and to perform plastic ope
according to the circumstances of each case.

When cancer appears in the forehead or sides of the face it is
plan to first excise the disease widely, that is to say, never to al
incision to approach nearer the disease than a point three-quarters
inch from its edge. All the incisions should go down to bone a
the soft structures must be removed. After the cancer has been
away it is time to settle the best plan for covering the raw surfac
made.

The operator can get a good idea from where he can form h
or in which direction he can sew up the wound, by picking up th
of the normal side, in various directions, and by so doing he can e

most available skin for his purpose, on the diseased side.
Operations, Vol. I.)

rd to the lymphatic glands which ought to be removed
ccurs in the regions of the forehead and eyelids, it may be
e lymphatic glands in the parotid region are the most
d. According to Sappey and Küttner the lymphatic ves-
n near the inner canthus of the eye drain directly into the
egion.

SECTION III

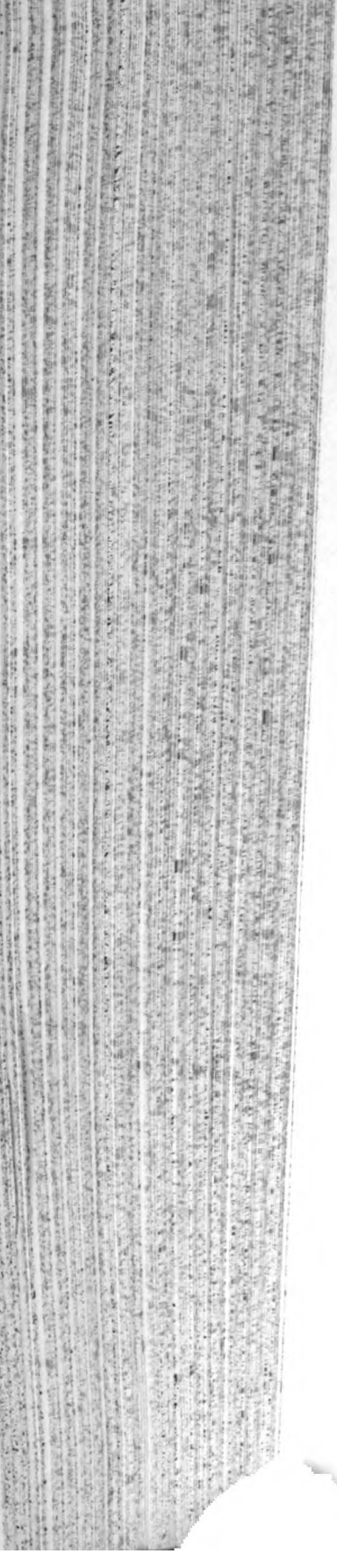
OPERATIONS UPON THE LIPS FACE AND JAWS

PART III

OPERATIONS UPON THE JAWS

BY

C. H. FAGGE, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.),
Major, R.A.M.C.(T.)
Assistant Surgeon to Guy's Hospital



CHAPTER IV

PERATIONS UPON THE UPPER JAW

PLETE REMOVAL OF THE UPPER JAW

ns. (i) **Malignant new growths of the maxilla.** This most commonly required when the bone is involved by a wth, either primarily or secondarily; that is, one which case arises from the periosteum, whereas in the latter it in the superjacent mucous membrane. These growths

Periosteal sarcoma of the maxilla is usually of the round ed type and of rapid growth.

. The upper jaw may be involved by a squamous-celled iginating in the mucous membrane covering the hard similar growth commencing in the gum, though here it is met with than in the lower jaw.

ariety of epithelial malignant tumour involving the maxilla celled carcinoma, arising probably from the glands of the membrane (Bolam, *Newcastle-upon-Tyne Journal of Path.* 98, v, p. 65): owing to its destructive nature it has been epithelioma (*épithélioma térébrant* of Réclus).

er of the naso-pharynx. Excision of the upper jaw may be the removal of malignant tumours of the naso-pharynx. eoplastic resection of the upper jaw, p. 314.)

ntomes and necrosis of the maxilla. Complete removal of for either of these conditions is rarely called for.

o attempt has been made in this article to detail the points, of which determines the presence of a malignant growth aw, it cannot be superfluous to insist that even in the hands xperienced surgeon considerable difficulty may be met with iagnosing the presence of a malignant growth and in ex- ssibility that the antrum is distended with pus and granu-

es where the slightest doubt exists as to the nature of the an operation for removal of the maxilla is commenced y puncture should be made through the canine fossa into

the antrum with a trocar, and should this not supply sufficient in
tion to determine the point, the opening should be enlarged
gouge. When the material evacuated cannot be definitely state
either inflammatory tissue or growth, it must be subjected to a
scopical examination before the patient is exposed to the risk of
bly unnecessary removal of the maxilla. Cases scattered throug
cal literature impress upon us the importance of this prel
investigation, and show that mistakes have been made by surg
repute even where the diagnosis has been apparently of no diffic

The selection of cases favourable for operation. undertaking so severe an operation it is necessary not only to into the history, but also to determine, by the presence or abs proptosis and by the freedom or limitation of movement of the whether the orbital plate has become involved or not; to exan palatal surface of the maxilla, and by anterior and posterior rhi (or if the latter be impossible, by examination of the post-nas with the finger) to determine as far as possible whether the gro extended beyond the limits of the maxilla. Palpation of the above and below the zygoma will detect or exclude gross involve the zygomatic and temporal fossæ, but it is well to remember th exposed in the course of an operation, such growths are often f extend further upwards or backwards than had been previously su

Malignant tumours, commencing at the back of the jaw o spheno-maxillary or pterygo-maxillary fossa, and secondarily a the maxilla, usually give rise to protrusion of the eyeball at an ea and are clearly unsuitable for surgical interference. Again, tum rapid growth intensify the gravity of the prognosis, and as the m infiltration in these cases readily extends upwards into the et cells, the walls of which are so thin as to offer but feeble resistan extension, displacement outwards of the eyeball or swelling in th of the inner canthus, both suggestive of this complication, mus garded as of grave significance. However, it is well to bear in Cheyne and Burghard (*Manual of Surgical Treatment*, Part V, point out, that, provided the tumour is of slow growth, the fact eyeball is thus displaced does not render the case inoperable, the growth may fill up the ethmoidal cells without involving th and can therefore be eradicated without grave risk of recurrenc

Similar considerations apply to cases in which a mass of g found on posterior rhinoscopy to fungate into the naso-pharynx

Involvement of the skin of the face, while not in itself an contra-indication to operation, necessitates free removal of the s over the jaw if recurrence is to be avoided, and so usually r

e deformity, which further plastic operations will probably
y incompletely. Consideration of each individual case will
nine whether, under these circumstances, operation is justi-
before negativing operation the surgeon must make certain
t tissues are actually involved and not merely thinned and
er the growth while still movable upon it.

ry deposits in the submaxillary or cervical glands, resulting
nlargement that these are recognizable on digital examination
tion, may generally be taken as contra-indicating operation.

es which are most suitable for operation are those of some
ration, arising either in the antrum or involving only one
he bone, and which, as far as physical examination can deter-
not extended into the adjacent cavities.

the immediate and remote risks dealt with below, which are
from such an operation usually undertaken in a patient
dle life, complete removal of the upper jaw possesses several
es.

e the chief is the tendency of the eyeball to drop after losing
of the orbital plate of the maxilla. This may be so marked
ected eye may look downwards, and may not only become
e patient, but may cause considerable annoyance owing to the
ch results. When it is clear that the growth does not involve
plate, this may be left, the operation being modified in the
ailed below (see p. 310). When, however, removal of the
is essential in order to avoid the risk of recurrence, which is
nsideration in all these operations, the ingenious plastic opera-
ig (see p. 309) may be employed. At the same time it is true
ed the internal and external tarsal ligament—by which the
igament of Lockwood is supported—are not interfered with
removal of the nasal and malar processes respectively, sink-
the eyeball is unlikely to be a serious complication.

d disadvantage is that by removal of the hard palate the
t in free communication with the nasal cavity. This may be
a small proportion of cases by leaving the palatal process
r jaw when this is clearly not involved by the growth. In
mber of cases even when it is deemed advisable to remove
this situation, the muco-periosteum covering the hard palate
eled off, so that the above-mentioned disadvantage is

ses undoubtedly occur for which these modifications of the
eration may be adopted, it is essential that the first considera-
operator's mind must always be as free a removal of the

malignant tumour as possible, which must never be departed fr
iota for mere cosmetic considerations.

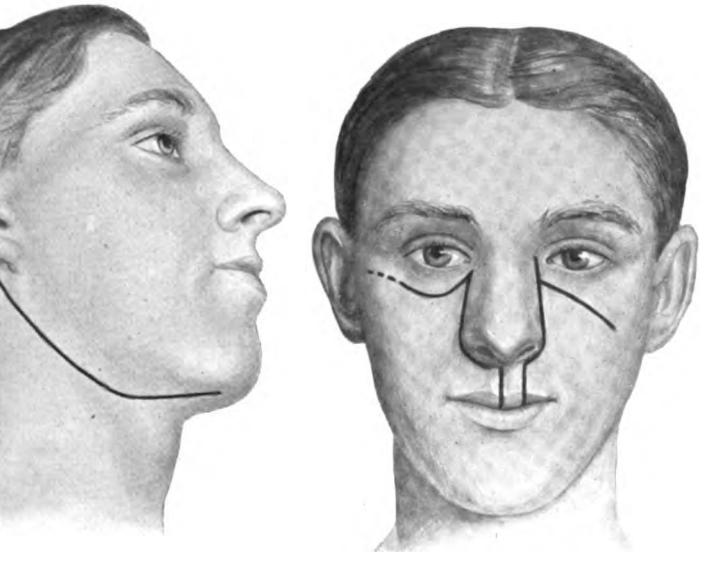
Operation. As before any other operation within the m
carious teeth must be removed and an antiseptic mouth-wash,
hydrogen peroxide or chinosol (1 in 500), must be employed fo
days in order to diminish the risk of oral sepsis as far as possib

The patient is either placed in the supine position, with th
unsupported by pillows, turned towards the affected side, or ac
will be gained by the adoption of the Trendelenburg position. O
are widely divided as to the advisability of performing a pre
laryngotomy. Jacobson (*Operations of Surgery*, fifth edition,
who is in favour of this, points out that it is a much less sever
tion than tracheotomy, and considers that the success of laryn
is due to its being performed through a fixed part of the air-
and to the fact that the tube is removed as soon as the oper
finished. The writer's experience confirms the value of pre
laryngotomy in eliminating the risk of inhalation pneumonia.
as the anæsthetic throughout the operation can be given from a
apparatus through a rubber tube introduced into the laryngotor
this procedure gives considerable freedom to the operator, w
carry out the operation without any fear of interfering with th
thetist. When preliminary laryngotomy is employed a large s
introduced into the pharynx, so as to block the upper laryngea
completely, and this in itself considerably lessens the danger
monary complications resulting from the inhalation of blood
the operation. When laryngotomy is not employed, these risks
partially, but not so completely, overcome by plugging the naso-
with a sponge. This, if large enough and firmly packed in
will not tend to be dislodged, so as to cause any danger b
drawn into the air-passages. Some operators, however, adv
the sponge introduced into the naso-pharynx should be fast
a long piece of silk or wire, the other end of which is
externally.

Kocher (*Operative Surgery*, English translation, p. 102) reco
a preliminary ligature of the external carotid, pointing out
high mortality, even in the present day, of excision of the uppe
largely due to hæmorrhage in patients whose vitality is insufficie
aspiration pneumonia, and that both of these dangers are dimin
this preliminary procedure. Jacobson (*loc. supra cit.*) quotes D
Bryant of New York as being in favour of it, especially in
exhausted by hæmorrhage and cachexia, and himself recomme
it should be a routine part of the operation. The time taken up

s more than repaid by relieving the assistants of much
l by saving time in securing vessels; further, it enables
to see exactly what he is doing at every stage of the
that he incurs less risk of leaving fragments of growth

ly desirable to remove the glands, both at the angle of the
deeply situated in front of the sterno-mastoid on the same
s Kocher advises a curved incision running from the apex
id process downwards behind and below the angle of



NCISION FOR EXPOSING OF THE SUBMAXILLARY RVICAL TRIANGLES.

FIG. 140. INCISIONS FOR REMOVAL OF THE UPPER JAW. Right side, Fergusson's; left side, Kocher's incision.

e middle of the hyoid bone (see Fig. 139). He points
e course of removal of the submaxillary and deep cervical
there is an excellent opportunity for ligature of the ex-
This is carried out before the operation of laryngotomy,
ates some risk of infection of the hands and instruments.
moval of the upper jaw itself the classical incision of Fer-
t suitable in the majority of cases (see Fig. 140).
g this out the upper lip is divided in the middle line as far
la nasi. The incision is then carried downwards below the
assing in the sulcus between the ala of the nose and the

cheek is carried upwards to a point just below the inner cantl as to avoid opening the lachrymal sac. It is then continued ou along the infra-orbital ridge to a point below the outer canthus. incision is carried down to the bone throughout its extent, and t formed by raising the soft parts from the surface of the maxilla is outwards. While this is being done free hæmorrhage from the s coronary (labial), lateral nasal, and angular branches of the fac ensue unless preliminary ligature of the external carotid has been taken. This hæmorrhage may be controlled by digital compressior facial trunk as it crosses the lower jaw, and by grasping the two of the upper lip between the fingers as it is divided. In turning th flap outwards care must be taken both to avoid the growth, should fungated through the facial aspect of the maxilla, and yet to cut t flap thick enough to avoid any risk of subsequent sloughing. The membrane is divided horizontally along its reflection from the up on to the alveolus to a point behind the last molar tooth, and t formed by the soft tissues is reflected backwards as far as the a border of the masseter.

Attention must now be paid to all bleeding points, which are s by Spencer Wells's forceps. The orbital periosteum, when not in is now raised throughout the whole extent of the floor of the orbit, doing this the origin of the inferior oblique will be detached and upwards with the other orbital contents. On the inner side the i should have passed into the nose by dividing the fibrous tissu mucous membrane along the concave margin of the bony anterio orifice. The nasal (frontal) process of the superior maxilla and t jacent portion of the nasal bone should now be divided with bone-f so placed that the cut will extend backwards towards the inferior of the sphenoidal (superior orbital) fissure (see Fig. 141, A). Th tion of the maxilla with the malar bone must now be severed, and best carried out by free separation of the soft parts to expose the a extremity of the spheno-maxillary fissure, through which a Gigl may be passed from above downwards, and the bone divided from forwards. The line of this bone incision must necessarily vary acc to the extent of the disease, but when there is no reason to fear t growth has extended into the temporal and zygomatic fossa, it lie only just outside the malo-maxillary suture, and should avo anterior fibres of origin of the masseter muscle, as when the prominence can be left behind less deformity will result from sinl of the normal prominence of the cheek (see Fig. 141, B).

The mouth is now opened in order to free the palatal attac of the upper jaw, and if necessary the central incisor is drawn. Th

d in the middle line from before backwards by an incision
uco-periosteum of the gum over the alveolus, and extend-
down to the bone to the posterior margin of the hard
this point it is continued transversely outwards to the
he upper jaw. When the soft palate has been detached
the hard palate is sawn through along a line corresponding
of the mucous membrane in an antero-posterior direction
roduced through the nose (see Fig. 141, c). Where it is
ve the muco-periosteum of the hard palate the division of
face may be more easily carried out with a Gigli's saw or
Free sepa-
ut surfaces
bone inci-
w be com-
orceps, and
e has been
ened it may
lion forceps
withdrawn,
inserted at
outer limits
ng used as a
his process.
jaw be still
oint it will
wing to its
hind to the
ocess: this
l by passing

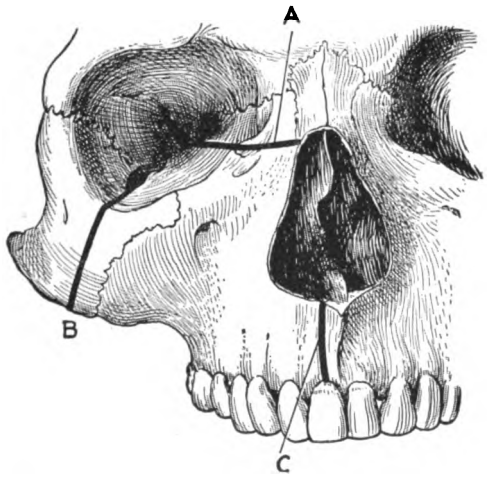


FIG. 141. LINES OF BONE SECTION IN REMOVAL OF THE UPPER JAW.

ps transversely inwards from behind the tuberosity of the
naxilla is removed, all connecting soft parts, especially the
lary nerve, are cleanly divided with scissors.
nusual, when the bone has been considerably softened by
h new growth, to find that it can only be extracted piece-
en this is done, careful inspection, aided if necessary by
will alone ensure that all doubtful tissues are freely

e of the operation free hæmorrhage is frequently met with,
mporarily controlled by packing the cavity with a large
ge, by which means capillary hæmorrhage is arrested.
ithdrawn all the bleeding vessels are secured with Spencer
s and ligatured with catgut.

When all severe bleeding has been controlled it is well to ins whole cavity carefully in order to ensure that no growth remains and in doing this comparison of the mass just removed with th remaining will direct the operator's attention to the points at wh is most likely, for if the upper jaw has been broken in remova portion of the capsule of the growth is adherent at any point, it ably there that remains of the growth have been left behind. Al lar rough fragments of bone must be carefully removed wit cutting forceps: such trimming of the bony cavity will probably for at the upper and back part of the wound, where fracture maxilla rather than separation of the whole bone from the pa ethmoid is likely to take place.

When it is quite certain that the whole growth has been r and when all hæmorrhage has been arrested, the cavity is firml with one long strip of iodoform gauze wrung out in weak carbol Before this is done Cheyne and Burghard recommend that the face should be mopped over with a solution of zinc chloride (4 to the ounce), and Jacobson (*loc. supra cit.*) is in favour of usir ilar application, or Whitehead's varnish (containing benzoin, solution of iodoform, and turpentine), but when possible he is i of omitting to plug the cavity. Other surgeons soak the gauze with an emulsion of sulphur in glycerine.

In the writer's experience careful search for detached par growth, aided if necessary by an electric forehead-light, and th removal with scissors or bone-forceps, is better than to trus action of any caustic applications, and in his experience th quent bleeding has been so slight as not to call for the use styptics.

The opening between the nose and the mouth is now narr much as possible by sewing the detached half of the soft pala cut margin of the mucous membrane of the cheek and to the ot of the palate.

The edges of the skin wound may now be brought togeth superficial catgut sutures. Jacobson advises that especial care s paid to the insertion of these sutures at two points: one the ang flap near the inner canthus, where, if sloughing of the skin tak ectropion will follow; the other at the lower margin, where care taken that the red line of the upper lip is accurately sutured. it is important to carefully suture the mucous aspect of the lip, to avoid the possibility of the lip becoming adherent to the cut ed alveolus, when imperfect movement will result.

Modifications of and additions to the above operation. N

ns of Fergusson's incision have been employed, of which the are the most important.

recommends the adoption of *Nélaton's incision* in cases e access to the regions of the orbit and malar bone is not This is similar to Fergusson's, but stops short at the inner the orbit. When, however, more room is required above, rries the incision downwards and outwards at a lower level sson's incision, along the lower edge of the orbicularis palpe- culi), but above the origins of the levator labii superioris raorbitale) and zygomatic muscles. This is so placed that it en the upper and lower areas of the distribution of the facial Fig. 140).

employs, for extensive growths, a modified *Dieffenbach's* see Fig. 142, A), which is carried perpendicularly through lip, and then upwards along the nose, just external to the e. The inner canthus is then divided, and the incision runs nferior conjunctival fornix to the outer canthus, beyond which ued horizontally as far as may be necessary. In such opera- er recommends that the eyeball should be removed, for by this access is obtained for the removal of growth in the region of d, where he says recurrence is specially apt to occur after for tumours in advanced stages. As it is impossible to be e the commencement of such an operation to what limits the ay have extended, it is always well to obtain the patient's removal of the eyeball before operating. This will, however, led for when the soft tissues of the orbit are actually involved, wth has fungated to such an extent into the ethmoidal cells ccess is impossible while the eye remains in position.

cations of the original incision will be required when the s fungated, and is involving the soft parts covering the facial he maxilla. In this case the incision must be planned so as to nvaded tissues a wide berth, the only point to be considered the growth shall be freely got rid of. After this a plastic on the face will be necessary, skin flaps being obtained from frontal or cervical regions.

s operation. As is pointed out above, removal of the orbital ne maxilla may result in serious disfigurement from falling s of the eyeball and from associated œdema of the lower lid. s introduced a plastic operation to prevent this deformity , *v. Bergmann's Surgery*, vol. i, p. 731). He tries to prevent downwards of the eyeball and sinking down of the lower lid ting the eyeball with a flap taken from the temporal muscle.

From the insertion of the temporal muscle to the lower jaw he
strip of muscle of half a finger's breadth attached to a piece of
terior border of the coronoid process of the inferior maxilla, v
chisels away as far as the horizontal ramus. He then carries th
versely inwards below the eyeball, where it is attached to the re
the frontal process of the maxilla, so as to support the eyeball.

In order to overcome the disadvantage of the free commu
between the nasal cavity and the mouth, Bardenheuer (Schlatter,
mann's Surgery, vol. i, p. 7
the nasal septum to fill up th
in the hard palate. The se
detached from the anterior
of the frame of the nose
base of the skull, and is
outwards upon its inferior
ments until it assumes a ho
position. It is then suture
soft palate behind and to t
of the mucous membrane
buccal flap externally.

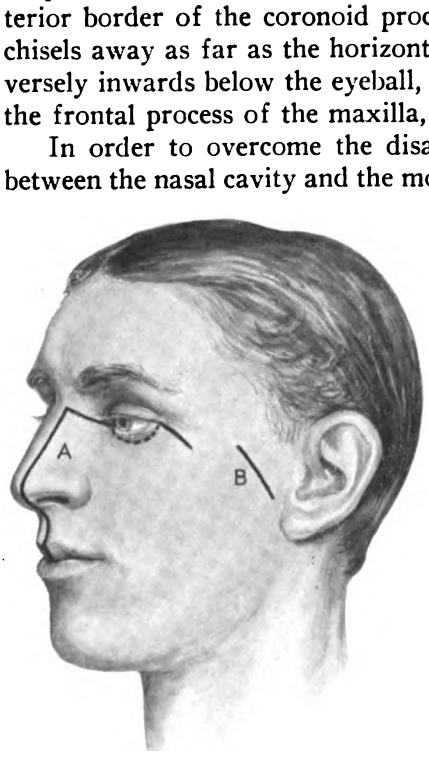


FIG. 142. INCISIONS FOR OPERATIONS UPON THE JAWS. A, Dieffenbach's incision for removal of the upper jaw; B, Incision for operations upon the inter-articular fibro-cartilage, or for excision of the condyle of the mandible.

This deformity may be o
when the parts are soundly
by the fitting of an obturato
ing a denture.

It has been pointed ou
(see p. 302) that, when the
is limited to the upper
the jaw, the palate may
entire, or when it is co
unsafe to leave the bony
the muco-periosteum of t
of the mouth may be save
first-named modification
rarely safe, but when possible it may be carried out, after r
of the facial flap and free exposure of the maxilla, by sawing hor
outwards with a fine saw introduced into the nose immediatel
the level of the hard palate. This procedure will be rarely avai
it interferes considerably with later inspection of the highest and
part of the cavity, and it must be borne in mind that it is here t
most difficult to deal radically with the growth. When the
intends to save the muco-periosteal covering of the palate, this
divided along the mid-line and raised outwards as far as or be

after it has been cut through transversely behind at its junction soft palate: or, as advised by Cheyne and Burghard (*loc. supra* muco-periosteum may be reflected inwards after an incision has ade on the side affected within the alveolus, extending from the in front to the hamular process behind; in either case the soft hould be detached behind. After the jaw has been removed, the flap is replaced and sutured to the cut margins of the buccal membrane and to the soft palate behind with interrupted catgut

ilarly, when the lower part of the upper jaw is alone involved, and ts have been exposed by Nélaton's incision described above, the plate of the maxilla may be left intact. When this is possible it always be done, as it obviates some of the gravest objections to of the upper jaw. In order to carry this out, the maxilla is horizontally below the infra-orbital ridge, partly with a saw, vith a chisel and mallet,[1] the lower part of the maxilla being re- by the method previously described.

er-treatment. The patient is returned to bed, and is well up on a bed-rest or pillows, in order to hamper the movements hest as little as possible. Feeding for the first few days is to be out with nutrient enemata, but water *ad libitum* should be given a drinking-cup, in order to quench thirst and to wash away un- discharge. The mouth should be frequently mopped out or with sanitas, and the patient allowed to gargle with potassium ganate or resorcin lotion. After two or three days fluids may be the mouth through a long india-rubber tube attached to a feed- The gauze packing is removed after twenty-four hours, and the lightly repacked. This is repeated until granulation commences. ng to the frequency of pulmonary complications it is well to e patient to sit up in bed on the third or fourth day, and to leave for an arm-chair or wheeled couch within a week of the operation.

ngers and difficulties. The chief risks of this operation are hæmorrhage, which is best overcome prophylactically either by ary ligature of the external carotid or by compression of the likely to be divided, as mentioned in the account of the operation. g is also dangerous from the possibility of blood entering the resulting in coughing and dyspnœa, and inspiration of blood- saliva which is likely to give rise to a dangerous or fatal broncho- nia. These complications are best avoided by preliminary

[1] Gigli's saw may be passed from without inwards through the pterygo- (pterygo-palatine) fissure into the nose (Schlatter), when the maxilla cut through at whatever level is desired.

laryngotomy and plugging of the pharynx, though Cheyne and Bu state that they have not met with a case in which they have t this necessary.

Shock. In the aged, those suffering from advanced arterial de tion or defective nutrition due to inability to take food readily the operation, or in those suffering from malignant cachexia, likely to be marked. In Eve's opinion (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1907 p. 1525) the preliminary operations of laryngotomy and ligature external carotid tend to decrease shock and do not prolong the op as much time is saved in sponging and securing vessels. Rapid op great care in limiting the amount of hæmorrhage, and hypo injections of adrenalin are the most important antidotes f condition.

Recurrent or secondary hæmorrhage may be dealt with by th cation of an ice-bag to the face or by douching with cold wate gauze packing may be soaked in a solution of adrenalin chlorid 1,000). Should these fail, ligature of the external carotid called for if this has not been done as a preliminary measure.

Inhalation pneumonia is a considerable risk during the first fe when the patient's power of expectorating discharges is reduced. tion of the wound, followed by cellulitis or erysipelas, is likely t in feeble patients, the subjects of advanced disease, where the has already undergone necrosis, and must be dealt with as in oth of the body by free incisions, and fomentations of boric or m perchloride lotion, frequently applied.

Results. Krönlein (*Arch. f. Klin. Chir.*, 1901, vol. lxiv, states that in 1872 Dangenbeck, owing to the great diversity of op to the immediate danger in this operation, expressed the wish tha tics might be collected as to the mortality, but the repeated attempt have been made to do so by the *Deutsche Gesellschaft für Chirurg* not met with much success. Langenbeck considered that the r undoubtedly very great, especially in individuals of sixty and u whilst Volkmann believed that death very rarely resulted from r of the upper jaw. Baum puts the mortality at a little over 10%.

In 1847 Dieffenbach performed more or less extensive re in 32 cases, none of these patients dying from the operation immediate results; it is not, however, stated how many we resections. Before the antiseptic period (1844 to 1870), out of 1 resections found in the literature there were 37 deaths, that is t mortality of 32.1%, whilst during the antiseptic period (1871 t out of 158 cases there were 33 deaths, or 21.5%. Krönlein po that this decrease of mortality is by no means general. For e

ses reported by Küster and König the mortality was 29.1%, those reported by Heyfelder, Reid, Esmarch, and Baum there leaths out of 55 operations, or 16.3%. König (1898) states mmediate mortality is especially high after total resection for growths, and puts it at about 30%. Butlin (*Operative Surgery ant Disease,* p. 136) is of opinion that the mortality after re- the upper jaw is still very high. Eve (*loc. supra cit.*) records y of 16.6% in 12 operations undertaken in the last six years. e antiseptic period pyæmia, septicæmia, erysipelas, and menin- the most common causes of death, whilst during the last dec- rders of the air-passages predominate, death resulting from nchitis, broncho-pneumonia, and suffocation, owing to flooding -passages with blood during the operation.

te results of these operations are even more disappointing. (*loc. supra cit.*) records recurrence in an average of 3.9 months cases where the whole maxilla was involved. Küster obtained ent good results: in the statistics of the Erlangen Clinic there ermanent cure in 17 cases, in those of the Greifswald Clinic 17 cases; Estlander had 10 recurrences in 12 cases. Martens total resections in the Göttingen Clinic, resulting in 23 deaths rmanent cures, the disease recurring in all the other cases. In of complete resection for carcinoma of the upper jaw re- Stein in von Bergmann's Clinic (1890 to 1900) there was in every instance in an average of 3.6 months, death usually n about thirteen months. In 11 cases in which total resection rmed for sarcoma death occurred in 3, recurrence in 2, whilst d well up to the time when the cases were reported. Stein cases in which total resection was carried out in the Berlin th 12.6% cures. In the cases of partial resection reported, cure for at least three years occurred in 50%.

ARTIAL REMOVAL OF THE UPPER JAW

ations. (i) For the removal of malignant growth not in- e whole maxilla: modifications of Fergusson's operation re- such cases have been described above.

or epulis. This is a term applied clinically to tumours arising gum close to the teeth and includes growths of widely varying While all arise in the alveolar periosteum or in the perio- mbrane, they may be benign fibrous growths or fibro-sarcomata ut definite malignancy. Eve (*loc. supra cit.*) states that among emoved at the London Hospital recurrence took place in 18.2%.

Operation. Under a general anæsthetic a tooth on eit of the epulis is extracted. A vertical cut is then made upward to the sockets of the extracted teeth, through the alveolus Adams's saw. The muco-periosteum of the gum is divide the limits of that part of the alveolus isolated by the saw-cuts, portion of the alveolus is detached with a Gigli's saw, chisel an or bone-forceps. Bleeding is now controlled by pressure, and gauze dressing is packed into the gap. The mouth is frequent out with a non-irritating antiseptic lotion. The mucous mem allowed to re-form so as to cover the gap in the alveolus, whi same time undergoes considerable atrophy. After a period of si the resulting deformity may be reduced to a minimum by the of a well-fitting plate carrying teeth to replace those remove operation.

OSTEOPLASTIC RESECTION OF THE UPPER

Indications. (i) For the removal of naso-pharyngea growths, such as fibromata. This will rarely be called for, as usually be removed without danger of recurrence by a snare in through the nose, or by Moure's operation (see Vol. IV).

(ii) For the removal of malignant growths growing from th the skull and projecting into the naso-pharynx, or extending int the spheno-maxillary fossa or nose. Here osteoplastic resectio jaw is only called for when it is thought that sufficient space be obtained by Gussenbauer's method (Schlatter, *v. Be Operative Surgery,* vol. i, p. 733). In this operation the muco-p covering of the hard palate is divided in the median line, and with an elevator to either side as far as the alveolar process palatal processes of the maxillæ and palate bones are then and the mucosa covering the floor of the nose and the lower pa septum is removed. After extirpation of the tumour the tw flaps of the palatal muco-periosteum are sutured.

The advantages of the above operation, which is very simila described by Nélaton, and to which his name is given by some, a that no deformity of the face from scarring results, and secon it is followed by less hæmorrhage than results from Langenbeck tion. But its great disadvantage is that, owing to the limit available, considerable risk is run of leaving behind portions growth, so that recurrence is more probable than after the n tensive operation of Langenbeck.

Dr. Robin Massé collected 26 cases dealt with by Nélaton's o

1 13 were successful. Walsham (*Med. Soc. Trans.*, vol. xix, 394) found that by this means he had succeeded on several s in obtaining adequate space for the removal of naso-pharyngeal He advocated the operation because, though such growths may nto the nose and even cause the eyeball to protrude, only rarely invade the upper jaw or turbinates, and consequently he thinks rule osteoplastic resection of the jaw is unnecessary. Further, inion osteoplastic resection entails the following disadvantages: rring of the face, interfer- h the lachrymal duct, and es œdema of the lower eye- ch is prone to persist. He t reflection of the maxilla is with considerable shock n severe hæmorrhage.

FIG. 143. INCISION FOR LANGENBECK'S OSTEOPLASTIC RESECTION OF THE UPPER JAW.

ration. *Langenbeck's me-* skin incision is made from r canthus of the eye along -orbital ridge, extending to dle of the zygomatic arch: s point it curves downwards, s inwards to the lower bor- ne ala of the nose (see Fig. The soft tissues are not re- out are turned inwards, to- ith the bone, at a later stage peration. After detaching n of the masseter from the order of the zygoma, an is passed through the pterygo-maxillary (pterygo-palatine) nto the spheno-maxillary (pterygo-palatine) fossa, and guided n Adams's or a keyhole saw is introduced towards the naso- where its extremity is caught by the index-finger of the left ich has been inserted into the naso-pharynx through the mouth. er jaw is now sawn through horizontally above the level of the ate, as far as the anterior nasal orifice, thus freeing it from ee Fig. 144, C). It is detached externally by dividing the zygoma w or bone-forceps and by freeing the malar bone from the soft e Fig. 144, A). The superior attachments of the jaw are severed ng the frontal process of the malar bone as far as the spheno- fissure, and by cutting through the orbital plate of the maxilla e-forceps, carefully avoiding the lachrymal sac (see Fig. 144,

B and D). By means of an elevator inserted under the malar portion of the upper jaw outlined by the saw-cuts can now b inwards towards the median line, in doing which the deep co of the maxilla with other bones will be fractured. The tumour be lifted from the naso-pharynx or adjacent fossæ, and it detached from the base of the skull by means of a knife, sci thermo-cautery. Fi jaw is replaced and in position by skin

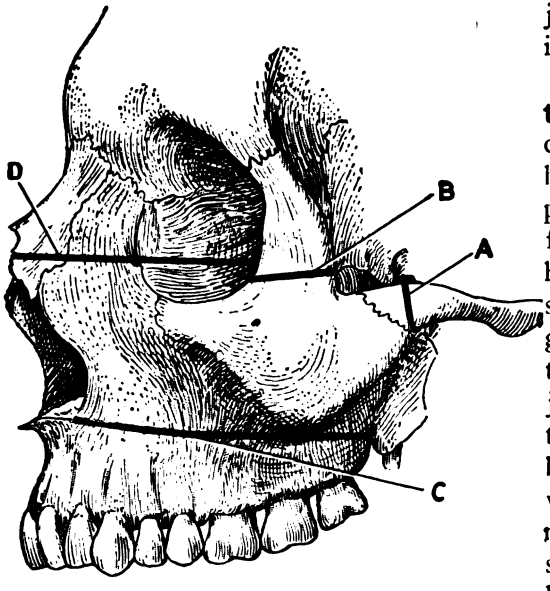


FIG. 144. LINES OF BONE SECTION IN LANGENBECK'S OSTEOPLASTIC RESECTION OF THE UPPER JAW.

Dangers and ties. Unless the connexions of the been thinned by t pharyngeal growth, fossæ at the back o have been enlarged same cause, there great difficulty in s this portion of th jaw, which has so ticulations with th bones of the face; when this has been method will often pr sufficient access if th be of large size. force again is likely the part of the uppe moved, or to break adjacent delicate b that necrosis may result. If the portion of bone to be resected on one side, but remains attached and fixed at another, severe rhage, which cannot be located so as to be controlled, is likely The risk of any blood entering the air-passages should be elim the same way as was recommended in removal of the upper p. 304), namely, by conducting the operation in the Trendelenb tion and by performing a preliminary laryngotomy, after the is firmly packed with sponges. Lastly, difficulty is often met replacing the bone accurately, and fitting it in place.

Owing to the above serious dangers and disadvantages it is surprising that many surgeons advocate, for cases requiring mo sive operation than can be ensured by the intranasal or by

the upper jaw should be partly or completely removed.
of partial or complete removal of the jaw for naso-pharyn-
is the fact that much freer access to the roof of the naso-
n which growths usually spring, is obtained by an operation
sson's.

tion of osteoplastic resection of the jaw entails a similar
ar upon the face, and preliminary laryngotomy is, as
bove, equally desirable here as it is as a preliminary to
val of the jaw. Cheyne and Burghard (*Manual of Surgi-*
, Part V, p. 230), in advocating partial removal of the jaw
steoplastic resection, point out that it is unnecessary to
rbital plate, and that the periosteum of the hard palate
d. For details of this operation the reader is referred to

CHAPTER V

OPERATIONS UPON THE LOWER JAW AND TH TEMPORO-MAXILLARY JOINT

OPERATIONS UPON THE TEMPORO-MAXILLARY

OPERATION FOR SUBLUXATION OF THE INTERARTICU FIBRO-CARTILAGE

Indications. When local medication has failed to reli symptoms operation may be undertaken as follows:—

Operation. An incision one inch long is made obliquel before backwards and downwards over the joint, and is carried the capsule (see Fig. 142, B). In making this incision the chie tures to be avoided are branches of the facial nerve. This may by planning the incision so that it shall run forwards and upw the same direction as the temporal branches, and by taking care filaments exposed are carefully drawn aside. The superficial t artery and vein, with the auriculo-temporal nerve, lie more between the condyle and the tragus, and should be in no da injury.

Attention must now be paid to bleeding points, and the lobules of the parotid gland, which often overlap the condyle, turned backwards; the masseter is defined in front of the joint, the latter may be freely exposed. When this has been done the is opened by a vertical incision, and the fibro-cartilage is seiz forceps and dragged back into its natural position, where it is by stout catgut sutures at the temporo-maxillary capsule as possible to its attachment to the margins of the glenoid fossa. the interarticular fibro-cartilage cannot be replaced by this met when it is fenestrated or torn considerably, relief may be obta its complete removal.

The capsule is now re-sutured and the wound closed. Activ ments are controlled as far as possible for a week, during which patient is fed by fluids through a tube. Annandale (*Lancet*, 188 p. 411) records the results of operation upon two women, aged tively 38 and 18. The movements of the joint became natural jaws could be opened and closed perfectly.

RATION FOR AN UNREDUCED DISLOCATION

ocation of the lower jaw resists replacement by manipu-
nder an anæsthetic, open operation must be resorted to.
xposed in exactly a similar method to that which has just
l (see p. 318), when the condyle is levered into position
or.

ration facilitates reduction by enabling the surgeon to
or the whole of the interarticular fibro-cartilage, which
possible obstacles to reduction by manipulation. Kocher
rgery, 4th edit., p. 106) states that he has reduced by open
slocation of the jaw of four months' duration, and obtained
esult.

duction, even after free division of the capsule, with or
val of the meniscus, be impossible, excision of the condyle
ertaken in order to restore movement.

ION OF THE CONDYLE OF THE LOWER JAW

ation, sometimes termed excision of the temporo-maxillary
nly deals with that portion of the articulation formed by
f the mandible, and therefore the heading used above more
es its nature. It is required when a patient is unable to
th sufficiently to take food, or when the inability to open
ults in fœtor of the breath and difficulty of speech, which
requently increased by the presence of septic roots. This
only avail when the fixation of the lower jaw is due to
isease of the temporo-maxillary joint or to an unreduced

brous ankylosis may result from pyæmic arthritis, suppura-
following a punctured wound, gonorrhœal and rheumatoid
rom a fracture of the condyle involving the joint. Un-
ecurrent dislocation may also call for a similar operation,
required on one or both sides.

on. An incision is made from in front of the lower end
upwards and forwards for 1½ to 2 inches. This is carried
kin and the deep fascia. As in the preceding operation,
exercised to avoid the branches of the facial nerve and
l temporal vessels. A vertical incision is now made, so
e capsule freely and to expose the neck of the lower jaw.
is divided sufficiently to allow the condyle to be levered
enoid fossa with an elevator, and after those fibres of the
ygoid attached to the neck of the jaw have been freely

detached with scissors the neck of the bone is divided with bon
or with a Gigli's saw (see Fig. 145, c). If diseased, the inter
fibro-cartilage is excised, and, when the operation is undert
recent suppurative arthritis or for tuberculous disease, the glen
is carefully scraped with a Volkmann's spoon. The mouth s
opened to its full extent with a Mason's gag or a wooden we
if this cannot be done, it may be necessary to remove an additio
of bone below the condyle. The wound is now sutured without

Arbuthnot Lane (*Clin. Soc. Trans.*, vol. xxix, p. 1), in
four cases of excision of the temporo-
joint for bony ankylosis in children,
tention to the difficulty experienced i
ing enough of the bone, which in
ankylosis developing early in life an
ing fixed for a long period is always ab
broad and thick. He says that the pa
jaw which
tinuous w
squamous p
the tempo
must be f
moved,' an
excision wa
of his cases
of much
He recomm
the surgeo
remove ve
more bo

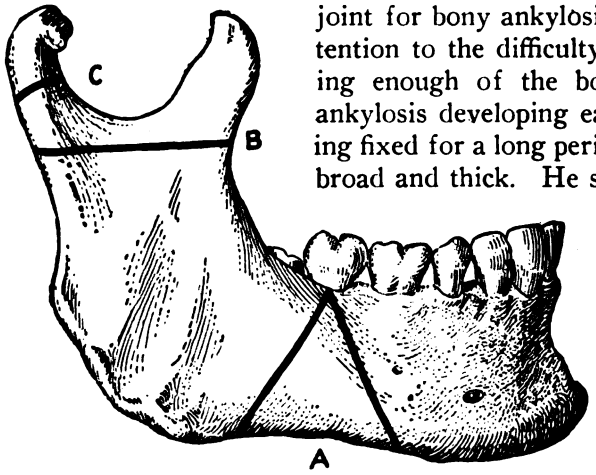


FIG. 145. OPERATIONS UPON THE LOWER JAW. Lines of bone section for: A, Esmarch's operation; B, Excision of both processes of lower jaw; C, Excision of condyle of lower jaw.

would at first sight seem necessary if he wishes to secure a g
He also is of opinion that the formation of a new articulat
such an operation is more successful in childhood than in adu

Mears (*Amer. Journ. of Med. Sci.*, 1883, p. 459) quotes th
a girl in whom excision of the condyle was undertaken for
bony ankylosis of seventeen years' duration, due to a gunsho
This did not allow separation of the jaws, which could, ho
forced apart to the extent of one inch after the coronoid pr
a bridge of new bone which had formed near it had been freely
Jacobson (*loc. supra cit.*) obtained a favourable result by th
in another case.

After-treatment. Care must be taken to avoid any re
in order to do this, passive movements must be employed on t

forcible opening of the mouth must be frequently carried out, ry under a general anæsthetic.

r (*loc. supra cit.*) remarks that mobility readily returns after excision, and even after a bilateral operation a satisfactory be ensured if active movements are at once carried out. To e recurrence of bony ankylosis Helferich places part of the muscle between the glenoid fossa and the mandible, while uses a slip cut from the masseter for the same purpose.

OPERATIONS UPON THE LOWER JAW

PARTIAL REMOVAL OF THE LOWER JAW

ations. Partial removal of the mandible may be required: *or epulis.* The observations made upon epulides and the opera- heir removal when arising in the upper jaw equally apply operation is carried out in exactly the same way as described

or the removal of an epitheliomatous growth arising in the e mouth or upon the lip, and extending on to the gum. Under mstances removal of a portion of the lower jaw may be neces- must be borne in mind that it is impossible to remove the embrane of the gum so freely as to eliminate the possibility nce without detaching the nutritive periosteum from the bone, osis is likely to ensue. Again, when an epitheliomatous growth the gum has been stripped off the lower jaw it is not un- o find that the growth recurs upon the bone, so that when y suspicion that the periosteal surface of the gum is involved r to resect the affected portion of the jaw with the muco- covering it, in one piece and at one operation, rather than ntil recurrence occurs which will necessitate a more extensive f the bone. At the same time it is well to bear in mind that ithelioma will only involve the alveolus, so that it may be o remove the affected part widely without destroying the of the lower jaw. Cheyne and Burghard (*loc. supra cit.*) that this is of extreme importance, owing to the difficulties tion which are likely to ensue after resection of a portion of thickness of the mandible, from alteration in the line of the

For the removal of myeloid sarcomata of the mandible.

For extensive necrosis of the lower jaw, the result of periostitis dental caries, fracture, or phosphorus poisoning. The last- fection is now of extreme rarity in this country, and, as it is

mainly due to tuberculous disease, it is dealt with separately Stiles (see p. 156).

Operation. When the lower jaw is involved by the of an epitheliomatous growth, it is usually the body which is and therefore it is this portion of the jaw which most commonly removal. A vertical incision is made through the lip to below from which a curved incision, convex downwards, is carried o both sides to the hyoid bone, then backwards and upwards to t the mastoid process (see Fig. 146); the greater part of the abov is required for the removal of the growth from the floor of t

FIG. 146. INCISION FOR EXCISION OF THE LOWER JAW. (*After Kocher.*)

and of the submaxillary a cervical lymphatic gland than for the resection of t though its removal is s simplified by carrying out incision at an early stag operation. The inferior and other divided arterie been secured, the soft part tached and reflected lateral as may be necessary. The bone sections being decid one or more teeth are extr either side of these lines. may now be divided with an saw working from the exte face; or the soft parts ma tached on the inner surfac jaw, sufficiently to allow of sage of a Gigli's saw, with which the bone is more easily divi within outwards. It is easier to saw the bone three-quarters thr then, after making the second section, to complete the first w forceps, rather than to divide it completely at one spot before b the second cut. Care should be taken that the affected bone parts are removed in one piece, and that the tongue, which mu sarily be deprived of its muscular attachments if the section the symphysis, does not fall back and produce serious dyspn

Removal of part or of the whole of the horizontal ramus is in dealing with a myeloid sarcoma, or in cases of extensive The details of the operation have been mentioned above; in of removal of bone for necrosis it is usually possible to pre periosteum, so that new bone will be formed within it.

owever, a complete section of the lower jaw and its perios-
en removed, it is important to overcome the tendency which
ng portions manifest of being drawn together towards the
by the unopposed external pterygoid muscles: unless this is
ver jaw becomes contracted, and its teeth cannot be apposed
he upper jaw. The ideal method here is the employment of
rosthesis, using a perforated metal plate secured at either end
ated parts of the mandible, so that the remaining teeth in the
re maintained in accurate alinement with those of the upper.
erous mechanical appliances which have been devised on this
e. Martin's apparatus (Schlatter, *v. Bergmann's Operative*
l. i, p. 722), or one of its various modifications, is the most
as these entail the fixation of the jaw by a metal bar held
by screws or pegs, the risk of oral sepsis and possibly of
onsiderable. In many cases a metal interdental splint made
casts taken before operation and fitted while the patient is
næsthetic fulfils all requirements and can be more easily
occasionally it is better to rely upon secondary prosthesis
l interdental splint to bridge over the gap resulting from the
nd to restore the normal outline of the remaining teeth is
n as the wound in the floor of the mouth is covered with
nulations. Whatever method of prosthesis is employed, it is
place the patient in the hands of a dentist for the application
a permanent denture to replace the teeth which have been
ry instance septic roots must be extracted and carious teeth
re such an operation is undertaken.

(*loc. supra cit.*) speaks favourably of the use of a metal
is fastened to the stump of the lower jaw on the outer side
to which it is connected by wires: the metal plate is directed
d outwards, and when the mouth is open projects beyond
eeth. In mastication the teeth of the upper jaw impinge
clined plane, and thus tend to push outward that fragment
jaw to which it is attached.

cases the deficiency can be supplied by a plastic operation,
al from the remaining portion of the jaw, or from the femur,
rontal bones.

Centralb. f. Chir., 1904, No. xxv, p. 767) describes a method
s adopted. Four to seventeen days after resection of the
ne fills up the defect from the neighbouring intact portions
from these he forms a flap of skin, muscle, periosteum, and
centimetres in length and more than a centimetre in height,
ns connected along its lower border with the neighbouring

soft tissues. This flap is inserted into the defect, and the
of the bone graft are fixed to the free ends of the lower jaw by
wire sutures, the soft parts being sutured together. The resul
in the neck is diminished by means of sutures, so arranged
do not involve the flap. There is no danger of necrosis o
portion of the flap, and the actions of swallowing and opening
are accomplished without difficulty .

Pichler and Ranzi (*Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, 1907, vol. lxxxiv,
an article on prosthesis of the lower jaw, state that Claud
method of immediate prothesis did not meet with the favour
tion which might have been anticipated, owing to the appar
of the entrance of septic foreign bodies into the wound, th
results have been obtained from it. Attempts have been m
place the defect by a simple sterilizable apparatus, such
bandages, Bönnecken's metal splint, &c. The more recent
have been constructed upon Martin's original idea, namely, r
by an intact portion of the lower jaw under strict asepsis. The
employed by Stoppany-Schröder and Fritzsche consists of
central piece of tin, fitted with a perforated strip of metal
side, the latter being attached by means of metal wire to
of the jaw. The splint is not firmly attached to the metal
can be removed by taking out the pegs (or rods), rendering
of the wound possible. After resection of one half of the
the apparatus usually has a metal strip at one end for attachm
intact half of the jaw, whilst the other extremity is inserte
glenoid cavity as an artificial condyloid process. In one case
this method was employed after resection of the lower jaw for
involving the floor of the mouth and the lower jaw, the tempo
ratus was replaced five weeks later by a permanent one, furn
artificial teeth. There was no recurrence six months after the
and the cosmetic and functional results were good.

Pichler and Ranzi state that in some cases the weight
appliance is unpleasant to the patients, and that it may, p
least, be replaced by rubber. Prosthesis must of course in al
be preceded by dental treatment, which is essential both for
tenance of asepsis, and for the establishment and firmness
paratus; the process is also facilitated if models of both jaws
before operation.

Sébileau (*Bull. et Mém. Soc. de Chir. de Paris*, 1906, vol
1174) recommends a permanent apparatus only after complete
tion of the wound, though from the time of the operation the
the lower jaw should be kept apart by a temporary wire splint

IOVAL OF ONE HALF OF THE LOWER JAW

indication for this operation is the presence of a periosteal re, no less than in the upper jaw, exploration of a doubtnt tumour is always indicated in order to avoid unnecesof bone.

ns. The patient is placed in the Trendelenburg position, zontal position with a firm pillow under the cervical spine, ead will fall backwards. Preliminary laryngotomy will nnecessary when the operation is being carried out for tumour confined to the bone itself; but when adjacent soft licated, or when it is necessary to remove affected subnds, laryngotomy is a wise precaution. Similarly, when involves a free dissection of the tissues in the submaxillary norrhage may be avoided, time saved, and shock obvieliminary ligature of the external carotid artery, which rried out below the origin of the lingual and facial

l incision will vary with the above-mentioned conditions. es the employment of a median incision dividing the lower ding down to the hyoid bone, which will give free access e symphysis and the horizontal ramus are involved. He nmend the employment of a lateral incision, as he considers s the mechanism of swallowing by division of muscles and o the risk of aspiration pneumonia is increased. When, ss to the angle and ascending ramus of the jaw is required, is usually the case in the writer's opinion) it is necessary submaxillary and other cervical lymphatic glands, Kocher *urgery,* translation of 4th edit., p. 105) continues his e side affected ' from the hyoid bone along the submaxillo- e to a point a finger's breadth behind and below the angle nd from thence up to the apex of the mastoid process ' , p. 322). The level of this incision is insisted upon in e the branches of the facial nerve supplying the muscles

utlined by this incision is now turned upwards, care being ide the muscular structures of the lower lip and chin by se to the bone as possible. Near the posterior margin of e facial artery and vein must be isolated and divided bees. The glandular contents of the submaxillary triangle nd dissected upwards, so that they may be removed in one lower jaw. The lower jaw is now divided at or near the

middle line: though it is usually necessary to cut line, yet when practicable and without risk of re gained by making the bone section lateral to the muscles on the side affected; by doing this th tongue in swallowing and speaking are less lik with. Removal of one of the incisors may be jaw may be divided with an Adams's saw; o muco-periosteum on the inner surface will allow of a Gigli's saw, by which the jaw may be quickly forwards.

The affected half of the mandible is now drav and the mucous membrane of the floor of the n ments of the muscles to its inner surface, namely hyoid, genio-hyoid, and genio-hyoglossus, are quic ternal surface of the vertical ramus is laid bare by masseter, and by careful separation with a blunt parts along its posterior margin. The incision in t of the mouth is carried up along the anterior border when the internal pterygoid is detached from its i and the soft parts are separated backwards wi Where the superior constrictor has been divided the posterior end of the mylo-hyoid ridge care m the lingual nerve, which curves forwards at this dental nerve is divided as it enters the inferior de inferior dental artery lying behind the nerve is div the same spot, the jaw being strongly pulled outwa done. The bone is now firmly depressed, when a knife will expose the attachment of the temporal n process; this is carefully divided, and the jaw is pull anterior surface of its neck. Here the external p division, and troublesome hæmorrhage is likely to teric and temporal branches of the internal maxillary of the temporo-maxillary joint is now more freely dissector and its fibres are gradually divided. This of any remaining fibres of the external pterygoid, accomplished with a pair of blunt-pointed scissors close to the bone and used in a saw-like manner. I care must be taken to avoid the internal maxillar between the neck of the jaw and the internal la liminary ligature of the external carotid will have bility of troublesome hæmorrhage at this stage of

As in the case of removal of the upper jaw, so h

when the bone is extensively implicated by the growth, and add to the difficulty of removal of the coronoid process and

all hæmorrhage has been arrested, the wound is sponged over saline solution, and the whole raw surface is carefully inspected ning fragments of growth. The margins of the wound in the ay now be, at least partially, brought together by interrupted tures, connecting the mucous membrane of the floor of the ith the mucous membrane of the cheek. The external skin accurately sutured with interrupted sutures of salmon gut or When the submaxillary triangle has been freely opened up by val of the salivary and lymphatic glands it is wise to insert ge tube in the posterior angle of the wound, which may be after forty-eight hours.

r-treatment. For the first three or four days the patient ed by rectal enemata or by a nasal tube, but during this period pply of cold water may be given by the mouth, and the patient llowed to suck ice to check capillary oozing. From the first n must be frequently washed out with a weak antiseptic, such ol (1 in 500), and at a later period after each feed given by the e nurse should be instructed carefully to mop or spray the ion of the wound with the same solution.

culties and dangers. Shock and hæmorrhage, unless the are extensively involved, are not so severe as after removal per jaw, and for this reason aspiration pneumonia is not likely The importance of disturbing the muscular attachments as possible, so as not to interfere with the patient's power of g, has been previously referred to.

COMPLETE REMOVAL OF THE LOWER JAW

may be required when both halves of the bone are symmetrically by a periosteal sarcoma. The operation is carried out in the as that for removal of half the lower jaw by dividing it in the ne, and removing each half in turn.

OSTEOPLASTIC RESECTION OF THE LOWER JAW

s a valuable procedure preliminary to the removal of growths, alignant, from the floor of the mouth, tongue, tonsil, fauces, nx.

al division of the jaw. When employed as an aid to obtain- exposure of an epithelioma of the floor of the mouth or

tongue, resection of the lower jaw forms a part of the classic
tion of Syme and of Kocher's newer operation, as described in t
edition of his *Operative Surgery*, p. 109. By division of the l
in the middle line, followed by separation of the mucous m
muscles along that side of the floor of the mouth which may
individual case seem most convenient, free access can be ob
all the structures between the lips and the posterior pillar
fauces.

Details of the different operations above indicated will
elsewhere; here reference will only be made to that part of the
tions which is concerned with the lower jaw itself.

With the patient under an anæsthetic and placed in the T
burg position, a median incision is made through the lower lip t
below the chin. Hæmorrhage from the inferior coronary arteri
been controlled by Spencer Wells's forceps, the soft parts are
from the body of the lower jaw for a distance of half an inch
side of the middle line. The line of the vertical saw-cut to
through the bone is now outlined by a few movements of the sa
which a hole is drilled on either side of this notch through th
substance of the bone, and division of the jaw is then complete
Gigli's or Adams's saw, when the position of the drill-holes on
surface of the bone may be defined by slight detachment of the s
laterally. Before proceeding with the operation it is well to l
two drill-holes for further recognition by passing a short piece
wire through each; the two ends of each of these pieces may
twisted together so as to form a loop on either side, which wil
very useful retractor for the separation of the two halves of the
ing the later stages of the operation.

When the removal of the growth for which the operation
undertaken has been completed the two halves of the lower jaw a
rately brought together by a piece of silver wire passed through
holes on both sides. These are now twisted as tightly as poss
cut short, after which the lower lip is sutured.

Lateral division of the jaw. When the tonsil, the p
the fauces, and the pharyngeal wall behind these are the seat
growth, easier access may be obtained by division of the lower ja
junction of the body and ascending ramus than by division in th
line. A similar procedure has been employed by Mikulicz as a
the operation for neurectomy of the third division of the fift
The site of bone section may be exposed by Langenbeck's perpe
incision, which passes vertically downwards from the angle of th
but König prefers to expose the bone by turning a flap of the s

after making a curved incision in the neck, carried from the e mastoid process downwards and forwards to the hyoid bone, ing upwards towards (see Fig. 147). When arts have been reflected as a flap, the facial ar- vein are ligatured as ss the inferior bor- ne mandible. The soft e now raised from the urface of the mandible, ucous membrane of the divided on its inner ter which the bone is d divided in a similar o that described in con- th the mesial operation. dvises that the line of hould be carried from border upwards and s, as, after the parts ed, the sawn extremity sterior fragment has a to be drawn inwards ards by the muscles o it.

FIG. 147. INCISION FOR LATERAL DIVISION OF THE LOWER JAW IN OSTEOPLASTIC RESECTION. (*After König.*)

PERATIONS FOR CLOSURE OF THE JAWS

s operations upon the mandible have been introduced in order ne closure of the jaws, due either to cicatrization of the soft o ankylosis of the temporo-maxillary joint. For the latter osteotomy of the neck of the mandible may be undertaken as tive to excision of the condyle (see p. 319), and Rochet , *Von Bergmann's Surgery,* vol. i, p. 717) resects a portion ending ramus of the lower jaw, and interposes a flap from the o prevent bony union recurring. Grieg, in order to avoid the f the facial nerve, makes an incision at the level of the supra- ge, running backwards above the malar bone nearly to the uditory meatus and continued downwards just in front of the the level of the lobule. This flap is turned downwards and and the superficial temporal artery divided and ligatured if

necessary; the fascia over the masseter is divided, and tur with the parotid. The jaw can then be freed, from the cond wards, when the neck is divided transversely.

Küster for the same purpose makes an incision upon the border of the ascending ramus, to avoid the internal maxill and facial nerve. The soft parts are dissected away from th and external surface of the jaw. Access, however, is not so f method as by Grieg's incision. Von Bergmann succeeded in the deformity of the receding chin by extensive resection processes and subsequent displacement forwards of the entire dental apparatus.

Another method applicable to this class of case is a cuneifo tomy, so devised that the base of the wedge is at the angle o Mr. Swain's case, referred to below, will serve as a good exam indications for and results of this method. When the closu jaw is due to cicatrization within the mouth, osteotomy of the ramus is required, which is best carried out after the manner o Esmarch.

Esmarch's operation. **Indications.** For the relief of to separate the teeth, due to cicatrization within the mouth or losis of the temporo-maxillary joint, which cannot be dealt excision of the condyle. It is clear that the operation is only to cases where the cicatrices are behind the teeth, as osteotomy be successful if carried out in front of the restricting bands.

The beneficial effect of Esmarch's operation is greater w only necessary to perform it on one side, and it is held by s loss of power over the central fragment will usually result employment of Esmarch's operation on both sides. Jacobson (*cit.*) quotes, as showing that this contention is certainly no sally true, a case operated on by Mr. Swain of Plymouth (*Lan* vol. ii, p. 189), in which, by a modification of Esmarch's op wedge-shaped portion of the lower jaw at its angle was remove sides for closure of the mouth after scarlet fever. In this cas did not occur and excellent power of control of the body of t jaw was retained.

Operation. An incision two and a half inches long is made lower border of the mandible, and is placed so that its post tremity is in front of the cicatrices which are limiting the mo When the incision has been carried through the skin the soft raised with the fingers of the left hand, so that the skin wound up to the bone. The incision is then carried down to the bon doing it the facial artery and vein will usually be exposed, a

e drawn aside or divided between ligatures. With an elevator the
g soft parts are carefully and freely raised from the periosteum
the inner and outer surface of the mandible. The periosteum is
ided on either side of the wedge of bone to be removed. With a
or Gigli's saw a triangular wedge of bone, having its apex at the
, is now freed: the base of the wedge which is formed by the
order of the mandible measuring at least one and a quarter inches
ult, and in a child about three-quarters of an inch. Manipulation
hin will not indicate whether sufficient bone has been removed,
never there is any doubt on this question it is better to remove an
al piece owing to the risk of relapse. In the section of the bone
rior dental artery and nerve are of course divided: hæmorrhage
e former is usually not serious, but if necessary it may be con-
by crushing inwards the cancellous bone upon the cut surface
aw.

rder to prevent bony union between the two cut surfaces Hel-
etached a portion of the masseter, and sutured it between the
surfaces. The wound is now sutured, with or without drainage,
ich any teeth loosened during the course of the operation may be
l.

r-treatment. Active and passive movements should be begun on
d day, if necessary under an anæsthetic, and continued daily.
uth must be frequently washed out with an antiseptic solution,
resorcin (10 grains to the ounce) or chinosol (1 in 500).

lts. The great tendency after this operation is for relapse to
This may be obviated partly by ensuring that a sufficiently large
f bone has been removed, and partly by persistence in active and
novements after the operation. Swain (*loc. supra cit.*) considers
this modification of Esmarch's operation, if a sufficiently large
s removed, the danger of relapse is very remote, but the experi-
other surgeons of this operation for cicatrization, such as results
ncrum oris in children, is on the whole discouraging.

MPORO-MAXILLARY ANKYLOSIS (MURPHY)

phy has studied this question of proper operative procedure in
ankylosis of the jaw. He has operated upon 23 cases and the
ce gained by him makes his opinion worthy of serious consid-

work of Murphy has been summarized by Kreuscher in the
e Medical Journal. The following description of his work is

(*a*) The intra-articular bony ankylosis (true ankylosis); intra-articular fibrous ankylosis; (*c*) sub-zygomatic cicatricial f (*d*) inter-alveolar buccal fixations.

Under *c* belongs the fixation in the sub-zygomatic area, res scar tissue, which binds the coronoid process to the cranium. belong the cicatricial fixations due to the sloughing of muscle an in the mouth or cheek.

Routes of Invasion. Murphy described four routes of infe vasion into or surrounding the temporo-mandibular arti namely:

First and most frequent, an extension of the suppuration middle ear.

Second, an osteitis or osteomyelitis of the mandible exten the glenoid cavity.

Third, the metastases from foci of infection within the n elsewhere in the body, or part of general metastatic arthritis.

Fourth, ankylosis may result from a transmitted trauma tip of the chin to the articulation, giving a traumatic osseou arthritis.

The glenoid cavity alone may be involved in the ankylosis bony bridge may extend forward to include the zygomatic and processes.

Diagnosis. In the osseous type or firm fibrous type the as to which side is involved is often extremely difficult. How nearly all the cases one is able to detect the ankylosed side fron study of the physical findings, which were described by Mu follows:

1. There is a flattening of the jaw on the unaffected side, n nounced near the tip of the chin. The side which appears norm one which is involved in the ankylosis and the flattened side is in which the joint is not fixed.

2. When the patient attempts to open his mouth, the tee from 1 60 to 1 100 of an inch downward and deviate a littl direction of the ankylosed side. This is due to a sliding for the mandibular articulation on the unaffected side, as the muscle neck are put on tension in the effort made to open the mouth.

3. A sliding motion on the unaffected side can be felt by th ing finger, and the muscular activity on that side is very much on attempted opening and closing of the mouth than on the a side.

4. The muscles on the ankylosed side are more atrophied th on the unaffected side.

e distance by measurement from the lower edge of the zygo- to the lowest point on the ramus of the jaw is less on the de than on the well one. This is true especially when there ome destruction of the upper end of the mandibular articula- en the ankylosis occurs in infants or children. As a general arlier the ankylosis has occurred in life the greater the de- f the face, due to the fact that the epiphysis of the condyle ns through which the ramus grows in length. The growth is y the ossification across the epiphyseal line before the normal ssification at this point, which is in the fifteenth year.

s of the operation. The technique of the operation as described by Dr. Murphy and later improved by him is as n all the cases of ankylosis of the jaw of the intra-articular peration has been a typical and uniform arthroplasty, employ- icled flap, consisting of the aponeurosis of the temporal muscle In the earlier operations the flap was fixed by suture to the -tissue and internal portion of the capsule. Now the flap is e basal angles only, thus avoiding the danger of injuring the axillary artery, an accident which was encountered in one of cases. The joint is exposed by a perpendicular incision just f the ear, extending from 1½ inches above the zygoma in the ownward to the lower border of the zygomatic (Fig. 148). on then curves forward on the superior margin of the zygoma nce of about ¾ of an inch and then curves upward slightly so d injuring the temporal and orbicular branches of the facial is leaves a very slight scar, most of it being hidden in the hair- ives better access to the joint than does the perpendicular in- is an improvement on the incision which was made several

s means have been devised for dividing the head and neck of ble at the line of bony ankylosis, including chisels, Gigli saws, tipped dental burrs driven by electric motors. The last are e rapid, but on the whole not so satisfactory as the chisel. It to point out that the greatest caution is necessary in the use sel and burr because of the close proximity of the internal artery and also the brain, which is separated from the head ndible by a very thin transparent plate of bone only. To avoid mentioned, Murphy had devised special periosteotomes, the ch passed directly beneath the neck of the mandible and lay nat and the internal maxillary artery. One periosteotome is position from each side, and all the bone lying anterior to be cut without any danger (Fig. 150). Bone-cutting forceps

or nippers may also be used and are more convenient than the c
smoothing off the surface of the bone (Figs. 149, C and D). T
saw may be used in dividing the mandible (Fig. 151).

After the incision has been made as described above, the
the wound are drawn downward, the lower lip being displace

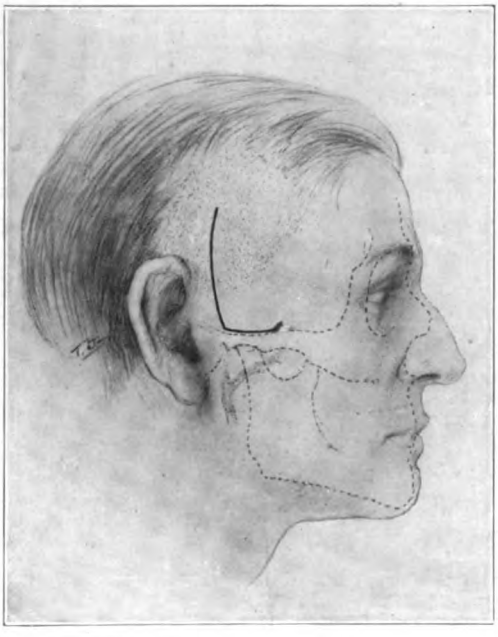


FIG. 148. THE LINE OF INCISION AND THE BONY OUTLINES AT THE POINT OF ANKYLOSIS. (*Murphy.*)

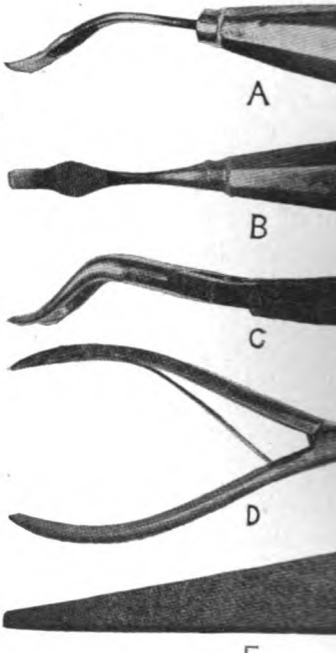


FIG. 149. A, B, DR. MU
TEOTOME, SIDE AND BACK VI
reduced); C, D, bone-cutting
pers, side and front view
duced); E, the interdental blo
Dr. Murphy to maintain the
of the jaws. It is made of w
it is wedge-shaped, the degr
can easily be regulated by v
pushing in the block. (*Mur*

the lower border of the zygoma. This gives a good exposur
joint. The tissues are then pushed away with the specia
periosteotome all around the anterior surface of the line of ur
further separated with a similar instrument around the poste
face. When the bone is laid bare, the two instruments are passe
the neck of the bone, one on each side, so that when they are

tely encircle the neck of the mandible behind, hugging close , holding the soft parts retracted during the excision of the 150). The insertion of these instruments and their retention during the excision of the bone formed the key to the success of the operation. Injury to the internal maxillary artery, ly hugs the neck of the mandible, is thus avoided. The

AL PERIOSTEOTOMES IN PO- N. (*Murphy.*)

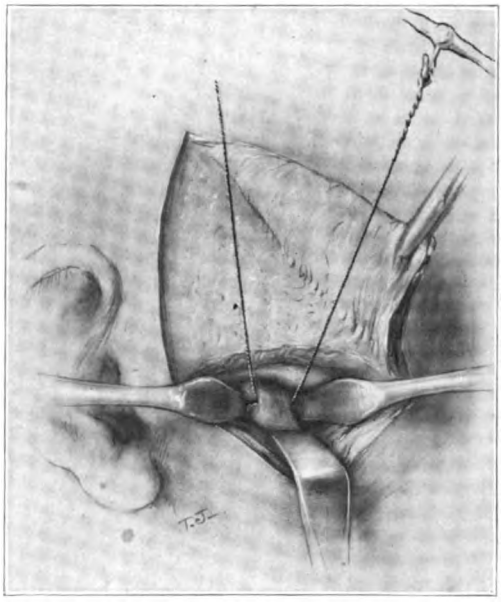


FIG. 151. THE GIGLI SAW USED TO DIVIDE THE MANDIBLE. (*Murphy.*)

f the soft tissues brought about by these instruments keeps de open during all the work. The chisel or burr then re- ction of bone ½ inch wide clear across the neck of the Fig. 152). This must be done carefully and ample bone noved so as to admit of the free insertion of the interposing and fascia (Figs. 153 and 154). The periosteum should be n the bone. The deeper fragments of bone can be taken out l rongeur. If one desires to use the Gigli saw for dividing the mandible, a small full-curved aneurysm needle carrying ad may be passed around the neck between it and the ne. This thread acts as a carrier for the Gigli saw. The inserting the saw is slight, but the acute angulation of the necessarily occurs, occasionally causes it to break, putting

one to the inconvenience of replacing it. On the whole we do not beli that it is handled quite as easily as the chisel. As soon as the bone completely divided, the mouth can be opened readily by the anæsthet The interposing fat and fascia flap should now be prepared. If nec sary, the perpendicular incision is extended up on the temple, say, fr 1½ to 2 inches. Then a U-shaped flap of fat and fascia is taken fr

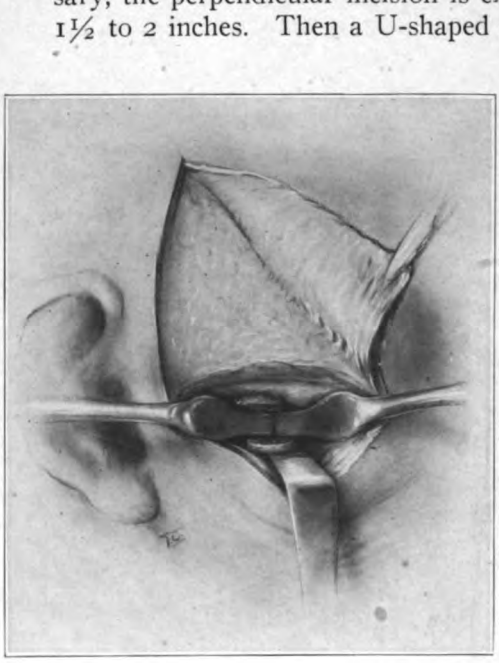


FIG. 152. THE GAP LEFT AFTER THE EXSECTION, WITH THE CURVED PERIOSTEOTOMES STILL IN POSITION. (*Murphy.*)

FIG. 153. THE TEMPORAL FA FAT FLAP FREED AND READY FOR I (*Murphy.*)

over the temporal muscle. This flap is about 1 inch wide and 2 inc long and has its base at the upper margin of the zygoma. It is fr from above downward, folded downward over the zygoma and pac into the bony gap previously described. It is retained in position b few catgut sutures at its anterior and posterior basal angles (Fig. 15 The skin wound is accurately closed with horsehair, dusted with bism subiodide, and sealed with collodion on gauze or cotton. No other dr ing needs to be applied.

No special effort should be made at this time to spread the jaws it is important that the lower jaw should remain steady on the well s in order that the wooden block inserted on the diseased side may ma tain the wide separation of the molar teeth until the interposing

This block also prevents the muscular contraction from
ıd necrotizing the flap.

ı experience with arthroplasties, it has been learned that a
y often forms about the field of operation, and if per-
ain, will be disastrous to the result, the same as it would
or in the hip-joint. A hæmatoma following an arthro-

LAP IS NOW IN PLACE READY FOR CLOSURE.

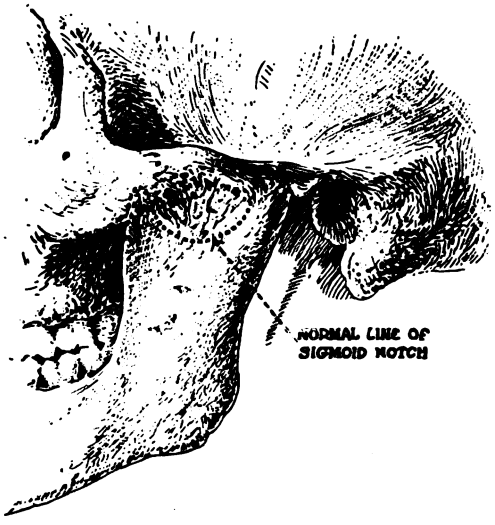


FIG. 155. SHOWING HOW THE SIGMOID NOTCH IS ENTIRELY FILLED WITH NEW-FORMED BONE. (*Murphy.*)

dvantage in three ways: First, it may necrotize a portion
terposing flap; second, it may necrotize the skin overlying
field; third, and most important, it acts as a splendid
ı in which organisms may grow and thence become de-
avoid such sequelæ it is important that the condition of
ould be watched very carefully after the operation. If
ghtest evidence of a hæmatoma, a small hypodermic or
lle is inserted and the blood is drawn off. This may be
e second day, and again on the third and fourth days or
en, if necessary.

ound that the position in which this wooden plug is held
ble importance. If the wedge is placed between the upper
sors the jaws are kept apart, but the pressure which is

necessarily exerted upon the flap by the neck of th masseter muscles acting as a fulcrum, must eventu a portion of the flap which has been interposed. I the wedge is passed backward between the upper a jaws are kept apart, with the additional advant freshly made bony surfaces from lying in apposit the wedge serves the same purpose in husbanding extension does in arthroplasties of the knee, hip, a

In the 3 cases of extra-articular fibrous fixati ployed the method which we believe is original wit in the utilization of mucous membrane pedicled f hard and soft palates and the tongue margin of the interposing medium between the divided cicatri masses, for the purpose of preventing a recurrence o

Operative complications. The location of ways be borne in mind in the removal of the he mandible, as it hugs the neck on the inner side v easily be injured. If it is injured, the external c be ligated opposite the cornu of the hyoid bone, wh sible and readily reached. In one case it was neces procedure. In another case the external carotid w operative precautionary measure.

The second element of danger is realized on facial nerve. This nerve leaves the skull throug foramen, passes forward across the lower portion o it is distributed to all the muscles of expression nerve is injured there is danger of inducing permane larly of those fibres that pass to the temporal and These can all be avoided by the L-shaped incision zygomatic level. The third element of danger lies is almost certain to penetrate the base of the sk to divide the ankylosis in the line of the original art the condyle of the inferior maxilla is removed, but to clean out the glenoid fossa.

Post-operative treatment. The after-treat tant. Mastication should be started at the end of the formation of too much fibrous tissue between th bone. The wooden wedge should be placed betwe operated side and kept there day and night for a prevent a possible compression necrosis of the in hæmatoma forms under the flap, this must be aspi all oozing has ceased.

CHAPTER VI

CTION OF DEVELOPMENTAL OR ACQUIRED DEFORMITIES OF THE LOWER JAW

By Major VILRAY P. BLAIR, M.D., F.A.C.S.

r jaw is a long bone which lends itself readily to all of the at come within the scope of good surgery of long bones s of the body. For both cosmetic and functional reasons, f this bone are of more consequence in proportion to their f any other long bone. It carries the inferior dental nerve, be divided in most resections of this bone, but apparently ally regenerates. The complicated shape of the bone and muscles attached render the fragments difficult of control plints, but the teeth give more exact anchorage than can on any other bone. Contamination which might lead to nay be mortality in a resection of another long bone is an ible incident in resection or fracture of the jaw-bone, and l fractures are extremely rare. The most common de- the lower jaw are: Forward protrusion, absolute, relative, ward recession, which may also be either absolute, relative, n bite, in which either or both jaws may participate; de- the alveolar process. These deformities may be unilateral or there may occur as combinations of the above types. nities may be dependent upon mal-union or loss of bone, or abnormalities of growth, and possibly atavism.

rly formative age, these deformities may be completely or ected by orthodontic procedures, which are more effective eir further development than correcting them when fully

protrusion of the lower jaw. This is due most com- ncrease in the length of the body of the jaw, evidenced by paces in the molar regions, or to an increase of the angle increased length of the ramus, or to a combination of the ons. Regardless of the cause, if sufficiently pronounced rrection, we believe that removal of a properly shaped sec-

tion from the body of the bone on one or both sides is a better operation than attacking the angle, ramus, or neck of the condyle. The simplest operation is an open section of the bone on one or both sides.

Transmucoperiosteal operation for protrusion of the lower jaw. The mouth having been properly prepared, the shoulders are raised, and the head drawn back.

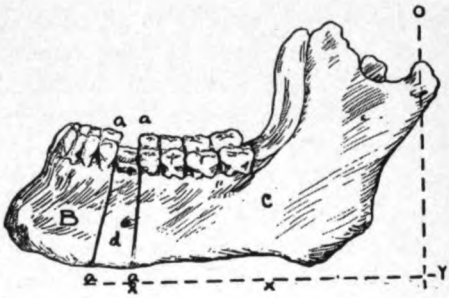


FIG. 156. ABNORMALLY LONG JAW WITH INTERDENTAL SPACES IN THE BICUSPID REGION. Showing position of cuts for correction. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

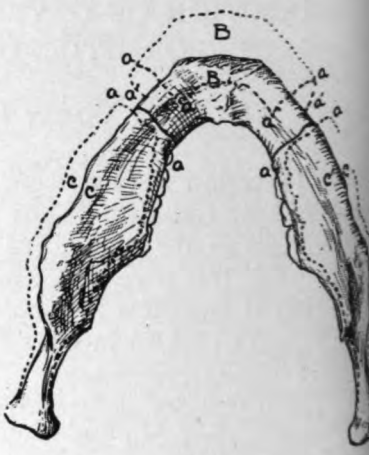


FIG. 157. RECONSTRUCTED J
SHOWING HOW BOTH FORWARD
LATERAL PROTRUSIONS ARE CORREC
BY REMOVING BONE SECTIONS. The
ted lines indicate the jaw-bone shown
the preceding figure. (Blair, *Oral S*
gery.)

Fixing the jaw. In order to render the jaw rigid, a pine block
inserted between the molar teeth, on one side, behind the site of t
proposed bone section. The jaws are closed firmly on the block, a
held there by wires passing between the molars. This will fix the low
jaw securely; this fixation cannot be as completely obtained by mea
of a mouth gag.

Cutting the bone. Corresponding to the site of the bone which
to be removed, the skin lying under the border of the jaw is dra
upward, and a cut 2 or 2½ centimetres is made parallel with this b
der. This will render the scar inconspicuous when the operation
complete. The incision extends through the skin, fascia, and platysm
The tissues are dissected from the outer surface of the jaw-bone,
without on any account injuring or even exposing the periosteum. T
dissection is continued upward until the mouth is opened through

cul-de-sac, the mucous covering of the gum being left

serting the saw-blade, the exact position of the first saw-ined, and a flat piece of metal may be inserted into the urned on edge so as to rest one just to the outside of with the first cut. This will a guide to the saw and a om the soft tissues which the blade from its proposed handle of a knife or the ther saw can be used. No kind of a saw is used, for ons the bone should not be hrough in any place until the s are drilled near the lower ll of the other saw-cuts are -fourths of the way through. nechanical saw, very narrow ointed (a nasal saw modi- y an engine and cable, that pidly; but a sharp, narrow- carpal saw will suffice, and safer. We use also an ad- e-pointed double-bladed saw, al for making parallel cuts.

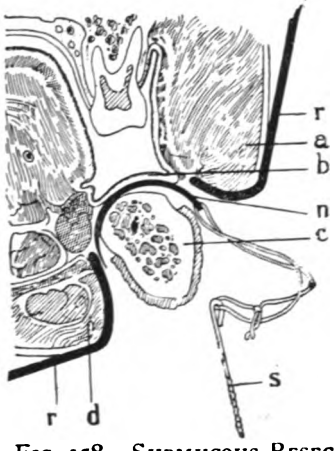


FIG. 158. SUBMUCOUS RESECTION OF THE LOWER JAW. Coronal section through the body of the jaw and the surrounding tissues. a, Tissues of the cheek; b, mucoperiosteum of the gum raised from the body of the jaw; c, body of the jaw, covered with periosteum on its lower part; d, submaxillary tissues; n, curved needle passed over the body of the jaw; r, retractors holding back the cheek and submaxillary tissues; s, wire saw, with ring replaced by a sharp bend, attached to the needle by a silk carrier. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

operiosteal operation for of the lower jaw. If the spaces are not sufficiently eth from the sites of the pro- sections must be removed at onth before the operation so um tissues will be entirely is even better to wait until absorption of the alveolar process has taken place.

uth is prepared for operation as usual. The exact site of bone to be removed should be marked on the skin with a knife scratch. This will correspond to the centre of the . After the skin of the face and neck is prepared a sterile el is sewed across the face from ear to ear on a line running mouth and the chin. This towel is turned upward over the and prevents contamination from coughing or vomiting.

It is not necessary to fix the jaw, as it can be held up with the fing of an assistant.

Cutting of the bone. An incision 3 or 4 centimetres long is m along the under border of the jaw down to the periosteum. The s tissues are dissected from the periosteum half-way up the inner a outer surfaces of the body of the jaw; from here up to within a sh distance of the necks of the teeth, the dissection is subperiosteal. If

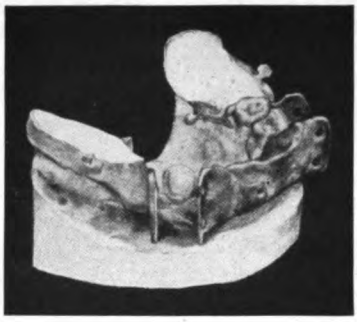


FIG. 159. LATERAL VIEW OF ANGLE SPLINT, SHOWING FLANGES DRILLED FOR BOLTS, AND ALSO BICUSPID TEETH THAT WERE REMOVED AT OPERATION. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

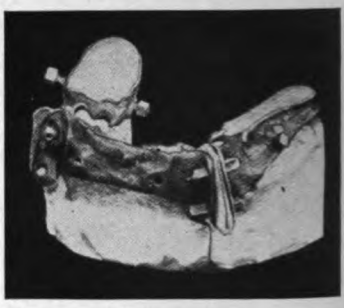


FIG. 160. ANGLE SPLINT AFTER OPERATION, LATERAL VIEW. To allow for inaccuracies, the distance between the flanges was made larger than the section of bone to be removed. After operation the space between the plates was filled with a piece of lead plate, beaten and cut to the proper shape. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

necks of the teeth should be exposed, there would be a communicat between the wound and mouth. It is easier to make the whole dissect subperiosteally, but the vitality of the bone is better assured when exposed ends are not entirely deprived of this source of nutrition. the site of the interdental spaces a curved, blunt needle is passed o the alveolar border of the jaw, hugging the bone closely; on no acco must this be allowed to penetrate into the mouth. It is followed b silk or linen carrier which in turn draws a Gigli saw into place (I 158).

The ring on one end of the Gigli saw is to be cut off, and the bent into a sharp hook; this takes less room than the ring and is liable to injure the mucoperiosteum of the gum. The eye of the opera

y guide in making the cuts. Before making the cuts, the bone drilled for wires, and no saw-cut should be completed until all ners in both sides are almost entirely through; otherwise one ealing with fragments that are difficult to control. For this s better to use four saws. It is better to remove too little than bone; for, though the jaw-bone is extremely hard, it can be away with a good instrument or a coarse bone bur. While , each fragment can be held with a pair of sharp-toothed lion at will grasp the bone but will not tear its coverings.

ting the bone. The bone sections having been removed, the is formed by wiring the remaining fragments with silver wire, s put through the holes efore the saw-cuts were he final twisting of these ot done until the intraoral made.

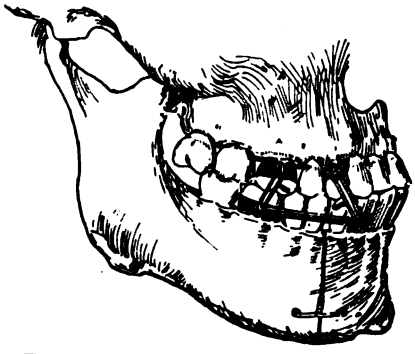


FIG. 161. FIXATION OF THE JAW BY WIRES AND BANDS, AFTER REMOVING A SECTION FROM THE BODY. The lower wire should show, bent downward. (Blair, *Oral Surgery*.)

on is accomplished chiefly anchorage, either with a the Angle type (Figs. 159 or by bands (Fig. 161). fixed in the mouth before tion is done. In under- erations for forward pro- f the lower jaw one must that much of the protru- be relative, and that in prominent lower jaw cor- ccurately to the receding , one may destroy the one strong feature in an otherwise .

ward recession. If there is a full quota of teeth present, the is due to a change in the angle or to a lack of length in the Lack of teeth in the developing period will cause a lack of nt of the body in that area. When possible the correction is factorily made by resection of the ramus on one or both sides ging forward of the body. If the recession follows an early the condyle on the ankylosed side may be removed and the tioned on the other.

tion for retraction of the lower jaw.—Cutting the bone. ation is done in this manner: An incision 2 centimetres long hrough the skin over the posterior border of the mandible. is drawn forward and the parotid sheath is opened at the an-

terior border of the gland, which latter is drawn
posterior border of the ramus can be felt. A la
needle on a handle, threaded with a heavy silk ca
between the parotid gland and the masseter muscl
hugging the bone closely. It passes forward betwee
internal pterygoid muscle and emerges through the
trating the mucous lining of the mouth. The diamet
of the needle should be a little greater than the v

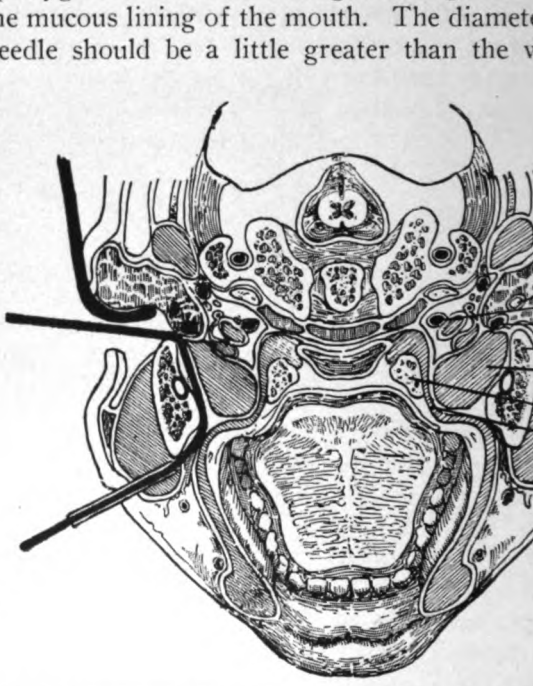


FIG. 162. TRANSVERSE SECTION OF THE FACE AT THE L
SURFACES OF THE MOLARS. On the left is shown the woun
fascia. The parotid gland is drawn back with a retracto
seen passing around the ramus and out through the cheek.
skin of the cheek is protected by passing the saw through
the right side are indicated; a, parotid gland; b, temp
internal carotid artery; d, external carotid artery; e, ram
ing the inferior dental nerve and vessels; f, internal pter
seter muscle, h, tonsil; i, wall of the pharynx. (Blair, *O*

It is followed by a Gigli wire saw with which the
(Fig. 163).

Hæmorrhage is controlled by packing the space w
antiseptic tape, which is left in place for one day.
the parotid gland is pushed out of the way, as is al
division of the facial nerve, which lies at the post

e temporo-maxillary vein is also avoided, and the external
es well out of the way. These anatomical points were verified
special dissections (Figs. 162 and 163).
eedle used is full-curved. The curved portion, being almost one-
circle of 4 centimetres in diameter, must extend to the point
to round the anterior border
mus without penetrating the
The point is so formed that
ssect the soft structures from
surface of the bone rather
etrate them (Fig. 164). In
bleeding is avoided, and there
narily be no danger of pene-
ne mouth. To prevent dam-
ne skin, after the saw is in
short, small steel tube is
ver the anterior end of the
ugh the skin, and down to the
osteriorly, the parotid gland
ck with a small retractor. In
he bone, the saw is held as
as possible, and the operator
e familiar with the peculiari-
e Gigli saw (Figs. 162, 163).

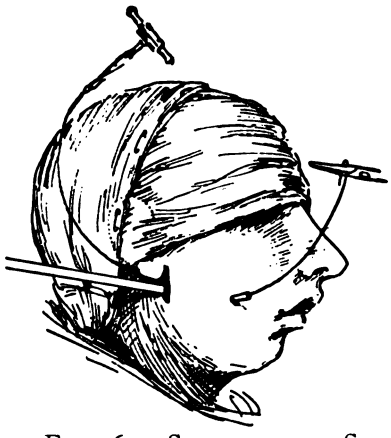
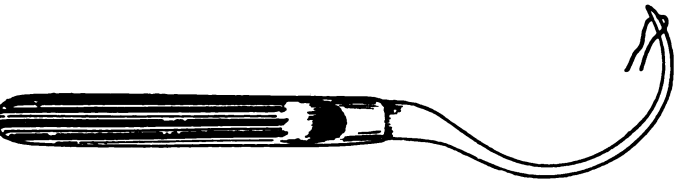


FIG. 163. SUBCUTANEOUS SECTION OF THE RAMUS. Showing points of entrance and exit of the wire saw. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

operation presents three distinct problems: (1) the cutting of
which is the easiest of the three; (2) the placing of the jaw in
osition; and (3) holding it there.

sting the bone. The posterior part of the occlusal plane of
s inclines upward and backward. On account of this obliquity



4. NEEDLE USED FOR PASSING A CARRIER AROUND THE RAMUS OF THE
s important that the curve of the needle extends up to the point. If
end of the needle is somewhat straight, the needle is very apt to pierce
mucosa and enter the mouth. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

of the lower jaw can be brought forward only by lengthening
s; theoretically, the line of tthe saw-cut should be slightly down-

ward and forward about 5 millimetres lower in front than be
to allow the body to be moved downward as well as forwa
completely separating the several fragments. As a matter of
ever, X-rays show that the fragments of the ramus remain
at the posterior border in the operations we have done, and
difficult to exactly gauge the positions and directions of the c

It is only the posterior part of the body that moves down

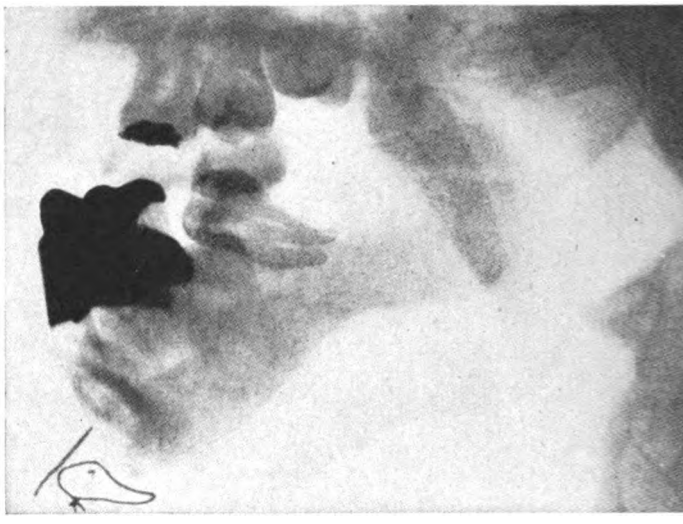


FIG. 165. X-RAY SHOWING CONDITION OF THE RAMUS SOME TIME
TION. Notice the obliquity with which the part of the ramus above
meets the lower portion. In this case there was no operation perfo
ankylosed joint, and on that side there is only a fibrous union betwee
ends of the ramus. Later this union became so close that it was
excise the ankylosed joint. The nail and wire at the chin were use
piece of costal cartilage in place. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

the rotation thus produced lessens the obliquity of the plane
which is a very distinct advantage.

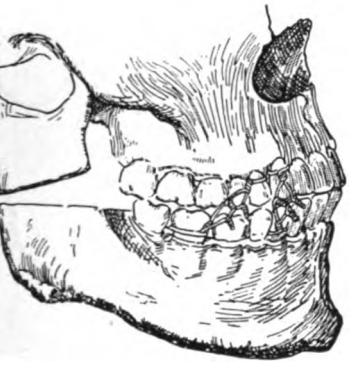
In order to lengthen the ramus it is necessary to stretch th
and internal pterygoid muscles. Pressure applied to the tee
done carefully as they are easily loosened or evulsed. Wi
toothed lion forceps, the jaw may be safely grasped in any
body, the teeth of the forceps penetrating through the skin or
osteum.

Fixation is immediately applied as shown in Fig. 166.

Obliquity of the chin. If, as will often be the case, afte

or a bone-cutting operation for a receding jaw, the obliquity of in is so pronounced as to detract materially from the result, it e improved by either injecting paraffin into the chin or inserting of cartilage or rib.

ansplantation of bone or cartilage. To fill out the chin with or cartilage, an incision is made under the chin, and all of the excluding the periosteum are reflected from the mental portion



G. 166. SHOWING JAW WIRED TS NEW POSITION AFTER SEC- OF THE RAMUS. (Blair, *Oral ery.*)

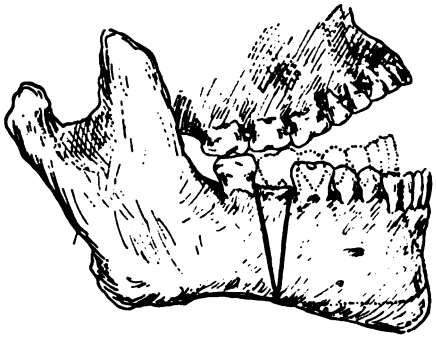


FIG. 167. OPEN BITE OF AN EXTREME TYPE IN A YOUNG MAN, SHOWING HOW CORRECTION MIGHT BE MADE BY A V-SHAPED EXCISION. This would have the disadvantage of shortening the jaw considerably, as shown in the reconstructed jaw indicated by dotted lines. The operation shown in Fig. 168 was done in this case. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

mandible. Bleeding should be controlled by pressure. Next, the n or eighth costal cartilage is exposed, and a section removed, ng its perichondrium. This should be done without wounding eura or the intercostal vessels, though we have several times ed the pleura in a dog without any apparent evil consequences. artilage is picked up with toothed forceps and trimmed with a utting forceps; the finger with or without gloves should not be o either wound. As soon as each skin wound is made, the knife uts through the skin should be discarded, and the skin excluded the operating field by attaching sterile cloths to the cut edges enaculum forceps or safety pins. The cartilage can be fastened bone with one or two wires or nails. The bone and cartilage been drilled, the wound is closed without drainage by deep

through and through silkworm-gut sutures. If suppuration shoul
cur, neither the sutures nor the cartilage are to be removed unle
infection be of a virulent character. We have had two pieces o
tilage and one piece of the tibia stay in place and unite to the soft t
by its perichondrial or periosteal surface when there was suppu

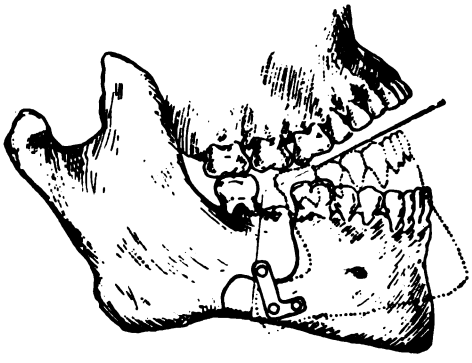


FIG. 168. SHOWING OPERATION BY S-SHAPED BONE-CUT, THAT LENGTHENS THE JAW-BONE AND GIVES A BETTER CLOSURE OF THE MOUTH. The silver splints at the site of the bone-cut are absolutely necessary and increase the risk of sepsis. The bone spaces will fill in satisfactorily, but the transverse part of the 'S' cut must be in hard bone. (Blair, *Oral Surgery.*)

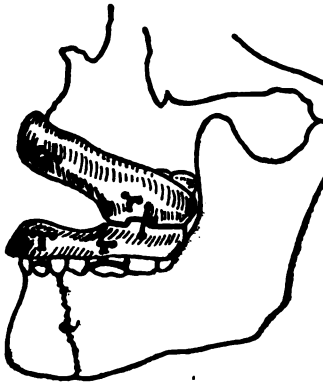


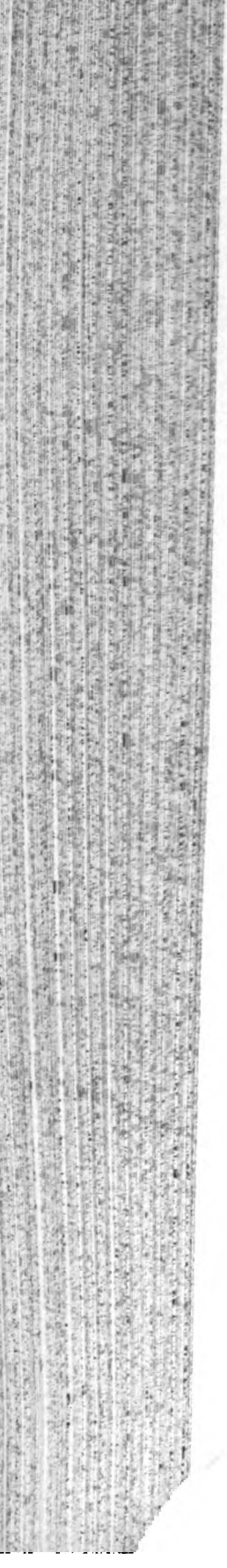
FIG. 169. SHOWING A M
CATION OF THE GUNNING S
THAT MAY BE USED FOR ANY
IN WHICH THE JAWS ARE
HELD APART. This is ma
two pieces, which are fasten
gether after each half has
fixed in place. Its applicat
very much simpler than is t
the original Gunning splint. (
Oral Surgery.)

occurring in its deep surface. In one of the cartilage cases, an inje
of Beck's bismuth paste stopped the suppuration.

Open bite. This deformity has been corrected by bone cuts sl
in Figs. 167 and 168 or division of the bone at the angle. Conside
difficulty has been encountered in holding up the mental fragment
new position owing to the pull of the suprahyoid muscles. This is
overcome by dressing the mouth wide open (Fig. 169). If the
bite is due to a mal-union at the angle, then this latter plan cann
followed, but the body of the jaw must be placed and maintained i
proper position at once.

Deformities of the alveolar process. These are to be treate
cording to the type encountered. One of the first recorded cas
resection of the jaw for correction of pure deformity was by Hul

inia in 1848, who made a deep resection of the alveolar
ut disturbing its contained teeth for a deformity caused
ction. It was held in its new place by a swaged splint.
tion of these deformities should not be undertaken by the
on without the aid of a competent dental oral surgeon.
called in before and not after the operation is done.



SECTION IV

IC SURGERY AND BURNS AND SCALDS

PLASTIC SURGERY

BY

T. P. LEGG, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.),
Lieutenant-Colonel, R.A.M.C.(T.)
Surgeon to the Royal Free Hospital

BURNS AND SCALDS

BY

M. MacLEOD, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P. (Lond.)
r Diseases of the Skin, Victoria Hospital for Children.
an for Diseases of the Skin, Charing Cross Hospital

RINCIPLES OF PLASTIC SURGERY

BY

D. GILLIES, F.R.C.S. (Eng.), B.A. (Cantab.),
Major, R.A.M.C.(T.)
Throat and Ear Department, Prince of Wales Hospital, N.

CHAPTER I

GENERAL PRINCIPLES: SKIN-GRAFTING

TIC SURGERY is the method by which a surgeon attempts to ome deformity or to restore, as far as possible, a lost portion of . It is also the means by which a surgeon attempts to repair an r some part of it essential to the carrying on of its proper which may have been accidentally damaged or injured as the some operative procedure. For centuries, plastic operations on have been performed. The operation of rhinoplasty appears to n known to and practised by the ancient Egyptians. The In- hod dates from very early times, and the Italian (Tagliacotian) from the year 1597, but it is only since the early part of the ury that the development of plastic surgery may be said to have ce. In 1869 Reverdin published his method of skin-grafting; ds, Thiersch, using large grafts, obtained more satisfactory re- further added to the advancement of this branch of surgery, til quite recent years was concerned with the restoration of a hich was on the surface of the body. At the present time the rgans have plastic operations performed on them, and even the ssels have been successfully sutured after having been partially

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

d and rapid healing is essential for the successful performance of perations. The patient must be in the best possible state of nd the neighbouring tissues free from disease. These operations deferred, therefore, till such conditions are present. Failure to e desired effect by the first operation makes subsequent attempts y to succeed, as such failures always leave behind scar tissue. results are obtained with fresh, healthy structures, and though sible to succeed even when a certain amount of scar tissue is the ultimate result is never so satisfactory as when working normal tissues. In some cases scar tissue may have to be but it can never be relied upon; in other cases, the local con- ay render a repetition of the operation impossible; moreover,

it is possible that an unsuccessful plastic operation may leave the p
in a worse condition than that before it was attempted.

An attempt to do too much at one operation is another sou
failure. It is better to avoid trying to attain the total restorati
a defect when the tissues are scanty and to proceed by stages
than to risk a complete failure as the result of one operation.
series of operations, and by allowing a sufficiently long interval to

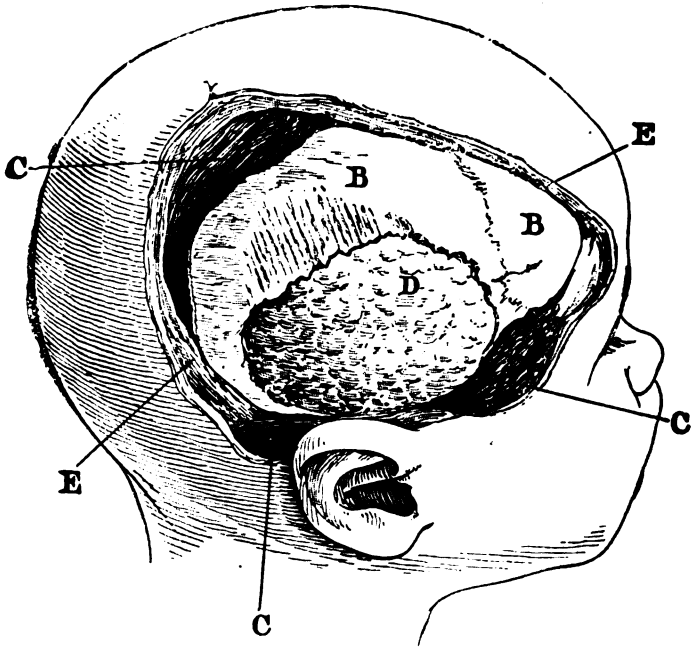
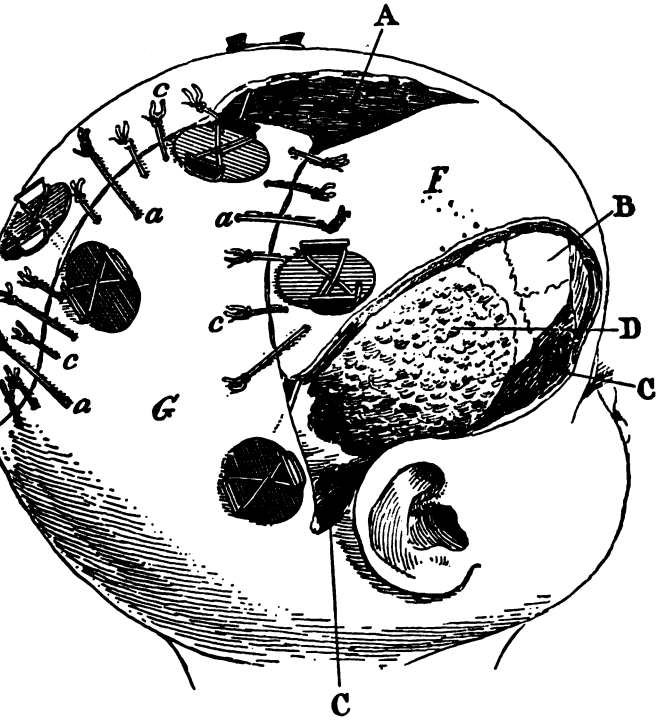


FIG. 170. CLOSURE OF A LARGE DEFECT BY MEANS OF FLAPS. The patie
a boy aged two years, who had a large part of his scalp torn off as a re
a street accident. B, B are the cranial bones. D is the dura mater expo
the removal of a large part of the squamous portion of the temporal bone,
was extensively fractured and depressed, and ingrained with dirt. The
shown covered with granulations. C, C, C are the deeper tissues of the sca
pericranium; E, E, the edges of wound in the scalp. (*From a photograph.*
also Fig. 171.

between them, it is sometimes possible to make use of the same t
over again. It is courting failure to attempt plastic surgery c
aged or very feeble, or in the neighbourhood of active disease
syphilis or tubercle, but provided these diseases are cured or quie
excellent results may be obtained.

Septic infection is another potent cause of failure, and the
special attention must be paid to the details of asepsis in these opera

ods of cutting and using flaps. Each particular case has ed on its merits, success often depending on the ingenuity of or. Flaps must be thick and include the subcutaneous tissue, a rule the deep fascia, so that their vitality is not impaired. e skin, flaps containing other structures, such as bone or



METHOD OF CLOSING A LARGE DEFECT BY MEANS OF FLAPS. *ase.*) The incisions marking out the flaps are parallel to the lines of The flap F was taken from the fronto-parietal region, and the flap occipital region, each being glided into its new position. They con- e layers of the scalp except the pericranium, A, which is exposed. silver wire sutures; *c, c, c,* silkworm-gut sutures. The method of wire and lead buttons is also shown. By subsequent operations the losed more completely. (*From a photograph.*)

, are occasionally employed, as in some of the operations tion of the nose. In cutting a flap, it is better, whenever o use curved rather than straight incisions; more tissue is obtained, and there is consequently much less tension when it position. The incisions marking out the flap should be made the line of the blood-vessels, or placed so as to interfere with

the vascular supply as little as possible (Fig. 171). The knif directed towards the deep fascia so that the blood-supply to which is derived from the subcutaneous tissues, is not cut off should be taken that the flap is neither button-holed nor sco deep aspect. Its length is proportional to the width of the ped should be as broad as is consistent with the flap being accu readily applied in its new position; in doing so the pedicle m twisted or stretched to such an extent as to occlude the blood

The raw area from which the flap has been taken is closed mining the adjacent skin and subcutaneous tissues, or by skin-g

The method most frequently employed is to simply *glid* obtained from the neighbourhood of the defect into its new where it is fixed by sutures (Fig. 171); extensive wounds, suc left by the removal of the breast for carcinoma, malignant dise cheek, &c., are frequently closed in this manner. Sometime is *transplanted* from another part of the body; the extent and ness of the union with the surrounding tissues, especially at the of the flap, determines the time when it is safe to sever the p an average this is in ten or fourteen days. The flap gradual itself to its new surroundings, and there is ultimately no dif the sensibility of it and that of the adjacent parts, but operations are frequently necessary to correct various irregu the flap.

Flaps may also be employed in three other ways. *The flap,* in which the cuticle is directed inwards and the deep su wards, the latter being covered by skin grafts. *Superimposed flaps* (Fig. 214, p. 413); the outer or raw surface of a rever covered by a second flap with its cuticle directed outwards, the having their raw surfaces in apposition. Instead of a superim the first one may be folded on itself after the pedicle has bee (Fig. 213, p. 411). *Granulating flaps;* the flap is dissected up, attached by both its extremities for some ten to fourteen days, if necessary. During this time, *i.e.* whilst it is granulating, the face of the flap is prevented from uniting to the adjacent tissu insertion of a sterilized piece of protective. The vitality of the new position is more likely to be assured after the pedicle i if its deeper parts are granulating. This method of using a some advantages. In the first place, it may be cut much proportion to its width, without fear of sloughing; as a rule t should not exceed three times its width, these dimensions bein out according to the size of the area to be covered, due allowa made for shrinkage. The limits of the flap having been de

ected up freely, carefully, and completely throughout its whole own to the deep fascia or aponeurosis. At the end of ten to days the flap will have become thick and vascular; one pedicle n be divided and the flap turned into the place prepared for ion. Secondly, such a flap will adhere in a short time if care to excise and divide every portion of cicatricial tissue and to reshly made raw surface; two weeks is an average time for vascular union to occur in its new position, but the final sever- he flap is a matter of some importance and must depend on the and soundness of the union which has taken place. The dis- e of this method of 'granulating flaps' is that it is very com- and cannot often be employed.

e *Indian and French methods* the flap is taken from the parts to the area to be occupied by it. In the *Italian* (*Tagliacotian*) he flap is derived from a distal part, such as one of the arms. never a flap is being used to close a cicatrizing area, the scar ust be removed and the edges carefully refreshed so that every- ere is a fresh raw surface on which to place it. At the same time t be taken not to remove too much of the scar tissue without od reason. Immediate and secure union of the refreshed sur- h the flap is most essential, and therefore they must be carefully position by sutures with a minimum amount of tension. If s are not in perfect apposition at all points a good result may btained, and attempts to obtain a complete apposition should ade at the expense of undue tension or dragging on the flap. tion of the flap is maintained by sutures, with or without some retentive apparatus (as in the Tagliacotian operations).

ods of suturing. The suturing is most important, and a good he success or want of success of a plastic operation depends actor. Of the many materials used for sutures, silkworm-gut r wire are the best. Catgut may be used for buried sutures uniting mucous membranes. The great advantage of silkworm- at it does not absorb moisture, and is only slightly irritating ed tightly. Fine horsehair, sterilized by boiling, may be used ate tissues, whenever it is important to avoid stitch marks n the parts can be readily brought into apposition, but fine -gut is equally efficient. Whatever material is chosen, all hould be just tight enough to hold the parts in apposition, and st be no tension or dragging after they are tied.

oon as the knot is tied the effect on the flap and skin should d. Any suture which is causing tension produces an area of s, which persists in the parts adjacent to it. If a suture is

not tied too tightly the blanching which follows its insertion p
in a few minutes, and is followed by a red blush. After th
there is always some swelling of the flap and tissues around
therefore, which appears to be slack, will become tighter,

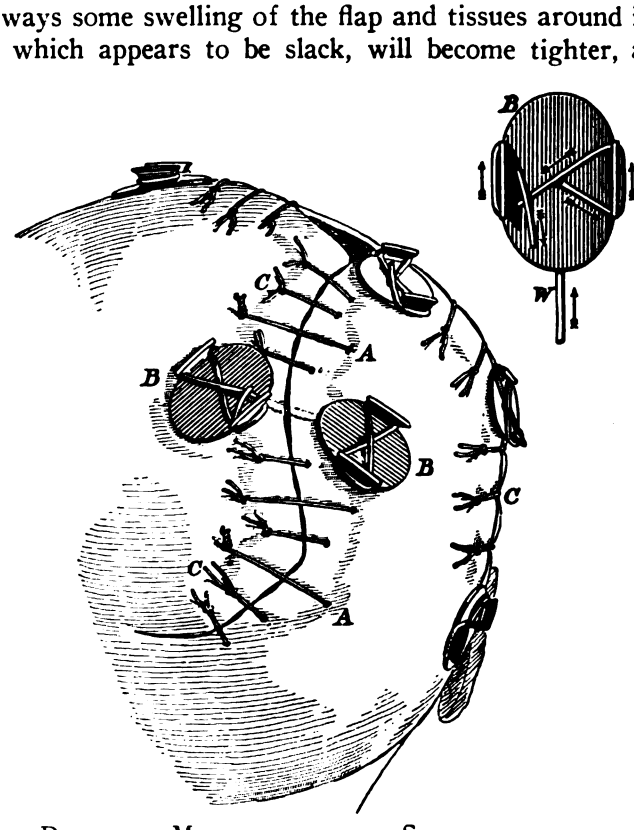
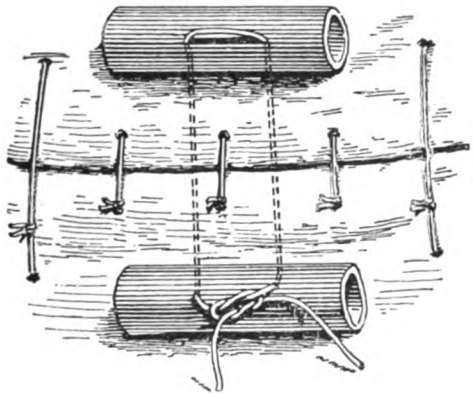


FIG. 172. DIFFERENT METHODS OF USING SUTURES. A, A are used as deep sutures, and passed some distance from the edges. The wire are twisted round one another. B, B are 'relief of tension,' or sutures, fastened to leaden buttons. The smaller figure shows more the wire, W, is fastened to the button. C, C, C are the superficial, or apposition', passed not far from the edges. Instead of being inter often preferable to put them in as a continuous stitch. There shoul sion at all on these stitches.

are tied too tightly, a zone of inflammation with a greater swelling will follow. The pressure of the stitch may lead sloughing, and therefore prevent primary union, and should around several of them, a considerable area of the flap may be Under these circumstances, the advent of sepsis is not infr further sloughing takes place, resulting in complete or partial the operation.

often necessary to use *deep* or *'relief of tension'* stitches in to those uniting the edges. They should be passed at some dis- rom the margins (Figs. 171 and 172) and tied only just tight to bring the deep parts into apposition. Silver wire may be em- for these stitches. The ends of the wire may be passed through a utton and fixed by fastening them to the button in 'a figure-of- r they may be loosely twisted round one another (see Figs. 171). Under each button a pad of gauze must be placed to prevent ughing from its pressure. In the absence of the silver wire and stout silkworm-gut, fastened to small pieces of india-rubber



173. THE METHOD OF USING INDIA-RUBBER TUBING AND SILKWORM-GUT IEF OF TENSION' SUTURES. The gut is first passed through one piece of g, then through the tissues, and finally through the other piece of tubing. tightened, the edges of the raw area will be approximated, and they are ted by the superficial sutures.

does excellently (Fig. 173). When these sutures are applied it is y possible to bring the edges together without tension by the *ial stitches* or *stitches of apposition.* If they cannot be completely as much as possible should be sutured, and the unclosed portions l by granulating, or if an area of some size remains, it may be fted. In passing the sutures, those should be inserted first which e important points opposite to one another and all the deep be- superficial ones.

deep and 'relief of tension' stitches may be removed about the or fifth day; as a rule they should not be left longer than a week. local ulceration may follow from the pressure of the button, if sed. The remaining stitches are removed when the edges appear rmly united, or at such times as may appear to be advisable.

en the flap is taken from a distal portion of the body, such as

a limb, it is necessary to fix the limb to the part being apparatus may be required, or a casing of plaster o ployed. Trials should be made before the operati order to find the most comfortable and tolerable p and the pedicle in these cases should be wide, so tha long as possible and capable of being adjusted witho

THE CLOSURE OF TRIANGULAR G

1. If the gap is small and forms an equilateral may be brought into apposition simply by undercutt

2. If the gap is large, one of the following meth

(*a*) An incision, B D, continues the side A B.

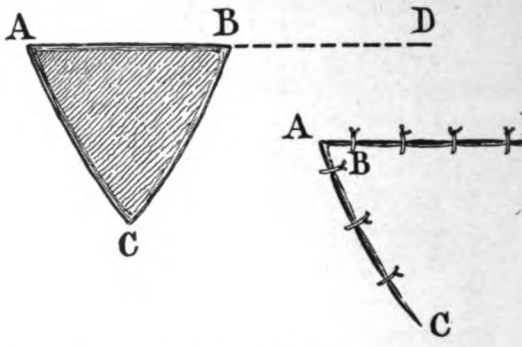


FIG. 174. METHOD OF CLOSING A TRIANGULAR GAP making an incision, B D, the flap C B D can be raised so as to be united by sutures, as in the figure. More accurate tained by the use of a continuous suture.

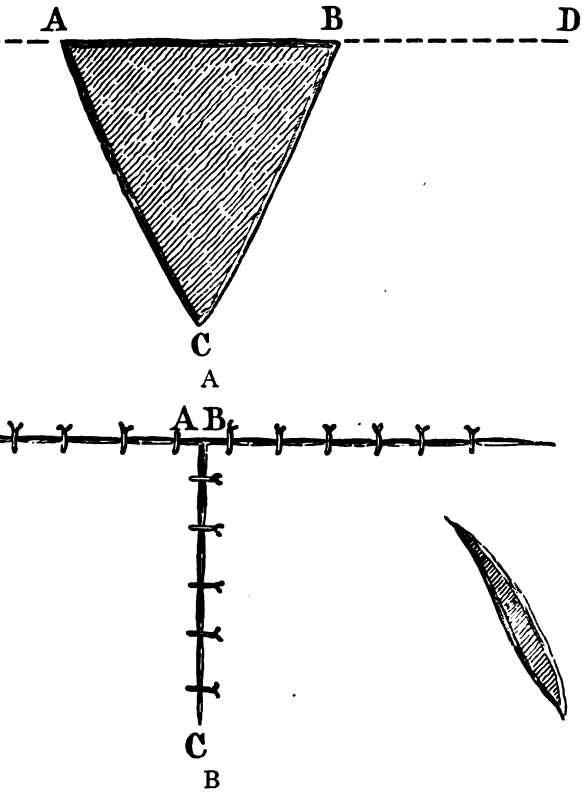
C B D, consisting of skin and subcutaneous tissue, i to allow B C to be sutured to A C (Fig. 174).

(*b*) If one flap is not sufficient, another similar raised from the opposite side of the triangle and the brought together in the middle of the gap. If there the flaps, parallel incisions may be made beyond t When the flaps are in position, oval-shaped gaps are by granulation, or these may be closed by further und around them (Fig. 175).

(*c*) Instead of a straight incision, a curved incis p. 362, is often preferable for marking out the flaps large, and when it is desirable to have a scar as little

LOSURE OF QUADRILATERAL GAPS

may be closed by making the incisions B E and D F
ıe flap E B D F so that B D and A C can be united by
p. 363). If one flap is insufficient, a second flap,



OF CLOSING A TRIANGULAR GAP OF LARGE SIZE. In A the
resent the incisions made to allow of the flaps E A C and
that A C and B C may be united by sutures as in B. If
on the flaps, incisions, in A represented by the vertical
ade to allow the edges to be readily approximated, and the
by making these incisions are shown in B.

tained from the opposite side of the gap by making
ıd H C and sliding the two flaps inwards over the
d B D meet, and are united by sutures. These inci-
ently long to allow the flaps to meet without tension

THE CLOSURE OF ELLIPTICAL GAPS

This may often be effected by simply undermining the ski
edges of the gap (Fig. 180, p. 365), or by means of a cur
E D F, parallel to one of its margins. An incision, C D, div

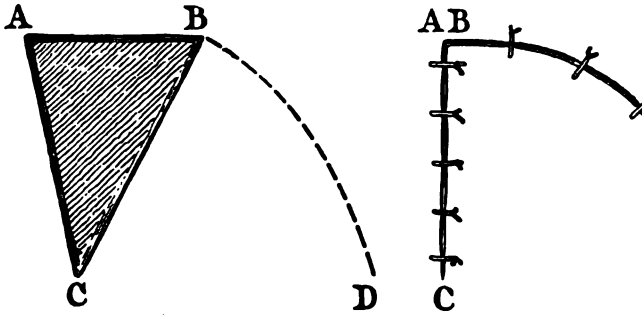


FIG. 176. METHOD OF CLOSING A TRIANGULAR GAP BY USING
INCISION. The flap C B D is dissected up and B C united to

E A B F into two flaps, E D C A and F D C B, which are glided
area so that A C and B C are united to the edge A G B (Fig.

In the closure of any defect, attention must be paid to t
points: (1) As far as possible the incisions should be made p
lines of the vessels, and the division of important nutrient

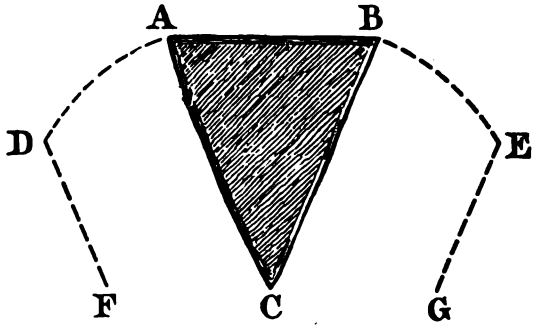
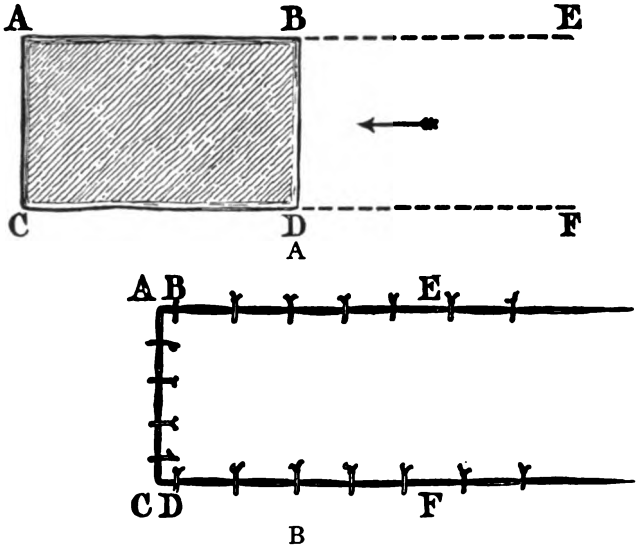


FIG. 177. METHOD OF CLOSING A LARGE TRIANGULAR DEFECT
FLAPS. A quadrilateral flap, F D A C and G E B C, is raised on ea
defect and then glided inwards, so that A C and B C are in contact
sutures.

be avoided; (2) the incisions should be made in the nat
cleavage of the skin; the scars will then be least visible; (3
cutting of the adjacent subcutaneous tissue, provided the wh
part of it is taken up and the skin is not scored on its deep

SKIN GRAFTING

rafting is one of the most important and widely applicable plastic surgery. It may be used when other methods are not available, or in conjunction with them, and is most valuable ng rapid and sound healing, not only of granulating wounds of large freshly-made wounds, which cannot otherwise be



3. Method of closing a Small Quadrilateral Defect. A. The E and D F are made, continuing the sides A B and C D of the gap nto the surrounding tissues. A flap, E B D F, is raised sufficiently freely D to be sutured to A C without tension. This is accomplished by and D F longer than they are here represented.
flap is in position, and its edges are sutured to those of the defect.

t is often required when large raw surfaces are left, such as rns, sloughing of the skin after cellulitis and injuries, ulcers, lupus, and the large wounds remaining after removal of a er or a cancer of the breast, &c. In such cases, a sound supple esirable, and whenever it is important to avoid contraction, e methods of skin-grafting may be employed. To obtain these s essential to carry out the operation with great attention to the which underlie its successful performance. Moreover the ate of health of the patient plays an important part, and unless letails are attended to, the result will be a failure.

rst point is that the raw surface to be grafted must be healthy, e an ulcer, it must have commenced to heal, as shown by the

presence of a thin bluish-red epithelial line at its edges. When these conditions are present, the sooner the raw area is grafted the better will be the ultimate result, because the amount of contraction will be the least possible. A large raw surface left by the removal of a tumour may be grafted at once. It is useless to attempt to graft a septic ulcer or wound.

Secondly, the tissues in the neighbourhood of the area to be grafted must be in a healthy condition. If they are congested or in-

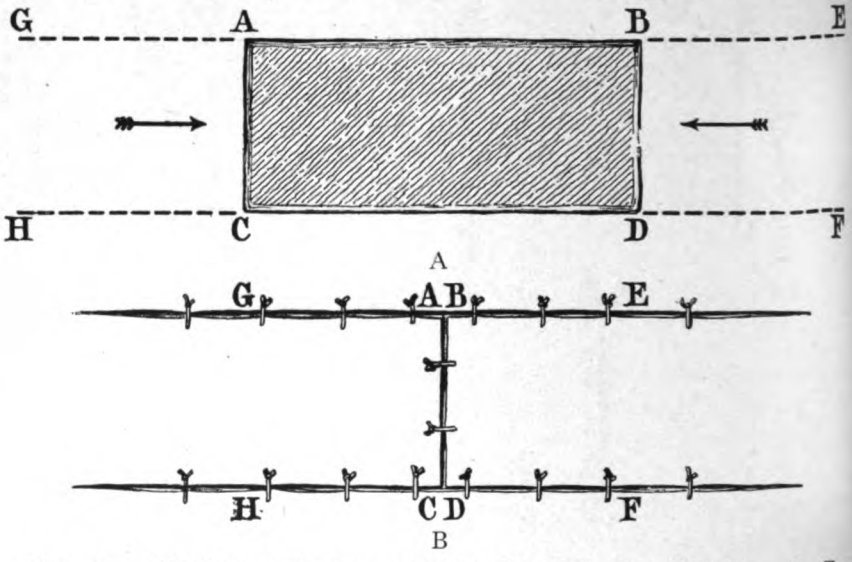
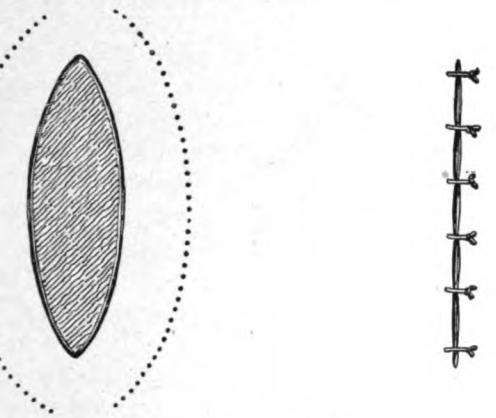


FIG. 179. METHOD OF CLOSING A LARGE QUADRILATERAL DEFECT. A. Two flaps (one from each side of the defect) are dissected up, in a manner similar to that shown in Fig. 178. B. They are then pulled towards the centre of the defect and the apposing edges sutured.

flamed, or otherwise diseased, the grafts are certain not to take, and therefore, before the operation is undertaken, every means must be employed to get the parts into a healthy condition. It is well recognized that many ulcers show no signs of healing so long as the surrounding tissues are diseased. This may be due to local and general causes, and before undertaking skin-grafting any such influences must be remedied; thus, in the case of a chronic ulcer of the leg, varicose veins may require removal, or if the ulcer is due to tertiary syphilis, the patient must be given anti-syphilitic remedies. Tertiary syphilis in itself is not necessarily a contra-indication to skin-grafting, and very successful results may be obtained in such patients provided the general health of the patient and local conditions are satisfactory. In fact, it may be said that if the ulcer shows signs of healing as evidenced by the

, the patient's general health is such that the grafting successful. In old and feeble patients with a poor diabetics or those with extensive disease of the lungs, not succeed.

tuation of the raw surface to be grafted has an impor- e result. Absolute rest and firm pressure are essential herefore in parts of the body, such as the limbs, a is more frequent than where immobility is less easy



Closure of an Elliptical Area by undermining the aneous Tissues around it. The dotted lines indicate the should be done. The edges are then united by a continuous re.

e neck and back. In the neighbourhood of joints, manent results may be obtained provided that care nt movements being carried out too soon after the been grafted and healed. Lastly, the after-treatment

of the operation itself may be considered under the

ration of the raw area to be grafted, and of the area rafts are to be taken.
od of grafting.
treatment.

tion of the raw area to be grafted. It has been he raw area must be as aseptic as possible and there- be taken to obtain this condition. The surrounding ed and thoroughly washed with ether soap and water, or

ordinary soap and turpentine may be used, the parts being t
scrubbed with a nail-brush. The skin is then washed
500 biniodide of mercury in spirit and afterwards with 1 in
chloride of mercury lotion. If an ulcer, hot fomentations are a
changed every three or four hours. The fomentations may
with boro-glyceride, sanitas and water, or chlorinated soda if
is very foul.

The use of strong germicides may be discussed here. T
doubt that these are very efficacious in destroying septic gra

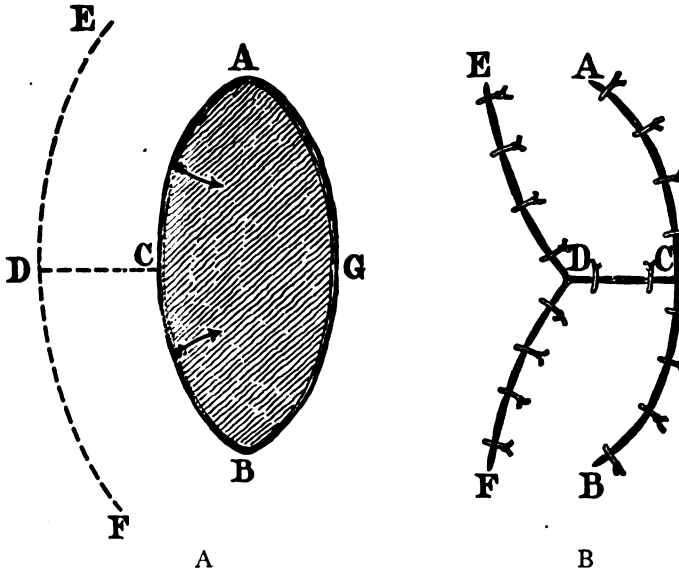


FIG. 181. CLOSURE OF A LARGE ELLIPTICAL AREA BY MEANS OF
A the curved incision E D F is made parallel to the edge A C B, and
vening portion of skin and subcutaneous tissue is divided by the i
into two flaps, which are glided over the raw area, and sutured as
tissues on the outer side of E D F and A G B may require to be unde
that the edges may be sutured without tension.

but they also impair the vitality of the underlying healthy ti
should therefore be only used sparingly and at the commencem
preparatory treatment. It is unnecessary to use any such agents
ulcer is not very foul; they lower the vitality of the young gro
and render them more susceptible to any micro-organisms which
access to the wound. Of these powerful germicides, undilute
acid is the best: it is applied by dipping a small piece of spong
into the acid, thoroughly rubbing the surface of the granula
edges of the ulcer, and allowing it to act for some minutes. A

mporarily produced, but it passes off in a short time. An-
ous way of getting rid of the foul granulations is to scrape
sharp spoon, whilst the patient is under a general anæsthetic:
he preparatory treatment is being carried out, every
ld be taken to improve the local conditions, the skin
the ulcer being regularly washed and disinfected. Eighteen
our hours previous to the operation, the whole region is
d and enveloped in a dressing of sterilized gauze, wrung
2,000 perchloride of mercury, covered with protective and

eparation of the area from which the grafts are to The area from which the grafts are taken should be as airs as possible. The front of the thigh, the flexor aspect or forearm, will therefore usually be the sites selected. ust be thoroughly disinfected by scrubbing with ether soap, iodide lotion (1 in 500), followed by 1 in 2,000 perchloride, dressing wrung out of the latter lotion and covered with tissue is put on. It is advisable to do this preparation ours before the operation, and to repeat it in twenty-four

ethod of grafting. Under this heading the following o be considered:—

final preparation of the ulcer.
cutting of the grafts.
lressing and after-treatment.

final preparation of the ulcer. The patient having etized, the ulcer is first scraped with a sharp spoon, to remove ulations and to leave a smooth, raw, even bed of new-formed e. The edges of the ulcer must be removed at the same time, aping or cutting them away. The raw surface bleeds freely, ential to arrest the hæmorrhage, after having first washed parated granulation tissue by douching with 1 in 2,000 per-nercury lotion, followed by sterilized normal saline solution. the most efficient means of arresting the bleeding. A arge piece of dextrinized protective or gutta-percha tissue, reviously been sterilized by keeping it for a prolonged time rbolic acid lotion, is laid flat on the raw surface and covered f gauze. A sterilized bandage is then firmly applied out-ze, or, if the area is small, an assistant can make the desired nually. It is well to make some small holes in the protective, be rinsed in sterilized salt solution or boracic acid lotion used. The protective or gutta-percha tissue is applied to the

raw surface in preference to making direct pressure by gauz
latter adheres to the raw surfaces, and when removed f
occurs. One of the most essential points to be attended to
should be no oozing going on when the grafts are place
Whilst the hæmorrhage is being arrested, the grafts are
before doing this it is advisable for the operator to th
infect his hands or to put on sterilized gloves and during t

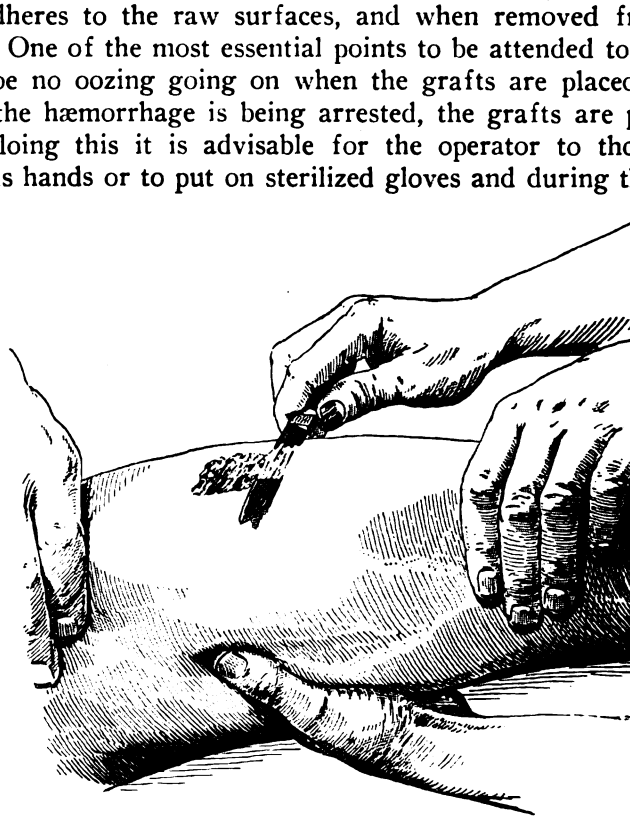


FIG. 182. THIERSCH'S METHOD OF SKIN-GRAFTING. To show
should be held, and the position of the hands to steady and make
On the right leg it is convenient to cut the grafts from below upwa
reverse direction on the left leg.

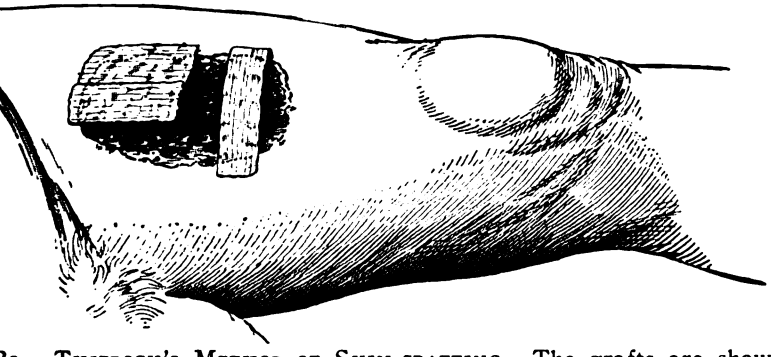
of the operation to use sterilized salt solution or dilute
lotion.

2. The cutting of the grafts. There are three me
ting the grafts: (1) *Thiersch's*, (2) *Reverdin's*, (3) *Wolfe's*
is the best and most widely applicable method, but there
when it may be desirable to use one of the other methods.
is employed the utmost delicacy and care in handling the
be exercised.

1. *Thiersch's method* (Figs. 182 and 183). The grafts
whole thickness of the epidermis together with the superfici
the cutis vera, so that the tips of the papillæ are just sev

e cut too thick they curl up and become very difficult to manipu-
ıe proper thickness of the grafts is obtained when the raw sur-
by their removal shows numerous minute punctiform hæmor-
If this thickness of skin only is removed no scarring follows.
ourse of time it becomes almost impossible to distinguish the
ɔm which the grafts were taken, though a certain amount of
wn pigmentation may be left; in fact the same site can be used,
ary, for providing a second series of grafts.

few simple instruments are required; these are a knife, a
cissors, dissecting forceps, a couple of fine probes, and possibly



83. THIERSCH'S METHOD OF SKIN-GRAFTING. The grafts are shown
ı on the area to be covered. The overlapping of the grafts, and of the
r the edges of the raw area, is shown.

smooth metallic spatula (Fig. 184) for transferring the grafts.
's razor, which has a broad flat surface (Fig. 185), is used by
rgeons, but an amputating knife with a blade four or five inches
ıe best kind of knife to use. Whatever kind of cutting instru-
employed, it must be extremely sharp in order to work easily;
: in sterilizing it some means must be taken to protect the edge.
ıe grafts are being cut the blade should be kept moistened with
saline solution or boracic acid lotion; unless this is done the
lhere to the blade and curl up.

skin is kept as tightly stretched as possible in the long axis of
the assistant placing his hands one above and the other below
ed area (Fig. 182). The operator grasps the limb from behind
s with his left hand and keeps it on the stretch in a lateral direc-
he same time pushing the muscles forwards so as to have a flat
The blade of the knife is placed at such an angle, that when it
es the skin, the graft shall be of the requisite thickness. The
cut by a rapid, even, lateral sawing movement and should be as

large as possible. With practice, grafts four or five inches or more in length and two inches wide may be easily cut. The final severance of the graft is often best accomplished by cutting with scissors. The number required will depend on the size of the raw area to be covered and the size

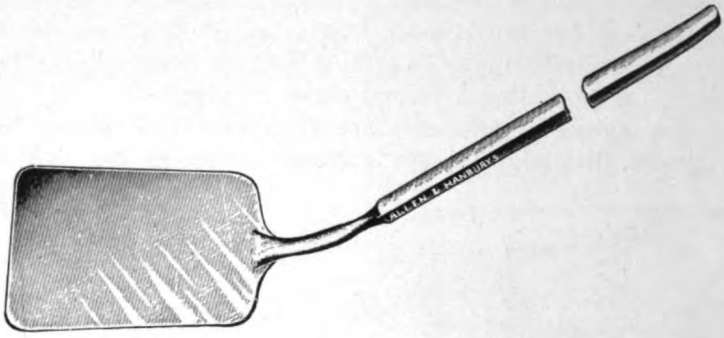


FIG. 184. A BROAD SMOOTH METALLIC SPATULA FOR TRANSFERRING THE SKIN GRAFTS.

of the individual grafts. If many are needed, each one as it is cut may be left lying on the bleeding surface or may be transferred to normal saline solution at a temperature of 100° F. Either of these methods is preferable to the immediate transference of each graft to the area to be covered.

The dressing is cautiously removed from the raw area and any blood is carefully wiped away from its surface. The graft is gently lifted by

FIG. 185. THIERSCH'S KNIFE FOR CUTTING SKIN GRAFTS.

the forceps, or if it is large, placed on the spatula with the raw surface downwards, and transferred to the wound, where, by means of the probe, it is uniformly and evenly spread out. Each graft must be placed in close contact with its neighbour or their edges be allowed to overlap; if this is not done any uncovered area would become covered with skin, but the scar at such places is likely to be thin and to break down. The margins of the ulcer or wound should likewise be overlapped by the grafts for about one-eighth or a quarter of an inch (Fig. 183). No air or fluid must be allowed to remain between the under surface of a graft and the raw area. Any such accumulation may be got rid of, by making firm

on the grafts by means of long broad pieces of sterilized pro-
asped at each end and stretched tightly across the grafts. Once
s are in position, every care must be taken not to displace them.
everdin's method. This method consists of snipping off small
the superficial layers of the epidermis and placing them on the
of the ulcer at short distances (half an inch) from each other.
ces form foci from which the epithelium spreads over the ulcer
he grafts be placed close enough together the ulcer is soon
l. If the separate growths of epithelium do not coalesce, the
ng granulation tissue becomes converted into bands of scar
nich is very likely to be the starting-point of fresh ulceration.
method is inferior to Thiersch's, but it is useful in some cases of
the face and in large burns on the trunk when the whole area
e covered in by the Thiersch grafts. It hastens the healing pro-
to some extent diminishes the amount of subsequent contraction.
Wolfe's method. The whole thickness of the skin without any
bcutaneous fat is employed to form the graft. The size of the
st be larger than the area to be covered to allow for the con-
of the skin, and it must be taken from some part (usually the
here the cicatrization of the wound left by its removal will
the least amount of inconvenience.
graft must be taken from a part of the body which is free from
the normal structures in the skin are neither absorbed nor de-
The whole of the fat is removed, and the graft is well stretched
acing it in position. It may be fixed by means of a few stitches.
ccessful this method provides a thick and complete covering for
The amount of scar tissue is greatly diminished, and thereby
ncy to reproduction of the deformity. It is therefore especially
r cases of burns of the hands and fingers.
ad of a portion of skin, the healthy prepuce removed by circum-
ay be employed; but it is not easy to sterilize, and there is a
dency for it to curl up. It should be divided into small por-
ich are placed close to one another.
objection to the method is that it is not so successful as
's: part or even the entire central portion of the graft may
n any case the superficial epithelium is shed in the course of a
s, but provided the deeper part remains, the wound is speedily
n.

The Dressing and After-treatment. As soon as all the
e in position, they are covered by a sterilized layer of protective
forated piece of thin silver foil, outside which a thick layer of
gauze is applied, and the whole is firmly and uniformly band-

aged. If necessary some sort of splint may be used. Com absolute rest must be secured, in order that the grafts may the raw surface. The place from which the grafts were ol dressed in a similar manner, this dressing being left undistur week or ten days, by which time the surface will usually be heal

The dressing on the grafted surface will require changing fourth or fifth day. In those cases where the asepticity of t is certain, it is possible to defer the first dressing for a week. care must be taken not to disturb the grafts during the remov protective, and if on removal of the gauze there is no pus or the protective need not be disturbed. To detach the protecti of normal saline, or 1 in 4,000 perchloride of mercury lotion, used. If the grafts are of a pink or reddish colour they are whitish or greyish, they no longer live. The protective is reapp fresh outside dressings and bandages as before, and the wound i subsequently as often as seems necessary.

In the after-treatment it is important to protect the newl area, both from injuries, and from being detached by moveme adjacent structures; therefore a period of prolonged rest is nec get a permanently sound scar; this is especially indicated in th chronic ulcers of the leg. At the same time appropriate means to the nutrition of the surrounding skin must be adopted. A dilut unirritating ointment or oily preparation should be kept consta plied when there is any tendency to thickness or cracking of dermis of the grafts.

CHAPTER II

RHINOPLASTY

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

ASTIC operations on the nose are performed for congenital and d defects. In this chapter only the external defects or abnormali- l be considered. True congenital defects are very rare and in the ajority of the cases which require rhinoplasty, the deformity is injury, an operation, or disease. These defects or deformities divided into three classes: (1) The nose may be totally destroyed, by syphilis, and be represented by one or two openings on the d some cicatricial tissue. Occasionally such a condition is due to (2) Partial destruction, usually of the cartilaginous portions— the tip, and septum—the bony portions remaining intact. Such may be the result of syphilis, lupus, injury, frost-bite, or an on for the removal of tumours. (3) Deformity from sinking in ridge, secondary to an injury or syphilis. As a result of syphilitic s, or defective development due to congenital syphilis, the bony may be almost absent, and the nostrils are directed forwards of downwards.

noplastic operations are divided into (1) **complete,** in which the nose has to be re-formed, and (2) **partial,** in which the restora- some part, such as the tip, the alæ, the septum, or the bridge, is d. In any case, a flap operation is almost invariably employed, the ng taken from the forehead or face, or from more distal parts, the arm.

en a complete rhinoplastic operation is required one of the fol- methods may be used:—

In the Indian method the flap is obtained from the forehead and into position. An obvious objection is the large scar which is the forehead; and, of course, the method is inapplicable when head is the seat of cicatrices. (*b*) *In the French method* the flaps ined from the adjacent portions of the cheek. It is most suitable se cases in which the upper part of the nose is intact. (*c*) *In the or Tagliacotian method* the flap is taken from the arm. It has not dely adopted, and is only to be used when other methods are able or unavailable. The chief objections to this method are

the constrained position of the arm and the cumbersome apparatus required to keep the parts in apposition. Moreover, the flap is not so well adapted for the purpose as one obtained from the forehead. Whichever of these three methods is employed the final results are never very satisfactory when the whole nose has to be restored. The chief drawbacks are (1) the difficulty of forming a columella, and (2) the tendency to continued contraction of the anterior nares of the new nose, a tendency which persists for many months. The new-formed nose at first may appear to be very good, but it shrinks, in such a way that sooner or later a shapeless mass of skin is left on the face. In addition the scarring causes marked disfigurement when the flaps are taken from the adjacent portions of the face or from the forehead. These operations are rarely practised at the present day, and before performing them the surgeon should see whether a better cosmetic effect cannot be obtained by the use of a carefully moulded and coloured artificial nose.

Partial rhinoplastic operations are much more satisfactory and are frequently practised. For the restoration of the bridge, bone has been successfully transplanted, in some cases, from an animal such as the rabbit; and during recent years the subcutaneous injection of paraffin has been largely and very successfully employed to restore the shape of the bridge.

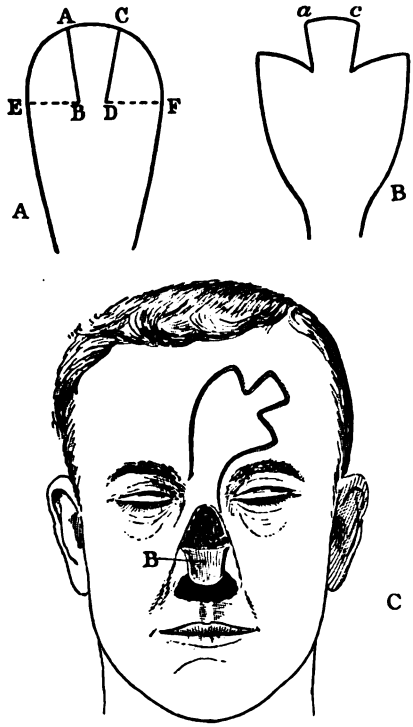
It is, perhaps, hardly necessary to reiterate the caution already given, that all signs of active local disease, syphilis, tubercle, or other inflammatory conditions, must be absent before undertaking any of these operations.

COMPLETE RHINOPLASTIC OPERATIONS

THE INDIAN METHOD

A piece of gutta-percha tissue to indicate the size and shape of the flap is laid flat on the forehead in the position from which it is proposed to take the flap, which is then marked out fully one quarter or a third of an inch larger in all its dimensions, in order to allow for shrinkage. The edges of the defect are refreshed and freed from the underlying parts, so that the attachment of the frontal flap may be made more secure with the borders of the skin around the defect. If there is any healthy skin left at the root of the nose it should be detached from above downwards, as a quadrilateral flap, its attached margin being at the lower end (see Fig. 186, C). The raw surface of this flap will then be directed outwards; it serves to support the frontal flap, and at the same time diminishes the amount of subsequent shrinkage. The forehead flap should be more or less pyriform in shape (Fig. 186, A) or cut after Langenbeck's

g. 186, B), and should be placed obliquely on the forehead, es-
en the latter is a low one and the line of the hair comes far
are must be exercised not to place it transversely, as the con-



THE INDIAN METHOD OF RHINOPLASTY. A is the outline of a
ped flap. A B and C D represent the lines for marking out the
he dotted lines B E and D F indicate the lines along which the
d C D F are folded to form the alæ of the nostrils. A C is sutured to
w area on the upper lip.
its Langenbeck's method of cutting the flap. The prominent part
umella, *a c* being sutured to the upper lip.
ap is shown in position on the forehead: one margin of the pedicle
nner limit of the eyebrow and the other reaches to the raw area on
s a quadrilateral flap, turned downwards from the outer surface of
point of attachment is at the lower extremity of the nasal bones:
ce is directed forwards, and is covered by the forehead flap which
upport.

he scar may then draw up the corresponding eyebrow. The
the flap serves to minimize the risk of the vessels being un-
essed in the pedicle when it is twisted into position. One
ncision is carried down into the refreshed area, the other one

ceases about the level of the inner end of the eyebrow (see Fig. the latter incision may be continued horizontally outward, if nece make the turning of the flap easier. The pedicle is thus place root of the nose and is made as broad as possible and cont nutrient artery, viz. the frontal. The incisions are carried dow bone; the whole flap, including the periosteum, is then disse (There are two possible objections to dissecting up the periosteu the frontal bone may superficially necrose, (*b*) the periosteum bone-forming function and therefore is useless from this point Most surgeons, however, include the periosteum in the flap.) recommended to remove by a chisel a thin layer of bone and tr it together with the flap in order to better retain the shape of t All hæmorrhage being arrested, the flap is rotated into positio care not to twist the pedicle more than necessary. If a pyriform been made, the two longitudinal cuts, A B, C D (see Fig. 186, made, dividing it into three parts; the middle part forms the c and the two lateral parts, after being bent back along the lines form the alæ nasi.

The septum is formed from the middle portion of the flap by it longitudinally and securing this longitudinal fold by means c sutures. The two lateral portions are also doubled on themselv 186, A) for the formation of the alæ nasi, and secured in the s by catgut sutures. If by the doubling of the lateral portions th made too thick and the nostrils too small, the excision of a smal shaped portion or the removal of the subcutaneous tissue may ployed to overcome the difficulty.

The flap is sutured to the defect with fine silkworm-gut c hair sutures, the edges being carefully brought into apposition tension. If a columella has been formed, it is sutured to a g bed made for it in the mid-line of the lip, but in many case the forehead is a low one, it is advisable to form the columella upper lip, either at once, or at a later period. The lower ape the nose must be supported by gauze plugs, or if the nostrils h formed, a small drainage tube is inserted into each. The defe forehead is closed as completely as possible by sutures, any re portion being grafted by Thiersch's method.

The new-formed nose may be left without a dressing or else collodion dressing may be applied. The sutures remain untou four or five days, and their removal is then gradually accomplish gauze in the lower opening will require to be changed twice daily; the drainage tubes should be changed frequently, but no removed for some weeks. The pedicle of the forehead flap is di

of four to six weeks, the redundant portion being removed or in the lower portion of the forehead wound. Secondary operal probably be required to improve the alæ, but these should undertaken till the nose has ceased to shrink.

THE ITALIAN METHOD

s method the flap is taken from the anterior surface of the upper sutured to the defect. The arm is fixed to the forehead, and is position for three or four weeks, when the pedicle is severed operation completed. A full account of the method may be a paper by the late Sir William MacCormac in the *Clinical Transactions*, vol. x, p. 181.

PARTIAL RHINOPLASTIC OPERATIONS

OPERATIONS FOR DEFECTS OF THE BRIDGE

lle-back nose. In a typical case, the bridge is completely l and on a level with the cheeks, the cartilaginous portion being vards so that the nostrils look forwards instead of downwards. rmity may be due to a depressed fracture, or to necrosis after r may have followed congenital or acquired syphilis. In the es there is likely to be a considerable amount of scar tissue, and s are not so good as in the former cases.

bjects of the operation are: (1) to restore the shape of the some means which will be permanent; (2) to correct the of the nostrils. Very many operations have been devised, ine use of frameworks made of gold, amber, aluminium, &c., but esent day these latter are not employed.

Watson Cheyne's method [1] (Fig. 187, A). A median vertical inmade from the root of the nose downwards on to the cartilagition, extending on the latter for a quarter of an inch. Transsions are then made at the upper and lower ends of this incision, ning two lateral flaps, which are dissected up, taking if possible steum and fragment of the nasal bones which may be present. laginous portion of the nose is then separated from the remains ny portion, the nasal cavity being opened and the cartilaginous ivided sufficiently to enable the tip of the nose to be readily to its normal position. Two vertical and parallel incisions, ut an eighth of an inch on either side of the median line and half an inch above the root of the nose, are carried upwards orehead to the margin of the hair, and their upper ends are

[1] e and Burghard, *Manual of Surgical Treatment*, Part V, p. 154.

united by a transverse cut. These incisions divide all the
down to the bone. A narrow chisel being introduced a
lateral incision and into the upper transverse incision, a
the external table of the frontal bone is separated together
soft parts. The flap is then turned downwards, and when
end is reached the bone is broken across. The flap is rotat
when in position it will have on its outer surface a thin lay
and on its deep surface the soft parts of the forehead, *i.e.*
directed towards the nasal cavity. The flap must be long e

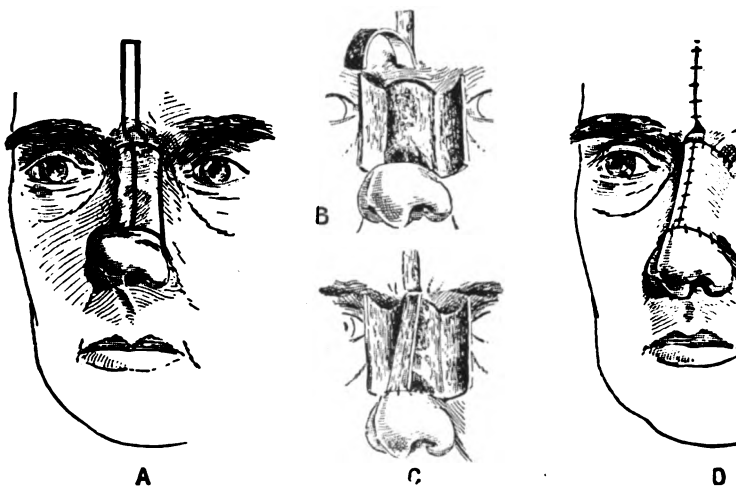


FIG. 187. SIR WATSON CHEYNE'S METHOD OF RESTORING THE BRI
NOSE. A shows the lines of incision for the various flaps. In B the
been reflected and the tip of the nose freed and brought into posi
the reflected flap from the forehead is sutured in position, while in D
flaps have been brought together over the reflected forehead flap.
triangular gap left at the root of the nose is afterwards filled by
pedicle of the forehead flap, which is trimmed into shape and turne
(Cheyne and Burghard's *Manual of Surgical Treatment.*)

its free end to be attached to the cartilaginous portion when this
into its proper position, and to enable this to be done without
may be necessary to prolong the lateral incisions a little d
on each side of the root of the nose; but a sufficiently bro
must be left for the proper nutrition of the flap. The flap
to the freshened end of the cartilaginous portion of the ga
its cutaneous surface covers the aperture between the bony
laginous portions of the nose. Above this gap the skin on t
surface of the flap is carefully shaved off, in order to make
adhere to the remaining refreshed surfaces of the bridge. A

se there is a certain redundance of the skin from the folding
licle, which will be divided subsequently and the excess turned
The lateral flaps are finally replaced and united over the raw
f the reflected forehead flap. The upper transverse incisions
curved downwards and outwards; this allows a certain amount
of the flaps downwards so that they can cover the opening
he tip of the nose and the new bridge. The incision in the
is readily stitched up and leaves a hardly perceptible scar.
d of three weeks the base of the reflected flap is divided and
portion remaining is trimmed into a triangular shape and fitted
ower part of the vertical incision.

ew bony bridge tends to sink downwards as healing occurs
s a rule not be high enough.

transplant in nasal depressions. When there is a marked
n of the bridge of the nose, which often follows marked in-
estruction of the tissues due to syphilis or other diseases, the
plastic operation employing soft tissues would be of no avail.
be of case the bone transplant offers by far the better solution.

nique. A curved incision with the convexity downward is
he root of the nose. The incision is carried through the sub-
tissues to the bone. A blunt-pointed dissector is inserted at
, carefully separating the skin and subcutaneous tissues over
e of the nose from the underlying bone structure. The cuta-
should be made thick enough to avoid danger of subsequent
nd great care should be used that the instrument does not
the mucous membrane of the nose. The dissection is carried
n to the tip of the nose and laterally to the junction of the
the cheek. A small bone graft is taken from a rib and is cut
ned to a suitable size to fit the individual case. This graft is
nto the furrow prepared. The tip of the graft should come
n toward the point of the nose, the upper edge being securely
nder a little ledge prepared in the periosteum of the frontal
he skin incision is closed by fine horsehair suture without
and a dressing applied. Care should be used that the graft is
aced until fixation occurs.

ann advises the use of a cartilage splint in place of the bone
When cartilage is used it can be taken from the costal cartilage
omparatively simple to trim this graft with an ordinary scalpel
ct form and size desired to reconstruct the nose. It is placed
n in the same manner as in the previously described operation.
uccess of either operation depends upon absolute asepsis and
chnique to avoid injury of the underlying structures in the

nose, thereby lessening the possibility of infection travelling th mucous membrane about the place of the graft.

The Subcutaneous Injection of Paraffin for the Restorat Bridge. This method was first introduced by Gersuny in 190 been extensively employed in the correction of saddle-back nc most suitable cases are those in which the deformity is secon depressed fracture of the nasal bones, and those in which ther tive development of the bridge due to congenital syphilis. The the bridge should be supple, thick, and freely movable: if cicatricial, or closely adherent to the periosteum, the case is n able, and the results are not so good; when these adhesions a they may be divided by introducing a tenotome, and cutting the blade parallel to the skin.

The best kind of paraffin to use is one which has a mel of 110° to 115° F. A special syringe with screw pressure is The skin of the nose must be efficiently disinfected. The syringe, and needle are first sterilized and then placed in bath at a temperature of 6° or 7° above the melting-poi paraffin, which is allowed to become semi-solid or opaque in th before it is injected. The injection must be given slowly and The skin having been pinched up, the needle with its poin upwards and passed well under the skin, is entered on one s mid-line and some distance below the place where the bri to be.

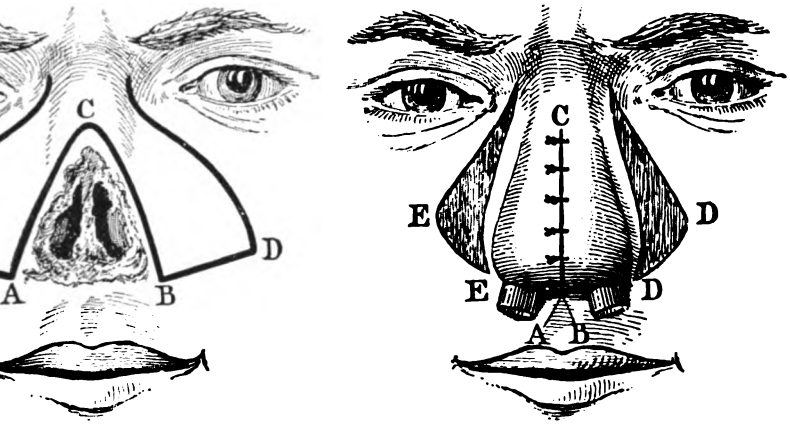
The quantity to be injected varies, and should be rather that required to entirely remove the deformity. The needle s be withdrawn until the required amount is injected, and i necessary to repeat the operation to improve still more the a of the patient. After the withdrawal of the needle, the pu sealed with a collodion dressing. The skin at first becor and tense, the degree depending on the quantity of paraffin some inflammatory reaction may follow in a few hours, th slowly subsiding, or perhaps persisting for many days. Pa usually complained of, but there may be some tenderness. T obtained by this method in suitable cases are excellent and p but it is important to recognize that it has its limitations. M dents have occurred from the use of hot paraffin, which are a the use of cold paraffin. This method is superior to that in whi paraffin is employed. In the latter the operation has to be quickly, and diffusion of the paraffin into the eyelids is not u Moreover, in the former method an assistant is not necessary is no fear of poisoning and very little of sloughing or suppurat

althy. Failure is usually due to insufficient antiseptic precau-
ecause too much paraffin has been used.

in has also been successfully employed for elevating depressed
ecially those on the face, for filling large bony cavities and the
ıs remaining after removal of the upper jaw. It has also been
success in the treatment of prolapse of the rectum and of the

ERATIONS FOR RESTORATION OF THE SOFT PARTS

e's operation. When the end of the nose only has been de-
his operation (Fig. 188) may be employed. Two flaps are
ut, one on each cheek, having a median conjoint pedicle at the



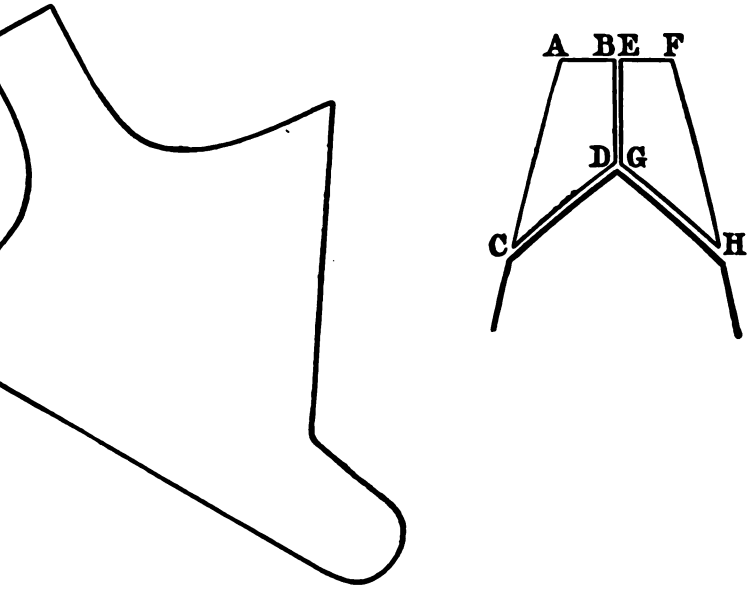
3. Syme's Operation for the Restoration of the Soft Parts of
In the left-hand figure the incisions marking out the flaps are shown,
w area on the nose, the edges of which are refreshed. In the right-
e the flaps are in position, and the edges A C, B C sutured. A small
ainage tube has been placed in each nostril. The areas from which
re raised are closed, partly by undermining the adjacent cheek and
kin-grafting.

e nose between the inner canthi. The size of the flaps is regu-
he size of the nose which it is required to restore according to
ents previously made. The area to be closed having been care-
eshed, the flaps are dissected up and united in the middle line
bleeding has been arrested. The outer edges of the flaps are
the raw area at a proper distance to form the nasal orifice. It
le, if possible, to fold over the free inferior margin of the flaps
the apposed raw surfaces in order to have a cutaneous surface
rgin of the new nostrils which are supported by drainage tubes.

The septum may be formed at a later date from the upper lip. of the wounds left in the cheeks are brought together as clo sible, any unclosed area being left to granulate, or it may be s By this method a conspicuous frontal scar is avoided, but apt to be very flat, as there is a good deal of shrinkage.

Keegan's method. This method was introduced to r which had been mutilated by injury, and is only applicable, i extent, to those cases in which the skin and tissues over the have been undamaged. Superimposed flaps are employed; taken from the forehead, the size of it being proportioned of the patient. This flap is placed obliquely on the forehea pedicle at the internal angle of the orbit, and it must contain artery. The other flaps are taken from the skin of the b method is thus described in the *Lancet*, vol. i, Feb. 21, cavities on both sides of the septum are plugged with pledg to which sutures are attached. The operation is begun by c converging incisions from two points slightly external to the alæ nasi to two points about three-quarters of an inch a bridge of the nose where a pair of spectacles would rest. points on the bridge of the nose are now joined by a horizon A F (Fig. 189). This horizontal incision is bisected and a p incision, B D, E G, is drawn downwards from the point of bise as far as where the nasal bones join on to the cartilage of t other words, this perpendicular incision follows the course of the nasal bones, but is not carried down as far as their infer The skin and tissues are now dissected from off the nasal above downwards in two flaps, A B C D and E F G H (Fig. 189 inferior borders of the flap, C D and G H, are not interfer constitute the attachment of the flaps to the structures and t clothe the inferior borders of the nasal bones where they join of the nose. If these two flaps are reflected downwards so th surfaces look forwards and their cutaneous surfaces look it will be found that they overlap in the centre. The surgeo fore, a redundancy which he can utilize a little later on, v raised the flap from the forehead. He now proceeds to do flap has the shape shown in Fig. 189, its size being marked o to that of the nose to be restored. 'This flap should emb tissues down to the pericranium, and should be handled as l sible. The sides of the gap in the forehead are approximate as possible with horsehair sutures, and it is surprising how area is left behind on the forehead if the approximation of the gap be carefully and rapidly carried out. Attention is n

ing a bed for the reception of the columella, and this does re any description. The two flaps, A B C D and E F G H, which ady been raised from off the nasal bones, are now reflected ds, and as they overlap in the centre, two triangular pieces are and placed in the middle of the gap left in the forehead, in order te the healing of the frontal scar. The forehead flap is now



9. KEEGAN'S METHOD OF RHINOPLASTY. On the left hand the shape ehead flap is shown; on the right hand, the incisions marking out the . (*Lancet*, February 21, 1891.)

down over the nasal bones and rests inferiorly on the two re- ps, A B C D and E F G H, which have already been raised from the es. The raw surface of the frontal flap inferiorly lies on the aces of the two reflected nasal flaps, and the nostrils of the med nose are therefore lined inside with the skin of the reflected s. The free inferior margins of the forehead flap and the nasal now brought together by horsehair sutures. The columellar f the forehead flap is now fixed in the bed prepared for it by nd the two original incisions drawn from the root of the alæ ither side to the bridge of the nose are deepened and bevelled e reception of the sides or lateral margins of the forehead flap. al margins of the forehead flap are most accurately stitched air sutures to the bed prepared for them. Two pieces of drain-

age tube are inserted into the newly formed nostrils. If th pedicle of the newly formed nose is broad enough and is no upon, and the angular artery has not been wounded, there need of sloughing, and the new nose will largely adhere by first The pedicle is divided at the end of a fortnight and a wedge-sh is cut out of the root, so that the new nose may not be parr As the inside of each nostril is lined by skin, the drainage tu discarded at the end of ten days.

OPERATIONS FOR RESTORATION OF THE ALÆ NASI SIDE OF THE NOSE

It is impossible to give a detailed account of the actual which may be required in any given case. A flap will be requ cases, and this may be obtained (1) from the opposite side of (2) from the same side of the nose above the defect; (3) adjacent portion of the cheek. The first and second methods c ployed only when the skin of the nose is sound.

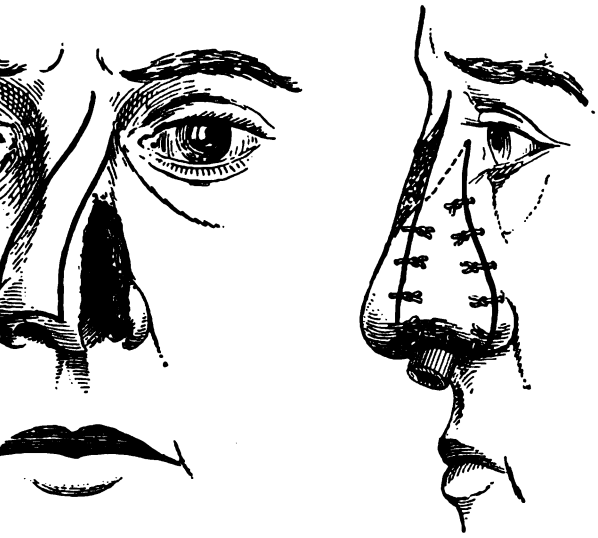
By a flap taken from the sound side of the nose. *beck's method.* The base of the flap is placed near the inne the orbit of the affected side. The edges of the defect are refr sutured to those of the flap. The raw area left by elevation is covered by skin-grafts, or by undercutting the skin of the gliding it over the raw area. The flap should be long enoug the lower border to be folded on itself to form a more natural r the nostril, and a small drainage tube is placed in the new nostril to support it (Fig. 190).

By a flap taken from the same side of the nose.[1] incision, A B D (Fig. 191), is made down to the periosteum anterior edge of the defect up to a point a short distance internal to the inner canthus of the eye. A second curve B E C, of about the same length is made downwards and outw the upper border of the naso-labial fold to a point about one inc to the outer margin of the gap. The flap, thus obtained, is sected downwards and includes everything down to, but not the facial artery and vein. The neighbouring parts of the upper lip are freely raised by undercutting them.

The tissues on either side of A D are dissected up to fo groove for the reception of the edge of the transplanted flap. is folded on itself and then twisted inwards and downward the upper angle, B, is brought down to the tip of the nose a upper half, B E, of the outer edge of the flap is then sutured to

[1] Berry, *Clinical Society's Transactions*, vol. xxxviii, p. 174

irst incision along the side of the nose. The raw inner flap is thus left free to form part of the anterior edge ostril; this granulation edge curls inwards and disap- new ala. The lower part, C E, of the outer edge of the oubled upon itself, and this portion of the flap is sent a prominent angle in imitation of the prominent



A B

ENBECK'S METHOD OF RHINOPLASTY. In A the flap is shown sound side of the nose. In B it is stitched in position and rted by a drainage tube. The stitches holding the folded flap in position are shown.

ala. The triangular raw area, D B E, can be closed by fly on the side of the cheek. Deep tension sutures will red, or the gap may be closed by skin-grafting if its rought together.

illustrated in Fig. 192 the lower part of the septum he left ala of the nose had been destroyed by gangrene ic fever. An incision, A D B, was made, the point A ne level of the lower limit of the nostril of the opposite t B just above the inferior margin of the nasal bone. letely separated the remains of the ala along B D. On e scar tissue was freely removed, so as to form a broad oblique incision, B C, then separated the whole thick- arts below C B D as a thick flap, which was detached

from the nasal bone. The whole flap, C B D, was rotated dow
that D was opposite A and the part of the incision B D opposit

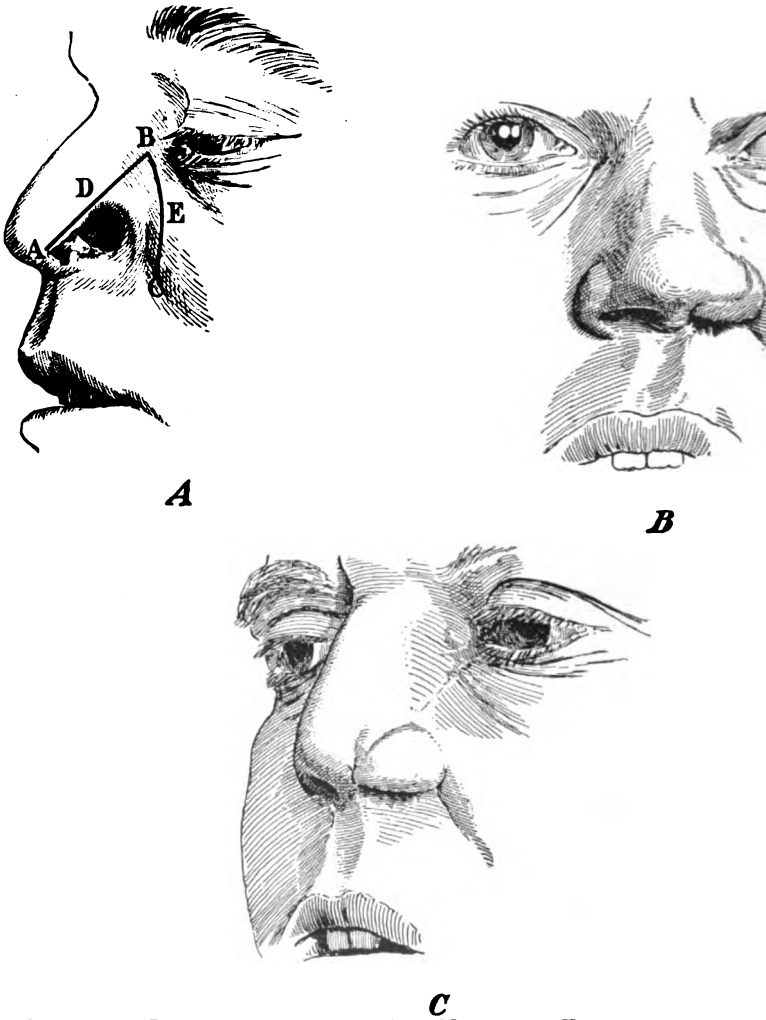


FIG. 191. RESTORATION OF THE ALA NASI BY A FLAP TAKEN FROM
SIDE OF THE NOSE. In A the defect and the lines marking the inc
shown. In B the front view, and in C the lateral view, of the restore
shown. The figures are drawn from photographs. Three and a half y
the operation there had been no shrinkage, and the result was excell
J. Berry's case.)

gap was thus left on the side of the nose above the displaced
freely undercutting the skin of the adjacent part of the cheek
ing it inwards, this gap was easily closed. The margin, B D, w

ıtures to the raw surface along D A. The effect and the shown in Fig. 192, B and C.

ORMATION OF A NEW COLUMELLA

lla may be formed from either the upper lip or the se.

(Fig. 194, p. 389). Two parallel incisions, separated about a quarter of an inch, are made through the whole

ATION OF THE ALA NASI. In A the line of the incision for is shown. In B the front view, and in C the side view, of the own. The scars in the lip are the results of an operation to 03, p. 401). Taken from photographs. (*Author's case.*)

entral portion of the upper lip. The pedicle of the end and the lower end is formed by the free border lap is twisted upwards after the frænum has been ıe mucous membrane looks forwards, and the skin ıe nasal cavity. The free end of the flap, after its has been removed, is sutured to the prepared raw of the nose. In time the exposed mucous membrane and resembles the skin. In males it is advisable to and hair follicles from the flap before placing it in er lip is restored by separating it on each side of the

gap from the underlying bone and uniting the raw edges to
143, B), especial care being taken to preserve the line of c
the skin and mucous membrane and in the formation of the
of the lip, that a V-shaped depression is not left.

From the dorsum of the nose (Fig. 195 A, p. 389).
including the periosteum, is dissected up, having the pedicle
of the nose. The flap is then twisted into position and its lo

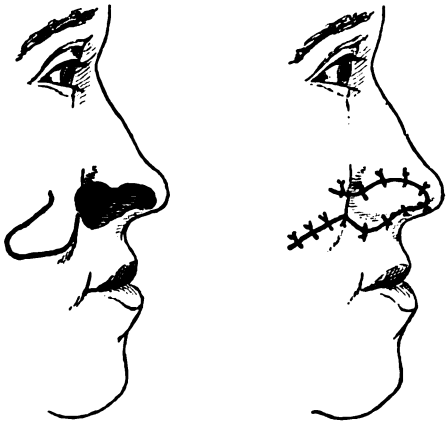


FIG. 193. RESTORATION OF THE ALA NASI BY A FLAP TAKEN FROM
The flap may be placed in the defect with its cutaneous aspect
wards, or it may be so placed that its raw (deep) surface is direct
and its cutaneous surface towards the nasal cavity. The former
grafted.

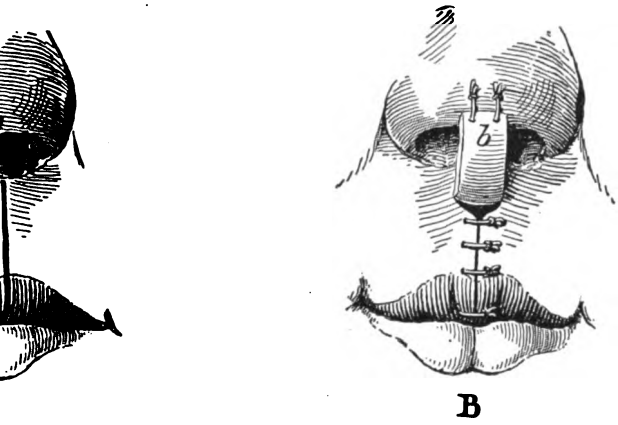
is sutured to a raw area prepared for it in the mid-line of t
upper border. The raw area of the nose is closed by suturi
(Fig. 195, B), or by skin-grafting.

PLASTIC OPERATIONS ON THE AURICL

The deformities of the external ear which require a plast
are (1) undue prominence, (2) excessive size. Other malfor
occasionally seen, but these are often associated with def
auditory apparatus, which preclude the necessity of perfo
operation.

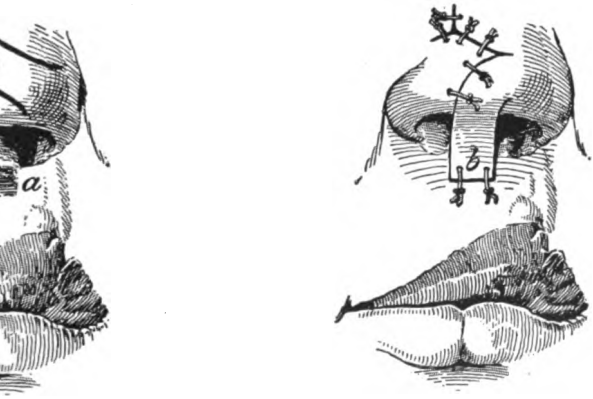
To reduce undue prominence, an incision is made imm
hind the attachment of the auricle, from the adjacent poster

ular or elliptical portion of the skin is removed. It
essary to excise a portion of the cartilage, and the



B

ATION OF THE COLUMELLA FROM THE UPPER LIP. In A the
lip is marked out, and the raw area, *a*, on the tip of the
free end of *b* is attached, is shown. In B the operation is



B

ATION OF THE COLUMELLA FROM THE DORSUM OF THE NOSE.
a, on the upper lip, to which the extremity of the flap *b* is
In B the operation is completed. The upper lip had also

nd cartilage removed depends on the degree of the
n the margins of the defect are sutured together,
in its normal position and it is well to unite the cut
age by separate sutures. The operation is not called

for in young infants and children, and the result is son satisfactory; at other times it is disappointing.

Excessive size can be reduced by the excision of wedge-s of the whole thickness of the auricle. The wedge is tak upper part if the vertical measurement requires to be dir apex being placed near the external meatus, and from the m if the transverse diameter has to be lessened.

CHAPTER III

C OPERATIONS ON THE LIPS, MOUTH, AND FACE

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

E operations are frequently required to remedy defects which perations, and the deformities which are the result of injuries ffects of cicatrization following ulceration. The earlier opera- the restoration of the lips were designed at a time when it was om to remove epitheliomata with a minimum amount of sur- tissues. At the present day a much greater amount of these s removed; thus most of the earlier plastic operations are in- e and need not be described. The whole thickness of the lip is not infrequently removed by an operation, and if the de- ot closed, great deformity will follow. The defects left by tensive operations are very varied in shape and size; each case e considered on its merits, and the operations described are se which have been actually used and found to be satisfactory. n the best result a combination of methods may have to be em- hus skin-grafting and the use of flaps are often necessary. In es, especially when the superficial portions of the cheek only n removed or destroyed, skin-grafting alone is sufficient. In es, when the whole thickness of the cheek is deficient, flaps may nly possible means of remedying the defect or deformity, and y be obtained from the structures adjacent to the defect, or tal parts, such as the neck or one of the upper limbs. What- thod is employed, it is very probable that a certain amount quent contraction will occur, and this is especially the case e operation has been undertaken for the repair of a cicatricial y.

ed incisions are especially useful in marking out the flaps, and uld be so placed that the resulting scars are as little visible as

e than one operation is frequently necessary; it is also better hat is required in separate stages rather than to endanger the ffect by attempting too much at one operation. Secondary

operations are often needed to correct some of the results operation and these should be delayed rather than done too

When the whole of the lower lip has required restora the external appearance may be very good, the muscula deficient, and the saliva is liable to dribble away from some time, if not even permanently. There may be also in preventing the escape of food during the process of ma

The proximity of the mouth and teeth introduces a to all these operations; therefore before doing them all be removed, decayed teeth stopped, and the mouth rend as possible and kept so during the process of healing.

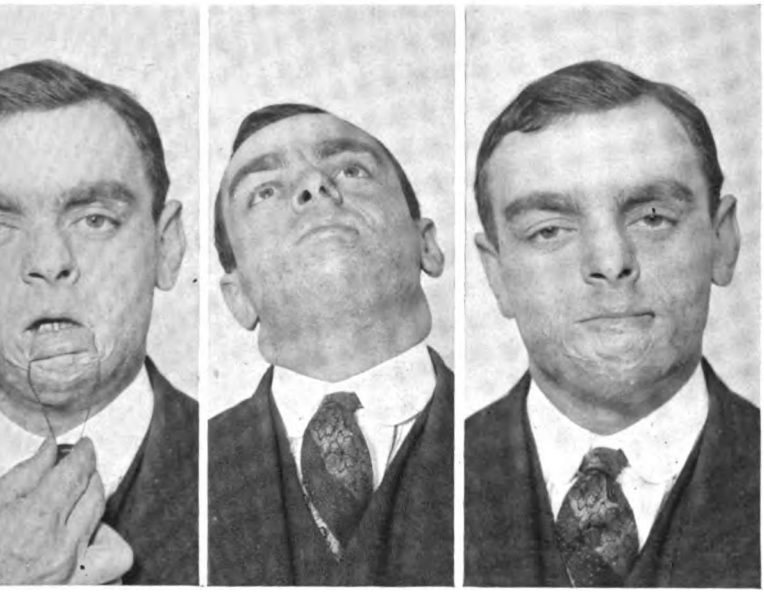
Transplantation of fat. In the correction of deformi the depressions due to scar tissue, free transplants of fat These transplants may vary in size from an almond to se width. Kanavel has discussed this subject in several contr fat is generally obtained from the abdominal wall, altho tient is excessively obese or if the fascia lata is transplant time, transplants from the leg may be found satisfac possible sutures are not used to retain the flap in positio are used the finest of silk is preferred. Care should be ta the development of a hæmatoma in the field.

Fat may be used to soften cicatrices and to restore repair deformity. In the first instance through incisio of fat ¼ of an inch in thickness and about ½ inch in widt into various areas, care being taken not to undercut too if the scar be extensive, because of the danger of sloughi blood-supply. In the latter instance the fat is inserted u scar so that the entire depressed area is elevated. Nic surgery suggests that where possible the incision made in th insertion of the fat should be at a distance from the scar a at a concealed site, such for instance, as under the jaw area. In the latter instance the undermining may be car inches.

The illustration shows a patient who had an extensiv lower lip and neck, which was corrected by a plastic proc the ectropion of the lip, which had been present, was re subsequent periods deposits of fat were placed in the scar ing out the face and restoring its mobility.

Transplants may also be made about vessels which h posed and where it is feared that the contracting scar tiss œdema of an extremity, as for instance after a dissection region. It may also be used to surround nerves which a

ed in the scar tissue. Kanavel has also used it extensively in of fat about tendons which were exposed in scar tissue or ıre, and the results were very satisfactory. Here a small sec- at about ¼ of an inch in thickness, 1 or 2 inches in length, h in width is wrapped about the tendon. Fat has also been transplant in brain defects. Its use around artificial tendons m silk is also discussed in the section upon that subject.



6. PHOTOGRAPH OF PATIENT IN WHOM LOWER LIP WAS RESTORED BY PERATION WITH SUBSEQUENT TRANSPLANTATION OF FAT TO ENSURE ITS AND SOFTEN THE AREA. Photograph on left shows attempt to represent ore operation, since unfortunately no photograph had been taken to his. (*Kanavel.*)

ransplantation of large pads of fat in potentially infected areas ways be approached with conservatism because of the pos- infection. Transplantation into joints to restore their mo- into bones in cases of old osteomyelitic cavities, has not been with brilliant results.

ıse of fat as a transplant after excision of the sternocleido- nuscle in wry neck is presented in another section. Its use storation of the contour of the breast after excision will be in that chapter.

OPERATIONS ON THE LIPS: CHEILOP

For ectropion. Ectropion or eversion of the lip i result of extensive cicatrization following burns or ulce syphilis or lupus. In the worst cases the teeth and gun and when the lower lip is affected the saliva constantly dri

The operation may be either easy or difficult according and depth of the scar tissue and the extent of the invol muscles.

1. *For slight cases.* (*a*) A curved transverse incision junction of the mucous membrane and skin. The muc

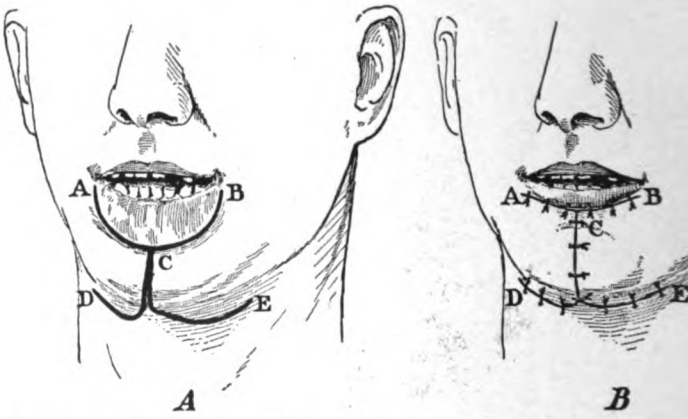


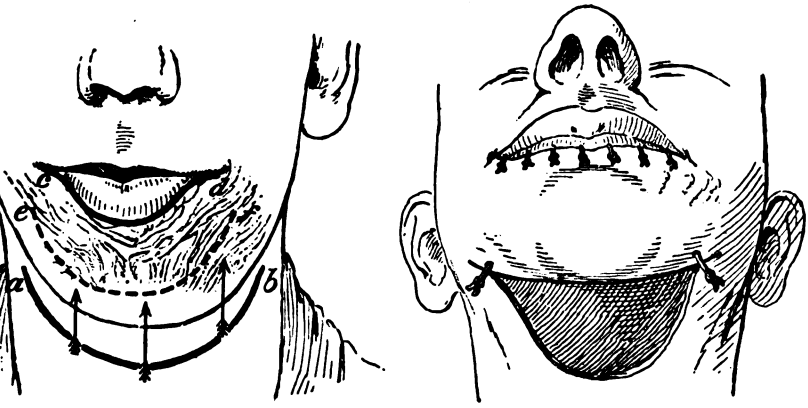
FIG. 197. OPERATION FOR ECTROPION OF THE LOWER LIP. I mucous membrane is separated as a thick flap by the incision A placed in its proper position. The curved incisions C D and C flaps, A C D and B C E, which keep the lip in position. In B the me is shown. (*After Cheyne and Burghard.*)

is separated sufficiently to form a flap to over-correct the c this flap must be as thick as possible. The raw area on face is then skin-grafted by Thiersch's method. It is dif tain the grafts in position and to keep the wound from fected from the mouth. In order to keep the flap in p been suggested that a sharp-pointed stiff probe should be p the flap, entering it a quarter of an inch outside the angle on one side and bringing it out at a corresponding place o side. The probe traverses the flap of mucous membrane position till the grafts have taken.

(*b*) An incision (A B, Fig. 197) is made along the edge mucous membrane from one side to the other. A verti

le from the mid-point of this transverse incision to the chin, then carried in a curved direction in the submaxillary region of for a sufficient distance. The mucous membrane of the lip is up as a thick flap and restored to its natural position. The , A C D and B C E, containing the subcutaneous tissue are freed cutting and then united as in Fig. 197. The stitches may be on the fifth day.

or severe cases where there is much scar tissue (Fig. 198). An *c d,* is made along the muco-cutaneous border of the lip, which



98. OPERATION FOR SEVERE ECTROPION OF THE LOWER LIP, WITH MUCH SUE. The flap is taken from the submental region. In A, *a b* is the line n marking out the lower limit of the flap; *c d*, the incision for raising is membrane to its proper position; *e f*, the line along which the scar y be excised; the arrows indicate the direction in which the flap is upwards. In B the flap is in position and sutured to the mucous mem- he lip. The shaded area is the gap left by the displacement of the flap.

ed to its proper position by free dissection through the scar If there is much scar tissue, portions of it may be excised. erse incision (*a b,* Fig. 198, A) four or five inches long is made eck about the level of the hyoid bone. This incision should be convex downwards. The bridge of tissue between the two is completely raised from the underlying deep fascia, and led upwards over the chin. The flap is stitched by its upper o the edge of the mucous membrane of the lip (Fig. 198), and nt it slipping downwards, two or three buried sutures attach its face to the periosteum of the jaw and muscles of the chin. The

gap left in the submental region is closed, partly by undercut adjacent skin and partly by skin-grafting.

3. *In the worst cases* the scarring or destruction is so extens there is no possibility of obtaining flaps locally, and skin-graftin not correct the deformity. In such a case, the flaps must be tak a distal part, such as the upper arm; Mr. Brown [1] of Leeds obt excellent result by means of this method. The child was aged

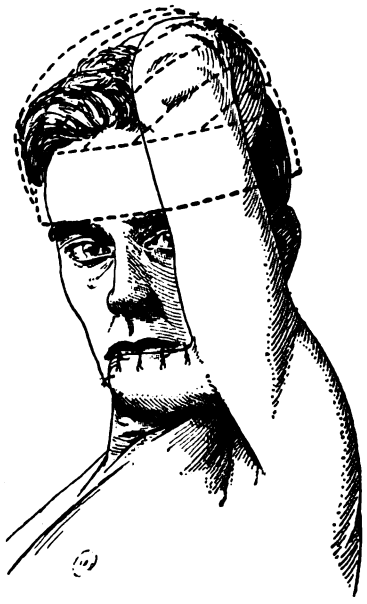
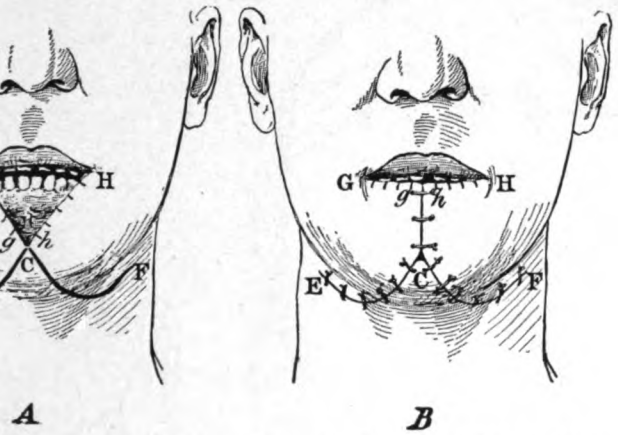


FIG. 199. RESTORATION OF THE LOWER LIP BY MEANS OF A FLAP TAK THE UPPER ARM. The method of fixing the limb to the head is sho

some years previously had been severely burnt about the head a Salivation was profuse; the head was drawn downwards, and to this, a cut was made across the neck from angle to angle of the the scar tissue was divided, the head was pushed into its proper and the wide gaping wound which resulted was closed by flaps taken from the shoulders. When this wound had completely he lip was restored by making a transverse incision at the junctio mucous membrane and skin; the lip was elevated into its natural and kept there by means of a stitch. The large raw area was the by suturing a flap taken from the bicipital surface of the arm margins of the gap, the arm being brought across the face a

[1] *Brit. Med. Journ.*, Jan. 7, 1905.

atus. The pedicle was divided at the end of fourteen
ng living and healthy. The patient was kept quiet by
ium, and the necessary dressings were done under an
er also speaks highly of restoring the lip by taking
rm in these severe cases. He divides the pedicle on
eenth day. Secondary operations are usually required



A *B*

RATION OF THE LOWER LIP. In A a large V-shaped portion, been removed. The mucous membrane is sutured to the skin and H *h*, to form the margin of the new lip. From the apex C), curved incisions, C E and C F, are made on each side into gion. In B the operation is shown completed. It may be ine the skin to bring the edges together. (*After Cheyne and*

djustment of the flap and to restore the angles of the

en a difficult problem in these cases and may be accom-
of a tube and funnel. The dressings should be kept as
d will require to be frequently changed.

tion of the lips. This operation is required after carcinoma involving the whole of the lip. Either a with the apex at the margin of the jaw or a quadri-
the lip and chin will have been removed.

(Fig. 200, A and B). From the apex of the V a curved
n each side down to the level of the hyoid and is then
rds and upwards towards the angle of the jaw. The
f the tissues of the lip and chin is dissected off the jaw
are being taken that the facial artery of each side is not

divided. The edges of the original V are then brought toge
horizontal line to form the lip; the mucous membrane or
surface of each flap is elevated as far as may be necessary, so
be sutured without tension to the skin to form the red margin
lip. The edges of the flaps are then united vertically in the m

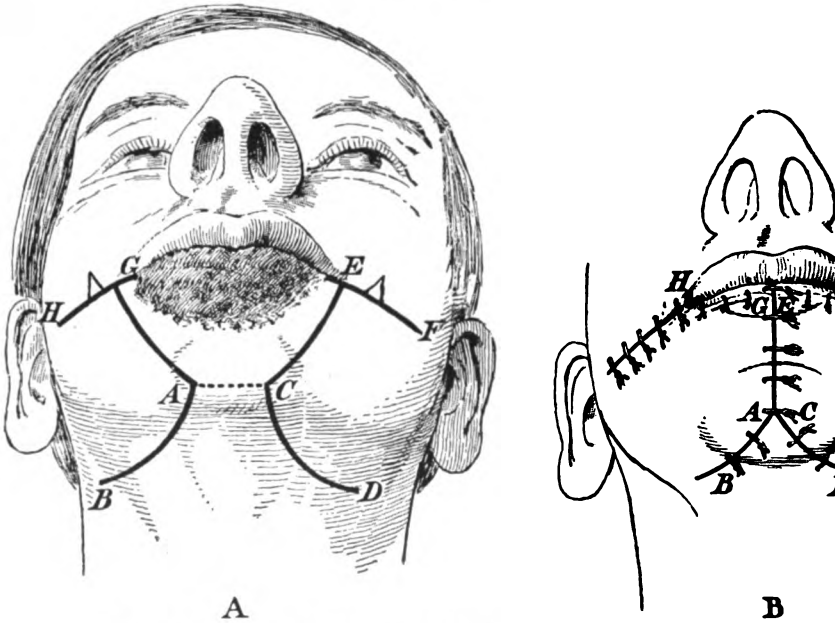
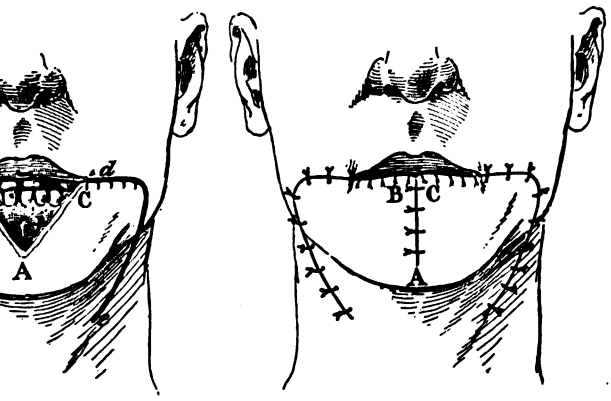


FIG. 201. RESTORATION OF THE LOWER LIP. In A the lines G
the incisions for the removal of an epithelioma. The dotted line A
the incision for the portion, G A C E, to be removed; this should be n
lateral in shape. A B and C D are curved incisions in the submaxil
they extend down to the deep fascia. H G and E F are horizontal incis
outwards from the angles of the mouth; they divide the whole thick
tissues of the cheek, but the mucous membrane should be divided
level, in order to allow of it being sutured to the skin to form the ne
flaps H G A B and F E C D are raised from the lower jaw and sutured as
small triangular areas above H G and E F may be excised, if necessa
the flaps come together more easily. (*Dowd.*)

The skin beyond the lower edges of the incisions in the neck
ably require to be undermined in order to close this portion of t

Second method (Fig. 201, A and B). From the apex of th
lower angles of the quadrilateral space, curved incisions, A B a
carried backwards on each side into the submaxillary region
far as the angles of the jaw. From the corners of the mouth
incisions, E F and G H, are made outwards through the substa

nt distance to allow the flaps H G A B and F E C D to be
hese latter incisions are carried down to the mucous
is then divided one-third of an inch higher to allow of
to the skin without tension in order to form the new
then glided inwards and united in the median vertical
of tissue in the cheeks above the horizontal incisions
the excision of small wedge-shaped portions (Dowd).



A B

RATION OF THE LOWER LIP. In A the thick black line *d e* on each side for raising the flaps: the new lip is formed ous membrane to the skin along the horizontal portion, *d*, of B A and B C are shown united by sutures in the middle line, laced inwards to allow of this being done. (*After Cheyne*

must not be damaged in dissecting up the flaps, which
thickness of the tissues down to the periosteum.
nethods the nerve-supply to the muscles in the flaps is
ey are well nourished.
(Fig. 202, A and B). In this method the flaps are ob-
n the cheek. A horizontal incision is made from the
n on each side to the edge of the masseter, dividing the
the cheek. The incision then curves downwards over
then forwards in the submaxillary region nearly as far
mucous membrane is divided vertically at the anterior
seter and horizontally where it is attached to the jaw.
ave been raised sufficiently they are glided inwards
dle line, where they are united by their edges. Before
us membrane to the skin to form the lip, it must be
there is no tension on it; with this object in view it is

well to divide the mucous membrane in the horizontal part of th
at a higher level than the skin and muscles. This method
much more scarring on the face; the nerve-supply to the muscle
interfered with and the vascular supply is inferior to that in eit
other two methods, and in marking out the flaps the pedicle mus
sufficiently wide. Free undercutting of the skin on the outer si
incisions will be necessary to close the gap left by sliding the
their new position.

RESTORATION AFTER INJURIES AND SLOUGH
LOCAL ULCERATION

The operation required to restore the lips in these cases d
the extent of the injury and the amount of destruction of the
parts of the chin and cheek.

Fig. 203 is taken from a patient whose upper lip on the lef
been almost completely destroyed. A wide gap extended fro
angle of the mouth to the right of the mid-line. There wa
amount of scar tissue, and ectropion of the mucous membra
right half of the lip. The scar tissue was excised and the
separated from the alveolus on the right side; in order to
portion of the lip to be glided over the defect, a horizontal in
made at its junction with the right nostril and then curved
margin of the latter (see Fig. 203, *d e*). The margins of the g
side were completely refreshed, the mucous membrane of the
separated and preserved along the free border. The left
widely detached from the upper jaw, the line of reflection of th
membrane from the cheek on to the jaw being divided as far as
to be necessary. It was then possible to unite the refreshed
a broad lip was made, but with some eversion of the muc
brane and leaving a notch in the free margin, which was co
a subsequent operation (Figs. 192 and 195).

This method of gliding the margins of the gap towards e
can be usually employed, if the cheek and lip be freely separa
the jaw. Their whole thickness must be elevated and the ela
the tissues is sufficient to allow of them being united witho
tension. Another great advantage of this method is that t
minimum amount of visible scar tissue.

When the defect is so extensive that the whole length of t
been destroyed, Dieffenbach's operation (Fig. 204) may be
A quadrilateral flap is marked out on each side of the defect.
of the flap is at its lower end and thus a good blood-supply i

contain the whole thickness of the cheek are turned
B is sutured to C D, and the gap left by the displace-
undercutting and uniting its edges.

not only is the lip destroyed, but there is also exten-
djacent tissues, such as the chin, and a very wide gap
possible to close such a gap by one of the methods above

RATION OF THE UPPER LIP, FOLLOWING AN INJURY. The
esents the incision to free the left half of the lip and excise
an incision to allow the right half of the lip to be separated
dark line at the junction of the mucous membrane and skin
on to allow the former to be separated from the latter. By
e cheeks from the maxillæ the margins of the defect were
ulting lip is shown in Figs. 192 and 195. (*Author's case.*)

ssary to take a flap from some distal part, such as the
396). A very successful case in which this method
eported by Watts in the *Annals of Surgery* for Janu-
r method is illustrated in Fig. 205. On each side of the
ular flaps, A B C D and D E F G, comprising the whole
heek, are marked out. The mucous membrane at the
and E F, of each is stitched to the skin to form the new
then displaced towards the mid-line, and their adjacent
E, are sutured together. By freely raising the cheek

from the bone, the gaps left by the displacement of the flap closed (Fig. 205, B).

When the upper lip has to be restored, the proximity of the the small amount of space render necessary some slight modifi these operations. When only a part has to be restored, it is p freely separating the remainder of the lip from the jaws to edges of the defect together (Fig. 203). In order to prevent th being unduly compressed, an incision should be made round t each side (Figs. 203 and 206), removing, if necessary, an portion of the skin (Fig. 206). When the whole lip is remov

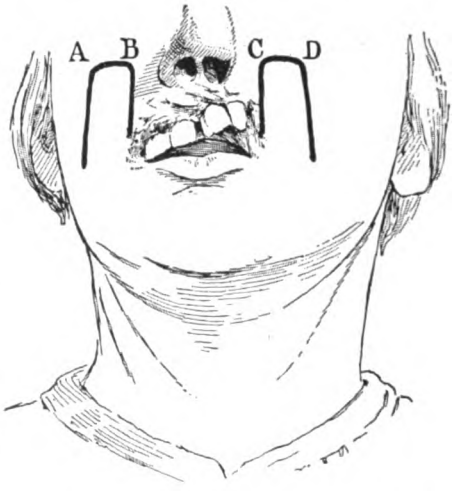
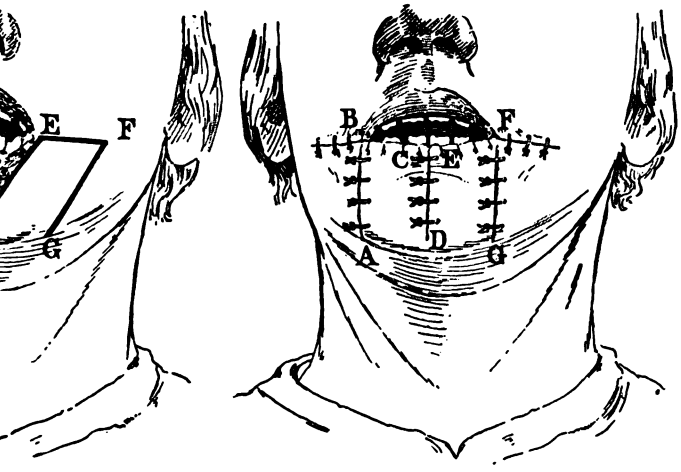


FIG. 204. DIEFFENBACH'S OPERATION. The flaps on each side c contain the whole thickness of the tissues of the cheek and are rotate so that A B and C D are sutured. The scar tissue must be sufficientl A similar operation may be employed to restore the lower lip.

been destroyed, the incisions round each ala should meet in th below the septum. If scar tissue is present, it must be excis flaps on each side are freely raised and the mucous membrane i to the skin along the margins of the raw surface to form the which is then brought down to its proper position. The portio incision below the nostrils are stitched together to make a media line, on either side of which the tissues will form the lip pro 207).

Operations for microstoma (Fig. 208, p. 406). This is often the result of extensive ulceration, not infrequently sy origin; sometimes it is due to an injury or an operation.

mouth to its proper size, an incision (*a b*, Fig. 208, B) s on each side of the contracted orifice through the f the cheek and sufficiently long to make the new mouth he mucous membrane is carefully freed as much as tissues of the neck and stitched to the skin to form the e lips (Fig. 208, C). If the mucous membrane is de- ust be turned inwards and stitched to it. Especial care he formation of the angles of the mouth, that the skin



B

ORATION OF THE LOWER LIP. In the left-hand figure the A B C D and D E F G, are marked out. They contain the the cheek, and the mucous membrane is stitched to the skin o form the new lip. In the right-hand figure the method of shown.

brane in these places are very accurately united, in order ence of the contraction. In some cases it is better to new angle a thick triangular flap of skin with its wards. The mucous membrane is then divided as far and the flap of skin turned inwards and sutured to the e to form the angle of the mouth (Fig. 209, p. 407). erations the dressings should be of the simplest nature, uently. It is often best, *e.g.* in cases of restoration of icrostoma, not to apply any dressings at all. The vas- abundant and union occurs so rapidly that they are un- lso most important to keep the parts as dry as possible, e done if an elaborate dressing is used. Of course, if s in the submaxillary region have been made, a dressing

should be put on, but at the same time the mouth and lip sh
be kept covered up.

It is perhaps hardly necessary to point out that before unc
these plastic operations on the lips and mouth, all signs of activ
and ulceration must be absent, or to emphasize the importance
any constitutional disease, such as syphilis.

PLASTIC OPERATIONS ON THE CHEEK

These are required to close recent defects remaining after
operations, or those which follow extensive destruction from ul

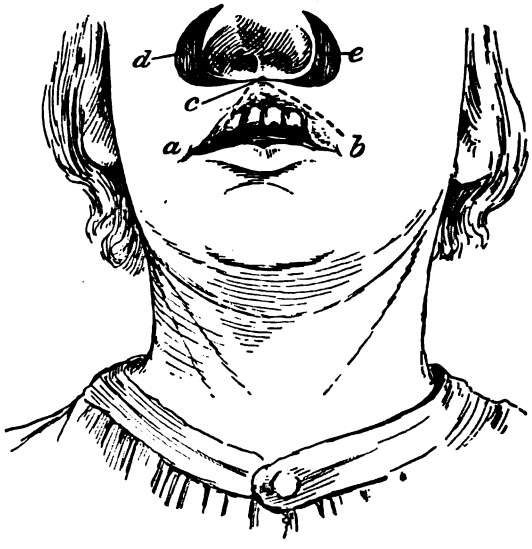


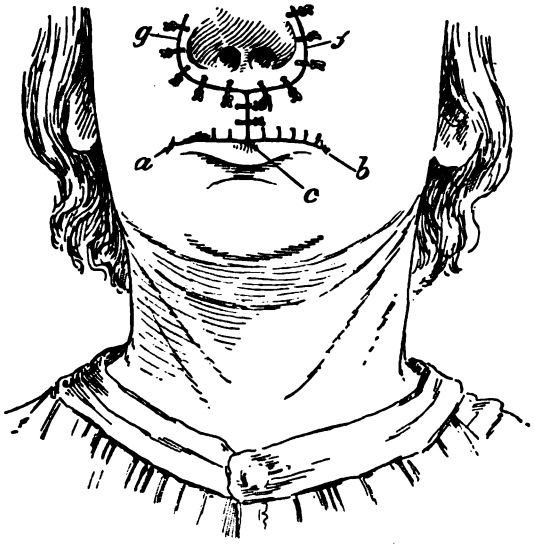
FIG. 206. RESTORATION OF THE UPPER LIP. The dotted lines indica
of incision for removal of the scar tissue. *d* and *c* represent elliptical p
skin removed from each cheek in order to prevent compression of t
when the lip is completed. It may not be necessary to remove these. T
membrane is stitched to the skin along *a c* and *b c* in order to forn
margin of the lip; *c* is then drawn downwards and the operation comp
Fig. 207.

cancrum oris, &c. In the latter group of cases there is ofte
of the jaws, either from cicatricial contraction in the structures
to them, or the cheek is firmly adherent to the jaw, and if it is
by division of the adhesions, it is exceedingly likely to beco
adherent. If the defect which is left by the removal of the wh
ness of the cheek is not closed by an immediate plastic opera

ontraction and adhesions to the jaw may also occur. There efore, a number of factors to be considered which materially the result of these operations.

ctive ulceration must be at an end and the condition of the t be investigated, and when necessary, stumps must be removed nouth rendered as aseptic as possible.

ipts must be made to remedy the cause of the closure of the ore undertaking the operation to close the defect. It may be o overcome the closure by stretching the cicatricial tissue by



7. Restoration of the Upper Lip. Completion of the Operation the previous Figure. It is important to make the depth of the lip s possible.

inds of gags. If the scar tissue is divided, some means must ved to prevent its reproducing the closure, and this can often done by means of a flap. In very bad cases, the adhesions nse and firm that it is almost impossible to divide them com- nd to prevent them reforming, so that an operation to make oint becomes necessary; or excision of the temporo-maxillary be undertaken, but the latter operation is not often beneficial ases.

flaps are employed to close the defect, they may be obtained adjacent parts of the cheeks, (*a*) the masseteric area, (*b*) from below the defect; or (*c*) from more distal parts, *viz.* the fore- mporal regions, and from the neck or from the arm.

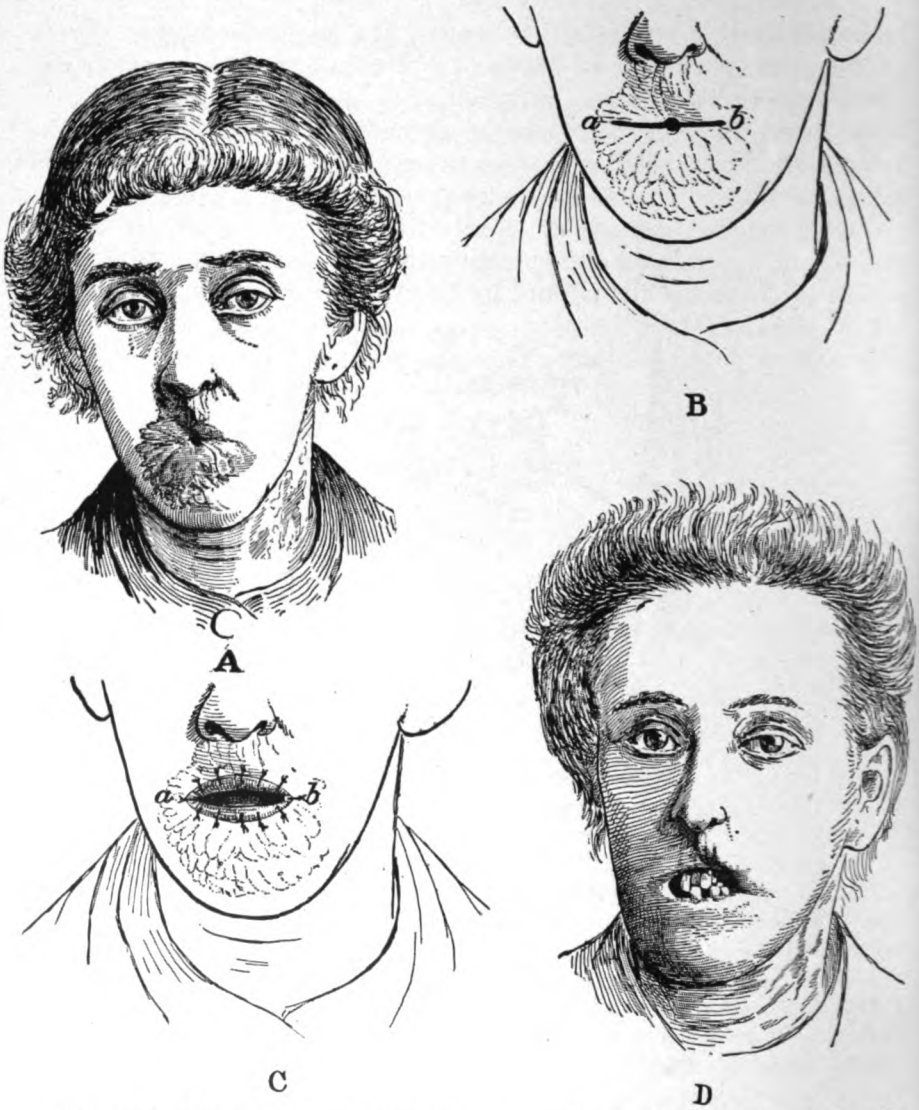


FIG. 208. OPERATION FOR MICROSTOMA. A shows the condition before the operation. In B the line of the incision *a b* for dividing the scar tissue, and in C the method of stitching the mucous membrane to the skin, is shown. Especial care must be taken in stitching the mucous membrane to the skin at the angles of the mouth. D shows the result some months after the operation. (*Mr. Burghard's case.*)

When the flap is taken from the masseteric region, it is usually twisted on its pedicle so that its cutaneous surface is directed inwards. The

growth of hair into the mouth is a serious drawback to the comfort, and therefore in males, whenever possible, some p should be used. It may, however, be possible to dissect ayer containing the hair bulbs; it is probably useless to attempt y the hair follicles by X-rays. The outer surface of the flap d by a superimposed flap taken either from some convenient

9. Operation for Microstoma. Formation of New Angle of the In A a triangular flap of skin is turned back and the dotted line shows of division of the mucous membrane. In B the flap is turned in around ngle and sutured in position.

he neck or from the tissues over the inferior maxilla (Fig. 215, may be skin-grafted. When the flap is taken from above or e defect it is not necessary to reverse it—it can be glided into with its raw surface inwards (Figs. 211 and 212); this will and remain non-adherent to the mucous membrane of the jaw, the mouth can be satisfactorily opened. If a flap is taken only cheek above the defect, considerable distortion of the eyelids th may follow, and therefore this method is rarely available.

In cutting the flaps from the cheek, the direction and pos
the parotid duct must be remembered and care taken not to i
After the flap has become united in its new position, subsequer
tions will be required to form the angles of the mouth, &c.

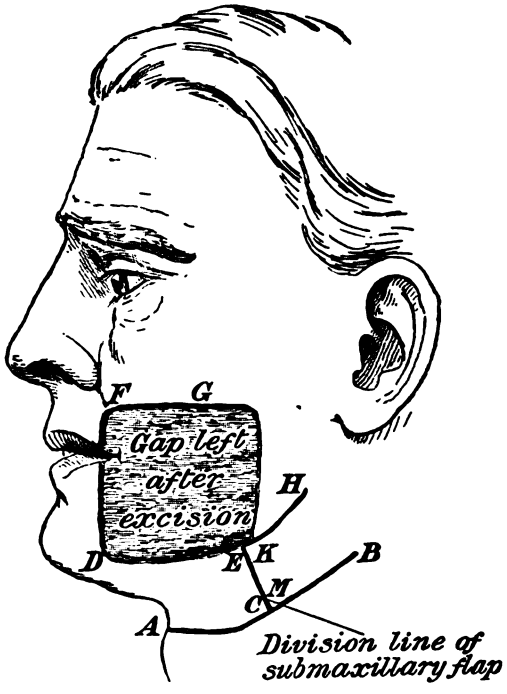
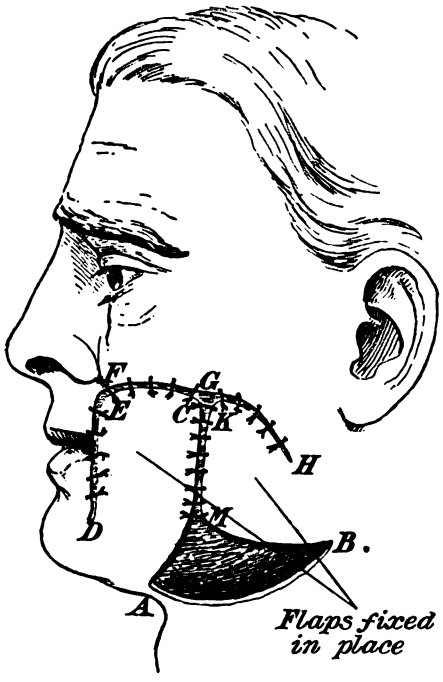


FIG. 210. METHOD OF CLOSURE OF A LARGE GAP IN THE CHEEK B
PLANTATION OF A FLAP FROM THE SUBMAXILLARY REGION. The pa
an epithelioma of the cheek and angle of the mouth, and its wide remov
large gap shown in the figure. The incision A C B was made low down i
maxillary region and a large flap of skin and subcutaneous tissue was ra
of the upper border of the flap was formed by the lower margin of the
incision E C divided the flap into two portions, A C E D and B M K H, w
placed in the gap as in Fig. 211. The glands were removed from the sul
region after the flap had been raised. It will be noticed that the raw
faces of the flaps are directed towards the mouth, which could be oper
after union had occurred. (*Mr. Cunning's case.*)

A flap from the forehead and neck has the great advantage
hairless. The former leaves a very obvious scar, but has a
vascular supply. The raw area left on the forehead may be
ably diminished in size by undercutting the adjacent scalp and
uniting the apposed edges, but in doing this the hair must not be
too low down, or the effect may be more conspicuous than a sc

ed area may be skin-grafted. The skin of the neck is said to great deal, but excellent results may be obtained by its use, the flap is made long enough.

tever method is used, the flap must be large enough to allow



11. Restoration of a Large Defect in the Cheek. Completion peration shown in Fig. 210. The margins of the flaps and defect are sutures. The raw area, A M B, was closed by undermining the skin B. Drainage tubes should be placed on the deep aspect of the flaps. *ning's case.*)

ontraction, and thereby to reduce the subsequent distortion to the amount.

sure of a large defect (Figs. 210 and 211). A large defect, one left after the removal of an epithelioma, may be closed in wing manner:—A curved incision, A C B, is made low down in naxillary region, and a flap of skin and the whole of the sub-us tissue is dissected up. The upper margin of this flap is formed ower edge of the defect, and from the point K the incision K H ed backwards. Care must be taken not to divide the facial The flap has therefore two pedicles, and is divided by the E C into two parts. The anterior portion, A C E D, is twisted

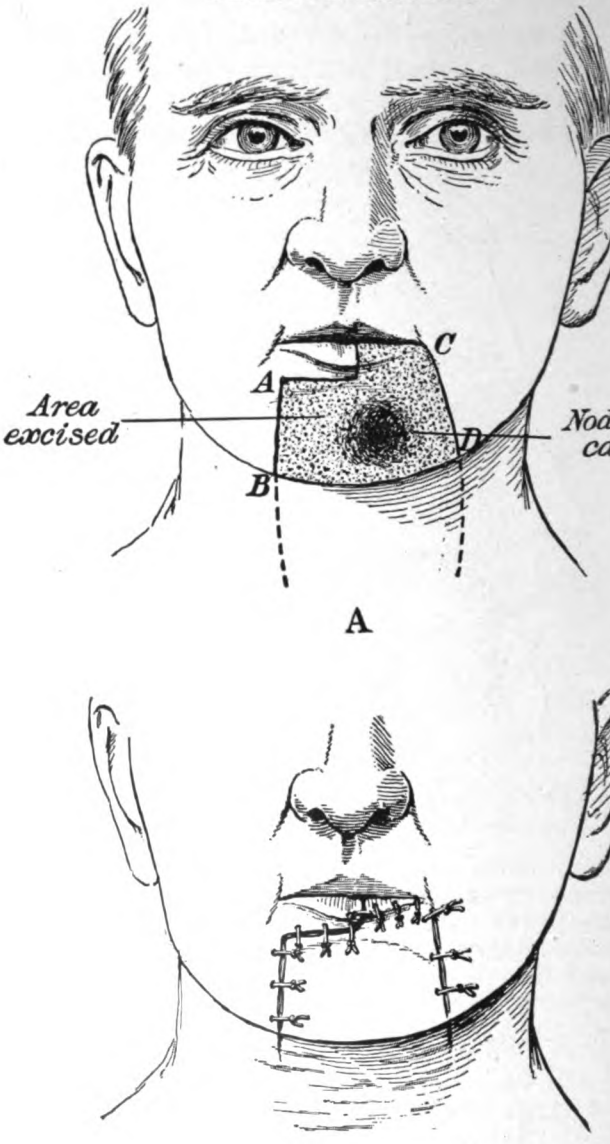
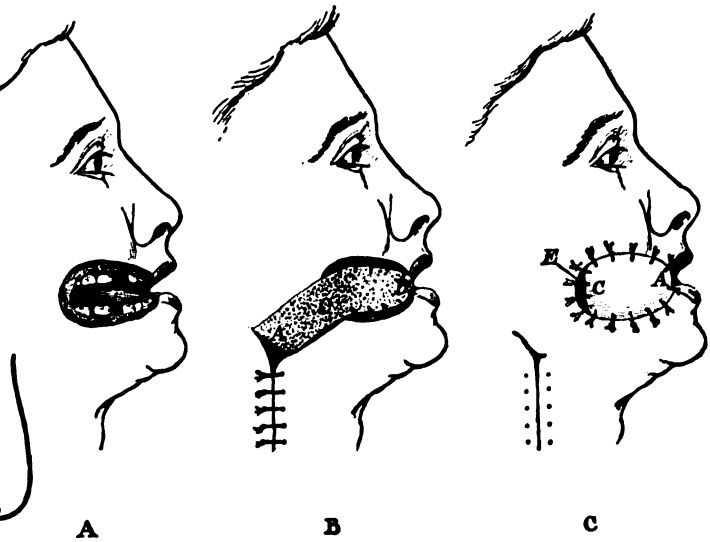


FIG. 212. CLOSURE OF A DEFECT IN THE CHEEK BY GLIDI
THE SUBMAXILLARY REGION. In A the lines of incision fo
a nodule of cancer and the surrounding portion of the skin
dotted lines indicate the prolongation of these lines into the su
in order to form a flap which was displaced upwards into the g
to its margins. (*Mr. Cunning's case.*)

o so that E C and F G are united by sutures; the posterior
I K, is then placed in the remainder of the gap, and the ap-
are sutured to one another. A large raw area is left in the
y region, and this is closed by freely undercutting the sur-
kin. A drainage tube is placed on the deep aspect of the
ought to the surface at the lowest point of the operation area.
method of closing a large gap by means of a submaxillary
pwards into the defect is shown in Fig. 212, A and B. The



ISRAEL'S METHOD OF CLOSING A DEFECT IN THE CHEEK. In A
is marked out, having its pedicle near the angle of the jaw and its
eaching nearly to the clavicle. In B the flap is stitched to the re-
gins of the gap; the part A C bridges over the skin behind the defect.
a in the neck is closed by sutures. In C the part of the flap A C is
l over B C, so that the raw surfaces are in contact and the edges are
se of the defect. A hole, E, is left communicating with the mouth.
equently closed by the sutures (shown dotted) after refreshing the
es. A secondary operation will be required to form the angle of the

a recurrent nodule of cancer in the position shown in the
was excised with a wide margin of skin and deep tissues
des of it. The incisions A B and C D were prolonged down-
a large rectangular flap was dissected up, having its broad
ne lower end. The flap with its deep surface directed inwards
in the gap, and the apposed edges sutured to one another
12, B. A small amount of sloughing took place at the junction

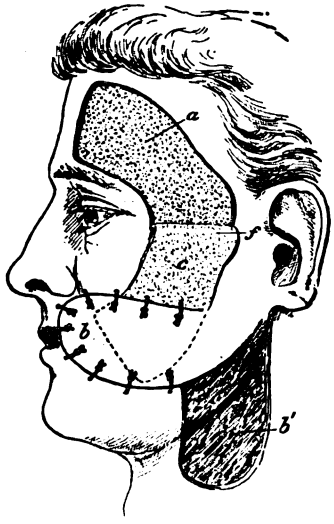
of the mucous membrane of the lip and flap. A drainage tu be placed beneath the lower end of the flap. This method ma usefully employed to close the gap left after the removal of situated at the angle of the mouth.

Israel closed a large gap by taking a long **flap from the** Fig. 213). The pedicle, placed near the angle of the jaw broad whilst the lower end of the flap reaches nearly to th The flap, consisting of skin and subcutaneous tissue, is plac defect, so that its distal extremity, B, is at the situation of of the mouth, and the upper portion of the flap A C 'bridges skin behind the defect. The edges of the flap and those of the then united by sutures. The pedicle is severed in about seven The posterior part, A C, of the flap (Fig. 213, B) is then folded placed on the raw outer surface of the anterior portion, A be at the angle of the mouth. The borders of the flap are uni upper and lower edges of the margins of the defect. After taken place between the edges of the flap and those of the d necessary to close the opening, E, into the mouth, which exists a where the flap was reduplicated on itself (Fig. 213, C). This plished by refreshing the raw edges of the gap and excising the end of the flap. The two raw surfaces are then accurately sutures. A further operation will be necessary to make an the mouth by dissecting up the mucous membrane of the lips a it to the anterior edge of the flap. The wound in the neck is sutures, after undermining the surrounding subcutaneous tissue

Flap from forehead. This method may be employ alternative to taking the flap from the neck, or it may be us junction with a neck flap, the latter being superimposed on t (Fig. 214). The flap, consisting of skin and subcutaneous made sufficiently large to enable it to be turned downwards, without tension to the margins of the defect, which are par the upper which is not touched at this stage. As a rule the p be in the region of the zygoma, and must be made broad; the of the flap may reach as high as the hair and anteriorly the skirt the outer margin of the orbit (Fig. 214). It may be to make a backward prolongation of the flap in order to provid ing for any raw surface on the inner aspect of the ascending the jaw remaining after adhesions have been freely divide region, and to enable the mouth to be opened. When the position, its cutaneous surface will be directed inwards. The face of the backward prolongation is sutured to the raw s the inner aspect of the jaw, by means of stitches which pass

h the whole thickness of the cheek; the knots being tied on
he stitches can be easily removed.

ond flap for superimposing on to the raw surface of the deep
l flap is obtained from the skin and subcutaneous tissue of
Fig. 214). This superficial flap has, of course, its cutaneous
ected outwards, the two raw surfaces of the flaps being



METHOD OF CLOSING A DEFECT IN THE CHEEK BY SUPERIMPOSED
rge forehead flap, *c*, is being used to close a defect in the lower part
, and has superimposed on it the flap *b* taken from the neck. This
utured to the margins of the gap. After the division of the pedicle
ead flap the upper edge of the defect is refreshed and united to the
flap. *f* is the redundant portion of the forehead flap, and is replaced
area *a*; *b'* is the raw area in the neck, which is closed by under-
dges. Drainage must be provided at the lower borders of the flaps.
ed area on the flap *c* may be skin-grafted.

one another. It is sutured to the deep flap and to the margins
and is also used to close any portion of the defect not covered
orehead flap. It is well to provide for drainage, the tube being
een the flaps and brought to the surface at the lower margin
rficial flap. The raw area left by transplanting the neck flap
y undercutting the edges and bringing them together by
he usual way.

licle of the forehead flap is divided in about a fortnight or
s. The upper margin of the gap is now refreshed and united
er edge of the deep flap by silkworm-gut sutures. Any re-

dundant portion of the pedicle is replaced in the raw area o head, the remainder of this area being skin-grafted.

Further operations will be required to make an angle for and to correct any displacement of the eyebrow or eyelic operations are employed to close large defects, when there is skin or the latter has been removed, as in some cases of excis upper jaw or of a rodent ulcer.

Closure of a small defect. (*a*) When the defect is the mouth can be freely opened, it may be possible to close

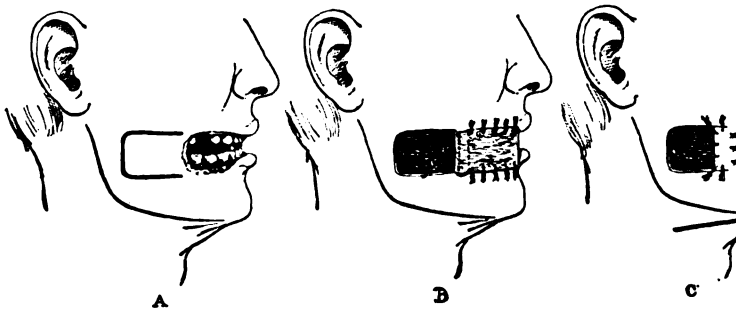
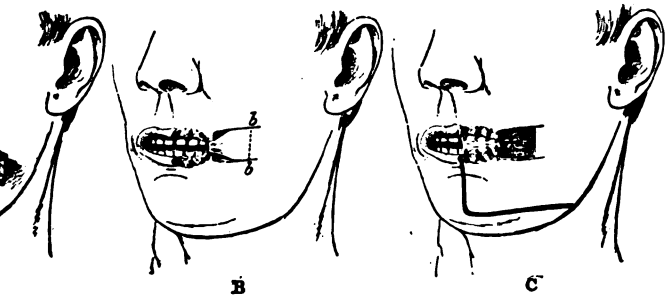


FIG. 215. TO ILLUSTRATE THE CLOSURE OF A SMALL DEFECT BY A FROM THE SKIN OVER THE MASSETER. In A the flap is marked out pedicle a short distance behind the gap. In B the flap is shown suture freshed margins of the gap; the cutaneous surface is directed toward cavity. In C the pedicle is divided after union of the flap and the gap has taken place; the redundant portion of the pedicle is also sho in the raw area, the remainder of which is closed by skin-grafting raised from over the lower jaw. The thick black line indicates the cision for raising this flap, which also covers the outer surface of th defect. Another operation will be required to form the angle of (*After Cheyne and Burghard.*)

secting up the cheek freely on each side of the gap; the cheek gap should be the more widely displaced in order that the eyelic be distorted. The edges of the gap are then accurately united Or a single flap may be taken from the cheek behind the 215, A). The flap is turned forwards on its pedicle so that the surface looks inwards. The pedicle should be attached a litt behind the posterior margin of the defect and may be severed of a fortnight; any redundant portion is replaced in the which it was taken. The outer surface of the flap is covere grafting or by a superimposed flap taken from the tissues ove jaw (Fig. 215, C).

(*b*) When the defect is small and there is inability to open

catricial contraction, **Gussenbauer's operation** (Fig. 216), o stages, is most useful, provided the skin is abundant. d subcutaneous tissue, somewhat broader at its posterior anterior end, is dissected up, the pedicle being placed ior border of the masseter. The cicatricial tissue is fore backwards and the mouth widely opened. The skin o the defect so that its anterior free border is inside the are stitched to those of the defect, the raw (deep) sur- being sutured to the inner aspect of the internal pterygoid end of four weeks the pedicle *b b* is divided and the



SSENBAUER'S OPERATION. In A the flap is dissected backwards: ndicate the incisions for dividing the mucous membrane. In B of the flap is shown carried round into the mouth, preparatory n position. *b b* is the line along which the flap is subsequently d forward into the gap, to the margins of which it is sutured black line in C indicates the incision for marking out the flap n the outer surface of the one filling the gap. The raw sur- his flap is taken from may be skin-grafted or closed by under- ent skin. (*After Cheyne and Burghard.*)

f the flap is brought into the anterior part of the defect ts refreshed margins. The cutaneous surface of the flap towards the mouth and the exposed raw surface is cov- mposed flap taken from over the lower jaw (Fig. 216, c).

n the arm have been used to close very large defects hods have been unavailable or inapplicable. The method em is similar to that described under restoration of the

the mucous membrane of the cheek remaining after large portions, have been closed by transplanting a flap to the inside of the mouth through an incision made in ont of the masseter. The pedicle of the flap must be ap must be long. The raw surface of the flap is applied

to the raw surface in the mouth and united to it by sutures, t being divided after the lapse of ten days to a fortnight. The flap is replaced in the gap left by its removal, the remaining por closed by undermining its edges. This may be done either a operation or when the pedicle is divided. Finally, the incis cheek is closed by silkworm-gut sutures.[1]

PLASTIC OPERATIONS FOR SYPHILITIC AFFEC OF THE PALATE

As a result of syphilitic ulceration, the hard or soft pala more or less completely destroyed. In the hard palate a roun hole is usually produced by necrosis of the palatal process superior maxillæ; when the soft palate is affected, the loss o often extreme and the most striking feature is the formation of between the remains of the palate and the pharyngeal wall. T be so abundant as to completely shut off the naso-pharynx oro-pharynx, or the communication may be so small that only small-sized bougie can be passed through it. Nasal respirati rendered difficult: much mucus may collect in the nose and c rid of with difficulty, and progressive deafness, accompanied of earache, may follow. The voice becomes nasal and indi this is the usual symptom which the patient wishes to have re

If the perforation is in the hard palate, an obturator made l is generally the best method of treatment. It should never f hole tightly, but always take the form of a plate, which can removed for cleansing purposes and easily replaced. Such an will restore the natural character of the voice and prevent liquids passing into the nose. If it is desirable to operate, the be closed by means of flaps of the muco-periosteum, raised on of it, as in the ordinary operation for cleft palate, the raw e united by silkworm-gut sutures. A better method is to rais as in Davies-Colley's operation for cleft palate, making the fla as possible in order to allow for their subsequent contraction

When the soft palate is adherent to the pharyngeal wall, th is performed in the following manner:—A Smith's gag is intro the mouth, which is opened as widely as possible compatible respiration. The adhesions are divided by means of an ang palate knife or by curved scissors; a cleft-palate raspatory is times useful in separating them. There may be a good deal rhage, but by keeping the head low, and using sponge-pre

[1] See Keetley, *Lancet*, March 4, 1905.

without much difficulty. The soft palate is drawn forwards as possible, and fixed by silkworm sutures either to the mucous of the hard palate, or by sutures, one on either side, passed the whole thickness of the palate, the free ends being brought and fixed round the front teeth. Instead of silkworm-gut silver wire may be employed. The sutures are left to cut their which they will do in the course of one or two weeks. During healing of the raw surfaces will have taken place to a considerable, but it will be necessary to keep the opening into the naso- patent by the regular passage of bougies, and from time to time ing the soft palate with a blunt hook or the finger passed behind the mouth. During the stage of healing after division of the , union of the raw surfaces may be prevented by using a piece ate cut to the full breadth of the naso-pharynx and so bent that of it rests on the upper surface and the other on the lower f the palate, the separated margin being received between the ons of the plate and apposed to the bend in it. Silk threads ed to the four corners of the piece of lead, the two from the rners are passed, one through each nostril, and the two lower brought forward across the hard palate to the interval between l and central incisor teeth of each side. The upper and lower f each side are then tied together in front, over the upper lip, g passed through a piece of rubber tubing, in order to prevent ing. The plate is left in position for a fortnight.[1]

these cases the chief difficulty is to prevent recurrence of the . The immediate results of the operation are often good, but in e of time contraction frequently occurs again. As an almost occlusion of the passage from the naso-pharynx to the oro- may exist without causing any evidences of discomfort, these s should not be undertaken in the absence of some definite s such as those already enumerated, nor should they be per- o long as ulceration is present, or shortly after the ulcer has nd bearing in mind that the patient is syphilitic, iodides and should be given in full doses.

[1] Robinson, *Trans. Laryngol. Soc.*, vol. xiv, p. 106.

CHAPTER IV

OPERATIONS FOR CONGENITAL AND ACQUI DEFORMITIES

OPERATIONS FOR WEBBED FINGERS

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

WEBBED fingers present varying degrees of deformity.

1. The web may be only slightly longer than normal.

2. The fingers may be united by a band of tissue exter whole length. This band may either be thick and loose, o binding the fingers closely together.

3. The fingers may be united by bone, the phalanges of the fingers being more or less completely fused.

The operative measures to be adopted depend on the varie gree of the union, and it not infrequently happens that diffe tions have to be used in conjunction; if several fingers are a method may be suitable for some, and another for the other great variety of operations have been practised, but none o completely satisfactory except in the cases where the web is thick and there is plenty of tissue. The web has a great tend form, and when the union is close and thin, there is a great of subsequent contraction of the fingers taking place. If the of the fingers leaves a scar on the palmar aspect, flexion is ve follow from its contraction. Unless it is quite certain from t of the fingers on one another that there is no bony union, photograph should be obtained before an operation is unde extent of the union and the possibility of improving the stat can then be more accurately estimated. If several fingers ar gether and a shapeless digit is present, it is generally best not any operation at all; though unsightly, such a hand is often and may be made much worse by an unsuccessful operatio fingers are united by bone and their usefulness is thereby c impaired, some improvement may be obtained by the removal o belonging to one finger. In these cases it is not possible t patient two separate fingers as the covering of skin is insuffic

The hand in cases of webbed fingers is smaller and does to the same extent as the normal hand. Therefore, to impro

f the hand, to encourage its development and to remove if
ın unsightly deformity, it may be necessary to operate, but
d not be done before the third or fourth year. It is not advis-
perate in early infancy, for the parts are so small and the
delicate that a good result cannot be expected, and if the
is a failure, the prospects of success from later operations is
ıinished. It is advisable also not to attempt to correct the
of all the fingers by one operation, but to take them in pairs.
t can then be observed, and the succeeding operations modi-
necessary entirely changed. Some weeks or months may elapse
:he dates of the operations; this applies especially to cases
flaps have been taken from the dorsum of the hand—the
g operations should not be undertaken until the scar and the
oundly healed.

ever method is adopted, the dressings must be applied to each
uch a way that they are kept separate during the healing process.
fter-treatment is most important. To prevent subsequent con-
t is necessary that the patient should wear a splint, at first
ay and night, subsequently at night only. The exact time the
ould be worn varies, but in any case it will be for months.
splint is being worn constantly, it should be removed daily in
ıt passive movements may be carried out. Some form of
splint is the best; it should be applied on the dorsum of the hand
rs, and should be long enough to reach from just above the
he ends of the fingers. It must be well and carefully padded,
to exert pressure on the parts.

vailable methods of operating are:—

mple division of the web and union of the raw surfaces.

vision of the web combined with the formation of a triangular
base.

ıe formation of a dorsal and palmar flap from the conjoined
Didot's operation).

combination of one of these methods with skin-grafting, where
ot enough tissue to cover all the raw surfaces.

emoval of the bones of one finger when there is osseous union.

DIVISION OF THE WEB AND UNION OF THE RAW SURFACES

method may be used when the web is large and thick, and may
ıed with perforation of the apex of the web by means of a
er wire which is kept *in situ* till the perforation is healed and a
e remains (Fig. 217). The web is then divided throughout the
s extent; any excess of tissue is removed and the raw surfaces

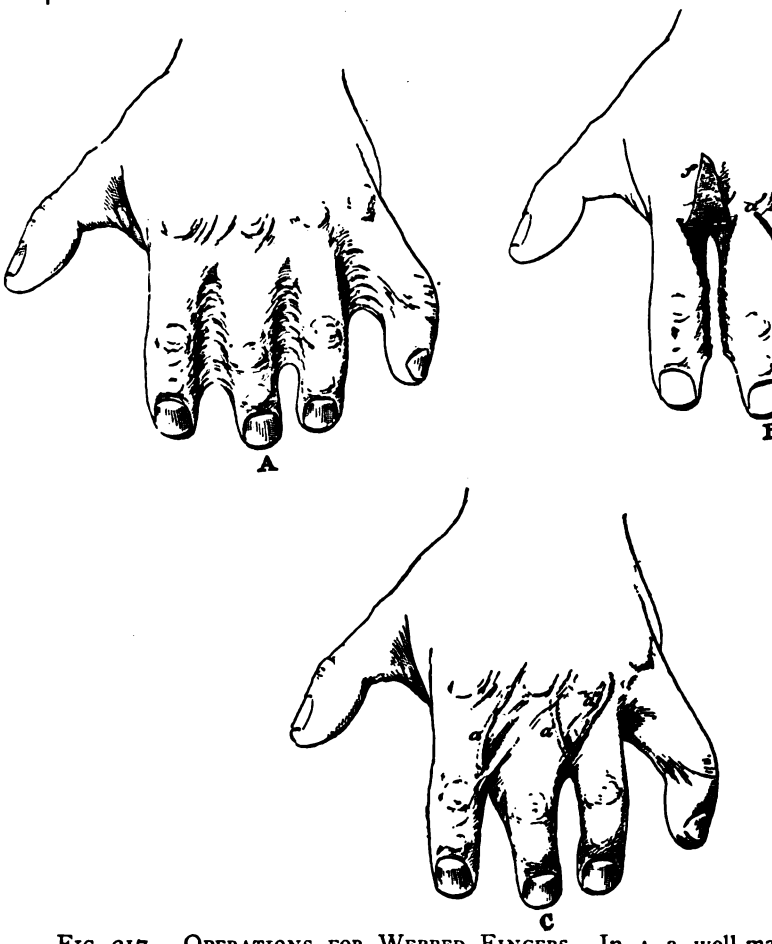


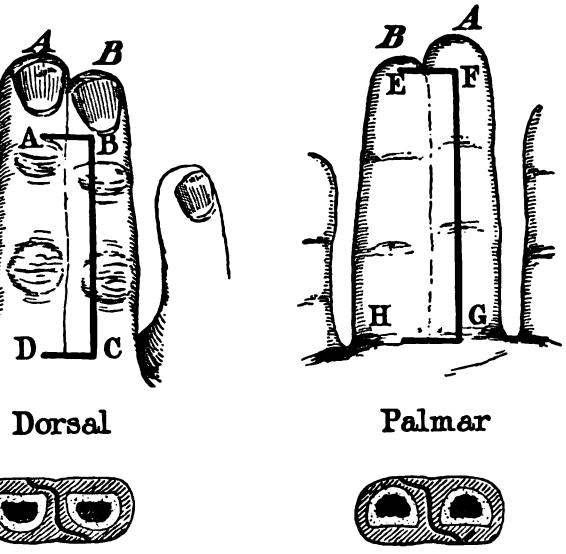
FIG. 217. OPERATIONS FOR WEBBED FINGERS. In A a well-ma
shown between each of the fingers. In B two methods of operatin
The web between the third and fourth fingers has been perforated
stout silver wire, *e d*, has been inserted. This is left *in situ* till th
is cicatrized. The remainder of the web is then divided along the
redundant portion is removed, and the raw edges are sutured to on
the sides of each finger.

A better method of operating is shown on the webs between the
a h and *b h* show the incisions marking out a dorsal V-shaped fla
incision for splitting the remainder of the web; *f* is the flap dissecte
sutured to the palmar surface between the fingers to form the ne
raw area on the sides of each finger is closed by stitching the mar
after any redundant portion has been removed. In C the result of
this method on the hand A is shown. The webs between the first an
the second and third fingers have re-formed to some extent; *a*, *a'*, *a''*
The operation on the web between the third and fourth fingers w
cessful. (*Author's case.*)

on each finger are united by sutures. It is a tedious and tory method.

GULAR FLAP AT THE BASE OF THE WEB

should be employed when the web is a broad one, tial or complete. A triangular flap having its apex at web and its base opposite the metacarpo-phalangeal joint narked out on the dorsal aspect. The flap must be long



T'S METHOD OF OPERATING FOR WEBBED FINGERS. The lines r the dorsal and palmar flaps are indicated. The smaller transverse section of the fingers, and show the direction of on. The dorsal flap should be sufficiently broad to be united he palmar aspect of the finger.

ned into the palm and stitched in position without ten- also be as thick as possible. The remainder of the web its median line (Fig. 217, B). The flap is then passed rs and its apex stitched to the palmar edge of the cleft, g united to the skin of the edges of the wound at the ers. Any excess of tissue left after splitting the web, g fat, is removed and the raw surfaces on each side of nen united.

ong dorsal flap, two smaller flaps, one from the dorsum e palmar aspect of the web, may be employed. These dissected up, and the remainder of the web divided,

are then united together and form the new web. The raw e
web attached to each finger are then sutured together as a
possible, any excess of subcutaneous tissue being removed.

DORSAL AND PALMAR FLAPS. DIDOT'S OPERAT

(Figs. 218 and 219)

This method is employed when the web is narrow and
incision, B C, is made along the dorsal aspect of one finger, and

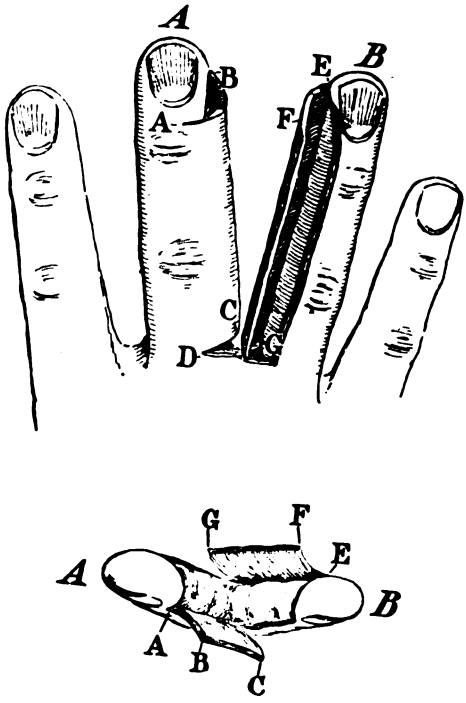


FIG. 219. DIDOT'S METHOD OF OPERATING FOR WEBBED FINGERS.
shows the flaps dissected up and being applied to the raw area on
The lower figure is another view of the same stage.

of this incision, short incisions, A B and D C, are made. On
aspect of the other finger an incision, F G, is made, and tran
E F, H G, are made at the ends of the longitudinal incisi
flaps, which should be as thick as possible, are carefully d
the rest of the tissues between the fingers being divided
separation completed. One finger (*A*) thus has a dorsal fl
other (*B*) has a palmar flap, attached to it. Each flap is ca
the side of its own finger and stitched in position to the e

face. It rarely happens that both flaps are sufficiently large to e whole of the raw surfaces; one finger may be well covered and r incompletely. Skin-grafting will be necessary to cover any a, and should be carried out at the same operation.

e is also a difficulty in making a satisfactory web unless it is to make a triangular flap from the dorsum of the hand between s of the fingers. Again, the finger which has the scar on its spect is more likely to become flexed, and therefore, in planning , an endeavour should be always made to give this finger the p to cover it, that is, the dorsal flap should be the larger. Lastly e thinness of the tissues used to form these flaps, the operation ot be done before the patient is four or five years old.

OVAL OF THE BONES OF ONE FINGER WHEN THERE IS OSSEOUS UNION

is necessary to perform an operation when osseous union is a rectangular flap is dissected up from one side of the conjoint nd the bones of one finger removed after the tendons, &c., have arated. The flap should be taken from the palmar aspect, and noval of the bones, it is applied to the raw surface and sutured kworm-gut. A dorsal scar is thus made. The majority of es are, however, often best left without an operation.

PERATIONS FOR SUPERNUMERARY DIGITS

e are a not infrequent congenital deformity; they are often sym- either the fingers or the toes being affected. From an operative view, the most important point is the method of union of the This may be simply by a band of fibrous tissue, or the extra y be attached, with or without an articular surface, to the side etacarpal or metatarsal bone. Much more rarely the extra digit a metacarpal or metatarsal bone, and then there is an articula- n the carpus or tarsus. Sometimes the terminal phalanx alone ed and is more or less completely divided, so that a bifid digit

ne union is fibrous, all that is necessary is to cut through the union after making an elliptical incision in the skin round its base so as to form a flap and then unite the edges by sutures. here is an articular surface or projecting piece of bone on the the metacarpal, this must be removed after the amputation, so ave a smooth level surface on the bone; otherwise, as growth s, a very obvious projection will be formed. Flaps consisting

of the whole thickness of the tissues down to the bone are up, care being taken in shaping them that they do not contain ar of tissue. If the supernumerary digit has an extra metacarp this must be removed together with the digit; any projecting facet left after the removal of the extra bones must be smooth with a chisel, and, as some part of the carpal joints may be oper precautions against sepsis will be necessary. The operation is pe in the manner described in Vol. I, p. 229.

When the terminal phalanx is bifid, it is necessary to remove tion, and that part which is the more deviated from the line of should be excised. If the phalanx is only partially divided, it completely split down to its base and one part removed. It necessary to divide the ligaments of the joint, in order to put the ing part of the phalanx in a straight line with the rest of the fin means of a splint fixed round the wrist and applied to the finger, t must be kept as straight as possible during the healing proc for some time after. Massage or passive movements are req restore the mobility of the joints, but the splint will have to for some weeks.

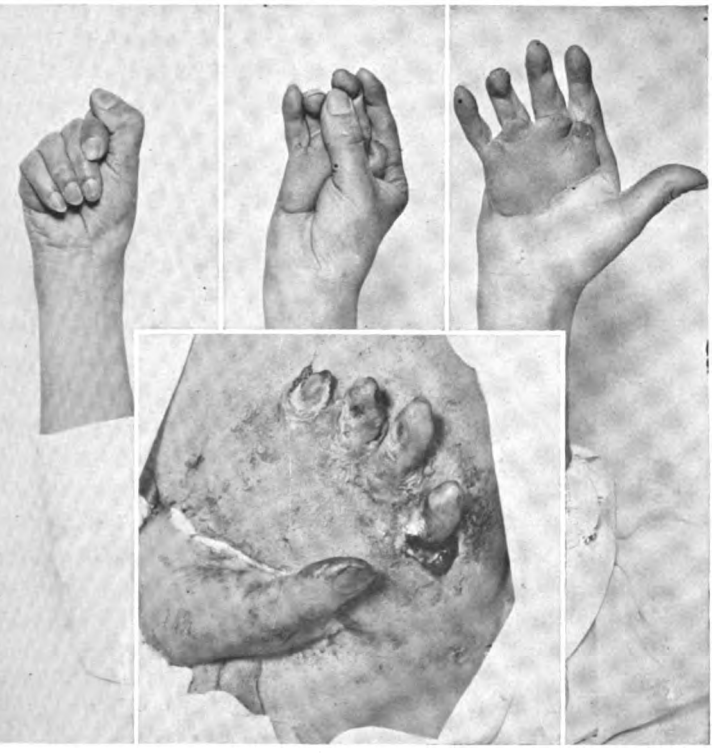
When the toes are affected similar methods of treatment sl employed, if it is thought desirable to do any operation, but ve the presence of the additional toe causes no inconvenience.

OPERATIONS FOR ACQUIRED CONTRACTIONS O FINGERS

General principles. Acquired contractions and adhesion fingers are often due to burns and scalds. These cases are m cult to treat, (1) because of the extensive cicatrization and a between the various structures; (2) the great liability to reprodu the deformity, as healing and contraction occur after the parts h freely separated; (3) the skin is usually destroyed and replaced scar tissue which is almost useless for any plastic operation; and small size of the parts and the difficulty in getting healing to ta by first intention.

Where such scar tissue causes contracture it is absolutely that it should be excised thoroughly. The slightest amount impair the result. If the area is small, by under-cutting the the healthy skin it may be sutured over the area, but where th is of any size or is subject to tension or trauma, transplant pedicled flaps of skin is the only satisfactory method. For the the hand these may be taken from the abdomen, but for the

hey should be taken from the buttock, care being exercised to n area free from hair and to raise the skin with a minimum of fat. This latter is emphasized since an excess of fat absorbs r years of use. The whole hand may be inserted under the flap



20. PHOTOGRAPH OF HAND INSERTED IN POCKET ON BUTTOCK AND SULT ONE YEAR AFTERWARDS IN THIS CASE, WHICH WAS SO CONTRACTED ID COULD NOT BE OPENED AT ALL. (*Kanavel.*)

e fingers are also involved, these may be included, each finger dle to make its exit through small puncture holes in the skin. ases care must be taken to make the web out of skin also and the suture line along the free edge of the web, since in such contraction of the scar as the time passes ends in a webbing roximal phalanges. This can be avoided partially at least by flap of skin to pass between the fingers with its line of sutures orsum of the hand. This web should be as short as possible. ns to cut the pedicle about the eighth day and it is completely by the tenth to fourteenth day, varying with its size and

condition. Such pedicled flaps have been used by one of the
(Kanavel) in a considerable number of cases with complete satis
The arm and hand are held immobile in a plaster cast before the

FIG. 221. ILLUSTRATION DEMONSTRATES THE METHOD OF TAKING LARG AND GRADUALLY CUTTING V-SHAPED SECTION, SO THAT FLAP OF SKIN MA MATELY BE CARRIED BETWEEN BASES OF FINGERS SO AS TO PREVENT CONTI INCIDENT TO TIME IN SCAR TISSUE. (*Kanavel.*)

is cut. Passive and active movements should be begun at once
tachment of the hand.

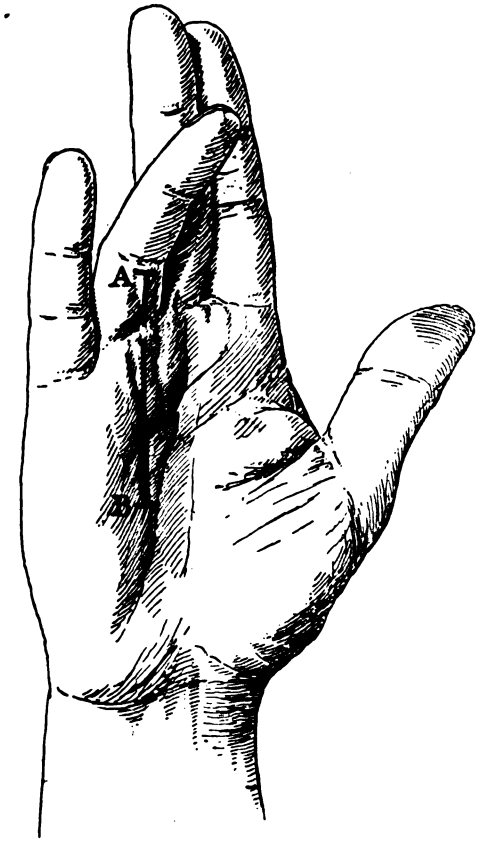
Where tendons or nerves are exposed they may be wrap
pedicles of fat cut from the surrounding tissue.

OPERATIONS FOR DUPUYTREN'S CONTRACTION

Operations for this deformity very often end in disappoi
owing to several factors. Among these may be mentioned the
rence of the scar tissue and the sloughing of the skin. Operatio
be done either by the subcutaneous or open method. The latte
be preferred, but requires a high degree of surgical judgme
technique.

Subcutaneous division of the fascia through multiple in
(Adams's operation) is performed as follows: The skin is thor
cleansed and a small sharp-pointed tenotomy knife is introduced
to the skin. The cutting edge is then turned toward the con

and the bands divided, being careful not to cut the vessels and also not to attempt too much in any puncture. This puncture is d at various sites until as much is done as is thought advisable. eration is repeated at later periods. Meanwhile the hand is kept d—under moderate tension only. The splints must be worn at



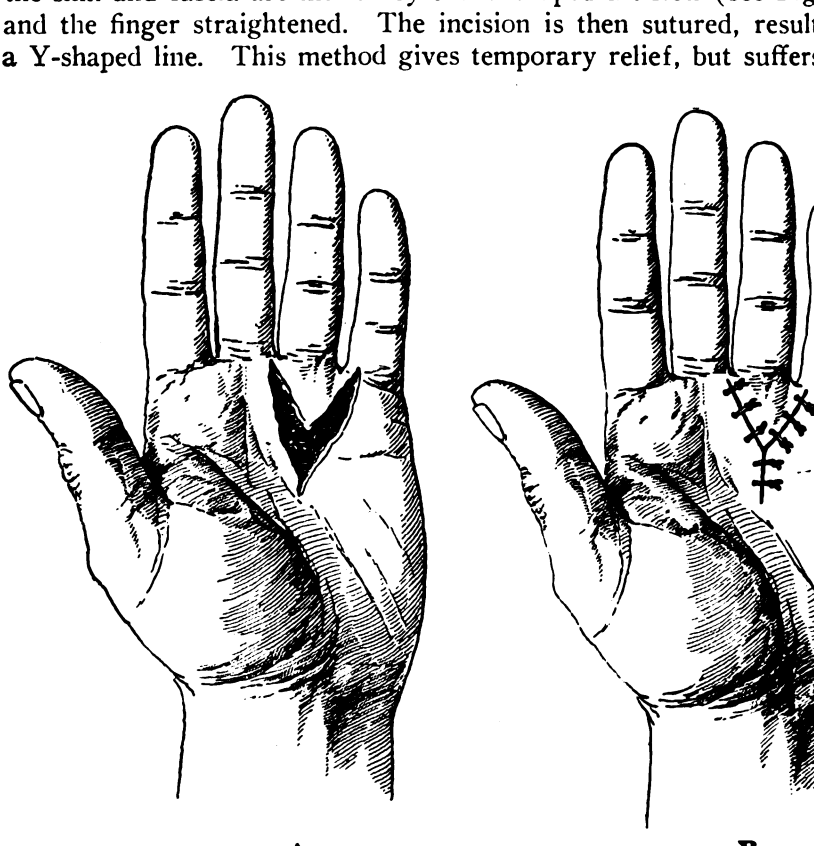
222. Operation for Dupuytren's Contraction by Excision of the cted Fascia. A B is the line of incision for exposing the fascia; the ansverse lines at each end of it enable the skin to be reflected in the form flaps.

for months, meanwhile active and passive motion continued. have cut the bands under open incision

e treatment is so prolonged and the outcome so problematical majority of surgeons do not favour the method.

vision of skin and fascia by V-shaped incision. By this method

the skin and fascia are incised by the V-shaped incision (see Fig
and the finger straightened. The incision is then sutured, resul
a Y-shaped line. This method gives temporary relief, but suffer



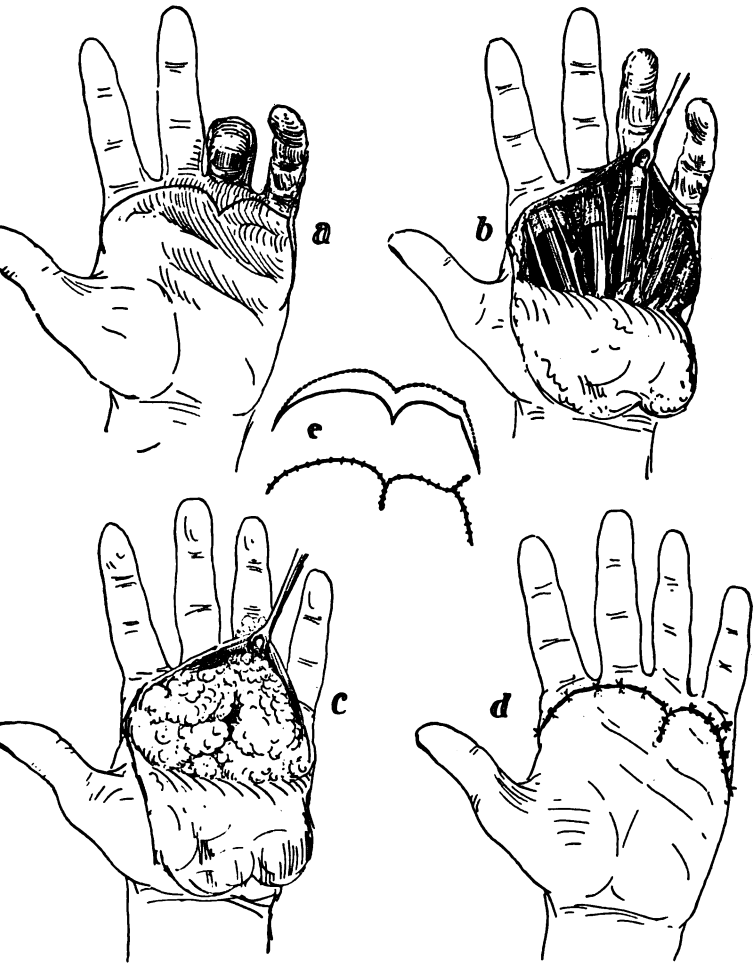
A B

FIG. 223. OPERATION FOR DUPUYTREN'S CONTRACTION BY A V-SHA
CISION. In A the raw area left after the skin and fascia have been divi
the finger has been straightened is shown. In B the method of uniting th
of the raw area is indicated. Any unclosed part should be covered with
graft.

the probability of a return of the contracture. The adjacent scar
may be excised but seldom adds much to the result.

Excision of the contracted tissue. This procedure alone off
surance of definite results but often ends in disappointment
sloughing of the palmar skin in some instances, and return
contracture in others, if the surgeon has been too timid. The surg
between the horns of the dilemma. It is manifest, as Kanav
emphasized, that if the surgeon wishes for definite results, he mu
the responsibility and excise completely all contracted tissue an

he area by the palmar skin if possible, but if not possible, or if ng occurs, by a transplant of skin. In his judgment the result roved if a transplant of fat is used to replace the contracted His procedure as described comprises also the excision of the palmar fascia if the deformity is at all marked. Excision may be



4. Dupuytren's Contracture-Technique of Operation for Excision of Palmar Fascia and Transplantation of Fat. (*Kanavel.*)

hrough a Y-shaped incision or through a longitudinal incision ansverse incisions at the ends to permit rolling back the skin. In er incision sloughing is a possibility. Kanavel has described the ng technique in severe cases:

A longitudinal incision is made just to the inside of the hypo eminence, extending down to within a thumb's breadth of the b the ring finger. Two wings then descend, forming a V. The wing goes down to the base of the little finger and over the ulna of the hand nearly to the dorsum. The radial wing extends do the base of the middle finger. This permits one to excise the palmar fascia over to the thenar and hypothenar spaces. The ski the finger is raised and the contracted bands along the fingers e

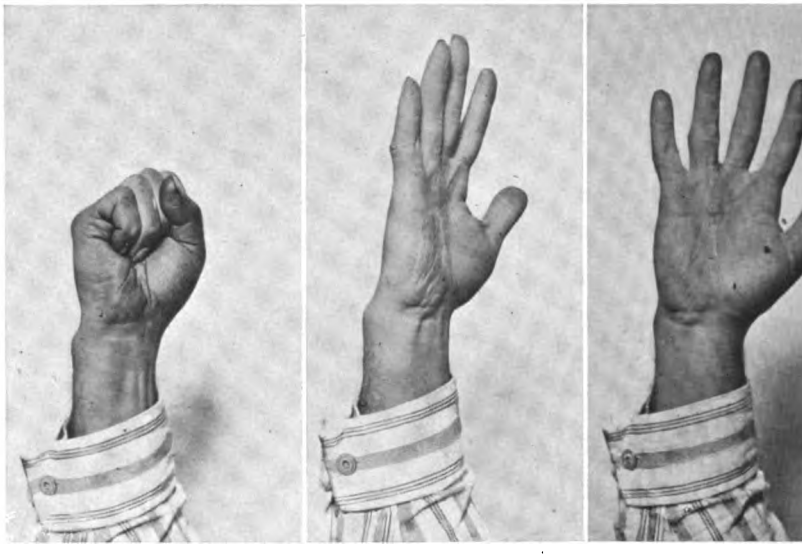


FIG. 225. PHOTOGRAPH OF PATIENT SHOWING RESULT AFTER OPERATI DUPUYTREN'S CONTRACTURE, WITH REMOVAL OF PALMAR FASCIA AND PLANTATION OF FAT. Photograph taken one and one-half years after ope (*Kanavel.*)

The palmar skin being mobilized to the thenar and over the hypo areas may now be brought together. After the fingers are straig the palmar V is changed into a Y. Before final closure of the free transplant of fat taken from the abdominal wall is inserted in palm and prolongations carried up under the skin of the fingers. fat transplant is ¼ inch in thickness and covers the entire palm fore proceeding to this stage, however, the surgeon must convinc self that the skin can be closed and that it is viable. This is ge so if the operation has been done properly. If the skin cannot be or if the surgeon believes the skin is not viable, it is better for t tient if the issue is met squarely and the hand placed in a skin

described above. These skin transplants, if properly certainly successful and end in complete function of operation is not difficult and the disability not much ne other methods. The patient, however, is confined ple of weeks, but the certainty of success more than this in doubtful cases.

ocedure is tried and sloughing of any size occurs, the ot depend on Thiersch grafts or splints or manipulation t, but resort at once to pedicle flaps as the quickest tory method of securing function.

ONS FOR CICATRICIAL DEFORMITIES AFTER INJURIES

ies which follow cicatrization are so various that it is scribe any operation which will meet an individual patient will have an arm closely bound to the side of er will have a large mass of scar tissue preventing oint; and a third will have a cicatrix binding the chin k.

l principles to be followed in these cases are:—

of the scar tissue till healthy tissues are reached. Tight nasses of cicatricial tissues will need to be excised, but rcised not to remove unnecessary portions; at the same area and its edges must be completely refreshed. As l probably be a good deal of bleeding, which must be ure before proceeding further with the operation.

ns by which the deformity may be prevented from re- e (*a*) skin-grafting, (*b*) the use of flaps. (*a*) As re- ng, Thiersch's method does not permanently prevent the e contraction, especially when the area to be grafted essential in these cases to have a thick sound covering ver, when a very large area requires to be covered, it mpossible to get enough skin. Wolfe's method is not ese cases and is also inferior to the use of flaps. There- should be used for small areas and when other methods or in conjunction with these methods.

e the best means of treating these cases; these may be rom adjacent parts, or from a distal part of the body, The flap may be raised and immediately transplanted on, or it may be glided into position or may 'bridge ning portion of the skin. For example, if the arm is

firmly bound down to the chest (following a severe burn or sin
jury) a flap may be raised from the chest (Fig. 226) or back
shoulder. The distal end of the flap is sutured to the raw area
scar tissue prepared to receive it. When union has taken pla

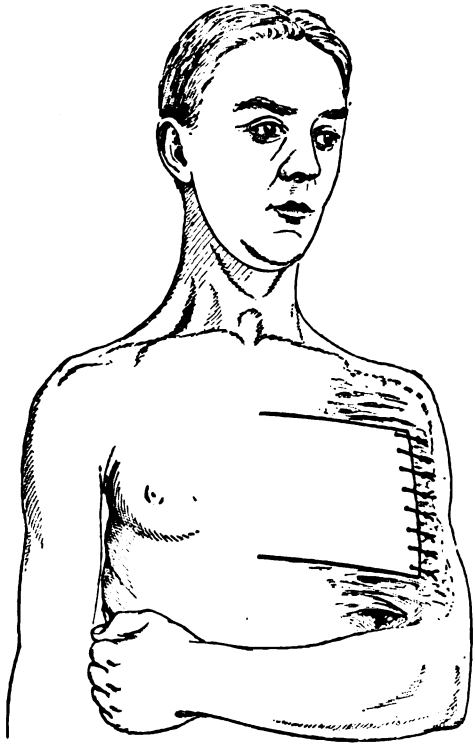


FIG. 226. TO SHOW HOW A FLAP MAY BE USED TO CORRECT CICATRICI
TRACTION. The arm is bound to the side of the chest by adhesions;
flap has been raised from the thorax and stitched at its distal end to a
raw area on the arm. When union has taken place, the pedicle of the
divided, and the arm is freed by dividing the cicatricial bands. A raw
thus made on the inner side of the arm, to which the flap is sutured.

pedicle is divided and at the same time the remaining adhesions
the arm to the side of the thorax are cut through, thus freeing th
and leaving a large raw area on the inner side of the arm. The pr
portion of the flap is then applied to this area and sutured to its
The flap must be made broad in proportion to its length and do
always correspond exactly in size and shape to the raw area, b
should be taken to make their relative sizes equal as far as p
and especially to obtain primary union between the raw area a

flap, because this portion is the most likely to slough.
be usually divided in ten days or a fortnight, the
ding on the amount of union between the flap and
condition of the flap.

ansplanting the flap at once, it may be raised, left
ends, and allowed to granulate. Such a flap may be
jacent portion of the body; thus, in the case of a large
on the inner side of the arm or forearm, it may be
outer surface of the limb. The incisions must be made
e of the blood-vessels and so arranged as to allow the
y twisted into its new position. The flap must be
w area left by its elevation should be closed as much
er to diminish the amount of contraction which follows
e wound. A piece of sterilized gutta-percha or oiled
ath it, especial care being taken to prevent union occur-
s between the pedicles and the raw surface. In about
ks' time, the flap is transplanted by division of one of
sutured to the edges and surface of the raw area pre-
hen union has taken place, the other pedicle is severed
g portion is then sutured in position. At first the flap
l unsightly, but in the course of time it shrinks and

od of using a double-pedicled flap is shown in Figs. 227
nethod is particularly useful in the case of the fore-
d especially for the palmar surface of the latter, where
istance are required. Instead of taking the flap from
igh, it may be taken from the abdomen. The flap
and should not be cut too thick; it must contain a
utaneous tissue and must be long enough to be free
he edges of the raw area are dissected up, to make
those of the flap more easy of accomplishment. The
p are divided at different times, the first in ten to four-
hen the other after a further lapse of some days,
d week. If the fingers have to be covered they should
as widely as possible and the flap marked out with
on, so as to ensure a sufficient amount of covering. It
o make separate pockets for each finger, the attached
lap between the fingers being subsequently divided.
e done in stages, one finger at a time, and each portion
per finger. When this method is used, the nails must
t and thoroughly cleaned, every care being taken to
fluences. A large raw area will be left on the buttock

or from wherever the flap is taken; this is closed as far as by undercutting the adjacent skin and stitching together appos faces, Thiersch's grafts being used to cover any remaining un parts.

(3) During the various stages the parts must be kept absol rest and it is therefore often necessary to employ some form of

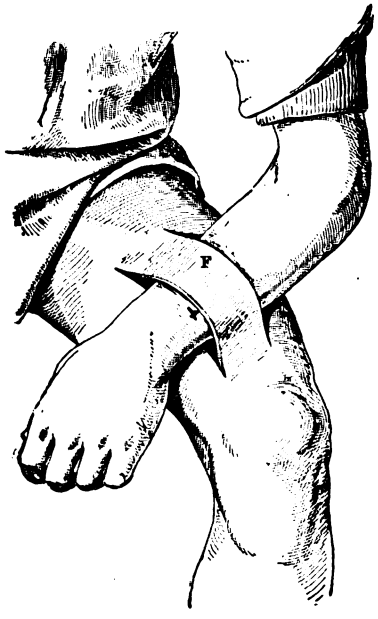


FIG. 227. TO ILLUSTRATE THE USE OF A FLAP, F, WITH TWO PEDICLES.

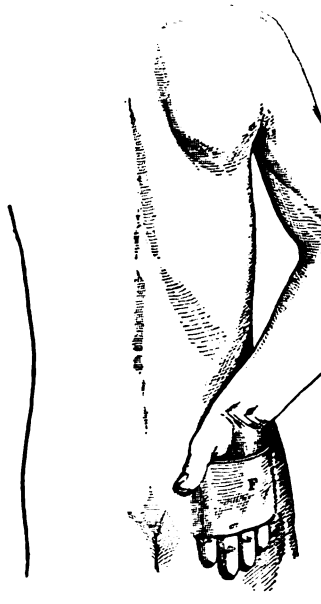


FIG. 228. TO SHOW HOW TI OF THE HAND MAY BE COVER A FLAP, F, TAKEN FROM THE

apparatus. Plaster of Paris is one of the most useful and easily a window may be left so that the wound can be dressed without ing the flap, or the whole case may be put on in such a way a easily removable.

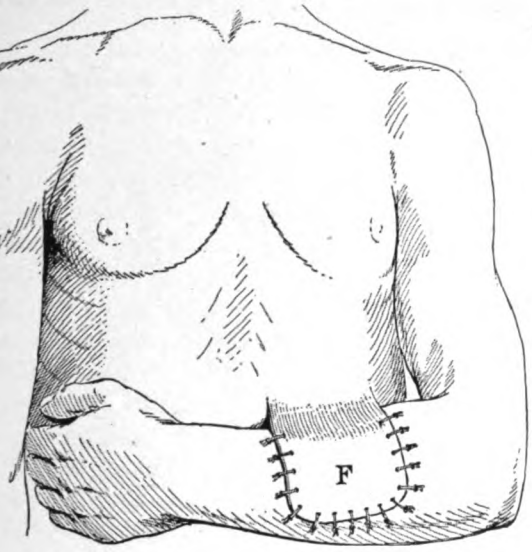
(4) Many operations will probably be required to obtain a g sult, and no attempt should be made, except in the least serious c effect a complete cure by one operation.

Here it may be helpful to give some indications as to the p from which these flaps may be obtained.

1. For the upper arm and axilla, the flap may be taken fr chest (Fig. 226).

2. For the forearm and dorsum of the hand, from the a (Fig. 229) or thigh (Fig. 227). For the dorsum and palm of th

e buttock may be used to supply the flap (see Fig. 228). wer limbs, the opposite limb may be used (Fig. 230). ck, the back of the shoulder or upper part of the chest to supply the flap.



ow how a Flap, f, may be taken from the Skin of the Abdomen and applied to the Forearm.

ERATIONS FOR HAMMER-TOE

y is characterized by dorsal flexion of the first phalanx -phalangeal joint and plantar flexion of the second rst. The terminal phalanx may be in its normal posi- e straight line as the second phalanx. The condition is a shortening of the lateral ligaments of the first inter- and complicated in bad cases by contraction of the of the flexor tendons, and of the skin on the plantar Hallux valgus frequently accompanies this deformity, ring operative treatment there is usually a corn on the the first inter-phalangeal joint or at the extremity e patient usually seeks advice on account of this ecause he wishes to enter one of the public services. he boot on the displaced toe interfering with walking on for operation.

measures available are: (1) division of the contracted the joint; (2) excision of the head of the first phalanx;

(3) amputation of the toe. The first method is suitable only for cases; in the majority of cases the choice lies between excisio amputation and generally excision is to be preferred. Amputa certainly an effective means of relieving the deformity, but it is necessarily severe remedy, which increases the amount of hallux

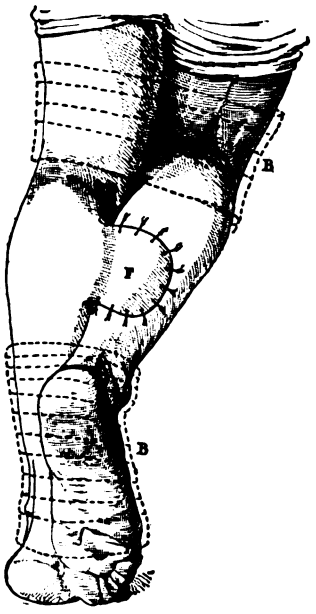


FIG. 230. TO SHOW HOW A FLAP, F, TAKEN FROM ONE LEG, MAY BE TO THE OTHER. B is the appliance (a plaster of Paris casing is very conv for fixing the limbs immovably together.

if this is present, and favours its occurrence in every case. Mo the loss of the toe may prevent the patient from entering one public services. If a marked degree of hallux valgus is preser should be rectified at the same time that the hammer-toe is opera

Division of the contracted structures around the joint. Th having been thoroughly cleansed and sterilized, a small sharp-p tenotome is entered on one side of the toe, opposite the first phalangeal joint, at the junction of the dorsal and lateral aspects lateral ligament is made tense and divided, and the knife is carried the plantar aspect of the joint, dividing the glenoid ligament, th flexor tendon, and opposite lateral ligament. If the flexor tendo plantar ligament are not contracted, the knife may be withdrawn fresh puncture made on the other side of the joint in order to div plantar ligament of that side. The toe is then straightened, and in

be lacerated, or may require to be divided if it is tense. ressing is applied to the toe, and a well-padded splint is ntar surface. The splint should be made of thin metal l; it should extend far back on the sole, the transverse to the foot by an elastic band passing round the instep, linal limb fastened to the toe by another band. Instead ands, it is sometimes more convenient to use a bandage.

he head of the phalanx. A longitudinal incision is made he extensor tendon down to the bone. The soft struc- ed from the bones and the tendon displaced to one side. of the joint being divided, the head of the phalanx is out of the wound and is then divided above the articular ans of sharp bone forceps. Enough bone must be re- the toe to be easily and completely straightened. The usually be present must be excised before the wound is r three sutures. An antiseptic dressing is applied, and on a well-padded splint with an extra amount of padding ninal phalanx, to keep it in a straight line. After the , the toe should be kept on a splint, or put in a silicate ee or four weeks.

The method of amputating the toe is described in

CHAPTER V

BURNS AND SCALDS

By J. M. H. MacLeod, M.A., M.D., F.R.C.P. (Lond.)

Burns are due to dry heat and scalds to moist heat. Sca usually less severe than burns, but the area involved is generall extensive. Burns vary in severity according to the degree of h the length of time the skin has been exposed to it.

Symptoms. It is customary to describe the local effects of sive heat as being of six degrees, and this division, though pure trary, is useful in emphasizing the points in which burns differ ac to the degree of heat.

1. Burns of the first degree are caused by a temperature o 60° C. and consist of erythema, which may be accompanied by s from a transudation of fluid into the tissues, and is associated burning sensation and tenderness. This subsides quickly, ge leaving slight scaliness.

2. Burns of the second degree are the result of a tempera about 100° C. In them the inflammation and burning pain ar severe and the transudation of fluid into the tissues leads, either or in a few hours, to the formation of vesicles and bullæ. Th are rapidly ruptured by injury or by increased exudation, and to form a scab which may separate without leaving a scar. Occa the fluid in the bleb becomes absorbed and the bleb collapses breaking. On the other hand, the bleb may become infected wit micro-organisms and suppuration and ulceration supervene, follo scarring.

3. Burns of the third degree are caused by a temperature than 100° C. and are intensely painful. In them not only the ep but the deeper layer of the skin is destroyed, forming an 'eschar is firmly adherent to the underlying tissue, is ashen-grey or b colour and leathery in consistence. It soon becomes surrounded inflammatory halo, in a few days pus appears at the edges, and in of time it sloughs off, leaving a granulating surface which, on is followed by a scar.

4. In burns of the fourth degree the skin is involved in its

the eschar separates irregular scars and unsightly con-
oduced.

of the fifth degree not only the skin but the underlying
es are affected.

f the sixth degree the charring involves the whole of the
the bone, and loss of parts and deformity occur.

ost serious complications of burns is secondary infection
o-organisms, which not only causes ulceration followed
ertrophic scars, but may lead to a severe cellulitis or,
to septicæmia.

nal effects of burns. The constitutional effects of
the situation and extent of the skin involved and are
than those which occur after other injuries involving
tion of tissue. Burns involving about one-half of the
usually fatal, death resulting from shock a few hours
he patient dying in a state of profound collapse. Some-
may remain comparatively well during the first twenty-
pt for the local pain, and then gradually succumb, with
ostration preceded by spasms, restlessness, and distress
of the heart. In the majority of the fatal cases death
ervenes within forty-eight hours. Should prostration
orty-eight hours or longer the prognosis becomes more
the other hand, the state of collapse may be safely
and yet the patient be in danger from acute inflamma-
supervening from septic absorption.

mplication of severe burns is ulceration of the duodenum,
gastric pain after food and, possibly, hæmatemesis or
y lead to a fatal issue from perforation into the peri-
ing from an eroded artery.

ology. The initial action of heat is to cause dilatation
els throughout the corium, clinically evident in erythema,
serum, and an infiltration of leucocytes. The serous
between the cells of the epidermis, causing them to be
rfering with the process of cornification, and giving rise
Vhen the heat has been more severe the exudation is
ace more rapidly, and collects in the epidermis forming
. The bulla is the result of the fluid stretching, weaken-
ng the inter-epithelial fibres and accumulating in the
l. This process is facilitated, partly by the softening
l cells by the heat and the transformation of any mois-
which, forcing its way between the prickle-cells, separates
es a passage for the fluid; and partly by the toxic action

of the softened or dead epidermal cells causing a positive che and attracting more serum.

In more severe degrees of burn the epidermal cells are de and charred and separate as an eschar, leaving a more or less ulcerated surface. When the ulcer heals there is an organiza the small round cells of the cellular infiltration into new fibrou which may be so abundant as to result in a keloidal scar.

Diagnosis. The diagnosis of slight burns from other l patches of erythema is rendered easy by the destruction of the h the associated burning sensation. Nor need any difficulty be exp in distinguishing the bullous state from other bullous conditi pemphigus or erythema bullosum, for in the case of burns th marked subjective symptoms, a definite history, and a localizatio lesions to the burnt area instead of an irregular distribution c cutaneous surface.

Prognosis. The prognosis in burns of a minor degree is e and even in cases where bullæ have formed, provided the burnt is not too extensive and suppuration has not occurred, healing m place without scarring. The time occupied in recovery depends extent of the area involved and the general condition of the In children and old people shock is apt to supervene unless the very limited, and this delays healing. Where the burn is deep corium implicated, more or less severe scarring and contractur The danger from burns is dependent on the extent of the area than on the depth of the injury, and even in milder degrees of fatal issue is almost inevitable if the area affected be more than o of the body.

Treatment. In mild degrees of burn the pain may be reli a suitable occlusive dressing or by immersion of the affected pa the whole body if necessary, in warm water at 100° F. The ski then be mopped dry and covered with cottonwool. Where the excessive it may be necessary to resort to injections of morphin

Should shock supervene the patient should be stimulated administration of hot drinks or, better, by an injection of norma solution, either subcutaneously or per rectum.

As soon as the recovery from shock takes place, completely parts should be amputated, sloughs removed, and suitable d applied.

Where the burn consists simply of erythema the lesions sh powdered thickly with talc or zinc oxide and covered with cot under a bandage. This dressing should be kept on for a few da the inflammation subsides.

rea involved is considerable and the skin unbroken, but
ation intense, relief is obtained by applying compresses
onate lotion 10 grs. to the oz., lead lotion, or, best of
queous solution of ichthyol. The time-honoured Carron
um calcis, which was once so popular, should not be
greasiness is apt to conserve the heat and may increase
while if any abrasion of the skin be present it is liable
A substitute for it which is soothing and may be used
ual parts of almond oil and lime water, with the addition
oxide and ½% of carbolic acid; this cream should be
ver the burnt area, the superfluity wiped off, and the
over with zinc oxide or talc powder and covered with
in place by a loose bandage. On no account should
e be used, as, like Carron oil, it is apt to induce heat.
are present the clothes should not be dragged off but
lly cut away and the skin cleaned with 1 in 4,000 bini-
y, each bulla should be slit in the dependent part and
icle being left as a protective covering. The area
dressed with lint soaked in the following solution
drs., absolute alcohol 3 ozs., and distilled water 40 ozs.,
ry solution of aluminium acetate, covered with a layer
ained in position by a bandage. When the burn is
vool adhering to raw surfaces should be soaked off by
n and the dressing re-applied.
ration has supervened it must be treated on antiseptic
he burn thoroughly cleansed and dressed with boric
a salve containing eucalyptol and vaseline.
d of treatment of burns by paraffin has come into vogue
nt war and has been found to be very successful in the
ensive burns due to liquid fire, etc. It was introduced
who employed a patent French preparation of paraffin
; Lieut.-Colonel Hull, R.A.M.C., has advocated a sub-
which has also given satisfactory results and which

thol	0.25	per cent.
s	2.0	"
. . . . .	5.0	"
nolle	25.0	"
lurum	67.75	"

of employment is as follows:—The burn is first washed
r and dried by pressing a dry piece of gauze over it.

It is next painted over, or sprayed, with a layer of paraffin at a ten
ture of 50° C., then a layer of cottonwool is placed over the paraffi
covered with a second layer of paraffin, and the dressing is com
by a pad of cottonwool and a bandage. The burns are dressed
at first, and later on, every second day, and any dead skin or sl
removed. In this way it is claimed that healing rapidly takes
with the minimum of scarring and pain, and the need for graft
large burns is to some extent avoided.

The hypertrophic scarring which results from burns may be re
by applications of radium or the X-rays. The hypertrophy is u
most marked immediately after healing has taken place, tends to di
after six or seven months, and then to remain permanent. It is
early stages that most benefit can be derived from the treatment.

In extensive burns scarring can be prevented to some exte
Thiersch grafting of the granulating surfaces and severe defor
mitigated by suitable plastic operations.

CHAPTER VI

INCIPLES OF PLASTIC SURGERY

D. GILLIES, F.R.C.S., M.R.C.S., L.R.C.P.,
Major, R.A.M.C., Surgeon-in-Charge
spital for Sailors and Soldiers suffering from Facial Injuries, Frognal, Sidcup, Kent

FACE INJURIES

ıcticed branch of surgery, owing to the ravages of shell ne so insistently to the fore that future work on surgery y present-day developments of this art.

, its problems and their solutions are similar to those ther branches of surgery; function and form are so ı other that the restoration of one is usually correlated on of the other. All the principles of surgery in relation nobilization of the parts by suture and splint, and to rvation of the tissues find their full scope in this work. considerable boldness in action and opportunism in le qualities in the plastic surgeon. As in other branches etimes it is the waiting policy that pays, and oftentimes e loss of a golden opportunity. On the whole, however, stage of the injury, the safest policy is to wait patiently ıal, both in his local and general condition, is fit for delay is necessary not only between wound and first o between the operations of the various stages. So much that the War Office authorities have sanctioned and sending home of these men between stages.

ges of an injury to the face, though not strictly pertain- gery, are so important that a brief reference to them ıere. There are in this connection three main classes

loss of tissue, mostly civilian type of injuries.
s of tissue, mostly gunshot wounds.
ırate class of burns.

The early treatment of burns is so well known that the ver able results by the 'Ambrine' wax method (W. O. Paraffi needs no further mention.

For the other two classes of facial injuries, with out loss of tissue, the following guiding principle is, I think one:—

That what is left of the tissues should be replaced into an in its normal position at the earliest possible moment by the best means. A corollary of this might be expressed thus:—

That no attempt should be made in the early stage to br gaps due to loss of tissue by over-stretching and stitching th tissues across the gap. More harm than good is done thereb reactionary swelling and the usual suppuration cause more s than would otherwise have to be dealt with, and the stitch always give way.

In addition to this undue stretching of the damaged tissues, cutting of flaps is, in my opinion, to be condemned; for even procedure is successful no obvious gain in time or appearance is while considerable risk of suppuration has been run. It evolv cally, that split lips, lacerated noses, and gashed cheeks, wher of tissue is negligible, should be accurately and carefully se soon as possible, but that where the detached portions do fill the gap caused by the injury the uncovered portion is be granulate, to be closed later by properly designed flaps. Eve therefore, should be made to replace tissues into normal po stitches, strapping, head-gear apparatus, nasal supports and sp not into abnormal positions. There is one exception to th deserves mention, that tags of mucous membrane and of li faute de mieux, be roughly attached to any neighbouring raw s preserve their shape and vitality.[2]

The use of strong, deep, approximating sutures is advocated possible to take the tension off the uniting edges of the skin.

The displaced and fractured bones should likewise be replace normal position at the earliest date possible and retained the possible means. In the case of mandible and maxilla, th co-operation between the surgeon and dental-surgeon should be Early wiring of the mandible has had, in my experience, very cesses, many failures, and a few disasters. It is comparatively a dental surgeon of experience to control the fragments in

[1] Much developed by Hon. Major V. Kazanjian.

[2] This is rightly advocated at the front, notably by Hon. Major C.M.G.

mporary buccal apparatus whereas if the bones are displaced 'until the patient is better' the difficulties d dentist are greatly multiplied.

eth which are in danger of falling down the throat d in the early stages, as valuable supports for the control the fragments may thereby be lost. Similarly, tached pieces of bone should be removed.

uration has been controlled and the scars defined, the toration must be considered from two points of view, —function—is considerably more important than the . For instance, it is obvious that it is useless to build se without the restoration of the air passages, and, practice to make new lips without giving due regard of cicatricial bands which will interfere with the func- and jaws. As a rule, however, the complete restora- ually accompanied by an adequate return of function, of cases when the facial nerve is paralyzed, or when es of expression in the restored part.

the restoration may conveniently be discussed under lings:—

ral shape of the part to be remade.
covering.
sutures, dressings.
-treatment.

THE CONTOUR

ape plays the most important rôle in the majority of ies and presents the greatest difficulty to be encoun- ating work. As in any branch of medicine, when one f drugs to choose from or a considerable variety of gical procedures the cure of the condition is sure to be when the formidable array of possible methods of e of the face is set forth one is inclined to surmise that of much value. However, owing to the immense e present time, the methods so long advocated, but tely tested, have been well sifted by practical experi- ce, in this matter of the general form of the part all implantations have been tried. Metallic plates and plates and injections of liquid celluloid, solid slabs ions of molten wax have all been used to build up the Speaking very generally, these foreign bodies are to

be condemned whenever it is possible to substitute a graft f
patient himself. The former all tend to give trouble either in
or late, whereas the latter, if successful in the early stages,
satisfactory. One celluloid plate which I used to replace a zy
prominence developed over it a sort of cold abscess five months
implantation. The healing had been primary, and when the
burst the skin again healed over the plate. But by far the greater
of celluloid plates had to come out within two months of their i
Very satisfactory results appear to be attained by very cauti
repeated injections of paraffin wax in small quantities, but th
suitable for the larger restorations, and imbedded solid blocks of
have not been tolerated in my experience.

The little experience I have had with buried metallic or
plates does not encourage me to experiment any further wi
There is no panacea for the plastic surgeon with these artificial
building up the skeleton of the face, and he must return to th
road of pure surgery. Of the various autogenous grafts ava
have had enough experience to form some conclusions. Carti
large cosmetic purposes stands unrivalled. It is available in
quantity, is easily fashioned to the desired shape, and, what
important, remains permanently in the shape and size in wh
imbedded. This statement requires modification only in case
there is suppuration following the operation, when part of the
may necrose and a corresponding secondary deformity may aris
is also the case when a part of the cartilage is left exposed in a
cavity. The clinical evidence of the permanence of cartilage is b
by the experimental work of Staige Davis (*Annals of Surge*
1917).

When a softer contour is desired than would be provided by c
local fat and muscle flaps are used to fill the smaller hollow
method is most satisfactory and should be employed for all d
scars. For larger hollows free fat and muscle grafts are use
are naturally more uncertain of result. All I feel it possible t
fat grafts is that when successful the result is very satisfact
diminution of the size of the graft from absorption has not occ
any appreciable extent while the case has been under observati
is not yet established how they will be affected in conditions of w
or yet in old age.) The fat graft often, however, undergoes
absorption from fat necrosis, which is carried to a greater e
the products of this disintegration become infected; but even
latter unfortunate occurrence not all the fat (or muscle) com
and eventually there is left sufficient substance to very mater

on the part. Fat is frequently recommended as a pre-
graft, and in my opinion rightly so.
t proper is almost entirely confined, when speaking of
those of the mandible. An ever-growing percentage
ly successful, and when suitable cases are chosen and
graft in its bed is attained the percentage is a remark-
ne attainment of immobility is enormously aided by the
teeth on the fragments, and, failing these, it must be
wedging of the graft into the mandible, or vice versa.
gments can be controlled with the aid of the teeth the
teal grafts has given great satisfaction, and when the
r wiring the superimposition of this method of graft
d and solid union. In connection with wiring bone
on wire is a long way better than silver wire, but there
to callus formation, and the addition of the osteo-
om the tibia seems to result in a much quicker union.
s of building up the facial scaffold I should like to
the following, which are available only in certain
alar prominence may satisfactorily be simulated by
of the adjacent temporal muscle, as described by me
olomew's Hospital Journal of May, 1917, and the
f this flap will give a certain amount of expression to
e usually accompanying upper facial paralysis has left

rhinoplasty, partial or complete, considerable help is
nate grafts and mucocartilaginous flaps of the septum
sides or bridge of the nose before the skin covering is
e. These intranasal transplantations are of consider-
sure of palatal perforations.
the question of using a graft from another patient.
nce in this respect I have had is with cartilage (six
aved similarly to an autogenous, but the sixth, after
was completely absorbed. It is possible that animal
cceed.

THE SKIN COVERING

nes to the question of the skin covering the method of
ne most satisfactory. Skin grafting does not come up
andard when dealing with the face. Thiersch grafts
pithelium that they are not suitable, while whole thick-
my small experience, not very certain, and at the same

time appear to be subject to a good deal of contraction later
site of election appears to be in the eyelids. Hairy transplant
the upper lips might also prove satisfactory, but when there is
beard a pedicled bridge flap from the chin will give an excelle
tache. Free grafts are, naturally, of more value in burnt face
the finding of flaps is sometimes impossible.

There is hardly any new skin flap of the face that can be th
They have nearly all been enunciated long ago in the books o
Surgery, and the following flap methods are also old methods
been proved sound by practical experience. Many of them h
developed greatly beyond their original design. The simplest
advancement, and the most typical place in which I have
method is in providing the skin covering to the upper part of
It always has the disadvantages of tension at the point of unio
difficulty of sewing neatly a long loose edge to a tight one. R
sutures are here indicated, as in every case where there is lik
tension.

Another simple flap method is the swinging flap. For t
gaps transposed flaps are mostly used and, providing they
planned, give excellent results. There are, however, in war
so many scars which interfere with the taking of flaps that all
the case must be considered. For instance, scar tissue across the
flap will often cause a sloughing of part of the flap, but when
flap is very thick or the scar superficial, this risk is consider
sened.

In one of a long series of similar procedures the guiding prin
take the flap from the opposite, or sound, side of the orifice w
proposed to restore. Similarly this principle is used in corre
level of the corners of the mouth or of the ocular angles.

The place from which this transposed flap is taken must be
considered. Thus, when scar conditions allow, it should be
far away from its new home as its blood supply will allow,
those conditions the secondary closure of the place whence it c
no influence on the flap in its new position; whereas if this flap
posed from a position only separated by a small amount of tissu
gain is considerably lessened by the secondary closure.

Roughly, a sound flap may be swung 90° without fear of l
grene; but they have often been turned through a much bigg
especially when the base of the flap lies in the course of an ar
good example of this lies in the turning down of a frontal flap i
plasty. I have seen very few flaps that have lost a portion
gangrene. Apart from those examples which had scar tissue

ase the other cases occurred when there was so much
that white bloodless streaks were noticeable across
e of operation.

dicled flap is also a transposed flap, and in relation to
tion of Tripier) gives excellent results. Its develop-
ons of the face, and on a much larger scale, is in process
siderable possibilities.

which gives excellent results and is more particularly
cases where a successful free graft would meet the
ridge flap. Here the end portion of the flap is sewn
ion, while the basal portion lies free over an untouched
the end of ten days the unattached portion is divided
d and the former refitted into its original position,
rly adapted for transposing hair-bearing skin to the
ows.

dicled bridge flap is a still larger development and com-
ds which I have employed with success. A large strip
g from ear to ear, was swung over the face and sutured
ion to a position below and round a new cartilaginous
hich the whole of the lower lip and body of the mandi-
away. On the tenth day both pedicles were divided and
calp, leaving a large hair-bearing island of skin over
hin.

have designed and carried out with satisfactory results
covering hopelessly scarred and burnt faces by means
uble pedicled bridge-flap taken from the neck and chest.
nsposed flaps it is of considerable importance to run
thereby greatly facilitating the secondary closure.
tage is gained in adjusting these pointed flaps in posi-
be dovetailed to give greater or less depth, and, when
a larger surface of union than do square-ended flaps.
Annals of Surgery, March, 1917, greatly favours this
g the lower lip from the lateral nasolabial region, and
ice corroborates his opinion as to the good results
s design. These overlapping flaps are, however, avail-
s of the face, and since early in 1916 I have used them
only for the lower lip but also in restorations of the
d eyelids. Double epithelial flaps are particularly indi-
he new nose, and wherever a piece of epithelialized scar
ip, can be turned skin-surface downward to the cavity
e that organ it is attended with good results. But it is
ittle contraction occurs in a rhinoplasty when its raw

surface is left exposed to the nasal cavity, and in restoration buccal cavity it is possible in the large majority of cases to mucous membrane covering by suitable flaps without sacrifi function of the parts to their appearance.

Occasionally the procedure of turning a second flap inward cated, and in certain regions can be carried out without much a scarring.

In the freeing of adherent lips, in shrunken eye sockets, and mucous membrane contractures, the method of epithelial inlay, cated by Esser in the same article, is full of possibilities, and sc given me excellent results.

Relaxation cuts are occasionally useful, and when used sl sewn up styptically.

There are many points in connection with the incision and s the skin in plastic operations of the face that require considerati very essence of the work lies in obtaining the minimal scar; t absence of scar, or the unnoticeable one, is a problem of great and, to my mind, as yet unsolved. I believe there is some specia in the individual skin which determines the character of the sc apart from the surgical treatment of the incision and suture, individual quality prevents one from pronouncing that it is *usua* duce an invisible scar on the face. The usual result, as seen fr to six months after operation, is a visible but practically unn scar, and one giving a pleasing appearance. In certain cases s quite indistinguishable at an early date; others, on the other ha stitch marks and are noticeable and unpleasant after three mont few are keloidal in type. In long operation scars of the ch often observed that part of this becomes invisible, while the rest visible, the whole having received, apparently, the same treatm the good parts are those which have the least tension. Simple of linear scars or ragged wounds without loss of tissue are e where there is no tension and a perfect result is to be expected. ration will, of course, always mar the effect, but the absence o plus the accurate adaptation of the extreme edges are, in my the most important factors in obtaining the desired result. I open-minded as to the best suture material, as good results have the use of fine silkworm-gut, silk, thread, or horsehair; but t is preferred.

There are only two outstanding principles—one that the te the retracting skin must be taken up by sutures other than those the ultimate union, and the second that a really accurate applic edge to edge be achieved by as many carefully placed fine sutur

y. The needle should be inserted very near the free margin. uous close blanket suture is indicated in simple linear scars, but najority of plastic operations one edge has more tension than and frequent interrupted stitches are necessary. When required, sutures are useful in everting the edges and in taking up the These mattress sutures may be placed with advantage at along the line and may be placed a quarter of an inch from the horsehair, or half an inch from it for silkworm-gut when it is o overcome a slightly greater tension. For the more important sutures buried catgut or thread sutures should be used whenever either with or without threads of stout silkworm-gut or wire ied over a vulcanite plate. They can usually be left in ten days causing any serious pressure mark on the skin, but this point requires watching.

ther procedure which is very commonly practiced, and which I believe in, is the incision of the skin on the slant, so as to produce edge. This latter was described in the *Lancet* of September 1, d the reason that I use it is because there appears to me that a rea of epithelial surface is available for union, while the thin ving the character of an epithelial graft, tends to fuse with the skin and to produce an indefinite and rapidly fading scar. This is not indicated in complicated flap operations, for the ultimate bed of these flaps cannot be determined at the time of their de-. When employing it I frequently use a semi-subcutaneous suture which must usually be supplemented with a few inter-dge-to-edge stitches. The four or five single knot lies well for pose. The subcuticular catgut or other stitch does not appear to ell adapted for the face as the neck, but on this point I plead ent experience.

egard to dressings there can be no hard-and-fast rule; but in protect the wound from flies, from the patient's fingers, and e bedclothes, some covering is indicated. Plain gauze is the t when discharges from the nose, eyes, or mouth are likely to er the wound a collodion or mastisol dressing is advisable, and is desired to have a covering which will not stick, paraffin wax) is an excellent application. If kept on for more than three owever, it tends to produce a softened moist condition, and a dry should then be substituted. An excellent dressing for Thiersch eas, both at site of origin and of implantation, is to be found in bined use of paraffin wax (No. 7) and collodion. A piece of e exact size of the raw or grafted area is impregnated with wax in position; over it, covering a large area of healthy skin, is laid

a single layer of gauze which, by means of collodion, firmly hol wax pad in position. This dressing may be removed without it ad to the graft or wound and yet maintain its position.

After-treatment. When an operation wound suppurates, cupping is, next to establishing drainage, the soundest procedure.

Electro-therapeutics, as represented by X-rays, galvanism, frequency current, and ionization have their sphere of usefulness

The 1,000 C.P. light also has been used, somewhat empirica a large number of cases, and I believe in the efficacy of its ra increased blood supply to the part being obvious. At the same is impossible to be honestly convinced that cases do better witl treatment than they would without. I have often exposed v to the effect of the rays while the sewing up is in progress, in th belief that introduced infection is eliminated, and although thes have done well, the belief is not deep-rooted.

Carefully regulated massage is a necessary procedure for th and flaps both before and after the operation, and I attach a goo of importance to this auxiliary treatment. Frequently when the tion of a flap is in doubt judicious early massage, combined wi of the electro-therapeutical methods of producing increased blood will turn a probable failure into a success; whilst the discreet p of the surface of a flap in which venous and lymphatic stasis is ap allows for the necessary drainage until the new circulation is estab

With these few principles from actual experience, I hope to hav cated what a vast amount of care and thought must be given to th of this art, of which no man can be master.

SECTION V

ONS UPON THE TONGUE, TONSILS, HARYNX, AND ŒSOPHAGUS

PART I

RATIONS UPON THE TONGUE

BY

VARING, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.),
Brevet Colonel R.A.M.C.
oint Lecturer in Surgery, St. Bartholomew's Hospital;

RATIONS UPON THE TONSILS

BY

RGE E. WAUGH, M.D., F.R.C.S. (Eng.)
Hospital for Sick Children, Great Ormond Street;

RATIONS UPON THE PHARYNX

BY

TROTTER, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.)
Captain R.A.M.C. (T.)
tant Surgeon, University College Hospital.

CHAPTER I

RATIONS FOR NON-MALIGNANT AFFECTIONS OF THE TONGUE

By H. J. Waring, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.)

ATIONS FOR ACUTE ABSCESS AND CELLULITIS OF THE TONGUE

ε operation which is of most value for these conditions is free linal incision or incisions deeply into the substance of the tongue lorsal aspect and as near the median line as possible.

ore making incisions of this kind into the tongue, it is advisable patient to be anæsthetized and to have the jaws held apart by g gag. In addition, a pair of tongue forceps will also be of value ing the tongue forward, and often it will be found convenient to strong suture through the substance of the tongue and leave it a loop. Both these precautions aid the operator in preventing gue falling backwards into the oral part of the pharynx, and so y interfering with respiration.

al abscesses of the tongue are very uncommon. They are treated incision into the abscess cavity, if possible, from the dorsal as- re being taken that the cut is made in the long axis of the tongue.

er-treatment. The cavity of the mouth and the surface of the should be frequently and regularly washed out with a solution of e of hydrogen, or some other dilute antiseptic.

ATIONS FOR CHRONIC ULCERS OF THE TONGUE AND LEUKOPLAKIAL PATCHES

forms of chronic ulcer which most frequently require surgical nt are those due to tertiary syphilis and tubercle. Patches of akia—local manifestations of chronic superficial glossitis—and dition to which the term 'pre-cancerous' is applied, also often local excision. Before carrying out any operation for the ex- f any form of localized ulcer of the tongue in chronic glossitis, cessary that all septic stumps be removed and carious teeth either or extracted.

chief precautions to be observed when removing local ulcers of

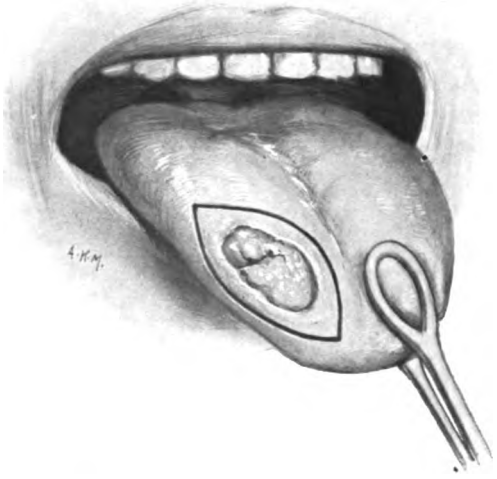


FIG. 231. CHRONIC ULCER OF THE TONGUE. Position of the incisi

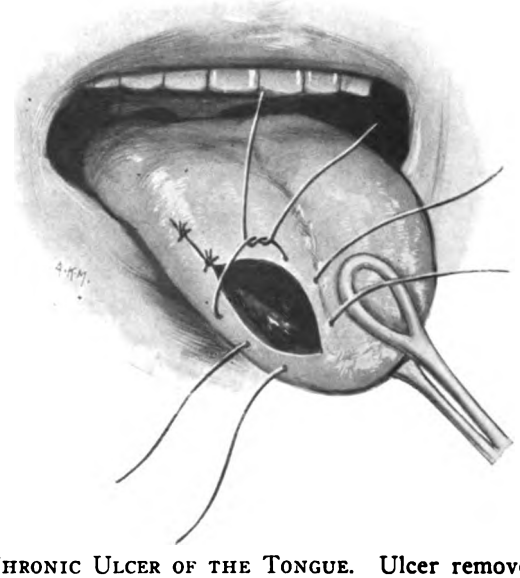
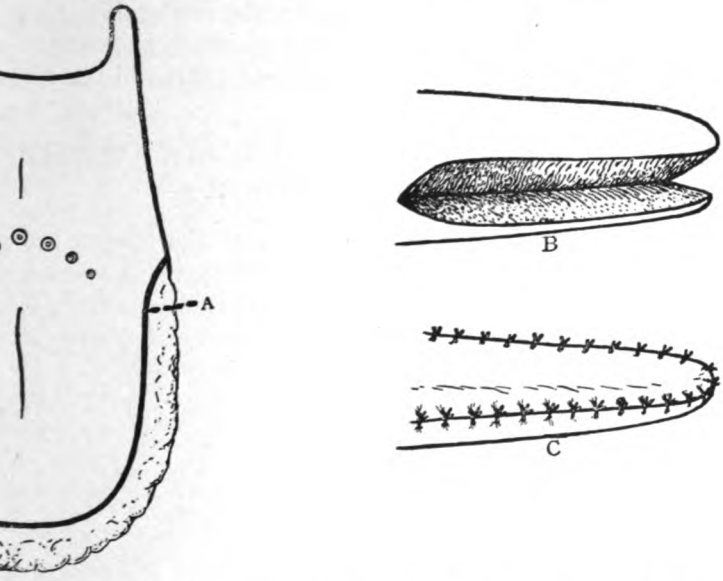


FIG. 232. CHRONIC ULCER OF THE TONGUE. Ulcer removed and s inserted, but not tied.

the tongue are to ensure free and complete exposure of that port the tongue which is to be operated upon and to use a strong g keeping the jaws apart. When the ulcer is situated far back, the

ongue should either be transfixed with a needle carrying ure or held by a special pair of tongue forceps.
e ulcerated area is small and situated anteriorly, excision ed out under local anæsthesia. When, however, the area



Excision of Chronic Disease limited to the Border of the e dorsal incision; B shows the gap left after excision of the area, od of closing it. (*Butlin.*)

l is comparatively large, or is situated posteriorly, then hesia is preferable.

n. The tongue having been pulled forward and the ulcer-ly exposed, an oval-shaped excision is made around the anner depicted in Fig. 231. In making the incision into the ce of about 1 to 1½ centimetres from the margin of the e allowed. The cut into the substance of the tongue is made haped manner, the apex of the wedge being opposite the f the ulcer. By these means the affected portion of the d and removed. All bleeding points are picked up with fine eps and ligatured with catgut. The entire field of operation y and a series of sutures introduced after the manner shown It is advisable to introduce all these sutures before any e sutures are then knotted and the ends cut short.

atment. Frequent washing out of the mouth with peroxide

of hydrogen or dilute antiseptic solution should be practised, week or ten days the sutures are removed.

The marginal portion of the anterior half of the tongue is fr the site of superficial glossitis with, in places, small areas of leu or even induration. Occasionally, also, small chronic ulcers a along the margins. The late Sir Henry Butlin devised an oper the removal of the diseased tissues under these conditions. Th of the operation which he practised are shown in the diagram,

OPERATIONS FOR NON-MALIGNANT TUMOURS O TONGUE

The most common local tumours of the tongue are papillo warty growths, localized areas of lymphangioma, venous nævi, tumours such as lipomata, fibromata, and adenomata. The basa of the tongue in addition may be the seat of a cyst derived f remains of the thyreo-glossal duct, whilst occasionally the dorsu tongue posteriorly may be the site of a considerable tumour—a lingual thyreoid gland.

REMOVAL OF PAPILLOMATA AND LOCALIZED LYMPHANG

The operations for the removal of these conditions are es similar. Small warts and papillomata can be removed quite easi local anæsthesia by seizing the affected portion of the tong serrated forceps and excising the wart and adjacent mucous m by one cut with a strong sharp pair of scissors. The margin wound thus made can then be approximated by the insertion o two sutures of fine catgut, in a manner similar to that shown in

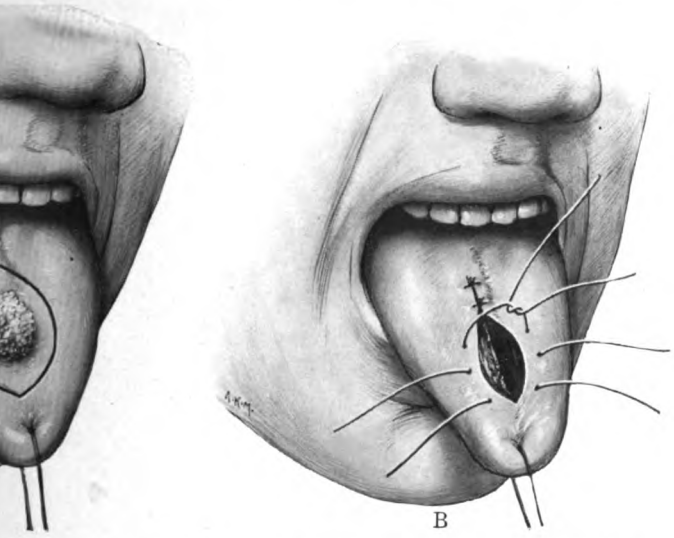
Removal of larger papillomata and lymphangiomat affected portion of the tongue having been exposed in the ma scribed in connexion with chronic ulcers, an oval-shaped in made into the substance of the tongue and surrounding the tu shown in Fig. 234. The mucous membrane within the margin incision and the underlying superficial tissues of the tongue are with a pair of scissors. By these means a localized growth is r hæmorrhage is then arrested and the margins of the wound are together by the insertion of a series of sutures similar to thos mended after removal of a chronic ulcer.

REMOVAL OF A VENOUS NÆVUS

Venous nævi of the tongue most commonly involve the anter and often the margin not far from the tip. The operation whi

a cure is excision of a wedge-shaped portion of the moved containing the diseased area. In determining wedge-shaped incision, attention must be paid so to he incision that when the margins of the wound are tongue shall not be too pointed.

e tongue is drawn forward as in the previous opera- uture passed through its substance posterior to the so on the opposite side. A strong pair of sharp a wedge-shaped portion of the tongue enclosing the Hæmorrhage may be somewhat severe, but usually ed by picking up the bleeding points with pressure le assistance may be obtained in temporary control



B

OF A PAPILLOMA FROM THE TONGUE. A shows the incision, sutures.

ulling forward the tongue with the two sutures, or nooked round the dorsum. When the hæmorrhage ne two raw surfaces are approximated by the in- interrupted sutures of catgut.

OF A LIPOMA, FIBROMA, OR ADENOMA

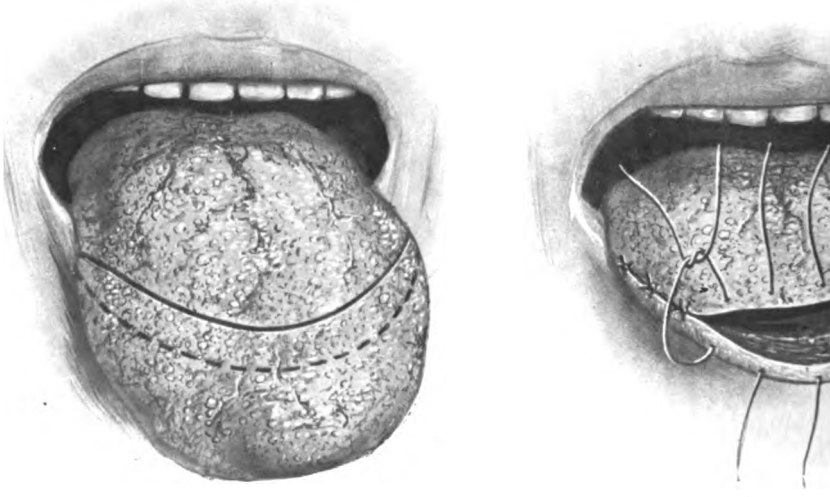
rs of the tongue of this kind are usually small and be effected.

e mouth being held open by a gag and the anterior eized with a pair of tongue forceps, the organ is so

manipulated that the portion of the tongue in which the tumour is fully exposed; with a scalpel an incision is made through t membrane overlying the tumour and in the long axis of the to enucleator is then taken and the small tumour separated and from its bed of fibrous tissue. The walls of the cavity from tumour has been taken are approximated by several points of i sutures. If there is too much redundant mucous membrane th of the wound can be pared before suture.

OPERATIONS FOR GENERAL LYMPHANGIOM THE TONGUE OR MACROGLOSSIA

Certain cases of macroglossia due to a general condition angioma of the tongue can be very much improved by excis anterior half of the affected organ.



A B

FIG. 235. OPERATION FOR MACROGLOSSIA. A shows the incisions f of the anterior half of an enlarged tongue, B, the method of inserting after its removal.

Operation. The patient having been anæsthetized and t widely opened, two incisions are made in the tongue almost tr and in the position shown in Fig. 235, A. These incisions are d a wedge-shaped manner until they meet posteriorly, when th protuberant half is set free. Next, all bleeding points are and ligatured, special care being taken to apply ligatures to branches of the lingual artery, as they lie in the lower part of th

faces are sponged thoroughly dry, approximated, and osition by a series of interrupted sutures of No. 1 , after the manner shown in Fig. 235, B.

nt. This is similar to that already described in con-noval of small tumours.

OF A CYST OF THE TONGUE DUE TO ISTENT THYREO-GLOSSAL DUCT

f the tongue which are caused by the presence of a usually occupy the basal portion and protrude as a k, immediately above the body of the hyoid bone and the posterior aspect of the symphysis menti. Conse-ute of surgical approach for the removal of cysts of ie neck.

he patient having been anæsthetized, a large sand-erneath the neck and the head thrown back. This poses the supra-hyoid and submental regions. The ex-cyst is determined by palpation, and then an incision is made over it either in a line extending from the of the hyoid bone to the mandible or transversely nediately above the superior margin of the hyoid bone. al tissues are cut through and the external surface of it lies between the muscles and in the mid-line of the e. By careful dissection or separation with a blunt s separated from its surroundings. Usually it will be of fibrous tissue passes upwards and backwards to-f the site of the foramen cæcum. This fibrous band gh above, and any other prolongations of the capsule nwards towards the body of the hyoid bone are sim-these means, the cyst can usually be removed entire. vity from which the cyst has been taken should now the insertion of a few points of buried catgut suture, s being first ligatured. The external wound is then

TION FOR LINGUAL THYREOIDS

the tongue in the region of or immediately behind the occasionally occupied by a firm, solid tumour which ie structure of the thyreoid gland. Often tumours of patients in whom the thyreoid gland is congenitally tly, operations should not be recommended for the

removal of such tumours unless it is clear that the patient has a
gland in the normal position. Sometimes, however, these tum
crease in size and interfere with swallowing; then it may be n
partially to remove them. This can be effected either by sha
the protuberant portion of the tumour, or better, perhaps, by excis
wedge of tissue from the more prominent portion.

Cases have been reported in which, after operations of this
which the entire lingual swelling has been removed, the patie
developed symptoms of myxœdema.

CHAPTER II

ONS FOR MALIGNANT DISEASE OF THE TONGUE AND FLOOR OF THE MOUTH

H. J. WARING, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.)

ANT disease of the tongue and floor of the mouth in nearly histologically a squamous-celled carcinoma (epithelioma). s of carcinoma of the tongue which are the most favourable e procedures and are followed by the best results are the and the localized and indurated forms. The ulcerative and nfiltrating varieties are less suitable for operation and give sults, especially the last. It cannot be too strongly pointed cinoma of the tongue and floor of the mouth in the early ocalized disease, and does not extend beyond the tissues in te neighbourhood and the primary groups of lymph glands e lymph vessels from the infected area. Also when deep as taken place even extensive operations do not offer good a permanent cure.

filtration of the tissues in the base of a carcinoma occurs y liable to travel along and within the sheaths of the intrinsic muscles of the tongue. The muscles which are mostly in- he genioglossus, the styloglossus, the hyoglossus, and the ualis. Clinically, infiltration of muscles or extension along uscular sheaths must be suspected when, on examination, a ne of the tumour cannot be distinguished by careful digital

ph vessels from the tongue in the main empty themselves mental, submaxillary, or deep cervical groups of lymph the course of the upper portion of the jugular vein. The mph glands receive the lymph vessels from the tip and the of the tongue, the submaxillary group those from the middle st the lymph vessels on the posterior part pass into the deep ds which lie in close relation to the jugular vein. There is t lymph gland located close to the bifurcation of the carotid receives lymph vessels directly from the median and lateral he tongue. In the main, the lymph vessels from one lateral

half of the tongue pass to the lymph glands on the same side of
but it must be borne in mind that, in the region of the tip and o
terior part, and also in the region of the median fibrous tissu
there are communications between the lymph vessels of the two s
sequently, when carcinomata are situated in one or other of thes
the lymph glands on both sides of the neck are very prone to
taneously involved. Fig. 236 shows the general distribution of
vessels of the tongue and the groups of lymph glands into w

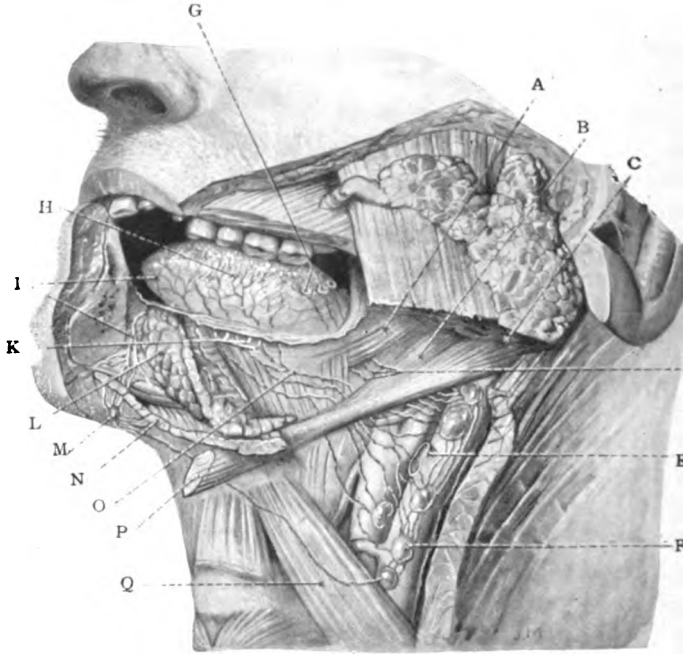


FIG. 236. DISSECTION OF THE SUBMENTAL, SUBMAXILLARY. SUBLI
DEEP CERVICAL REGIONS. The drawing shows the arrangement of
vessels and the lymph glands in connexion with the tongue and floor of
A, Styloglossus; B, Stylohyoid; C, Digastric; D, Afferent vessels to de
glands from posterior third of tongue; E, Common facial vein; F, U
cervical lymph glands; G, Vallate papillæ; H, Superficial lymph vessels
dorsum of tongue; I, Lymph vessels of apex of tongue; K, Afferent
mandibular glands; L, Sublingual gland; M, Submental gland; N,
(cut); O, Afferent vessels to deep cervical glands; P, Anterior belly o
(cut); Q, Omohyoid. (*Robinson.*)

open. In addition, it must be borne in mind that the lymph
close proximity to the parotid and submaxillary salivary glands
to escape notice in the early stages of enlargement, on accou
dense fibrous tissues which surround them.

object of the surgeon when treating by operation a carcinoma ongue or floor of the mouth must be to remove the neoplasm, the portion of the tongue comprising the overlying mucous mem- nd underlying muscular and fascial tissues, together with all the glands which receive lymph vessels directly from the affected When the disease has made considerable progress, it is necessary ve, in addition to the primary lymph glands, the lymph vessels lymph glands of the next series. This in all cases necessitates a section of the neck on one or both sides and complete removal low of these secondary lymph glands, together with the lymph nd lymph glands above them. In a dissection of the neck for the of the primary lymph glands, it is necessary in all cases to excise naxillary salivary gland of the affected side; otherwise small, sub- y lymph glands are certain to escape detection and removal.

n a patient suffering from carcinoma of the tongue comes under ion at an early stage, the operation to be recommended is re- f the diseased portion of the tongue, together with a marginal two-thirds or three-quarters of an inch all round the growth, and ame time to remove the lymph glands on the same side of the Usually, it will be found advisable and convenient first to per- e operation on the lymph structures in the neck and at the same ature the lingual artery. The wound in the neck is then com- losed and the affected portion of the tongue removed on the lines mentioned.

sion of the tongue, either partial or complete, may be effected ation carried out through the mouth, through the mouth after of the lower lip and the mandible in the median line, or through on commencing at the angle of the mouth on the affected side nding outwards and downwards into the neck, with simultaneous or removal of the portion of the horizontal ramus of the e opposite the diseased area.

CE OF OPERATION FOR THE REMOVAL OF MALIGNANT DISEASE OF THE TONGUE

important factors which govern the determination of the variety tion for removal of the cancer of the tongue are in the main the g:—

position and extent of the primary growth. When the a is limited to the tongue and has not infiltrated deeply or o the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth or become to the periosteum of the mandible, excision of the growth is ied out through the mouth; favourable cases are those in which

the affection is limited to the anterior two-thirds of the ton especially when the lateral half only is involved. In these cas results can usually be obtained by cutting away the affected hal tongue with scissors. When, however, the disease is located in or to the posterior third of the tongue, and especially when it has s the adjacent portion of the fauces, it is necessary, in order complete removal, to enlarge the field of operation by dividing t lip, the lower jaw, and the tissues in the submental region. W carcinoma chiefly involves one lateral margin of the tongue and towards the inferior aspect and the adjacent mucous membran floor of the mouth, it is usually necessary to remove several teeth the growth and a segment of the alveolar portion of the horizont of the mandible. This procedure very greatly facilitates comp posure of the diseased area and enables the operator to ensure, a possible, complete local excision of the diseased tissues. In those which the disease is situated far back and extends outwards to t between the base of the tongue and the inner aspect of the mand is attached to the latter, the most complete exposure is obtained ing a curved incision commencing at the angle of the mouth affected side and running downwards and outwards to the ho ramus of the mandible, a little in front of the angle, and then dow and forwards in the neck as far as the hyoid bone. When tissues of the cheek and neck have been cut through and turne the mandible should be divided in such a manner that the po which the growth has extended is included within the lines of se

The duration of the disease and involvement of the glands. Carcinomatous growths of the tongue or floor of the offer the best chances of successful operative removal and least lia non-recurrence when they come under observation at a compa early stage and before extensive infiltration of adjacent tiss occurred. The definite palpable enlargement of the primary glands which receive lymph vessels from the diseased area cann erally be detected in these early stages. It must not be assume ever, that because enlargement of these lymph glands is not obvi they are not already the site of deposits of carcinoma cells wh ultimately cause the development of secondary growths. Unfort as regards hospital patients, too frequently they fail to com surgical observation before the disease has made considerable p Patients of the educated classes generally discover carcinomatous of the tongue at an early stage and seek advice. The rate of gr carcinoma of the tongue varies considerably in different indi Patients who are confirmed alcoholics and are the subjects of

lis generally present the most quickly growing varieties of this dis-
Consequently, in patients of this kind, the outlook as regards the
anent relief from operative interference is not good. As far as the
or's observation goes, in young patients who suffer from carcinoma
e tongue, growth is usually rapid and the prognosis is not so good.
efore, in young patients, wide excision of the diseased tissues is very
rtant. If the carcinomatous growth has extended to and involved
eriosteum covering of the mandible, extensive operation is neces-
and the outlook is not so good.

When in a patient suffering from carcinoma of the tongue it is found
he disease has infiltrated deeply and the tongue has become fixed
e jaw, it is not usually advisable to recommend any operation,
it is not possible to take away the entire disease. The position of
ient who has been submitted to an incomplete operation for the
val of a cancerous growth, either of the tongue or the floor of the
n, is far worse than if no attempt had been made to free him from
sease. When the dorsum of the tongue is also the seat of a car-
natous growth, and this extends backwards and affects the superior
e of the larynx, especially the arytæno-epiglottic folds, then in
reat majority of instances even extensive operation does not offer
rospect of success.

cases of cancer of the tongue which cannot readily be dealt with
gh the mouth alone—that is to say, when the disease is placed far
and involves the dorsum of the tongue, the posterior part of the
and the folds of the fauces and the tonsil—the operation of choice
to be median division of the lower lip followed by division of the
ible in the region of the symphysis. This method of surgical
ach will, in practically all cases which are amenable to operative in-
ence, enable the surgeon satisfactorily to remove the disease. When
sides of the dorsum of the tongue are involved it will be necessary
nove the entire organ down to the root, on account of the serious
erence with the blood-supply of the anterior portion.

here is one further class of case which requires to be treated some-
differently. I refer to those cases in which the disease involves
terior part of the posterior half of the tongue and has spread and
e fixed to the horizontal ramus of the mandible. These cases are
reated by dividing the cheek laterally and cutting through the
ntal ramus of the mandible in front of and behind the disease.

me surgeons have recommended, in those cases of carcinoma of the
e which spread towards the upper aperture of the larynx, that the
of surgical approach should be through the neck, immediately below
dy of the hyoid bone. I do not think, however, that this method

of subhyoid pharyngotomy offers any advantage over the op
already recommended.

PRELIMINARY PREPARATIONS

Before commencing an operation for the removal of the
partial or complete, the cavity of the mouth should be rendered
as possible. This can best be effected by removal of all cario
and decayed stumps, complete removal of all tartar from the
the remaining teeth, and the regular use of an antiseptic mou
The daily use of a dilute solution of peroxide of hydrogen for a f
before operation gives considerable assistance. It is not pos
course, to render the buccal cavity and the tongue entirely asepti

CHOICE OF ANÆSTHETIC

As a general rule, removal of the tongue can best be effecte
general anæsthesia. Localized growths, however, when situate

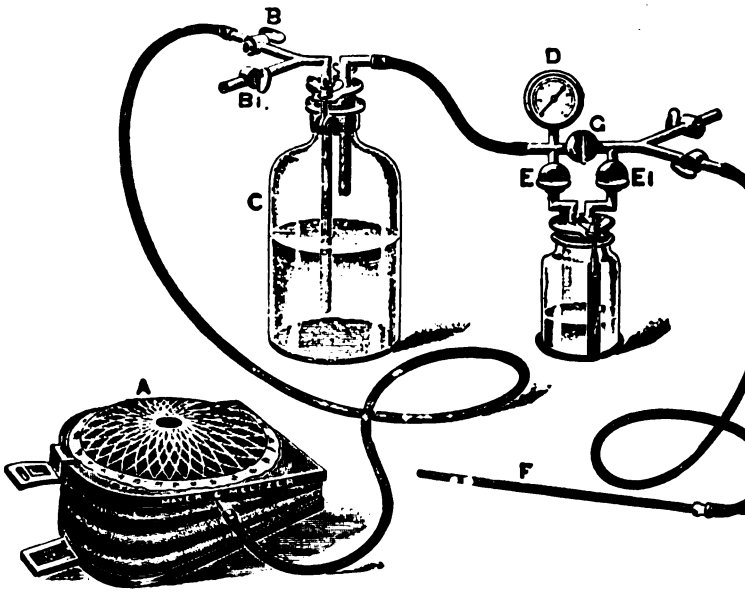


FIG. 237. APPARATUS FOR ANÆSTHETIZATION BY THE INTRA-TRACHEAL
A, bellows driving air through tap B into wash bottle C. Through the
oxygen can be also passed if desired. Attached to the ether bottle is the
and the regulating taps E, E I, and G. F is the tracheal tube. (*Boyle &*

anterior part of the tongue, can easily be removed with inf
anæsthesia. The advantages, however, of local anæsthesia are ver

it can only be employed satisfactorily in the case of small growths t does not allow of simultaneous removal of the affected cervical n glands. Ordinary anæsthesia with ether or chloroform is avail- n most cases in which the disease is situated in the anterior or middle on of the tongue. When, however, the base of the tongue is the of disease, or it is necessary to perform an extensive operation resection of a segment of the mandible, it is necessary either to nister the anæsthetic by the intra-tracheal method, with a tube d down through the pharynx and larynx into the trachea (Fig. or to perform preliminary laryngotomy. After the introduction of ryngotomy tube, the cavity of the lower portion of the pharynx is d with a sponge, in order to prevent the passage of blood or other downwards into the chest. From many points of view anæsthetiza- n these cases is best effected by the intra-tracheal method. This, ver, requires the services of an anæsthetist skilled in the use of the tracheal tube. Preliminary laryngotomy has many advantages, asier of application and does not of necessity require the services ch a skilled anæsthetist. The chief advantage of the intra-tracheal od of anæsthetizing a patient is that the larynx is not opened by nd from the outside.

LTANEOUS REMOVAL OF PRIMARY GROWTHS IN THE TONGUE D OF LYMPH GLANDS ON THE AFFECTED SIDE OF THE NECK

s a general rule it is advisable, when operating upon a patient with oma of the tongue, to remove both the primary growth and the glands at the same sitting. The best method of effecting this is form the cervical portion of the operation first and, when the neck en opened up, to ligature the lingual artery. After closure of the l in the cervical region and careful protection by dressings, the buccal removal of the affected portion of the tongue is carried out. ionally, however, it will be found, especially in hospital cases, to the extent of the primary disease and the septic condition of al cavity, it is safer to perform the operation at two sittings. In cases, it is usually preferable to perform the cervical operation nd at the expiration of ten to fourteen days to remove the disease within the mouth. It will often happen if the diseased portion of ngue is removed first, that the patient will decline to have the operation for the removal of the affected lymph glands.

ION OF ONE HALF OF THE TONGUE THROUGH THE MOUTH

is operation is often referred to as 'Whitehead's operation,' and s in cutting away the greater part of one half of the tongue with s.

Operation. The patient is placed in the dorsal posture v
head somewhat raised. This position helps in preventing bloc
drawn into the respiratory passages and also facilitates the adn
tion of the anæsthetic. The mouth is fixed widely open with a
gag. The operator stands on the affected side of the patient
assistant directly opposite to him. The tongue is drawn forwar
piece of thick salmon-gut or silk passed through each lateral ha
1 inch from the tip. Care should be taken in passing the sali
through the diseased half to avoid the region of the growth. Ea
of gut is knotted in a loop and serves to draw the tongue forwa
helps in preventing the dorsum falling backwards and so ir
respiration. The loop on the sound side is given to the assistan
the operator draws the tongue forwards with the other. An inc
now made with a knife through the mucous membrane on the s
and inferior aspects of the tongue in the median line, as far bac
as an inch beyond the limit of the growth. Scissors are nex
and traction exerted laterally by means of the loop ligatures
median fibrous tissue septum of the tongue is defined by a fe
of the scissors; when this has been done, the tongue is separat
two halves by cutting backwards with the scissors until the li
the growth have been passed. The two halves are then pulled u
and towards the sound side, and the diseased half cut through
versely at the base from below and on the lateral side upwards
wards. The lingual artery, which lies quite close to the mucou
brane on the inferior aspect and a short distance from the median
should be picked up with pressure forceps when it has been rec
If a ligature has not already been applied to it during an opera
the removal of the lymph glands after the lingual artery h
dealt with, the remaining substance of the tongue is cut thro
a series of further cuts with the scissors. The affected portion
tongue including the growth is thus removed. After the por
tongue containing the carcinomatous growth has been removed, i
be carefully examined in order to determine the extent of the
and whether sufficient surrounding tissue has been taken away,
sometimes happens that the disease has extended further th
originally recognized. When there is doubt as to the c
removal of the diseased tissues, a further portion must be cu
before suturing the margins of the divided mucous membrane
superior and inferior aspects of the tongue. All bleeding po
picked up with pressure forceps and the cut margins of the
membrane on the under aspect joined to those on the dorsu
series of interrupted sutures of catgut. The stump of the to

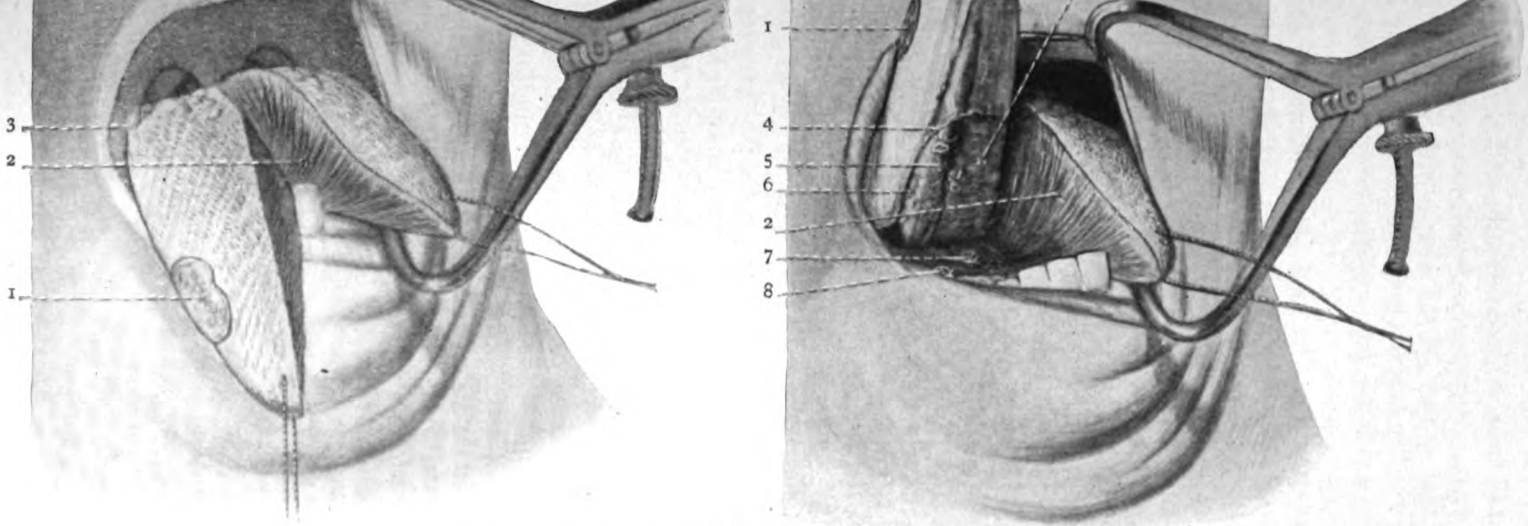


FIG. 238. EXCISION OF ONE HALF OF THE TONGUE FOR LOCALIZED CARCINOMA BY THE INTRA-BUCCAL METHOD. Two stages of the operation are shown. 1, Carcinoma; 2, median septum of the tongue; 3, Palato-glossal fold; 4, division of the mucous membrane; 5, lingual nerve; 6, sub-lingual salivary gland; 7, proximal end of the lingual artery; 8, proximal end of the lingual nerve; 9, divided muscles of the tongue.

allowed to fall back into the mouth, and the salmon-gut sutur had been passed through the sound half of the tongue may l to the external aspect of the cheek with a small piece of st This suture readily enables the tongue to be drawn forward if rhage should occur due to non-ligature of a blood-vessel or slip a ligature.

After-treatment. The field of operation and also the entir cavity should be regularly washed out at short intervals either solution of peroxide of hydrogen or a dilute antiseptic. The should be kept in bed as little as possible and encouraged to in the sitting posture. When asleep, he should lie on the affec with the head turned towards that side, whilst frequent spon washing out of the mouth should be practised; the object precautions is to avoid the secretion from the floor of the mo the field of operation being drawn into the bronchi and lungs inspiration, since, when this happens, 'inhalation pneumonia' to be set up.

EXCISION OF THE TONGUE AFTER MEDIAN INCISION C LOWER LIP AND THE SUBMENTAL TISSUES AND DIVIS THE MANDIBLE

Operation. The patient is placed in the dorsal posture head and shoulders raised. In these cases it will usually b advisable to anæsthetize the patient by the intra-tracheal meth other cases, a preliminary laryngotomy may be first performed pharynx packed with a sponge. The operator stands on the ri of the patient and his assistant directly opposite to him. A incision is first made through the lower lip and the submental an hyoid regions, commencing above the central point of the lower extending downwards to just above the upper border of the the hyoid (Fig. 239). The soft tissues of the lip, including the membrane on its buccal aspect and the periosteum on the oute of the mandible, are incised together with the skin and fascia in the submental and sub-hyoid regions. The flaps thus for held aside after the coronary arteries have been seized with forceps, whilst the lower jaw is supported by the assistant. N mandible is pierced with a bone-drill about one-third of an inch side of the median line. The two apertures thus made are for t duction of a wire suture when the operation is being comple necessary the central incisor tooth on the affected side is e and the bone just to one side of the symphysis menti is sawn This division of the jaw can be effected either with a strong

saw passed behind the symphysis. The mandible having been vided, the two halves are pulled apart and the genioglossi muscles ed. This will expose the inferior aspect of the tongue and the the mouth. A loop of strong salmon-gut is passed through the r portion of the tongue, and with this the organ is pulled forward s the sound or the less affected side. Strong scissors are now nd the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth on both sides ed from before backwards, the division being made as wide as of the tissues involved in the disease. When the mucous mem- as been thus divided, the lingual vein will be exposed as it lies e hyoglossus muscle and the lingual nerve on the inferior aspect ongue near the lateral margin and close underneath the mucous ne. The hypoglossal nerve will be found somewhat deeper upon ernal surface of the hyoglossus and sending forward branches ly the genioglossus. branches should not ded if they can be preserved so as to e floor of the mouth se of the tongue in factory a functional on as possible. If, r, the margins of the m render this im- , the surgeon should itate to divide them, se local recurrence probable. The lin- tery will be readily zed passing upwards the hyoglossus and ossus, and should be up and ligatured. oglossus is next cut , the tongue pulled forwards, and the membrane on its aspect divided. In those cases in which the disease extends far rds it may be necessary, in order to ensure the incision being made ond the margins of the disease, to cut through the adjacent por- the soft palate, the tonsil, and the lateral wall of the pharynx. incisions are next made on the other side and then the base of

FIG. 239. EXCISION OF THE TONGUE WITH MEDIAN DIVISION OF THE LOWER LIP. Position of the incision.

the tongue is cut through with scissors and the organ containing growth removed. Some prefer to make the section of the ton the knife or a thermo-cautery on account of the small an hæmorrhage which results from this form of division and the probability of recurrence. Hæmorrhage, however, is not usuall since, as the tongue is being pulled forward, each bleeding-poi readily picked up and ligatured and, as regards recurrence in t of the tongue which is left, it is not my experience that it is more after removal with scissors than after removal with the thermo

All divided blood-vessels are now ligatured, the stump of th is drawn forward, and the margin of the divided mucous m on the dorsal and lateral aspects fixed by sutures as accurately a to the margin of the divided mucous membrane on the anterio the floor of the mouth. In effecting this fixation, several of th should be passed deeply through the tissues in the floor of th This method of fixation of the stump of the tongue helps to avo backwards of the organ. It also hastens union and enables th to swallow more readily. The field of operation is now spo and the two sawn surfaces of the mandible are brought toge fixed in exact apposition by a silver wire introduced through already made.

When the carcinomatous growth involves both halves of the t attempt should be made to split the organ along the median rap entire tongue with the contained growth should be removed in

A rubber drainage tube is passed through the lower portio wound from the neck and the parts around are packed with gauze. Finally, the margins of the divided lip and the wound in are approximated by salmon-gut sutures. The lower portio cervical part of the wound is left open for the exit of the drain The dressing is then applied.

After-treatment. The after-treatment is similar to that mentioned on p. 472. The main points to be borne in mind are drainage should be established, discharges should not be allowe lect in the mouth, and frequent irrigation should be practised operation; the patient should be allowed to sit up as much as and encouraged to sleep in this position.

EXCISION OF A CARCINOMA OF THE TONGUE AND THE FL THE MOUTH AFTER LATERAL SPLITTING OF THE CHE DIVISION OR RESECTION OF A PART OF THE HORI RAMUS OF THE MANDIBLE

This operation is of the greatest value in those cases of c of the tongue and the floor of the mouth in which the disease

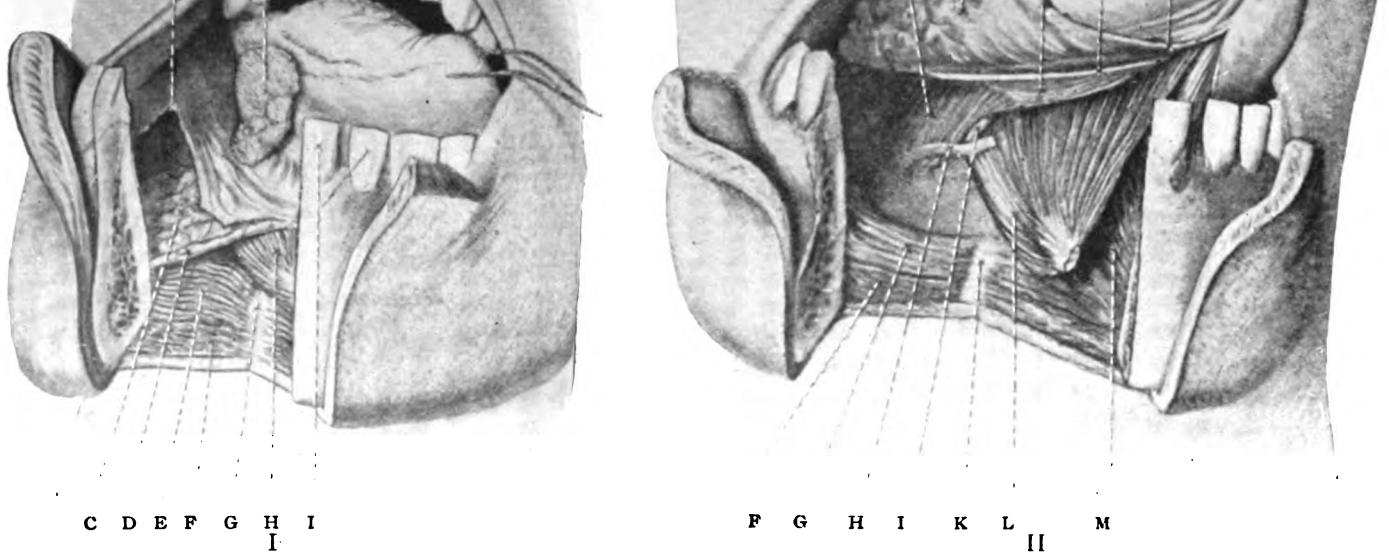


FIG. 240. EXCISION OF THE TONGUE AFTER DIVISION OF THE LOWER LIP AND THE MANDIBLE. Two stages of the operation are shown. I—A, Buccal mucous membrane; B, New growth; C, Sublingual gland; D, Sublingual duct; E, Mylohyoid; F, Digastric; G, Median raphé; H, Genioglossus; I, Incisor teeth. II—A, Hyoglossus; B, Sublingual gland; C, D, Sublingual duct; E, Mucous membrane; F, G, Mylohyoid; H, Lingual vein; I, Lingual artery; K, Median raphé; L, Right genioglossus (cut); M, Left genioglossus.

Digitized by Google

backwards to the region of the fauces, the anterior part of t
and the adjacent part of the lower jaw. The best results can be
when only the alveolar process of the lower jaw is involved.

Operation. It is necessary in practically all cases where t
tion is necessary to administer the anæsthetic by the intra-trache
or to perform a preliminary laryngotomy. In the latter case
portion of the pharynx is plugged with a sponge.

The patient is placed in the dorsal posture with a firm pillow
bag underneath the head and shoulders and the head turned to
unaffected side. The surgeon stands on the affected side and
ant opposite to him.

The assistant first grasps the cheek on the affected side in
control the circulation, and then the surgeon makes an incision
semilunar in shape commencing at the angle of the mouth and
backwards and downwards to the anterior margin of the
muscle; then downwards over the anterior margin of this mus
as the inferior margin of the horizontal ramus of the mandible a
onwards to the anterior marg
sterno-mastoid muscle in the sub
region whence it is curved inw
forwards towards the outer pa
body of the hyoid bone. Thi
divides all the tissues of the che
poses the lateral surface of the
and the anterior margin of th
mastoid muscle. On the outer p
incision, near the anterior marg
masseter, the external maxilla
will be divided and require ligat
other vessels which require lig
the coronary arteries at the an
mouth. The flap thus formed,
of the tissues of the cheek an
dissected downwards and forw
fully to expose the external asp
horizontal ramus of the mandib
structures in the submaxillary t
the neck. When the disease in
periosteum covering the posteri
of the horizontal and the lower portion of the vertical ram
mandible, the posterior margins of the incision, including the in
the masseter, should be separated from the underlying bone an

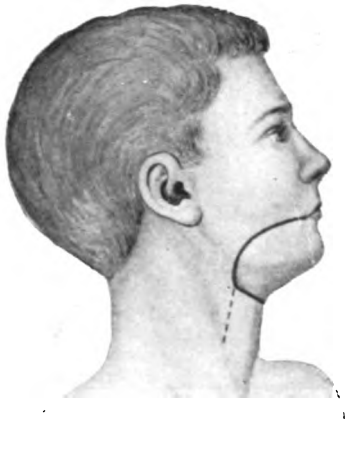
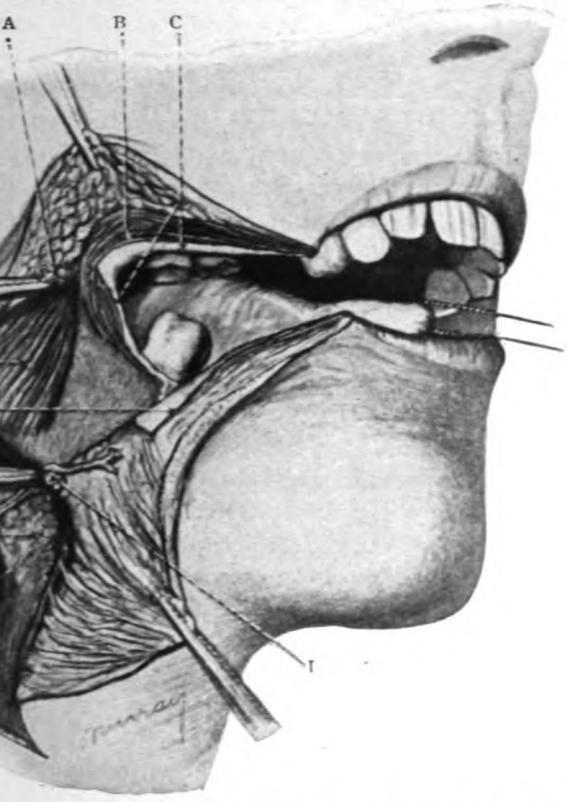


FIG. 241. POSITION OF INCISION FOR REMOVAL OF THE TONGUE, AFTER SPLITTING THE CHEEK AND DIVIDING THE MANDIBLE.

s. The further procedure varies according to whether
nt of part of the bone on its medial aspect or not.
does not extend to the mandible, the latter is sawn
y behind the last molar tooth. The anterior segment
retracted forwards and, towards the opposite side,



N OF A CARCINOMA OF THE TONGUE AND THE FLOOR OF THE
L SPLITTING OF THE CHEEK AND DIVISION OR RESECTION OF
NTAL RAMUS OF THE MANDIBLE. The jaw has been divided
the floor of the mouth and the lower aspect of the tongue
cial vein; B, Buccinator; C, Buccal mucous membrane; D,
mucous membrane; F, Submaxillary gland; G, Sterno-
maxillary vein; I, External maxillary vessels.

part is retracted forcibly outwards and backwards.
disease has spread to and become fixed to the alveolar
spect of the jaw, the bone section should be effected
a short distance in front of the limits of the disease,
nilar distance behind it. By these means the lateral

aspect of the tongue and floor of the affected side of the mou
regions of the tonsil and fauces are fully exposed.

The mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth is next c
with scissors, some distance beyond the margins of the dis
The glosso-palatine fold is divided if necessary, and the
through some distance behind the infiltrated or ulcerated ar
only one-half of the tongue is involved in the disease the mu
brane covering it should be divided along the middle line on
and ventral aspects, and the organ split backwards into
halves. These cutting operations can be most easily carrie
scissors. When cutting through the substance of the tongue
care should be taken when dealing with the ventral aspec
the position of the lingual artery, and when seen this should
with pressure forceps before division. The sublingual sali
can generally be removed at the same time as the tongue.

When the diseased portion of the tongue and the adjacent
have been thus removed, the submaxillary triangle should be
and the submaxillary salivary and lymph glands excised. It
also in all cases of this kind to remove the vertical chain of ly
which lie deep to the anterior border of the sterno-mastoid a
relation with the jugular vein. Occasionally it will be found
lymph glands are so closely connected to the jugular vein and
sheath that it may be necessary, in order to effect complete
all diseased tissues, to excise a segment of the jugular ve
doing this great care must be taken in order to avoid inj
vagus nerve and sympathetic chain, both of these structure
connexion with the posterior aspect of the carotid sheath.
disease is found to spread beyond the middle line of the to
necessary, in addition, to remove the entire organ by t
described in the previous operation.

All the diseased tissues having been excised, the field of o
well investigated for bleeding points, all of which are ligature
gut. Next, the margin of the mucous membrane on the dorsa
the stump of the tongue is approximated to the margin of t
membrane of the floor of the mouth by a number of interru
sutures. In addition, it is advisable to pass a few deep sutur
the soft tissues in the base of the wound in order to obliterat
possible any 'dead space.' This method of suturing tends to
falling back of the stump of the tongue upon the superior aper
larynx and also facilitates healing in the deep portions of t
In those cases in which the lower jaw has been divided and
been found necessary to take away any part of the bone, the

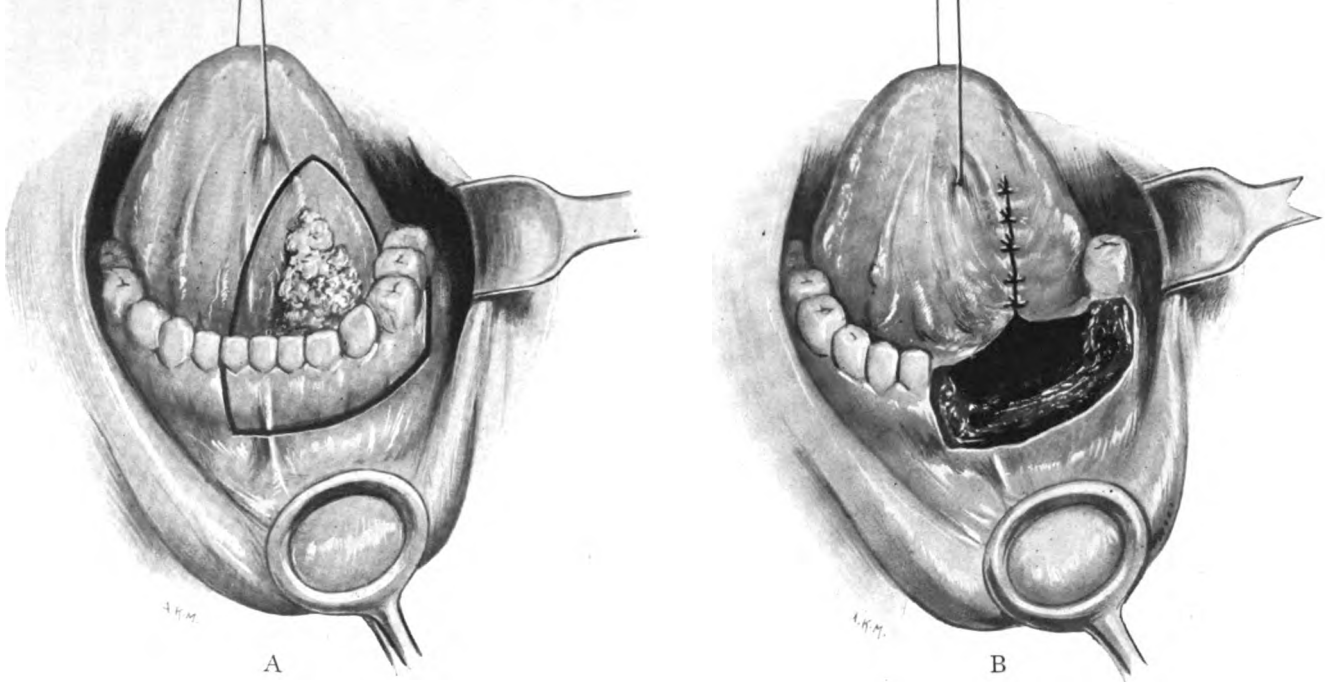


FIG. 243. EXCISION OF A CARCINOMA OF THE FLOOR OF THE MOUTH, OR OF ONE SITUATED ON THE LATERAL AND VENTRAL ASPECTS OF THE TONGUE, EXTENDING TO AND INVOLVING THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF THE FLOOR OF THE MOUTH. A, Position of the incisions through the mucous membrane and the mandible. B, Suture of the mucous membrane after removal of the bone.

ments are brought into apposition, drilled with a bone-drill, and a silver wire suture. When, however, it is necessary to remov tion of the horizontal ramus, the cavity of the wound is pac strips of gauze after all hæmorrhage has been arrested. Fi margins of the wound in the cheek and neck are united by in sutures of salmon-gut with the exception of the most depende which should be left open for the exit of a strip of gauze and drainage tube. During the suturing particular attention shou rected to securing exact coaptation in the region of the angle of t

After-treatment. The rubber tube and strips of gauze s removed at the end of twenty-four or thirty-six hours. The enti should be frequently irrigated and great care taken to ensure and early removal of all discharges which may collect.

EXCISION OF A CARCINOMA OF THE FLOOR OF THE MO ONE SITUATED ON THE LATERAL AND VENTRAL ASP THE TONGUE EXTENDING TO AND INVOLVING THE MEMBRANE OF THE FLOOR OF THE MOUTH

The majority of cases of carcinoma of the floor of the mo either at the frænum or in the mucous membrane immediately to it on one or other side. Occasionally I have seen a carcinon kind begin in the mucous membrane which covers the anterio the sublingual salivary gland. When the mucous membran posterior part of the floor of the mouth is the seat of the carc has usually arisen by direct extension from a primary focus on t margin of the posterior portion of the tongue. Carcinoma of of the mouth, commencing at or in the region of the frænun forms either a small warty prominence or an ulcer with a hard base. By many surgeons carcinoma commencing in this region regarded as a very fatal form of the disease, and as one offer prospect of a permanent cure by operation. In my experience, I have found that this disease is not so fatal as has often been When the disease is recognized comparatively early and is sub free local removal, together with excision of the lymph glan submental and submaxillary regions, good results can be obtair hypertrophic or warty form of carcinoma appears to give a mu prognosis than those cases in which ulceration is a marked featu cinomata of this latter kind appear to have a considerable ten extend forwards and involve the periosteum upon the posteri of the adjacent alveolar process of the mandible. On this a have found it advantageous when treating these cases to remove from the portion of jaw opposite the growth and also to excise t

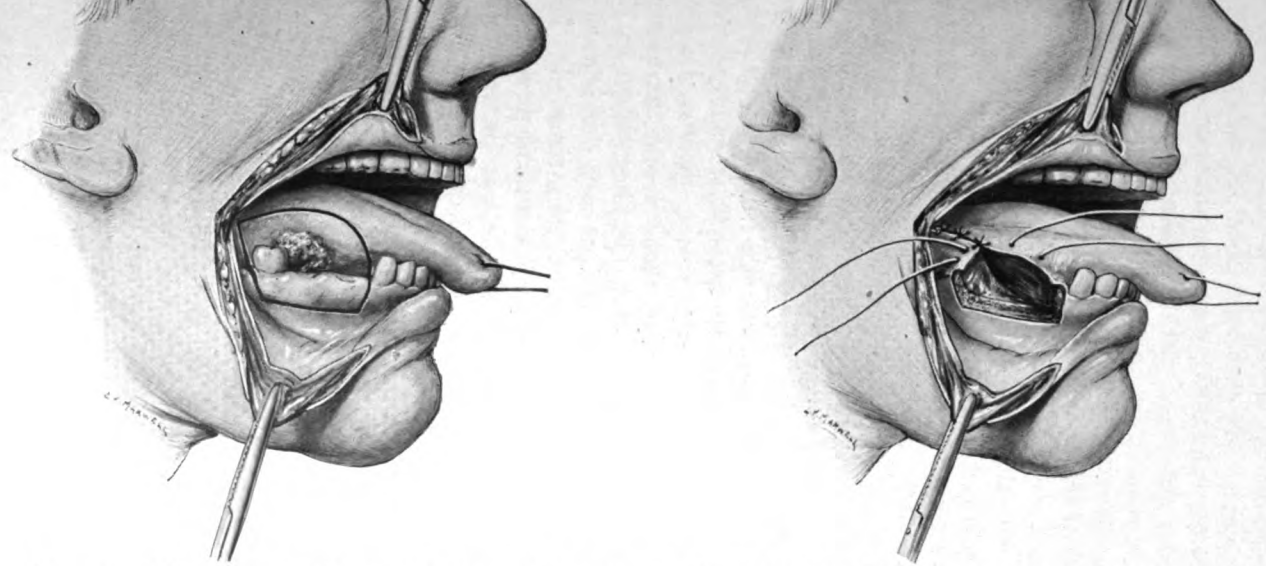


FIG. 244. EXCISION OF A CARCINOMA OF THE TONGUE AND FLOOR OF THE MOUTH SITUATED POSTERIORLY. The two stages of the operation showing the cheek split, the incision for removal of the growth and portion of the mandible, and the method of inserting the sutures.

lying segment of the alveolar process. I have seen cases in wh has not been done quickly recur in the mucous membrane attache alveolar process. The ulcerative form of carcinoma in this pos very liable to escape notice since the ulcerated area appears to and so render the site of disease difficult to see. Its presence, h can often be suspected when protrusion of the tongue is limited patient complains of soreness in the region of the frænum. exploration of the floor of the mouth will readily enable one to the indurated area. Another point of importance in connexion w disease is the fact that the submental lymph glands on both si very prone to become the site of secondary growths at an early consequently, at every operation, these glands must be freely r on both sides.

Operation. The patient is placed in a semi-sitting posture w head slightly depressed. The mouth is held open by a strong g a strong salmon-gut suture is passed through the substance of the and made to serve as a tractor. The lower lip is retracted exact site, extent, and connexion of the growth determined. tooth beyond each limit of the growth is removed from the lo and then the remaining teeth, if any, opposite the growth. N mucous membrane and periosteum covering the external aspect mandible are cut through along the lines shown in Fig. 243, alveolar process is sawn through on each side at each extremity area from which the teeth have been removed. Next, the process within the two saw-cuts is cut through with a chisel an along the horizontal portion of the line shown in Fig. 243, region of the growth is now sponged dry, the mucous membran floor of the mouth cut through all round the growth and ab an inch to two-thirds of an inch from its margin. The separat ment of the alveolar process is lifted up and the soft tissues floor of the mouth underlying the site of the disease and the portions of the ventral aspect of the tongue are cut through with During this process of separation the lingual artery may be e if so, it is seized with pressure forceps before division and th tured. The carcinomatous growth, together with all adjacent can now be removed. Next, the field of operation is sponged bleeding points are picked up and ligatured with catgut, and t margins of the divided mucous membrane in the lingual por the incision are approximated by the sutures. The remaining of the incision is packed with strips of gauze.

After-treatment. This is similar to that recommended in of the tongue and the floor of the mouth.

of carcinoma of the floor of the mouth the submental
f both sides, when the disease is in the region of the
submaxillary lymph and salivary glands on the affected
moved through an incision in the neck. Details of this
ven later. (See p. 484.)

**A CARCINOMA OF THE FLOOR OF THE MOUTH
R PORTION) IN WHICH THE DISEASE HAS EXTENDED
VEOLAR PROCESS OF THE MANDIBLE**

mentioned, carcinoma involving the mucous membrane
part of the floor of the mouth usually spreads to it by
the adjacent portion of the tongue. Occasionally, how-
net with in which the disease appears to be primary in the
ne. The operation which is most suitable for disease in
modification of that described in connexion with excision
fter lateral division of the lower jaw.

The patient is placed in the dorsal posture, with the
lers well raised and the head turned towards the sound
ng grasped by the fingers of an assistant so as to control
incision is made commencing at the angle of the mouth
backwards and outwards to the anterior margin of the
. A controlling ligature of salmon-gut is passed through
tion of the tongue and this organ is drawn towards the
e site of the carcinomatous growth is carefully examined,
nd connexion of the disease made out. The flaps formed
f the cheek are well retracted, the jaws separated by the
h of the lower jaw opposite the growth extracted. The
n on the external aspect to the jaw is incised, and the
divided with a saw and chisel in the manner already
t, the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth in
owth, on the lateral aspect of the posterior part of the
ne region of the glosso-palatine fold of the fauces, is cut
divided portion of the alveolar process is then lifted up
nderlying the carcinomatous growth cut through wide of
a. By these means the growth is set free and is removed.
f operation is sponged dry, all bleeding vessels are picked
d, and then the divided margins of mucous membrane
s far as possible by catgut sutures (Fig. 244). The space
ne has been removed and any non-approximated part of
ne floor of the mouth are packed with strips of gauze.
uth is sponged clean, and the cheek sutured, special care
nsure exact coaptation at the angle of the mouth.

After-treatment. This is similar to that described in the
operation.

The lymph glands in the submaxillary region and in the deep
region along the jugular vein, together with the submaxillary
gland, must be removed through a separate incision in the nec

EXCISION OF THE CERVICAL LYMPH GLANDS, SUBMAXI SALIVARY GLAND, AND FASCIAL STRUCTURES OF THE FOR CARCINOMA OF THE TONGUE AND FLOOR OF THE

Operation. The patient is placed in the dorsal position, t
turned towards the opposite side, the shoulders slightly raised i
to throw the head backwards and so give better exposure of t
maxillary, submental, and deep cervical regions.

An incision, semilunar in shape and so planned as to lie as
possible in the natural fold or crease of the upper part of the
made, commencing behind over the anterior border of the sterno-
muscle and a little below the lower level of the mastoid proce
carried downwards and forwards to the middle line of the ne
point midway between the prominence of the chin and the body
hyoid bone. From the convexity of this incision and a short dis
front of the anterior margin of the sterno-mastoid a second inc
made, which extends downwards to the level of the cricoid cart
lower according to the extent to which the cervical lymph glands
volved. Some recommend that the lower limb of this incision sh
carried to the upper border of the sterno-clavicular articulation.
in my opinion, is not generally necessary.

When these incisions have been made, three flaps, each consi
skin and subcutaneous tissues, are dissected free: one upwar
downwards and outwards, and one downwards and inwards, as
in Fig. 245, A.

The deep cervical fascia is next divided along the internal
ternal boundaries of the triangular-shaped space thus laid bare; th
lines in Fig. 245, B show the position of these incisions in the deep
Commencing with the inferior angle, a triangular-shaped flap
cervical fascia and underlying and attached lymph glands is d
upwards until the horizontal ramus of the lower jaw is reached.
care must be taken in making this dissection to separate all the
lymph glands and fascial tissues and to avoid causing injury to the
sheath and its contents. The external maxillary artery should be
for in the upper part of the dissection and can readily be rec
where it enters the groove in the submaxillary salivary gland

A B C

FIG. 245. REMOVAL OF THE CERVICAL LYMPH GLANDS. A shows the skin incisions, B the dissection of the skin and platysma from the deep fascia, and C the deep dissection of the region. 1, Platysma; 2, superficial lymph glands; 3, Submaxillary salivary gland; 4, Mylohyoid; 5, Parotid lymph glands; 6, Internal carotid artery; 7, External carotid artery; 8, Jugular vein.

vessel should be seized in two places with pressure fo
Next, the submaxillary salivary gland together with
maxillary lymph glands is isolated from its deep conne
ligatured close to the floor of the mouth. The entir
lymph glands, submaxillary salivary glands, submen
and fascial tissues can be removed by cutting through
ment along the horizontal ramus of the mandible. D
the distal portion of the external maxillary artery will
lies upon the ramus of the mandible in the region of th
of the masseter muscle. A number of facial veins wi
require ligature. When effecting the separation near
the chin, great care must be taken to ensure that all the
glands and adjacent connective tissues are removed.
submaxillary, and deep cervical regions are carefully
hæmorrhage arrested. The margins of the flaps, c
and subcutaneous tissue, are brought into exact ap
rupted sutures of fine salmon-gut. A small portio
should be left unsutured and through this a drainag
into the deep part of the wound in the submaxillary
not done an accumulation of blood and serum is liab
deep parts of the wound, which may become a source
The drainage tube can usually be removed at the end
thirty-six hours.

CRILE'S BLOCK DISSECTION

Crile has advocated in such cases as this a block
regional lymphatic system, as well as the removal of t
on exactly the same lines as Halstead has suggested
breast. Such a dissection is suggested whether the
not palpable. He lays great stress on the avoidanc
of the carcinomatous tissue so long as the lymphatic
intact. His dissection is begun at the lower end of
cludes excision of the veins as well as of the lymphati
the technique of his operation as follows:

Assuming all preliminary preparations to have be
tient is given an injection of ¼ morphin and 1-100 atr
before beginning anæsthesia. After completion o
pharynx is cocainized to prevent reflex inhibition fr
two rubber tubes closely filling the nares and havin
the distal end are pushed down to the level of the epig
is then drawn well forward, a large piece of gauze pack

ynx, completely filling it, the brunt of the packing being made at ides of the tubes, preventing their compression; the patency of ubes and easy respiration is readily verified; a T-tube is then con- d up with an inhaler and the anæsthetizer takes his place a foot or from the field of operation, giving him the opportunity of continu- n even, uninterrupted anæsthesia, allowing the surgeon full con- of the operative field, absolutely preventing the entrance of any into the pulmonary tract and permitting the operator to place the nt in any position he wishes.

he patient is then placed in the inclined posture, head up, and the incision over the common carotid artery just above the clavicle is . The artery is exposed by an intermuscular separation of the o-mastoid, its outer sheath nicked, the vessel exposed and tem- y closure made. The complete skin incisions are then made, the reflected back over the entire area of the field. The sterno-mastoid vided, the internal and external jugulars are secured, tied double divided at the base of the neck. The dissection is then carried below upward into the deep plane of the neck behind the lymphatic s, working first at the sides, then posteriorly, carrying upward all ascia, muscles, veins, fat, and connective tissue until the floor of outh is reached. The lower jaw is then divided at a safe distance ch side of the growth. The floor of the mouth and the border e tongue are then similarly divided, completing the block.

he following paragraphs, which deal with special points and statistics erations, are taken from the article by the late Sir Henry Butlin in evious edition of this work.

ecial considerations connected with the removal of the diseased portion of ngue. *How much of the tongue is it necessary to remove?* On this question always has been considerable difference of opinion. Nothing less than val of the entire tongue' satisfied certain operators thirty years ago, and it rs to be still the practice of a few surgeons. The entire tongue is not y removed by those who profess to perform the operation, for large por- of the muscles attaching the tongue to the jaw or hyoid bone are habitually ehind. Removal of the entire tongue does not guarantee the patient from ence in the floor of the mouth or in the tonsillar region, which areas are more likely to be attacked than the other half of the tongue. In addition, e number of the patients would be deterred from submitting to operation expected to lose the 'entire tongue' for cancers of small or moderate size. been my own practice to remove the disease with, if possible, about ¾ inch acent non-infected tissues. In relation to this point the statistics of the late enry Butlin' show the following results:—

Out of the 197 cases operated upon by him there were 99 in which th
no recurrence in the tongue. They are classified as follows:—

Died of affection of the glands	
Died of affection of the glands on the other side of the neck	
Died of cancer of the lungs	
Died of cancer of the other border of the tongue	
Successful	
Total	

Professor Kocher,[1] in support of limited excision for limited ca
against removal of the 'entire tongue,' states that he had only nine loca
rences in thirty-eight cases of recurrence of cancer of the tongue.

Special considerations connected with removal of the lymph gland
the removal of the contents of the anterior triangle thus far justified the
as a routine operation?

The following table of Sir Henry Butlin of 114 cases in which he remo
contents of the anterior triangle in 70, and did not remove them in 4
clearly shows the advantage of removing the contents of the anterior tri
a routine operation.

ANALYSIS OF FORTY-FOUR CASES IN WHICH THE CONTENTS OF THE A
TRIANGLE WERE NOT REMOVED

To these should be added 8 cases in which the patients returned at
period for removal of enlarged glands, which were not intended to be
when the tongue was treated, making a total of 52 cases.

Died of operation	
Died of recurrence in the mouth (in 3 of these the operation was abandoned)	
Died of affection of glands (in 5 of these the glands were enlarged at the time of operation on the tongue, but were not removed for various reasons)	
Died of cancer of opposite border of tongue	
Cases not countable	
Successful cases	
Total	

In 52 cases there were 23 (15 + 8) in which the glands either were aff
the time of the operation (5) or became affected later (18). The su
cases were 12 in number, and there are 3 cases still not countable. Eigh
cases in which the glands became affected afterwards are included in the
ing table:—

[1] *Chirurg. Operationslehre*, 5th ed., 1907, p. 605.

Digitized by Google

ENTY CASES IN WHICH THE CONTENTS OF THE ANTERIOR TRIANGLE WERE REMOVED

peration	6
after operation	1
nce in the mouth	9
ence, uncertain where (in one of these the glands entirely removed; operation abandoned)	7
nce in the glands (in one of these the submaxillary l was left and the disease recurred beneath it; in the ases the glands were enlarged at the time of their in five of these they were demonstrably cancerous)	8
on the opposite side of the tongue	1
n of glands on opposite side of neck	2
iseases within three years	1
table	11
s	24
	70

atients who died of recurrence in the glands on the same side s probable that several of those who died of recurrence, 'un- uld be added to the eight. The successful cases number re are several others out of the eleven 'not countable' cases at a later date be added to them.

ation be performed in every case of cancer of the tongue? rly cases be allowed to pass, and is not cancer of some parts langerous in this respect than cancer of some other parts? esumably, recent cancers were removed in eighteen of Sir , and from different parts of the tongue. No fewer than six of affection of the glands without recurrence in the mouth. cancers[1] was successfully removed by a local operation, but han three years later by involving the corresponding lymph

ver the influence of the seat of the primary disease, Sir Henry lowing analysis of his cases. In 23 cases out of his entire he primary disease was removed, but the patients remained e *in situ* and from affection of the glands (successful cases). disease, roughly noted, was as follows:—

n:	
terior	8
rther back	2
:	
ar the tip	1
various points	4
neath the border	7
der surface	1
Total	23

Second Scientific Report of the Imperial Cancer Research,

For comparison with these cases, he gives 23 cases (between the 197th) in which the glands were not removed, but became affecte period:—

Dorsum:	
Anterior	4
Border:	
Near the tip	5
At various points	9
Beneath the border	2
Frænum	2
Extensive disease	1
Total	23

This points strongly to the belief that, although the anterior pc dorsum of the tongue may perhaps be less dangerous to the lymph any other part, it is not wise to act as if it were so. The proper cou move the lymph glands in every case of cancer of the tongue in w reason to believe the patient will recover from the operation.

Is there any advantage in postponing the removal of the glands u enlarged? The great hope of success lies in early removal of the operation is easier and the results are better.

In support of this Sir Henry Butlin quotes 56 cases, in which th known:—

Glands enlarged at the time of operation, 34:	
Died of recurrence in the neck	7
Successful	11
Glands not enlarged at the time of operation, 22:	
Died of recurrence in the neck	1
Successful	13

It will be seen that the evidence is largely in favour of not deferri tion until the glands are enlarged.

In the single case of recurrence in the neck in the second ser maxillary salivary gland was not removed, but was raised up for th the glands beneath it. Recurrence took place in the lower part of gland, presumably due to affection of a lymph gland which had beer

When should the operation on the lymph glands be performed? I of a decided indication to the contrary, the tongue and the neck sl operated on at the same time. There are cases, however, of small strong patients, in whom it would be almost absurd to operate at But, in most cases, the double operation is a great strain upon the neck wound is liable to be infected and suppurate, and the risk to greater than when the operation is performed at two sittings. As operation on the tongue should take place first and the operation on soon as the wound in the mouth is free from sepsis and the patient c easily. But there are cases in which the lymph glands may be ad treated first; when the external carotid artery or some of its bran tied, and the second operation thus made much more easy and less d

removal of the contents of the anterior triangle of the affected side as a peration sufficient? Removal of the submaxillary salivary gland should sed in every case; the dissection carried well up into the parotid region, ioval of the lower portion of the parotid salivary gland in most cases; ymph glands beneath and behind the sterno-mastoid muscle should cer- removed in those cases in which the lymph glands in the parotid region ted.

surgeons remove the contents of both anterior triangles in all cases in e patient will submit to the operation. This, in my opinion, is not neces- ie following conditions appear to indicate the performance of the opera- ioth sides:—

Those cases in which the lymph glands on both sides of the neck are

Those cases in which the lymph glands are affected only on the side of opposite to the disease.

Those cases in which the disease is seated on both sides of the tongue, ich it reaches to the middle line of the tongue.

Perhaps it ought to be done in those cases in which microscopical ex- n gives reason to believe that, although the primary disease is apparently mall extent and depth, it is much more malignant than usual—when, for columns of cancer-cells are found running deeply down between the fibres.

val of the tissues between the primary disease in the tongue and the ands. It may be said that the aim of the modern surgery of cancer is to he primary disease and the lymph glands, together with the intervening vhenever this is possible. It is quite feasible in most cases of cancer of ue, and the reasons why it is not generally adopted are that it would te extensive operation on the tongue in every case, however small and ie cancer, and that the large wound in the neck would almost invariably eptic owing to its communication with the mouth. In spite of these dis- es, which mean a larger mortality due to the operation and much greater nt impairment of the mobility of the tongue, a decided leaning towards iod on the part of some of the surgeons who were at the Congress of the onal Society of Surgeons at Brussels in 1908 was observed. Sir Henry as very much opposed to the practice, and would only employ it in those which the primary disease passes deeply down into the floor of the mouth lves the bone, the salivary gland, and other structures. The operation in parts is at present justified by the results and by the infrequency with ncer is found in the lymphatic vessels of the intervening tissues.

CHAPTER III

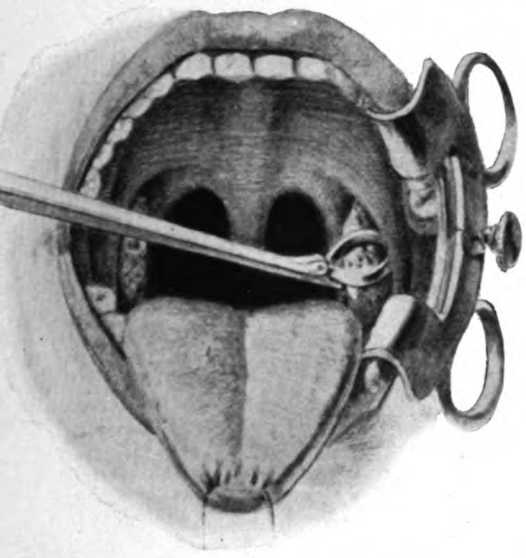
OPERATIONS UPON THE TONSIL

By George E. Waugh, F.R.C.S.

That the general consensus of opinion at the present ti the complete removal of the tonsil is the end to be attained operative measures are necessary, is testified to by the larg of new tonsil-holding forceps, new blunt dissecting instrun 'new' operations of tonsillectomy that have been describe during the last five years. References in the literature previ date are confined almost exclusively to descriptions of modifi the guillotine for the purpose of tonsillotomy, to the value of and the galvano-cautery, with here and there an allusion to tion of tonsillectomy as a major and sanguinary procedure to taken as a last resource. This complete revolution of opinion i due to two reasons. The recognition of the extreme gravit far-reaching consequences of oral sepsis, of which tonsillitis a variety, is one. The other is that complete removal of can now be effected as a simple surgical procedure which is neit nor difficult.

The operation of tonsillectomy by dissection is a simple procedure, but demands for its success a rigid attention to de preparation of the patient is important. A preliminary vi dentist is essential for the stopping or extraction of carious tee operation upon the tonsils should be undertaken until the quite healthy in this respect. Starvation immediately before the must be avoided. Its influence upon the occurrence of post acetonæmia has already been determined, and that influence is ably greater in operative procedures which are likely to be fo a forced abstention from food for about 48 hours. Before an to be performed at 9 a. m. the writer is accustomed to give h a small cup of tea and a piece of dry toast at 7.30 a. m., and three lumps of loaf sugar or a tablespoonful of glucose. Purg enemata are strictly forbidden, whilst a hypodermic injection dose of morphine and atropin is given one hour before operatio oform anæsthesia must be used to ensure an immobile field of

e swallowing and coughing reflexes by engorging the plexus induces hæmorrhage from the tonsillar bed embarrassment to the operator but may prove a source The anæsthesia must therefore abolish these reflexes n is begun. Tests applied over a large series of cases eflexes are frequently absent whilst the conjunctival nd that their absence is not evidence of a dangerous



TOMY BY DISSECTION. A small embedded tonsil is here seen grasped by the special ring forceps.

a. The condition of the pulse and respirations are y proof of this statement.

With the patient in the recumbent position a small underneath the shoulders, so that the head slopes tly to cause the blood shed to trickle into the naso- e same time to avoid congestion by gravity of the nd neck. A modified O'Dwyer's gag is inserted be- e last molar teeth and the tongue is held and drawn mouth by a fine silk thread passed through the tip. In esthetist's hand, flattened against the gag on the cheek, ition, while the fingers of the same hand hold up the nd if necessary, by clipping the silk thread between the tongue. His other hand is free to continue the he chloroform through a Junker's apparatus, which

is fitted with a flexible lead tube to hang unaided from the cor
mouth. The tonsil is then seized in a special pair of ring fo
drawn inwards towards the middle line so that it bulges be
glosso-palatine fold, which is thereby made tense. A close
long-handled finely-toothed forceps is then driven through t
palatine fold as close to its free edge as possible, and by a rapid
from the uvula to the base of the tongue a small strip of the
moved, thus revealing the capsule of the tonsil to the same ex

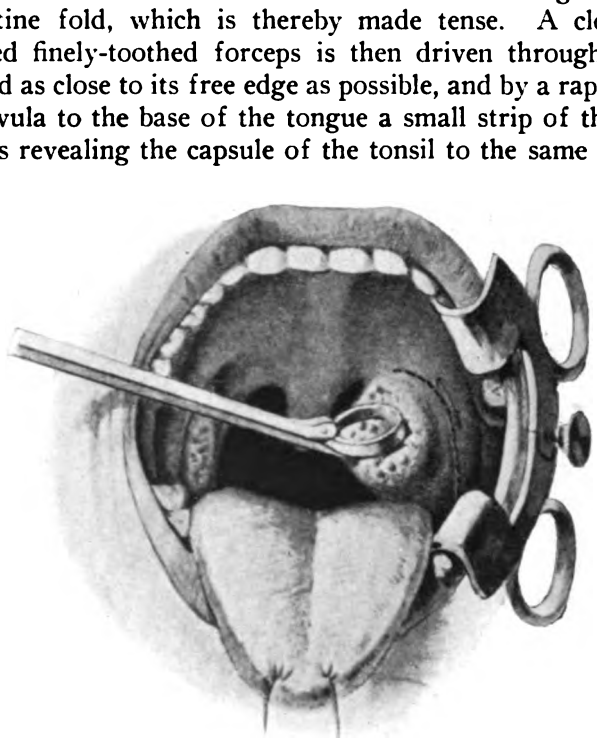
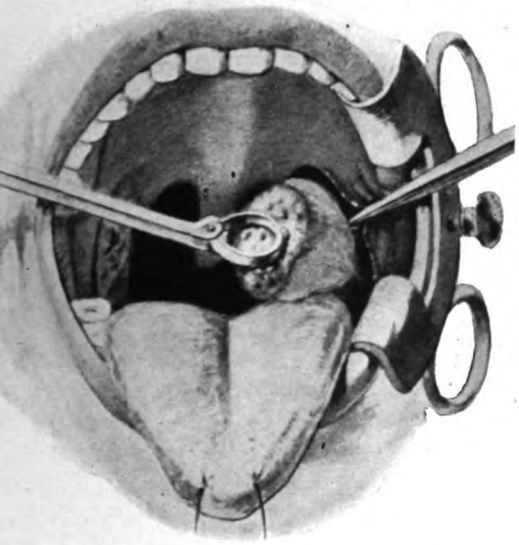


FIG. 247. TONSILLECTOMY BY DISSECTION. The tonsil has b
towards the middle line of the pharynx so that the size of the embed
is now seen bulging beneath the glosso-palatine fold. The dotted lin
the incision made by the closed finely-toothed forceps, and corresponds
edge of the glosso-palatine fold, which becomes temporarily obliterate
tonsil is drawn inwards.

tonsil is then steadied by the toothed forceps whilst a firme
obtained of it by the ring forceps. The fold is now pulled
and the tonsil inwards at the same time so that the whole of th
surface of its capsule is exposed. The capsule properly seen
bluish membrane and the blunt dissection should not be proce
until this appearance is evident (see Fig. 248). If the ton
sected out with a yellowish layer containing fat overlying th
sharp hæmorrhage will be the consequence, as this is not the pr
tum in which the dissection should be conducted. The separa
the pharyngo-palatine fold is effected by blunt dissection with

a similar manner, by passing them down between the
l as it is drawn forwards and the fold itself. The dis-
forwards to the base of the tongue and if necessary
f the tongue, so that the tonsil is removed in one piece.
retract immediately into the muscular wall of the
hæmorrhage is so slight that it is no unusual event to
gauze swab to each tonsillar bed in the course of an



SILLECTOMY BY DISSECTION. The capsular surface of the
d by drawing the cut edge of the glosso-palatine fold out-
ied forceps at the same time as the tonsil is drawn inwards

roduction of hæmorrhage in tonsillectomy is due to a
ut one or other of the details of procedure already
st frequently the capsule is not properly identified
on is proceeded with, or such an imperfect anæsthesia
ughing and swallowing movements of the patient pour
e congested pharyngeal venous plexus. This in turn
condition of the patient, thereby further augmenting
In the writer's series of 7,000 cases no primary hæmor-
n a source of embarrassment, whilst secondary hæmor-
In plethoric, fat-necked adults or those with thickened
lue to clip with special forceps the main artery of the

tonsil before severing it. This enters the convex surface of
the level of the junction of the upper and middle thirds. On
tonsil inwards and the glosso-palatine fold outwards after
cision, the site of the artery is easily identified by looking
tuous veins by which it is constantly accompanied (see
The total duration of time necessary to remove both tonsils i

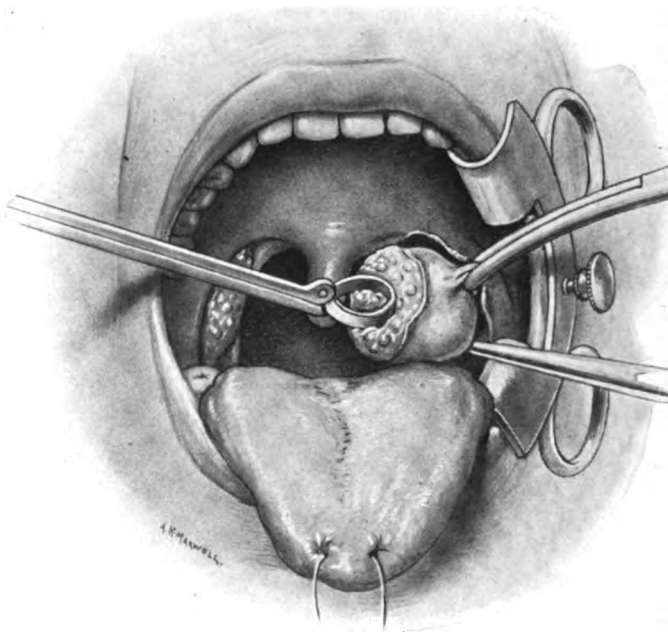


FIG. 249. TONSILLECTOMY BY DISSECTION. The tonsil is here
capsular surface exposed after blunt dissection by the closed
forceps. The main artery is indicated at the junction of the uppe
thirds of the convex surface, secured in the grasp of specially
forceps.

cated cases is 90 seconds. To state the average duration as
probably slightly to over-estimate it. Slight difficulty will
tered in the removal of tonsils with dense fibrous adhesions a
as the result of previous operations with the guillotine or galva
or of frequent attacks of suppuration. But even the denses
are not a source of real difficulty. Between the posterior su
capsule and the pharyngo-palatine fold an isolated dense ban
tissue will often be encountered as the result of previous abs
tion when the pus from the tonsil has made its way throu
This band can be cut safely by scissors if necessary. Direct t

haryngo-palatine fold should be avoided as much as possible, since spasm of the glottis is often started in that way. This may be ed almost instantaneously by relaxing the gag.

atients should be kept in bed for the next few days after the opera- The mouth should be washed out frequently with a weak anti- mouth wash, and a mixture containing chlorate of potash and late of soda may be given every four hours after the first day. By means the temperature seldom reaches 100° F. even when pus has present in a tonsil. An additional small dose of morphine should ven hypodermically at the end of the operation while the patient l on the operating table under the influence of the anæsthetic, to d ½₀ gr. and to an adult ⅛ gr. This is far more effective in relieving fter-pain than is the administration of a much larger dose after the nt has regained consciousness.

allenger, of Chicago, has consistently advocated the complete re- l of the tonsil in its capsule for several years as the only procedure lue. His own method entails the use of a sharp scalpel or hooked for the purpose of dissection. He records six cases of 'moderately e hæmorrhage' in 3,000 operations. Another slight disadvantage e use of an écraseur or snare to remove the base of the tonsil. non removes it by cautery dissection—a method with little to recom- it.

o Sluder belongs the credit for pointing out that with a modified enzie guillotine the tonsil can be removed entire in its capsule in ain number of cases. Ballenger states that this method is applicable ly 75 per cent. of all cases and that it is accompanied by considerable orrhage. Pybus and Willis have extended the scope and improved etails of Sluder's method, so that in their own words, 'By a special od of using the guillotine we are able in nearly 50 per cent. of all to enucleate the tonsil complete in its capsule in one piece. In cases it is possible to remove the tonsil in two or more pieces. In few cases removal has been incomplete.' They estimate their total er of failures to effect complete removal at 3 per cent. For these and for adults they advocate the dissection method as described e writer.

n post-operative hæmorrhage Ballenger advocates the local applica- of styptics, of a special pressure clamp, or, if necessary, ligature of xternal carotid artery. In no instance in the writer's experience any of these measures been necessary. One case of post-operative orrhage in which the tonsils had been inadvertently removed from mophiliac by another operator came under his notice. The child admitted to hospital some six hours after the operation, having bled

steadily all the time. An anæsthetic was immediately administe
as to abolish the pharyngeal reflexes and to enable the site of the
tion to be carefully reviewed. It was then quite easy to see that a
oozing was occurring from both tonsillar beds over their entire s
and that the hæmorrhage was not due to the spouting from a s
vessel. The folds of the fauces were transfixed by mattress sutu
stout catgut and then firmly approximated by tightening the s
The bleeding stopped immediately and the patient made a rapid re
To attempt to control hæmorrhage after operations upon the
under a local anæsthetic or under a light general anæsthetic is a w
time and a grave danger to the patient, likely to lead to disaster.

CHAPTER IV

ERATIONS FOR PHARYNGEAL ABSCESS

By George E. Waugh, M.D., F.R.C.S.

JL recognition of the type of pharyngeal abscess present is preliminary to its treatment by surgical measures. These y arise as the sequel of disease of the vertebral column or . Their clinical characteristics are quite distinct, so that it er of difficulty to assign any abscess to its proper group. ıce of a correct classification is emphasized by the need of types of abscesses for diametrically opposed surgical pro-

ONS FOR PHARYNGEAL ABSCESSES ARISING DISEASE OF THE VERTEBRAL COLUMN

the only abscesses of the pharynx which occupy a truly on upon the posterior wall, with a free edge on either side, om the lateral walls of the pharynx. Nearly all abscesses gin are of a tuberculous nature. The successful surgical a tuberculous abscess, apart from the natural resistance of the spread of the disease, depends upon the complete re-ining of the abscess cavity, together with its liquid contents, avoidance during the process of the introduction of other rganisms. To comply with this last condition, all opera-ese abscesses must be performed through the tissues of the ıpulous attention to the details of surgical cleanliness.

n is made along the anterior border of the sterno-mastoid gh the deep cervical fascia until the carotid sheath with its been exposed above the level of the omo-hyoid muscle. pulled aside, either outwards or inwards, so that the trans-es of the cervical vertebræ are exposed with the rectus or arising from them. The lateral wall of the pharynx t, and a pair of sinus forceps thrust into the interval be-his muscle will readily enter the abscess cavity. The open-nlarged and the cavity scraped out gently with a Barker's

flushing gouge, taking care not to perforate the pharyngeal wal times a sequestrum can be removed in this way from one of t of the vertebræ. The cavity may be filled with a sterilized em iodoform or with Beck's bismuth paste, and the wound in must be closed without drainage. This procedure must be whenever the abscess re-forms, and provided that sinus for avoided, a cure is likely to result. If the abscess has been a reach such a size that it is pointing in the neck, either in the or posterior triangle, the surface incision must be modified to necessities of the case. Otherwise the method of treatment is

OPERATIONS FOR ACUTE RETRO-PHARYNG ABSCESS

Acute retro-pharyngeal abscess is the name applied by tra those abscesses of the pharynx which do not arise from the column. These abscesses must further be subdivided into intra-pharyngeal origin and those of extra-pharyngeal origin, tion of importance in determining the type of operation to taken. The former are the result of the spread of infective from a tonsil through the pharyngo-palatine arch into the latera the pharynx. Quite rarely they arise high up on the lateral w pharynx as the result of inflammatory changes occurring in rela a mass of adenoids. The extra-pharyngeal abscesses are the inflammatory changes occurring in the deep cervical glands l abscess formation in the deepest gland of the set lying against th geal wall. As a consequence the lateral pharyngeal wall is p wards by a fluctuating swelling, which bulges into the cavit pharynx on one side. Intra-pharyngeal abscesses must ther treated by incision through the mucous lining of the pharynx, a pharyngeal abscesses by external operation through the tissu neck. At the earliest sign of the appearance of fluctuation an must be performed. Under a light general anæsthesia, an i made into the abscess by means of a guarded scalpel. The placed in the recumbent position with a sand-bag under the sho lowing the head to rest slightly backwards upon the operating gag is inserted behind or between the last molar teeth and the held out by means of a silk thread passed through the tip. Wi dex finger of the left hand as a guide, an incision into the absces from below upwards, so as to open its cavity over the whole its vertical axis. It is important that the incision should be ma length, otherwise a 'watch-pocket' is formed by the lower pa

ned abscess cavity, which subsequently is drained imperfectly, y permitting suppuration to continue, may lead to the spread of flammation down the wall of the pharynx, with the possibility fection of the mediastinum as a remote complication. If the s is very large, a small incision into its wall should be made first to allow the pus to escape, and it may be necessary to hang the and neck of the patient over the edge of the table to prevent ng by the amount of septic fluid liberated. When this has all arefully mopped away, the incision must be extended to the proper by introducing the blunt ends of a pair of curved scissors gh the opening in the wall of the abscess, and then cutting upwards ownwards to the extreme limits of the abscess cavity. Subse-y, the throat should be syringed out two or three times daily varm boric lotion, and the patients may be given any food which eel inclined to swallow. At the end of about a fortnight the tonsils be dissected out and the adenoids removed to prevent any repeti-f a similar trouble.

is quite obvious that the method of operating described above is able to abscesses of extra-pharyngeal origin, when their mode of tion is considered. In these cases, the enlarged glands in the neck be removed by dissection until the abscess cavity in the deepest is reached. This may sometimes be removed entire without burst-ut as a rule it is so adherent to the constrictor muscles of the nx as to render that impossible. The lining cavity should there-e removed systematically with a sharp spoon or with a pair of biting forceps, and the wound in the neck then closed with a drainage tube inserted down to the site of the abscess. As a rule an be removed at the end of forty-eight hours, resulting in the g of the wound by first intention.

a large number of cases under the care of the writer, between y and eighty altogether, no complications have ever followed the on of these procedures for the operative treatment of pharyngeal ses. The old controversy as to whether such an abscess should ned through the mouth or through the neck clearly arose from perfect classification of the types of pharyngeal abscesses to be vith. With a proper classification the method is obvious.

CHAPTER V

OPERATIONS FOR MALIGNANT DISEASE OF THE AND LARYNGEAL PARTS OF THE PHARYNX

By Wilfred Trotter, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng
Captain R.A.M.C.(T.)

The oral and laryngeal parts of the pharynx present such blances as to the treatment of the diseases to which they are sub they are conveniently treated together. The term pharynx as this article will refer to these two parts only unless otherwise The surgery of malignant disease of the pharynx presents man difficulties which may be classified under the headings of (1) the tion of the disease; (2) the danger of the operation; and (3) the tion and disability due to the operation.

As to the *cradication of the disease,* it may be stated that as the epitheliomata—by far the most frequent form of disease—nary methods of surgery are as adequate here as elsewhere. T say, the removal of early or only moderately advanced tumour margin of ½ to ¾ in. of healthy surrounding tissue will, in t majority of cases, secure freedom from local recurrence. A tumours do not follow this rule and always demand special trea they are to be attacked at all. A systematic gland operation s done in every case. It is sometimes found that a unilateral gl section proves to be adequate; extended experience, however, that a bilateral dissection must be looked upon as the normal pr

There are two causes of failure in eradicating the primary which are special to the pharynx, viz. *recurrence by implanta retro-pharyngeal lymphatic recurrences.*

Implantation recurrences are not very uncommonly seen of carcinoma of the epiglottis when a growth appears on the wall of the pharynx exactly opposite the primary one. Anoth festation of what appears to be a somewhat similar process is the ance of one or more growths scattered along the pharynx or œs below the primary one. It is difficult to be sure that such grow not been due to spread in the lymph vessels, but many have an ap suggestive of implantation and resembling the similar well-know rence of multiple growths in the colon secondary to ileocæcal tur

Lymphatic recurrence behind the pharynx is rather prone t

ay be a good deal higher up than the primary growth, and in such uation as to suggest that there have been infected lymph glands which d scarcely have been reached by the most radical gland dissection.

The *dangers of the operation* are almost entirely those of infection. umonia is, of course, invariably and solely due to aspiration of in- ve material into the lungs. The only precaution against it which has value is the performance of laryngotomy or tracheotomy at the est possible moment of the operation and the plugging of the wind- above. Direct infection of the wound is undoubtedly the most us danger. Essentially it is dependent on the normal presence of ent organisms in the mouth, for wounds of the naso-pharynx are little liable to serious infections, whereas wounds of the mouth, the and laryngeal parts of the pharynx, and the œsophagus are all liable uch. The anatomical features of the pharynx make infections in e regions much more serious than similar infection in the mouth.

The primary source of infection is the mouth, but secondarily the rated surface of the growth becomes a further source. Consequently legrees of sepsis in the mouth and the extent and foulness of the ation are important factors in determining the dangers of a given ation. A clean edentulous condition of the mouth undoubtedly ences the prospect of success more favourably than any other fea- of the case, and conversely the presence of teeth, even if apparently healthy, is a decidedly unfavourable influence. It is doubtful her an operation should be undertaken, at any rate in an elderly on, without a preliminary clearance of the mouth.

A wound exposed to contact with oral mucus always becomes infected, the infection runs a fairly well defined course. It causes sloughing he raw surface and a good deal of inflammatory reaction in the ounding tissue. If the surface is quite open there is little tendency preading of the inflammation. For the first three or four days is sloughing and serous discharge; in about a week suppuration ell established and by the tenth day the sloughs have usually sepa- , leaving a clean granulating wound which seems quite immune reinfection.

The dangers occurring in the process of healing are as follows:

. **Acute septicæmia.** This is not very uncommon, and is espe- likely to occur when a very large wound is left exposed to infective rial and when the mouth and tumour are highly septic. It seems ially common after operations during which, on account of im- ct access or want of care, the wound is grossly befouled during the l operation. It is a wholly irremediable complication and is often in forty-eight hours.

2. **Secondary hæmorrhage.** This is fairly common unles precautions are taken. It occurs almost invariably between th and tenth days, while the sloughs are separating and everything be progressing well. It is a very fatal complication—usually flooding of the air-passages with blood.

3. **Spreading cellulitis.** This is the most serious danger o tions on the laryngeal part of the pharynx. Any pocketing or i drainage of the wound is likely to cause it. A diffuse sloughing spreads along the areolar planes about the œsophagus and readily the mediastinum. It is a very fatal complication, but occasion be checked by energetic treatment. As a rule it causes death ten days to a fortnight.

The question of mutilation and disability resulting from the o can be dealt with only in relation to the different operative pro

PRINCIPLES GUIDING THE DESIGNING OF OPERA

There are certain general requirements which are so import they should receive individual consideration in dealing with ea They need be stated here only in summary form.

(*a*) **Preliminary disinfection.** Cleansing of the mouth is t important measure. By far the most efficient method is the of all the teeth, and whenever practicable this should certainly To get the full advantage of it the tooth sockets should be all heal before the main operation is undertaken, and during the ex of teeth every precaution should be taken to inflict a minimun jury. During the operation as soon as the growth is fully exp surface should be seared with the actual cautery. It is not u thorough disinfection to be possible by this means, but a good often be done.

The wound throughout the operation must be as fully prot possible from contact with mucus from the pharynx.

(*b*) **Freedom of access to the tumour.** A distinct step operation should be free exposure of the growth before any att remove it is begun. This principle is absolutely cardinal in the p of the best chance of eradicating the disease, preventing serious in and limiting mutilation. Nothing encourages failure more certai the confusion of the procedure of access with the procedure of r

(*c*) **Local removal of the tumour** in accordance with the logical necessities of the case rather than in accordance with t posed anatomical necessities of the part. An operation should n undertaken with the design of removing a given organ, but alwa that of eradicating a given tumour.

of the wound or wounds in the pharynx. This is
ficient means of preventing serious infections. Some-
ne by direct suturing, in other cases the loss of sub-
ynx must be made good by a skin flap. In both cases
is the protection of the tissues from contact with
Valuable as is wound closure as a method of limiting
ction, it must be used carefully and with a knowledge
onditions, otherwise, by causing pocketing and imper-
ay actually increase the danger of serious infection.
effect of contact of pharyngeal mucus with any raw
se sloughing. Hence, if in closing the pharynx or
kin into it the ordinary edge-to-edge method of stitch-
closing a skin wound, it will be found that a slough
nargin of the line of suture. To avoid this disappoint-
very dangerous complication, wide surfaces must be
by mattress sutures, skin and mucous membrane, for
ted very much in the same way as segments of bowel
ner, end-to-end, the raw surface in the first case cor-
ne peritoneal in the second.

TIES OF PHARYNGEAL TUMOURS

es of the operating surgeon the great majority of cases
se of the oral and laryngeal parts of the pharynx can
ur groups, according to the anatomical site of the
eration needed for the removal of it. Four principal
s are therefore to be described, and it will be found
ry case of pharyngeal tumour that is met with can be
ked by one or another of them. A thorough grasp of
is extremely important, as a failure to recognize the
umour and its actual place of origin may lead to the
suitable method which will prove a serious handicap
l lead to unnecessary mutilation, or even failure to
tion.
f tumours which I have found of most practical value

of the oropharyngeal group. This group includes
hosarcoma, and epithelioma of the tonsil itself, and
ta starting in the immediately adjacent parts, such
ne arch and the tongue at the attachment of the glosso-

d group of epithelioma of the base of the tongue falls

anatomically into this group. It is not, however, dealt w
article. (See Operations on the Tongue.)

2. **Tumours of the epilaryngeal group.** Experience
there is a fairly distinct class of tumours which start upon th
or arytæno-epiglottic fold. They are all epitheliomata, and,
special tendency to invade the larynx, can in their earlier stag
with by a local operation without laryngectomy.

3. **Tumours of the recessus piriformis.** These are
most serious of all pharyngeal tumours because they are ap
diagnosis until a late stage. They are epitheliomata and
primarily pharyngeal, always involve the skeleton and soft p
larynx very early.

4. **Tumours of the hypopharyngeal group.** This grou
as including all tumours of the laryngeal part of the pharyn
not in their early stages involve the larynx. They may be
posterior or lateral wall as high as the epiglottis or on the an
behind the cricoid. Many of these tumours come within th
so-called 'post-cricoid carcinoma.' This is not a good nam
operative experience shows that an exactly post-cricoid loca
not particularly common. In my own experience the lateral
common a starting-place as any. All tumours of this group
liomata. In their later stages they tend to involve the larynx,
circumference of the pharynx, and to extend along the œsopha
last mode of extension is very common, and soon puts the ca
the reach of operation.

OPERATIONS FOR THE REMOVAL OF TUMOU
THE OROPHARYNGEAL GROUP[1]

Endotheliomata and lymphosarcomata of the tonsil are
difficult to cure by operation, unless they are dealt with at a s
diagnosis is scarcely possible. Both tend to involve lymph
an early stage, and, once this has occurred, it is doubtful
ever possible. In this respect these tumours contrast remark
epitheliomata, which quite frequently remain curable by oper
after lymphatic invasion has occurred. One feature which ad
to the difficulties of early diagnosis and successful treatment of
theliomata is their liability to inflammation and suppuration.

[1] The descriptions of operations in this and the subsequent sections
to procedures of which the author has personal experience. The schem
tions presented has been found to contain methods suitable for at
forms of epithelioma of the pharynx which have been met with in t
practice. In the interests of simplicity it has been thought undesira
alternative methods of dealing with tumours of the same group.

vours the early and extensive gland involvement which

undoubtedly the commonest tumour, and the treat-
ding to the stage of the disease.
ase is strictly limited to the tonsil itself an intra-buccal
be done, followed, of course, by the bilateral gland
noice of this method of treatment should not be made
on of the disease can be certainly established.
tion usually necessary, and the one that should be
s where it is doubtful if the disease is limited to the
more serious one. Free longitudinal access is needed,
obtained after the mandible has been divided just in
seter. In many cases the cervical lymph glands will
y involved.

CCAL EXCISION OF TONSILLAR TUMOURS

ryngotomy should always be done. The pharynx is
he cheek split backwards from the angle of the mouth
ase of the jaw to the anterior edge of the masseter on
ne tumour. The latter can now be fully inspected and
ut. The tonsil should never be enucleated, but should
margin of healthy surrounding tissues of ¼ to ½
should be taken to get the full margin below. It is not
ve much of the soft palate, and care should be taken
ently cutting at all widely into this, as a permanent
e voice may be thereby and unnecessarily produced.
the pharynx left by such an operation can always
hed up. The stitches should be of catgut and should
of the wound so that broad surfaces are brought to-
ty is left behind.
ces of the cheek should have been protected during
having gauze stitched over them or by the temporary
nd mucous membrane. The final stitching up of the
rapid union is to be obtained and scarring minimized.
pose it is essential that no cavity be left between the
membrane; hence two or three mattress sutures are
the skin and the mucous aspects. By these stitches
ontact of the wound are made very broad and the
cation cannot produce a depressed scar. The laryn-
moved at the end of the operation. No dressing is
ek, but the wound is left to dry. Healing is usually
ne gland operation can be done in a week.

TRANSMANDIBULAR EXCISION OF TONSILLAR TUMO

In cases where this is necessary the question of whether th growth or the glands should be attacked first always arises.

The patients are usually elderly men subjects of arterial disease and frequently of the effects of chronic alcoholism; tl is the seat of a deep and extremely foul ulcer, which, owing t dency to downward extension, is probably very close to the upp of the larynx. The consequence is that a prolonged gland before the primary growth has been removed is extremely lil followed by pneumonia, which is practically always fatal. In r ence an extensive preliminary gland dissection is much more be the cause of pneumonia than is the removal of the primar The gland operation can scarcely ever be carried out without co and persistent impairment of the airway during the procedure. tion of the airway of course greatly increases the force of asp the upper opening of the larynx, and this leads to the inhalation matter from the ulcer, and consequent pneumonia. Neverth necessary that the glands should be done first, because the d the jaw and the almost necessary infection of some part of t left by removal of the primary growth usually delay healing f weeks, during which, of course, the glands cannot be touched the scarring following such a wound interferes with the clean which is so desirable in the gland operation.

There are two practical solutions of the problem either of v be chosen: (*a*) a partial gland operation and removal of th growth as a first stage; (*b*) the gland operation as a first stag *bination with a preliminary laryngotomy* as a precaution aga monia. The laryngotomy need only be used during the operat

When a very large mass of glands is present in the nec case is still judged to be suitable for operation, the gland mas tainly have to be removed first. In such a case the bilateral gla tion will almost certainly not be possible. This involves either with the dissection on the sound side or carrying out a th ation.

The *operation on the primary growth,* whether done first should always begin with a laryngotomy and the plugging of the

Exposure of the jaw by reflection of a flap gives the best a the least conspicuous scarring. The incision begins in the medi the lower lip and is carried down vertically over the chin to a inch below the jaw; it then turns backwards horizontally to th the sterno-mastoid; at this point it will be 1 to 1½ inches below

flap is reflected backwards till well beyond the anterior
eter and the facial vessels are divided. If the glands
been removed and a partial dissection is to be done,
e submaxillary triangle and the tissues over the carotid
solated and left attached above. The jaw is cleared
ront of the masseter, drilled in two places near the
l divided; the saw-cut should be directed downwards
ards to prevent upward displacement of the posterior

ment the jaw is divided great care should be taken
surfaces from contact with infective material. The
h is now incised from a point near the section of the
nd inwards to the lingual attachment of the glosso-
he jaw can now be widely separated and the growth
deep, crater-like ulcer usually present in the growth
l, as it cannot be cauterized adequately; the pharynx
enewed and the whole region mopped over with an

noval of the tumour is now undertaken, and the object
ould be to get a margin of healthy tissues of ¾ inch
le induration. The growth has a special tendency to
ls into the recussus piriformis, alongside the upper
rynx, and very careful attention should therefore be
of the excision. When the tumour is large it is often
ve the great cornu of the hyoid bone. Bleeding is
I have never had to divide either the internal carotid
ing with an operable tumour.

e wound is often difficult and tedious, but if it is
will repay the time spent on it. The gap to be closed
ensive. As a rule a considerable part of the soft palate
nd even some of the posterior wall of the pharynx in
n, have been removed, as well as a considerable part
l the pharyngeal wall down to the thyreoid cartilage.
y stitches up in a triradiate form, consisting of (1) an
t in the region of the tonsil and palate; this usually
ell enough and is the least important; (2) a lower
ne lateral wall of the pharynx below the level of the
st important, but closes easily; two rows of stitches
sary and must bring broad surfaces together; (3) a
etween the other two; this is closed by bringing the
ernal pterygoid muscle and to the inner side of the
o effect this latter the alveolar border of the jaw may

be cut away, and thus a thick covering of soft parts can be br
the line of division of the bone.

The bone is firmly fixed by a wire during the suture of the
The skin wound is closed except for a large drainage oper
submaxillary region. The laryngotomy tube should generally
for twenty-four or forty-eight hours.

The greater part of the pharynx wound usually heals by di
Rarely primary union throughout is obtained. Commonly th
slight leakage from the pharynx after a day or two, at the p
the three limbs of the triradiate line of suture meet.

The chief technical defect of the operation is the liability t
of the suture line of the jaw. Even in the exceptional c
primary union occurs, the wire has practically always sooner
be removed. Usually union is considerably delayed by the p
the wire and often by some superficial necrosis as well. In s
disadvantage I believe the operation to give by far the best
dealing with all cases of malignant disease of the tonsil excep
early ones.

Results. Malignant disease of the tonsil is not quite so
a condition as is often supposed. Of eleven cases I have o
myself, only one of which was in an early stage, three were
any return of the disease more than three years after the
Epithelioma is more amenable to treatment than endothe
lymphosarcoma, for it can be cured even when fairly advance

The mortality of the operation, considering the nature o
cedures and the condition of the patients, is not very great. O
eleven cases two died from the operation. Of these deaths or
to a complicating condition unconnected with the operation
other to shock following difficulty in breathing consequent
laryngotomy tube having been left out too soon.

OPERATIONS FOR TUMOURS OF THE EPILARY GROUP

It has been generally assumed that malignant disease of
opening of the larynx cannot be dealt with without lary
There is a certain amount of evidence against this view, and co
such cases should be approached by the surgeon with the in
removing the tumour by a local operation rather than a form
ectomy.

Definite enlargement of glands is usually present at th
the operation, at least on one side of the neck. As the appro

to be a lateral one, and as in these cases there is usually
n breathing, the best course is to combine the unilateral
ith the removal of the primary tumour. This makes
long, but if a satisfactory tracheotomy is done early
s to be expected. The operation by which the upper
larynx can be most conveniently exposed I have
ansthyreoid pharyngotomy. It is carried out as

sthyreoid pharyngotomy for a tumour of the up. A tracheotomy is done as soon as possible, examined carefully with the finger, so that its exact bution can be made out. The incisions are now nilateral gland operation, that is, along the anterior no-mastoid and at right angles to this. As soon as the ne deep fascia is incised about an inch in front of the d turned back as a separate layer. The gland operation e usual way, with removal of fat and glands from be- mastoid as far as its posterior border and from the up to the base of the parotid. In order the more f from infection the large posterior part of the wound, e carotid vessels fully exposed, the flap of deep fascia turned forward and stitched to the prevertebral mus- arynx. In this way primary union of the gland wound A separate drainage tube should be put into it through the sterno-mastoid.

of the primary growth is now proceeded with. The es are turned back from off the larynx and hyoid bone, le of the thyreoid gland is divided and, if necessary, lobe is removed. The great cornu of the hyoid bone thyreoid cartilage are now freed from the structures This can be done very easily without wounding the e of the pharynx. The posterior two-thirds of the ala and the great cornu disarticulated from the body of all of the pharynx at the level of the upper opening of fully exposed and the tumour can be palpated through packed round with gauze, leaving the pharyngeal wall latter is incised longitudinally and held aside with further to protect the wound from pharyngeal mucus. g of the larynx and the growth are now laid bare. n securely plugged.

of the tumour is now undertaken. Generally its prim- piglottis, but occasionally it is the arytæno-epiglottic

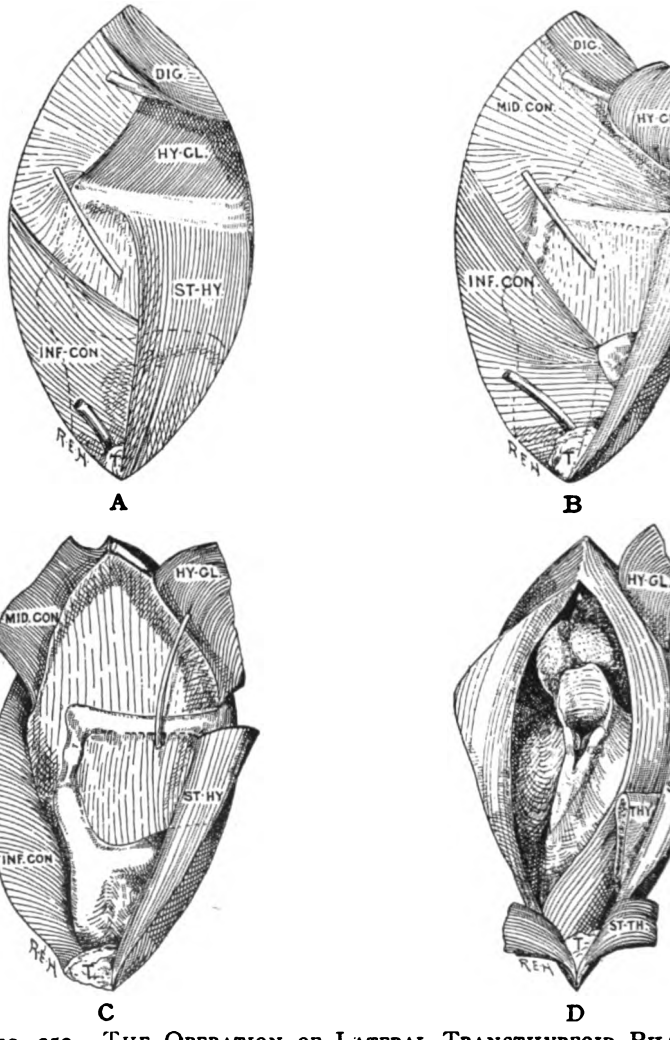


FIG. 250. THE OPERATION OF LATERAL TRANSTHYREOID PHA
Diagrams of four stages in the exposure of the upper opening of the
A the preliminary gland dissection has been done; in B the infra-hy
have been reflected; in C the skeleton of the larynx has been laid ba
posed parts of the hyoid bone and thyreoid cartilage are now to be r
D the pharynx has been opened and the upper opening of the laryn

fold. In either case, unless the disease is far advanced, a
margin of healthy tissue can be obtained without difficult
tumour is epiglottic and of any size, the transverse incision
below should be only just above the vocal folds. Extensio
into the tongue is common and should be looked for. It is

anywhere near the hyoid bone or thyreoid cartilage.
troublesome.
p left between the tongue and larynx must now be
and deep mattress sutures of catgut. The mobility of
this to be effected without serious difficulty. A large
es should be used and care be taken to leave no cavity.
g of the mucous membrane is of little importance com-
inging together of broad surfaces. The lateral wall of
t now be closed with at least two rows of suture. The
be closed except for an opening for a plug going down
wall.

nt. The drainage tube behind the sterno-mastoid is re-
ty-four hours. The plug going down to the wall of the
ged daily. Usually its neighbourhood shows evidence
n at the time of the operation, but in the majority of
leakage at all from the pharynx and the wound may be
l in two or three weeks. The patient is fed through a
ter of moderate size passed into the upper part of the
tracheotomy tube is necessary for a week or ten days,
y a good deal of swelling about the glottis.
not to allow the patient to attempt to swallow for at
it is desirable to let him begin before the tracheotomy
in case there should be uncomfortable spasm.
hould be cleansed very frequently as long as swallowing

ishment of normal deglutition usually takes two or three
hich time the patient is very apt to become depressed
unless the surgeon is particularly careful to reassure
ulty is often in getting the act to assume its normal
ter again, and patients often find for a time that they
e well in solitude but are apt to choke in company.
ifficulty during convalescence is coughing. The altered
upper laryngeal opening and the irritative effect of the
it lead to a greatly increased sensitiveness to stimula-
tly paroxysmal coughing is very apt to occur and dis-
a great deal. This tendency always passes off sooner
within about four weeks. It can be controlled, if much
ing caused, by occasional small doses of morphine.
pilaryngeal growths have proved in my experience the
g of all pharyngeal tumours. Out of ten cases, four
by laryngectomy and three by local excision without
These three latter were all serious cases on account of

the size of the growth and extensive gland involvement. They a practically normal voice and perfectly normal deglutition.

Of the ten cases, two died from the operation. This would a considerable death-rate per cent., but it may be remarked only half the rate per cent. of cures.

OPERATIONS FOR TUMOURS OF THE RECE PIRIFORMIS. LARYNGO-PHARYNGECTOM

The peculiar clinical course of these tumours leads, as I h elsewhere,[1] to the diagnosis being made only at a late stage, lateral wall and skeleton of the already extensively involved. S therefore, stand alone among tumours of the pharynx in necessitating a total lary Doubtless many other pharynge as met with in practice can be only by an operation which laryngectomy; nevertheless, s are always late ones, and ha through a stage in which diag not difficult and would have patient from the mutilating op have never seen a case of tum recessus piriformis in which the least possibility of treatment laryngectomy.

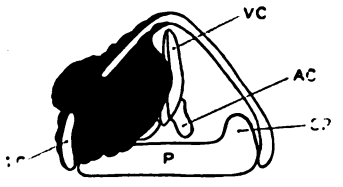


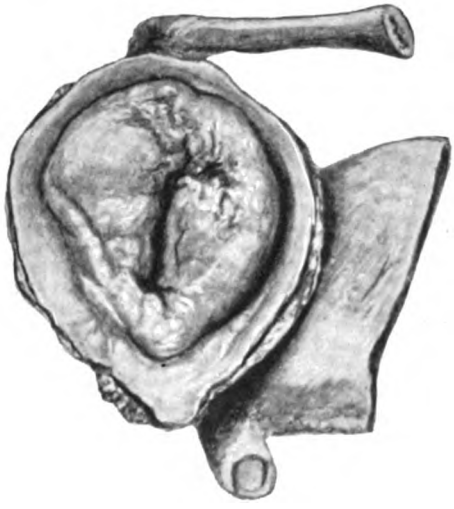
FIG. 251. DIAGRAM OF MODE OF SPREAD OF AN EPITHELIOMA OF RECESSUS PIRIFORMIS. The features to be noticed are early involvement of the thyreoid cartilage, absence of projection into lumen of pharynx, and the presence of a bulging inwards of the lateral wall of the larynx without any ulceration there. At this stage the diagnosis can usually be made by external palpation of the larynx.

By the time the case comes tion it will usually be found that the growth has extended b actual recess and involved at least the lateral wall of the Sometimes it will have encircled the pharynx completely. A extension not uncommon is downwards to the œsophagus. V has occurred, a satisfactory operation is impossible. The invas pharynx renders the operation a much more serious matter tha laryngectomy, because a gap is left in the pharynx which closed. This adds so greatly to the seriousness of the operati would save confusion if the latter were always referred to as pharyngectomy, in order to mark the distinction from laryng which, since none of the lateral pharyngeal wall is removed, th

[1] Hunterian Lectures, 1913, *Lancet*, April 19, 1913.

pharynx can be completely closed and primary union of the whole
l usually obtained.

ıe removal of any considerable amount of the wall of the pharynx
rs necessary a type of operation differing essentially from those
y described. Away from the neighbourhood of the tongue, simple
does not suffice to close gaps in the pharyngeal wall that involve
onsiderable amount of the circumference. It is therefore necessary
ovide something to take the place of the part which has been re-

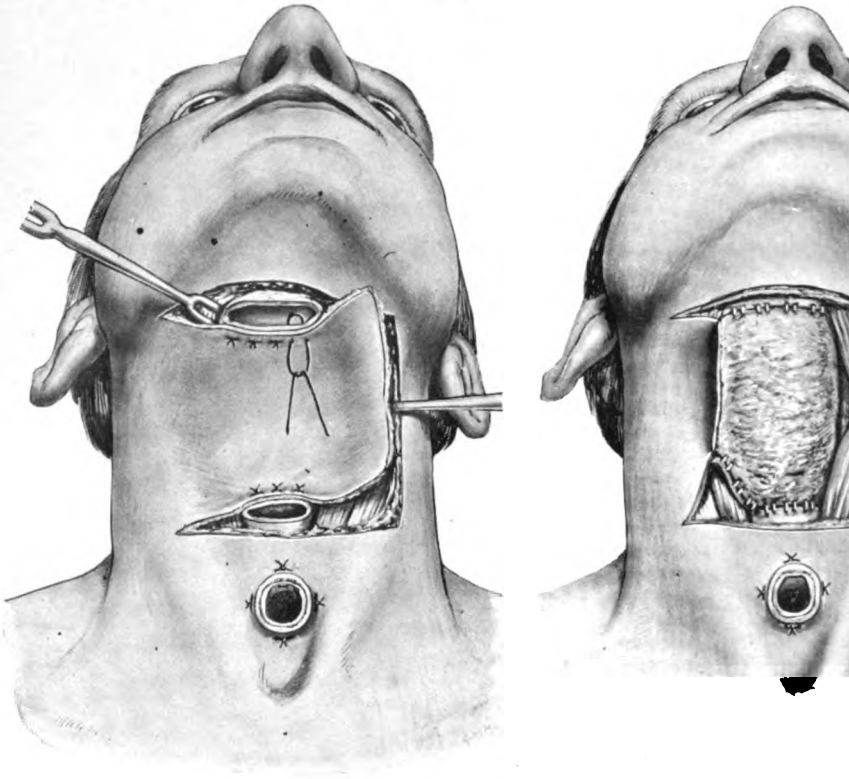


IG. 252. EPITHELIOMA OF LATERAL WALL OF PHARYNX REMOVED BY LAT-
RANSTHYREOID PHARYNGOTOMY. The tumour was adherent to the thyreoid
l was removed with it. The gap in the pharynx was closed by simple
and there was no leakage from it. The figure is intended to show the
um amount which can be removed from this part of the pharynx without
ovision of a skin flap being necessary to close the resulting gap.

. Such a substitute is to be found in a flap of skin. The skin is
etely tolerant of the pharyngeal contents and readily heals into the
nx if it is turned in in the form of a flap.

ıe operation should begin with the exposure of the upper end of
achea, transverse division of it below the cricoid and the suture
lower end of the skin. Since an essential part of the operation
cutting of an oblong flap from the front of the neck, the vertical
otomy incision should not go higher than the cricoid. If more
is wanted, a transverse cut may be made at this level, and will later
part of the flap incision. As soon as the trachea has been divided,
per end should be securely plugged. The anæsthetic now being

given by the open end of the trachea, a final digital exploratio
tumour is made through the mouth to determine what the di



A B

FIG. 253. LARYNGO-PHARYNGECTOMY. Two stages of the oper
shows the reconstruction of the pharynx by a skin flap. The tumour,
larynx and the whole circumference of the pharynx, has been remov
skin flap has been laid in position and is being sutured to the remaind
pharynx above and to the œsophagus below. The mode in which mattres
are used is shown. The trachea has been divided and the lower end st
the skin at an early stage of the operation.

In B the skin flap has been folded on itself to reconstitute the anterio
the pharynx. The flap thus forms posterior, left lateral and anterior w
the base of the flap an opening into the pharynx remains. This openin
in the figure to have been reduced by the suturing together of the lo
anterior edges of the flap for about an inch. The raw surface on the out
of the flap may be covered in by sliding on to it a separate flap of skin
lateral aspect of the neck.

of the flap should be. If the loss of substance of the posterior
the pharynx is to be extensive, the flap must have its attachm

y. If the whole circumference of the pharynx must be removed
p must obviously have length enough to form, when bent on itself,
or and posterior walls. It is obvious that no detailed description
e given of the various modifications in the arrangement of the
hich may be necessary. The one general rule of essential impor-
is that the flap must be of ample size to fill the gap without the
ension. As soon as the flap has been reflected the muscles are
off the larynx, and the pharynx is isolated as much as necessary
being opened. In clearing the larynx it must be remembered that
owth has almost certainly penetrated the ala of the thyreoid; on this
herefore, the infra-hyoid muscles cannot be reflected off the larynx,
ust be sacrificed with the tumour. When the time comes when
g the pharynx cannot be postponed, every precaution is taken to
t escape of mucus into the wound. Substitution of pharyngeal
y skin of course renders necessary the leaving of a temporary
at the pedicle of the flap. This is useful for feeding purposes at
nd will usually be found later not to interfere with normal swallow-
No attempt should be made to close it until the wound is thor-
sound and the raw surface whence the flap was taken has healed.
itching of skin to pharynx, as already said, should be surface to
e by mattress sutures and never edge to edge.

sults. The results of operations for tumours of the recessus
mis are extremely bad. I have never seen a case cured by opera-
nd the operative mortality is still very high. Nevertheless, when
sease, as it might very well be, is recognized in its early stages I
o doubt that the operation of laryngectomy with reconstitution of
arynx by skin will give at least moderately good results. The
is not inherently incurable, and a patient and enterprising study
l pathological conditions and technique will, I am sure, sooner or
ield results as encouraging as those of operations for tumour of
l and upper laryngeal parts of the pharynx.

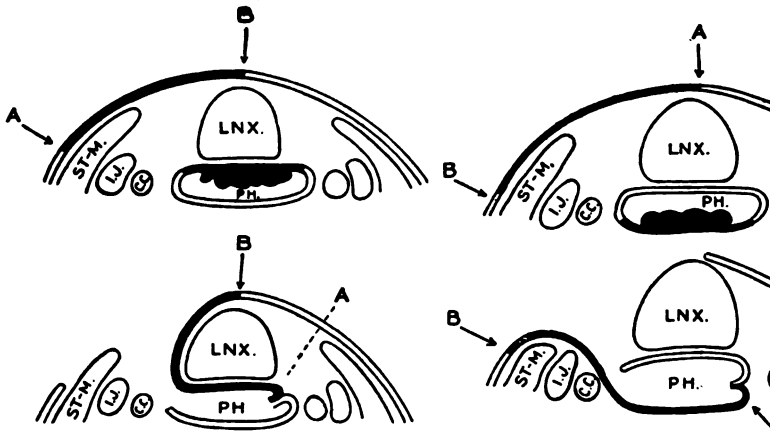
OPERATIONS FOR TUMOURS OF THE HYPO-PHARYNGEAL GROUP

mours of this group are usually removable in their early stages
t laryngectomy. Late cases become inoperable from diffuse ex-
to the œsophagus or through the pharynx to the structures of
k.

e gap left by the excision can never be closed by simple suture, so flap must be provided for reconstituting the pharynx. The closure
defect in the pharynx is especially necessary in this region for
g sepsis and preventing stricture.

The operation should be begun with tracheotomy, and
growth is explored through the mouth with the finger, so that
and situation of it can be made out and the nature of the
cided upon.

After reflection of the flap, access to the pharynx is ob
removal of the ala of the thyreoid cartilage and of the later



I II

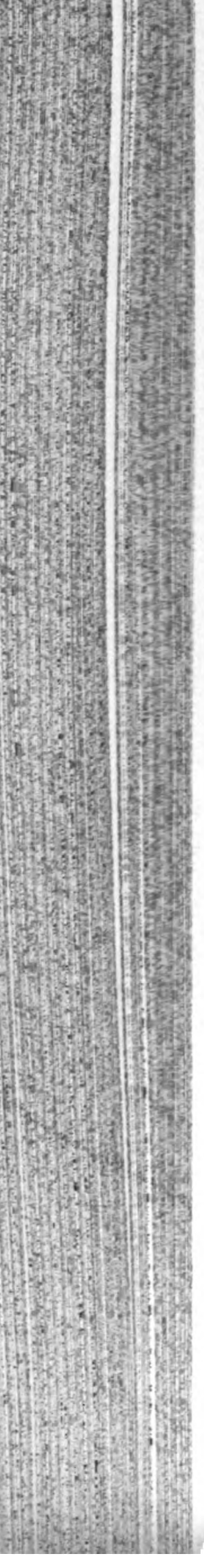
FIG. 254. DIAGRAMS TO SHOW THE ARRANGEMENT OF THE SKIN
IN RECONSTITUTING THE PHARYNX AFTER REMOVAL OF A TUMOUR OF
PHARYNGEAL GROUP. I. The tumour is on the anterior pharyngeal wall
'post-cricoid carcinoma'—and the skin flap must therefore have its
anteriorly. The upper diagram shows the skin flap marked but not re
lower diagram shows the state of affairs after removal of the growth
of the flap in position. The skin flap and the growth are shown in sol
II shows the arrangement of the skin flap used in reconstituting th
after removal of a tumour of the posterior wall. The flap in this case
posteriorly. In each diagram B points to the base of the flap, and A
edge. LNX, larynx; PH, pharynx; STM, sterno-mastoid; IJ, jugular vei
mon carotid.

the thyreoid gland or part of it. The growth can be felt th
pharynx wall, and the freeing of it from surrounding parts is
far as possible before the mucous membrane is opened. Wh
done the larynx is at once plugged. The escape of mucus is
as much as possible by plugging until the flap has been stitched

Feeding is best done through the fistula at the pedicle o
by means of a soft rubber catheter. After about the first wee
tient may begin to swallow through the mouth. As a rule, very
escapes at the fistula. The latter need not be closed for seve

Digitized by Google

esults. I am not able to record a case of permanent cure of a
th of this group. Experience, however, of the technique sketched
shows that the great obstacles to successful treatment, viz. infec-
f the wound and subsequent stricture, can be surmounted. It would
therefore, that the submission of the cases to earlier operation
l yield a satisfactory number of cures. It is not sufficiently realized
epithelioma of this type is characteristically a disease of adult and
young women, and hence the number of cases which come to
tion in a stage too late for successful treatment is deplorably large.
l forms of epithelioma this is the one which is most frequent in
vely young people, and our efforts to deal with it should therefore
pecially strenuous and persevering.



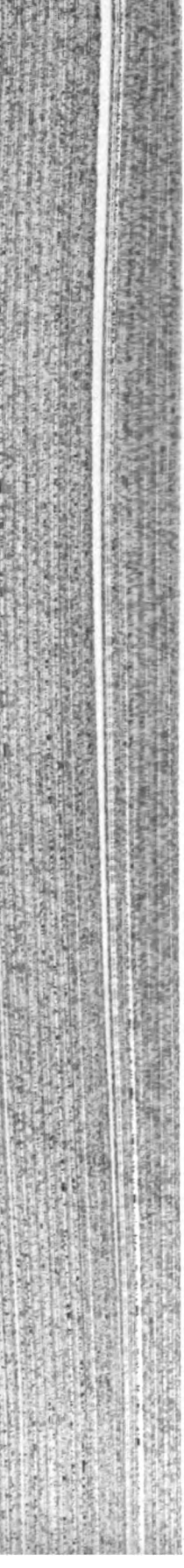
SECTION V

PART II

ERATIONS UPON THE ŒSOPHAGUS

BY

GE, M.S.(Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.), Major R.A.M.C.(T.)
Assistant Surgeon to Guy's Hospital



CHAPTER VI

OPERATIONS UPON THE ŒSOPHAGUS

CISION OF ŒSOPHAGEAL DIVERTICULA

AGEAL diverticula most commonly occur immediately below the cricoid, at the junction of the pharynx with the œsophagus. ect from the posterior aspect of the œsophageal tube on le, and vary in length from a mere depression to a definite cked pouch several g. The lumen of agus is usually un- the level of the ugh a definite con- may be met with ly below its ori- d example of this l and depicted by n (*Ann. of Surg.*, , p. 529). Halstead *Surg.*, 1904, vol. i, is recorded a case he lower border of f the diverticulum valve-like projec- the lumen of the , demonstrating d by which ob- o the natural pas- duced.

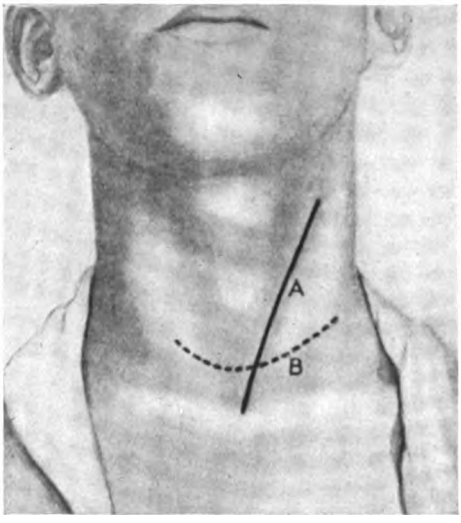


FIG. 255. INCISIONS FOR OPERATIONS UPON THE ŒSOPHAGUS IN THE NECK. A, Guattani's; B, Kocher's.

nation with the X-rays is sometimes a useful preliminary to as in a case of Landauer's (*Centralb. f. Inn. Med.*, April, ere a photograph taken with leaden sounds passed into the rately indicated its situation. Or it may be possible after one oses of bismuth oxycarbonate to distend the pouch so that an tograph may be obtained.

cases have now been recorded of successful operations for this Richardson (*loc. supra cit.*, p. 525) collected 56 cases.

of which 18 had been dealt with by operation, viz. 16 by exci
2 by Girard's method. Butlin (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1903, vol. i
published a second series of 8 cases, making 12 in all, of
had operated on 8, and it is to the latter, who was the first su

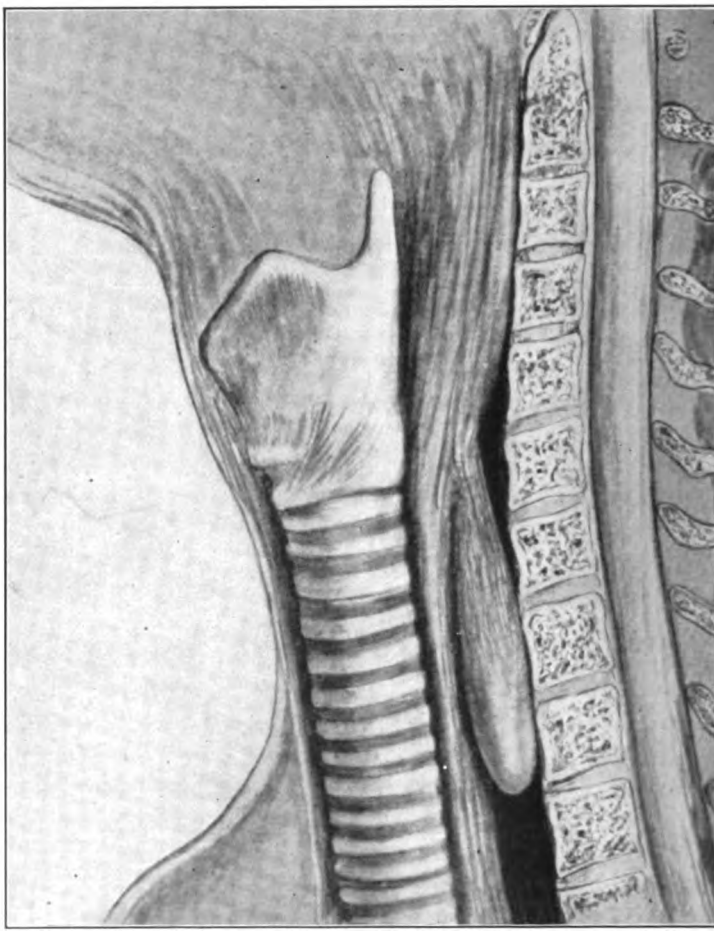
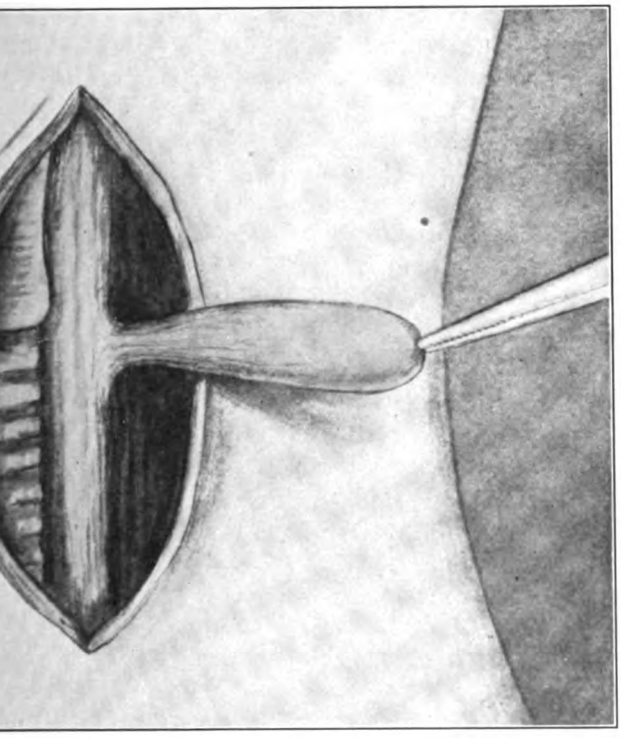


FIG. 256. AN ŒSOPHAGEAL DIVERTICULUM. This and the four fol
figures are from Richardson's paper in the *Annals of Surger*

England to undertake operation for this condition, that we are
for much of our knowledge relating to the symptomatology
the indications for operation.

Operation. The patient is placed under the influence of
anæsthetic, chloroform preceded by a hypodermic injection of

itable for such cases. A preliminary gastrostomy may ut as recommended by Goldmann. An oblique incision e anterior border of the left sternomastoid from the he thyreoid cartilage to the suprasternal notch (see Fig. eep cervical fascia is divided and the anterior jugular een ligatures, when the depressors of the hyoid bone are ese the omo-hyoid is divided, while the sterno-hyoid



7. Excision of an Œsophageal Diverticulum. (Richardson, *Annals of Surgery.*)

id are retracted, or, if necessary, cut through as recom- Bergmann (*Arch. f. Klin. Chir.*, 1892, vol. xliii, p. 1). l of the wound the branches of the superior thyreoid ed, and the dissection is carried deeply on the outer side land, which with the larynx is both drawn inwards and ng axis to the right: the carotid vessels are carefully n outwards with a large blunt retractor. At this stage help in the definition of the diverticulum will be

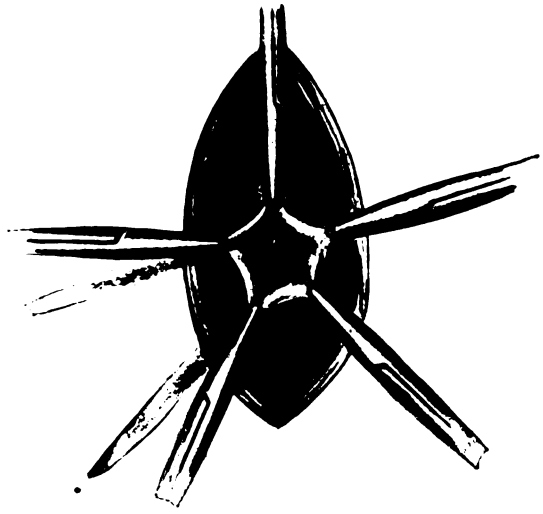


FIG. 258. REMOVAL OF THE DIVERTICULUM. The bougie is seen in
of the œsophagus.

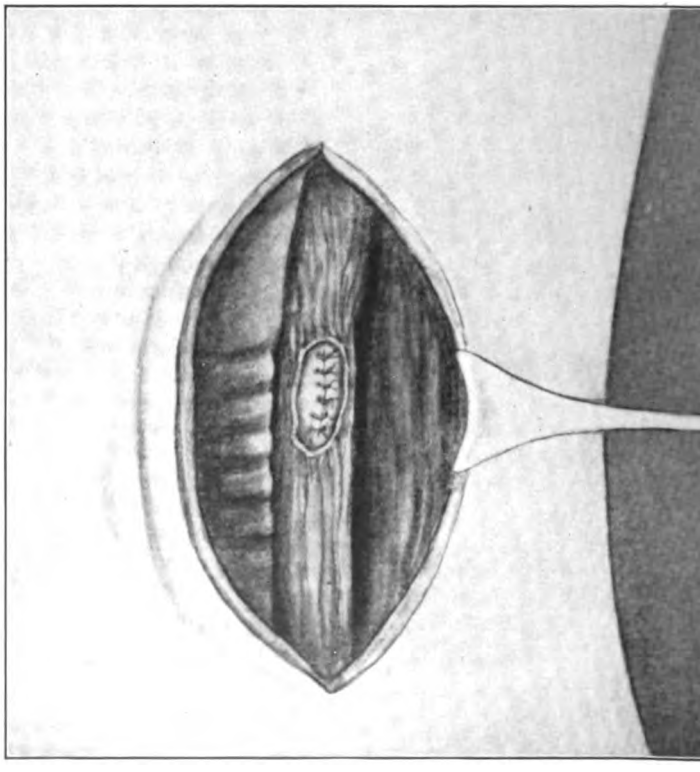
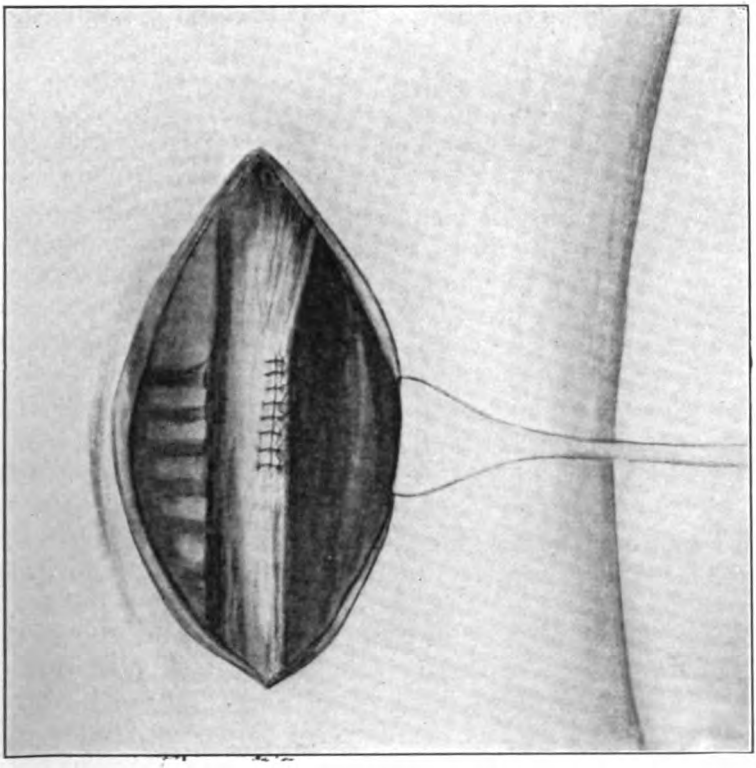


FIG. 259. SUTURE OF THE ŒSOPHAGUS AFTER EXCISION OF THE DIV
(Richardson, *Annals of Surgery.*)

ıed, as suggested by Butlin, by the passage of a curved pliable e into the diverticulum; also the œsophagus is defined, so as to opening it inadvertently, by the passage of a long bougie from the ı into the stomach.[1] Careful dissection should now expose the of the pouch lying to the left of the œsophageal tube, and on upon it with forceps as it is separated from the other



60. Excision of an Œsophageal Diverticulum. The operation completed. (Richardson, *Annals of Surgery.*)

s will enable the fundus to be drawn out of the wound, leaving ouch connected with the œsophagus only by its neck. Butlin ımends that the pouch be now cut away at its neck from above wards, and, as this is being done, the margins of the wound in the ıagus be brought together by interrupted sutures. If these are ed in a vertical row, so as to draw the lateral edges of the neck

[1] his may not be possible until the pouch has been freed and withdrawn from ound, as the œsophagus is often pushed aside by a large distended diverı (Butlin).

of the pouch together, slight stenosis of the œsophagus at may result, so that when practicable it is better to cut graduall the neck of the diverticulum transversely, and suture the up lower margins of the incision, so as to form a transverse line upon the œsophageal wall.

In order to avoid opening the œsophagus and to eliminate quent risk of infecting the wound or of producing an œsophag Girard of Berne twice invaginated the pouch into the œsoph sutured the external aspect of its neck by three layers of sutu procedure was probably followed by atrophy of the pouch, as n tion resulted after these operations. Halstead (*loc. supra cit* a case by a somewhat similar method. The sac was isolated, an string suture of catgut was inserted around its neck. The then invaginated into the œsophagus and the purse-string sut ened. Over this three layers of sutures were inserted, the drawing together the longitudinal muscular layer of the transversely, while the third layer, by which the lower fibr inferior constrictor were brought down so as to cover the œ wound, was introduced at right angles to the first two layers Halstead points out that this method is only adapted to dive small size and to cases where the lumen of the œsophagus is stricted at the level of the diverticulum. In cases where a co of the œsophagus is present immediately below the orifice of ticulum a more elaborate plastic operation may be necessary i overcome it. Richardson (*loc. supra cit.*) met with a case of and as he overcame the œsophageal stenosis by an ingenio operation, a brief account in his own words may be here inser

'The index-finger was passed carefully through the neck of into the œsophagus, and met with a constriction surrounded mucous membrane. As this was done a longitudinal tear of stricted portion resulted, and it was seen that the œsophagus opening had only the diameter of a lead pencil. The tear in th gus was converted into a longitudinal slit by extending the incis wards in the posterior wall through the lower border of the n sac and through the constriction. The pouch was then cut off, considerable crescentic margin of its wall above the openi lower margins of this flap were then brought downwards an together in the gap made by the divided posterior wall of the œ by which method the lumen of the œsophagus was slightly transversely. The subsequent effect of this plastic operatio strated its advantages, for afterwards the probang could be p the stomach without the least obstruction.'

ethod is adopted for suture of the œsophageal wall, there eakage and infection of the cellular tissues of the neck, so ould be provided in every case by the insertion either of or of gauze, packed right down to the external aspect eal wound. The upper half of the wound in the neck with interrupted sutures, but the remainder of the left open for the purposes of drainage.[1] Butlin (*loc.* dealing with this question, recommends that drainage ube should always be employed. He draws atten- portance of opening up the cellular tissue of the neck ssible in the course of such an operation, owing to tic infection travelling downwards into the posterior

tment. With regard to after-treatment, Butlin recom- œsophageal tube should be passed from the mouth into d retained for feeding purposes until the œsophageal closed. As a less desirable alternative a tube may be the stomach through the cervical wound, and retained d is healing by granulation. Though in many of the ions, as in Richardson's case quoted above, a temporary ula resulted, this eventually healed by granulation, and reported to have regained the power of normal deglutition idences of constriction of the œsophagus at the site of n.

CERVICAL ŒSOPHAGOTOMY

s. (i) For the removal of foreign bodies, usually large uch as tooth-plates, which have passed easily through the o become impacted at or within a short distance of the e œsophagus. Killian (*Zeitschrift für Ohrenheilk.*, 1908, tates that in his experience it is at this level that foreign lly retained, unless they are soft and smooth and glide a foreign body pass the upper orifice of the œsophagus, readily traverse the mediastinal portion of the tube, dilatable, yet may become fixed within 2 inches of the

e excision of benign œsophageal growths, *e.g.* polypi, y the snare, aided by œsophagoscopy, is impossible.

less probable than after operation for foreign body when it is isting infection (Richardson).

(iii) For the division of deeply situated fibrous structu
œsophagus, which Gussenbauer has undertaken by this meth

(iv) For the suture and drainage of external wounds,
bullet wounds.

Œsophagoscopy, as introduced by Mikulicz, under cocaine
or a general anæsthetic in children, will enable a surmise as to
zation of an impacted foreign body founded on the symptom
position of pain to be confirmed, and through Killian's tube
majority of smooth regular foreign bodies, *e.g.* coins, may b
by long suitably curved forceps. This method of examinatio
ever, contra-indicated when severe pain in the neck, rise of te
and subcutaneous emphysema are present, suggesting that th
body has perforated the œsophageal wall; it is also inadvisable
be impossible when secondary inflammation, possibly increas
effectual attempts at removal of the foreign body with a p
coin-catcher, has extended to the larynx, causing dyspnœa w
urgently call for œsophagotomy.

Coins, tooth-plates, or any body partially composed of
opaque to X-rays may be localized in the œsophagus by radiogr
comparison of plates exposed at intervals of twenty-four hours
valuable evidence that the foreign body has either become im
is being steadily carried on towards the stomach. Gentle pas
bougie will, when the aids to diagnosis mentioned above are not
indicate at what level the foreign body is lodged, though on me
any obstruction the bougie must be at once withdrawn, as t
force may cause a rigid sharp foreign body to penetrate th
geal wall.

Œsophagotomy is indicated for the removal of a foreign b
is seen by radiography or through Killian's tube to be large and
as removal with forceps is likely to lacerate the œsophagus, w
will be great risk of cellulitis of the neck.

Œsophagotomy is imperative when symptoms of perforati
œsophagus are present, *e.g.* intense pain at the seat of perfor
of temperature, and subcutaneous cervical emphysema; here, a
out above, the passage of Killian's tubes or forceps either for p
diagnosis or treatment is likely to make matters worse. Opera
be quickly undertaken, and the infected cellular tissues of the
be freely opened up, and if possible the point of perforation
discovered. With this object in view it is best to leave the for
in situ, and to cut down upon it by an incision either on the rig
side as may seem most convenient after consideration of an X-r
graph; in such cases suture of the œsophageal wall is inadvi

vound must be packed with gauze and drained. The such conditions is more favourable when the perfora- high up in the cervical part than when it is in the ion.

ting it is well to make certain by a second X-ray exami- foreign body is impacted, as it is remarkable that many n bodies, such as tooth-plates, with sharp projections pass through the entire alimentary canal without danger Lediard (*Clin. Soc. Trans.*, vol. xviii, p. 297) con- rds a case in which œsophagotomy was performed for ought to be impacted below the thyreoid cartilage. An was passed into the stomach, which was thought to he plate as it was withdrawn. As the patient was still w water, cervical œsophagotomy was performed, and a ed from the wound into the stomach. When this was or 'believed that the plate was felt near the cardiac omach, but without giving the impression that the plate d into the stomach.' The plate appeared at the anus om the date of impaction.

the writer's practice examination of a five months' old safety-pin brooch just below the level of the cricoid. forceps was impossible, but a later examination with ved that the brooch had passed into the stomach, and brooch, widely open, was passed without injury to the

time all writers upon this subject have insisted that to give good results, must be promptly undertaken when extraction have failed. The conclusion arrived at by *Bartholomew's Hospital Reports,* vol. xix, p. 67), 'that ittle risk in the operation itself, and that a good fairly expected if the operation is done shortly after ly becomes impacted,' still accurately defines the po-

, ulceration, and suppuration extending under the to the posterior mediastinum are likely to be early com- paction of a foreign body, and when septic infection of d the œsophagus has ensued, operation becomes a much

perations of Surgery, vol. i, p. 724), in discussing the ow low down in the œsophagus a foreign body can be vical œsophagotomy, points out that the most accessible nction with the pharynx, opposite the cricoid cartilage,

and for the first two inches below this point. In his knov lowest point from which a foreign body has been removed l œsophagotomy occurred in the practice of Mr. Bennet May halfpenny, which had ulcerated through the œsophagus and c right bronchus, was removed successfully by œsophagotomy.

Fullerton (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1904) extracted by cervical tomy a halfpenny which was shown by the Röntgen rays to li the third and fourth thoracic vertebræ. At the operation inches below the opening in the œsophagus, to which it was by a bent probe.

Richardson (*Lancet*, 1887, vol. ii, p. 707) contends that a of the œsophagus are in the cadaver accessible either from ab low, for he states that if the left fore and middle fingers are through the cardia by means of a gastrotomy, and passed upv the œsophagus, they can be touched by the right forefinger from above by a cervical œsophagotomy. Richardson p that the lowest three inches of the œsophagus are just within of gastrotomy. He says that the right forefinger, introduce the cervical wound, cannot reach quite so far on account of th and clavicle. He therefore argues that, if the obstruction be 6 inches from the cricoid, an attempt may be made to remov above, but if the distance is more than this gastrotomy shou formed.

The writer's experiments on the cadaver do not at all coi Professor Richardson's conclusions, as in his experience at and usually three, inches of the mid-thoracic portion of the c cannot be explored by the methods detailed above. And fur well to realize, as Richardson himself points out, that deducti from the cadaver by no means hold good in dealing with subject.

Operation. The head is extended over a sand-bag pla the lower cervical vertebræ, the face turned to the right, a cision is made over the lowest part of the left anterior trian may be either an oblique incision along the anterior border c sterno-mastoid, 4 inches long, terminating below at the upper the sternum (Guattani's incision) (see Fig. 261, A); or, as rec by Kocher, a rather longer curved incision, convex downwards in the line of cleavage of the skin of the neck that it crosses th an inch above the sternum (see Fig. 261, B). The superfic platysma, and deep fascia are divided in the line of the skin when the anterior jugular vein is divided between two catgut li necessary. The sterno-mastoid is drawn outwards, and the c

the sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyreoid muscles are re-
s. The pretracheal layer of deep cervical fascia, from
ıle of the thyreoid gland is derived, must now be freely
nd itself being drawn inwards, and the structures within
th held as far outwards as possible by the same retractor
e sterno-mastoid. The lateral surface of the trachea is
hen the anterior surface of the œsophagus will be seen
and projecting rather more to the left.

n identifying the œsophagus may be overcome by the
its red muscular wall or by distending it with a bougie
n the mouth. At this stage of the operation careful dis-
Durham's ele-
sary to isolate
recurrent laryn-
d the inferior
y, which pass
the œsophagus
inwards to lie
between this
the trachea.
ntification, may
nwards and in-
unavoidable the
e divided be-
s.[1] Should the
be impacted at
an now be felt
e cricoid or the
f the trachea,
will determine
e incision to be
extraction: this

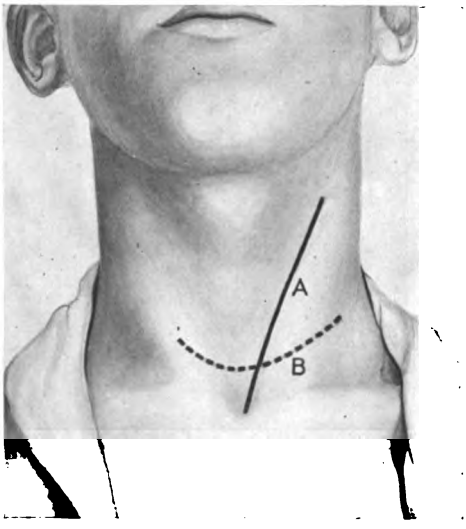


FIG. 261. INCISIONS FOR OPERATIONS UPON ŒSOPHAGUS IN THE NECK. A, Guattani's; B, Kocher's.

l, and, if the foreign body be within the field of opera-
rather placed above than immediately over the foreign
he latter cannot be felt, a longitudinal incision 2 inches
far back as possible upon the œsophageal wall, so as
ecurrent laryngeal nerve, is made upon the end of the
as been withdrawn, and so manipulated as to distend the
his point.

om the muscular tissue of the œsophagus, which is at

[1] sier to dislodge the recurrent laryngeal nerve outwards, as in se quoted below.

first free, is controlled by Spencer Wells's forceps, which ser tractors to keep open the incision in its wall.

It will now usually be possible to remove the foreign body curved forceps if within three or four inches of the opening. well to bear in mind that the very foreign bodies which defea at their removal through the mouth are, owing to their irre often firmly impacted in the walls of the tube. The greatest be exercised in avoiding injury to the œsophageal wall, and foreign body is embedded at both ends in the mucosa it ma division with cutting forceps before it can be dislodged.

Mr. George Lawson (*Clin. Soc. Trans.*, vol. xviii, p. 292 an instructive case of removal of a tooth-plate impacted in the œ Œsophagotomy was performed, but the plate was so firmly fixe wall of the œsophagus by the sharp clips which had retained mouth that it required division with bone-forceps before its rer possible.

When a clean incision has been made in the œsophagus, an no reason to suppose that its walls have been damaged by th body or during its extraction, the margins of the wound brought together with interrupted catgut sutures, so passed include its mucous lining. The deeper parts of the wound mu carefully dried, and the cut surfaces of the omo-hyoid brought Sutures should also be inserted so as to bring together the fascia the upper two thirds of the wound, the lower third being left o drainage tube passed right down to the surface of the œsophag will occupy the lower angle of the skin incision, which otherw be brought together with sutures.

Difficulties. The chief of these are: a short neck in a fa an enlarged thyreoid gland; cellulitis or suppuration alread Firm impaction of the foreign body may increase the danger tion or perforation of the œsophagus, or the foreign body may the reach of the longest available forceps.

After-treatment. Rectal feeding is to be carried ou first forty-eight hours, though sufficient water to ally thirs given by the mouth from the first. Should there be no tendency taken by the mouth to escape through the wound, enemata replaced by milk, meat juice, and other fluids given by the m at the end of the first week the patient may be allowed to t solids. Kocher recommends that the patient be fed throu œsophageal tube passed from the wound and retained in pos Lawson, quoted above, left his wound completely unsutured the patient for three weeks through an œsophageal tube. In

desirability of suturing the œsophagus he draws attention to the ation of the wound which results from the constant flow of saliva it, and which may, as in his case, produce some local cellulitis.

Dangers. The chief immediate danger is septic infection of the ues of the neck owing to leakage from the œsophagus, sometimes lting in mediastinitis or septicæmia. This may be best avoided by establishment of drainage in all doubtful cases.

CERVICAL ŒSOPHAGOSTOMY

Indications. The establishment of a permanent opening into the phagus may be undertaken as a palliative operation for the relief of phagia due to obstruction from—

(i) An epitheliomatous growth at the junction of the œsophagus with pharynx; or

(ii) Cicatricial stenosis, the result of syphilitic or traumatic ulcera- at the same level.

At the present time this operation has fallen into disuse and has been aced by gastrostomy, owing (1) to the greater difficulty of cervical phagostomy and the danger of injury to important structures, such he recurrent laryngeal nerve; (2) the difficulty of making the arti- l orifice so far below the growth that it may not become involved at ter date; (3) the constant discomfort to the patient from saliva ing over the wound, and the risk of local infection of the cellular ue from this source.

Operation. This is carried out exactly as has been detailed above ne performance of cervical œsophagotomy, but after the œsophagus been opened its margins are secured to the edges of the skin wound numerous interrupted sutures, or a rubber tube is inserted and wound packed with gauze.

After-treatment. The after-treatment is similar, except that on cessation of rectal alimentation fluids are passed into the stomach ugh a long œsophageal tube passed downwards from the wound.

CERVICAL ŒSOPHAGECTOMY

Indications. (i) This operation may be called for for the removal localized growth in the cervical portion of the œsophagus.

(ii) It may have to be undertaken as part of the operation of ngectomy when a malignant growth primarily affecting the larynx involved the œsophagus.

(iii) It has also been carried out when the œsophagus has been nd involved in malignant tumours of the thyreoid gland.

In this article operation for cases of primary epithelioma of phagus alone will be considered, and when the comparatively la ber of conditions requiring partial œsophagectomy as part of operation are excluded, it will be found to have a very narrow ap For clinically it is true that by the time that the cardinal syn œsophageal malignant disease, dysphagia, is so marked as to patient to come for treatment the growth is so extensive that t lumen of the tube is usually involved for so considerable a dist its radical removal is impossible.

Acting upon experiments made by Billroth on dogs, Kapp two unsuccessful attempts to carry out the operation in 1875-6, b not until 1887 that the operation was successfully performe Czerny removed 6 centimetres of the whole circumference of the gus for carcinoma.

Operation. A gastrostomy should be done as a prelim resection of the œsophagus, so that the patient may be built up, to prevent wound soiling about resected area. The cervical p the œsophagus is exposed by the same method as has been det œsophagotomy (see Fig. 261), but it will often be necessary the left sterno-hyoid and sterno-thyreoid muscles, as well as hyoid. When the œsophagus is reached, its posterior aspect detached from the prevertebral structures with a blunt dissect which it will usually be possible to locate the growth and to limits: if, however, this cannot be done, it may be necessary to œsophagus for this purpose. Careful dissection is necessary to the trachea from the anterior œsophageal wall, and in doing t caution must be exercised, so as to avoid injury to the recurrent nerves on both sides. When the whole circumference of the œ has been isolated, it is cut through at least half an inch below the and when there is any doubt as to the exact level to which it is it will be wise to sacrifice additional tissue in order to render re less probable, even though by doing so greater difficulty will rienced in carrying out the later stages of the operation. The w cumference of the œsophagus is now isolated and the ring-like occupied by the growth removed by dividing the œsophagus w and below the growth.

If the œsophagus has, as is always desirable, been divided of the growth that recurrence is unlikely, it is almost always in to restore the œsophageal channel, and therefore it is often nec bring the cut ends to the surface. Great difficulty may be exp in suturing the lower end to the skin, both on account of its s and of the fact that the sutures are not well held by the œsophag

ive Surgery of Malignant Disease, p. 223) points out that can be done stenosis of the œsophageal fistulous opening ely; whereas when the œsophagus cannot be drawn to the n stenosis is inevitable. Kocher suggests the employment be, retained in position during the cicatrization of the n this is unlikely to prevent stenosis.

De Quervain, in 1899, collected fourteen cases in which œsophagus had been removed, and though several of these ed by implication of adjacent important structures, such , larynx, thyreoid gland, &c., the immediate mortality age, shock, posterior mediastinitis, and septic pneumonia ows that the immediate risks are excessively grave. In recurrence rapidly followed in six of the other cases, and urvived the operation more than thirteen months. Fur- remembered that the patient's life, even if prolonged for by such an operation, is one of considerable discomfort, xtreme probability of stenosis of the œsophageal opening ch must render the life of the patient one of great misery. lso arise in connexion with the upper end of the œsopha- ivary fistula is likely to form, which, as in a case reported n, tends to close and to cause infection of the cellular repeated dilatation with bougies may be necessary for

TIONS UPON THORACIC ŒSOPHAGUS

et a number of problems confront the surgeon in resec- oracic œsophagus for carcinoma. The fact that after work by such men as Sauerbruch, Mikulicz, Rehn, Torek, nd others, but one successful resection has been reported idence of the operative difficulties that present them-

ce which surgeons feel in attacking a carcinoma of the agus has been due to the unsatisfactory solution of these loration of the pleural sac has only within very recent uently attempted. Operative shock has been extremely e advent of intra-tracheal insufflation in 1909 there was method of maintaining differential pressure save by chamber of Sauerbruch. No really satisfactory method proximal stump with the stomach has been devised. ma is the usual indication for the operation, and most the surgeon are so far advanced as to be beyond the e cure.

There are two methods of approach to the thoracic œ
the trans-mediastinal route and the trans-pleural route. T
mediastinal route as suggested by Ach and Rehn, while not
at present, still has its adherents. The chief object of this
been the avoidance of the pleural sac. Nevertheless accident
of the pleura has been the catastrophe most feared in this
and has been the commonest cause of death, either through
collapse or suppurative pleuritis.

The second and usual method of approach is the trans-ple
This method has been made possible by the use of intra-trache
tion first suggested by Meltzer and Auer. Since it is now p
every clinic to possess a relatively simple apparatus for n
positive intra-pulmonary pressure in the open chest, the tr
route is by far the better of the two. First, it offers by fa
means of exposure of the entire thoracic cavity; second, it
ideal means of respiratory control.

TRANS-MEDIASTINAL OPERATIONS UPON ŒSOPHAGUS

ŒSOPHAGOTOMY

Indications. The indications for œsophagotomy are:—

(i) The presence of a foreign body so fixed within the th
tion of the œsophagus that it cannot be removed through Kil
and at such a level that it cannot be reached either from
cervical œsophagotomy or from below by gastrotomy.

The exact localization of an impacted foreign body or of a
stricture within this tube is now more definite, owing to the
use of Killian's method of œsophagoscopy, and in many cases
bodies help may be obtained by means of an X-ray photogra

If Richardson's deductions (see p. 532) from his experim
cadaver are correct, it is clear that mediastinal œsophagoto
removal of foreign bodies has very little place in surgery, as t
and difficulties of this operation far outweigh those of cervic
gotomy or of gastrotomy. But it seems probable that
œsophagotomy would be necessary for the removal of a fo
impacted between a point 4 inches below the cricoid and a
inches above the cardiac orifice, that is, more than 10 and less
inches from the teeth. It is fortunate that this, the least acc
tion of the œsophagus, corresponding to the bodies of the fo
and sixth dorsal vertebræ, is very rarely indeed the site of in
a foreign body, for, as pointed out above, if it passes the narr

e tube opposite the cricoid it will usually pass freely down to the of the diaphragm.

i) The removal of a benign œsophageal growth, *e.g.* polypus.

ne steps of the operation are those of the first stages of œsophagec- (*vide infra*).

ŒSOPHAGECTOMY

ndications. This operation may rarely be required for the re- of œsophageal epithelioma, and has been carried out by this route hn and others: hitherto no successful case has been recorded, but vell to reserve judgment on the value of these procedures, as the ry of the mediastina is still in its infancy.

ne technique of these operations was first described by Nasiloff 30, and his method was adopted by Quénu and Hartmann in 1891. off suggests that the upper part of the œsophagus is more easily ed on the left side, but on the right in the lower part of its ; while Potarca, after carefully studying the technique, advocated ion upon the right side only because of the danger and difficulty aling with the aorta on the left, though the way in which the pleura naturally dips behind the œsophagus makes damage of ructure more likely when an operation is carried out on the right Rehn, in performing this operation on the living subject, fol- Potarca's route through the right thoracic wall. Bryant (*Trans. ner. Surg. Assoc.*, 1895) states that the œsophagus should only be ed on the left side above the aortic arch; below this point he es it on the right, and considers that below the ninth dorsal verte- is not accessible to surgical interference.

inical experience has shown that cases of œsophageal malignant h which can be dealt with radically by excision of the growth very occur. Sauerbruch (*Verhandl. d. Deutsch. Ges. f. Chir.*, 1905, xxiv, p. 140), after experimental operations upon dogs, is of n that the anatomical conditions in man are more favourable than se animals. The results of operation would also be influenced by ture of the obstruction, especially if it were carcinomatous. Statis- ually divide œsophageal carcinoma into that of the upper, median, wer third of the œsophagus. From an investigation of 17,000 nortem inspections at Breslau, he found that during twenty-two 204 were carcinoma of the œsophagus, 26 being in the cervical por- nd 163 in the thoracic portion, exclusive of the cardia. Of the 117 were between the hilus of the lung and the cardia, 3 involved tire œsophagus, and in 12 the site was not stated. Thus, out of 192 of carcinoma, 117, that is to say 60%, were favourable for opera-

tion, at least so far as position was concerned, and 70, that is absolutely favourable, as Sauerbruch's invagination operation sible. The results are naturally influenced by the general co the patient, and above all by the presence of adhesions or He points out, however, that pathological anatomy and statist that metastases occur comparatively late in œsophageal carc when they do occur are very numerous and affect the posteri tinal glands, so that operative interference is of very little use

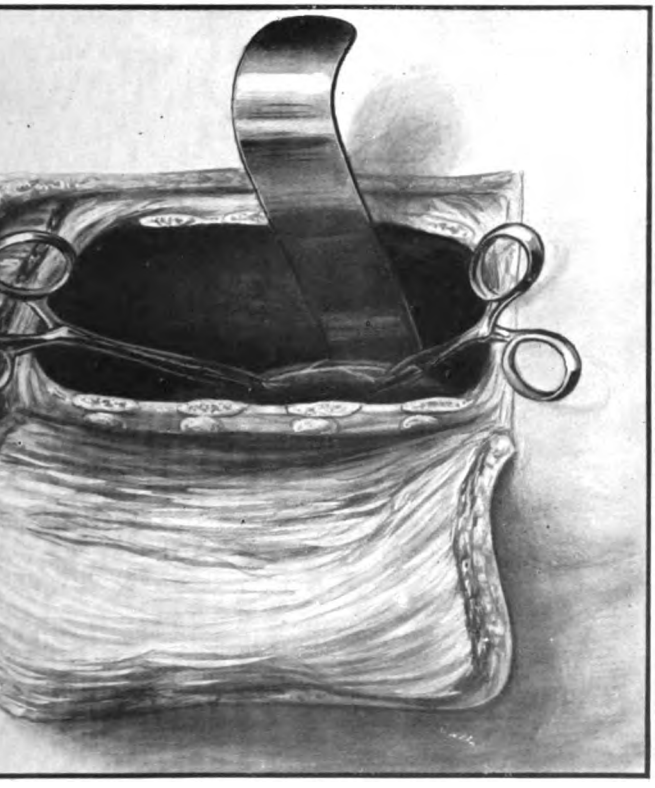
Operation. The patient is anæsthetized, and placed in prone position on the left side. A longitudinal incision 8 i is made midway between the spines of the vertebræ and the in of the right scapula (see Fig. 262). This is carried down t and a rectangular flap, fashioned by carrying horizontal inci the two ends of the vertical incision inwards to the mid-line, inwards. The exposed ribs are resected subperiosteally within of the wound, 2 to 3 inches being removed from each. I points out that easier access to the posterior mediastinum obtained by resecting the transverse processes of the cor vertebræ, and completely removing the posterior portion o from the heads outwards. Kocher considers that it is usually to resect more than four ribs, the second to the seventh or the the ninth according to the situation of the disease, and adv inches of these ribs be resected subperiosteally.

Sauerbruch ('Die Chirurgie des Brustteils der Speiseröhre *zur klinischen Chirurgie,* 1905, vol. xlvi, p. 405) recomme alternative a long intercostal incision, as giving adequate avoiding severe hæmorrhage and damage to nerves and m chief disadvantage would appear to be that it entails manip the deeply seated œsophagus through a narrow wound; th partly avoided by the use of Mikulicz's rib-retractor.

After dividing the intercostal muscles the intercostal v nerves must be defined, and the former divided between ligat parietal pleura should now be freely exposed, and its attachm the heads of the ribs and upon the lateral surfaces of the vert fully separated outwards with the finger or with a blunt i In doing this it must be remembered that the sympathetic ch down over the heads of the ribs, and great care must be take this structure.

As the posterior surface of the œsophagus is exposed, the v major, with the right vagus, comes into view, and the latte pulled aside and the vein ligatured. The œsophagus, unless a surrounding structures, can now by further careful dissection

l, and if the operation has been undertaken for the re-
eign body it should now be possible to locate it. For the
removal the œsophageal wall is incised, and the foreign
; in doing this branches of the vagi must be carefully
be necessary to excise a portion of the œsophageal wall for



RANS-MEDIASTINAL ŒSOPHAGECTOMY. Parts of seventh, eighth, right ribs resected; œsophagus pulled up with Spencer Wells's

a malignant tumour, this may now be done, when both
ophagus must be drawn into the wound, and drained by
er tubes carefully sutured in position. The lower end of
may be used for feeding purposes, and for this a long
be should be passed through it down into the stomach.
o its depth from the surface of the thoracic wall, this be
racticable, gastrostomy should be undertaken.

Deutsch. Med. Wochenschrift, April 14, 1904) drew atten-

tion to the difficulty of reuniting the two ends after resection
lowing words: ' The straight muscular tube which we call the
is but little stretchable; hence, even simple division and reunit
cut ends is not easily accomplished, as the œsophagus is sligl
ened thereby, and the consequent tension is apt to cause the di
to retract. In resections, of course, this difficulty is far greate

He pointed out that resection of the lower portion is far e
resection of the upper portion of the œsophagus, for the reas
the former the cardiac portion, as well as the fundus of the sto
be drawn up through the enlarged orifice in the diaphragm
to allow it to be sutured to the upper part of the tube so a
up for the defect caused by the resection. Again, different
are required in his opinion for resections in these positions, fo
tion of the upper thoracic portion of the œsophagus he recomm
terior thoracotomy in the third to the fifth intercostal spac
the tube is exposed behind the hilum of the lung, and the ve
major, which crosses the œsophagus at this level, must be pu
or may require to be doubly ligatured after division.

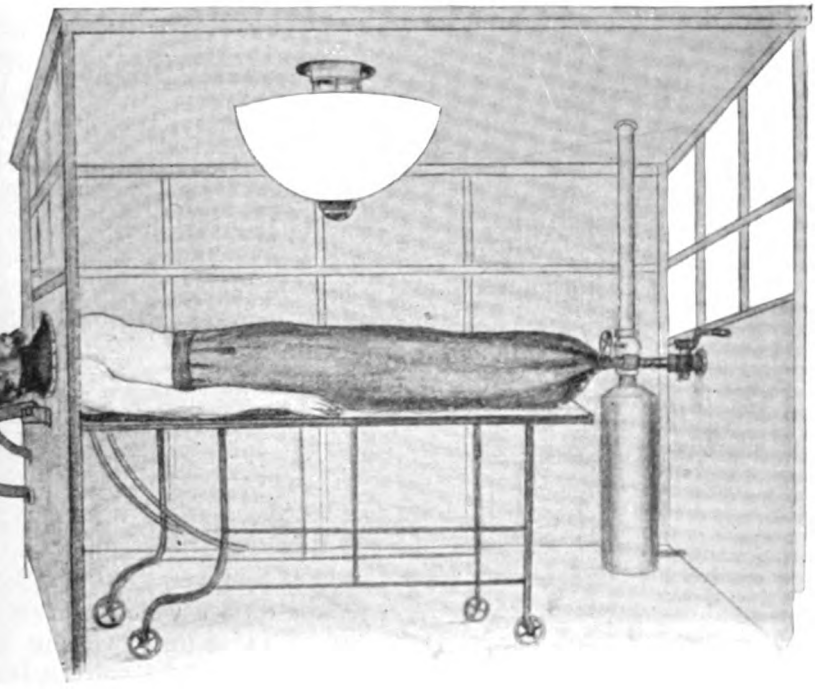
Although it is feasible to stretch the two ends of the resecte
gus so as to perform an anastomosis, it was, in his opinion
whether the sutures would hold on account of tension. Miku
fore, no longer attempted to reunite the œsophagus after high
but closed the gastric end and dropped it back into the woun
patient was fed by means of a gastrostomy previously carried
pharyngeal end of the œsophagus was pulled out through a
made along the anterior border of the left sterno-mastoid, wh
stated, is easily done because it is only loosely held by connec
at this level; the wounds in the thorax and neck were now c
the upper end of the œsophagus was drawn downwards unde
of skin and fixed to a new incision over the second intercostal s
the manner of a Frank's gastrostomy: von Mikulicz intende
this latter to the stomach so that mouth-feeding might be agai
For resection of a growth in the lower end of the œsophagu
intercostal thoracotomy in the fifth or sixth space was recomm

Up to 1905 three resections carried out in Sauerbruch's c
the Breslau Clinic had ended fatally, and this writer (*Journal
Med. Assoc.*, Sept., 1908) says that he has employed this meth
fatal cases.

Sauerbruch (*München. Med. Wochenschr.*, 1906, vol. liii,
further elaborated the methods of operation by experiments
These experiments and five operations performed on the human
the resection of œsophageal carcinomata were all carried

ve thoracic pressure within his pneumatic chamber (see Fig. 263). ıcision was placed over the fifth or seventh intercostal space, and ollowed by removal of the adjacent ribs or their temporary resec- The pleura was widely opened and the growth exposed after the ıad been carefully isolated.

xperimentally Sauerbruch has devised two operations, which will dicated under different conditions. In the first an œsophago- stomy with a Murphy's button is performed, after which the



. 263. SAUERBRUCH'S CHAMBER. By permission of Dr. Sauerbruch.

ed portion of the œsophagus is resected. In the second operation, ally suitable for growths near the cardiac end of the œsophagus, fected portion of this tube is invaginated into the stomach, and d in this position by sutures connecting the circumference of the agus above the growth to the stomach-wall. At a second operation stomy is performed, and the invaginated portion of the œsophagus g the malignant tumour is excised.

the first five operations performed by Sauerbruch, all of which fatally, two cases, in which inoperable carcinoma was present, were icated by perforation of the malignant growth, owing to which

an empyema resulted, with death in fourteen days; in a thi
cause of death was undiscovered. A fourth operation consi
section of the lower portion of the œsophagus for carcino
cardia. In a fifth case, in which there was a large tumour of
resection was abandoned owing to the general condition of
and anastomosis performed, the patient dying twenty-four
the operation. Sauerbruch states that during the entire
operation the pulse and respiration remained normal.

Dangers and difficulties. *Hæmorrhage.* During the
the thoracic wall this will be severe, and must be dealt with b
seizing all bleeding points with Spencer Wells's forceps; the
arteries must be taken up and ligatured before they are divid
ing from one of the venæ azygoi or from a tributary may be t
on account of the depth of the wound, and in securing these w
care must be exercised that only the bleeding vessel is taken
wise damage to important structures, such as the thoracic
vagi, may result.

Injury to the Pleura. This is by far the most important
these trans-mediastinal operations, and the risks of injury t
pleura will be appreciated when it is borne in mind that it i
for the patient to lie in the semi-prone position on the left si
while movements of the left lung are impaired entry of air int
pleura may be followed by an immediately fatal issue. For
von Mikulicz made use of Sauerbruch's negative air-pressur
and his example has been followed by the general use of
apparatus in the performance of such operations.

This chamber (see Fig. 263) is large enough to receive f
if required, and in it the operator works at a negative air-p
3 to 5 millimetres of mercury, which is increased to 7 or 8 m
the close of the operation. According to Sauerbruch, opinion
favour of decreasing the thoracic pressure, the bronchial pressu
ing normal, as opposed to the alternative of increasing the pres
the lungs while the thoracic cavity is exposed to normal a
pressure as is done in most physiological experiments. (F
interesting details see Sauerbruch, 'Zur Pathologie des offene
thorax und die Grundlage meines Verfahrens zu seiner Aus
Mitteilungen aus den Grenzgebieten der Medizin und Chiru
vol. xiii, p. 461.)

Empyema and infection of the mediastinal cellular tissue
ance of injury to the pleura and drainage in all cases are the
of avoiding the above, but it must be borne in mind in esti
risks of these operations that the pleura has little of the t

ercised by the peritoneum of limiting infection by the
on of adhesions, so that even when drainage is employed
be carried in from without and an empyema may result.

ons. Several ingenious plastic operations have been de-
to obviate the discomfort of a permanent gastric fistula
of the œsophagus, and of these the following are the
e.

. Méd., January 23, 1907) operated upon a child suffering
tenosis of the œsophagus which had resisted all attempts
dilatation. He freed a sufficiently long portion of the
ligatured four to five arteries leading to it at suitable
the intestine. Owing to the conditions of vascular supply
the blood was not cut off from it, but was received from
. The portion of intestine was sufficiently long to be
abdominal wound. The anal end of the portion of jeju-
rted into the wall of the stomach, the upper end being
the abdominal wound. The skin of the thorax was then
rom a longitudinal incision over the upper end of the
ne portion of jejunum drawn through the cutaneous bridge
minal wound to the wound above. The twisted end of the
utured to the skin in the thoracic wound, and nourishment
an œsophageal tube. There was always good pulsation
supplying the jejunum. The abdominal fascia and rectus
re slightly cut so as to allow plenty of room for the
intestine, and the skin wound was closed. The result
e, the portion of intestine being seen to contract under
there was no difficulty in suturing the œsophagus to the
he portion of jejunum at a later operation.

ma of the œsophagus Bircher (*Centralb. f. Chir.*, 1907,
1479) devised another procedure, in order to restore the
limentary canal by forming an artificial œsophagus. He
operation in a very emaciated woman with stenosis of the
centimetres below the teeth: the patient's history pointed
e of carcinoma. Two parallel skin incisions were made,
axillary region to the costal margin, that on the left being
ide the median line, while the right one lay just inside the
he margins of this median strip of skin were turned over
interrupted sutures, forming a tube covered internally by
e skin on each side of the turned-over portion was under-
edges approximated and sutured over this tube, so that it
ompletely by skin, and had an opening only above and

Three days later the patency of the tube was tested, and it to allow of the passage of a very large stream of water. Som tion occurred, and a sinus formed over the clavicle, leading into formed œsophagus, and six weeks later there was a gastric margins of which were adherent to the lower opening of the Secondary sutures were therefore placed in the newly formed the clavicle, and the skin over the fistula sutured. The s the œsophageal tube was impermeable. A week later thin flui ment was introduced into the artificial œsophagus from a entered the stomach without difficulty. The external skin su the tube had to be removed owing to tension, the sutures a fistula between the stomach and artificial œsophagus being we Three days later pulmonary embolism occurred, terminati *Post-mortem examination* showed that the sutures were not some points in the artificial œsophagus, and that there were s ings through which water flowed. Death was due to carcino œsophagus, mesentery, and uterus, embolism of the right artery, œdema of the lung, and degeneration of the heart. case in which the procedure was employed the patient also suc intercurrent complications. Failing this, definite closure of might have been obtained by secondary operation and union established with the œsophagus, so that an artificial œsopha have been formed from skin. Bircher thinks that though perist not be obtained in the artificial tube, fluids would easily pass and he believes that eventually it might be possible to form a œsophagus in this way, especially if strict asepsis were maintai

ŒSOPHAGO-PLICATION

Reisinger (*Verhandl. d. Deutsch. Ges. f. Chir.*, 1907, vol 86) performed the following operation on a patient in whom of the œsophagus was diagnosed:—

The X-rays showed that almost the entire thoracic port œsophagus was enormously dilated. The posterior mediast opened from the right side, according to the method of Rehn and Bryant. A flap of skin and muscle was formed, with its the spinous processes of the third to the eighth thoracic ver its apex extending to the median border of the scapula. Porti fourth to the seventh ribs, 6 to 7 centimetres in length, wer the intercostal musculature removed, and the pleura loosened vertebral column. Practically the entire thoracic portion of th gus was laid bare, carefully avoiding injury to the neighbou tures, especially the pleura, and the œsophagus was seen as an e

ed thick-walled tube. An attempt was made to carry out œsophago-tion by folding the tube longitudinally so as to reduce its calibre, the collapsed condition of the patient rendered it necessary to rupt the operation. A few weeks later the œsophagus was freed its adhesions, and narrowed by cutting away a longitudinal strip s wall, and subsequently suturing the aperture in the tube by two of sutures. The strip removed was 15 centimetres in length, and d in width from 2 to 3 centimetres. Considerable improvement e condition of the patient resulted from the operation, and he was to take solid and fluid nourishment without pain or any feeling pression.

TRANS-PLEURAL OPERATIONS UPON THE ŒSOPHAGUS

he only successful case of resection of the œsophagus has been ted by Torek. He succeeded in resecting a carcinoma by a trans-al œsophagectomy. The operation was done under intra-tracheal lation.

ntra-tracheal insufflation consists in introducing ether vapour under sion of 20 to 30 mm. into the main bronchus by means of a tracheal ter inserted down to the bifurcation. The apparatus consists essen- of an air pump, an apparatus for vapourizing ether, and a tracheal ter connected to the latter by means of a rubber tubing. The entire ratus is very simple. After the patient has been anæsthetized in sual manner, the catheter is introduced by means of a Jackson goscope.

he patient is now put in position for the operation. Both Richter Torek emphasize the importance of approach from the right side e the lesion is in the upper portion of the œsophagus. Torek points he fact that the œsophagus stands out more prominently on the right on the left, because the right pleura partly covers it and the aorta t in the way. But Torek also draws attention to the fact that ach to the lower third of the œsophagus from the right side is sible because of the liver. When in doubt as to the exact location e lesion he makes a left-sided incision.

he operation is done in two stages. First, either a Witzel or a r gastrostomy is done; and second, the resection is performed. A inary abdominal exploration for metastases precedes the gastros-

The patient is now placed upon his side; if it be on the right, the rm is held upward and forward to pull the scapula out of the line ision. The patient is held in this position by the use of sandbags.

Torek makes the following incision, which he feels is th
ways to be used in exploration of the thorax. It is made in th
intercostal space and is carried over the entire length of the s
its posterior end it is carried vertically upward to the third i
(see Fig. 264). The skin flap is turned backward and protec
fully by towels pinned to the wound edges. Great care mus

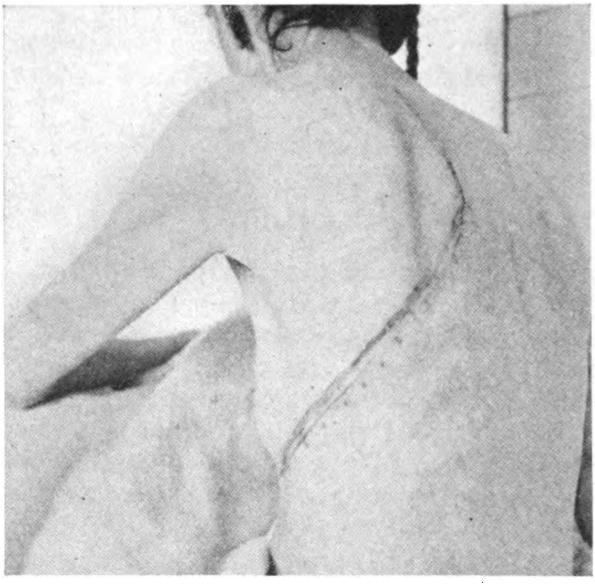


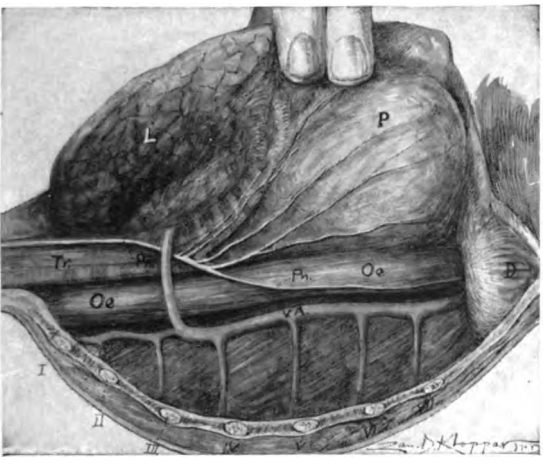
FIG. 264. SKIN INCISION. The dark line is a nitrate of silver mark
day before operation. (*Torek.*)

to avoid soiling so large a wound surface. The fourth, fif
and seventh ribs are resected, the pleura opened and the wounc
retracted by means of a rib spreader. By means of upward tr
the ribs and gauze pressure, Richter performs this stage of t
tion without the use of a single clamp and with no bleeding.
resection is completed, the bleeding intercostals are clamped an
This saves time.

The thorax is now exposed. Quoting Richter: 'The stru
the field of operation are readily defined. The gullet stands o
nently; the pneumogastric nerve is plainly visible. It comes dc
above in a single trunk and lies behind the azygos vein just as
turns in to meet the vena cava. Just below the azygos anter
vides into numerous branches much after the manner of the pes
of the facial nerve. Viewing the parts as seen during the opera

ted, the plexus so formed lies to the right, the ascending gos to the left and the transverse part of the azygos above eration. From the pneumogastric plexus, and made up of main trunk of the pneumogastric dips down to the side (see Fig. 265).

s now freed from adhesions, and laid over toward the he mediastinum. Then, qutoing Torek, ' the œsophagus is



ORMAL STRUCTURES AS SEEN WITH LUNG DRAWN FORWARD AND ., lung; P, pericardium; Tr, trachea; Oe, œsophagus; Pn, pneu- ; VA, vena azygos; I, II, III, etc., ribs. (*Richter.*)

slight bulging of the parietal pleura to the side of the leura and connective tissue covering the œsophagus are some portion where it is not involved, and the œsophagus its bed. A tape or strip of gauze is drawn through under- serves as a handle to draw the œsophagus forward or to the dissection proceeds (see Fig. 266).

phagus is liberated from the surrounding structures all o the upper thoracic aperture and all the way down to , except in cases where the tumour is situated rather the diaphragmatic end need not be liberated. To deter- nt of the dissection of the diaphragmatic end, we decide below the tumour the œsophagus is to be divided and cm. more for the invagination of the stump. The dis- done with the aid of a blunt instrument like Kocher's or a long Mayo dissecting scissors, which is inserted be- phagus and the tissues lying over it. The fact that some

vagus branches crossing the œsophagus must be divided in
of this procedure need not deter the surgeon.'

At this point it becomes necessary to digress for a n

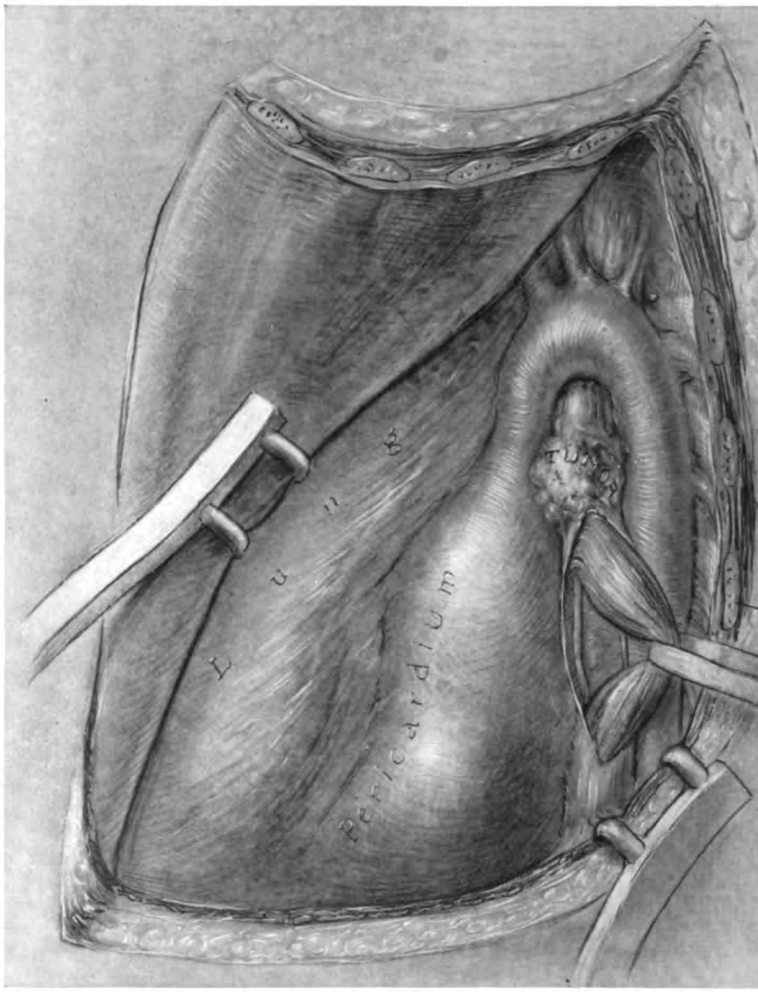
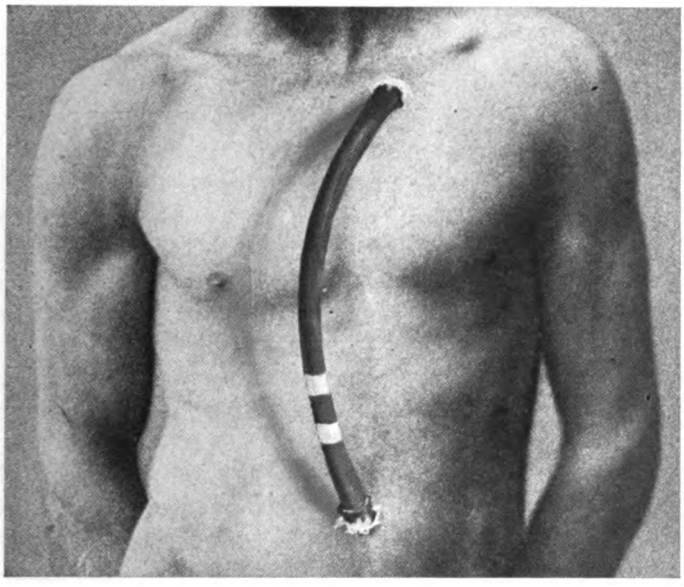


FIG. 266. BEGINNING OF DISSECTION OF THE ŒSOPHAGUS. After
the pleura covering it the œsophagus is lifted out of its bed and hel
passed underneath it. The two vagi have been detached. The tum
below the arch of the aorta. The lung is fairly well collapsed. (

emphasize the difference between the œsophagus and the intes
latter being covered by a serous coat, a plastic exudate in
follows division and end-to-end union and prevents leakage.

Not so with the œsophagus; even though the resected ends can ly be brought together, end-to-end union must be attained by ac- e apposition of the cut mucosa and muscularis, a very difficult to do. A suppurative pleuritis or mediastinitis has been the usual t of this procedure.

he dissection of that part of the œsophagus lying beneath the aortic is the most difficult. The œsophagus crosses the left bronchus at oint and it must be freed from both by blunt dissection. Great care be used not to kink the aortic arch because of the danger of a



. 267. TUBE CONNECTING LOWER END OF ŒSOPHAGUS WITH GASTROSTOMY G. The two light stripes on the rubber tube are remnants of adhesive which were removed before taking the picture. (*Torek.*)

n cardiac collapse. At the level of the upper thoracic aperture nger or dissecting instrument is pushed by blunt dissection until nterior border of the sterno-mastoid muscle is reached. At this an incision is made through which the œsophagus is afterward pulled.

fter a double ligation has been done, the œsophagus is divided he end of the lower stump invaginated in the usual manner. the tumour is close to the diaphragm the cardiac end of the ch may have to be used to cover in the stump should the latter e long enough.

The distal end, the mucous edge having first been caute drawn up and out through the neck wound. This is read because the œsophagus is only supported by loose connective its pharyngeal end. The œsophagus is brought up by means passed down through the skin wound and tied at its end.

The chest is now closed by bringing the ribs together by Sauerbruch's pericostal sutures, the sutures either going ar ribs or through them. Intra-pulmonary pressure should be su increased during the last stages of the closure to keep the lun tact with the chest wall. A slight pneumothorax will do After the free end of the œsophagus has thoroughly healed to the upper end of a gastrostomy tube is inserted into it when th wishes to take nourishment (see Fig. 267). During the act lowing a little pressure is brought to bear on the skin at one si tube to prevent leakage. The swallowed food passes from the œ into the rubber tube and thus into the stomach.

Torek closes the pleura without drainage. At this point with Willy Meyer, who feels that the pleura should always be Meyer attributes the death of his seventh case directly to lack age. Sauerbruch, who describes and has done the same c closes the pleura without drainage.

A plastic procedure worthy of mention for repair of defec lower end of the œsophagus is the Beck-Jianu operation. This in constructing a tube from the greater curvature of the stomac ing it through an opening in the diaphragm, and uniting it to t mal portion of the œsophagus. No living case following cedure has as yet been reported.

SECTION VI

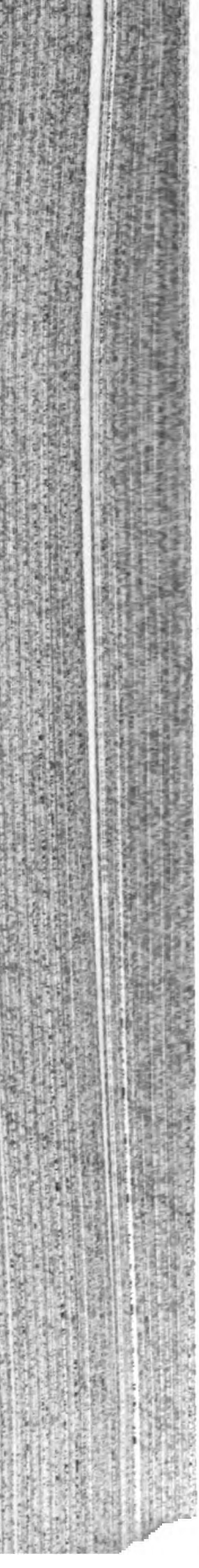
TIONS UPON THE STOMACH AND INTESTINES

PART I

RATIONS UPON THE STOMACH

BY

MOYNIHAN, M.S. (Lond.), F.R.C.S. (Eng.)
Lieutenant-Colonel R.A.M.C.(T.)
Surgeon to the Leeds General Infirmary



CHAPTER I

ATION AND AFTER-TREATMENT OF PATIENTS TED UPON FOR DISEASES OF THE STOMACH

gnificant part of the successful treatment of patients operated iseases of the stomach depends upon the care exercised in tion and in the conduct of the case subsequent to operation.

PREPARATION OF THE PATIENT

ual precautions necessary to secure asepsis are more than ary here. It is not seldom that one hears the remark that the or error' is greater in abdominal surgery than it is in the other parts. And it is quite true that the peritoneum has acity for dealing with any infection introduced into it. But be no question that the more sedulously the details of an ration are observed, the speedier is the recovery of the Many of the troublesome after-effects of an abdominal opera- flatulence, hiccough, vomiting—are due to infection. They e of a slight peritoneal response to an infection. The patient such an operation as gastro-enterostomy has been performed er almost no discomfort after he has recovered from the There should be no pain except a 'catch' in the wound g or sneezing.

ef infection in an operation comes from the patient's skin. carefully prepared it may be rendered sterile, so that a little e skin snipped away at the beginning of the operation, and to a culture-medium, displays no evidence of infection. But tion of the skin, similarly conducted, at the middle or end ation will show that infection is present. The surface of the ected from the depths. It is my practice therefore always e skin by fixing up to the edges of the wound with a special 'tetra' material, which consists of many layers of com- uze. When the stomach or omentum is taken from the here is no chance of any infection occurring from contact kin.

great importance to secure before operation the cleanliness nach and the jejunum. Some of the cases submitted to

gastrectomy or gastro-enterostomy have enormously enlarged in which food lies stagnant. The discharge from an ulcer or makes such retained material foul and intensely infectious. cases, indeed in all cases, every endeavour should be made stomach thoroughly clean before the abdomen is opened. Lava this end more certainly than anything else. The stomach, if present, is washed out twice a day for several days, and pains are spent on each occasion. It may be necessary to gallons of fluid—sterilized saline solution is the best—before returns clear. If there be no evidence of stasis the stomach n washed more than twice, once twenty-four hours before the and the second time an hour before. The opportunity should to give test-meals, when the stomach is washed, for purposes of tion. Some of the patients who have suffered long from vo very thin, emaciated, parched for lack of water. In them the administration of saline solution by the rectum, or hypodermi prove very beneficial. It is most important also to attend t dition of the patient's mouth. In almost all cases of stomac the mouth is in an unsatisfactory condition; indeed oral improbably plays a part in the causation of many organic disea stomach or intestine. The teeth should be thoroughly clean times daily, and a fragrant mouth-wash used at frequent inte

SUTURE OF THE ABDOMINAL WOUND

A few transverse scratches are made with a fine needle in t right angles to the line of the intended incision. The abdomin is carried through the right rectus muscle in gastro-enteroston middle line usually for gastrectomy. The fibres of the rectus the nerves being preserved, if possible, or the whole belly of t is displaced outwards. As soon as the peritoneum is reached, a it is opened, 'tetra' cloths are fixed over the edges of the w fixed at each side and at each end by the special forceps mad by Down Bros. The wound is sutured in several layers. A ous catgut stitch is taken from one end of the wound to t picking up the posterior sheath of the rectus and the peritoneum The needle is then laid aside. Then with a long straight nee rupted sutures of silkworm-gut are passed through skin a muscle on each side. The needle is introduced on one side an out on the other through one of the faint scratches made in before the incision was started. About six or eight of thes are passed, and the ends of all are then seized by a clip on

rrying the catgut suture, which has just been laid aside, is p, and is made to return along the incision; it now picks r sheath of the rectus on each side. On the left side it is out ½ inch from the cut edge of the sheath, and is brought of the cut margin; it therefore picks up a transverse piece r sheath. On the right side the needle passes from the perficial aspect of the sheath. On pulling the suture tight d that the right edge of the fascia overlaps the left edge. approximated therefore by flat surfaces, and not by edges makes for sounder healing. When the end of the wound catgut is tied to the original end of the suture which had

Then at each end of the skin incision a small volsella is e or two along the wound, bringing the scratches accurately row of Michel's clips are then put in and the skin edges y brought into contact. The silkworm-gut sutures are er loosely, and cut short. The dressing I use consists of gauze laid along the wound (the skin being previously vith spirit). Over this a large square of gauze is placed; ut gauze bandage is the best. This bandage is then fixed a solution of formalin and gelatine applied hot. In a ounce of gelatine (20% in water) has been previously hree successive days by heating to 100° C. Just before ube is put to stand in very hot water until the gelatine To it then are added ♏ 20 of a 4% solution of formalin. s then rapidly applied to the gauze bandage, which it at- o the skin. The dressing dries in about one minute; over of wool is applied to prevent the blankets or the clothes to it. No bandages are used. I never use any abdominal unless a drainage tube is left in the wound. The dressing ed is very comfortable; it covers only the wound, and of the abdomen open to inspection or palpation.

el's clips are removed in forty-eight hours. The deep n ten days or longer according to the case. In malignant llow them to remain for three weeks.

AFTER-TREATMENT

s the operation has been completed the patient is placed d, lying on the back with one pillow. After an hour or that is as the effect of the anæsthetic is passing off, the ped up in bed with a bed-rest or five or six pillows. This e of great comfort to the patient, but it is difficult to

maintain. There is a very marked tendency, for a heavy ticularly, to slide down in the bed. A most useful device f the patient in the sitting position is that suggested by Dr. Cairn A hard round pillow covered with mackintosh and a pil placed beneath the patient's thighs, immediately below the To each end of this pillow a stout strap is attached, termin

FIG. 268. POSITION OF THE PATIENT AFTER OPERATIONS UPON THE S

buckle. A second strap is fixed to the upright end of the be lower end engages with the buckle attached to the pillow; this strap tight and fixing it, the position of the pillow is ma The patient is supported by this pillow quite comfortably, a vented from slipping down in the bed. About five or six h the operation the feeling of nausea caused by the ether will ha off, and the patient begins to ask for fluid. At once water an ounce or more at a time to begin with, and in two or th

Most patients like tea better than any other drink; during
ty-four hours three or four cups, made to the patient's
given. I do not restrict the quantity of water allowed to
ey rarely drink more than 20 or 30 ounces in the first
ours, but it is their own desire which regulates the quan-
any order of mine. There is no harm done by giving
If a patient can vomit without injury to the suture line,
in that the passage of fluids through the anastomotic open-
hurt. For the last three or four years I have put no
patients in this matter even from the first. Thirst is the
le of all sufferings after abdominal section, and there is no
or allowing a patient to suffer from it. Fluid taken by
to pass to the large intestine to be absorbed. The intes-
active, therefore, and this is entirely an advantage. I do
d food until a patient himself asks for it. In the early
ips, tea and cocoa are given freely, but solid food is not
atient until eight or ten days have passed. As soon as the
le I grant it, ordering sweetbread, fish, bread and butter,
on, and the quantities taken are not restricted. In eighteen
s ordinary food can be taken and enjoyed. I discourage
ruits, and green vegetables in all cases for some time, for
e without value as foods.

ght of the operation the patient may be allowed ⅙ gr. of
odermically. There is usually not much pain after the
lving the stomach, but if the patient complains of pain
ate to give one hypodermic injection of morphine. It is
for a second dose to be asked for or to be given. In all
enema, with or without turpentine, is given twenty-four
e operation. Flatus is brought away, and the patient is
able. An aperient, castor oil or calomel, is given about
The patient is allowed up sometimes during the second
on the ninth or tenth day. In malignant cases I get the
bed earlier than this, often on the day after operation.

CHAPTER II

GASTROTOMY: GASTROSTOMY: PARTIAL GASTR

GASTROTOMY

Indications. In the operation of gastrotomy the stomacl for the purpose of exploring its interior, for the removal of body, or for obtaining access to the cardiac orifice when dilatation of an œsophageal stricture is to be attempted. purpose of the operation has been fulfilled the opening in th is closed, and the viscus is returned within the abdomen.

Operation. The abdomen is opened in or near the m according as access to the cardiac or the pyloric extremit stomach is to be obtained. The rectus muscle, when a later is used, is split or displaced in the usual manner. When the exposed, it is drawn well into the ample wound. The perito is then protected by two layers of gauze swabs introduced into swabs first packed away are of large size, and remain unmove out the operation; a more superficial layer consists of sma which are changed when necessary. The edges of the abdomir are also well protected by gauze packing or by 'tetra' cloths. tion to the stomach the transverse colon should be drawn we wound, for it may be necessary to tear through the gastro-colic in order to reach the posterior surface of the viscus. The then opened either by a vertical or by a transverse incision. is to be preferred as it gives a better exposure of the stomac since more vessels are necessarily divided, the hæmorrhag severe. As the vessels are divided they are seized and ligatur with fine catgut. A fine volsella then seizes each edge of the the stomach cavity is open to inspection. A good deal of fr mucus may be found in the interior; it is to be mopped gauze. The foreign body (a dental plate, or a hair ball or truder) is to be removed, or the intended procedure carried ou wound in the anterior wall closed. If a close inspection of th be necessary, one or two fingers are passed through a rent in colic omentum immediately below the stomach, a bloodless chosen, and the posterior wall protruded through the anterio

fter another of the stomach-walls may thus be passed in
ay be dealt with as is necessary.

g in the stomach is closed by two layers, an inner suture
oduced by the 'loop on the mucosa stitch,' and an outer
suture of Pagenstecher's thread. The stomach is then
ping with moist sterile swabs, the gauze packing and the
bs are removed and the abdomen closed.

GASTROSTOMY

ns. The
gastrostomy
in those
there is
he œsoph-
the cardiac
stomach, to
ch renders
of nourish-
ılt that life
be main-

n. A great
procedures
pted in the
a perfect
e is at pres-
of several
hich fulfil
essary con-
se are that
should be
edy, for the
tients need-
on is small;
give ade-
o the stom-

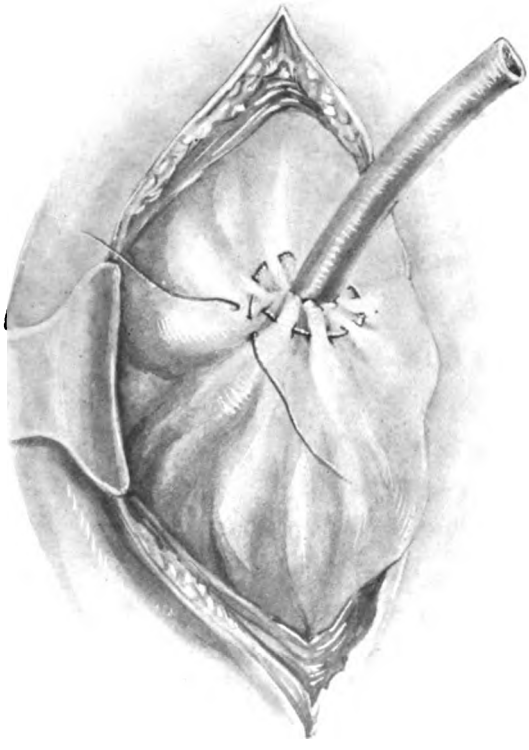


FIG. 269. GASTROSTOMY BY SENN'S METHOD.
The suture placed.

ould not permit the regurgitation of fluids or of gastric
t the external opening should show no great tendency to
osure.

thod. In my judgment this is the most satisfactory of
or it best fulfils the necessary conditions which have been

already enumerated. It consists in the infolding of a cone of the wall by a series of purse-string sutures around a central tub passes into the cavity of the stomach. The abdomen is oper vertical incision 2 to 3 inches in length through the outer par left rectus immediately below the costal margin. The muscle f split, care being taken not to fray them, and the peritoneum The stomach exposed; it indeed usuall small and s and hidden the hollow of under the sh the left lobe liver. It is pu up into the and a point selected for t duction of t This point s as far away pylorus as i nient, and i be approxima way betwe curvatures. stomach is r rounded wit gauze packs, vent soiling wound. At chosen a smal is made into

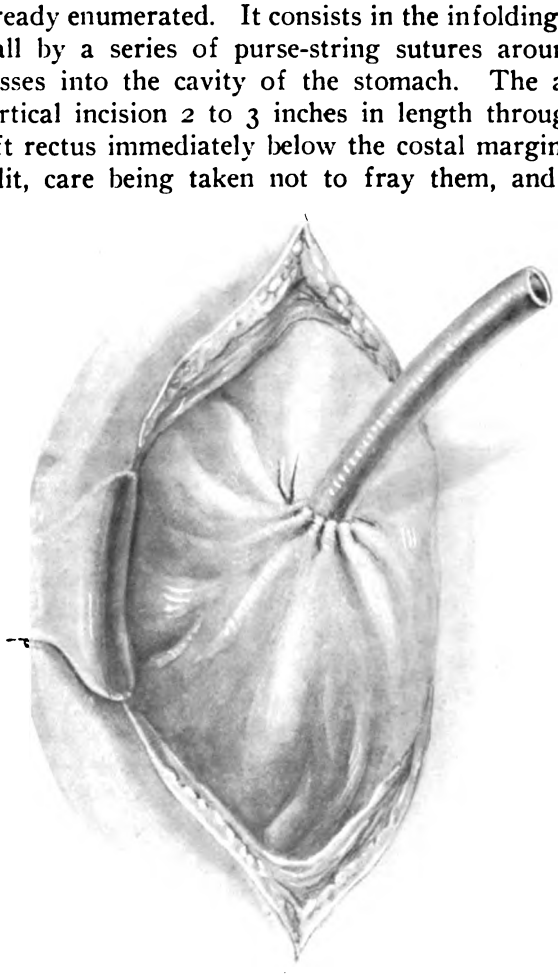


FIG. 270. GASTROSTOMY BY SENN'S METHOD. The suture tied.

terior wall of the stomach, through all the coats. Through this a rubber catheter (Jaques's No. 12) or a piece of small drainag passed towards the pylorus for a distance of 2 or 3 inches. The the incision and the tube are now both caught up in a need carries a catgut thread; the stitch when tightened fixes the tub opening in the stomach. A series of purse-string sutures of fin stecher's thread are now passed in circles around the tube where the stomach. The first of these is about ½ inch from the tube tightened an assistant pushes the tube inwards to the stomach

ıes to lie close against the tube. A second stitch about the tube is then passed and tied in the same manner; then f need be, a fourth; each suture is tightened snugly round is then cut short. Finally, the stomach is secured to the minal wall by a suture above and below the tube. The l is closed in layers and the operation is complete. A meal milk may be given at once. As a rule the stomach is so cannot comfortably hold more than 6 or 7 ounces, but

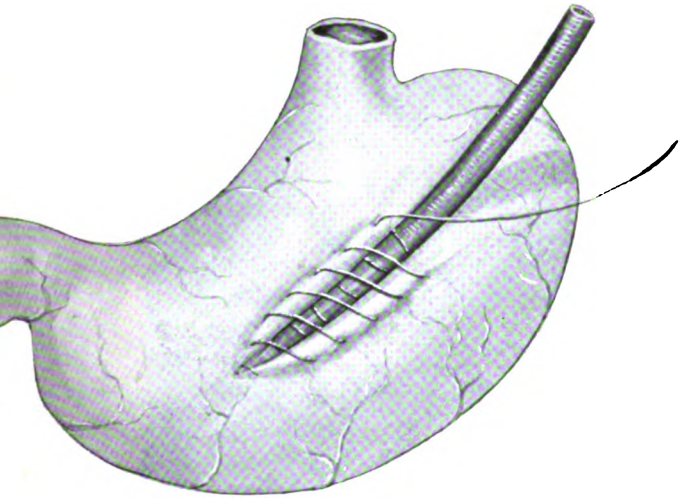


FIG. 271. GASTROSTOMY BY WITZEL'S METHOD.

s its capacity increases. I prefer to give a meal every nd between each meal to pour a few ounces of water into for it is fluid that these patients mainly want.

method. The principle of this is similar to that just tube is introduced into the stomach at the same point peration. Then transverse sutures are passed which raise lds on each side of the tube. By means of the stitches, only the sero-muscular coats, two longitudinal ridges are ther, and at the mid-point of the ridge the tube passes the stomach. As the sutures are tightened they are cut are usually two above the tube and two below. A second ıes, and then a third, are passed in a similar manner; and mach is fixed to the anterior abdominal wall as before.

method. This ingenious method is useful not only in the also in the jejunum, and its analogue is used in other e body. The method consists in introducing a tube into

the stomach and fixing it by a suture, as in the two method described. The tube is then laid flat upon the anterior wa stomach and is buried in a groove or furrow there, by me continuous suture which picks up the sero-muscular coats, Lembert's suture, first above and then below the tube. As the tightened a ridge is lifted up on each side of the tube whic entunnelled. The suture begins a little distance beyond the point of the tube stomach a tinues for a inches to Finally, the is fixed by stitches to rior abdom

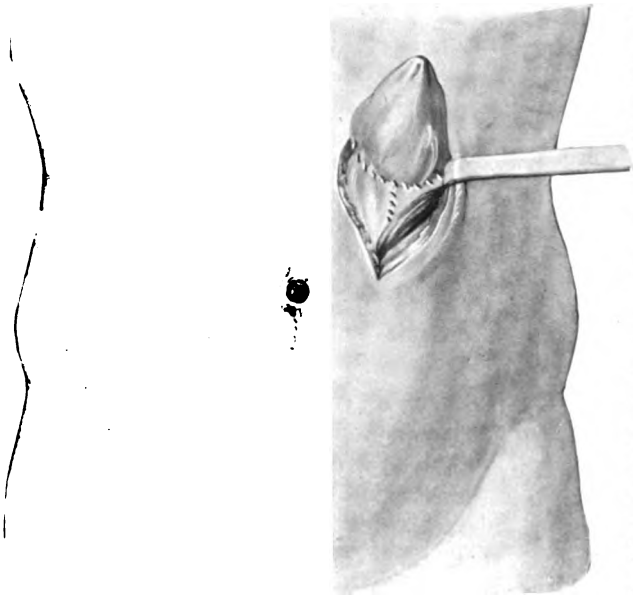


FIG. 272. GASTROSTOMY BY FRANK'S METHOD.
The stomach sutured to the peritoneum.

Frank's (Sbanaje Albert-Koc thod). Th ably the most emplo present tim is certain which has jected to th variety of tions, by Hartma others.

The ope thus perfor vertical incision over the upper part of the left rectus muscle The rectus fibres are split, or the anterior sheath of the rectu dissected up to the middle line and the whole muscle displaced (Kocher). The peritoneum being opened, the stomach is soug cone-shaped piece of its anterior surface is brought well ou wound. The base of this cone is then fixed by a running sutu margins of the parietal peritoneum in the wound (see Fig. second incision is now made parallel to the costal margin an beyond its free edge; that is to say, on the wall of the thorax. the two incisions the subcutaneous tissue is then cut through by in such manner as to raise up a bridge of skin, which, as it we

ne subcutaneous tissue. Through this tunnel and beneath skin the cone-shaped piece of the stomach is passed until e cone pouts through the thoracic incision. It is there e-lip pin or a few sutures, and the original abdominal closed completely (see Fig. 273). This method is one opinion distinctly inferior to Senn's operation. For in all ageal obstruction the stomach is small; it is accordingly by asy matter to bring so much of it out of the abdomen as o make taneous ver, so stomach d in the put out were, so digestive action is whereas Kader's the sto- eing in- deprived its func- fficacy of action' is one whit in Senn's indeed it ink, quite tly secure. time con- e operation is a little longer, and in patients who are seriously factor not to be disregarded.

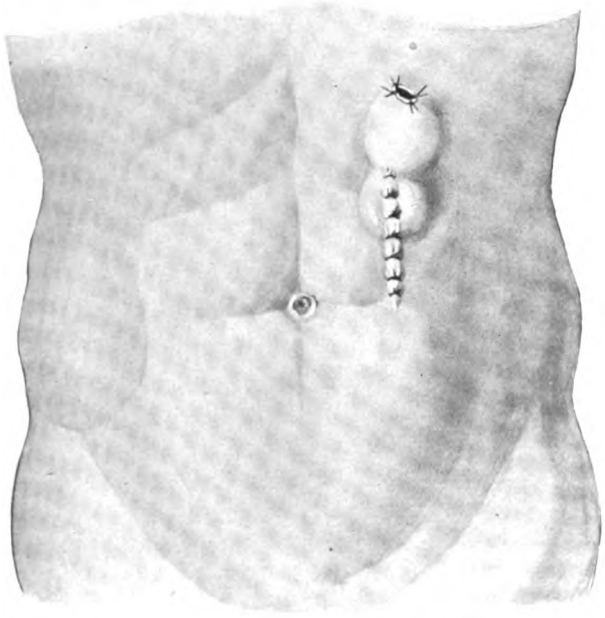


FIG. 273. GASTROSTOMY BY FRANK'S METHOD. The stomach sutured to the skin and the wound closed.

method. This most ingenious method consists in fastening œsophagus, so to speak—between the anterior abdominal wall mach by utilizing a resected portion of the small intestine. incision is made through the left rectus muscle, reaching to us. The stomach is sought, and then the omentum is lifted jejunum brought up into the wound for examination. A piece n selected which is well supplied with blood (any chance piece) and is then clamped by two pairs of clamps above and below. ne clamps the bowel is cut, and the ends above and below the

Digitized by Google

resected length are united by suture. The intestinal continuity restored, and a piece of the jejunum some inches in length, still by its mesentery, which contains a free blood-supply, is available purposes of the new 'œsophagus.' This piece of the bowel united at one end to the stomach and at the other to the ab wall, and the parietal wound is closed around it. The descri this operation is enough to convince any surgeon that for mo requiring gastrostomy it is quite inadmissible. It is too sev too prolonged a measure for a weakly and wasted patient to be for cases of simple œsophageal obstruction it may occasionally b A very striking use of the method has been made by Roux of L who, in the case of a boy aged about eight who had an impe stenosis of the œsophagus due to the swallowing of a caust brought a long piece of the jejunum (attached at the lower en stomach) upwards beneath the skin of the abdomen and chest to a little below the manubrium sterni. The boy, whom I saw many after the operation, was fat and well, and the new œsophag perfectly.

After-treatment. After the operation of gastrostomy h performed the patient should be fed at frequent intervals. about 5 ounces should be given every one and a half to two Peptonized milk with a little brandy is given at first, and betw meals a little water is allowed to run into the stomach. It reli patient's thirst and prevents coagulated milk from blocking t During the first few days no more than 6 or 8 ounces at one t be received into the stomach with comfort; a quantity larger t causes distress, and the fluid may regurgitate if the stomach distended. After a few days the stomach may be washed out the tube, and a dose of castor oil administered. Patients often e desire to have something in their mouths, the flavour of whi can appreciate. I usually allow them to sip any favourite dr after gastrostomy has been performed the power to swallow much improved and a fair quantity of fluids can be given by the But I prefer to give all the necessary food by the tube, allowing mouth only those well-flavoured drinks for which the patien special liking. Some days later meat may be chewed and spat a funnel, and washed thence into the stomach. The tube can be removed at the end of eight or ten days; it is boiled and r or a new one used. The patient should be instructed not to ren tube except for cleansing purposes. The tube is brought thr opening in a pad affixed to a belt which encircles the abdomen the most convenient method of fixing it. Patients should

wed to remain in bed for more than three to five days after this ration; as a rule the sooner they are up the better, and they should y receive instruction in the details of feeding, so that they may end entirely upon themselves for this. The most distressing com- ation after this operation is hiccough. It occurs to a greater or less ree in about one-fourth of the cases; it is relieved by washing out stomach, and by small doses of morphine or cocaine.

PARTIAL GASTRECTOMY

In planning an operation for the removal of a cancer beginning in ear the pylorus the lines which the procedure must follow are deter- ed by a consideration of certain factors. These are—

1. The lymphatic system of the stomach.
2. The mode of spreading of the growth in the stomach.
3. The involvement of the duodenum.

1. *The lymphatic system of the stomach.* The lymph vascular supply he stomach is free. For convenience of description certain territories marked out upon the stomach, which may be looked upon as water- ls, each draining into a separate group of glands. Cunéo describes e such areas, which are marked out by drawing two lines upon the nach. The first line extends from the apex of the fundus to the dle of the pylorus and passes across the stomach at the junction of pper two-thirds with the lower third. The second line extends from mid-point of the greater curvature vertically upwards to meet the line. In this way three areas are marked out: from the upper all lymph-vessels flow to the glands along the lesser curvature and to e around the cardiac orifice; from the left lower area the vessels to the spleen, and from the right lower area they run obliquely nwards to glands which lie along the greater curvature close to and ond the pylorus. The glands into which these vessels run direct called 'primary.' When a gland receives vessels which have already ed through other glands it is called 'secondary.' It is clear that ood is to be done by any surgical procedure involving the removal a cancer, not only must the growth itself be taken away, but also the lymphatic vessels which drain the region in which the growth and the primary glands which drain that area. The primary ds are—

(*a*) Those which lie along the coronary artery.

(*b*) A gland or glands lying above the pylorus, by the side of the ric artery, the 'suprapyloric' gland.

(*c*) Glands which lie along the upper border of the pancreas, to the t of the cœliac axis, the 'right suprapancreatic' glands.

(*d*) The glands which lie along the greater curvature in as with the right gastro-epiploic artery.

(*e*) Retropyloric glands.

All these glands must be removed therefore as well as the

2. *The local increase of the growth in the stomach.* The size of a growth in the stomach is no guide to its actual size around the palpable growth an extensive invasion of the submu occurred. This invasion in cases of pyloric growth extends fo an inch on the cardiac side. The growth, moreover, shows a tendency to invade the curvatures, especially the lesser curvatu not uncommon to find a solid cord of growth extending from pyloric growth quite up to the cardiac end of the stomach a lesser curvature. It is therefore necessary in all cases of resecti stomach to take away the whole length of the lesser curvature.

3. *The involvement of the duodenum.* As a general rule cancer seems to stop abruptly at the duodenum, and comm been made by a multitude of authors upon the integrity of the in cases of gastric cancer. But as a result of the work of C Borrmann we have been brought to realize that an invasio duodenum is by no means infrequent. Borrmann examined si specimens removed by operation and found that in no less tha was it evident that the cut surface of the duodenum was involv growth. At least one inch of the duodenum must accordingly be

The lines therefore which a resection of the stomach shou may be indicated. The whole growth with a wide margin s taken away; all the lesser curvature and one-half of the greater must be removed, and all the primary glands must be sacrificed.

Operation. The operation is carried out in the following An ample incision is made in the middle line, reaching as a r the ensiform cartilage to the umbilicus. The central incision convenient than the lateral incision which is commonly empl the operation of gastro-enterostomy; it gives easier and mo diate access to all parts of the operation area. An inspectio extent of the cancerous invasion of the stomach itself, of its to the pancreas or abdominal wall or liver, of the number and of any glandular enlargements, and finally of the liver, periton parts immediately in the neighbourhood to discover if secondar be present, is made. Neither adhesions nor the involvement phatic glands preclude removal of the stomach, though they ma the mechanical difficulties rather more serious. When a rese been decided upon, flat gauze swabs, wrung out of hot saline are packed round the stomach so as to afford a barrier between th

k and the general peritoneal cavity. As a rule two layers of swabs introduced, the first consisting of very large ones, which are unged throughout the operation, and the second of smaller ones, which n soiled are changed at once. No care is too punctilious so long as olute security of the peritoneal cavity is ensured.

It is best to begin the operation by ligature of the principal arteries supply so as to render the operation comparatively bloodless. I nerly began by ligature of the coronary artery, but now prefer to e this vessel until a later stage of the operation for reasons presently be mentioned. The gastro-hepatic omentum is first torn through, if need be ligatured close to its attachment to the liver, beginning the cardia, and the omentum stripped down to the stomach, and ne right until the pyloric and gastro-duodenal branches of the hepatic ry are exposed. These vessels may arise together or separately n the hepatic stem. They are best defined by stripping along the tic artery with gauze wrapped round the finger. Each vessel is ounded by an aneurysm needle carrying a double thread; between the tures each artery is divided. The gastro-epiploica sinistra is now in a similar manner at the point on the greater curvature of the nach at which its section is to be made. The index and middle er of the left hand are now passed from above downwards through opening made in the gastro-hepatic omentum, behind the pylorus, re they are made to project below the duodenum, through the great ntum. In this way any adhesion of the growth to the pancreas is

If such adhesion be firm, a thick fibrous mass welding the two ther, it is better not to endeavour to separate the stomach, but to first with the duodenum. The finger which projects below the denum indicates the point at which a clamp is introduced at the place re the bowel is to be divided. As a rule two clamps are introduced, bber-covered distal one and a bare proximal one; between them duodenum is divided, a full inch beyond the pylorus. The proximal end of the duodenum may show a tendency to slip away from the p; this is prevented by passing a couple of sutures through the nach and tying them over the clamp. The distal end of the duodenum be closed by one of several methods. I prefer a running suture of ut taken from top to bottom and drawn tight; its two ends are tied ther in such manner as to pucker up the suture line to a small knot. side this a continuous Pagenstecher's suture is passed until it is quite in that a perfectly secure closure of the duodenum has been effected. nerally use a third layer of stitches, for the records of cases show leakage from the duodenum is one of the common causes of disaster. ve never had any trouble from this source, but I perform this part

of the operation with the most sedulous care. If nec
pancreas is stitched over the end of the duodenum
doubly sure.

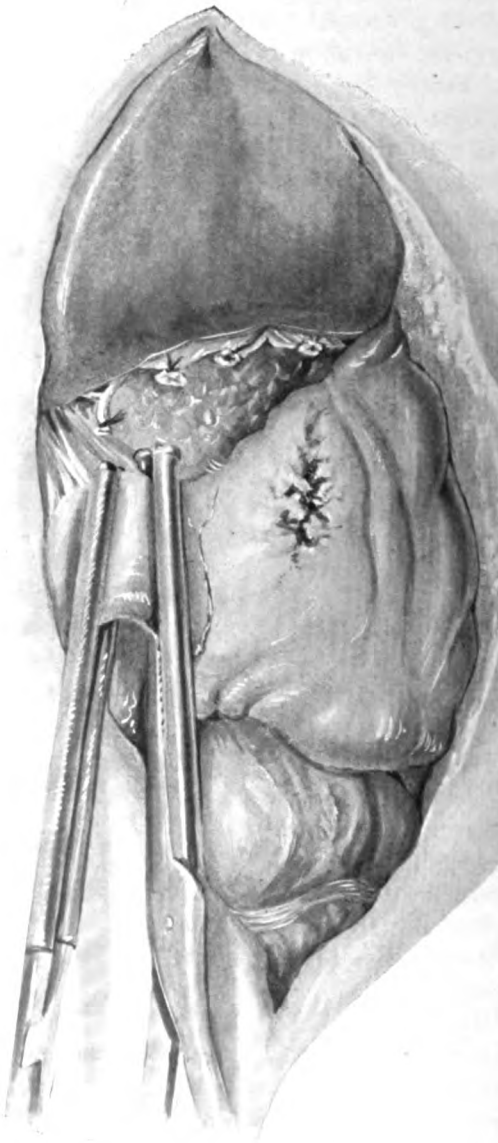


FIG. 274. PARTIAL GASTRECTOMY.
Gastro-hepatic omentum ligatured; division of

al cut end of the duodenum is now lifted up with the le being held in a large moist swab. If only slender e pancreas be found they are torn through, but if the rather to have grown into the gland it is better to slice er from the surface. The pancreas may be safely cut

PARTIAL GASTRECTOMY. Ligature of the coronary artery.

t the shaving must not be carried too deep lest the duct eeding is free at the first, but is readily checked by firm a few ligatures.

time to see that all the glands along the greater curvature are removed. The subpyloric glands are often grossly ot always so. It is important to see that all the fatty ars them, in the angle between the first and second parts

of the duodenum, is taken away. On the greater curvatu
stomach the glands are also numerous in the pyloric half. T
a great tendency to drop down in the omentum; not seldom be
1½ to 2 inches from the stomach. As these are removed it is
to see that no damage is done to the middle colic artery. T
this most serious mishap the transverse colon and omentum
withdrawn from the abdomen and the under surface of the

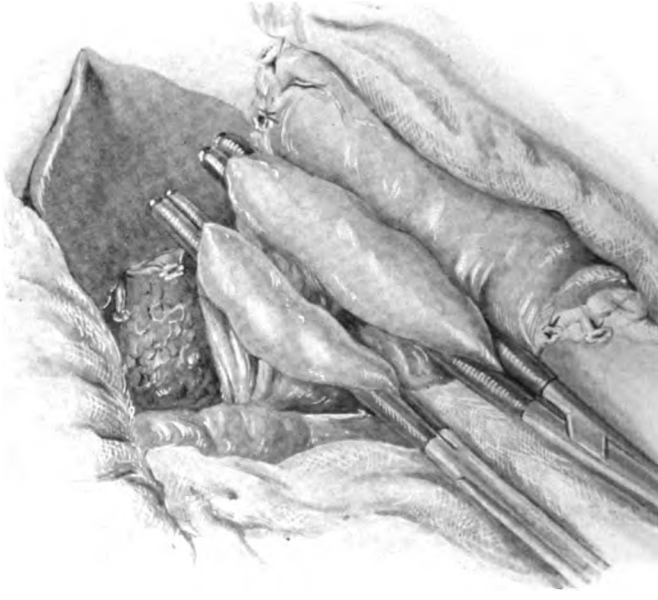


FIG. 276. PARTIAL GASTRECTOMY.
The clamps applied, preparatory to gastro-enterostomy.

mesocolon, whereon the arterial arch is easily to be seen,
examined. The great omentum well below the greater curvatu
stomach is then ligatured in bundles and divided. As each pa
omentum is displayed care must be taken to see that the ligatur
below all glands to be removed. This process of tying the on
bundles is continued until a point an inch or more beyond the
the greater curvature, well beyond the left of the glandular
reached. It is at this point that the left gastro-epiploic artery ha
been tied.

The stomach is now free and mobile in its pyloric half
gastro-hepatic omentum has been divided, the duodenum sev
the great omentum ligatured. This mass of the stomach held

v turned well over to the left, so that its posterior surface
he time has come for ligature of the coronary artery.
ne now by cleaning with a little gauze, which soon clearly
eliac axis. The coronary artery is surrounded with an
e close to its origin, tied and divided. The stomach is at
ser, for its chief remaining anchor has been cut. The
dividing the coronary at this stage are, that it is easier,

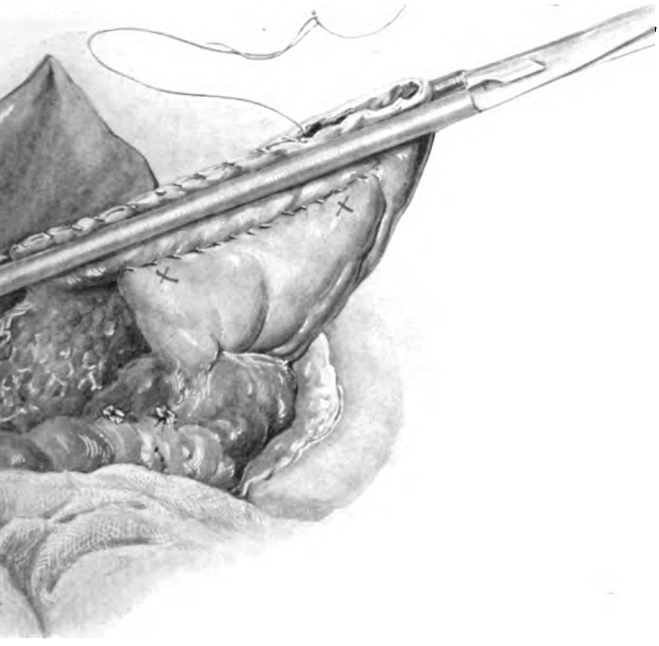


FIG. 277. PARTIAL GASTRECTOMY.
wound in the stomach. × ×, the gastro-enterostomy suture.

in a few moments, and that it is divided at a higher point,
er coronary group of glands can be removed completely.
ng divided, the glands are stripped down with gauze until
and the beginning of the lesser curvature are clear. The
of the stomach from the highest point of the lesser curva-
about the middle of the greater curvature is now deter-
lamp may temporarily be laid along this line, and lightly
licate its direction. But before the stomach is divided
the anastomosis with the jejunum should be made. At
easily done, for the loosened part of the stomach gives one

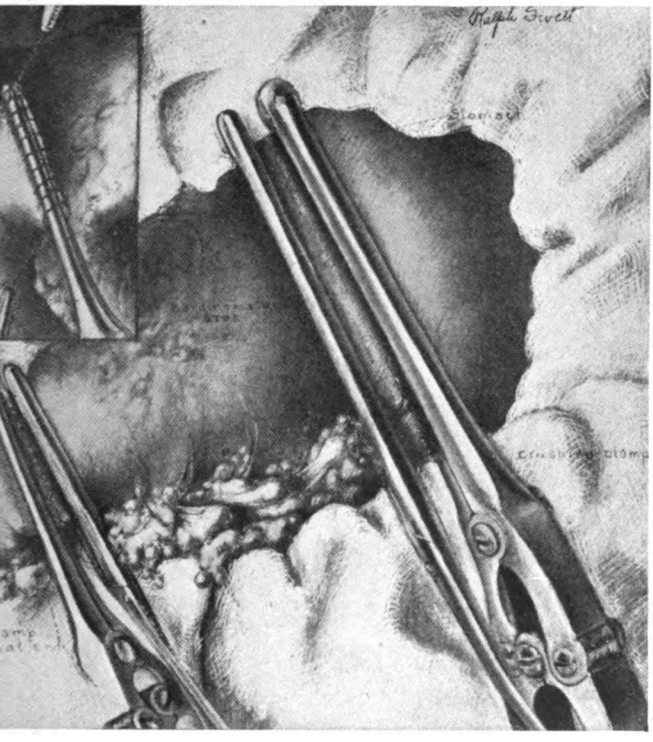
a handle with which to manipulate the remainder, the part, that i
is to be engaged in the anastomosis. If the stomach be first div
part that remains is sometimes so small, and handled with su
difficulty, that the performance of the gastro-enterostomy becor
difficult, and the anastomosis when completed looks anything but
By performing the short circuiting operation now it is easier,
and therefore safer. I prefer in performing this anastomosis
the jejunum lie to the left, on Mayo's line, as this is undoub
advantage in cases of partial gastrectomy.

Clamps are therefore now applied to the posterior surfac
stomach, and to the jejunum, close to the flexure, drawn up
a rent in the transverse mesocolon. The lines of suture anc
details of the operation are the same as those described on
When the gastro-enterostomy is completed, Kocher's long
applied to the stomach along the line already indicated. A
clamp is applied distal to it, and between the two the stomach is
In doing so it is well to cut first through the serous and muscu
back and front and to strip these back a little way before divi
mucosa: so that when this is divided and sutured it can be well
by the exuberant outer coats. After division of all the coats the
is sutured with catgut and the serosa and muscularis with
stecher's thread. The only points of difficulty are at the cu
and here especial care must be taken to see that the closure is sec
the point of section of the lesser curvature the stomach may sc
seem likely to slip away from the clamp; if so, it is sutured
and an extra Halsted's suture may be useful to hold it secure.
has now arrived to clear away the only remaining primary gla
right suprapancreatic, which lie along the hepatic artery al
pancreas. This is best done by careful dissection, and the consta
ping of the parts with gauze. It is best to begin at the cœliac
work to the right; the pancreas may possibly have to be sacr
some small degree, but this does not signify. What is importa
security of the hepatic artery, and this must throughout be
guarded. It now remains only to clean the operation area, ar
chance leakage of blood, to remove the swabs, and to close the al
wound. Drainage is not as a rule necessary unless the pancreas
exposed; it is then desirable.

**PARTIAL GASTRECTOMY FOR SIMPLE ULCER OF THE ST
RESECTION OF THE ULCER-BEARING AREA. RODMAN'S OPE**

There are occasions upon which it may be necessary to
a resection of the pyloric region of the stomach for simple disea

this operation are chiefly two: firstly, when there are in the stomach; secondly, when the ulcer is so much an accurate discrimination between simple and early disease is very difficult, or even impossible. The advocacy or such conditions began with Dr. W. L. Rodman of nd the name of this distinguished surgeon is now generally



LOOD-VESSELS TIED, GLANDS SEPARATED, CRUSHING CLAMPS IN O CLAMPS TO PREVENT LEAKAGE FROM PART TO BE REMOVED. ing shows stump of duodenum in crushing clamp with suture g. (*Mayo.*)

peration for removal of the 'ulcer-bearing area.' The uch cases is very similar to that which has already been ses of carcinoma. The chief differences are—

not necessary to remove the stomach very wide of the terval sufficient to allow of the easy application of the hat is needed.

emoval of the whole of the lesser curvature is not neces-

(*c*) The sacrifice of the glands is not necessary.

(*d*) The duodenum need not be removed unless ulcers a
there also.

(e) The performance of an end-to-end anastomosis or of
gastro-duodenostomy may be possible; Rodman himself prefer
rightly, to perform gastro-enterostomy.

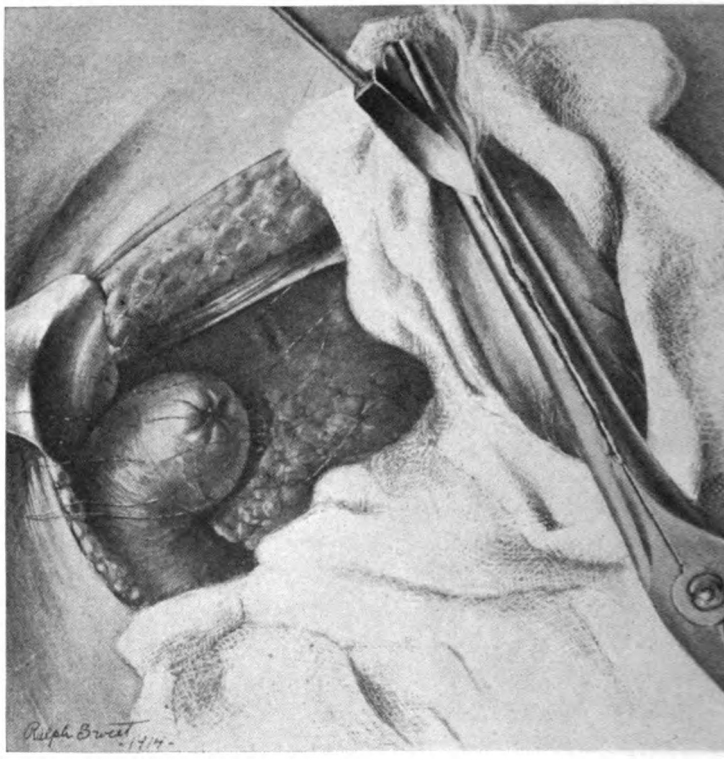
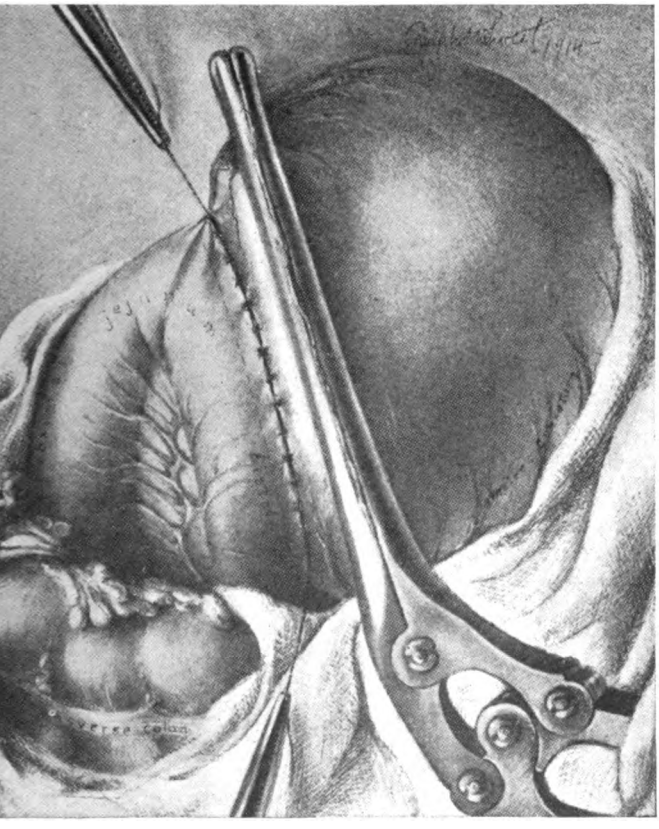


FIG. 279. CRUSHING CLAMP ON THE STOMACH. Cautery used to st
prevent carcinomatous implantation. Stump of duodenum closed.
placed to turn the duodenal stump into the denuded head of the
(*Mayo.*)

Pólya operation. The Pólya operation, as described by M
follows:

The diseased portion of the stomach is removed in the u
and the stump of the duodenum closed and buried (see Figs.
279). An opening is made in the avascular arcade of the t
mesocolon and the jejunum pulled through until it can be easil

ith the stomach, which is held in the crushing clamp of
ed by suture to the loop of jejunum (see Fig. 280) quite
gastro-enterostomy is made. If the diameter of the end
h be very large, it can easily be diminished by placing
such manner as to take a proportionately greater bite in
an in the intestine, thus reducing the lumen of the stom-



Upper Jejunum Six to Twelve Inches from Origin brought
pening which has been made in the Transverse Mesocolon
Outer Row of Seromuscular Silk Sutures to the Posterior
Stomach. (*Mayo.*)

turing progresses. The stomach is anastomosed to the
point where the jejunal blood-supply is extraordinarily
jejunum can be depended upon to do more than its share
process. Before the inner through-and-through sutures

are placed, the stomach and intestine are grasped with elastic clamps to prevent soiling; the inner row of sutures is then run around and the outer row completed. The entire anastomosed

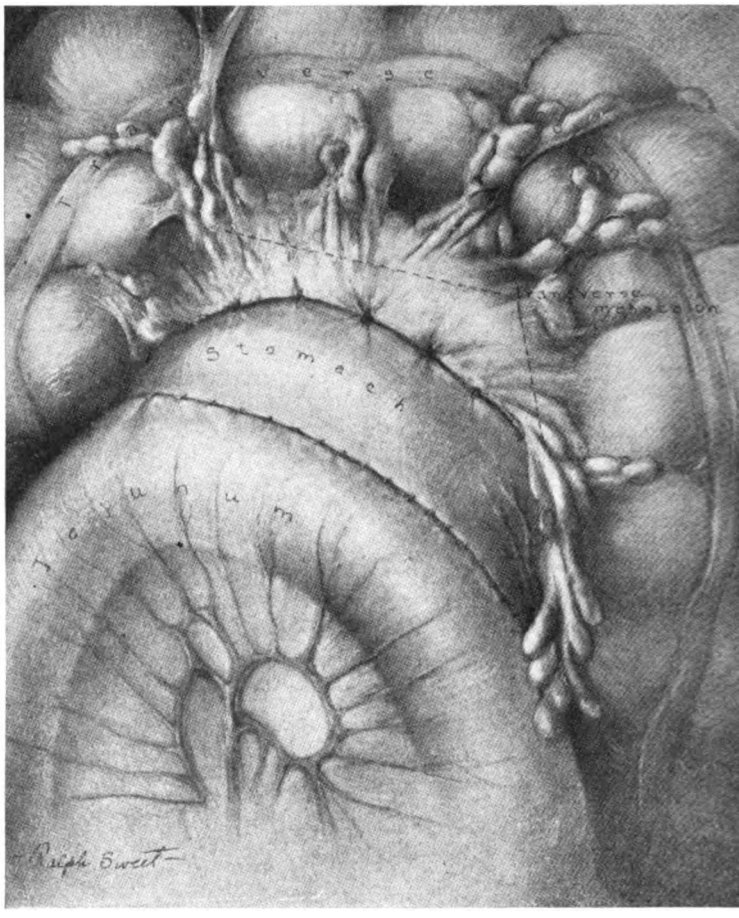
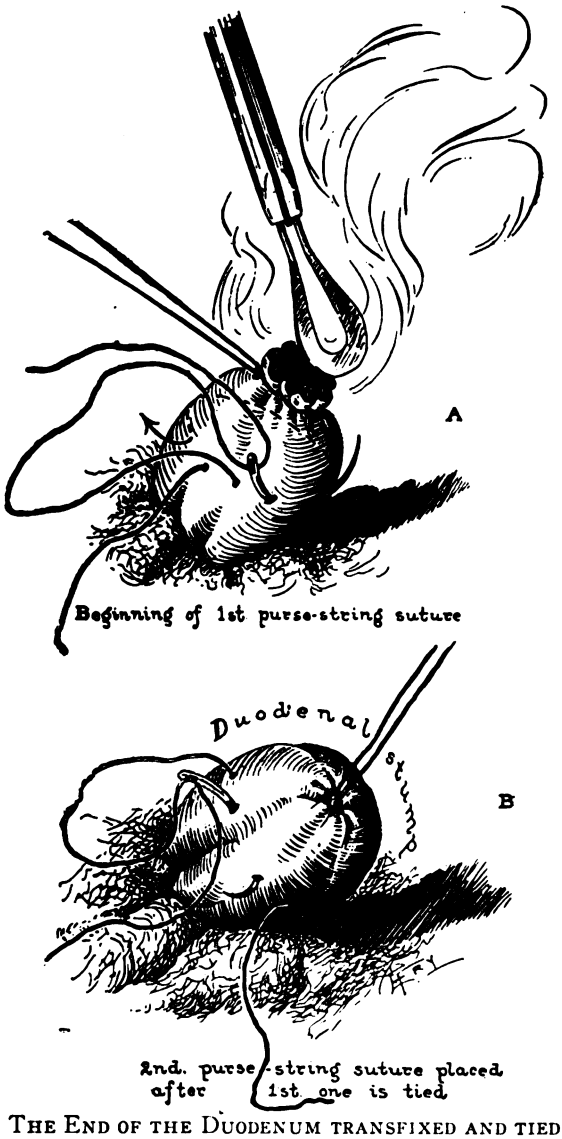


FIG. 281. ANASTOMOSIS COMPLETED BY AN ANTERIOR ROW OF SEROM SILK SUTURES. Anastomosed end brought through the opening in the t mesocolon and margins of opening sutured to the stomach. (*Mayo.*)

the stomach is then drawn down below the transverse mesocc the margins of the opening in the transverse mesocolon caref tached by a number of sutures to the wall of the stomach (see Fi Fine silk is used for the peritoneomuscular sutures and chromi for the through-and-through inner row.

alfour operation. Balfour, of the Mayo Clinic, has described a fication of the Pólya operation, the technique of which is as fol-



. 282. A, THE END OF THE DUODENUM TRANSFIXED AND TIED WITH CATGUT. ctual cautery used for sterilizing stump beyond ligature. The purse-string in place. B, The stump inverted and first catgut purse-string suture tied. l catgut purse-string suture in place below the first. A few interrupted tures may be placed to draw together the sheath of the pancreas and a in the vicinity, thereby burying the end of the duodenum. (*Balfour.*)

The resection is carried out in the ordinary way w
tion to such important parts as the wide removal of gl
the avoiding of injury to the middle colic blood-su
verse colon, the resection made well beyond the cancer
ization of all cut mucous surfaces to prevent cancer-c

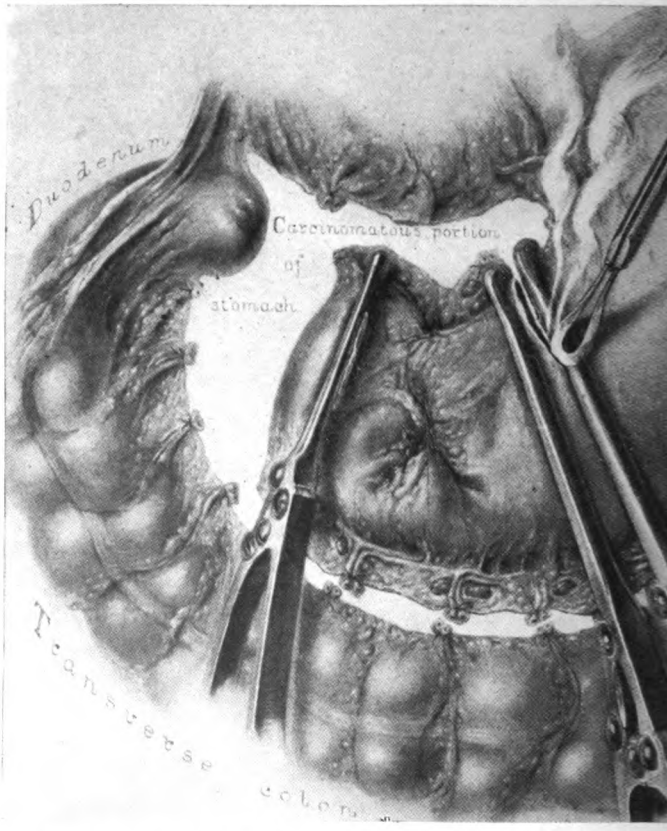


FIG. 283. END OF DUODENUM CLOSED, VESSELS LIGATED A
ISOLATED WITH THE CARCINOMATOUS PORTION OF THE STOM
made with an electric cautery knife. (*Balfour.*)

and the secure inversion and burial of the duodenal st
tive field is inspected and carefully isolated by fresh pa
stage is carried out as follows (see Figs. 282 and 28

The first loop of jejunum is procured and a poi
inches from the duodeno-jejunal angle is marked.
then carried up in front of the transverse colon an

ment of suitable size is chosen at the point already marked. This ion of jejunum is lightly grasped with rubber-covered forceps, and

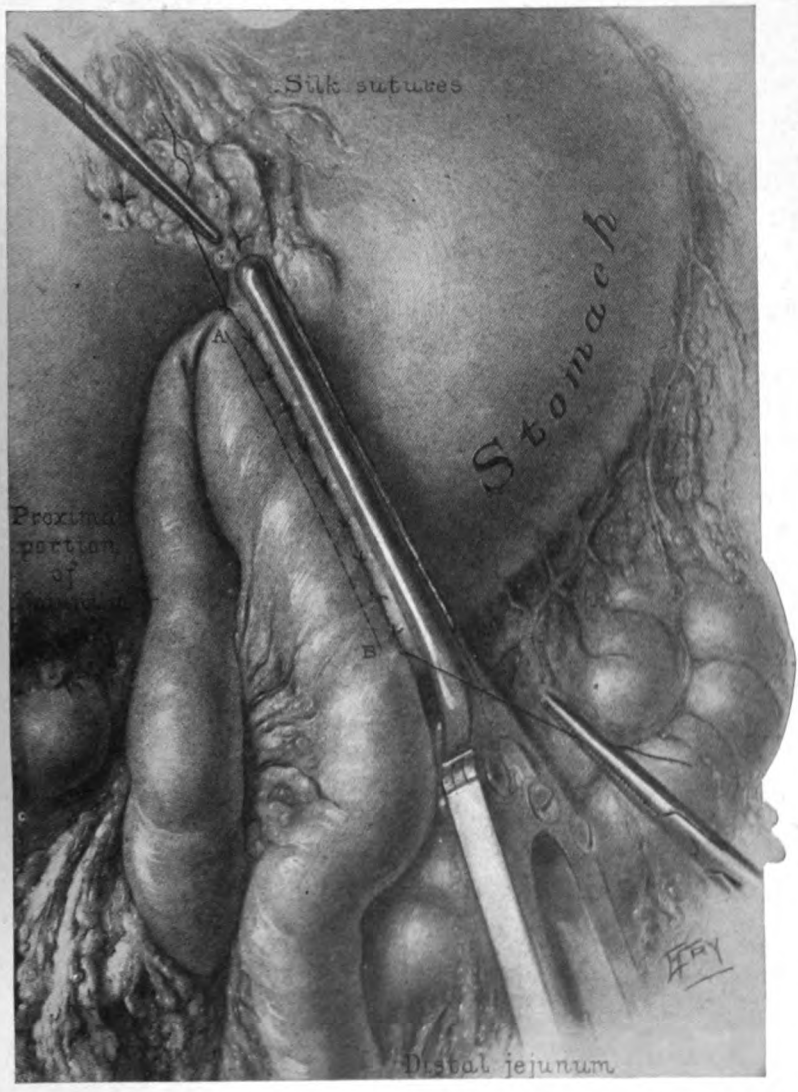


FIG. 284. FIRST ROW OF INTERRUPTED SILK SUTURES UNITING THE PROXIMAL TION OF THE JEJUNUM TO THE POSTERIOR WALL OF THE STOMACH. Anticolic. *lfour.*)

ected so that the proximal end of the loop will be approximated to lesser curvature of the stomach. A series of interrupted silk sutures

in the serosa is used for the first line posteriorly, beginning at th
curvature. All these sutures are placed before any are tied
ends of the top and bottom sutures may be conveniently left a
The first suture line is about ½ inch below the clamp on th
of the stomach, and on the side of the jejunum about ¾ o
from the summit of the loop. In extensive resections it is
important to get the best possible exposure of the lesser curva
at this point it is occasionally difficult to make a secure ana
and it is along the lesser curvature that inflammatory proc
quently extend, rendering the gastric wall friable and a distin
of danger. Any measure in such cases which will prevent
of the lesser curvature should be utilized. We still find the rig
rubber-covered clamp of greatest service for this purpose. The
is now incised on the line (see Fig. 284) and the crushing
moved from the stomach. (If it has been possible at any previ
in the operation to place without difficulty a straight rubbe
clamp at a higher level on the stomach, soiling by unevacuate
contents will be prevented.) Any actively bleeding vessels ar
The posterior row of the anastomosis uniting the posterior wa
stomach to the inner cut-edge of the jejunum is of chromi
The stitches on the gastric side should be taken after the edge
been crushed by the clamp has been trimmed with the scissors.
row of finer catgut may be used to advantage in the poste
The first chromic catgut suture is continued in front in the usu
complete closure. An interrupted silk suture line similar to
posteriorly is placed anteriorly, particular care being taken to
the angle of anastomosis at the lesser curvature. A few in
silk sutures are placed where necessary further to protect the
suture line and the suture at the lesser curvature, the stump of
patic omentum which contains the ligated gastric artery being u
a support to the gastro-jejunal angle at this point.

CHAPTER III

OPERATIONS FOR GASTRIC ULCERS AND THEIR SEQUELÆ

EXCISION OF AN ULCER FROM THE LESSER CURVATURE

Indications. Experience has shown that when chronic ulcers are
d upon the lesser curvature, in the cardiac half of the stomach,
elief from gastro-enterostomy is slight or transitory, and my practice
now been, for some time, to excise such ulcers. As a rule an ulcer
laced is solitary, and when it is removed the stomach performs its
as well as ever before, but there are cases, very exceptional I be-
them to be, in which such an ulcer is found together with a chronic
in the duodenum. In such circumstances the choice before the
eon lies between the performance of gastro-enterostomy well on the
iac side of the ulcer and the excision of the gastric ulcer followed by
ro-enterostomy. I have excised many of these saddle-shaped ulcers
ne lesser curvature, but have never yet found it necessary to perform
ro-enterostomy also.

Operation. The operation may be extremely difficult, for the
may be firmly adherent to the pancreas or to the liver, or it may
o close to the cardiac orifice of the stomach that it is almost in-
ssible. I have on one occasion found the operation quite as difficult as
mplete gastrectomy: the case concerned a man who had been very
t, but was much wasted, and the ulcer was close to the cardia and
adherent. The ultimate result was, however, very good.

The abdomen is opened by an ample incision through the right rectus
cle and the stomach exposed. The ulcer is then investigated, and
extent and density of any adhesions carefully noted. The first step
ists in the division of the gastro-hepatic omentum above the ulcer
the inclusion within the part to be removed of any glands (the
tinel gland' of Lund) that lie along the lesser curvature. The
nary artery on each side of the ulcer is then ligatured; this is best
by surrounding it by an aneurysm needle, which is threaded with
catgut and withdrawn. When ligatured above and below the ulcer
artery and vein are divided. A finger is then passed behind the
ach into the lesser sac, and the part of the viscus which is involved

in the subsequent manipulations pulled upwards into the wo
secure packing of large swabs is then introduced. The are
stomach which has to be excised is then mapped out, and cl
applied above and below. As a rule a bayonet-shaped clamp will
very convenient to apply on the cardiac side; an ordinary

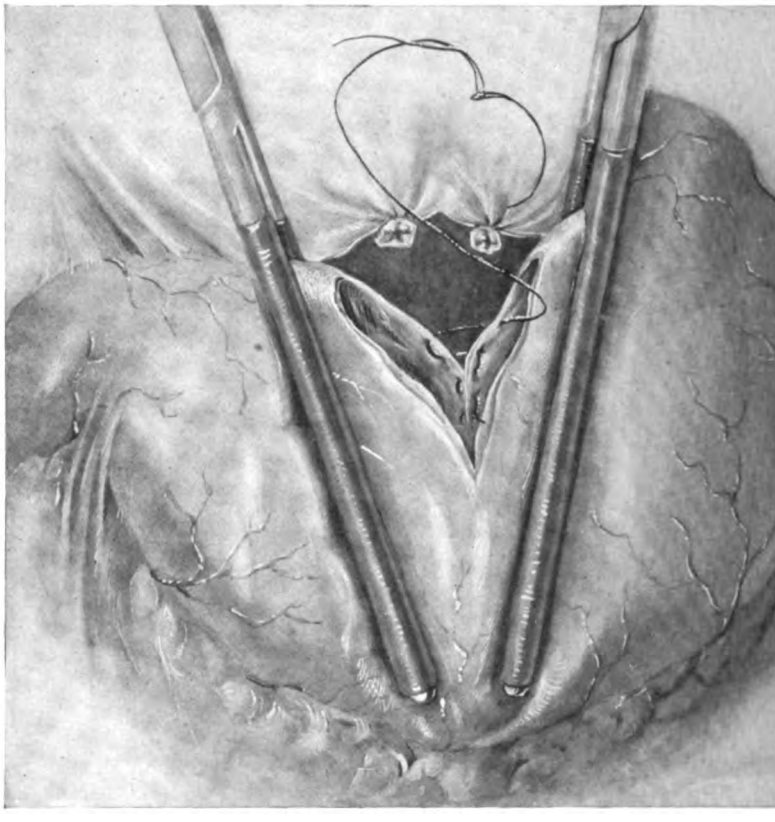
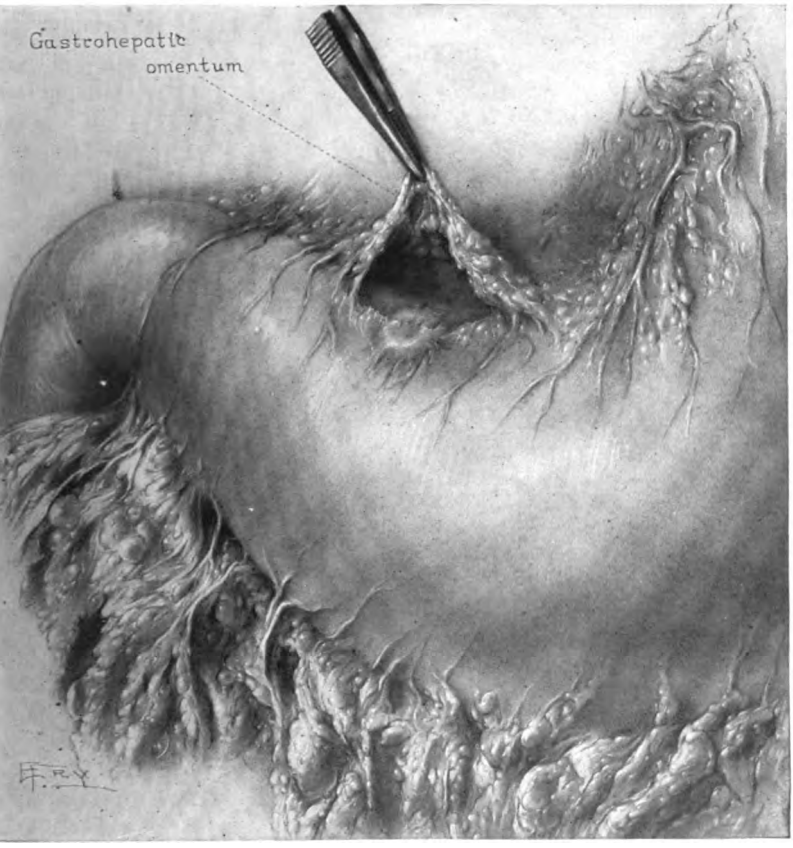


FIG. 285. EXCISION OF AN ULCER FROM THE LESSER CURVATU

clamp suffices for the pyloric side. Between these two clamps a t
area of the stomach, bearing the ulcer, is isolated. Care must
to see that the tips of the clamp blades do not extend too far do
towards the greater curvature, for if too long a wedge is remo
the stomach the puckering which results may be unsightly,
lead to stenosis. As much as possible of the healthy stomacl
the side towards the greater curvature is therefore left.

When the clamps are secure, the ulcer, with the triangula
of the stomach which carries it, is excised, by snipping a little

the clamp blades with large straight scissors. The clamps prevent escape of blood or of stomach contents. The two clamps are now oximated and the suturing begins. A curved needle, which bears r chromic catgut or fine Pagenstecher's thread, is passed on the



286. Ulcer on Anterior Wall with Gastrohepatic Omentum dissected from Lesser Curvature. (*Balfour.*)

erior cut surfaces of the stomach at the part nearest the greater ature from the mucous surface of the one side through all the coats e mucosa of the opposite side, and then returns again through all oats to the mucosa of the lower side, which is pierced about ⅛ inch the original point of entry. The thread is now knotted, and a con- ous suture begun. The needle passes as before from mucosa to a of the lower side through serosa to mucosa of the upper side, and returns from mucosa, through the two apposing layers of serosa, to

the mucosa of the lower side. A ' loop on the mucosa ' (see p
thus left at each passage of the stitch. This stitch continues up
the lesser curvature along the posterior margins of the incision,
descends along the anterior surface of the stomach from t
curvature, to the end of the incision which lies nearest th
curvature. As soon as this suture is completed it is seen th

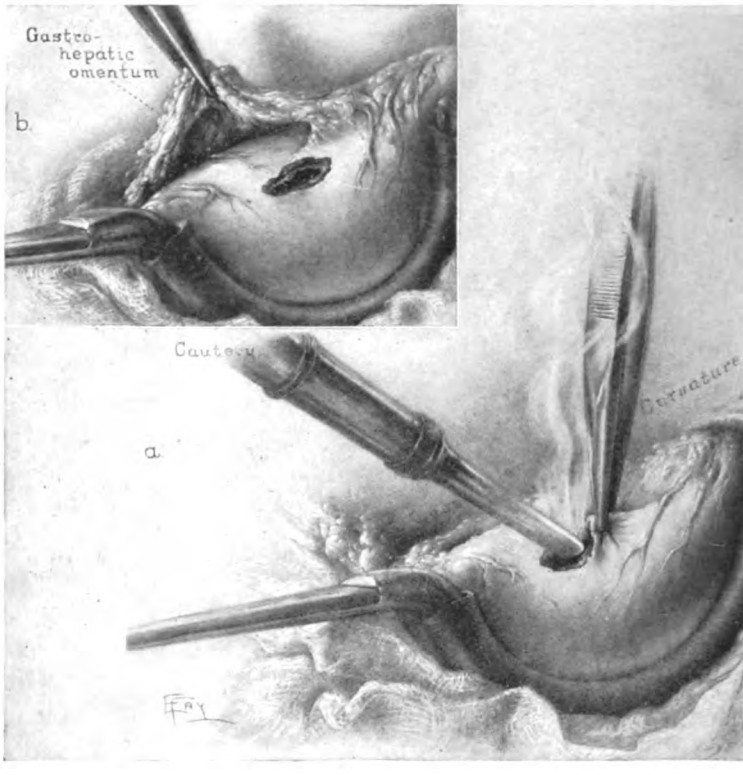
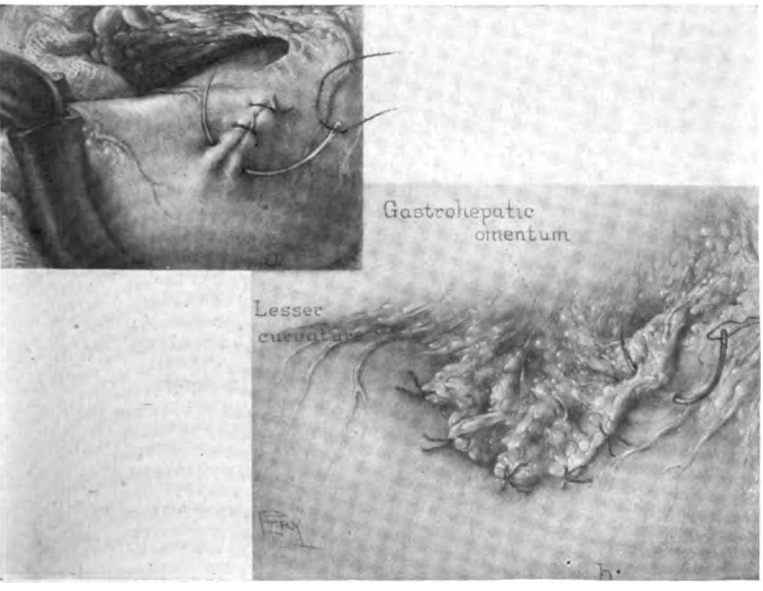


FIG. 287. a, BURNING OUT ULCER. b, ULCER COMPLETELY BURNED
(*Balfour.*)

infolded the mucosa, and has secured accurate serous apposition
anterior and posterior aspects of the stomach. The clamps
removed, and if any vessel bleeds it is secured by a ligature
separate stitch. The whole line of sutures is then reinforced
tinuous Pagenstecher's suture which begins on the posterior s
the lower end, and continues along the whole line to the en
suture line on the anterior surface.

'he aperture in the gastro-hepatic omentum is then closed, the s removed, and the abdomen closed.

f excision of the ulcer in this way should seem impossible, or very ult, the centre—the 'core,' so to speak—of the ulcer may be excised, the aperture which remains closed by interrupted suture. In this



G. 288. a, First Row of Sutures closing Opening from which Ulcer been excised. b, Ulcer Area covered by Gastrohepatic Omentum. *our.*)

an artificial perforation is produced and closed. When perforation ı ulcer in this situation occurs we know that its closure results in ermanent relief of the patient in almost every case.

'reatment of gastric ulcer by cautery (Balfour). The technique scribed is as follows:

'he portion of the gastrohepatic omentum in the region of the ulcer refully dissected free from the lesser curvature (see Fig. 286). ulcer is carefully palpated and with a Pacquelin cautery maintained dull heat the point is slowly carried through the ulcer until an cial perforation is produced. The moderate burning is continued the actual area of the ulcer is entirely destroyed (see Fig. 287). ıre of the opening is then made by interrupted sutures of chromi- catgut reinforced by mattress sutures of silk. The reflected

gastrohepatic omentum is then replaced over the site of the
fixed by superficial interrupted sutures of fine silk (see Fig. 28

OPERATION FOR PERFORATING ULCER OF STOMACH OR DUODENUM

It is in cases of this class that the speed and dexterity wh
to the surgeon as the fruit of long practice are of the greates
The operation should of course be thorough, and all its det
be observed with the most sedulous care; but the more speed
things are done the greater is the chance of success. As a ge
the position of the ulcer can be localized to one or other side of t
line before the operation is begun, and accordingly the incisio
fall upon the abdomen to right or left of the middle line. I
done there will be no need for any other incision than the vertic
transverse division of one or other rectus muscle is then unn
and is at all times most undesirable.

Operation. The abdomen being opened, fluid will escape
if the fluid be bile-stained a perforation will probably be fou
duodenum, and it is there that a search should first be made
fluid be clear or turbid, containing the remnants of food recen
the perforation may be sought in the stomach. This fluid i
sterile, and is inodorous. The ulcer may be difficult to disc
may be covered over by adherent masses of thick lymph;
these are abundant the search should be especially directed.
the sizzling or the bubbling of gas may lead the surgeon to
from which the leakage is occurring. The ulcer, as a rule,
quite readily by searching along the lesser curvature, close
it usually lies. As soon as it is found I think it best to secure it
by a single catgut suture taken across it. By this means that
leakage from the stomach, which is nearly always full, is p
My own practice then is to request the anæsthetist to pass the
tube, which is ready for use, in order to empty the stomach. Th
the subsequent suturing very much easier; and when the sti
complete the stomach may be washed out with advantage. T
catgut suture, together with the ulcer, is now infolded by a dou
of stitches of thin Pagenstecher's thread, passed with a fine c
testinal needle. This infolding and suture may be easy or
extremely difficult. It is made difficult by the induration and
which surround the ulcer. The hard œdematous margins of
do not hold the sutures easily. As soon as the stitch is passed it
through; or the attempt to bring the edges together may be

ible by the inflexible nature of the stomach-wall at this part. If difficulties be encountered they can only be overcome either by a much wider hold of the stomach, or by covering over the gap stomach by a layer of omentum. The former is to be preferred. iffness and brittleness, as a rule, do not extend over a large area, tures passed wide of this hold firmly enough. A double layer is nd each layer extends well beyond the ulcer at each extremity. A omentum may then be placed over the suture line and fixed there or two interrupted stitches.

e toilet of the peritoneum must now receive attention. The views surgeons as to how this may best be accomplished do not coincide, y own practice has from time to time been modified as my experi- ncreased, and as the time which had been allowed to lapse between ation and operation by degrees became curtailed. In most cases local wiping is all that is necessary; a hot moist swab is used, gently patted on to the parts immediately in the neighbourhood. should be no rubbing or ungentle handling. The abdomen is then without drainage. If there be more extensive soiling of the peri- n, the process of cleansing must extend further. Hot swabs are to one or both kidney pouches, where fluid is prone to trickle lodge, or into the iliac fossa or into the pelvis. If there be a infection of the peritoneum, the whole cavity being full of fluid, e pelvis overflowing, then anything like a complete cleansing by nical means is impossible. I am then content to cleanse, as best I rriedly, with swabs, which are packed away in the abdomen while uring of the ulcer is being done. When these are removed, a hand ed down into the pelvis and a median incision immediately above es is made, and a very large drainage tube is passed to the bottom pelvis. I do not practise, nor do I approve of, lavage. It prob- es little to cleanse the cavity, and it is not seldom a cause rather preventative of shock. Drainage, though rarely necessary, when ould be ample. A split rubber tube in the suprapubic wound may gh, but other openings may in very late cases be needed to drain c fossæ or kidney pouches. A drain may also be left in the l wound. I find that I have drained only two cases in the last upon which I have operated, and in these two only suprapubic e was necessary.

further and perhaps the most important point is concerned with essity of performing gastro-enterostomy at once. When, for e, there has been a perforation of a duodenal ulcer, the infolding ure will, of necessity, have caused some narrowing of the lumen gut. This lessening of the lumen is certain to become worse as

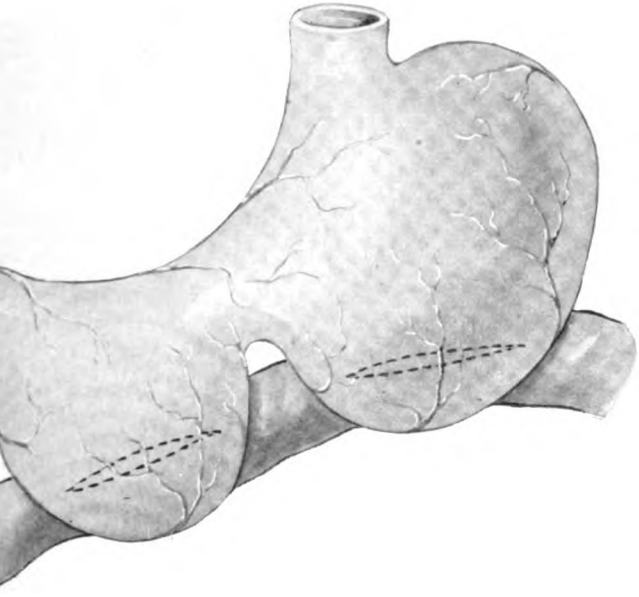
time passes and cicatricial contraction occurs in the area of the or duodenum involved in the operation. Again, not a few recorded in which two perforating ulcers have simultaneously, simultaneously, occurred; or in which, after the secure closur ulcer, a second has perforated a week or more later, involving d second operation. It is a consideration of cases such as these w drawn attention to the question of the advisability of gastro-ent as an addition to the closure of the rupture in the base of the ul own practice is to perform gastro-enterostomy when stenosis caused at or near the pylorus, or in the isthmus of an hour-glass by the closure of the ulcer; when stenosis is likely to result in th as a result of the healing of the parts engaged in the operation; a second ulcer is present. The performance of gastro-enteros a routine procedure is certainly not necessary, and in some cases- example, when a solitary ulcer near the cardia on the lesser c has ruptured—it is quite unnecessary. Inasmuch as it adds ap to the length of an operation, every minute of which is of imp it is then positively dangerous.

After-treatment. The operation being completed, the p propped up in bed, and continuous rectal infusion is given. Thi the thirst of the patient, and also the need for giving much flui mouth for the first thirty-six or forty-eight hours. I allow th to drink as soon as the nausea due to the anæsthetic is over.

OPERATION FOR HOUR-GLASS STOMACH

In the condition known as hour-glass stomach there is a div the stomach into two cavities by a constriction which may b at any point between the cardiac and pyloric orifices, but wh usually closer to the latter. This constriction is always acqui is always pathological. It may be due to the cicatricial constri a simple ulcer, to compression of the stomach by external a which probably have their origin in an ulcer, or to a new grow

When the narrowing of the body of the stomach is due to a ulcer, there is not seldom evidence of the existence of a seco at or near the pylorus. This circumstance may add gravely surgeon's task in devising an appropriate operation. For the complement of such a stomach is often dilated, by reason of the tion at its outlet. If then gastro-enterostomy be performed the cardiac pouch and the small intestine, the pyloric pouch undrained; if the distal pouch be engaged in the anastomosis, the pouch is unaffected and the chief disability from which the



9. HOUR-GLASS STOMACH. Double gastro-enterostomy.

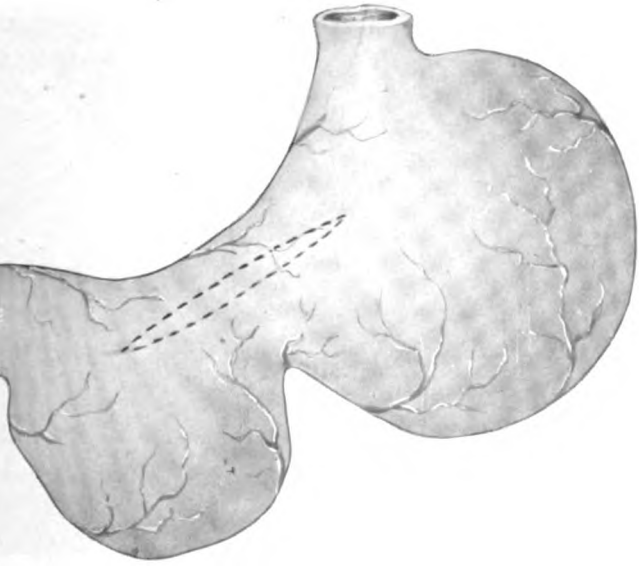


FIG. 290. HOUR-GLASS STOMACH. Gastroplasty.

suffered remains unrelieved. It is accordingly sometimes nec
perform a double operation.

The following operations may be needed:—

1. Gastro-enterostomy: anterior or posterior.
2. Double gastro-enterostomy, a junction of the intestine be
with each sac: Weir and Foote's operation.

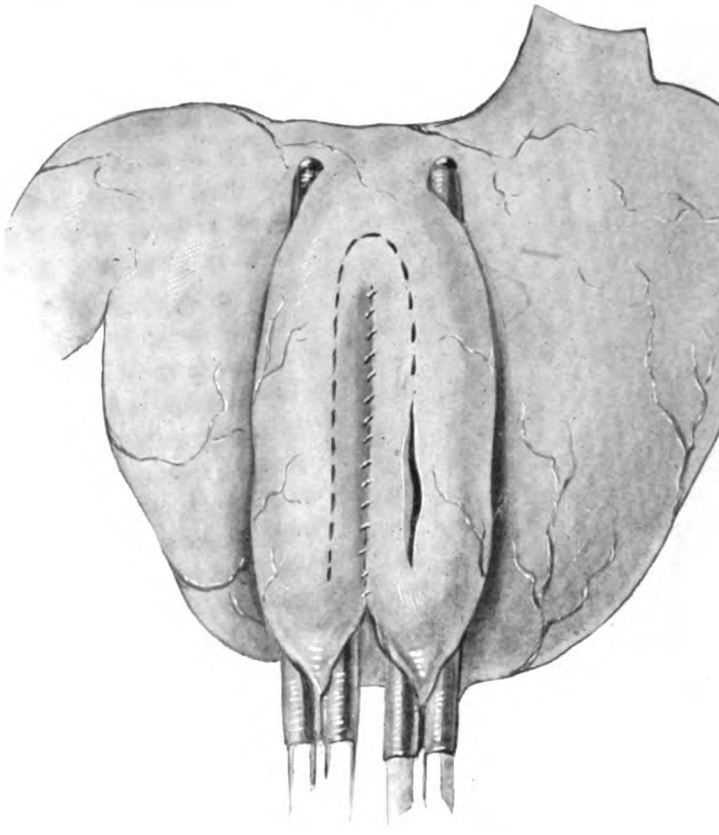


FIG. 291. HOUR-GLASS STOMACH. Kammerer's method of Gastro

3. Double gastro-enterostomy in Y: Monprofit's operation.
4. Gastroplasty.
5. Gastro-gastrostomy.
6. Partial gastrectomy.
7. Stretching of the constriction, as in Loreta's operation.
8. Duodenostomy or jejunostomy.

1. In the majority of cases *gastro-enterostomy between th*
pouch and the jejunum will be the operation of choice. W

ly the single constriction present, the ulcer which has caused it s a rule in the prepyloric portion of the stomach. The cardiac is therefore very large—larger, indeed, than the whole stomach arily is—whereas the pyloric pouch is not more than 2 or 3 inches gth, has undergone no dilatation, being unobstructed at its outlet, s in no need of direct surgical treatment. The problem then with

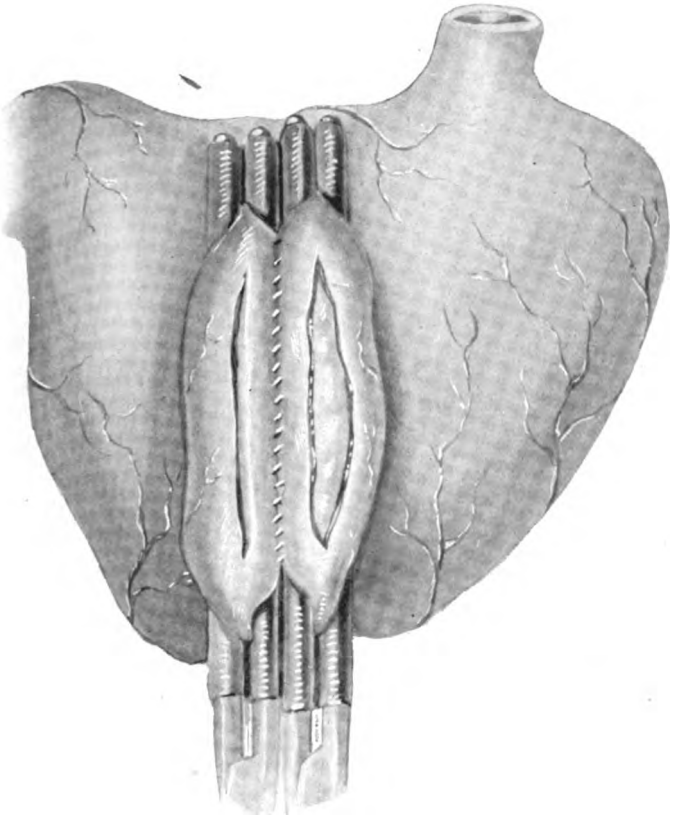


FIG. 292. HOUR-GLASS STOMACH. Gastro-gastrostomy. The clamps applied, one on each pouch.

the surgeon has to deal is precisely that which confronts him in e of simple pyloric stenosis, and gastro-enterostomy is the chosen dure. It is rare to find a difficulty in the performance of the pos- operation, but there may be an adhesion of the stenosing ulcer to ancreas, with so many surrounding adhesions that the hinder sur- of the stomach cannot easily be reached, and the anterior operation

has to be performed. These procedures are carried out in t
described elsewhere.

2. *Double gastro-enterostomy.* Weir and Foote in one ca
this method. Considering it desirable to ensure the emptyi
pouches, they attached the jejunum to each, the two openi
bowel being near to one another. I have never adopted th
To perform it, it is necessary that both pouches should be l
would otherwise not
of separate drainag
are large, then the
of gastro-enteroston
seem to be preferab
are no indications fo
cedure which are
think, better met by
ations.

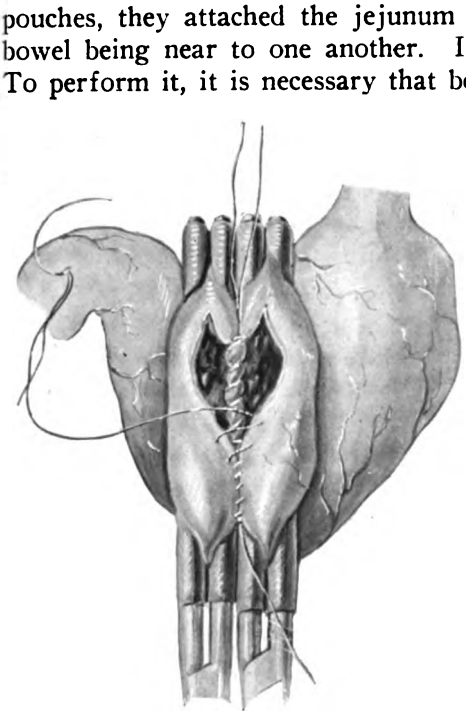
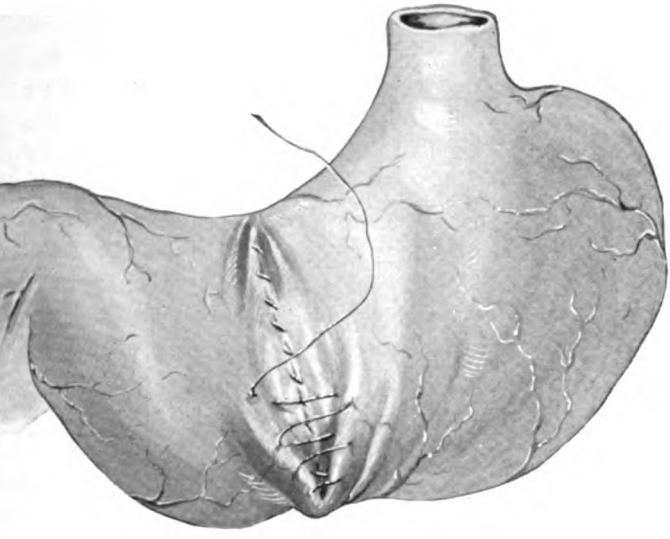


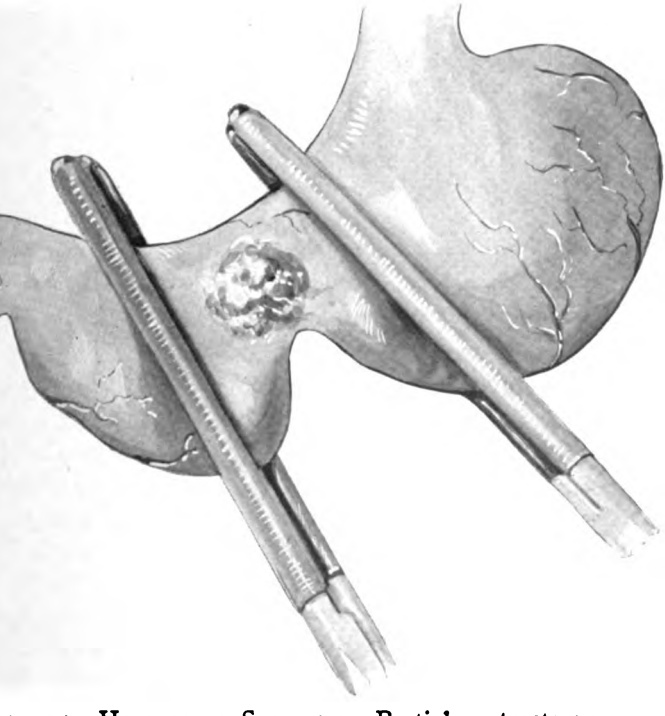
FIG. 293. HOUR-GLASS STOMACH.
The inner suture.

3. *Monprofit's*
This is an applicatio
method of gastro-e
to hour-glass stom
jejunum is divided
about 6 inches belo
ure; the distal cut
tached to the card
and the proximal to
the distal about 3 in
this point; so th
pouch is drained.
division of the jejun
about 10 inches below the first division: the distal end here
to the pyloric pouch, and the proximal end again to the s
distal: in this way the pyloric pouch is drained. The objecti
operation are that it is necessarily tedious and prolonged, fo
anastomoses having to be made, and that the indications for i
ance are more appropriately met by a different procedure.

4. *Gastroplasty.* Gastroplasty is the application to the b
stomach of a similar procedure to that which is followed
pyloric stenosis in the operation of pyloroplasty. And just a
operation, at first sight attractive, has proved in its results ex
satisfactory, so with gastroplasty has a secondary operatio
often necessary. A modification of pyloroplasty introduced
and since known by this name, has given better results. Ka



HOUR-GLASS STOMACH. The outer suture nearly complete.



IG. 295. HOUR-GLASS STOMACH. Partial gastrectomy.

adopted Finney's procedure in a modification of gastropla converts the operation almost into one of gastro-gastrosto operation is carried out exactly as in Finney's method. C applied to the two compartments of the stomach close to the sero-muscular suture is applied from the isthmus to the grea ture; an inverted U or V shaped incision is made in front of th above through the isthmus and laterally down each complem stomach to the greater curvature. The inner through-a suture is then introduced, and finally the anterior sero-muscula completed. (For details see Finney's operation, p. 623.)

5. *Gastro-gastrostomy or gastro-anastomosis*, first sug Wölfler, is indicated in those cases in which there is a tight the centre of the stomach, with a surface of healthy stomach-w side of it sufficient for a wide anastomosis. There must be narrowing in the pylorus or in the duodenum, so that when th tion in the body of the stomach has been relieved there is impediment to the onward passage of food. This operation in lines follows the method already described for gastro-enteros two pouches are drawn well up into the wound, isolated by l swabs, and seized by a clamp which embraces the whole brea stomach on each side of the constriction from the lesser cu the greater. The two clamps are then laid side by side, and e of the operation carried out as in gastro-enterostomy. When are removed a few additional stitches are needed to ensure shall be no tension on the suture lines.

6. *Partial gastrectomy* is not often necessary in the tre hour-glass stomach. The indications are chiefly two: first of carcinoma of the stomach, a central cylinder being remov stomach on each side being then united, or the stomach rem the ordinary operation of partial gastrectomy for carcinoma the pylorus; and, secondly, in all those cases in which an mass in the body of the stomach, though almost certainly ulcer, is yet possibly a malignant growth. The principle upo act here is that which Rodman has emphasized when urging tion of excision of the ulcer-bearing area in multiple ulcers, suspected of malignancy. In a case upon which I recently preferred to remove the greater part of the stomach in t described under the title Partial Gastrectomy (see p. 568).

7. *Digital divulsion* can only be very infrequently neede case, however, it served me very well. The case was one of stomach with a very large tumour at the isthmus. On o abdomen the mass was found to be adherent everywhere, to t

wall in front, and the pancreas behind, so that access to the small diac pouch, sheltered under the costal margin, was impossible. Re-val of the growth was equally out of the question. I therefore ssed one, two, three, and finally four, fingers through the tight con-iction from the distal to the cardiac pouch. The patient recovered, l now, several years later, is quite well. The tumour has entirely gone.

8. *Duodenostomy, or jejunostomy,* is only needed in cases of irre-vable carcinoma when the cardiac pouch is too small or too inacces-le to permit of an anastomosis being attempted.

CHAPTER IV

GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY

THE performance of gastro-enterostomy consists in the m
an anastomosis between the stomach and the small intestin
jejunum is now always selected for attachment to the stomach,
name 'gastro-jejunostomy' is therefore commonly used for th
tion. Two methods of performing the operation are practised
the anterior surface of the stomach is engaged in the anastom
operation being described as 'anterior gastro-enterostomy' or '
operation'; in the other the posterior surface is selected, the
being known as 'posterior gastro-enterostomy' or 'Von
operation.'

Indications. The following are the indications for this pr

(i) *In certain cases of gastric or duodenal ulcer.*

(*a*) In cases of perforating ulcer of the pyloric portion
stomach, or of the duodenum, when the closure of the perforatio
such narrowing of the outlet of the stomach that it would be
or impossible for food to pass.

(*b*) In cases of perforating ulcer of the stomach when oth
in or near the pyloric region are disclosed, ulcers which are ca
are likely to cause as they heal, some hindrance to the free onw
sage of food, or are themselves likely to perforate.

(*c*) When perforation has occurred at the isthmus of
glass stomach, and the closure of the perforation has narrowed
sage through the isthmus to a dangerous degree.

(*d*) In cases of hæmorrhage, recurrent and increasing, fro
gastric or duodenal chronic ulcers.

(*e*) In all cases of chronic ulcer of the prepyloric or pyloric
of the stomach or of the duodenum. If however, as is explai
where, the ulcers are multiple, or are possibly becoming maligna
man's operation of excision of the ulcer-bearing area may be pr

(*f*) In cases of fibrous stricture at or near the pylorus,
healed ulcer, the symptoms of whose activity have long been in
The condition in such cases is one of simple pyloric obstruction

(*g*) In cases of perigastritis or periduodenitis in which the a
due probably to ulcer in the first instance, but possibly to othe

ystitis, are offering a mechanical impediment to the proper
ne stomach.

ose rare cases of obstruction of the pylorus or duodenum
calculi which have ulcerated through from the gall-bladder
ted upon two such cases in which at the first glance the
nalignant disease seemed irresistible).

tain cases of hour-glass stomach, when the constriction
n the pylorus; or when gastroplasty has been performed.
the cardiac, in the latter the pyloric, complement is engaged
nosis.

ses of carcinoma of the stomach, or in the rare cases of
luodenum, in which the growth is already causing obstruc-
y soon to cause obstruction by its increase in size, provided
e growth cannot safely be removed. The operation may
rmed as a preliminary to gastrectomy in cases where a
wth is still limited to the stomach, but the patient is so
that an immediate reaction has every prospect of being
cases gastro-enterostomy permits a patient to take a great
id nourishment, and very rapidly to gain strength for the
ble operation which is performed two or three weeks later.

ses of congenital (infantile) hypertrophic stenosis of the
ch cases, if any surgical treatment is necessary, and in my
ry rarely is so, gastro-enterostomy is to be preferred to all
ns. It is, however, only fair to add that pyloroplasty in
ble hands of Mr. Clinton Dent has proved very successful.

ses of corrosion of the gastric mucosa by caustic fluids,
es, carbolic acid, nitric acid, soap-lye, or the like. If the
f the stomach only be affected gastro-enterostomy must
and it may be advantageously combined with temporary

tain cases of acute dilatation of the stomach, where there
at or near the pylorus or in the duodenum at the crossing of
esenteric vessels.

briefly the indications for gastro-enterostomy; but it is
ual importance to mention the conditions in which the
t not be performed. In the first place, it cannot be too
ted that this operation must not be done for the relief
unless there is a demonstrable organic cause for them
ch or duodenum. Symptomatic gastro-enterostomy, if
the expression, cannot be too strongly condemned. The
no doubt be asked at times to operate upon patients who
from vomiting, for which an ulcer of the stomach is

assumed to be responsible. Unless a definite organic cause c covered, a cause fully adequate to evoke the symptoms, this must not be practised. The surgeon, moreover, should not b with a few fine strands of adhesions or a doubtful thickening o ing of the stomach-wall. If symptoms are caused by a chron the stomach its demonstration calls for no effort of imaginatio part of the surgeon or the onlookers. The operation is va cases of atonic dilatation of the stomach and in cases of ga for both of which it has been warmly recommended, and n performed. It is not in my opinion admissible in either conditi an ulcer is found upon the lesser curvature near the cardiac stomach excision of the ulcer is preferable to gastro-enteros excision is not always possible on account of adhesions to th (chiefly) to the pancreas. In such circumstances gastro-enter the proximal side of the ulcer will be necessary.

POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY

The operation of posterior gastro-enterostomy is perfor following manner:—

The abdomen is opened by a vertical incision 4 to 5 length, about 1 inch to the right of the middle line betwee form cartilage and the umbilicus. The anterior sheath of th opened and the muscle fibres split, or the body of the muscle outwards, and the posterior sheath and the peritoneum th together. The outer displacement of the muscle probably leav firmer abdominal wall when healing is complete, but I have seen any weakness of the scar after the separation of the rec and that was in a case several years ago, in which Pagensteche was used to suture the various layers of the abdominal w suppuration subsequently occurred.

The abdomen being opened, an inspection of the whole st of the duodenum and gall-bladder is necessary. This examina not be omitted, nor may it be only perfunctory. Unless it i observed an hour-glass stomach may be overlooked, as in severa cases, or a duodenal ulcer, or old-standing gall-bladder chan calculi may escape recognition, and the patient's recovery seriously prejudiced. The few minutes expended in this in are well spent, for if the surgeon has begun the operation in th tion of performing gastro-enterostomy he may find that other are necessary,—gastro-gastrostomy, gastroplasty, gastrectomy, cystotomy alone or in addition to gastro-enterostomy. The s

withdrawn from the abdomen, together with the transverse colon the omentum, which are turned upwards so that the under surface e transverse mesocolon is exposed. At the same time the duodeno- al flexure and the jejunum at its origin are recognized, and the tion which the jejunum takes is noticed. A thin peritoneal fold ly attaches the first ½ inch of the jejunum to the under surface of

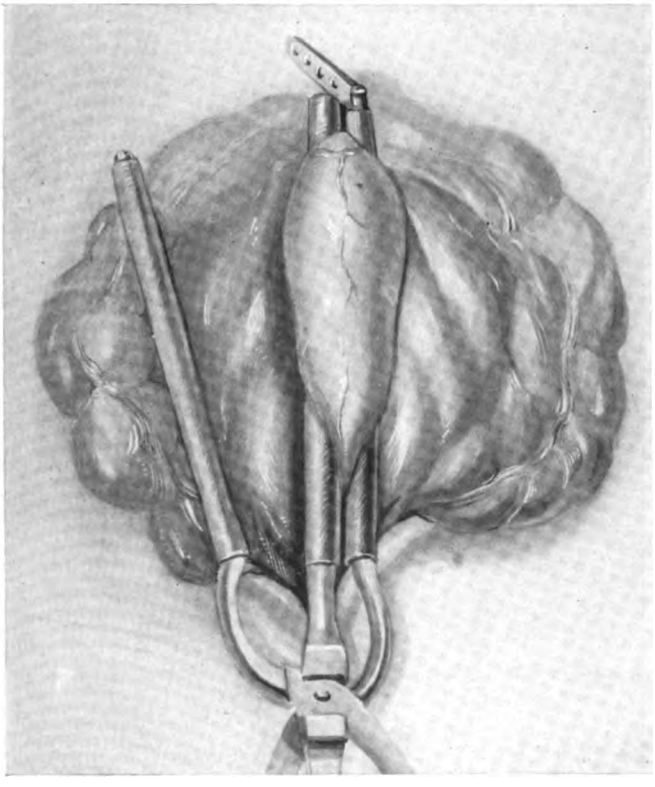


FIG. 296. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY.
Application of the clamp to the stomach.

esocolon. At the point where this leaves the mesocolon a pair of ps is applied and the mesocolon drawn well away, by means of them, the posterior surface of the stomach. The mesocolon is then in- , or a snip made through it with the scissors, and the lesser sac thus ed. The rent in the mesocolon is then enlarged until it is 3 inches gth. The opening of the lesser sac is not always an easy matter, for may be adhesions of the upper surface of the mesocolon to the rior wall of the stomach, or a separation between the layers may be

made in the erroneous belief that the lesser sac has been op
seizing the under layer with forceps in the way I have mentio
space is made upon which the incision may fall. Occasional
may be wounded; if so, it is ligatured at once with very fine c
avascular area is of course chosen for the incision, and
wounded is therefore insignificant in size and quite unimport

The stomach is then inspected again from the front, an
left hand that exact portion of the viscus which it is desired to
the anastomosis is pushed from above downwards through t
in the mesocolon in such manner that the posterior surfa

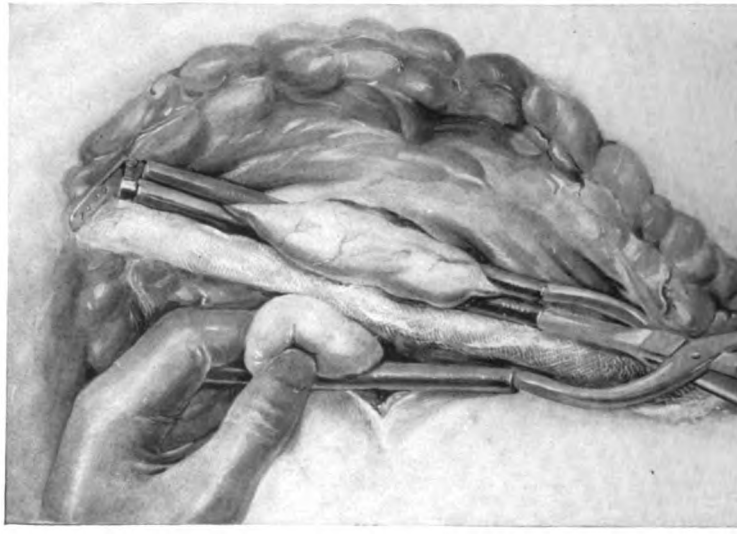


FIG. 297. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY.
Application of the clamp to the jejunum.

grasped by the surgeon's right hand and pulled well through
sufficient to allow of the easy application of the clamp. A f
made upon the stomach from the lesser curvature to the gre
a vertical line. To do this the clamp is applied with the han
surgeon's right side, and the tip of the blades pointing to
patient's head. With the three-bladed clamp, the two upper
the stomach (the uppermost blade bears the loose flange).
is now turned until it lies horizontal and transverse, the hand
the assistant, the tip of the blades towards the surgeon. The
part of the jejunum is now pulled taut from the duodeno-jeju
in readiness to be clamped by the two lower blades of the th
clamp; but before it is so seized two points must be observed

ıe whole of the transverse colon, stomach, and omentum must be
d backwards into the abdomen through that part of the incision
lies above the clamp; when this is done a large hot flat swab is
l over the wound, coming close up to the clamp, and at each end
lying it a little. Then between the stomach and the jejunal fold as
ulled up to be grasped by the clamp a long thin strip of hot moist
is placed, to lie beneath the centre blade of the clamp so as to
any possible discharge which may chance to trickle backwards.
ejunum is now clamped. In doing this the gut is pulled up very

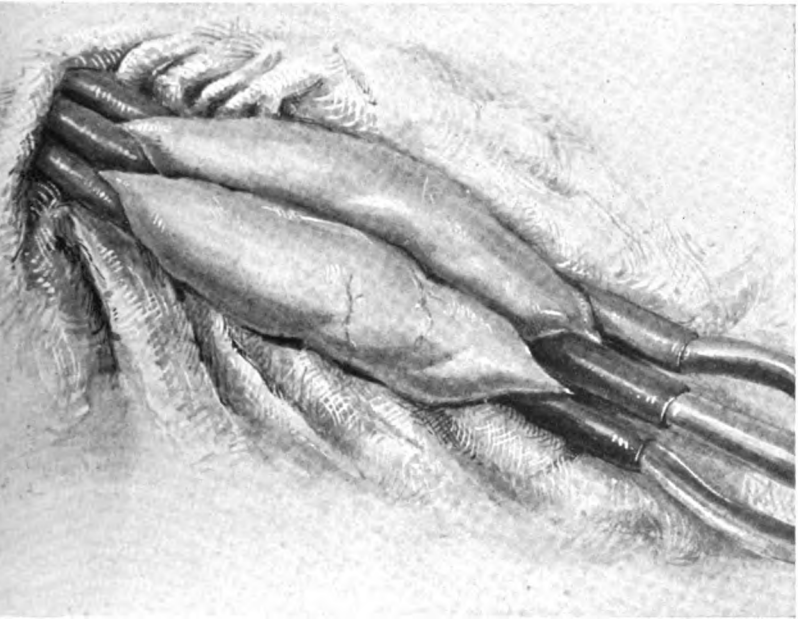


FIG. 298. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY.
The viscera clamped and surrounded by gauze.

from the flexure, and care is taken to see that its proximal end
twisted or kinked. In a few cases the upper end of the jejunum is
ent to the under surface of the mesocolon, or more rarely to the
ior abdominal wall. It chances that I have noticed this condition
socolic adhesion more especially in cases of intractable duodenal
It is worth noting that the adhesion invariably in my experience
he jejunum to the right of the flexure. These adhesions must be
completely up to the flexure before the gut is embraced by the
When it is secured the flange on the top of the upper blade is
over the middle and lower blades so as to pull the blade-tips well

together. A second large moist swab is placed below the c
ing in the lower part of the wound.

All that is now seen outside the abdomen is the clamp,
the folds of the stomach and jejunum to be anastomosed
3 to 4 inches in length, closely surrounded in all parts by th
gauze swabs. There is, of course, no 'exposure of visce
out this operation, if these steps be properly observed;
no uncommon thing to hear this supposed detraction fro
of the operation discussed. The union of the two viscera i
Two sutures only are used, both continuous. The outer su

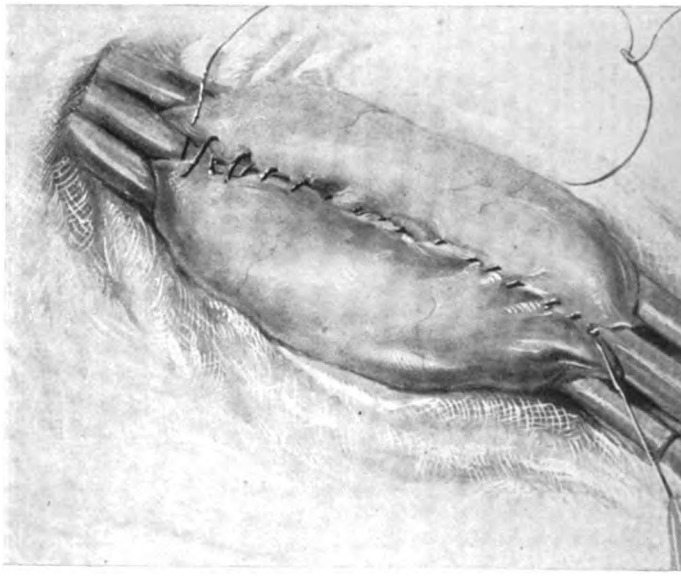
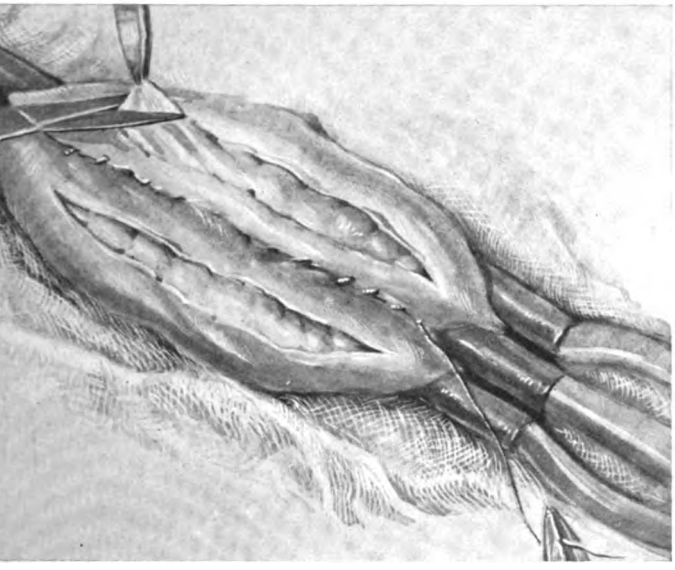


FIG. 299. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY.
The first line of suture; sero-muscular.

muscular; the inner includes all the coats. The needle
curved needle of my own pattern; it is slender, five-eighth
in its curve, has a slot eye, and is of such a diameter that it is
degree thicker than the finest Pagenstecher's thread wh
These needles are made by Down Bros. This needle pic
automatically the exact amount of the viscera that is ne
because of the relationship between its thickness and that
which it carries there is no 'pull' necessary when the th
drawn through the puncture which the needle has already

The first suture introduced is a sero-muscular suture.
the left end of the viscera engaged in the clamp (that near

ught directly along in a straight line until the tip of the
l. It is here that the greater curvature lies, and care is
e that the lowest part of the curvature is engaged in the
rge vessels which at this point lie along the curvature
eir branches to the stomach may readily be avoided. As
roduced it is pulled fairly tight so as to bring the apposing
together. The part of the thread between the last stitch
when drawn upon raises up a little hillock on each viscus,



OSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY. Excision of the mucosa.

the next insertion of the needle is to be made, and making
easier. The number of introductions of the needle is
ight to ten to the inch, and at least 2½ inches should be
suture. When this first line is completed the needle is
time.

is now made about ¼ inch in front of this suture into
nd intestine. The serous and muscular coats only are
e mucous coat then pouts into the wound. An ellipse of
then excised from both the stomach and the jejunum;
ch it is removed easily in one piece; from the jejunum it
ssible to take all that is necessary away in one piece, for
a large ellipse it is found that a small additional piece
uires to be snipped away. The inner suture is now intro-
aces all the coats of both viscera, and is hæmostatic. The

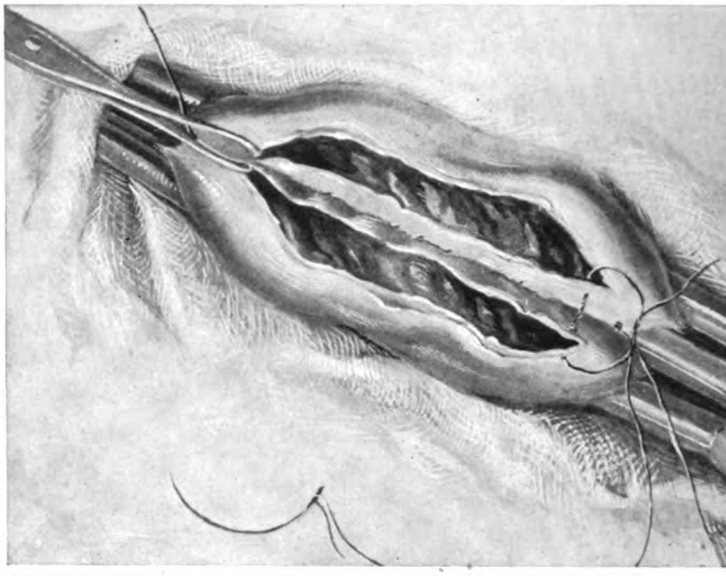


FIG. 301. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY.
The inner suture, through and through, begun.

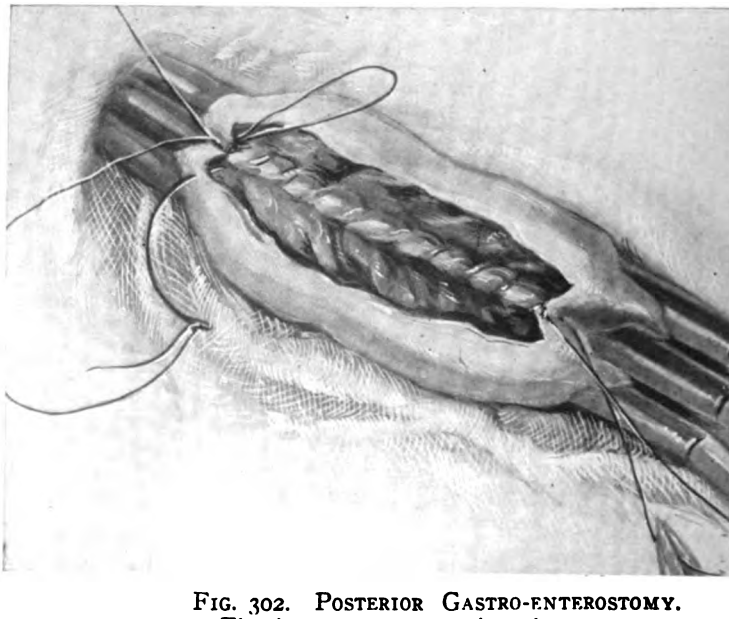


FIG. 302. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY.
The inner suture, turning the corner.

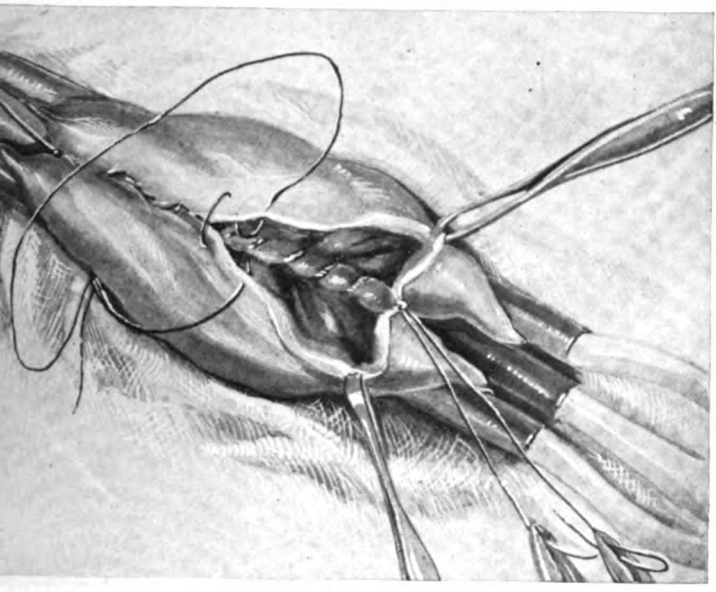


FIG. 303. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY.
The inner suture, showing the loop on the mucosa.

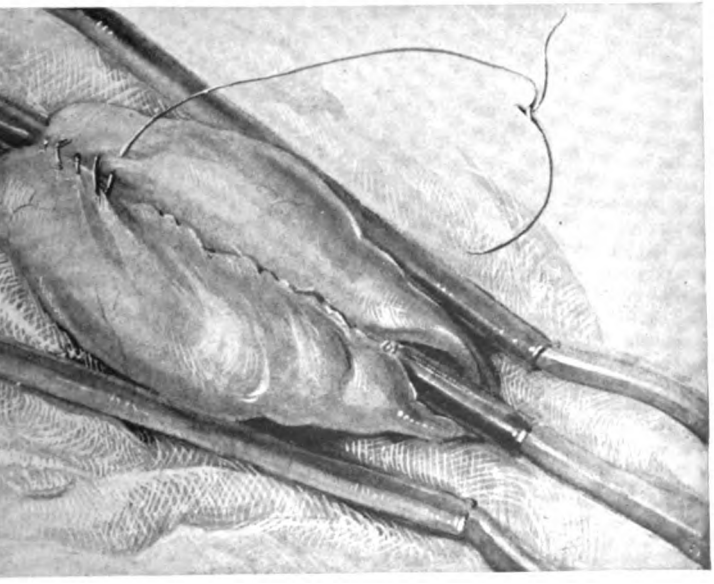


FIG. 304. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY.
inner suture complete; continuation of outer suture.

needle is first introduced through the extreme left end of t
passing from the mucous to the serous surface; then from t
the mucous surface at the extreme left end of the stomach
knot is tied it lies therefore upon the mucosa. The stitch is
along the posterior (in this position) margins of the openi
from mucosa to serosa on the jejunal side and from serosa t
the stomach side, continuously. It is drawn so tight that
opened by the incision is secured, and the same gentle pu

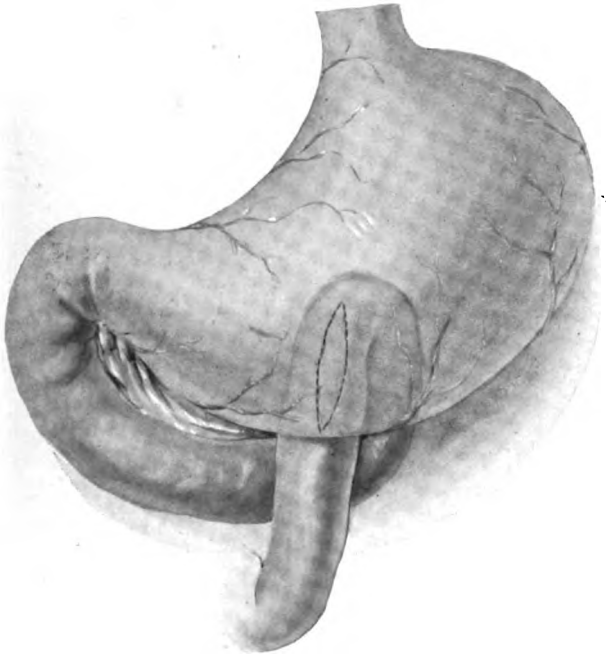
FIG. 305. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY. Removal of gauze strip.

FIG. 306. POSTER ENTEROSTOMY. Attachn omentum to suture line

thread raising up a fold for the next introduction of the ne
found of great service.

When the greater curvature of the stomach is reached
stitch may well be changed. I now frequently adopt for the
of the suture line the stitch best described as the 'loop on t
stitch. It is, I believe, identical with the old 'pillow-mak
The change to this stitch is made when the extreme right
suture line is reached. The needle at its last passage has
from the mucosa of the jejunum to the mucosa of the sto
which the thread now emerges. In the next passage the nee
to traverse from the stomach mucosa to the serosa. It is
through the anterior margin of the jejunum twice, first f
to mucosa, then from mucosa to serosa, so that a 'loop on t

eft. Then the needle engages the stomach, passing from serous to cous and from mucous to serous coats at each separate passage of needle. As the suture is drawn tight, the edges of the incision will een to infold themselves so that the serous surfaces come accurately apposition. This is the prettiest stitch in all surgery; to see the ersion of the two edges occurring as each turn of the suture is tened is quite pleasing. The suture is continued along the whole



IG. 307. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY. Completion of the operation.

th of the anterior margins until the original starting-point is reached, here the needle is made to emerge at the last on the mucosa, and the ad is tied to the end originally left long; the knot therefore lies on mucous surface. This inner suture may be of thin chromic catgut, f Pagenstecher's thread; it is immaterial which is chosen.

The parts are now wiped over with a moist swab, and the clamp ened, the terminal flange being first undone. The clamp is, however, in position until the final suture is complete. The hands of the eon and assistant are thoroughly rinsed, as both have been in contact ably with the mucosa, which, though generally sterile, may be in- ed. All instruments which have been used up to this stage are dis- ed and a clean sterile towel is placed below the wound, upon which

the fresh instruments may lie. Before the final suture is int
suture line is carefully inspected to see that there are no blee
The needle used for the first suture, temporarily laid aside, i
up again, and the sero-muscular suture continued from the gr
ture, which it had just reached, back again, in front of the in
and-through suture just completed, to the original starting-
lesser curvature. The final turn of the needle at this point i
after the original end of the suture, which was left long, has
up in the surgeon's left hand, so that the parts embraced by i

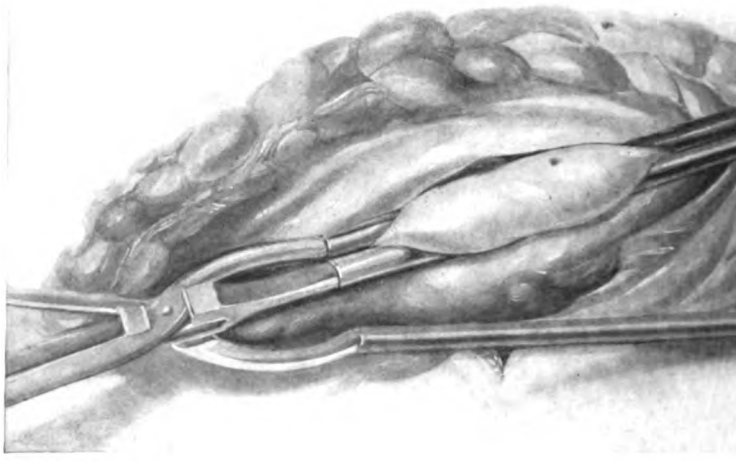


FIG. 308. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY. Antiperistaltic a
Application of clamp.

seen. The needle is then passed just beyond this first sutur
accurate closure at this point, and the suture knotted and

The parts are again cleaned, the clamp removed, and
gauze which lay behind it pulled out towards the surgeon so t
line of sutures can be inspected. The next step is to secure t
the opening in the mesocolon to the suture line. The trans
and omentum are pulled out from the upper part of the wou
they have been lying, and with the surgeon's left hand the
colon is lifted away from the abdominal wall until the mesoc
taut. An edge of the mesocolon is then seized with a clip a
introduced. The needle picks up the mesocolon at some dis
the edge, and then passes through the stomach and jejunum a
suture, or through the jejunum alone just as close as pos
suture line. When this stitch is tightened the roughened

e mesocolon is rolled inwards to the lesser sac. Three or four more tures of the same kind are introduced, all round the opening in the socolon, until this peritoneal layer fits closely round the line of anastosis. The reasons for these sutures are chiefly two: they close the ening into the lesser sac, leaving no gap through which the gut may ss and be strangled, and they ensure a smooth peritoneal fold over all lines of suture so that no rough edges or tags remain to which adhens may form. The stomach, colon, omentum, and jejunum are now urned within the domen, care being ken to see that the st six or eight hes of the jejunum e directed aright in ntinuation of the e of anastomosis.

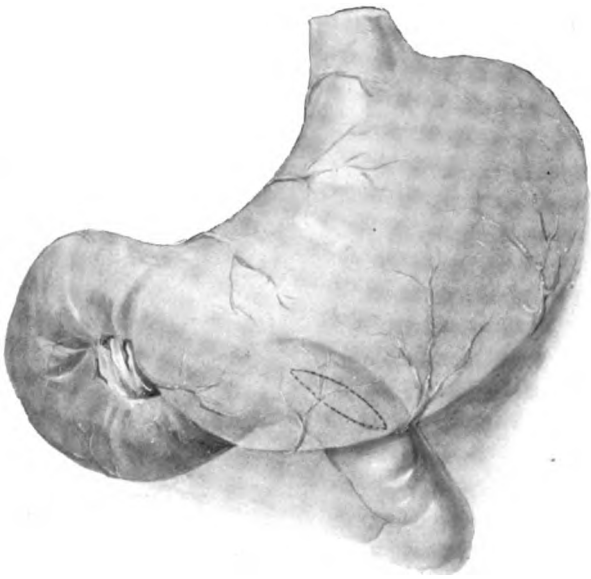


FIG. 309. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY. Antiperistaltic anastomosis. Operation complete.

Mayo's modification of this thod consists in king the attachnt of the jejunum the stomach along ne which is oblique m above downrds and to the left. yo supposed that s was the 'natural ection' of the jeum; but I have ewhere given reas to show that there is no 'natural' direction of the jejunum at its gin, for it is there free to move to any position in accordance with position of the body. The vertical position is consequently that st commonly occupied, and it is that which it is best to maintain in operation of gastro-enterostomy.

The method of applying the clamp and the position of the operation Mayo's modification are shown in the figures (see Figs. 308, 309); all other details of the operation are the same as those already described.

Roux's operation. A most ingenious, and in certain cases a t satisfactory, method of performing gastro-enterostomy has been gested by Professor Roux of Lausanne. It is described as the 'gasenterostomy in Y'. The intention of the operation is to reproduce

artificially at the new anastomosis the conditions w
pylorus. To give effect to this, the jejunum is divid
10 or 12 inches below the duodeno-jejunal flexure;
implanted into the stomach (making a new pylorus),
is attached to the side of the distal 3 to 4 inches below
the stomach (making a new diverticulum of Vater).
with the stomach is made on the posterior surface close
of the
The
meth
The
the s
and
usual
tion.
then
woun
it abo
the fl
the a
8 inc
base
with
being
now
inche
clamp
divisi
tle w
tery
distal
away
mal.

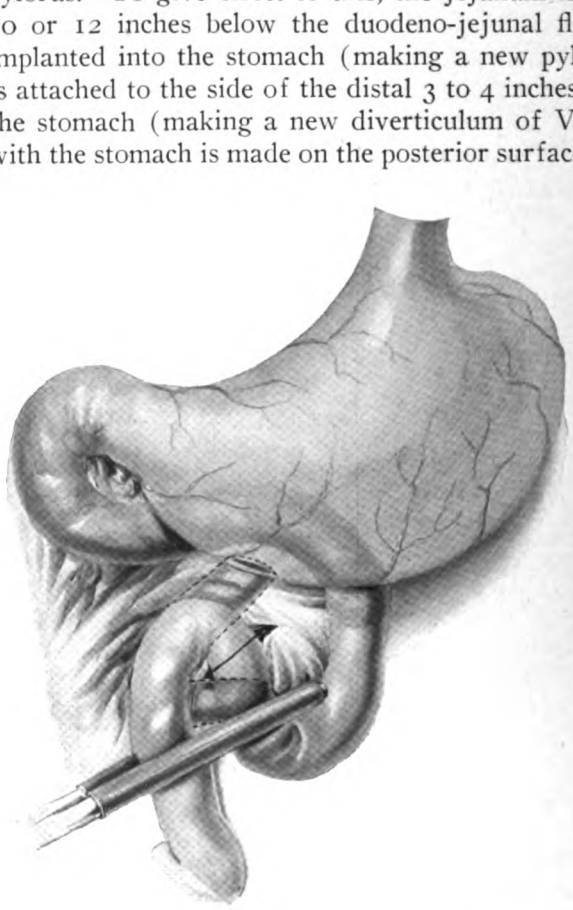


FIG. 310. POSTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY. Roux's operation. Application of clamp, division of gut.

ing is now united by suture to that portion of the stom
gripped by the clamp. Two layers of suture only are n
are passed in exactly the same manner as in the
described; Roux himself, however, uses three layers
anastomosis being completed, the divided proximal en
is now united to the side of the distal limb about 3
stomach. The opening in the transverse mesocolon
suture to the stomach around the anastomosis and
complete.

ANTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY

omen is opened by an incision through the right rectus muscle, mer method, and the stomach examined in all its parts. The perform anterior gastro-enterostomy having been made, the olon and the omentum are drawn out of the lower part of

Posterior Gastro-enterostomy. Roux's operation completed.

and are displaced upwards sufficiently to allow the discovery most part of the jejunum as it comes off from the duodeno- ure. The jejunum is lifted into the wound, and passed fingers until a point on it about 16 to 18 inches from the eached. This is the part which is to be engaged in the . A clamp is now applied, embracing about 3 to 4 inches of his part, the proximal end being to the left, the distal to the

right, that is, towards the operator. A similar clamp is no to the stomach, in such a manner that the portion of the ant of the viscus which is grasped lies obliquely from above down to the right. The lowest part of the fold lying in the blades mu point on the greater curvature of the stomach which lies vertic the right margin of the œsophagus; it is the lowest point of t curvature. The two clamps being applied, all the viscera nc by them are returned within the abdomen. A long thick gau now laid between the clamps, which are brought together, a

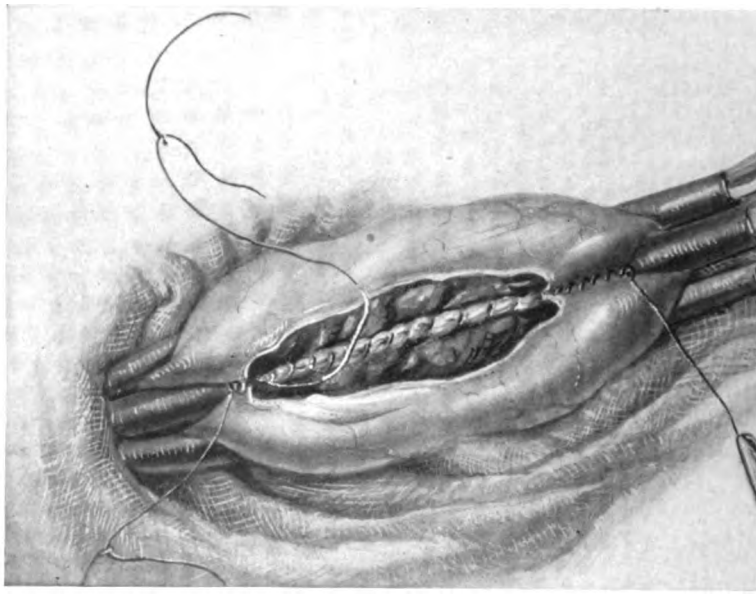


FIG. 312. ANTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY. Clamp applie

them are laid flat gauze swabs wrung out of hot saline solution. therefore, can now be seen except the clamps, the parts of t they hold, and the flat swabs which fit closely round them.

The union of the two viscera is now begun, and the ex which are given in the description of the operation of posteri enterostomy are followed, with a slight exception. When th of sutures has been introduced, the incision in the stomac intestine is not made to the full extent of this, but lies alon lower two-thirds of the line. The result is that when the s complete the outer suture extends upwards along the sto jejunum for some distance beyond the opening which conn There is a suspension therefore of the jejunum above the an

n being caused by the upper extremities of the outer line
Another point worthy of attention is this: the opening in
should lie not at the part exactly opposite the line of mesen-
ent, but rather on that side of the gut which lies nearest
in such manner as to secure that the lateral aspect of the
t against the anterior surface of the stomach.
e being completed the clamps are withdrawn. One or more
spension sutures may be placed between the stomach and
ne upper end, if thought desirable. When the viscera are
nin the
e should
see that
e colon
tum are
nd that
limb of
n does
onstrict
e colon.
thought
perform
astomo-
the af-
efferent
e jeju-
may
done
s below
. The
lengths

FIG. 313. ANTERIOR GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY. Complete.

re embraced by clamps, isolated by gauze swabs, and united
exactly the same manner as has been already observed in
f the union between the stomach and the bowel.

LICATIONS AND SEQUELÆ OF THE OPERATION

rience of the last decade has shown that the operation of
stomy, however brilliant its immediate results, is not free
risks, which, though perhaps tardy in appearance, are yet
putable to the operation. It is true that the majority of
cations are now abolished, or have had their frequency
d by recent improvements in technical details; but their
here is none the less incumbent upon me.

Hæmorrhage. The occurrence of bleeding after the of gastro-enterostomy may be of every grade of severity. I vomits at all after this operation, a very unusual circumsta own experience, the ejected matter is almost always just t altered blood. This blood has probably escaped into the stor time the anastomosis was made, and in quantity it is not mo or two teaspoonfuls. But there are cases in which the hæmo be considerable, and at least three cases have been reported has proved fatal. The blood may come from two sources ulcer or ulcers for which the operation has been performed, c incisions made into the stomach or jejunum at the line of a It is only rarely that the ulcer is the source, but the fact th times is so should compel the surgeon to exercise great ge handling the ulcer itself, or the part of the stomach or du which it lies. Furthermore, the policy of infolding all ul duodenum or of the pyloric portion of the stomach, which long advocated, should be adopted, for thereby the vessels g ulcer are carefully secured, and the risks both of perforat hæmorrhage are annulled. The hæmorrhage may occur als suture line, and it is probable that it does so in the majority have had two cases in which fresh blood, to the quantity of pint, was vomited within twenty-four hours of the operation; hæmorrhage came, no doubt, from the incision in the stom both the ulcers were small, and had never bled before. Thes were in my early experience; since I learnt to suture better I h cases of hæmorrhage, for the securing of all vessels by a stitch will effectually prevent even the slightest risk of blee untoward complication may therefore be avoided by the han parts during the operation with the most sedulous care, applying the inner suture that all vessels are well secured.

When hæmorrhage occurs in any quantity it is desirable cease giving fluids by the mouth, except perhaps adrenalin (of 1 in 1,000 solution in a dessert-spoonful of water every or every hour, till six or eight doses have been taken); lav stomach with water as hot as can be comfortably borne is useful.

Regurgitant vomiting. No small part of the literatu with operations upon the stomach is concerned with this c regurgitant vomiting. The 'vicious circle' has proved the m and the most frequent of the serious complications of gas stomy. I well remember that of the first thirteen cases of gas stomy that I saw as a resident officer, no fewer than nine died

nt vomiting. Vomiting comes on as a rule within the first
r days of the operation. In quantity the ejected matters vary
, but in the severer cases two or three pints are vomited
y-four hours. The ejected matters are bile-stained; in some
onsist of pure bile, in others the colour may be brownish
ur offensive. As a rule, the act of vomiting is painless, a
f fluid pours from the mouth, with little or no straining on
the patient.

ant vomiting is due to high intestinal obstruction. The
nay be at the anastomosis, either afferent or efferent opening
ated; or it may involve the jejunum a few inches below the

As a rule, the obstruction is at the afferent opening, and
lue to the fixation of a piece of intestine, weakened by the
its circular muscular coat, in such conditions that a loop
veen the duodeno-jejunal flexure (a fixed point) and the

As a result of a kink at the weakened spot the loop be-
rlogged'; it is found greatly distended and overfull when the
opened. Relief is afforded by entero-anastomosis, by the
engorged loop to the empty and collapsed intestine distal
uction. The efferent opening also may be obstructed by
he jejunum may be compressed by adhesions immediately
tachment to the stomach. Regurgitant vomiting is avoided
the posterior no-loop operation. Nevertheless, in some
is method has been practised there may be vomiting of bile,
nd painlessly. This condition may appear weeks or months
ration; it is distressing and troublesome, but not a serious
ealth. It is almost certainly due to some slight obstruction
no-jejunal flexure or at the upper end of the anastomosis to
the result of an improper application of the intestine rotated
is; or to the selection of a piece of intestine an inch or more
n on the jejunum, so that a very short loop is left which
her at the upper or at the lower end. When vomiting of
urs, recourse should quickly be had to lavage of the stomach.
ble how effectual this may be in lessening or even in entirely
is most distressing symptom. If the stomach be emptied
out once or twice daily, the vomiting may disappear, never
f, however, in spite of lavage, regurgitation still continues,
omen must be reopened and the mechanical defect, which is
ily recognizable, repaired at once. Entero-anastomosis be-
roximal and distal jejunal limbs, or the division of the
and the performance of Roux's gastro-enterostomy in Y
rt of the stomach, will usually be indicated.

Jejunal ulcer. The occurrence of this, perhaps the m
certainly the most interesting, complication of gastro-enter
first observed by Braun, and recorded in 1889. Since then
cases have been related.

The ulcer is found in the jejunum bordering on, or within
tance (usually within 1 inch) of the opening from, the stom
rule, it is solitary, but two, three, or in one case four, ulcer
found. The investigation of the recorded cases has shown m
types of this disease may be recognized.

(*a*) The ulcer develops rapidly and perforates shortly
operation. There are only three cases which can be inclu
group. The circumstances in all are similar: gastro-enter
performed for an ulcer at or beyond the pylorus, assoc
hyperacidity, which in two cases was intense; the progress f
few days was satisfactory, then suddenly there was an acu
pain followed by peritonitis and death. In all cases an ulcer
the anastomosis was found, and perforation had occurred in
eral peritoneal cavity.

(*b*) The ulcer develops within a few weeks or months of
tion, and the symptoms suggest a recurrence of the ulcer for
operation was performed. The cases in this group are m
symptoms are very similar to those which were caused by t
ulcer, in the stomach or in the duodenum, for which the g
ostomy was performed. These complaints are attributed
posed 'recurrence' of the ulcer. Secondary operations
formed for disabling symptoms or for perforation and
In these instances acute perforation had occurred in
ulcer.

(*c*) The ulcer develops languidly, and insidiously underg
acute' perforation, with the result that a tumour forms in,
upon, the epigastrium. About two-fifths of all the recorde
fall in this category. There are not usually any symptom
the patient takes serious notice. As a rule only some
comfort after meals or indigestion is noticed; on examinat
patient a distinct tumour is felt. When the abdomen is
jejunum at or near the anastomosis is found adherent usu
parietes. On separating the viscera a perforation into th
at the site of an ulcer a little below the anastomosis is
The condition, it will be seen, is precisely analogous t
'subacute perforation' in the stomach (see *Annals of Surg*
vol. xlv, p. 223).

(*d*) The ulcer perforates into a hollow viscus. The ulce

and perforation occurs after adhesion to a hollow viscus, omach or the colon.

examination of all recorded cases has shown that jejunal nly after operation for simple ulcer of the stomach or duo- ve found no instance in which the operation was performed This absence of jejunal ulcer in malignant cases may be due duration of life after operation—the patient has not time, develop an ulcer; or it may be due to the absence in most HCl from the gastric juice. Peptic ulcer has occurred more e anterior operation than after the posterior, though prob- er has been, and now certainly is, far more frequently r non-malignant conditions. All forms of gastro-entero- owever, furnished examples; the anterior and the posterior out entero-anastomosis, Roux's operation and the no-loop re cases have occurred in men, and in most instances free found in excess.

hat peptic jejunal ulcer may occur after gastro-enterostomy he surgeon to see that the greatest care is exercised by the e matter of diet for several months after operation. In for years has been unable or unwilling to take food, the after operation to health and a good appetite which can omfort be appeased, leads not seldom to over-indulgence and drink. It is probable that the same conditions are d which were responsible for the development of the in the stomach. It is most desirable that all patients n submitted to operation upon the stomach should report, iemselves, to their medical men for some months after

al obstruction. Several cases of intestinal obstruction stro-enterostomy are recorded. As I have mentioned, omiting is due to obstruction of the jejunum very high up, the anastomosis. Several other forms are described. I lost a patient from an internal hernia, the small intestine d through the opening made in the transverse mesocolon sac, and having become obstructed by the margins of this is accident may be prevented by closure of the opening, its g sutured to the stomach, jejunum, or suture-line, after the s complete. Other cases have shown obstruction of a length n has passed through a loop left between the duodeno- e and the anastomosis. This loop, together with the meso- a ring, and through this ring intestine has passed from n some cases, from left to right in others, to become stran-

gulated; in one case a volvulus of the bowel was also foun
In anterior gastro-enterostomy the loop of jejunum, if pul
(by selection for the anastomosis of a part too near the fl
constrict the colon. One case of obstruction due to the ac
piece of small intestine to the abdominal incision is also reco
bolt, *Lancet,* 1907, ii. 1461).

Diarrhœa. In some few cases diarrhœa after operati
observed; as a rule it is transient and easily relieved; in
however, it has been continuous and uncontrollable and ha
patient's death. Kelling has described two forms. Firstly, t
the diarrhœa is due to the escape into the intestine of a
which are not neutralized by the bile or pancreatic juice. Se
in which it is due to 'fermentation'. The latter he cons
serious, and is seen only in patients suffering from carci
those cases where HCl is deficient or absent. There is no
evidence of the existence of the first form. Indeed, a sur
own experience and of the recorded evidence available has s
is almost exclusively in cases of carcinoma that diarrhœa
that it is only in them that it is at all serious. The motions
offensive. Anschütz believes that the chief cause is the extr
tion of the patient, by a long-standing disease, at the time t
is performed; and he remarks that exactly the same type
uncontrol is found when there is carcinoma or advanced
disease in other parts than the intestine.

There is, however, no acceptable explanation which is a
all cases. So far as treatment is concerned we must attend
giving only sterile foods (not necessarily fluid) and admini
septics (isoform preferably), magnesia usta, and opium or
gents in large doses.

THE RELATIVE MERITS OF ANTERIOR AND POST
GASTRO-ENTEROSTOMY

The gradual transference of the allegiance of the surgeo
experience from the anterior to the posterior operation is
mere caprice, but to a confident belief that the latter operat
its immediate and remote results, is the better procedure.
which are to be discussed in this connexion are concerned

(*a*) Regurgitant vomiting.
(*b*) Peptic jejunal ulcer.
(*c*) Intestinal obstruction due to internal hernia.

Regurgitant vomiting. The causes of this most
complication are elsewhere discussed. It is only necessary

evidence of intestinal obstruction occurring at or near the
It occurs far more commonly after the anterior than after
operation; indeed in many of the early cases of the former
s the direct cause of death. It is now recognized that it is
of the 'loop' which is responsible for the onset of this
The jejunum, attached normally at the duodeno-jejunal
fixed by suture to the stomach at a point 15 or 18 inches
forms a loop, which is apt to become 'waterlogged'. At the
he anastomosis to the stomach occurs, not only is there an
ed point, but the gut at this part is weakened by the division
uscular fibres in its wall. That the obstruction occurs at the
(either afferent or efferent opening being blocked) is shown
nat relief from the vomiting is promptly ensured when the
bowel are united by the performance of entero-anastomosis.
s the responsible factor. If posterior gastro-enterostomy is
th a loop, regurgitant vomiting is as likely to occur as after
peration. It is in the abolition of the loop, by performing
sis close to the flexure, that safety lies. The posterior
erefore, is better than the anterior, not merely because it is
because, being posterior, it allows the jejunum close to the
engaged in this anastomosis, and the loop, consequently,
ted.

lcer. This condition has only been found to occur after
non-malignant diseases; it has never followed upon gastro-
for carcinoma. The number of recorded cases shows that
und more frequently after the anterior operation than after
perhaps because the lower opening into the bowel exposes
ch is more sensitive to acid contact.

hernia. Several forms of internal hernia are recorded.
ior operation it may be caused by the escape of the small
ards into the lesser sac, through the opening into the trans-
lon. I have myself lost one case through this accident.
nt of the mesocolon by a few stitches to the stomach, or
ch and jejunum along the line of suture, will, however,
ture into the lesser sac and prevent the occurrence of this
ia.

terior operation two forms of obstruction have occurred.
op of jejunum, being drawn up tightly from the flexure to
has constricted the transverse colon and occasioned an
fficiently severe to prove fatal. In the other loops of the
e have passed from right to left, or from left to right
ing formed by the under surface of the transverse meso-

colon and the jejunal loop as it passes from the flexure to mosis, and have become strangulated. In both cases it is jejunum which is the factor responsible.

Taking these points into consideration there can, I think, that the posterior no-loop operation is that which is, on al most satisfactory. It is sometimes argued that the posteri is not so suitable in many cases as the anterior method, o its difficulty and because of the necessary 'handling' and 'e the viscera. Those who argue thus have but little exper posterior operation, or employ a technique which is not The one operation is as easy as the other; there is very lit of the viscera in either case, and nothing more than a mo quite harmless exposure. I have a considerable experie operations, having performed the posterior operation over times and the anterior over seventy times. The results in th after-history of the two operations differ sensibly. After operation the patient is at once quite well. He has no sickne of nausea, is comfortable, and is soon eager for food. After operation there is sometimes a feeling of nausea, occasio vomiting, and appetite returns less rapidly. We should, h sider the results of the anterior method decidedly good (as are) were it not that they suffer by comparison with those the posterior operation.

GASTRO-DUODENOSTOMY (FINNEY'S OPER

The operation of gastro-duodenostomy was introduced by Jaboulay, who first performed it in 1894. He made two equal length, one in the stomach, the other in the duodenum these by suture, the pylorus being displaced backwards, as allow of the approximation of the two openings in front of i adopted a different method; he divided the duodenum comp and implanted the distal end into the anterior wall of the st closure of the proximal end. The operation of pyloroplast by Heinecke and Mikulicz consisted in dividing the pylorus t in cases where an ulcer has caused cicatricial stenosis, the being sutured in a vertical direction. The results of this ope first were very remarkable, but the lapse of months or of y bear out the early promise. Patients who had for a time enj health and normal appetites began to have a recurrence of t symptoms, and many of them submitted willingly enough t tion of gastro-enterostomy in order to obtain relief from th

Pyloroplasty, indeed, fell very properly into disuse. Dr. inney of Baltimore introduced what he termed a 'modified loroplasty,' to which the names of 'gastro-duodenostomy' -pyloro-duodenostomy' have been given. The simplest and ally accepted title is 'Finney's operation,' which is thus —

omen is opened by an incision to the right of the middle line, -enterostomy. The pyloric region of the stomach is exposed ed. Ad- hich at ould ap- tive any rocedure rformed adily to d per- tripping . The n of all dhesions and per- ost im- all the e opera- second he duo- ell strip- s by in- Kocher perito- ng the of the working in to- middle e inner incision odenum

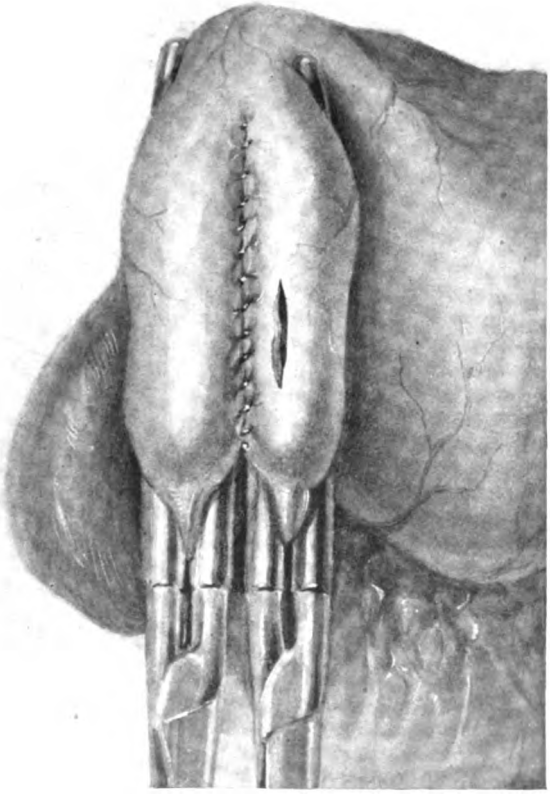


FIG. 314. FINNEY'S OPERATION.
The first suture; the stomach opened.

movable and can be lifted upwards and forwards into the vound. The pyloric part of the stomach, the pylorus and the cond parts of the duodenum—the parts, in fact, which are to in the operation—being thus made free, are then carefully

surrounded by hot moist swabs, which isolate them peritoneal cavity. The purpose of the operation is the stomach to the duodenum, and to this end clamps gripping those portions of the viscera in which the made. The clamps are then laid side by side a gauze. At the top of each there is a portion of the

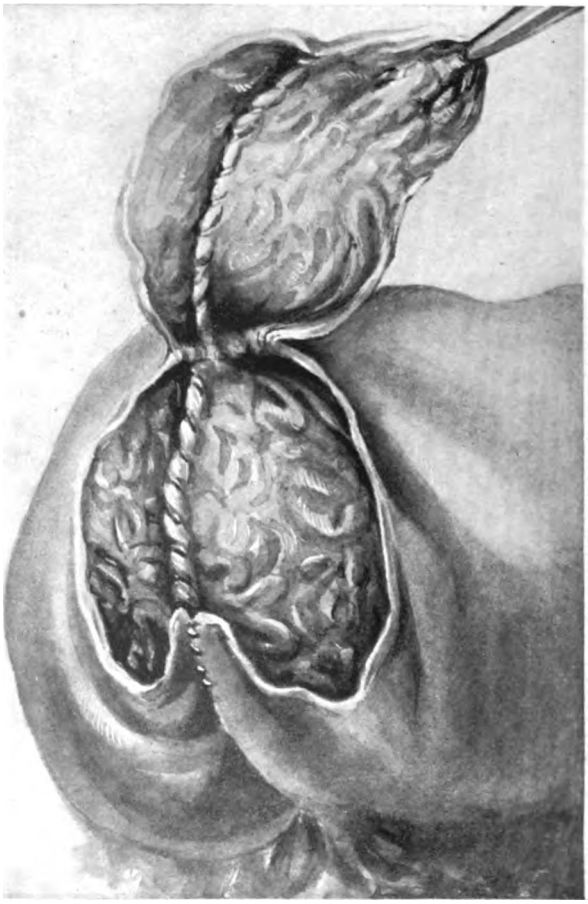


FIG. 315. FINNEY'S OPERATION.
Showing new disposition of the parts.

in gastro-enterostomy. The details of the operatio ther from those already described in the chapter deal tion.

I have rarely used Finney's operation, believi

Digitized by Google

are held to call for its performance are better met by the gastro-enterostomy.

CONGENITAL PYLORIC STENOSIS

ric-stenosis baby is one of the poorest of operative risks. it is of the greatest importance that a uniform technique ng of these cases be adopted. The high mortality of many geons who have operated upon only a small series of cases is point.

wing method of care in these cases is the one employed by er, whose series represents 25 gastro-enterostomies and 4 perations.

emities and body of the child with the exception of the wrapped in cotton batting held on by bandages; the arms l to the sides; the legs are bandaged together. This con- body heat is of the utmost importance. In his entire series nter had one operative death, a fact due to two conditions: of body heat and a highly developed gastro-intestinal tech- anæsthesia is begun only when the skin is prepared and sterile Ether is always the anæsthetic of choice. Preliminary n of the stomach to relieve over-distension is usually neces-

ion 2 inches in length a little to the right of the midline st exposure. The pyloric tumour, which is instantly recog- use of its size and firmness, is delivered through the inci- ns of the thumb and index finger.

arious operative procedures resorted to only two have given atisfactory results. One is the posterior no-loop gastro- and the other the pylorotomy of Rammstedt, a modifica- er's operation.

nterostomy possesses the advantages of being an operation urgeons and offering a certain method of getting around the e operation is identical to that in the adult. The small size ures, however, makes it exceedingly more difficult. Richter st obtainable silk and a No. 10 cambric needle for every ses no clamps.

n, clean, and rapid technique is nowhere more necessary.

operation of Rammstedt was generally adopted some four gastro-enterostomy offered the only satisfactory surgical peration of Rammstedt, however, occupies about one-half required for a gastro-enterostomy, involves less operative

n., 1920.

work, and has resulted in a much lower mortality rate. Ho
the exception of Alfred Strauss's series the mortality ave
Rammstedt operation has been higher than Richter's morta
in gastro-enterostomy, which was 3 deaths in 26 or 11%. Str
54 cases, with 3 deaths. Downes reports 35 cases, with 8 d

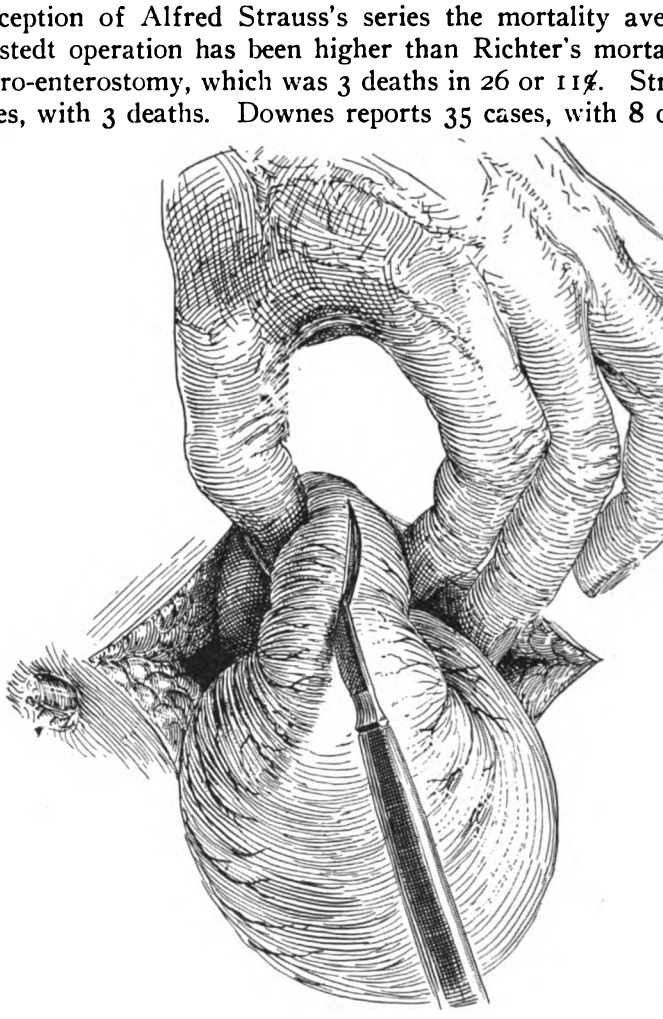
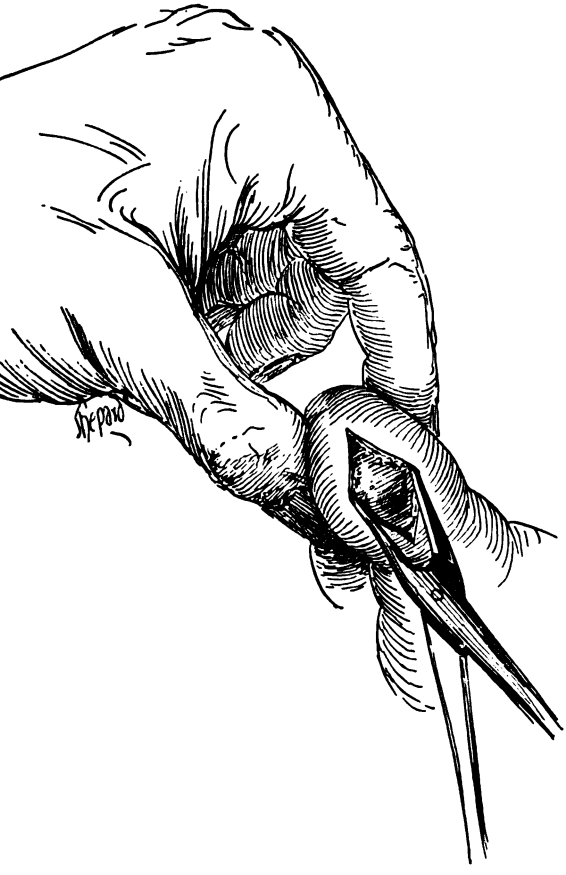


FIG. 316. SITE OF INCISION OVER HYPERTROPHIED MUSC

Rammstedt's operation is based upon the fact that the hy
circular muscle compresses and obliterates an otherwise nor
and lumen. Therefore, a simple incision, cutting transver
cular fibres and allowing sufficient separation of these fibre
store the normal lumen. The operation is as follows:

The tumour is delivered as described above. It is firs
by the thumb and index finger; the stomach itself is not de
for an inch or so of the pyloric end.

dinal incision the full length of the tumour is now made
). The latter is often of almost cartilaginous hardness.
s carried through the circular muscle down to the mucosa.
fibres separate a plane of cleavage between muscle and
e seen.



SHOWS METHOD OF SEPARATING HYPERTROPHIED MUSCLE FROM
t care must be used at duodenal end since that is where rupture
ur.

ion is now spread by means of a pair of sharp-nosed
order that the muscle be made to retract and to separate
ucosa (see Fig. 317). As the edges of the muscle are
rt the mucosa herniates through as a redundant fold.
ight, as the tumour is practically bloodless. The operation
eted. The pylorus is now replaced into the abdomen and
sed.

In spreading the incision extreme care must be used to av
the mucosa. A large tear would necessitate a gastro-en
Otherwise nothing need be done to cover the mucosa
seems to be no danger of leakage. Moreover, the tumour
that it is impossible to suture it.

Downes, feeling that simple division of the hypertrophi
muscle would not meet the indications in all cases, added a m
Through a small incision in the anterior wall of the stomach
a sound (No. 20 French) and introduced the sound into t
and beginning of the duodenum for the purpose of stretchi
maining constriction.

Another recent modification of the Rammstedt operat
pyloroplasty of Alfred Strauss. After completely separating
from the muscularis, Strauss closes in the defect with a p
made from the cut circular muscle. Where there is insuffici
he uses a free transplant of rectus fascia and muscle. He r
peritoneal defect by means of an omental transplant. Strau
ported a large series with the lowest mortality to date.

The post-operative care of these babies is most importa
are usually in urgent need of fluids and feeding should be
first two or three hours after operation. Richter passes a ca
the stomach immediately upon completion of the operation a
two ounces of water.

Complete recovery from anæsthesia usually occurs in fr
two hours, after which the child may be given a bottle or
breast. In all cases the post-operative care should be dire
pediatrician.

Post-operative convalescence is rapid. Bowel movemen
normal and weight rapidly increases. Post-operative vomit
frequent following the Rammstedt operation than after gast
tomy.

The sutures are removed on the tenth day. Strips of ad
placed between every two or three sutures just previous to the
to prevent any accidental separation of the skin wound.

CHAPTER V

GASTROPEXY

GASTROPEXY is the operation by which a stomach which is pro-
sed, is brought up into its normal position and there fixed by sutures
ich engage either the stomach or its upper or lower omental
achments.

Indications. The value of the operation, or rather the need for
performance, is very differently estimated by various surgeons. There
some, Rovsing for example, who consider that the falling downward
the stomach is by no means an infrequent event, that the displacement
attended by symptoms of such severity or of such persistence that its
air by operation is not seldom necessary. There are other surgeons,
whom I count myself one, who do not attach much importance to this
deformity, but consider it rather as a part, and by no means always
most important part, of a more widespread disorder; they consider
ordingly that operative treatment of the condition is rarely necessary.
Rovsing (*Trans. Int. Soc. de Chir.*, i. 338) recognizes two forms of
troptosis. In the first and less common form, which he describes as
rginal,' the descent occurs in young women who have not borne
ldren, and in whom, therefore, the abdominal wall is firm and strong.
e second form occurs in multiparous women with lax and perhaps
ndulous abdominal walls; the prolapse of the stomach is associated
h a general descent of all the viscera. In the former type operative
atment is indicated; there is no fault in the abdominal wall and the
ssure of a belt does little or nothing to help the muscular support,
ich is neither weak nor insufficient. In the latter type a well-fitting
t, whose greatest pressure is below (this is effected by means of a
ngular air-pad, the base being at the pubes and the apex above the
bilicus), will suffice to give that support to the stomach and to the
er viscera, of which they have been deprived by the relaxation of the
dominal wall. Rovsing, in his last report, gave details of forty-nine
es upon which he had operated. Forty-four of these were of the
ginal type, five of the multiparous. In six of the cases stasis of the
mach contents was noticed. The results of the operations were very
sfactory; there were no deaths; the only patient who was not re-
ed was one in whom, at a second operation, duodenal ulceration and

adhesions, which had previously escaped notice, were discover
cases displacement of the liver was also found.

Operation. The surgical treatment of gastroptosis
advocated by Duret of Lille.

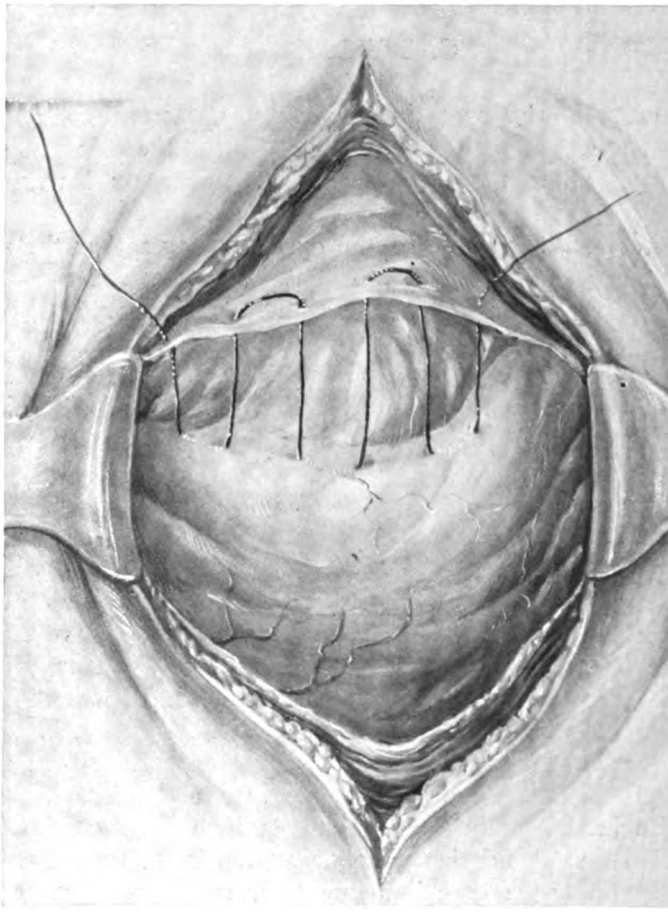


FIG. 318. GASTROPEXY. Duret's method.

Duret's operation. The abdominal wall is incised from t
cartilage to the umbilicus until in the whole length of the
posterior sheath of the rectus and the peritoneum are expos
layers are incised only for a short distance at the lower end;
introduced through this opening into the peritoneal cavity
the stomach during the subsequent stages of the operation.

which follow is to replace the stomach and to fix it by suture
layer of undivided peritoneum in the upper part of the wound.
us suture of silk was used by Duret, but probably a strand
catgut or of kangaroo-tendon would be preferable. The
es are separated as widely as possible at the upper part of the
Through the edge of the left rectus muscle the needle passes
e backwards into the abdomen, where it is seized by the fingers
hand passed upwards through the lower part of the incision.
is then passed horizontally through the stomach-walls close
r curvature, at its left extremity. The needle then returns
d forward through the undivided peritoneum in the upper end
ominal wound, being brought out about three-quarters of an
the point of its original introduction. The stitch therefore
o this point a single mattress suture. The needle is now
similar manner several times into the abdomen to engage the
nd out again through the peritoneum. The last stitch comes
n the edge of the right rectus muscle. When the whole length
ad is tightened the lesser curvature of the stomach is drawn
te approximation with the anterior abdominal wall.

st patient upon whom Duret operated was a married woman
uffered acutely for three years. The result of the operation
tly satisfactory; the patient was completely relieved of all
ms and gained 25 lbs. in three years.

s operation. This is, in my opinion, the most satisfactory of
hods; in six cases I have adopted it either alone, or, when
ease of the stomach has been present, in addition to gastro-
y, and I have been satisfied that the principles and the details
ration are sound. I prefer to give Dr. Beyea's own descrip-
operation (*Phil. Med. Journ.*, 1903, i. 257):—

cision about three inches in length was made through the linea
ay between the xiphoid cartilage and umbilicus. The tissues
ated in the usual manner, and the peritoneal cavity opened,
small portion of the lesser curvature and cardiac end of the
ne gastro-hepatic ligament or omentum, gastro-phrenic liga-
the lower portion of the left lobe of the liver. The table was
ed to the Trendelenburg position, and the stomach displaced
er downward and out of the wound by means of gauze
This procedure caused the gastro-hepatic and gastro-phrenic
to be slightly stretched and separated from the underlying
which permitted an accurate determination of the length of
ents and very much facilitated operative manipulations. The
enic ligament was seen well developed, and evidently formed

a strong support to the cardiac end of the stomach. The ac
tion of the gastro-hepatic ligament was composed of thin, c
toneum, increasing in thickness and strength towards the rig
end of the stomach. Retractors were introduced and th
aside by placing a gauze sponge beneath a retractor. Th
interrupted silk sutures were then introduced so as to plic

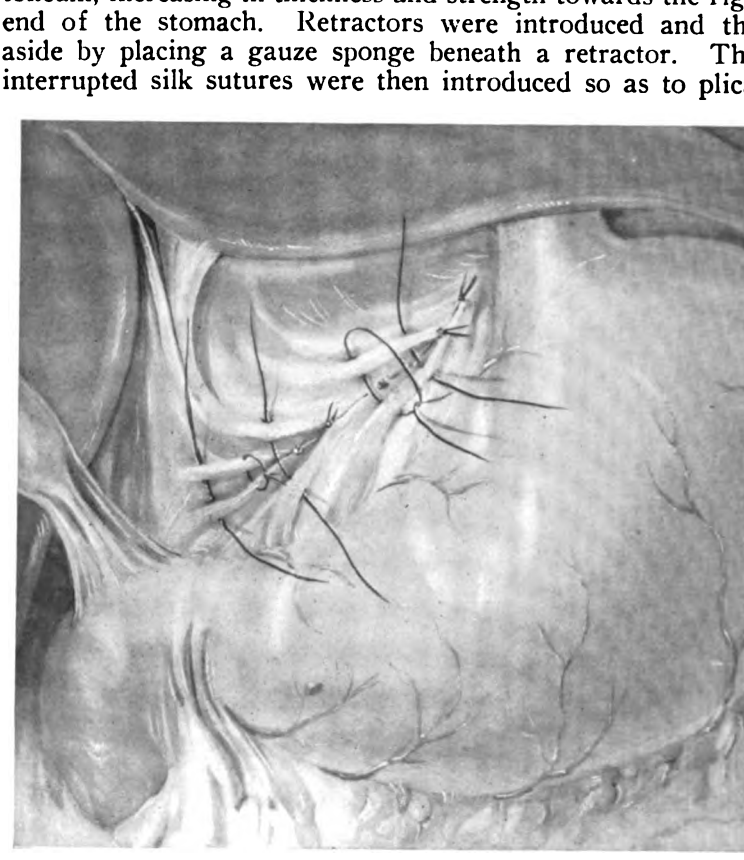


FIG. 319. GASTROPEXY. Beyea's method.

shorten the gastro-hepatic and gastro-phrenic ligaments in th
manner. The first row, beginning in the gastro-phrenic lig
extending across the gastro-hepatic ligament to almost c
pyloric orifice and hepatico-duodenal ligament, was introduc
form a plication in the centre of these ligaments, and inc
above, downward or vertically, about 4 cm. of tissue (row No
were practically mattress sutures, including sufficient of
tissue (1 cm.) to insure against their tearing out. Five su
one inch apart, were introduced from right to left and caug
static forceps. The next row (row No. 2) of sutures was
in the same manner, but 2.5 cm. above and below the first
a third row (row No. 3) was introduced just above the ga

nd a short distance below the diaphragm and liver. The suturing was rictly confined to the normal ligamentary supports, and the distance etween the rows from left to right was increased with the length of the gaments, being greater towards the right. The gauze sponges were ıen removed, and the first, the second, and finally the third row of ıtures were secured, the stomach, particularly the pyloric end, being evated to a little above the normal position.'

In the cases in which I have operated I have usually included in ıe final row of ligatures a portion of the stomach close to the lesser ırvature.

Coffey's operation. This also, in my judgment, is a sound surgical rocedure, which I have once adopted. Dr. Coffey writes (*Phil. Med. ɔurn.*, 1902, x. 506):—

'The stomach is suspended in a hammock made of the great omen-ım. When the abdomen is opened the stomach is freed from adhesions nd pushed gently upward into its normal position. A series of chro-icized catgut sutures are then passed transversely across the abdomen, cking up on the one side the great omentum one inch below the stomach, nd on the other the anterior abdominal wall. As to the technic, I think iis can well be varied to suit the case in hand. If only the stomach is splaced and not much dilated, it will probably be sufficient to put one ɔw of sutures across, about an inch below the attachment of the omach. If the abdomen is much relaxed and the colon shows a decided ndency toward the prolapse in splanchnoptosis, it will be probably well ɔ put two rows of sutures across, penetrating the entire thickness of ıe omentum just below its attachment to the colon. In this way such broad line of adhesion will be constructed that it will practically be im-ɔssible for the organs to become prolapsed.

'In my first case I placed three interrupted chromicized catgut ıtures, covering a space of about 2 inches, near the centre of that ɔrtion of the omentum attached to the dilated portion of the stomach. ı my second case I used eight chromicized catgut sutures, covering space a little more than 6 inches. In a case of a very much dilated omach I would suggest extending the suture still further, taking in or 10 inches across the omentum. The stitches have been passed about ½ inches above the umbilicus and have been passed from a large longi-ıdinal incision.'

Rovsing's operation. By this method the stomach is supported by ree or four sutures passed horizontally through its outer coats. These itches at each end are passed through the abdominal wall, where they e tied over a glass rod. The sutures are of silk and are allowed to main four weeks, by which time the stomach is 'united solidly' to the ıterior abdominal wall.

CHAPTER VI

COMPLICATIONS OF OPERATIONS UPON THE S AND INTESTINES

WOUND INFECTION

THE steady decrease in percentage of wound infections geons of wide experience is another example of the adv possible by perfection of organization and close attention t technique. With numerous possible atria of infection,—t skin, the hands of the surgeon or his assistants, the ope linen, basins, instruments, suture material, the germ-laden moisture constantly present in the air,—nothing short of e lance will suffice to prevent infection of clean wounds.

Beckman (1), in a review of 6,825 surgical cases at Clinic in 1913, found postoperative wound infections in 117 Of the total number of operations 1,494 were operations upo ach or intestines. Of these, 53, 3.6%, showed postopera infection. (Every case in which there was an escape of flu wound following operation was considered as possibly infe of the 117 cases no growth developed upon culture of the Since almost every organism identified in the bacteriologic tion of the discharge from infected wounds was of the grou found in the body tissues, and of the type readily destroyed methods of sterilization, he also concluded that the mos source of contamination was the patient's skin.

To obviate the possibility of the organisms which ar present in the superficial tissues from entering the wound it been suggested that the skin be covered to the edges of the several layers of gauze held in place by forceps. Tuffie initial incision before donning rubber gloves, lays aside the for cutting through the superficial tissues, and then, after pu gloves, fixes gauze to the edges of the wound without pe fingers to touch the skin. In this way neither the surgeon's his instruments have the opportunity of coming in conta

. Cushing lays sterile gauze over the operative field and makes his
al incision through the gauze.

The incidence of wound infections has been noted by many observers
be greater during the winter months, due, it is inferred, to the
ater prevalence at such times of infections of the upper respiratory
sages. The rapidity and ease with which air-borne infections may
ransmitted was impressed upon the medical profession with terrible
e during the influenza epidemic of 1918. To safeguard the patient
n infection from healthy individuals who may be harboring virulent
anisms in the throat and nasal passages, especial care must be taken
over the mouths and noses of the operating-room personnel with
ble layers of gauze, and to provide face masks for visitors and
tators.

The presence of fever over 99.6°, persisting for more than twenty-
r hours in uncomplicated cases, suggests the possibility of wound
ction. The treatment rarely offers difficulty. The early removal of
or more sutures may permit the escape of a localized collection of
d, and prevent the spread of infection beneath the superficial layers
he abdominal wall. In the event of an infection, dichloramine—T
il may be instilled with advantage into the infected wound. In cases
a widely spreading infection the application of hot, moist dressings
forty-eight or seventy-two hours, followed by the use of Dakin's
l, will hasten the process of recovery. The greatest possible care
ne changing of dressings is necessary to prevent the addition of fresh
ction from the patient's skin, or from outside sources, to that already
ent. A persistent wound discharge with a tendency toward sinus
nation should suggest the possibility of foreign material, such as
rotic tissue or infected suture material, in the depth of the wound.

PERITONITIS

Peritonitis, if one of the least frequent of complications which may
ow operations upon the gastro-intestinal tract, is by all odds the
t serious. In addition to the potential sources of infection present
ndertaking any surgical procedure there is the additional danger of
oducing septic material from the stomach or intestines. This
ger is especially acute in cases of prolonged stasis in the gastro-
stinal tract, such as occurs in the partial obstruction caused by car-
oma at the pylorus, or near the flexures of the large bowel, and in
se cases in which because of their urgency adequate preoperative
paration is impossible.

Cushing, Gilbert and Domenici, Miller and others have the presence of bacteria in the stomach and upper bowel d the time of administration of food, its character, and upo of the stomach to empty itself; that the organisms ingeste steadily decrease in number with the process of digestion completion, the empty stomach and upper intestine are steril ing is prevented at the pylorus or in the intestines, the damn tinal contents contain organisms whose number and virulenc increased. It is in these cases that careful gastric lavage b tion, repeated until the stomach is washed clean, is of esp tance in lessening the danger of peritoneal infection from or intestinal contents. Given an adequate and complete before operation, the prevention of peritoneal infection bec a question of surgical technique.

With pain persisting after operation, with increasin distention, and with a rising pulse rate, the presence of strongly suggested. The pain gradually becomes generalize pressure of the distended, paralyzed bowel. The pulse i indication of the patient's condition. If it remains below dition is usually not serious; if it rises steadily and b gressively poorer in quality the outlook is grave. The temp be only slightly elevated, and give little indication as to th of the situation. The leukocyte count is usually high; a l count is an ominous symptom. As the infection progresses expression becomes anxious and careworn. He lies wit above his head, and his knees drawn up to relax the tensi abdomen. Vomiting and hiccough may persist. The form temporarily by gastric lavage, but tends to return.

The treatment of diffuse peritoneal infection is taken in a later chapter. The essential features are absolute rest maintenance of the body fluids by proctoclysis or hypoderm elimination by gastric lavage, enemata, and by intramuscul of pituitrin in 10-15 minim doses.

The question of reopening the abdomen in cases of tonitis is one that will tax the most skilled surgical judg futility of such a procedure in the majority of cases is from the picture presented at autopsy. In a very few cas source of infection may be traced with reasonable certainty source, such as leakage of the gastro-intestinal contents a anastomosis, or soiling of the peritoneal cavity at the time it may be absolutely necessary to reopen the abdomen an damage, cleanse the soiled parts, and establish drainage.

POSTOPERATIVE PULMONARY COMPLICATIONS

Pneumonia has been called 'the friend of the aged' by Sir William
er. To the surgeon it is a danger the possibility of which must be
ghed in every case before operation, and the likelihood of whose
rrence increases with the patient's advancing years. With bron-
is, pleurisy, empyema, lung abscess and pulmonary embolism, it forms
roup of pathological conditions which results in a mortality of ap-
ximately 1% of all cases undergoing major surgical operations
tler and Morton, [2]). In a series of 3,490 cases, operated upon at the
ssachusetts General Hospital and reported by the authors mentioned,
or 1.8%, developed definite postoperative pulmonary complications,
of these 33, or 50.7%, were fatal. Of 65 cases, 40 were classified as
monia, divided about equally between lobar and diffuse types. Of
tal of 52,581 cases, gathered by them from the statistics of various
cs, 1,043, or 1.9%, developed postoperative pulmonary complica-
s. Of a total of 37,989 cases 386, or 1.01%, developed pneumonia.
344 of these in which the final outcome was recorded, 182, or 52.9%,
e fatal. Following 17,219 operations upon *the abdomen alone* 742,
.7%, developed pneumonia. Following operations upon *the upper*
omen the percentage of postoperative pulmonary complications in
er and Morton's series was 7.7%, and as high as 8.1% in the
stics of one clinic.

Various causes have been suggested as responsible for this mor-
ty: pre-existing lung pathology; the administration of the anæs-
ic; its irritating effect upon the bronchial mucous membrane; the
lation of septic material during anæsthesia; chilling of the patient
ng and after operation; stagnation of bronchial secretion in the
endent portion of the lungs, because of diminished respiratory excur-
following operation; septic emboli; and extension of infection
ugh the diaphragm.

It seems reasonable to believe that any of these causes may be the
f factor responsible in any given case. The danger of giving an
sthetic in the presence of a pre-existing bronchitis, of bronchiectasis,
of incipient pulmonary tuberculosis has been repeatedly shown by
strous experience. In Cutler and Morton's series, 20 of 65 cases
ved some definite lung pathology at the time of operation. A careful
nination of the lungs before operation, checked by a fluoroscopic
nination if necessary, should be a routine procedure in every case.

The administration of the anæsthetic itself was for many years held
onsible as the chief factor until it was found that postoperative

pneumonia occurred not infrequently following operations
anæsthesia. In spite of this fact, its importance should n
mized. The careful administration of the anæsthetic, giv
haste, without struggling and cyanosis on the part of the
in such a quantity that the patient is beginning to awake
of the operation, is an extremely important factor in assurir
postoperative course.

The inhalation of septic material from the mouth du
thesia is emphasized by many writers, especially by O
Pfannenstiel (4). Their advice as to thorough cleansi
mouth before operation, with removal of all carious
infected roots, is of particular importance, since they repor
absence of postoperative pulmonary complications in their cli
ous observers (Poppert,[5] Hoelscher,[6] and Gatch[7]) have
danger of aspirating mucus during anæsthesia and the gr
hood of so doing with the administration of a concentrate
the closed method. Kelly (8) has stated that there is cons
tion of mucus during anæsthesia. If the aspirated mucus i
contaminated by the addition of septic material from infect
danger of oral sepsis for patients about to undergo operat
evident. That septic material may be inhaled from an inf
thetizing apparatus should not be forgotten.

Chilling of the patient by bringing him to the operating
a minimum of clothing, covering him with a thin sheet while
ing the anæsthetic, perhaps drenching him with cleansing so
finally, after he has been perspiring profusely in the oper
permitting him to return through draughty corridors to a
of the hospital, surely conduces to a lowered resistance and
ment of pneumonia. The incidence of this complication
abolished in the clinic of the Peter Bent Brigham Hospital
viding warm recovery rooms adjacent to the operating room
patients might recover from the effects of the anæsthetic un
stant supervision of competent nurses.

Prolonged operation, chilling and trauma of the diaphr
of the vagus and sympathetic nerves, and infection of
operation are factors which come directly within the prov
operator, and which are of particular importance in oper
the upper abdomen. Kelling (10) has laid especial stress on
the diaphragm, and advocates careful walling off of the subdi
space with hot packs during epigastric operations. Armstro
emphasized the ease with which infection may extend fron
abdomen to the pleural cavity and lungs through the diaph

ocation of septic emboli from the site of operation is an accident ose likelihood must surely be lessened by careful hæmostasis and tle handling of the tissues at the time of operation.

Following operation every effort should be made to induce deep athing in order to get rid of the excess of absorbed anæsthetic, and prevent the stagnation of accumulated bronchial secretions. To this alternate friction of the chest and extremities with ice-cold cloths, owed immediately by the application of warm clothing and blankets, prove of great value. Mikulicz pointed out the value of forced p breathing for a few minutes three or four times daily, more espe- ly following operations upon the upper abdomen where there is ry tendency for the patient to 'splint the wound' and prevent full ansion of the lungs by holding the abdomen rigid.

The rather indiscriminate use of intravenous salt solution after ration has been followed in some cases by acute œdema of the lungs. e strain on an already enfeebled heart, caused by the rapid addition a considerable quantity of fluid to the circulation, should not be too tly estimated, especially in view of the rather transient value of siological salt solution when given intravenously. Where indicated hould be given slowly, and preferably in a quantity not exceeding c.cm. at one time.

The treatment of postoperative pulmonary complications does not er from that of similar conditions under ordinary circumstances. pport of the heart and free elimination are the essential factors. The of the steam inhaler may afford the patient great relief, especially en the sputum is particularly tenacious and expectoration difficult.

ACUTE DILATATION OF THE STOMACH

Acute dilatation of the stomach is a comparatively rare complica- of operations upon the stomach and intestines, but an extremely ve one. It occurs also, though less commonly, following operations n other parts of the body, during the course of an acute illness, such pneumonia or typhoid, or during the course of a chronic illness such tuberculosis. It has been known to develop following the ingestion an excessive amount of food or fluid.

The symptoms develop rather insidiously, most frequently through- the first forty-eight or seventy-two hours after operation. Increasing n due to abdominal distention, intolerable thirst, and repeated vomit- which may at first be mistaken for the vomiting which commonly ows the administration of an anæsthetic, are the first symptoms to w attention to the patient's condition. On removing the dressings

the epigastrium will be found to be distended and tympani line of the dilated stomach may even be distinguished muscles of the abdominal wall. Passage of the stomach tu the evacuation of a considerable amount of gas and fluid wit relief, but the condition tends to recur rapidly, and within vomiting and distention may be as marked as before. often effortless. The vomitus may be brought up 'in without straining.' At first it is watery and bile-tinged becomes dark red or brown from the admixture of blood, unpleasant fetid odor. In spite of continued vomiting pas stomach tube will always result in the evacuation of additi times surprisingly large, amounts of fluid. As the gastri becomes extreme the abdominal distention may be more ma left side and in the lower half of the abdomen. In othe entire abdomen is affected. Percussion over the distended a tympanitic note. Very often a succession splash may be

The patient's general condition is recognized as seriou first, and unless relieved develops rapidly into one of col pulse becomes fast and thready, the respiration rapid and sh patient looks desperately ill, his expression is anxious, pinched and drawn, due to the excessive dehydration. The and covered with perspiration. Thirst is intolerable, and u large amounts of water. There may be obstipation or diar urine is scanty or suppressed. If the stomach is emptied re frequently the general condition may appear less serious collapse may develop in a few hours.

On opening the peritoneal cavity the tremendously dila is found to occupy the great portion of the abdomen, comp shutting off from view the small and large intestine. Its w mendously thinned, in some places appearing like tissue p quently there are hæmorrhagic erosions of the mucous mem duodenum is often dilated as well. (That this is not co served is due, in the opinion of some investigators, to the f involvement of the duodenum is not considered, and theref dition is overlooked.)

The etiology of acute dilatation of the stomach has been of considerable controversy, and a brief résumé of the opi ferent observers will be of interest because of its bearing o ment. Various causes have been suggested: paralysis of musculature (Brunton, Braun and Seidel[12]); constricti duodenum by the superior mesenteric vessels (Rokitansky P. Müller[13]); primary paralysis of the stomach, followed

rd portion of the duodenum by the distended stomach (Box [14]); gastric hypersecretion (Fagge, Morris [15]); as well ses.

vink ([16]) was able to collect 29 cases, including one of his hich an occlusion at the duodeno-jejunal junction was autopsy or operation. He suggested that the primary l distention of the stomach forced the small intestine before pelvis, and this in turn, by traction on the mesentery and senteric vessels, caused an occlusion of the duodenum. It ble that the condition is brought about by a combination of hich a temporary paralysis following manipulation, or acute n from food, fluid, possibly even from swallowing of air, enlarged stomach both to force the intestines downward, nge the mesentery into a constricting band, and to produce es as well direct mechanical pressure upon the duodenum l to the left of the lumbar spine. As the stomach enlarges way downward, chiefly on the left side of the abdomen, in that has come from radiographic examination to be recog- rmal for a somewhat enlarged, ptotic stomach. There it haped tube, with the left or cardiac limb somewhat larger oric limb. With the cardiac and pyloric ends remaining sing distention causes a sharp angulation at the bend of the lesser curvature, and at the pylorus. The marked con- s produced may well be an important factor in preventing ce the condition is established. Simultaneously with the size there is an increase in secretion of the gastric and ucosa. Vomiting of tremendous amounts of fluid—a half Borchardt's case—has been reported.

erence to the rapid collapse, the results of experimental work rried out by Whipple, Stone, and Bernheim ([17]), are of est. They found that in cases of high intestinal obstruction, secretion of the duodenum is altered by reason of changes place in the mucosa, so that it becomes intensely toxic; and ll amount of the duodenal content from dogs with obstruc- ed into normal dogs rapid collapse and death follow.

ent. Early recognition of the condition is the most impor- Gastric lavage, continued until the stomach is washed be followed by placing the patient in the prone position, with vated by placing a pillow or sandbags underneath. Occa- ore extreme elevation of the pelvis, such as the knee-chest of benefit, but it is usually not necessary. The relief af- his simple measure is immediate and striking. In one of

., 1920.

Borchgrevink's cases the picture changed in a few momen of impending death to one of comparative comfort. At th tap water by rectum or salt solution subcutaneously is restore the body fluids. In few conditions is there such r treme dehydration of the tissues as in acute gastric dilatati gastric lavage is usually unnecessary. Once the obstructio the fluid does not tend to reaccumulate. Operative proced gastro-enterostomy, gastrostomy, etc., have been suggested, out in a number of instances. They usually result fatall the patient's condition, and because they fail to afford pro manent relief of the pathological condition.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Beckman, E. H. Complications following surgical operations. & Obst., 1914, xviii, 551-555.
2. Cutler, E. C., and Morton, J. J. Postoperative pulmonary compli Gynec. & Obst., 1917, xxv, 621-649.
3. Otte, A. Ueber die postoperativen Lungenkomplikationen und Th Aethernarkosen. Münch. med. Wchnschr., 1907, liv, 2473-2476.
4. Pfannenstiel, J. Ueber die Vorzüge der Aethernarkose. Zentr 1903, xxvii, 8-15.
5. Poppert. Experimentelle und klinische Beiträge zur Aethernar Aether-Chloroform Mischnarkose. Deutsche Ztschr. f. Chir., 523.
6. Hoelscher, R. Experimentelle Untersuchungen über die E Erkrankungen der Luftwege nach Aethernarkose. Arch. f. kl lvii, 175-232.
7. Gatch, W. D. The use of rebreathing in the administration Tr. Am. Surg. Ass., 1911, xxix, 196-216.
8. Kelly, R. E. Intratracheal insufflation of ether. Brit. M. J., ii. 6
9. Boothby, W. M. J. Am. M. Ass., 1916, lxvii, 539.
10. Kelling, G. Ueber Pneumonien nach Laparotomien. Verhan Gesellsch. f. Chir., 1905, xxxiv, 136-160.
11. Armstrong, G. E. Lung complications after operations with an M. J., 1908, i, 1141-1142.
12. Braun, W., and Seidel, H. Klinisch-experimentelle Untersuchun der akuten Magenerweiterung. Mitt. a. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. xvii, 533-578.
13. Müller, P. Ueber postoperative Magendilatation hervorgerufen mesenteriale Duodenalkompression. Deutsche Ztschr. f. Chir., 511.
14. Box, C. R., and Wallace, C. S. A further contribution on acut the stomach. Lancet, Lond., 1901, ii, 1259-1260.
15. Morris, H., cited by Thompson, Campbell. Acute Dilatation of London, 1902.
16. Borchgrevink, O. J. Acute dilatation of the stomach and its trea Gynec. & Obst., 1913, xvi, 662-693.
17. Whipple, G. H., Stone, H. B., and Bernheim, B. M. Intestin J. Exper. M., 1913, xvii, 286-323.

CHAPTER VII

MPLICATIONS OF OPERATIONS UPON THE STOMACH AND INTESTINES—*CONT'D.*

SHOCK

Postoperative shock is especially likely to develop in those cases ch, because of their urgency, do not permit of adequate preparation ore operation, or which, because of their difficulty, involve a pro- ged anæsthetic and extensive manipulation of the bowel. It is an r threatening danger in patients, who, after a prolonged illness, n all their forces of resistance at a low ebb, come to the surgeon as st resort. It is essentially a progressive failure of the circulation, nifested especially by a pulse which becomes progressively weaker more rapid, and by a constantly falling blood pressure. With ulatory failure the respiration also becomes more rapid and shallow, the temperature frequently falls below normal. As death approaches skin becomes cold and covered with perspiration. The mental con- on varies: some patients may be very restless, so that morphine is arently without effect, and the mentality may remain unclouded, n hyperacute; others are deathly quiet, and imperceptibly lapse into tal coma.

The symptoms usually supervene rapidly after an operation. In re cases they develop as the effect of the anæsthetic disappears. The tment is essentially prophylactic, and is directed toward preventing ccurrence, rather than combating it after it appears.

The etiology of shock has been the subject of much investigative k during recent years, especially throughout the war, by reason of high percentage of its incidence among the wounded at the front. t the causes of shock are of pre-eminent interest to the surgeon use of their bearing upon the treatment is self-evident. A number *predisposing* factors have been shown to be of especial importance: onged exposure to cold and dampness; fatigue; pain; loss of body s; prolonged anæsthesia with ether or chloroform; trauma and ex- re of the peritoneum and bowel; infection.

The most important of these in the opinion of all observers is the rrence of hæmorrhage. Indeed, among the wounded the occurrence hock unaccompanied by hæmorrhage was questioned by some ob-

servers, notably of the French medical services. The rare
of shock in the trenches and advanced dressing station
'severe surgical cases,' or in cases in which severe hæmo
self-evident was pointed out by Cowell (1), Vincent
Berger (3), Santy (4), and others. It is interesting to note
a series of notable experiments carried out by the Medic
Committee (5) on the experimental production of acidosis
tion to shock, the explanation of several apparently c
experiments in which the blood pressure of decerebrated a
tinued to fall after the infusion of a relatively small amo
was that 'more hæmorrhage had occurred in the process o
tion than was realized at the time.'

Robertson and Bock (6), in an investigation of blood v
hæmorrhage, showed that the amount of blood lost by woun
was surprisingly large; that cases with a history of bleedi
show a loss of 40% or more of the total blood volume, an
with no positive history of severe bleeding often showed a
of blood volume of 20% to 30%. Bazett (7) estimated
blood during operation in ten cases and concluded that in
less than 7% of the total blood volume, while in one case it
He concluded that the loss of blood, even in comparative
operations, was always considerably more than was rea
conclusion doubtless holds in civil practice as well, especiall
longed and difficult operations.

The importance of cold and exposure in the producti
has been frequently emphasized. The depressant effect of c
the circulatory system is one of the most commonly observe
logical phenomena. One of the simplest means of produ
mental shock is by opening the peritoneal cavity and exposin
The gradual appearance of shock in slightly wounded pati
ing exposure and delay in getting to the rear, and their pron
upon the application of warmth, has been frequently comm
The development of shock accompanied by acidosis upon
rabbits in an ice-cold bath was shown experimentally by Wi
colleagues (8).

The relation of anæsthesia to shock has long been reco
importance. The danger of subjecting patients with a low
sure to an anæsthetic was especially emphasized by workers
the problem of shock throughout the war. Fraser and
Cannon (10), and others showed that with the blood pre
critical stage, viz. 80 to 90 mm. of mercury, administration
chloroform was frequently accompanied by a further ra

essure and a fatal outcome. The fatal effects of even small doses ether or chloroform, with the blood pressure near the critical stage, s been repeatedly shown by laboratory experiments. The relatively ght depressant effect of nitrous oxide and oxygen, as compared with ıer and chloroform anæsthesia, on the circulatory mechanism has been inted out by many observers.

Finally, the importance of infection as a predisposing factor has en frequently emphasized, especially with reference to anaerobic infec-ns, by Wright and his colleagues (11). Doubtless in cases of pro-ıged sepsis the gradual destruction of blood, with a corresponding crease in blood volume, is quite as important a factor as the direct xic effect of the absorbed poisons upon the circulatory mechanism.

With any or all of these factors present the question of the mechan-n of the development of shock assumes especial interest. Experi-entally, shock has been produced by exposure and trauma of the ritoneum and bowel; by pain, for example by exposing large nerve ınks and subjecting them to the tetanizing effects of an electric cur-ıt; by the injection of foreign substances, such as peptone, oils, tamine, etc.; and in numerous other ways.

The presence of fat emboli in the lungs and other viscera of patients ing with all the symptoms of acute surgical shock has been reported Bissell (12), who also remarked upon the large amount of fat in the ıous blood of such patients, as well as in the blood of patients with oken bones. The frequency of shock in the wounded among tients with broken bones, or with multiple wounds of the soft parts, s also pointed out by Porter (13) as evidence of the part played by embolism in the production of shock.

A number of theories have been suggested as to the starting point the breaking down of the circulatory mechanism. Henderson (14) ggested that the decrease in the carbon dioxide content of the blood lowing the hyperpnœa induced by pain caused a fatal apnœa; or lure of the heart through cardiac tetanus. Other observers (15), in empting to confirm his findings, stated that only by such extreme perpnœa as to cause a venous obstruction in the lungs were they able reproduce a condition of shock. Adrenal exhaustion (16) with con-uent hypotension, impairment of the vasomotor mechanism (17), ralysis of the cardio-inhibitory centre, lowering of the alkali reserve cidosis) (18), have all been shown to be of secondary importance, and result rather than the cause of the failing circulation. Recent inves-ative work (19, 20) has tended to confirm the earlier suggestions of lbet and Quénu that the primary fall of blood pressure is due to the orption into the blood stream of the toxic products formed at the

site of tissue injury. Cannon ([20]) suggests that 'traumat
may be closely allied to peptone shock in which there is a
permeability of the capillary walls and a marked escape of p
the blood vessels into the tissues.

We must admit that the question as to what initiates th
failure is still unsettled; but nevertheless we may not lo
certain well-demonstrated facts:

1. Hæmorrhage, with consequent diminution of blood
factor constantly to be reckoned with. The blood volum
decreased by the decreased intake of fluids which so frequen
emergency operative procedures, and by the profuse perspir
follows injuries, and which is invariably present during
operations. As a result of the decreased blood volume the
sure tends to fall, due to the diminished volume of blood
the heart.

2. With increased concentration of the blood there is
increased viscosity, in other words, an increased peripher
for the heart to overcome. The effect of cold upon the pe
culation, whether from exposure or from the loss of hea
with profuse perspiration, still further intensifies this perip
ance, causing an increase in internal friction and stagnati
within the capillaries. That the presence of fat in the b
greatly increased its viscosity was demonstrated by Gauss (

3. The stagnation of blood in the capillaries, and in th
veins under certain conditions, has been shown by variou
Dale and Richards ([22]) pointed out that in histamine shock
50% of the blood plasma passed into the tissues. Hender
that the increasing acidity of the blood resulted in increa
into the tissues, and, therefore, in a higher concentration o

Here then are a number of factors that help to make u
cycle: diminished blood volume; falling blood pressure
viscosity, throwing additional work upon the heart; stagnati
in the capillaries; exudation of plasma into the tissues. Th
factors intensify one another, and are themselves intensi
various predisposing factors mentioned above. The 'critic
systolic pressure of 80-90 mm., probably represents the low
which the blood pressure may fall and still insure an ade
supply to the vasomotor centre. Having once dropped b
point a further decline is rapid and inevitable.

Treatment. Before attempting operation upon cases n
ing immediate interference, the patient's nutrition should b
investigated, and if necessary, high caloric feeding maintai

propriate interval. The body fluids should be restored to a normal el by increased fluid intake, by proctoclysis with a solution containing % glucose and 3% sodium bicarbonate, by hypodermoclysis if neces-ry, or by intravenous injection of a 6% solution of gum acacia.[1] With ɔcutaneous or intravenous injections care must be taken not to overload e heart by too rapid administration. If the patient has lost a large ıount of blood, as for example in cases of chronic gastric ulcer with ɔeated small hæmorrhages, blood transfusion from an appropriate nor is indicated.

During and after operation the body warmth must be maintained artificial means. Anæsthesia with nitrous oxide and oxygen in the nds of an expert is much to be preferred to ether or chloroform. ile has found that the blocking of afferent impulses by local anæs-esia is an important factor in preventing shock.

The administration of tap water or glucose solution by rectum, or physiological salt solution subcutaneously, will maintain the fluid ıtent during the first twenty-four or forty-eight hours, more particu-ly during the period of postoperative nausea. Morphine given hypo-rmically during the first twenty-four or forty-eight hours will help eatly to bring the rest and freedom from pain which is absolutely ential. The use of caffeine, camphorated oil, or strychnine is rarely icated. The heart should not be whipped up, but rather supported reducing its work to a minimum.

If the patient enters the hospital in shock, such as, for example, lows a severe contusion of the abdomen with injury to a viscus, atment of shock must be coincident with preparation for operation. e application of external heat, the use of morphine, the subcutaneous intravenous administration of fluid in a suitable form will help to tore the blood pressure to a level of safety. If intra-abdominal morrhage is in progress it must be stopped as quickly as possible. e determination of this fact may be very difficult. The concentra-n of blood cells in the capillaries may give a misleading picture when

[1] Bayliss' ([23]) solution is made up as follows: The requisite quantity of "turkey t" gum acacia for a 6% solution is dissolved in tap water on a water bath. er cooling, 2% sodium bicarbonate in powder form is added. The solution is wed to stand for twenty-four hours, then filtered through Chardin paper or rifuged to remove the precipitate of calcium carbonate. The solution, after being ilized in sealed bottles to prevent the escape of carbon dioxide, is ready for use. Another solution ([24]) widely used in France, without the addition of sodium rbonate, is made up as follows: sodium chloride, 2 gms.; potassium chloride, 0.05 .; calcium chloride, 0.05 gms.; powdered gum acacia, 5 gms.; distilled water, c.cm.
The solution is filtered through paper pulp under pressure, and then autoclaved. nay be made up in five times the strength desired and diluted with sterile water n ready for use.

estimating the number of red cells and the hæmoglobin. doubt, blood transfusion or intravenous injection of gum ac carried on simultaneously with operation may help to tide over the critical period.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Cowell, E. M. The initiation of wound shock. J. Am. M. Ass., 610.
2. Vincent, C. Shock. Arch. d. mal. du cœur, 1918, xi, 394.
3. Roux-Berger, J. L. Shock in the wounded. Progrès méd., 1918,
4. Santy, P. Le traitement à l'avant du choc chez les grands blessé 1917, xiv, 54-62.
5. Acidosis and shock. Reports of the Special Investigation Committ Shock and Allied Conditions. No. 7. Medical Research Comm 1918
6. Robertson, O. H., and Bock, A. V. Blood volume in wounde Exper. M., 1919, xxix, 139-172
7. Bazett, M. C. The value of hæmoglobin and blood pressure c surgical cases. Reports of the Special Investigation Committ Shock and Allied Conditions. No. 5. Medical Research Comm 1918.
8. Wright, Sir A. E., and Colebrook, L. On the acidosis of shock circulation. Lancet, Lond., 1918, i, 763-765.
9. Fraser, J., and Cowell, E. M. A clinical study of the blood pres conditions. J. Am. M. Ass, 1918. lxx, 520-526.
10. Cannon, W. B. Acidosis in cases of shock, hæmorrhage, and ga Am. M. Ass., 1918, lxx, 531-535.
11. Wright, Sir A. E., and Fleming, A. Acidæmia in gas gangrene. 1918, i, 205-210
12. Bissell, W. W. Pulmonary fat embolism,—a frequent cause of surgical shock. Surg., Gynec. & Obst., 1917, xxv, 8-22.
13. Porter, W. T. Shock at the front. Boston M. & S. J., 1916, clxx Idem: Further observations on shock. Boston M. & S. J., 1917, c
14. Henderson, Y. Acapnia and shock. Am. J. Physiol., 1908, 1909.
15. Janeway, H. H., and Ewing, E. M. The nature of shock. An lix, 158-175.
16. Corbett, J. F. The suprarenal gland in shock. J. Am. M. Ass., 191
17. Crile, G. W. An Experimental Research into Surgical Shock. Phi Idem: Blood Pressure in Surgery. Philadelphia, 1903.
18. Cannon, W. B. A consideration of the nature of wound shock. J 1918, lxx, 611-617.
19. Turck, F. B. The primary cause of shock. Med. Rec., 1918, xciii.
20. Cannon, W. B. The course of events in secondary wound shoc Ass., 1919, lxxiii, 174-181.
21. Gauss, quoted by Bissell.
22. Dale, H. H., and Richards, A. N. The vaso-dilator action of Physiol., 1918, lii, 110.
23. Bayliss, W. M. Proc. Roy. Soc., Lond., 1918, 89B, 381. Idem: Intravenous injection in wound shock. Brit. M. J., 1908, i, 5
24. Drummond, H., and Taylor, E. S. The use of intravenous inje acacia in surgical shock. Reports of the Special Investigation Surgical Shock and Allied Conditions. No. 3. Medical Resea London, 1918.

SECTION VI

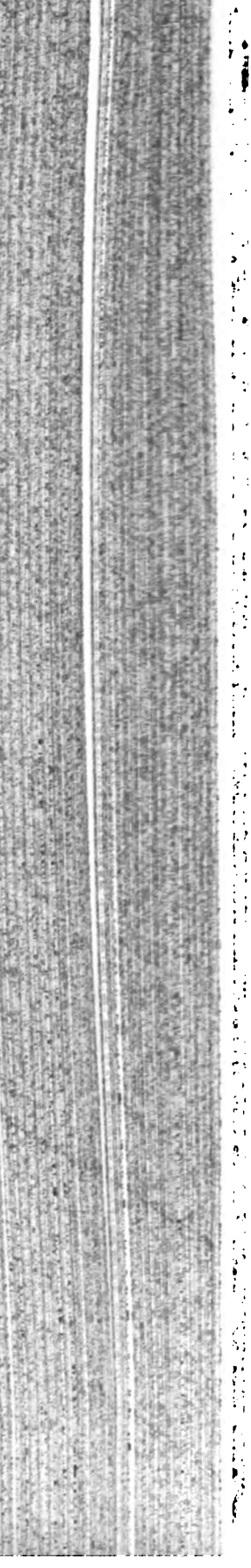
ERATIONS UPON THE STOMACH AND INTESTINES

PART II

PERATIONS UPON THE INTESTINES

BY

G. H. MAKINS, K.C.G.M., C.B., F.R.C.S. (Eng.)
to St. Thomas's Hospital and President of the Board of Examiners for the Naval Medical Service



CHAPTER VIII

GENERAL REMARKS ON THE TECHNIQUE OF OPERATIONS UPON THE INTESTINES

THE continuous widening of the field of intestinal surgery that has ken place during the last twenty years has been accompanied by a eady tendency to simplification in the methods employed. Experience as shown the technical success of any particular procedure to depend imarily on the sufficiency of the suture employed, and the sufficiency the latter to be in direct ratio to its simplicity. The first great adance from the through and through stitches employed by Astley Cooper as made in the introduction of the principle of plane apposition of eritoneal surfaces by Lembert, and the further adaptation of the same inciple to the continuous stitch by Dupuytren; thus the technique of e French School may be said to have dominated all subsequent delopments.

Methods of suture. The chief requirements for a successful ethod of suture may be summed up under the following headings:—

1. Security.
2. Even coaptation of a sufficient peritoneal surface.
3. Adaptability to rapid insertion.
4. The avoidance of the production of obstruction in the lumen of e bowel by too free inversion of its wall.

The first question arising out of these requirements is the comparave advantage of a continuous or interrupted stitch. The advantages fered by the former method are so manifest that it has to-day been opted by the great majority of surgeons. It is the more rapid, secures e more even coaptation of the surfaces, provides for reliable hæmoasis without necessity for the ligature of individual vessels, forms a cirlar line of support to the suture itself, should the bowel subsequently come distended (Jacobson), and allows of the use of as few knots as ssible, thus eliminating the most dangerous element in a line of suture far as infection by imbibition is concerned.

The alleged disadvantages may be briefly dealt with: the old estabhed notion (founded on the behaviour of suppurating wounds of eater magnitude), that the giving of the suture at one point results in loss of sufficiency of the whole line, has been definitely exploded by

practical experience; also the assertion that a continuo juriously affects the nutrition of the tissues included. The l is readily avoided by not drawing the thread too tightly, wh precaution suffices to ensure that the line of suture is not greater narrowing at the point of union than is inseparable f clusion of the amount of bowel-wall necessary for purposes of

Allowing these advantages of the continuous stitch, occ on which an interrupted suture is advisable or even necess employment either in the simple or the mattress form is excellent results. For general application, however, the follo tions may be urged against the interrupted stitch. It takes to introduce, coaptation is not so exact, hæmostasis may not without the individual ligature of vessels, and, lastly, the knots necessary is an obvious disadvantage, since it has bee shown by Chlumsky that the direction of the flow in the th bibition, and consequently the line of extension of infection the knot. The last objection may be eliminated by the use o ingenious methods devised by Maunsell, Connell, Bishop, V others, in which the suture is so introduced that all the kn within the lumen of the bowel; but none of these methods now obtained any very general favour.

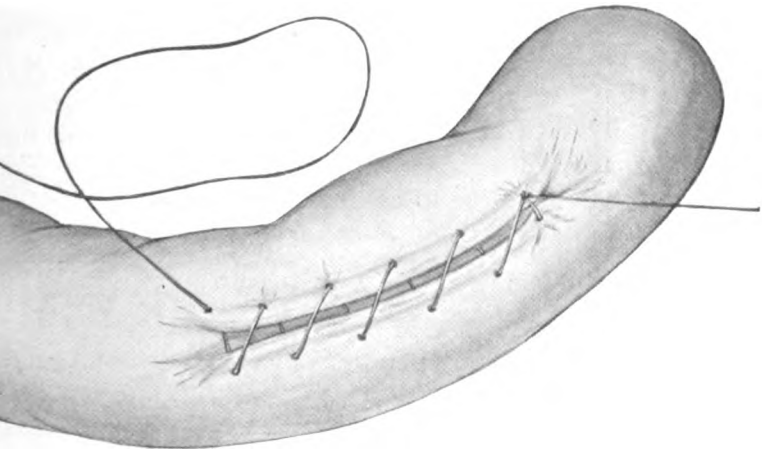
The general question of how great a thickness of the int should be included in the suture may be said to be fairl agreed upon. When two tiers of suture are employed the i generally passed through the entire thickness of the intestina a view to increase in the strength of union and the ensuranc hæmostasis. It has, moreover, been shown by the successful of the methods of Connell and others that a single tier of stit safely passed in this manner. When healthy intestine has with, however, sufficient strength of union may be looked f outer tier of sutures, and, if the surgeon prefers, the inner made to include the mucous membrane only. The writer ha years employed this method without cause to regret it, especia anastomoses. When combined with excision of superabund membrane, it has the advantage of producing less projection the line of union towards the lumen of the bowel than is th the whole thickness of the wall is included in the stitch.

The outer tier should dip deeply into the submucous strongly enforced by Halstead and Gross.

Of the numerous methods of suture in use, the follow mentioned as the most generally useful, and as comprising necessary for successful intestinal union.

t's suture. Originally devised as an interrupted stitch extend-
h the peritoneal coat only, this stitch has undergone various
ns, as in the substitution of continuous introduction, the
f the muscular coat, and later, of the submucous coat also
320).

NTERRUPTED LEMBERT'S SUTURE. Right hand, six Lembert's stitches, two tied. Left hand, four mattress stitches, one tied.



ONTINUOUS LEMBERT'S SUTURE. Thread not drawn tight to show the course of the stitches and the folds raised by them.

bloyed at the present day, the needle is introduced about
f an inch from the margin of the wound to be closed, made to
o the greater part of the depth of the submucous layer, and
ught out about a tenth of an inch from the opening in the
made to emerge on the free surface, having penetrated a
th and distance of the bowel-wall as on the first side; suc-
tches are passed at intervals of three-sixteenths of an inch
quired length of suture has been attained.

When this suture is employed as a running stitch, it is a m
of Dupuytren's (see Fig. 321).

The method of introduction has been modified by Cush
passage of the needle parallel to the line of the wound instea
versely to it.

In order to prevent a too great approximation of the two
line of union, the blanket stitch or the tying of a knot in
suture at one or two places is sometimes employed, but neith
methods is usually necessary.

Mattress suture. In this method (see Fig. 320) each sutu
a small square of tissue. The most
result of its adoption and advocacy b
has been a thorough appreciation of
tage of penetrating to the submucou
the method itself has the disadvant
curing a somewhat less even adapt
a series of short puckers is unavoid
moreover, an interrupted stitch.
tage of the mattress suture is, how
times great, as by its use a very f
obtained, and this is especially the
gut thickened by inflammatory infi
to be dealt with.

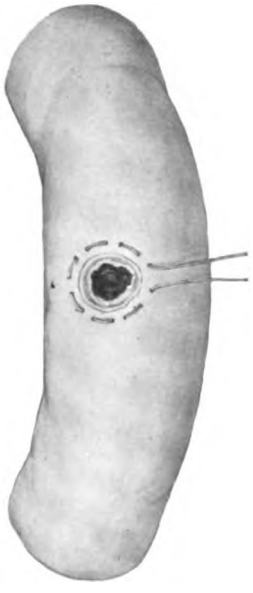


FIG. 322. PURSE-STRING SUTURE OF THE LEMBERT TYPE.

Purse-string suture. This meth
quent utility in closing perforation
testinal wall, sinking the stump of
dix, or closing the cut ends of the
lateral union is made after an ente
can be applied with great rapid
readily strengthened when necessar
troduction of a more superficial li
bert's stitch. As in the case of
stitch, the needle and thread should be made to pass deep
submucous coat, or under certain conditions, it may be pas
the whole thickness of the bowel.

A description of Connell's suture will be found on p. 72

Sewing materials. For general employment no mate
useful and satisfactory than *silk*. Either Chinese or Japan
usually chosen; the latter has the advantage of being the r
woven, hence it is finer and a given calibre possesses grea
and less absorbent power than the corresponding size of Ch
Equal tensile strength is possessed by Japanese twist two s
than that of Chinese twist.

Celluloid thread, in the form known as Pagenstecher's thread, is rong, smooth, and less absorbent than silk; its use is strongly recommended by Moynihan and others.

Catgut is also employed by some surgeons, especially for the inner es of suture. It has the disadvantages of needing to be somewhat icker than is necessary with silk or linen thread, its surface is less ooth, and it is more difficult to sterilize in emergencies. Its chief rtue, ready absorbability, can scarcely be said to be necessary, since e use of silk or linen thread seldom carries any troublesome complicaon with it from want of this property.

Needles for intestinal suture should be round bodied. The needle th a cutting edge not only makes a larger wound than is necessary, t also prepares the way for further cutting by the thread when the ter is tightened.

For the passage of Lembert's stitches a straight needle is the most nvenient, as it most readily pierces the base of the small fold raised by e tightening of the last passed element of the stitch. When sutures ed to be so introduced as to enter by the inner aspect of the bowel, at a depth from the surface, a curved or semicircular needle is cessary.

Needles of the split-eyed variety are convenient; the only disadvange is the occasional accident of slipping of the thread from a calyx eye en the tissue is hard or resistant, or when the double thread is conderably larger in calibre than the needle carrying it. In such circumnces an ordinary eye may be preferable, or the needle designed by terson may be used. The latter has the eye somewhat widened at the stal part, while the proximal end is so narrowed as to allow the thread hitch firmly in this part. The hole made by the needle is slightly inased in size, but not more so than is necessary for the easy passage of e double thickness of thread at the needle's eye.

Clamps. For purposes of coprostasis some form of clamp is to be garded as a necessity. A very slight degree of pressure suffices to tirely control the escape of fæcal contents from the bowel; hence the nciple of elastic compression by the metal of the instrument itself lbodied in the clamps of Doyen renders the use of any form of rubber eathing unnecessary. The rubber sheathing increases the bulk of the ades, and interferes with the accuracy with which the necessary comession is applied.

No clamps are more generally useful than those introduced by Doyen. ey possess the advantage of exerting an equable and sufficiently ht elastic compression, while the length of the handle and blades ves the useful purpose when laid across the abdominal wound of re-

taining the bowel readily in the required position, and prever
traction into the abdominal cavity. These clamps may be
varying size and weight, and fulfil all ordinary require
Fig. 323).

FIG. 323. DOYEN'S INTESTINAL CLAMP. Half-size.

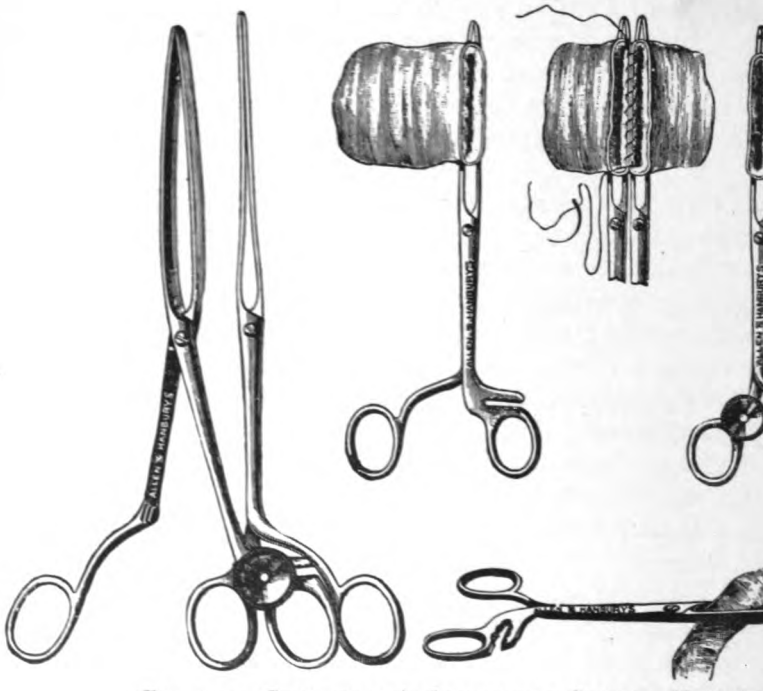
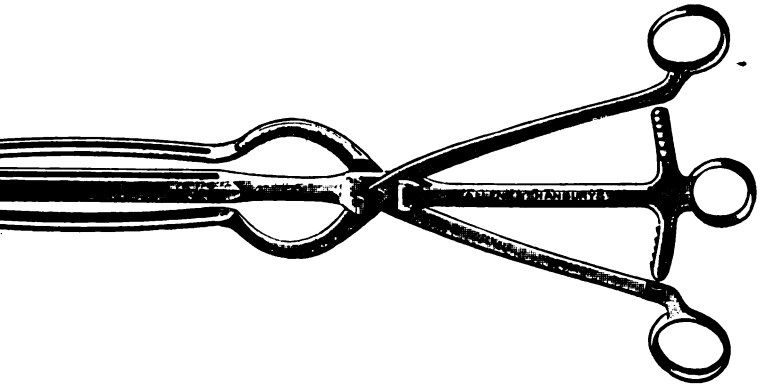


FIG. 324. CARWARDINE'S INTESTINAL CLAMP. Half-siz

Various modifications have been introduced, such as the
of the blades, to allow the introduction of sutures before
of the clamp, and, perhaps the most useful, that of Carwar
allows for the accurate fixation in proper relative position
portions of intestine to be united (see Fig. 324).

wardine's clamp, by a simple arrangement, the handles are fixation by a screw, so as to allow of exact parallelism rs of blades; further, the blades themselves are light and l exert an equable compression on the whole width of the ut.

stro-enterostomy clamp of Roosevelt is useful in lateral anasto- ecially when the large intestine is included. The broad metal



ROOSEVELT'S CLAMP, AS MODIFIED BY MOYNIHAN. One-third size.

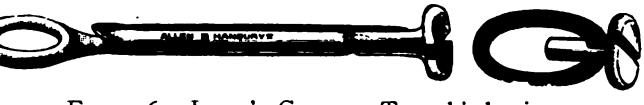


FIG. 326. LANE'S CLAMP. Two-thirds size.

FIG. 327. MAKINS'S CLAMP. Two-thirds size.

ed blade serves the purpose of the gauze plug ordinarily the deep aspect of the anastomosis before commencing the his clamp may also be used for axial enterectomies, if the content to leave the closure of the mesenteric gap to be the the operation (see Fig. 325).

smaller clamps are for any reason desirable, as when several ecessary, Lane's clamp or the modified Dieffenbach's forceps the writer may be employed. Either form has the advantage ng little space in the field of operation, or in the bag of the see Figs. 326, 327).

GENERAL ANATOMICAL CONSIDERATIO

The small intestine affords the most favourable condit alimentary tract as far as the manipulations of the surgeo cerned. Smooth and regular as to its serous surface, more or drical in outline, varying but slightly in calibre, and furnish abundant blood-supply, every essential for the successful wounds is presented.

Although for the most part clad with peritoneum so intir nected as to allow the direction of the longitudinal muscle fibr through the serous and tenuous subserous layer, yet at th margin where the true mesenteric layers allow the passage of and nerves to and from the structures of the bowel-wall a sm exists, which in the early days of intestinal surgery proved of more disasters than any other single element in the field of Again, in spite of the free blood-supply, the small intestine is susceptible to gangrene if the mesenteric margin and arter be unduly interfered with.

The whole *length* of the tube is approximately 21 feet, bu able variations occur (even 14 feet, Monks): such variations moment when long portions of intestine need to be resected.

The small bowel occupies roughly the central parts of the and pelvic cavities, covered for the most part by the great om surrounded by the colon. Only two fixed and certainly de points exist: the junction of the duodenum and jejunum at the second lumbar vertebra, and the termination of the ileum i iliac fossa. Between these points the bowel is attached by a of somewhat variable length, and the position of any one coi individual subjects, and even in the same subject under vary tions, such as posture, the degree of distension of successive p bowel, or the presence of ascites or tumours encroaching on the cavity. Some broad lines may, however, be laid down as to t of the different parts in normal bellies, the position of the va being dependent, as has been shown by Mall, on the length an of the mesentery. Mall's (*Bull. Johns Hopkins Hospital*, 18 p. 197) investigations suggest that in a considerable number o coils are arranged in four successive groups from above down assume regular positions: (1) Coils passing to the left, oc space partly covered by the transverse colon, and reaching to flexure; (2) Coils passing to the right, crossing the umbilica the hepatic flexure; (3) Coils passing to the left loin and il (4) Dependent coils dipping into the pelvis.

These general indications are supported by the investigations of Monks, who divides the abdomen into three zones limited by oblique lines, the centre of which is determined by the two points of fixation of the mesentery (see Fig. 328).

Monks has further drawn attention to the fact that the upper end of any individual coil may be determined by drawing it out, passing the hand beneath the mesentery to the spine to ensure the absence of any twist, and then placing it transversely on the abdominal wall. With the gut so placed, the end to the patient's right will be the lower. Beyond these broad lines we can only trust for localization to such points as the comparative thickness, calibre, tint, the apparent direction of the mesenteric pull, and perhaps the arrangement of the blood-supply. With regard to the latter, Monks has pointed out that in the mesentery attaching the upper four feet of the small intestine, the vasa intestina tenuis form simple arcades, while the vasa recta are comparatively long (3 to 5 centimetres); in the middle portion of the gut the arcades may be two or even three deep, while in the lower third a more and more irregularly arranged network takes the place of the symmetrical arcades, and the vasa recta are short, not exceeding 1 centimetre. It must, however, be allowed that in the change from the thick, wide, red upper jejunum, with its frequently obviously distended lacteals, to the narrow, pale, thin lower part of the ileum, the alterations are so gradual that the formation of a certain opinion under the disadvantageous conditions often present from pathological causes is practically impossible.

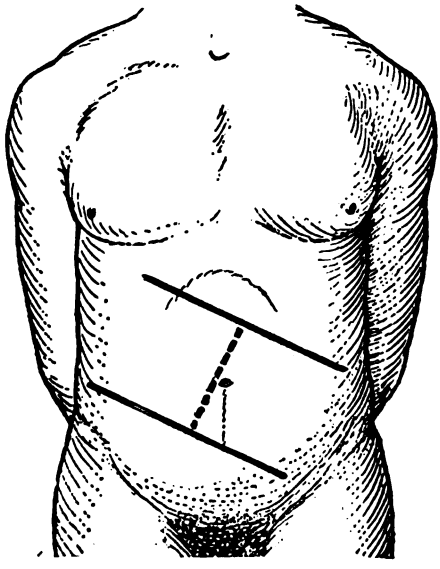


FIG. 328. ABDOMINAL ZONES. Three zones, containing in most instances the upper middle and lower thirds of the small intestine respectively. The dotted line indicates the root of the mesentery; the dark oblique lines cross the two extremities of this at right angles. (Monks, *Ann. of Surgery*, 1903, vol. xxxviii, p. 574.)

The large intestine in anatomical arrangement, structure, and function differs widely from the small, each anatomical segment possess-

ing special characters of its own which influence surgical procedures to so great an extent that they are most conveniently considered together with the special operations which may require to be performed upon them. Certain general characteristics only will therefore be mentioned here.

The average normal *length* in males has been computed at 4 feet 8 inches, in females at 4 feet 6 inches, with extremes of 6 feet 6 inches and 3 feet 3 inches (Treves). Pathologically, the length may be greatly increased when chronic distension has existed, such increase in length affecting particularly the more mobile portions, *e.g.* the transverse colon and the sigmoid flexure.

The general position of the large intestine in the abdominal cavity is marginal around the mass of the small intestine; this position, with the exception of the splenic flexure, facilitates access to the bowel, while taken together with the comparative fixity of the large intestine, it diminishes the danger of diffusion of infection from colic lesions to the general peritoneal cavity.

The different segments of the colon are fairly constant in position, the main element in their fixation being the peritoneal investment. As the most common arrangement, the ascending and descending colons are not only devoid of a mesentery, but the posterior surfaces have an area of some width in contact with the posterior abdominal wall, the extent of which varies with the amount of the distension of the bowel. The degree of fixation increases the difficulty of successfully uniting the bowel in enterectomy, or fixing it to the surface for the purpose of performing a colostomy, while the deficiency in the peritoneal investment affects the probability of effecting axial union safely, beyond affording the additional risk due to opening up the cellular tissue of the retroperitoneal space. Again, the uncovered area opens up the possibility of wound or rupture of the bowel without the confines of the peritoneal cavity. On the other hand, the mobile portions of the colon are exposed to dangers of their own; thus, kinking at the junction of the transverse colon with the hepatic or splenic flexures, or volvulus of the sigmoid.

The special arrangement of the muscular coat affects surgical measures. Thus, the tenia are useful in providing a firm grip for sutures, and the even surface afforded by them is that best fitted for approximation when a lateral anastomosis is made, while the inequalities dependent on the presence of the haustra are inconvenient in making lateral unions.

The vessels of the large intestine for the most part form but one simple arcade, except those for the flexures and the pelvic colon.

Common morbid conditions of the bowel. In connexion with these general anatomical points it must be borne in mind that, while in

cases of injury or strictly local disease the surgeon may have comparatively normal tissues and anatomical arrangements to deal with, yet in disease these conditions may be enormously disturbed.

The position of mobile portions of the bowel may be altered either as the result of simple distension, the weight of growth, habitual location in a false position, as in the sac of a hernia, or as a result of the pull of adhesions. On the other hand, the mobility of any portion may be decreased as a consequence of infiltration, either inflammatory or specific, of its mesenteric attachment (mesenteritis), by the spread of bowel growths to the surrounding parts, or by the presence of adhesions.

The condition of the bowel-wall itself may be such as to cause embarrassment. Simple distension may result in extreme tenuity and lowered vitality, increasing the difficulties of manipulation, and decreasing the chances of obtaining a successful union.

Compensatory hypertrophy in the presence of some source of obstruction may give rise to an opposite condition, the wall of the proximal portion of intestine being enormously thickened by tissue through which sutures readily cut, and of which the vitality is low; to which troubles incongruence in size of two segments to be joined may be added. Where a portion of intestine has been for a time unused the condition of atrophy and contraction may equally be a source of embarrassment, and the question of mere incongruence in size is here often much complicated by the presence of large masses of fat in the appendices epiploicæ and the mesentery, which commonly develop especially in connexion with portions of the large intestine which have been for any time cut off from performing their normal function.

In the neighbourhood of gangrenous gut a spreading cellulitis may extend over long lengths of the bowel, necessitating the removal of even some feet in order that a part capable of safe union may be obtained. Chronic œdema, or stiffening from chronic inflammatory infiltration, may give rise to much trouble in the closure of perforating ulcers, or in the performance of enterectomy in the neighbourhood of inflammatory tumours of the bowel; and, lastly, operations may have to be performed in the presence of specific disease, such as tubercle, widely disseminated in the peritoneum or bowel.

CHAPTER IX

THE REPAIR OF INJURIES, AND PERFORATI OF THE BOWEL

DEFECTS in the continuity of the wall of the intestine surgical repair may be the result of either injury or disease. plicity of causes which may lead to such defects necessitates variations in detail, and even in general principles in thei treatment.

Traumatic defects may be the result of wounds by sharp i accompanied by no serious destruction or loss of tissue, or injury in which the same characters are more or less mai they may be lacerations such as those produced by a fragment tured rib or portion of the pelvis. Again, they may be infli surgeon in the process of separating adhesions, and then ofte in conditions of varying degrees of inflammation.

Injuries differing little in general characters may result infliction of blunt force. Thus, the bowel may be perforated by compression between a strictly localized force, such as t by the point of a horseshoe or carriage pole, and the bony abdominal or pelvic cavity; or it may give way more or less at the point of junction of a fixed and movable portion as of being stretched beyond its potential elasticity. These acci a very considerable proportion of those liable to occur in th A consideration of 8,153 injuries of all classes admitted into St Hospital showed that 292, or 3.59%, were located in the abd of the latter number 22, or 23.59%, were injuries to the intes

Pathological perforations may result from such varying chronic ulcer of the duodenum, peptic ulceration of the jejunu or tuberculous ulceration of the lower ileum, cæcum, or colo chronic intestinal distension, acute septic infection and gangr bowel, ulceration in diverticula, either congenital or acquir extension or degeneration of malignant growths.

Although the immediate and ultimate result of accidents class are similar, yet two important distinctions must be dra fecting the treatment of the traumatic and pathological variet in mechanical injuries the tissues bounding the defect in th

ore or less normal in character, while in pathological perfora-
bowel-wall is the seat of varying degrees of inflammatory
econdly, the escape of intestinal contents, either gaseous, fluid,
much more free and widely diffused in the pathological per-
These points affect the site of the abdominal incision, the
es of suture, and the mode of dealing with the abdominal
ence each condition needs special consideration.

THE REPAIR OF INTESTINAL INJURIES

tions for exploration. No individual symptom or even
symptoms can be regarded as certain evidence of a perforat-
to the intestine, but the following points may be set down
o be specially considered in cases of suspected abdominal
contusions.

process of exclusion of injury to other viscera. Although a
n of injury to the intestine is obviously a possibility, yet this
most useful preliminary procedure in all cases of doubt.

sideration of the site of the injury, and of its nature. In
nces the violence may have been exerted in an area where an
ny other viscus than the intestine is unlikely, while ruptures
tine due to strictly localized force are in the great majority of
o be found in the lower half of the abdominal cavity, where
lity of crushing of the intestine between the applied force
ny wall of the abdomen or pelvis is possible. A very large
of the localized ruptures are caused by such forms of violence
of a horse or the impact of a carriage pole, while lacerations
e bowel is torn apart in its continuity follow such accidents as
e of a wheel over the abdomen or a crush between railway

amount of shock. This point is only of importance when
nnexion with other signs, since here, as in all serious abdom-
s, the degree of shock is variable to a degree.

teadily rising pulse. Although this sign in itself is really
companying the development of infection, it is to be regarded
st generally useful indication for exploration of the entire
The same remark in a lesser degree applies to a marked
of the rate of respiration; but this sign as a later one is far

se in temperature. In the earlier stages the temperature may
d by existing shock, but occasionally an early rise may be
a rule a serious rise of temperature only occurs when septic

absorption has reached a degree calculated to render the cha exploration small; hence this sign is of little practical use.

6. A rupture is occasionally followed by *a sudden ac bowels,* and, if the injury be in the lower segment of the c may be passed. These signs, though useful, if present, are so as to rarely afford material aid.

7. *Extreme localized tenderness,* with corresponding r possible immobility of the abdominal wall, are very impor tions; in fact, no less so than the same signs in the presence logical intestinal perforation.

8. In the early stages *fluid in the flanks* may indicate t of blood, but this is comparatively rare in the absence o the mesentery or omentum, and its presence should excit of one or other of these injuries, or of damage to one c viscera.

9. Injuries to the duodenum or colon may lead to t ment of *cellular emphysema,* but usually only at a compar date.

10. A wound of the bowel may occasionally be *obvious* c tion should an extensive opening exist in the abdominal rarely, gas or fæces may escape from an opening of lesser siz

11. *Blood* is occasionally vomited.

12. Later indications, of less value as being merely sign infection rendering any chances of successful treatment sli symptoms and signs of progressing peritoneal infection.

Method of operation. *Site of incision.* In cases o the intestine the site of the incision in the abdominal wall w be determined by the position of the original injury, except due to gunshots, when a consideration of the course of the may be necessary.

In cases of subcutaneous rupture, external evidence of t impact of the occasioning violence may lead to the same c taken; or in some rare instances, when the patient is seen ear sharply localized tenderness may serve the same purpose as graze in indicating the most suitable site for the explorato Usually, however, such evidence is not forthcoming at the da the operation has to be undertaken, and in the absence of signs a paramedian subumbilical incision is the most gener bearing in mind the fact that such injuries are more commo in the lower than the upper half of the abdomen.

The main exception to this rule is met with in lacerat jejunum at the duodeno-jejunal junction, but this injury ra

xcept where signs of injury to the upper abdomen, or a history of a fall n to the feet, exist.

During a period of eighteen years, 34 cases of rupture of the intestine ere admitted into St. Thomas's Hospital; of these ruptures 26 were ituated in the small intestine, 9 in the large; in one case both small nd large intestine were implicated (duodenum and transverse colon). he injuries to the small intestine were distributed as follows: Duo- enum, 5 (third part 4, first part 1); jejunum, 10; ileum, 8; small ntestine, part not stated, 3. Of the injuries to the colon, we find ecum, 1; ascending colon, 2; hepatic flexure, 2; transverse colon, 2; escending colon, 1; sigmoid flexure, 1.

The incision, wherever made, should be of sufficient length, or if ade small at first for the purpose of preliminary exploration, should be ngthened if a wide area has to be overlooked, since the probabilities diffusing infective matter are largely increased if the necessary man- ulations for the search are made through a small opening.

When the abdomen has been opened, certain indications may at ce give aid. Such are the escape of free gas, if the rupture be exten- e; the presence of blood, or blood-clot; the local collection of fluid, e to reaction to infection by the peritoneum, and the development of stic lymph; and lastly, the presence of intestinal contents. The nount of extravasation of intestinal contents is small, except in exten- e lacerations; hence the detection of such matter usually at once ds to that of the opening by which it has escaped.

The search for the wounded spot will in the first instance be guided any localizing evidence obtained from the history; failing this, or uld the evidence prove elusive, the small intestine is best searched m below upwards, and the large from the cæcum downwards. When ondary reactionary peritoneal effusion has had time to take place, fluid should be carefully mopped out as the search is proceeded with, ce it is important not to effect its further diffusion during the con- erable displacement of the bowels which may be necessary.

When the abdomen has been opened shortly after the infliction of injury, the bowel in some cases of abdominal contusion may be in ate of spastic contraction in the area affected by the violence. This dition is not, however, of very great localizing importance, since in e individuals the intestine rapidly assumes this state when the omen has been opened and the bowel touched.

The local injury having been discovered, means should be taken, er by wrapping the affected coil in gauze and putting it into the ds of an assistant, or by the application of clamps, to prevent further avasation of intestinal contents, and then the surrounding area

should be as thoroughly as possible cleansed by dry mop latter effected, the injured coil should be well drawn forward peritoneal cavity protected from further contamination by duction of gauze plugs, and the process of suture proceede dealing with punctured wounds the fact that the bowel lesi multiple must never be lost sight of.

An incised wound needs only the most simple treatment line of suture should be introduced, the inner including membrane only, or, if preferred, the whole thickness of the outer layer being a continuous Lembert's stitch, including the muscular coats and dipping well into the submucosa.

Should the wound be of the nature of a puncture, it ma by a purse-string suture, to which a line of Lembert's stitc superadded, preferably introduced in a direction transverse axis of the bowel.

If the lesions assume the character of lacerations the mar unfit for immediate approximation. This point must be c vestigated, and if it is decided that tissue must be remov cedure will vary with the amount of destruction present cases it will be necessary merely to freshen the margins to degree, and then to approximate them in a direction more o sponding to the transverse axis of the bowel, in order to av ing of the lumen as far as possible. In others, where the contusion is more extensive, a portion of the whole circumf be removed, and a typical enterectomy performed. In re latter procedure, it is as well to emphasize the fact tha enterectomy is not to be undertaken as a mere alternativ mental study, and experience of the results following the of enterectomy in cases of gangrenous herniæ, &c., appear t the proximal portion of the intestine for long distances re wards in a thinned and more or less dilated condition. This be more fully discussed later, but it suffices here to lay w fact that avoidance of a complete solution of continuity of plexuses is always to be aimed at, even if the more perf result is not obtained.

Repair of ruptures of the small intestine. Th portion of the bowel having been localized, three main typ may require to be dealt with.

1. *The laceration may not have extended to the lume testine.* Such injuries are usually the result of combined tearing. An illustration of them is given in Fig. 329. Her and muscular coats have been ruptured and widely separat

submucosa, the lesion being accompanied by a tear in the
which led to the death of the patient from internal hæmor-
s well to bear in mind that the latter combination is not in-
nce injuries of this type usually result from the application of
lence such as the passage of a cart-wheel over the abdomen.
ith extensive incomplete ruptures,
must be devoted to the examina-
state of the mesentery, since, put-
ne danger of further hæmorrhage
ound, the vitality of the portion of
volved may be hopelessly compro-
nterference with its blood-supply.
erous or sero-muscular rents are
a single series of deep Lembert's
ven when very small, if ununited,
the probability of the future de-
of undesirable adhesions. Exten-
demand the excision of the im-
gth of bowel. The enterectomy,
of the small intestine, will be of
pe. If the mesentery be not seri-
ged, it may be separated from the
plicated, care being taken to so
reed margin as to close any open-
o serve as a possible gap through
ntestine might travel later and be-
ngulated. The projecting fold
ıtured to the surface of the mesen-
ig. 330).

FIG. 329. NON-PERFORATING INJURY TO THE SMALL INTESTINE. The peritoneal and muscular coats are separated from the mucosa, in which no solution of continuity has occurred. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum*, No. 1001.)

lesion may consist of a limited
more or less closed by eversion
ous membrane; a large example of
trated in Fig. 331. In ruptures
strictly localized violence, as ap-
e point of the shoe of a horse, the
y be very small. This is the most
for the work of the surgeon; the local damage is limited,
are usually single, and a simple suture meets every require-
margins seldom need any refreshment, and the openings may
an inner layer of through and through sutures, either passed
string, in the case of small wounds, or as a continuous line,
eing buried by a second line of deep Lembert's stitches. If

the opening is of material size, whether transverse or lo direction, it should be sutured in the transverse axis of the

3. *The lesion may implicate the whole circumference* In Fig. 332 an instance is illustrated in which three-quarte cumference was torn. In such injuries an axial enterect union is indicated.

The cleansing of the peritoneal cavity is completed aft of the wound or rupture. The exposed coil may be washe solution, and the immediate neighbourhood wiped with a care being take any blood-clot have escaped th sponging in the area.

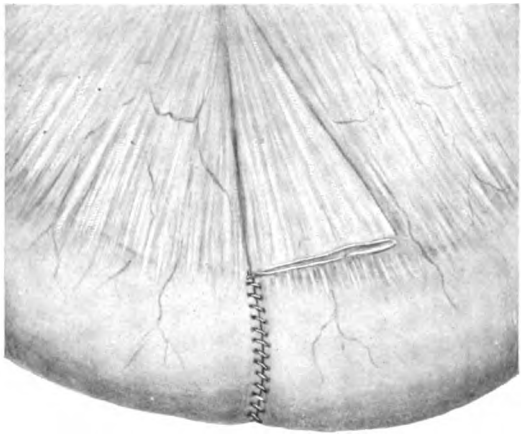


FIG. 330. PLICATED MESENTERY. Edge not sewn, and flap of mesentery loose.

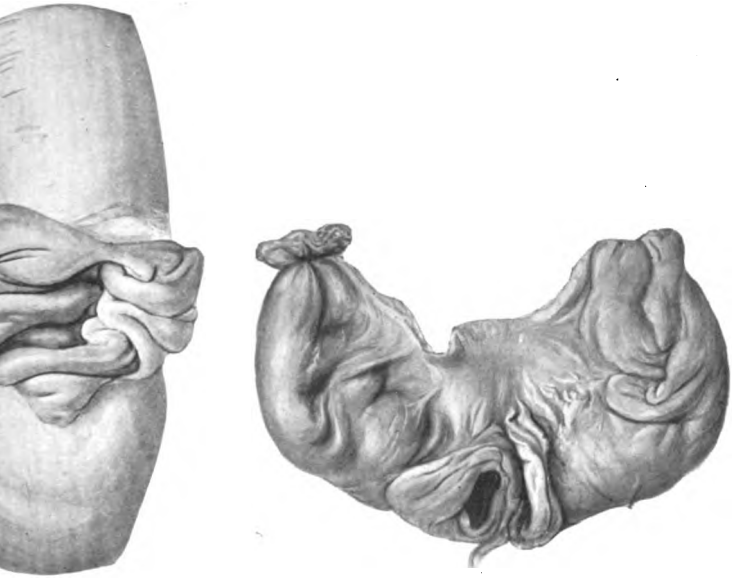
The wound dominal wall i by suture in provision of d be avoided if p unlikely to be cases dealt wit first twenty-fou the occurrence dent. If seve tion be met w must be provid insertion of a tube and one or more gauze plugs, and the ex should be left sufficiently open to give a free vent.

Repair of wounds or ruptures of the large intes wounds of the large bowel on the peritoneal aspect possess characteristics due to the small disposition of the more sol tents to escape. In many cases of small wounds this te marked that the amount of escape gives rise to little more local infection, which may be followed by the formation adhesions and the development of an abscess.

In this segment of the intestine another condition, sl second and third portions of the duodenum, has to be co either situation a portion of bowel unprovided with a ser may be implicated. Some of the more important consequ circumstance should be mentioned. Thus, the great adva rapidly agglutinating serous surface is lost, the wounds very inaccessible situations, the openings are comparatively

closed by intestinal contraction, while, lastly, intestinal con-travasated into and infect loose cellular tissue far less easily n the smooth even surface offered by the peritoneum.

eritoneal wounds and ruptures then demand special treatment. y, suture of the wound is the proper course to follow; practi-rarely be effectively performed. In the first place, diagnosis le proportionately late, when serious infection of the tissue



RUPTURE OF THE TESTINE, INVOLVING THE CIRCUMFERENCE EL. Marked eversion ous membrane. (*St. ospital Museum,* No.

FIG. 332. A RUPTURE INVOLVING THREE-FOURTHS OF THE CIRCUMFERENCE OF THE INTESTINE. Moderate eversion of the mucous membrane. Inflammatory lymph on the neighbouring surface. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum,* No. 1007.)

developed; secondly, the results of direct suture have been atisfactory. Two alternatives exist: (1) The enlargement nd and its practical conversion into a temporary artificial wel being brought to the surface and either sutured there or e insertion of a Paul's tube, efficient drainage of the sur-ound being established; (2) the fæces may be temporarily the establishment of an artificial anus in a convenient proxi-of the bowel, and the wound itself be drained.

osis and results. The prognosis in cases of rupture of e should not necessarily be bad when the lesions are un-

accompanied by coexistent injury to other parts. The indif
obtained up to the present time are in great measure a
difficulties in diagnosis, from the fact that the initial s
often quite incommensurate with the gravity of the lesion
sequence many operations are undertaken at a time too rem
reception of the injury to afford reasonable chances of suc
ment. To ensure a reasonable chance, the operation must
during the first twenty-four hours.

Of 34 cases treated by operation in St. Thomas's H
covered (mortality 73.5%), the first successful instance being
case of Croft. 24 of the cases implicated the small intestin
recovered (mortality 79%); and 10 implicated the large
these 4 recovered (mortality 60%). Of the last 22 cases
tween 1893 and 1907, 8 recovered (mortality 63.6%).

Berry and Guiseppi (*Proc. Roy. Soc. of Med.*, 1908,
Surg. Sect.) have analysed the results obtained in ten Lon
during the last fifteen years, and find the mortality to ha
to 87.2%.

So little weight can be placed on the results obtainable
of successful published cases that none are included.

Speaking generally, it is clear that wounds or ruptures
intestine, however caused, are more formidable injuries
affecting the large bowel; but some exceptions must be
statement. Thus, certain segments of the large bowel, as t
colon and the sigmoid flexure, share with the small intes
advantage of occupying an area in which intestinal move
and the conditions for the rapid spread of infection are
Again, extra-peritoneal ruptures of the colon or duodenur
occurrence of infection of the retroperitoneal tissue, a situa
infection can be less successfully dealt with at the time of o
in which it is difficult to arrest the process by incision an

OPERATIONS FOR GUNSHOT INJURIES TO THE IN

Although in their results these accidents differ little, if
the corresponding injuries of civil practice, yet, both in re
culty of diagnosis and to the question of treatment, they pre
of their own which render a special consideration of them c

Indications. The indications already set forth on p.
to the injuries of civil practice are of the same import in
gunshot wounds, but certain special points need elaboratio

(i) *With regard to the site of the injury.* The military
be in the same position as the civil practitioner when no

sent, but in a large proportion of cases a completed track
e body exists, and the advantage of the information as to
the abdominal cavity traversed may be considerable. Certain
e been observed to be especially unfavourable; thus wounds
m flank to flank, the track of which crosses fixed portions of
nd complicated coils of the small intestine. These wounds
larly dangerous when situated between the eighth rib in the
y line and the crest of the ilium. Above this level, the
ver and stomach are often alone implicated, while wounds
e false pelvis have been observed to traverse the area
the intestine without inflicting injury somewhat frequently.
terior tracks directly crossing the area occupied by the small
re especially dangerous; in such the bowel rarely escapes

s passing obliquely from the front of the abdomen to the
ugh dangerous to the colon, often miss the small intestine,
l tracks, either descending from the thorax and terminating
e anterior abdominal wall, or ascending from the pelvis and
the subumbilical area, are comparatively favourable to the
he intestine.

ature of the violence. Injuries caused by portions of large
as shells, do not differ from serious lacerated wounds in
ce. In the case of bullet wounds the size of the projectile
locity it may possess at the time of impact with the body
siderable importance. Bullets of the larger sporting variety
tini-Henry class (calibre 0.45 inch) may be regarded as never
nter or traverse the abdominal cavity without occasioning
ury, and wounds of any part of the intestine caused by them
be expected to heal spontaneously. The same remark applies
egree to bullets of smaller calibre which have 'set up' before
npact with the body. Thus, a large irregular wound, or the
ne bullet has pierced or comminuted bone prior to traversing
ccupied by the intestine, may be an important element in
n an exploration. High velocity at the time of impact, in my
is on the whole a favourable moment as far as abdominal
e concerned, provided that the soft parts only are struck.
velling with a low velocity are more liable to be retained;
possibly turn over during their course across the abdomen,
splacement of the bowel due to laterally distributed force is
o occur. Gas or fæces may occasionally be noticed to escape
wound in gunshot injuries.

aking of the special indications for exploration in cases of

gunshot wounds of the abdomen, certain *sources of fall* these injuries are liable must be mentioned. First of all, may actually escape in spite of the fact that the apertu and exit indicate a track in the course of which injury to the be deemed inevitable. Many factors may contribute to this apertures of entry and exit by no means always accurately actual course of the track. Thus, Cheatle has shown ex that the level of a certain portion of the skin may vary i different attitudes of the body; thus, a point in the mid-axil ascend not less than 5 inches when the arm is raised abo Lesser degrees of displaceability were noted in other parts as over the iliac crests and groins in varying relative pos trunk and lower extremities. Further, as Cheatle illustrates to the surgical use of the Trendelenburg position, the portion occupying any given area within the abdomen may be w by changes in the position of the trunk. Again, the skin at of entry, and, to a lesser degree, at the aperture of exit, may by the bullet itself, when the latter strikes tangentially (C *Journ. Roy. Army Med. Corps,* 1906, vol. vii, No. 1, p. 31

The bullet in its course, although striking the intesti cause contusion or a non-perforating abrasion. This form furthered by the general tendency of the travelling bullet to displacement of the structures of the body without seriou of tissue, so well illustrated by the perforation of the perip A general consensus of opinion favours the assumption th bowel contains little beyond gas, it is more likely to escap injury.

The injury or escape of any portion of the bowel is de enced by the degree of mobility of the portion of intesti Thus, injuries crossing the fixed portion of the colon are forating, and the same may be assumed for the more fixed the small bowel, such as the duodenum and the upper end of and lower end of the ileum respectively. The location of a fixed or mobile portion of the intestine is also of the firs with regard to rapidity of spread and extent of the result

Lastly, many surgeons are of opinion that perforations may be closed temporarily by the eversion of the mucou become rapidly sealed by lymph, and heal spontaneously. has little belief in this assumption as far as the small int cerned.

Mention should be made of the fact that the small inte ruptured by a blow from a spent bullet, or at any rate a

does not penetrate either the skin or the abdominal cavity. Watson Cheyne recorded such an instance during the South African War, in which the small intestine was found ruptured in two places.

This subject is dealt with more fully in Volume V.

THE REPAIR OF INJURIES TO THE MESENTERY

Wounds of the mesentery are usually limited in extent, and comparatively easy of treatment. Ruptures, on the other hand, are not rarely very extensive. Ruptures or lacerations are caused by injuries affecting the middle and upper parts of the abdomen; very often the patient has been run over. The mesentery is then crushed against the prominence of the spine, or the mesentery is torn, as a result of dragging from the violent displacement of the intestines. The cardinal indication for operation in these injuries is internal hæmorrhage.

Operation. A paramedian incision, the centre of which lies well above the umbilicus, is most convenient, and when the rupture is an extensive one the wound will probably need considerable enlargement. The bleeding vessels must be secured by forceps and tied, and the rent in the mesentery itself closed by suture. The method of closing the rent in the mesentery after enterectomy advocated by Moynihan, *i.e.* of approximating the edges by tying vessels on the opposite sides of the rent with the same ligature, is particularly appropriate here, since it is of the utmost importance that the stitches should not perforate uninjured vessels and still further prejudice the vitality of the bowel. In estimating the seriousness of any given vascular injury, it is obvious that the obliteration of even several of the trunk vasa intestina tenuis is of less importance than a comparatively limited injury completely severing the continuity of the vascular anastomotic arcades.

If the rent be extensive very free displacement of the bowel is necessary to thoroughly expose the field of operation, hence the abdominal wound must be large, and a considerable degree of evisceration may be unavoidable. Precautions must therefore be taken to protect the exposed bowel with warm towels. Suture is the proper method in either small or very large rents. When the rent is of moderate degree, but of such a nature as to entirely cut off some three or more inches of bowel from its direct blood-supply, it is safer to resect the affected portion of bowel as well as close the defect in the mesentery.

In connexion with this subject it may be pointed out that the prevailing belief as to the danger to the vitality of the bowel in mesenteric injuries is probably somewhat exaggerated. Evidence certainly exists to show that very extensive injuries may be recovered from. Thus the writer has seen a case in which, as the result of the handle of a wheel-

barrow being driven against the abdomen by a passing m
most the whole length of the base of the mesentery was
The rent was repaired by A. Y. Pringle and the patient r
recovery, some three months later being well, except for o
tacks of diarrhœa. Mayo Robson has recorded a case c
ligature of the superior mesenteric vein (*Brit. Med. Journ.*,
p. 77). Again, the observation of Haberer (*Brit. Med. J*
vol. i, p. 882) that the obliteration of the inferior mesent
thrombosis in the neck of a duodeno-jejunal hernia had not
grene, bears upon this point.

Wounds or laceration of the great omentum are sutured
manner. When the rent in the omentum is transverse in
is advisable to remove the distal portion and suture the ma
gap. In wounds of either mesentery or omentum, the impor
leaving a hole through which intestine can pass and beco
lated is obvious, and in cases of injury to the omentum ca
taken to avoid leaving raw stumps liable to form adventitio
with their attendant dangers.

OPERATIONS FOR PATHOLOGICAL PERFORA THE INTESTINE

Perforations of this character may occur in patients
standing symptoms of the disease which gives rise to th
advent may be sudden, forming, to the patient at least, the
tion of anything seriously amiss.

Whatever the cause of the perforation, the subsequer
events is usually towards a fatal issue in the absence of ope
ment, except in the comparatively uncommon cases in which
of perforation is subacute and the diffusion of infection i
protecting adhesions developing around the opening.

The site of the incision, made for the purpose of dealing
logical perforations, is often determined by the conclusion a
to the primary nature of the disease, and on opening t
immediate confirmatory or other evidence may be furnishe
nature and locality of the lesion. Free gas may at once
from the peritoneal cavity, pointing to the probability of t
of a perforated viscus, or the characters of the fluid effusion
afford useful aid. Thus, if gruel-like fluid, odourless and
by the free deposition of lymph, be disclosed, we suspect t
if the matter be deeply bile-stained, the duodenum or upp
if stinking, the vermiform appendix or a portion of the l
or if sanguineous, malignant disease.

PERFORATIONS OF THE DUODENUM

tions of the duodenum may supervene on ulceration of an hronic character, but the great majority are of the latter hough the ulcer may have been latent as far as symptoms are The disease is far more common in men than in women, of recorded cases occurring in the male sex. It is also ent in middle life or later, although cases have been met with as young as ten years, and in one recorded case in an infant ks (Cecil E. Finney, *Proc. Roy. Soc. of Med.*, 1908, vol. ii, udy of Dis. in Child., p. 67).

tions. Actual perforation is indicated by a sudden attack pain, usually in the upper abdomen, accompanied by acute rness above and to the right of the umbilicus; the patient , occasionally the vomit contains blood. The right rectus omes rigid, and the general respiratory movements decreased, markedly restricted in the upper segments of the abdomen. dullness may become rapidly obliterated.

me the area of physical signs widens, although it remains nited to the right half of the abdomen. Dullness in the right evelop, while extension of the area of pain and tenderness in n of the right iliac fossa has given rise, in a large number of o confusion with a perforation of the appendix. In fifty-one eration collected by Moynihan, a primary incision, intended h the appendix, was made in no less than nineteen instances. currence of perforation is attended by signs of collapse, fol- great increase in the pulse rate and elevation of the tempera- e condition be not promptly attended to, signs of general nfection rapidly develop.

tion. The operation is best commenced with the patient he position. An incision is made over the right rectus muscle he right of the median line. The sheath is incised, and the nnexions having been carefully separated from its deep aspect, itself is displaced to the right. The freeing of the intersec- companied by some hæmorrhage from small vessels which controlled, or it may otherwise continue during the further operation. The length of the incision should not be less than nce not only has the perforation to be dealt with, but also ble area of the abdominal cavity to be cleansed.

sterior layer of the sheath of the rectus is divided, and the opened. The escape of gas and a variable amount of fluid w this step; the latter must be at once mopped up.

It is convenient for the further stages of the operation, raise the shoulders of the patient by elevation of the upp table, or to distend an air-cushion, previously arranged i condition beneath the lower ribs. This procedure facilitates of the lower abdominal contents, enlarges the field of e allows the duodenum to be more readily brought up to the

The search for the perforation is now proceeded with; when no previous peritoneal changes have occurred, th readily found; if any difficulty arises, it is best met by tra denum from the pylorus downwards. When old peritoneal occurred, or when operation has been deferred beyond hours, adhesions may render the search much more difficul method of exposure is, however, to be adopted; thus the l upwards, the transverse colon downwards, and the stomac

The perforation is most commonly on the anterior 3 inches of the pylorus, the most manageable portion of thirty-two cases subjected to operation at St. Thomas's opening was found in the first part in twenty-eight, in th in three, and at the junction of the first and second parts 131 cases collected by Collin, 119 perforations were in t eight in the second part, and four in the third part.

The opening is commonly a small punched-out orifice w gins, forming the centre of an indurated area correspond ulcer within the bowel. From it, gas and bile-stained co freely on manipulation. In rare instances the opening may the escape of duodenal contents has then been abundant. It borne in mind that occasionally more than one perforati The perforation having been located, the further escape c controlled by pressure with a plug, the immediately surrou rapidly cleansed, and the surrounding viscera protected duction of strips of gauze.

It is rare that excision of the ulcer should be taken into since experience has shown it to be unnecessary, and th tissue necessitates eventual narrowing of the lumen, bu advisable, the margins of the perforation may be refresh the opening is closed by inversion, which may be effected b methods. If the opening be small and the surrounding infil bowel-wall moderate in degree, an ordinary purse-string suffice; if the bowel-wall be stiff and too brittle to give s the purse-string stitch, a single mattress suture, passed i transverse to the long axis of the gut, gives a safer hold a perforation effectually. The closed opening is then furthe

n of a second line of continuous Lembert's sutures, also passed
ion transverse to the long axis of the bowel. Should doubt
s to the efficiency of the closure, this is a position where the
of an omental graft is easy and open to no serious

ening closed, attention is turned to the permanent cleansing
toneal cavity. When effusion has been moderate in amount,
ed to the right half of the abdomen, the whole procedure may
from the existing wound, and, bearing in mind the common
n by these effusions, especial care is extended to the hepato-
, the two margins of the ascending colon, the right loin, and
ire that the sac of the lesser omentum is free. When the
s extended into the pelvis, or to the general peritoneal cavity,
aramedian subumbilical incision, with displacement of the
cle outwards, is needed to allow of these parts being reached.
ocess of cleansing should be carried out by the careful intro-
long, soft, dry, sterile gauze plugs; the only part in which
n come into consideration is the area immediately surround-
foration itself, elsewhere it is unnecessary and harmful.
he general state of the patient is such as to warrant the in-
enditure of time involved, and the local condition of the area
um in the immediate vicinity of the perforation is not such as
he risk of diffusing infection too great, recent experience is
favour of the immediate establishment of a gastro-enteros-
s step is calculated to give relief to the sutured spot, and also
he ultimate cicatrization of ulceration present.
the question of drainage has to be decided upon. In this
must be borne in mind that the duodenal contents may be
at any rate, not highly septic, and if effusion has been only
xistent for less than twenty-four hours, no drainage is neces-
n when the effusion is abundant, it is in the main a fluid the
ritoneal reaction, and in favourable cases all drainage may be
vith. The insertion of a pelvic drain is, however, very gen-
nmended, to be retained for the first twenty-four to thirty-

rainage is to be avoided, if possible, as unfavourable to the
s for the intestinal suture, and is to be employed only in the
bad local conditions.
lominal wound is closed by suture of the posterior layer of the
th together with the peritoneum, replacement of the rectus
ure of the anterior layer of the sheath, and, lastly, suture of
If forceps have been left on the small vessels of the sub-

cutaneous layer of fat, the latter may be approximated by u ligature to obliterate the opposite ends.

Operations for subacute perforations, and perforation terior wall of the duodenum. When the process of perfora gradual and an abscess localized by firm adhesions has for interference with the opening into the gut is dangerous an sible. When the lesion is situated in a peritoneal clad p bowel, the abscess will occupy some part of the area which a the effusion in acute perforation; thus it may point belo margin, near the umbilicus, in the right iliac region, or it scend into the pelvis.

Should it be desired to expose the posterior non-pe aspect of the duodenum in cases of injury or perforation, t the bowel may be approached from the right loin, by an in to that employed for exposure of the kidney, the lower p latter organ forms a rallying point for the localization of t

Such an incision is superior to that devised by Braune, s more space for manipulation and allows the peritoneum readily displaced. The method of mobilization of Koche the duodenum and pancreas are readily lifted for purpose tion. In this operation the position of the right colic ar relation of the vessels and ducts to the duodenum and hea creas need to be borne in mind.

Prognosis and results. The results of these ope undergone a steady improvement corresponding with the greater frequency with which they are performed. Ex definitely shown that nothing short of an effectual closur foration is of avail, since all recorded cases in which sim has been resorted to have terminated fatally.

In a collation of fifty-one cases by Moynihan, publis (*Lancet,* vol. ii, p. 1685), seven recoveries only occurred, of 86.27%. In a collation of 155 cases by Mayo Robson, 1906 (*Brit. Med. Journ.,* vol. i, p. 248), fifty-two recoveries the mortality being reduced to 66%.

During the years 1890-1907 inclusive, twenty-three op perforated duodenal ulcer were performed at St. Thoma with eight recoveries, a result corresponding to Mayo R (65.2%). In five of the earlier operations the perforation wa and if these cases be subtracted we have eighteen sutured with eight recoveries, a reduction of the mortality to 55.5%

The interval between the occurrence of perforation and for its closure is of the same importance as in the case of gas

Digitized by Google

tions. Weir, in commenting upon twenty-five operations, states that in thirteen in which an interval exceeding thirty hours elapsed before operation, all died; while of twelve in which the operation was undertaken after less than thirty hours, four died, a mortality of 33.3%. The same point is illustrated in Mayo Robson's collation. Thus, in sixty-one cases in which the operation was undertaken before twenty-four hours, the mortality was 37.7%, while in sixty-three in which more than twenty-four hours had elapsed, the mortality reached 82.5%.

Death most frequently results from peritoneal infection, and this has often commenced prior to the operation. Other causes of death are lung complications, which will no doubt be rarer with the general adoption of the 'almost sitting' position after operation; the presence of a co-existent second perforation of the duodenum itself, or of the stomach; local abscesses, or abscesses in the subdiaphragmatic or perisplenic area.

PERFORATION IN ENTERIC FEVER

This accident accounts for a very large proportion of the mortality from enteric fever. In a series of 2,533 cases of enteric fever collated by Hector Mackenzie from the reports from four London General Hospitals (St. Bartholomew's, St. Thomas's, Middlesex, and Charing Cross), 346, or 13.4%, died. Perforation had occurred in no less than 117 of the fatal cases; thus, in a proportion of nearly one to three (*Lancet*, 1903, vol. ii, p. 863). A similar proportion was observed in 1,948 cases reported by J. Alison Scott from the Pennsylvania Hospital; thus, 153 deaths in which were 48 perforations (*Univ. of Penn. Med. Bull.*, 1905-6, vol. xviii, p. 81); and by Goodall in the Eastern Fever Hospital (*Lancet*, 1904, vol. ii, p. 9); thus, 1,921 cases, with 304 deaths, in 96 of which were perforations, all the patients dying but two.

Indications. These are of the same nature as in other pathological perforations, but they differ somewhat in their relative importance, and tend to be obscured by the coexistence of the severe symptoms of the primary disease.

Operation. The patient is placed in the supine position, and a subumbilical incision 4 inches in length is made through the right rectus sheath, exactly in the same manner as for dealing with an appendix in which pelvic suppuration is suspected. This incision has the great advantage of allowing subsequent drainage for a time, without the ulterior development of a ventral hernia.

The abdomen open, an immediate escape of sero-fibrinous exudation or possibly free gas may occur. If this be not the case, search for the perforation is commenced by finding the ileo-cæcal junction, and carefully following the gut in an upward direction. This part of the search

should be made with circumspection, as the position of escap
fluid is a valuable localizing indication of the site of perf
some 90% of all cases the latter will be found in the ileum w

FIG. 333. TWO PIECES OF ILEUM FROM A CASE OF ENTERIC FEVER. In the upper is seen a perforation shelving from within; in the lower a large slough is seen in the process of detachment, and several depressions from which sloughs of varying depths have separated. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum*, No. 1044.)

of the ileo-colic valve, and in
fifths of the ileal cases within th
In 264 cases collected by Hecto
(*loc. cit.*, p. 864) 2 perforations
in the jejunum, 232 in the ileu
large gut, and 9 in the vermifor
Fluid and escaped intestinal c
mopped up with gauze sponges a
proceeds, the possible situation
foration in the cæcum or the ver
pendix being excluded or veri
case may be, at the commencer
exploration. Adhesions rarely
any trouble, as the operations ar
formed at an early stage; and
the perforation has existed longe
sition of plastic matter capable c
diffusion, as in appendix perf
rare, probably from the bad cond
patient and consequent want of
action on the part of the periton

The perforation may be one
rieties; either a small opening
margin of the bowel, from abo
of a pin's head to ¼ of an inch
forming the deepest part of the
ulcer, or an area sometimes in
whole circumference of the bow
the seat of a gangrenous cellul
more openings existing within
area (see Fig. 333). When th
are of the small variety they
single, but it is not uncommon
one or more incipient perforatio
of which is indicated by the presence of a small yellow area
neighbourhood of the complete one.

Should the search in the lower ileum prove fruitless it mu
in mind that perforation may exist in the ascending, transve
descending colon: also that in colic perforations there is
ency to the formation of multiple openings.

the perforation has been found, there is often room to apply either side of it, in order to prevent further escape of con- ng the process of suture. This procedure is often unnecessary, is not free and the opening small. The surrounding area is s dry as possible, and it may be a convenience at this stage of ion to raise the foot of the table to facilitate the packing away ion of the intestines during the process of suture.

perforations may be closed by the introduction of a single titch, the closed spot being further sunk by a few Lembert's ssed in the transverse axis of the bowel. The same procedure dopted should incipient perforations be noted in the neighbour- e complete one. In larger perforations a through and through uld be used, but again the mattress form of suture affords the ld. In the rarer cases in which a large necrotic area is found, necessary to perform an enterectomy, care being taken that ns of bowel to be united are free from ulceration.

ations of the vermiform appendix are treated by removal of in the type manner, and the same course should be taken in ses in which the perforation is situated in a Meckel's divertic- should be borne in mind that suppurating mesenteric glands onally met with in patients the subjects of perforation.

doubt exist as to the efficiency of the suture the perforation is situated as to readily allow the application of an omental graft. nt iliac fossa it is also possible to suture the omental apron in hion as to shut off the greater part of the upper abdomen and pelvis, in order to minimize the dangers of possible ulterior

should the bowel-wall be in such condition as to make the on of sutures futile, the last resources of establishing an ente- ay be adopted, although with small hope of ultimate success. rocess of suture completed, attention is turned to the final of the peritoneal cavity. The sutured bowel itself, and the neighbourhood, may be washed with normal saline solution; ad peritoneal exudation is better absorbed by dry gauze strips ntroduced in all directions where its presence is suspected. of peritoneum most severely inflamed will be situated in the here intestinal contents will be most likely to have gravitated. ust always be introduced, since there is no chance that either g intestinal contents or the consequent reactionary peritoneal will be sterile, as in the case of a duodenal perforation. The li-communis is usually present, and sometimes pyogenic cocci. dia-rubber tube passing to the bottom of Douglas's pouch, sup-

plemented by a gauze drain in one strip, so introduced as ample in the right iliac fossa as deep as the pelvic brim, and the abdominal wound, is the most satisfactory form of a By this means both the capillary action of a gauze drain an tage of the more permanent channel afforded by a tube are

The wound is closed, leaving sufficient space for the wi the gauze drain, which latter process should be commenced ond day, and be completed on the third or fourth.

Prognosis and results. When the general condi patients on whom this operation has to be performed is bo the recorded results are surprisingly good, and support the nally advanced by von Mikulicz, that patients in whom a p suspected should undergo an exploratory operation. Expe ever, has shown this course to be open to considerable dan and Ashurst (*Ann. of Surg.*, 1904, vol. xxxix, p. 39) give cases in which the abdomen was opened and no perforation of which number 10 subsequently died. This mortality canno attributed to the operation, since the latter has often to be u desperate cases of a disease which itself possesses a general 13–14%, but it suffices to give a useful caution against too f exploration.

Recovery is usually slow, and the occurrence of both local complications is common; thus, exhaustion from the pneumonia, secondary abscesses, iliac thrombosis, &c. The coexisting intestinal hæmorrhage is a very bad prognostic el prognosis is naturally best in operations undertaken duri twenty-four hours, and also in patients between ten and twe age. Elsberg (*Ann. of Surg.*, 1903, vol. xxxviii, p. 71) has cases of perforation in children with 9 deaths, a mortality Sydney R. Scott records 9 cases operated upon at St. Ba Hospital (*St. Barts. Hosp. Rep.*, 1903, vol. xxxix, p. 131), i first successful suture performed in London by Bowlby, wi mortality 66.6%. J. Alison Scott (*loc. cit.*, p. 86) records 3 performed at the Pennsylvania Hospital with 27 deaths, mor Harte and Ashurst (*Ann. of Surg.*, 1904, vol. xxxix, p. 8) collected cases with 268 deaths, mortality 74%. Zesas (*Wi* 1904, vol. xxx, p. 317) records 255 operations with a morta

Zesas's statistics include 142 cases of simple suture wit mortality 62.6%; also 20 enterectomies with 12 deaths, mo This would appear to show a margin in favour of the n method of enterectomy, but it must be remembered that the whom it would be considered safe to undertake an enterectom

neral condition is the more promising at the time of the opera-
urphy reports 5 consecutive operations and recoveries (*Surg. Obst.*, June, 1908, p. 565).

eneral results have therefore improved since the publication of st of 83 cases with 67 deaths, mortality 80.7% (*Surg. Compl. of Typhoid Fev.*, 1898). Collected results gleaned from vari-ces are, however, open to the usual defect of statistics thus of not including the large number of unsuccessful cases re-unrecorded, and against the numbers given above may be quoted Goodall (*Lancet*, 1904, vol. ii, p. 14), who reports four re-only in 49 operations performed at the Metropolitan Fever mortality 91.8%.

ATIONS OF AN INFECTIVE AND INFLAMMATORY NATURE

perforations are met with in their simplest form in the case of bowel implicated in internal or external herniæ, then usually on convex margin of the bowel. They require to be sutured with e, since the surrounding area is not so much the seat of inflam-nduration, as of defective vitality due to infection and distension testinal wall dependent on interference with the blood-supply. ured spots may remain weak and form the site of recurrent per-; thus, an old woman, in whom a perforation was closed during rmance of an operation for strangulated femoral hernia, came der treatment six months later for general peritonitis due to e of ulceration at the sutured spot, the silk stitches of the former being found still in position on one margin of the opening.

RATION OF STERCORAL ULCERS AND IN DIVERTICULAR DISEASE

perforations of either nature are generally only diagnosed dur-xploratory operation; they occur usually in subjects of chronic ion, who are suddenly seized with symptoms of acute peritoneal closely simulating those of acute obstruction. The ulcers are in some portion of the colon, the diverticula, especially in the lexure. Perforation of a diverticulum frequently results from nce of a stercolith. If practicable, the opening should be closed , and the peritoneal cavity closed and drained. In diverticular when distal obstruction exists, it is advisable to make a proximal y in addition. The ultimate prognosis in these cases is bad.

the process of perforation is subacute or chronic, localized on results; here incision and drainage form the immediate

treatment, to be possibly followed in diverticular disease by
(see pp. 716–42).

PERFORATION IN MALIGNANT DISEASE

This condition offers little scope for credit to the operatir
When the perforation is acute the majority of the patients die
peritoneal infection, whether operated upon or not. None the
brought into the presence of one of these cases the position
geon is one of some perplexity. Laparotomy offers slight ch
covery, and if no operation is decided upon the patient must be
opiates to relieve the misery which continues until death. If
be decided upon, closure of the opening should be accompar
performance of a proximal colostomy or unilateral exclusion
the course of the fæces. Under these circumstances, if the
in good condition, and is dealt with within a few hours of the
of the accident, a recovery may occasionally be obtained, a
case the sufferings of the patient may be very materially reliev

CHAPTER X

ENTEROTOMY AND ENTEROSTOMY

erms enterotomy and enterostomy naturally include operations
rt of the whole length of the intestinal canal. It has, however,
customary to designate openings into the colon under the
otomy and colostomy, while later the convenient custom of
lesignating any enterostomy by a name corresponding to the
e tube opened has become general.

ations. These operations have a somewhat wide application,
temporary or permanent measures, and may be indicated
y varying circumstances.

nterotomy is employed as a convenience during the performance
ons where intestinal distension interferes with the necessary
ions. When the bowel is in good condition, and readily con-
r the evacuation of its contents, the opening may be at once

n other instances, when intestinal fermentation has reached an
stage, and either the muscular contractility of the bowel has
everely from the action of the toxins on the nervous plexuses
or from continued distension when in a septic condition, an
ny for a short period is often advantageous. Under these
ces an enterostomy not only relieves the bowel-wall, but
s nutriment to be introduced into the distal segment of the

n a similar manner a jejunostomy may be established to nour-
ient, and relieve the general condition, antecedently to the per-
of a gastro-enterostomy.

n the large intestine an enterostomy may be used as a tem-
easure prior to the removal of growths of the bowel, for
of lavage in morbid conditions of the colon, or as a safety-
revent the collection of gas and fæcal matter in the case of
niting.

astly, in one or other of the forms of colostomy, the issue of
may be permanently diverted to a new aperture.

ENTEROTOMY

Operation. When enterotomy is used as a purely measure its performance is one of great simplicity. A coi is drawn as far as practicable out of the wound, thoro rounded by gauze plugs to protect the abdominal cavity, punctured.

In some cases where a single coil, as the sigmoid flexure distended, it may suffice to first introduce a purse-string sut the centre of the included area to enter a large trochar and evacuate the contents, which are often in a large measur

FIG. 334. MOYNIHAN'S INTESTINAL DRAINAGE TUBE.

A rubber tube may be fitted to the canula the contents being collected in a vessel well the field of operation. When the coil is e suture is tightened up as the canula is with the tied purse-string suture is sunk by the i of a short transverse line of Lembert's stit

When distension is more general, an stretch of intestine needs to be emptied, i able to make an incision with the knife, of these may be needed. In order to avo incisions, Moynihan employs a piece of g some 6 or 8 inches long, to which is appl of india-rubber tubing to carry the intestin well away from the area of the wound (see When the contents in the immediate neighb the opening have escaped, the glass tube is in nearly its whole length, a piece of gauze around the point from which the tube prevent escape by the side, and it is entru hands of an assistant. The surgeon now with care, draws on to the tube the intestine beyond; in t much as 8 or 10 feet may be brought into the field of ope thoroughly emptied.

Moynihan further makes use of this tube either for wash intestine with saline solution, introduced by a hollow needl with a funnel and rubber tube, entered at the highest poin the tube has penetrated, or, in certain cases, for the intro solution of sulphate of magnesia.

When the enterotomy opening has served its purpose, an of suture, including the whole thickness of the bowel, is intro

ık by the addition of a transverse line of Lembert's stitches, the serous and muscular coats.

xposed loop is now thoroughly cleansed by washing with warm line solution and returned.

ENTEROSTOMY

ation. In cases where the wall of the bowel has suffered as to lose its tone and contractility, the incision in the bowel mployed for the purposes of a temporary enterostomy. For t it suffices to tie in a Paul's tube, and fasten the bowel in ngle of the wound with a few stitches; two, one at either end p of bowel, will usually suffice. In using the Paul's tube for ose it is im- o pass the re- urse-string su- to the margin wound in the cluding as little wel-wall as can employed, in t the resulting substance shall all as possible.

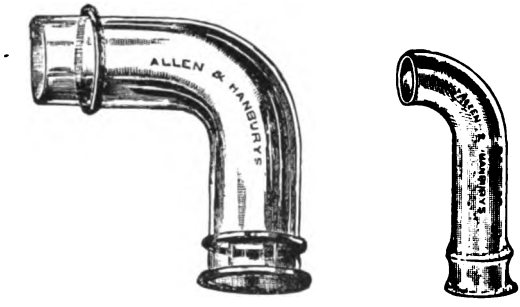


Fig. 335. Paul's Enterostomy Tubes.

ecaution be taken, a lateral enterostomy opening only results, it does not close spontaneously, may be occluded with ease by er. (See Closure of fæcal fistulæ, p. 773.) A temporary ny of this nature, made in cases where the distension has e a mechanical obstruction, and where the bowel below is condition, may be of considerable use later as a means of g nourishment in the early stages of the further treatment e.

tain positions, *i.e.* the upper end of the small intestine, a per- terostomy for purposes of nourishing the patient is occasionally

In these operations, which are founded upon an exactly rinciple to the so-called artificial anus, the object to be striven e prevention of the escape of intestinal contents, and, as ve been expected, the technical experience attained in the corresponding operation of gastrostomy has been freely on.

DUODENOSTOMY

Bearing in mind the object of these operations, it is
the duodenum should have been chosen as the most fitt
the fistula, since the nourishment can be here introduce
point of entrance of the biliary and pancreatic secretion
addition at least of the gastric secretion may be looked fo
conditions approach the normal as far as possible. Exp
however, shown that although the anatomical condition
approximation and fixation of the duodenum to the abd
without great trouble, yet the resulting fistula is exceedi
to manage, escape of the secretions frequently occurring.
operation, although theoretically advantageous, has found
and, in spite of the able advocacy of Hartmann, is seldom
Moreover, the technique of the operation of jejunostomy
much improved, that the latter may be said to offer practica
little inferior, even in theory, to those claimed for duodenos

JEJUNOSTOMY

This operation was first performed by Surmay of Ham
a means of dealing with a case of inoperable gastric car
is, at a period prior to the introduction of gastro-intes
mosis, an operative procedure which has rapidly restricted
ment of jejunal fistulæ as a route by which nourishment ca
to subjects of pyloric obstruction. Conditions are met with
which the procedure is still applicable, although the succes
it has not brought many enthusiastic supporters to the met

Indications. Jejunostomy may be resorted to under
conditions:—

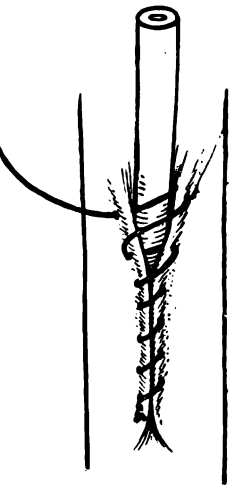
(i) It may be employed in cases in which the coats of
have received serious damage from the ingestion of caus
ensure rest during the process of healing.

(ii) In certain cases of gastric or œsophageal carcinom
stomach is so contracted as to render gastrostomy impracti
regard to this indication it may be pointed out that since
has been resorted to at an earlier date, such contractions o
are far from common.

(iii) In cases of pyloric carcinoma, where the extent o
makes an anastomosis an impossibility.

(iv) Its employment has also been advocated as a mean
physiological rest for the stomach in some cases of gastric
(von Mikulicz), or even in functional disorders (von Eisel

tions. A paramedian incision, with displacement of the vards, is made, and the great omentum drawn up and pushed t. (Near the median line the above plan is preferable. A of the fibres of the right rectus for the permanent opening ade when the muscle returns into position if desired.) The r of the left hand is next passed along the under surface of erse mesocolon to the spine, and the finger hugging the left second lumbar vertebra hooks up the commencement of the which is brought into the abdominal wound. The bowel is to make sure that one extremity of the loop is fixed, and the



JEJUNOSTOMY. Tube inserted by Witzel's method.

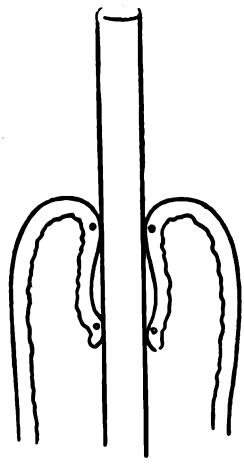


FIG. 337. JEJUNOSTOMY. Kader's method.

steps of the operation are proceeded with according to which arrangement and fixation is determined upon.

nplest method is that of *von Eiselsberg,* who in 1895 modified ntroduced by Witzel for gastrostomy. Two folds are raised l of the intestine by the introduction of a Lembert's suture, in- e serosa and muscularis, which marginate a groove in which a ber catheter can lie (see Fig. 336). At the distal end of this opening is made and the tube pushed deeply into the lumen of ne. The Lembert's suture is now tightened, reinforced by the on of a few stitches beyond the point of perforation, and ne sutured to the parietal peritoneum in such a way as to lie y to the long axis of the abdominal wound. The external ould be about on a level with the umbilicus.

Another simple method, *Kader's,* is founded on the gas
Fontan and Senn. An opening is made in the centre of a
rounded by a purse-string suture, and the tube is secured in
made into the bowel by tightening and tying the suture. A
is now enclosed by a further purse-string suture, the cathete
to invert the bowel-wall between the two sutures, and the se
tied (see Fig. 337). The shoulder projecting around the tub
to the parietal peritoneum and fascia transversalis at the low
the abdominal wound, and the latter closed.

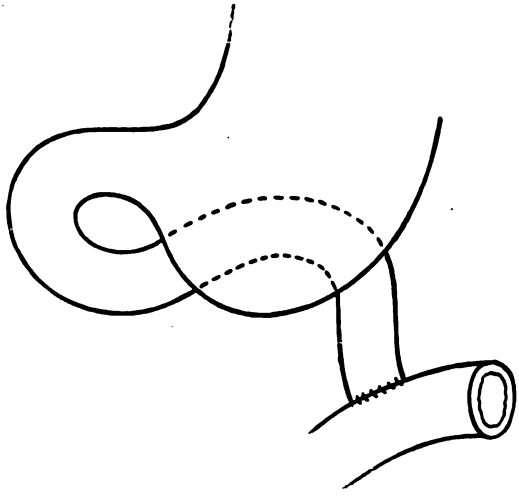


FIG. 338. JEJUNOSTOMY. Maydl's method.

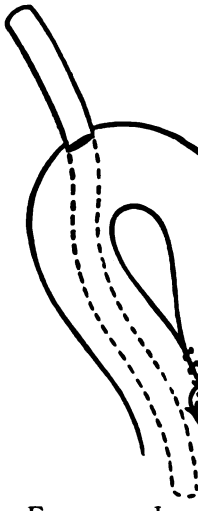


FIG. 339. JEJU
Albert's m

Two other methods in which the aid of an anastomosis
should be mentioned.

In *Maydl's method* the loop is well drawn out, and after
tion of clamps, the intestine is completely divided, the incis
from 4 to 5 inches into the mesentery.

The lower portion is now sufficiently drawn out of the a
allow of the application of a third clamp some 6 inches down a
margin. Above this clamp an incision 1¼ inches in extent
the free margin of the bowel, and into the opening thus mad
end of the proximal portion of the bowel is implanted (see

The free open end of the distal portion of the jejunum is
into the wound and so fixed as to allow the projection of so
beyond the skin. This portion of the bowel, which is to s
permanent fistula, may be drawn obliquely through an oper
right rectus obtained by separation of the muscle fibres.

's method is well devised for the prevention of the escape of
and pancreatic secretions, while these fluids are also added
triment given subsequently to its introduction, and thus the
nditions pertaining to a duodenostomy are reproduced. The
to the method is that its performance necessitates considerable
re of time, while the patients on whom the operation has to
ned are often in the last degree of exhaustion.

ert's method a loop of jejunum is well drawn out, and a lateral
is is established at its base (see Fig. 339). After the loop has
n through the fibres of the rectus, and its base attached to the
eritoneum, an opening is made at its apex and a tube tied in.
in this case may well be fixed in by the double purse-string or
nethod.

peration of jejunostomy has not been very warmly taken up in
ry, and it does not appear likely, in spite of the commendation
ived from Maydl, von Eiselsberg, and others, that it will gain
und. A consideration of the indications set forth shows that
e rare cases of entire abolition of the cavity of the stomach can
d upon as the sole resource, while further experience is neces-
re it can be recommended as a means of giving rest to the
It has been claimed that the operation is slight, may be per-
ith local anæsthesia, that it can be employed in cases of car-
the stomach in which the condition of the patient renders the
anastomosis unjustifiable, and that it affords absolute rest to
h, which is not the case after an anastomosis. Further, that a
tula, by resting the pylorus, reduces the spasm of that sphincter
s an increase of the amount of food which can pass by the
ute, hence it is employed as an antecedent to anastomosis by
eons. In a series of twenty-five cases reported from Garre's
oyel, the average duration of life after the operation amounted
seven days.

e four methods it is clear that physiologically Maydl's is the
ct, but when the condition of the patients in whom this opera-
dicated is taken into consideration, one of the simpler will
selected. Moynihan has devised and recommends an opera-
ar to von Eiselsberg's, while Mayo Robson recommends one
nciple of Albert's.

APPENDICOSTOMY

are several conditions under which this operation is applicable.

ations. (i) The canal of the vermiform appendix may be
for the provision of a safety vent in cæcal distension, or to

serve as a route for lavage, or for the introduction of medic the large intestine, as proposed by Weir. The operation has considerable favour, no doubt in great measure on account with which it may be performed, and the neatness of the pr

Where a safety vent alone is required it has proved a measure, since the fistula is easily maintained, easily clos a result of the facts that the normal direction of the peristalsi the interior of the bowel, and of the valvular nature of the gives rise to no inconvenience by allowing the escape of the tents. Moreover, it has been shown that when the fistula re used for lavage, the patient can be entrusted with the perf the same.

(ii) As to the employment of the operation in cases of measure of success to be expected must differ with the char disease. In simple mucous or membranous colitis it is an minor severity, and appears to possess the great advantage o colostomy in the ascending colon of not closing spontaneously ulcerative colitis, where the benefit to be derived from th depends not upon the possibility of lavage, but on the comple of the flow of fæces, no advantage can be gained by its em

(iii) The application of the operation has been greatly w its first introduction; thus, to the treatment of amœbic dys even of enteric fever, as a means of evacuating stagnating in tents from the proximal side of the ileo-cæcal valve (Ewart

(iv) Keetley (*Proc. Roy. Soc. of Med.*, vol. ii, Sec. of S has employed the appendical canal as an actual artificial an of malignant disease of the colon successfully, and he claims pacity of the appendix for dilatation warrants its use for t

(v) The operation has also been performed to allow cases of chronic constipation of intractable nature. The go often temporary.

(vi) Lastly, an appendicostomy opening has been emplo introduction of fluids and nutriment into the cæcum and lo the ileum.

Operation. The operation is best performed by fo early stages of the procedure described for the removal of t by McBurney's method (see p. 784). The appendix having it is brought either directly through the centre of the wound special opening may be made for its passage between the f internal oblique and transversalis muscles, at the lower end of in the external oblique aponeurosis.

The appendix may be secured at its base by a few suture

l, as has been done in the cases of some enterostomies in other of the bowel, by the passage of a couple of safety-pins. In the appendix, care should be taken that neither the tube nor tery be damaged or unduly pressed upon, as in some instances le sloughing has resulted from one or other of these causes. of the appendix, or a convenient portion, is removed in the two or three days.

COLOTOMY AND COLOSTOMY

peration of simply incising the colon is rarely undertaken except mporary reduction of distension during the performance of an That of colostomy, on the other hand, is performed with uency in spite of the limitation of its field of application which led the improvement in methods of intestinal anastomosis.

factors in particular have served to increase both the popularity ss of the operation: firstly, the practical abandonment of the ute, adopted in preaseptic days as a means of avoiding the risk g the peritoneal cavity; secondly, the introduction by Paul of which bears his name, which has rendered it possible to open the h ease and safety at the same time that it is exposed.

ons still differ as to the degree of comfort enjoyed by the patient performance of colostomy, and it must be allowed that the is perhaps held in more favour by the operating surgeon than neral practitioner, whose duty requires him to guard his patient . With regard to this unpopularity, however, the forms of dis- which the operation is most commonly undertaken must un- take the chief blame, for in those cases in which colostomy is d for conditions other than malignant disease the patient may years in comfort, and suffer little inconvenience from the nus. A colic anus ensures the proper evacuation of the segment wel lying above an obstruction, with consequent relief from the f auto-intoxication, and those attendant on ulceration either of ded bowel above the growth, or of the growth itself.

atient is relieved from much pain, but in this particular it is to discriminate as to the cause of the symptom; one of the ressing forms, that due to flatulence, may be certainly relieved, due to the passage of fæces over an ulcerated surface; but when e neuralgic character, which indicates the implication of neigh- ones or nerves, is present, the surgeon must be wary as to how omises relief to the patient.

, with regard to the diminution of discharge; an efficiently d colostomy, which thoroughly eliminates undue retention of

intestinal contents, at the same time tends to cure the catar
which is the main source of the offensive mucus, which for
proportion of the frequent stools; but where the source of th
is rapid degeneration and disintegration of a malignant grov
to be looked for in this particular from a colostomy, and
remarks are pertintent in the case of hæmorrhage.

The colon may be opened in any part of its course, but si
lumbar operation has fallen into disfavour, occasions on wh
scending colon are opened, except at its lowest part, or juncti
sigmoid flexure, are rare, since the depth at which this por
bowel lies from the surface, and the practical absence of any
render it unsuitable for the formation of a satisfactory anus.
difficulties, in a lesser degree, attend the formation of a colos
ing in the cæcum and ascending colon, and here it may be in
perform other than what is known as lateral colostomy, *i.e.*
in the wall of the colon without the formation of an efficient sp
openings are unsatisfactory for two reasons: firstly, they
passage of fæcal contents into the distal segment of the
secondly, they have a strong tendency to contract and close spo
Where the opening is intended to be of a temporary nature thi
importance, and indeed may sometimes be an advantage, b
permanent complete diversion of the fæces is needed, such
rapidly prove themselves unsatisfactory or useless.

Indications. (i) To afford a permanent artificial an
of malignant growth of the rectum or pelvic colon, either
combination with removal of the growth itself.

(ii) As a temporary expedient to relieve the obstruction
presence of a malignant or other stricture of the bowel, prio
treatment of the obstruction itself by colectomy.

With regard to these indications, some remarks will be
where as to the performance of colostomy in carcinoma and c
tions of the rectum (see p. 685); it suffices simply to point ou
colostomy is suited for some cases and not for all, and that
criminate application of the operation in such diseases ha
most potent factor in such discredit as pertains to the operat

(iii) As a temporary measure in cases in which obstructi
and accompanied by much distension, and due not to growth o
but to the kinking of the bowel either by the tension of a no
(*e.g.* costo-colic ligament at the splenic flexure) or by an
adhesion.

(iv) A temporary colostomy may be rarely needed in ca
vulus accompanied by great distension above the affected loo

As a temporary measure in the treatment of some forms of
r ulceration of the colon or rectum (*e.g.* tubercle and dysentery),
liversion of the fæces and the lavage and application of medica-
the bowel.

treatment of ulcerative colitis by colostomy has become a some-
quent measure, and in considering this disease as an indication
essary to use some precision as to what is aimed at. Is the pri-
uirement that of an opening to allow of lavage and local appli-
o the bowel? or is the diversion of the fæces the primary object?
ems little doubt that here, as in many other instances, writers on
ect have somewhat obscured the question by dealing with cases
different nature under the same general heading. In cases in
e prominent symptoms are diarrhœa, the passage of mucus and
large quantities, fever, and rapid emaciation, there can be no
at diversion of the fæces is the first object to be aimed at, and
ss this be complete no advantage will accrue from the operation.
nat in some cases in which pain, amounting to such a degree as
actual attacks of collapse, is the main feature, diversion of the
ords the only likelihood of relief.

stinate cases of mucous colitis, the complete diversion of the
not so much the primary object, as the possibility of the direct
t of the interior of the bowel by lavage and the application of
nedicaments. Here, therefore, a lateral fistula into the colon,
easy of closure, or an appendicostomy, meets the requirements.
e remarks apply to the treatment of amœbic dysentery, in which
ry results by these measures have been obtained in severe cases.
ue ulcerative colitis a complete colostomy is required, although
d in the anticipation of ultimate closure. This latter question
e is fraught with grave difficulties, partly as to the suitable
at which it should be undertaken, and partly from the danger to
which the procedure is attended.

ne cases the beneficial effect of diversion of the fæces is prompt;
orrhage and auto-intoxication from the ulcerated bowel are
y checked, and in the course of from three to six months the
of closure of the artificial anus may be safely considered. Many
s have now been recorded, but in the experience of the individ-
on they are none too common. A considerable improvement
o long as the artificial vent is maintained, but the attempted
f this is often followed by either the recurrence of symptoms or
of the patient.

er experience and improved methods of treatment, local and
may render it practicable to lay down definite rules as to the

period after which it is safe to attempt to close an artificial
disease. A glance at Fig. 340 shows the condition which r
cases of any standing prior to the performance of the colosto
general and local symptoms have subsided, a preliminary
with the sigmoidoscope, both from the natural and the art
may afford help as to the condition of the interior of the bow
examination should be supplemented by the introduction of
Banks's tube to observe th
diversion of the fæces in
tion of the normal channe
been excluded. If these
satisfactory results, the clo
anus may be attempted.

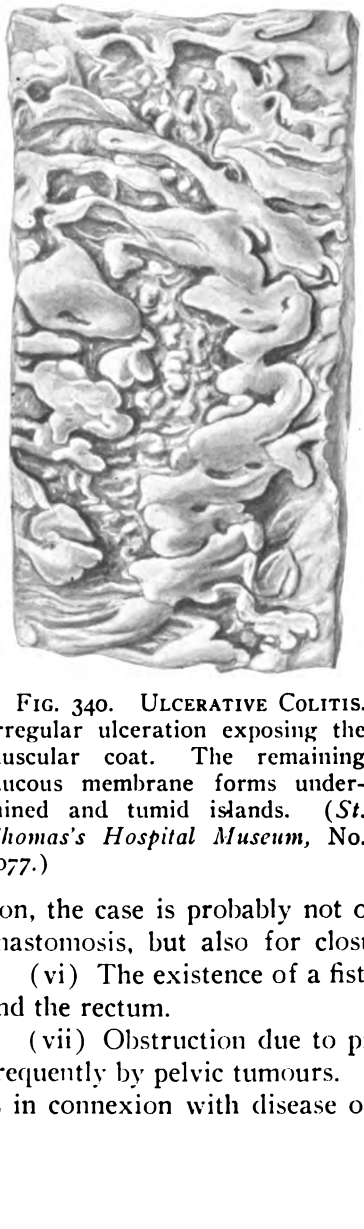


FIG. 340. ULCERATIVE COLITIS. Irregular ulceration exposing the muscular coat. The remaining mucous membrane forms undermined and tumid islands. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum,* No. 1077.)

It must be borne in mi
portion of bowel exclud
time undergoes a process
tion as well as contract
may render it quite unfit f
of anastomosis as a prel
closure of the artificial an
the bowel has been exclu
months or more it may
such an extent as to reser
its wall assumes a sing
bloodless aspect, while the
epiploicæ gain a very lar
sembling considerable fatt
Beyond this the tissue is
friable and quite unsuitab
safe introduction of suture
particulars the contracted
very different from that
when the excluded porti
colon is itself healthy, and
be revealed by an abdomi
tion, the case is probably not only unsuited for the establish
anastomosis, but also for closure of the artificial anus.

(vi) The existence of a fistulous communication between
and the rectum.

(vii) Obstruction due to pressure on the bowel from wi
frequently by pelvic tumours. Most commonly the source of
is in connexion with disease of the female generative organ

a tumour, springing from the pelvic wall, may be the source of

Certain congenital malformations of the lower end of the ali-
and genito-urinary tracts.
Occasionally spontaneous perforations of the colon from malig-
other disease, or injury to the bowel, especially on its extra-
l aspect.

LUMBAR COLOSTOMY

mportant part played by lumbar colostomy in the development
rn methods of enterostomy and the treatment of intestinal
on renders it almost impossible to exclude all mention of the
n a textbook of operative surgery. Many reasons, however,
to the almost complete fall into desuetude of the operation;
s difficult to lay down definite indications for its choice, a right
olostomy as a substitute for a cæcostomy being almost the only
in which the alternative measure can receive serious considera-
e practical disadvantages of the method are sufficiently obvious;
may be deep, or the space between the last rib and the iliac
ow, the gut itself when contracted may not be easily detected,
nce of a mesocolon may increase the difficulty of performing
peritoneal operation, or as a result of congenital peculiarity
may not occupy its normal position. The presence of ascites
e the peritoneum to bulge and obscure the colon, or an enlarged
nally-placed kidney may interfere both with the exposure of
and its fixation to the surface. Again, the wound gives little
exploration, and affords no elasticity for further procedures
he enumerated difficulties be met with, or, if it should be found
th actually occupies the situation destined to be the site of the
nus, the resort to a second incision in the right lumbar region
dly be faced with equanimity at the present day merely for
ntage of an extra-peritoneal operation, so greatly valued by
in bygone times. Lastly, the lumbar artificial anus is so sit-
o be in a less convenient position than one in the iliac region.

COSTOMY, TYPHLOSTOMY, ASCENDING COLOSTOMY

ecum and commencement of the ascending colon are more fre-
ilized as the seats of temporary than permanent colostomies.
portion of the colon is sometimes opened in cases of obstruction
icture or growth of the ascending or transverse colon, where
ension exists, as a preliminary measure to further treatment

when the distension shall have subsided. Again, the intes
opened in this position in case of ulcerative colitis.

The operation has always been unpopular for obvious
most important of which is the tendency of the resulti
discharge to cause irritation of the surrounding skin;
although more marked in some cases than others, may be
as a constant one. With regard to the consistence of the
charged from a cæcal anus, however, it may be pointed out
means necessarily retains its primary fluid character. W
fæcal matter tends to acquire more consistence and becomes
ing; thus the condition in some degree conforms with what is
colostomies, where the patients with time acquire very
regularity in the occurrence of actions of the bowels. A seco
the loss of nutrition due to the early escape of the intesti
is also a real one, but not of so marked a nature. It has beer
patients with a cæcal anus may live for a considerable t
flesh, and not unbearably uncomfortable. Thus two cases
by Messrs. Goodsall and Miles, in one of which the patie
nine years, putting on 25 lbs. in weight, and another six y
which the weight increased 10 lbs.

It cannot, however, be too strongly laid down, that the d
resulting from an artificial anus in this situation steadily
decrease with every inch that the opening can be advanced
anus. It is well known that the tendency is for a certai
of the intestinal flow to take place when the cæcum is reach
the fluid constituent is freely absorbed, and this fact has a
bearing on the consistence of the matter discharged. Mo
an ascending colostomy the direct transverse flow of sma
contents from the ileo-colic valve to the artificial anus is a
cases of colostomy for ulcerative colitis in which it may be
maintain the artificial anus for very considerable periods,
are of special importance, and the anus should not be estab
the level of the ascending colon.

Operation. The lines of operation are the same
cæcum or the ascending colon is to be the site of the colosto

If the conditions allow the ascending colon to be emplo
sion similar to that for appendicectomy by McBurney's met
used. The question then arises whether the muscular fascicu
separated or divided across their course, and in this relati
be remembered that a lateral colostomy is often either all
can be, aimed at. Hence, considering the known tender
openings to contract and close spontaneously, it is better t

muscles to an extent of at least 2 inches. If this course be taken, in spite of the disposition to contract possessed by the opening of the bowel, considerable prolapse of the mucous membrane often occurs with the lapse of time, and the patency and efficiency of action of the artificial anus increases.

After the incision of the peritoneum, no difficulty usually presents itself in at once dealing with the colon which lies directly beneath the wound. The parietal peritoneum, together with the fascia transversalis, should be carefully sutured to the surface of the cæcum or colon, a proceeding which may necessitate some enlargement in the wound in the abdominal wall, and the external wound having been suitably reduced in size by the introduction of sutures, the bowel may be left to be opened two or three days later. When it is imperative to relieve the distension at once, the bowel must be drawn as prominently as possible into the wound, the central area is surrounded by a purse-string suture, within the limits of which an incision is made, and a Paul's tube is inserted.

In cases of obstruction the cæcum may be enormously distended, and the removal of the support previously afforded by the intact abdominal wall may be followed by the occurrence of distension rents of the peritoneal covering of the bowel. Under these circumstances great gentleness is required in the manipulation of the intestine, lest a rupture and escape of fæces should occur. The same condition may make the introduction of sutures, without perforation of the bowel-wall, very difficult, but every effort must be made to avoid this complication.

When the ascending colon is selected, the conditions may permit the bowel to be sufficiently mobilized for the introduction of a glass rod across the mesenteric aspect, if a complete colostomy be preferred. For this purpose it may suffice to divide one or more of the folds which frequently pass from the outer aspect of the colon to the abdominal parietes, or if these are not present a small vertical incision may be made through the parietal peritoneum just beyond its reflection from the bowel to the abdominal wall. In either case care must be taken not to compromise the integrity of the colic vessels.

TRANSVERSE COLOSTOMY

This operation offers some technical advantages over that upon the ascending colon, in that the length of the transverse mesocolon makes the performance of a complete colostomy an easy matter. The operation may often be utilized as a temporary measure in dealing with acute obstruction in the bowel beyond, and the transverse colon may sometimes be made use of in inguinal colotomy where the shortness of the mesosigmoid prevents the satisfactory extrusion of the sigmoid flexure

(see p. 707). Unfortunately, transverse colostomy is selc to cases of ulcerative colitis, since the operation fails to fu tant indication of relieving as far as possible the whole c duty of conducting the fæces.

Of late years there has been a tendency to extend th of this method, and the following advantages have been c A complete colostomy is always possible; the position of th it to be readily employed by the patient by simply leaning a suitable receptacle; the situation of the opening allows fibres of the rectus abdominalis being utilized to form a sor such as is sought for in some of the operations of gi jejunostomy. The resistance afforded by the costal arch a of the rectus strengthened by the lineæ transversæ offers a for the retentive apparatus; gravity is not an important e occurrence of prolapse; there is no prominent anterior sup make the application of retentive apparatus difficult; the fa sufficiently consistent, are not so offensive as at the sig and the opening, if established for temporary purposes, to close (McGavin, *Clin. Soc. Trans.*, 1906, vol. xxxix, p

The above merits of the transverse operation are fairly as to the implied suggestion that it is a preferable operati colostomy for general use. Against this view it must b although it affects the nutrition of the body to a very sm the exclusion of a greater length of the intestinal canal th necessary is inadvisable. It is also obvious that the anato ment of the mesocolon, especially beyond the mid-line, a allow of prolapse more readily than in any other segmen intestine, and in fact this accident is more frequent and pr in properly performed iliac colostomies.

Operation. The incision should be vertical, its cer level of the umbilicus, and carried through the separated rectus muscle.

The further details of the operation do not differ fr scribed in the case of iliac colostomy, except in so far necessary to free the attachment of the great omentum, bo of convenience in fixing the bowel, and to minimize the siz ing in the abdominal wall.

ILIAC COLOSTOMY

An oblique incision 4 inches long is made, the centre pinges at right angles on the junction of the middle and o a line carried from the umbilicus to the anterior superior

The skin and the subcutaneous tissue are divided, and the vessels secured. The aponeurosis of the external oblique is incised in the direction of its fibres, and the fibres of the internal oblique and transversalis muscles are separated with a retractor and blunt dissector. The gap in the muscles thus obtained is stretched with a pair of retractors to the desired size, and the peritoneum is opened.

When distended, the sigmoid colon often bulges into the wound; if this be not the case and any difficulty arises, the small intestine must be

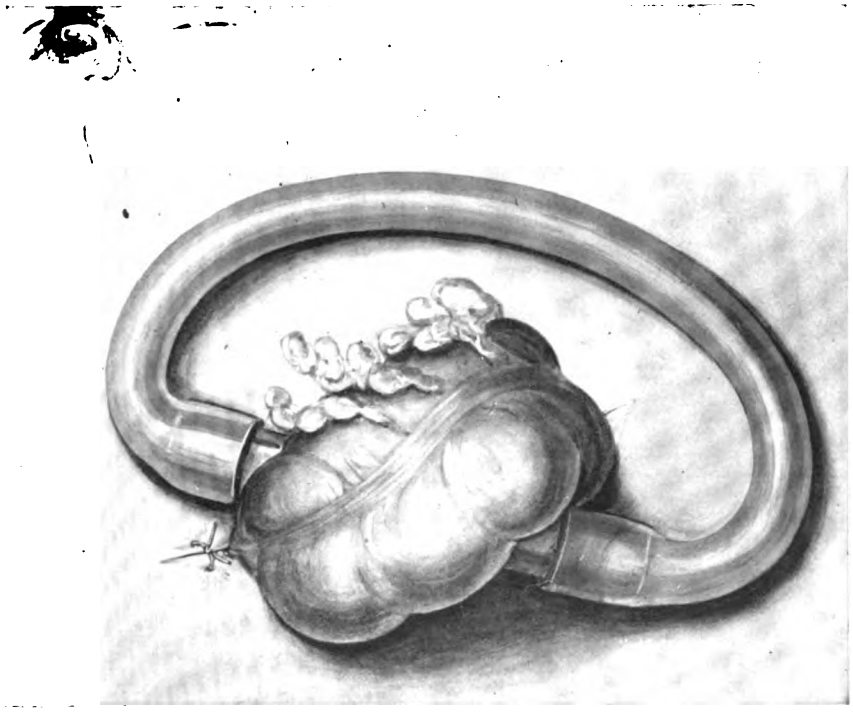


FIG. 341. THE SIGMOID FLEXURE SUPPORTED ON A GLASS ROD. A loop of rubber tubing is applied to hold the rod securely in position.

displaced inwards with plugs, and the colon sought for in the iliac fossa. The flexure is never absent except in the case of transposition of the viscera, but shortness of the mesentery may make it difficult to get the bowel into the wound.

When secured, the loop is followed upwards until its most fixed point, the junction with the descending colon, is reached. This portion is employed for the purposes of the anus, the precaution being designed to guard against the subsequent occurrence of prolapse, which is more likely to occur if a part with a long mesentery be employed (Cripps).

The loop is drawn forward, and with a blunt instrum made in the mesentery between the vessels, through which (see Fig. 341) is introduced to lie on the abdominal wall tr the long axis of the wound. A single stitch should be pas end of the loop, including the margins of the skin wound and longitudinal muscular band of the bowel. These stitches s port the loop, if necessary, when the glass rod has been rem

FIG. 342. GLASS ROD FOR COLOSTOMY. Full size.

Other methods of fixation may be employed in place of as Burghard's pins (see Fig. 343), or a folded plug of g passed through the opening in the mesentery. If it be prefe of any such appliances may be replaced by the passage of a tress stitch acro of the wound, i two skin marg intervening mes to establish a bridge in the the exposed loo (Ward).

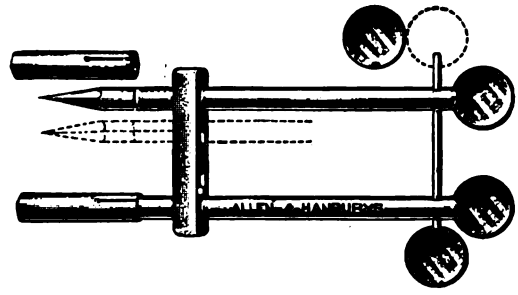


FIG. 343. BURGHARD'S COLOSTOMY PINS. Half-size.

The appendi may be ligatur base and remov colon requires t at once, the angles of the abdominal wound are sutured, plug is carefully wound around the base of the projecting loo string suture is made to surround a sufficiently extensive are centre of this the bowel is incised, an assistant seizing either opening as it is made. A Paul's tube is then rapidly inser opening and the purse-string suture drawn up and tied. A ligature of silk should then be tied around the portion of rounding the tube to reinforce the weaker purse-string th Paul's tube is provided with a soft-rubber tube to convey the the bowel into a suitable receptacle. The tube separates sp on the third or fourth day. The support to the loop of bo left until the fifth or sixth day, when it may be removed.

When immediate relief is not required, the exposed loop

ree days, and then opened. The safest method of procedure is
as large an oval portion of the wall as possible. This method
ble to complete division of the bowel on the rod. No anæsthetic
ry, and bleeding is readily controlled.

uture control of the anus is effected by means of some sort of
most generally useful apparatus consists in a cup with a pneu-
, which is fitted over the opening, and retained by a belt. The
ioned plug is unsatisfactory, and indeed, when the artificial
old standing, a simple pad of lint is comfortable and efficient.
colotomy is upon the right side and the fæces fluid, a recep-
ld be added to the cup. In the case of a left inguinal colos-
care be taken with the
usually possible to get
s to act at fairly regular
thus on rising in the
again after breakfast,
not more than once dur-
y. Too much care can-
ken in the fitting and
t of the colostomy pad,
its efficient action the
of the patient and the
of the operation will
In the after-treatment
out of the distal portion
owel should be done at
tervals, especially if an
growth is present.
best done from above
ds. The advantages
the possibility of this procedure are sufficiently great to render
e the method in which the colon is completely divided, and the
l of the bowel sutured and allowed to drop back into the

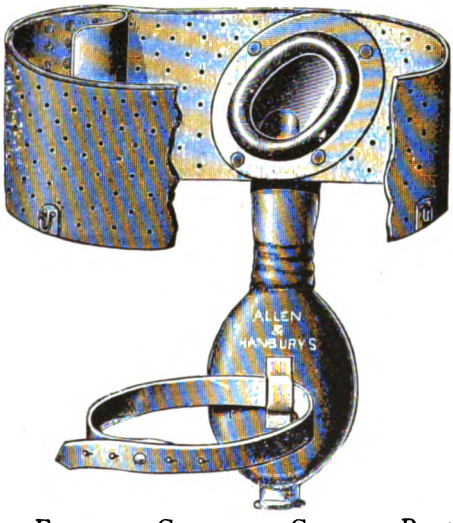


FIG. 344. COLOSTOMY CUP AND BELT WITH RECEPTACLE ATTACHED.

COLOSTOMY

ake an artificial anus over which the patient has absolute con-
o devised a method which consisted in causing the proximal
e severed colon to cross a subcutaneous tunnel, so that a belt
worn to constrict it.

gh a medial suprapubic laparotomy incision the sigmoid is

brought up and clamped at the selected point. This first
from right to left (*e.g.* handle to the right). Likewise a
is applied at a short distance, after emptying the interv
segment by pressure. Marro then opened into the colon b
clamps with a cautery, cauterized the entire mucosa of
and then cut the colon close to the proximal clamp. Next
cision is made at the border of the left rectus with its upp
at the intercristal line, extending into the peritoneum. Th

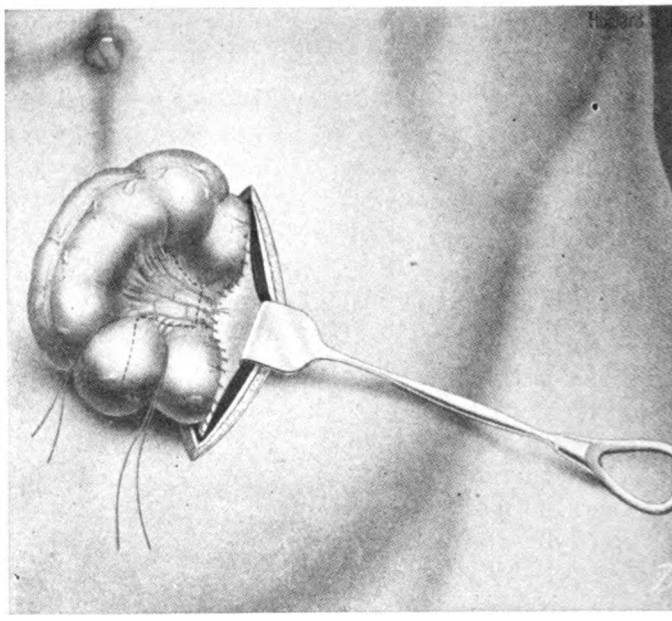


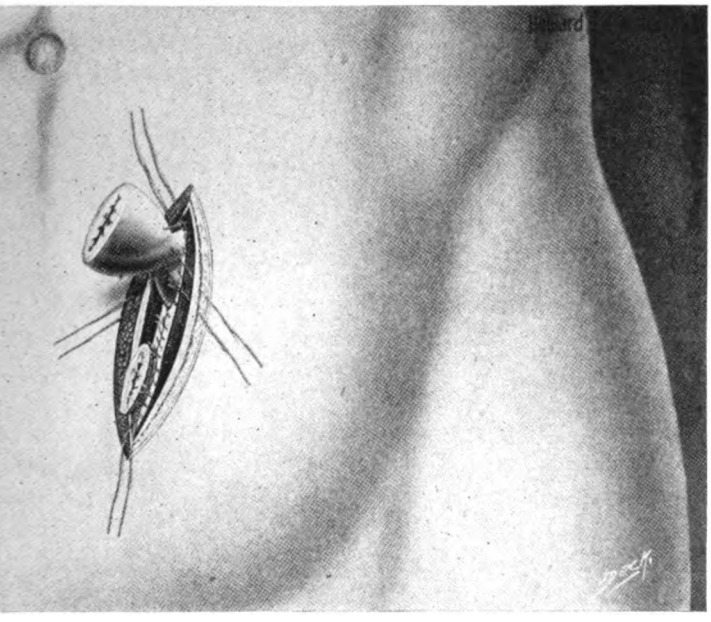
FIG. 345. THE DOTTED LINE SHOWS LINE OF SECTION. The
holds outer third of rectus muscle together with skin and aponeu
thal.)

clamp, passing of necessity from left to right, is applied be
forceps and mobilizes the proximal end, which is then d
the abdomen. A third incision passing only through the
in the upper half of the abdomen at the left rectus border.
thrust into this incision, spread, and made to emerge from t
rectus incision and creates a subcutaneous tunnel. This
now grasps the end of the colon and aided by the forc
thereon draws the mobilized segment through this tunnel.

The distal segment of bowel may be invaginated and c
into the abdomen and the first laparotomy incision close

n edges in contact with the lower left rectus incision are
o the peritoneum here and the skin closed over it. An excess
2 inches of colon has been drawn through the upper incision.
rubber tube may be temporarily attached to furnish continuous
until convalescence is established, when the excess length may
ed.

dification of this operation consists in making the tunnel hori-



TWIST COMPLETE AND MAINTAINED IN POSITION BY ANCHOR SUTURES HOLDING SIGMOID TO APONEUROSIS. (*Lilienthal.*)

th its exit over the iliac crest, so as to make constriction by
ound the pelvis easier and more certain.

thal brings a loop of sigmoid through an incision in the outer
of the left rectus. The upper limb of the sigmoid loop is
o the peritoneum at the upper angle of the incision and the
b is likewise sutured at the lower angle. This is done with a
s silk or linen suture, locking every third stitch. This com-
e intervening peritoneal gap is closed by a continuous stitch
nd through the mesosigmoid (see Fig. 345). The lower limb
and cut short. The upper limb is then freed from the meso-
nd should be about 3 inches long. Clamps are applied to its

free edges and torsion of the stump is made so as to just
lumen. The force used in this manœuvre is gauged by a fi
bowel. This torsion is maintained by sutures in the fasci
346). A colon tube is inserted, anchored by sutures, and l
about one week. At this time the redundant sigmoid may
by the cautery without anæsthetic.

The desirability of providing a substitute for the n
sphincters has led to numerous attempts to provide some mu
trol of the artificial anus. When the fact is considered that n
for the tonic contraction of the internal sphincter can be
evident that no more can be hoped for than is gained by the

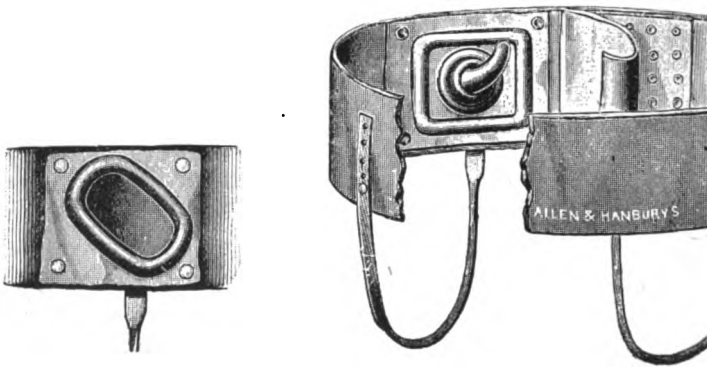


FIG. 347. COLOSTOMY CUP AND BELT.

of the muscular fibres of the abdominal wall, rather than in
across their course.

Difficulties. In spite of the general ease with which
tomy can be performed, yet certain difficulties and complica
with sufficient frequency to need notice.

The most common technical difficulty experienced is de
the nature and condition of the mesosigmoid. The length o
may be deficient, as a result simply of individual conforma
often the shortening is due to morbid conditions. Thus meser
have been the result of simple inflammatory change, or son
specific infiltration, especially when ulceration has been in p
the shortening and rigidity of the mesentery may be due to t
tion of the lymphatic vessels and glands, especially in cases of
disease. Again, adhesions may have formed, fixing the colo
portions of the gut; thus the writer has had to deal with ad
tween the sigmoid colon and the stomach by removing a p
stomach-wall. If there be adhesions between a growth of

colon and coils of the small intestine, the complication is liable to render the performance of a colostomy of very transient benefit, as secondary obstruction may soon develop. Great distension or great contraction of the bowel may also give rise to considerable technical difficulty.

Shortness of the mesentery has to be met in a variety of manners; thus the parietal peritoneum may be incised at its junction with the mesentery and the latter stretched. If this course be taken, care must be exercised to avoid too great tension on the vessels, and consequent interference with the vitality of the extruded loop. In some cases the difficulty may be got over by separation of the growth itself when the latter is in the immediate neighbourhood of the wound. The growth is then drawn outside the abdomen, the bowel fixed, a Paul's tube inserted well on the proximal side, and the growth is removed a day or two later. When dealt with in this manner the growth necroses unless soon taken away.

When operating for urgent obstruction, the colon may be sutured to the parietal peritoneum, and opened in the depth of the wound. Although this is sometimes expedient, it is a most unsatisfactory procedure, the artificial anus under such conditions seldom continuing to function more than a week or two, after which time the performance of a second operation has to be undertaken.

The proper procedure under the circumstances is to secure the transverse colon in place of the sigmoid. It is frequently possible to draw the transverse colon into the iliac colostomy wound, since the previous distension has often resulted in increase in its length, and correspondingly low position in the abdomen. If this be not possible, a second incision should be made in the abdominal wall, and a proper complete transverse colostomy performed.

Complications. *Peritoneal infection* may be said to be a rare event, even when the colon is at once opened. This happy circumstance is in some degree due to the fact that the subjects of the operation have been suffering from a varying degree of auto-intoxication for a long period before the operation, and thus have acquired a certain immunity and protection. In this particular, the advisability of exercising especial care when ascitic fluid is present should receive mention. Such fluid is difficult to retain if present in material quantity, and its leakage not only favours infection, but also interferes with the proper healing of the wound. It is best, therefore, to remove as much fluid as possible at the time of the operation, and prior to the opening of the bowel.

Cellulitis of the abdominal wall occasionally occurs as a result of imperfect adhesion of the bowel to the abdominal wound. It usually gives rise to troublesome symptoms, amongst which may be mentioned dis-

tressing hiccough. A large area of the abdominal wall may b
which needs to be treated with numerous incisions. Cellulitis
commonly a consequence of secondary interference with the w
in the removal of stitches, or of the means employed for hold
loop. It should be mentioned that cellulitis is very apt to
Paul's tube be tied in on the second day, in cases where the t
of a two-stage operation has to be decided upon more hastily
intended. The necessary tension exerted in tying the bowel
loosens its adhesion, and opens the way for infection of the
the abdominal parietes.

Failure of the bowel to form proper adhesions and falling l
loop into the abdominal cavity occasionally occur. Speaking
this accident may be said to be most often the result of imperf
at the time of operation, but cases, especially of advanced
disease, do occur where not only is the immediate effusion
lymph insufficient, but where the lymph at first effused eith
develop into proper adhesions, or becomes again absorbed.
obtain sufficiently strong adhesions is also sometimes seen when
is performed in young infants, as for imperforate anus. Esc
bowel from its new connexions, and even the prolapse of smal
during expulsive efforts, or during fits of screaming, has in fa
sufficiently often to form a definite objection to the performa
guinal colostomy in the very young. It may be mentioned th
adults expulsive efforts have been known to cause bursting of
the sigmoid colon itself, with consecutive prolapse of the sma
Such a case has been put on record by Barnsley, in which, aft
ment of the bowel and repair of the rent, the patient recover

Hæmorrhage from a colostomy opening is a rare event
cases of ulcerative colitis; in this disease it may be alarmin
writer has also seen hæmorrhage cause death in a patient ope
for advanced tuberculous ulceration with anal obstruction.

A very embarrassing complication may arise in the occasio
of an artificial anus to act. When it is remembered that in th
of cases of acute obstruction the immediate cause is a compl
tone and contractility of the colic muscle, it is not surprisin
condition should be met with. In some instances the failure
to become functional may be due to the presence of a second
obstruction, and this question when it arises is one of great
the surgeon, since such an obstruction, if existent, requires
measures, such as an anastomosis, the freeing of adhesions, o
colostomy, for its relief. The need for such secondary operati
ever, rare, and as a rule sufficiently active purgation will

difficulty. The fact that in such cases distension of the cæcum is usually a marked feature often suggests a secondary growth in the neighbourhood of the hepatic flexure. This is, however, seldom the case. An instance of this kind, of an especially striking nature, may be mentioned. The patient, a man of 60, with little previous warning was seized with sudden obstruction, and on the third day of his attack an iliac colostomy was performed. The sigmoid loop was distended, but little beyond gas was immediately evacuated. During the next two days no further action of the bowels occurred, the abdomen was much distended, vomiting was free, and the patient was apparently not in the least relieved. A second colostomy of the ascending colon was performed on the third day, with complete relief of all the symptoms. This man was kept under observation for several months until the time of his death, when a post-mortem examination revealed no trace of obstruction beyond the primary growth of the pelvic colon. Both artificial openings remained patent until death, but the passage of fæces from the iliac anus was fitful and small in quantity, the majority escaping by the upper one.

Later troubles of colostomy lie in *retraction of the spur,* allowing the passage of fæces by the normal route to be resumed; in *contraction* of the artificial anus; in *prolapse* of the mucous membrane or of the bowel itself; and in *extension of the growth* to the mouth of and obstructing the anus.

Retraction of the spur is best guarded against by the formation of a prominent one at the time of the operation, but is sometimes impossible to prevent, particularly in patients with a thick abdominal wall. It is an accident of some importance, since it not only partially destroys the object of the operation by allowing fæces to pass beyond the opening, but it also favours the contraction and spontaneous closure of the anus. Contraction of the opening may be treated by the introduction of tents, followed by the methodical use of a bougie, which often suffice in the earlier periods to sufficiently restore patency. Later it may be necessary to incise the structures of the abdominal wall above and below the artificial anus.

Prolapse—protrusion of the mucous membrane or of the bowel—may prove a serious complication, causing much discomfort to the patient, since it often renders the retentive apparatus inefficient. Again, strangulation of the prolapse occasionally occurs. The prolapse may vary in character; it may affect equally both the proximal and distal limb, the proximal only, or more rarely the distal segment alone. In the slighter cases the condition may be found to vary with the tonicity of the bowel and the consistency of the motions. In more severe cases the redundant mucous membrane may need to be carefully trimmed away with scissors.

When an entire prolapse exists it may be several inches in l
under these circumstances it is best (after having reduced th
and sewn up the opening as in the procedure for the closure
ficial anus) to carefully free the bowel, draw a sufficient quan
the abdomen, and, after resuturing the bowel to the marg
wound, to cut off the redundant portion, and to tie a Paul's
each segment.

It is not always easy to explain the occurrence of the prola
no doubt depends often on individual peculiarity. In a case
colostomy was done in a young girl for a constriction of t
secondary to tuberculous disease, the operation of removing
bowel has had to be repeated twice in the course of four year
as 2 feet of bowel requiring to be removed. The claim made in
the lumbar operation, that prolapse does not occur, is incorre
siderable prolapse from a lumbar anus has been not rarely ob

Extension of the growth to the mouth of the anus is rare
latter has been made at a sufficient distance above the obstr
does occasionally occur, and under these circumstances the gr
extend into the skin of the abdominal wall, forming more or
masses, often retaining an unbroken surface for some time.

Prognosis and results. The operation of colostomy
is unattended with any considerable risk of life; thus a p
colostomy made with the object of subsequent further procedu
gives rise to anxiety or is followed by a bad result. The nat
indications for the operation—inoperable carcinoma, the last
intestinal obstruction, &c.—naturally prepares us for a co
post-operative mortality. Of sixty-seven cases of simple colo
malignant disease performed at St. Thomas's Hospital be
years 1891 and 1907, no less than thirty-four, or 50.7%, died.
mann's practice (*Chir. de l'intestin.*, 1907, p. 386), of sixty-thr
subjected to the operation for relief of the consequences of
disease, fourteen, or 22.2%, died.

CHAPTER XI

ENTERECTOMY AND COLECTOMY

GENERAL INDICATIONS FOR ENTERECTOMY

THE main indications for enterectomy may be set forth as follows, details as to the special conditions dependent on the form of disease calling for treatment being considered in the sections devoted to each:—

1. Injuries to the bowel (see Chap. VII).
2. Gangrene in internal or external herniæ.
3. Strictures of the bowel, either congenital or acquired (see Chap. XIII).
4. Fæcal fistulæ, under special conditions (see Chap. XI).
5. Embolism or thrombosis of the mesenteric vessels (see Chap. XIII).
6. Certain intussusceptions (see Chap. XIII).
7. Certain volvuli (see Chap. XIII).
8. Tuberculous disease of the bowel.
9. Certain chronic inflammatory conditions.
10. Morbid growths of the bowel.
11. Growths of neighbouring organs, involving the bowel.

As to the general application of enterectomy, it may be laid down as a rule that the measure is only to be resorted to when absolutely necessary. If a wound or a perforation can be sutured, or the obstruction due to a simple stricture can be satisfactorily overcome by a plastic operation, no doubt can exist as to the superiority of the more conservative method, although at the moment excision and axial union appear a neater and more workmanlike procedure.

Evidence, both clinical and experimental, has shown that in most cases in which a complete axial enterectomy has been employed the segment of bowel proximal to the line of union remains permanently more or less thinned and dilated. These changes have been ascribed to partial obstruction of the lumen due to the presence of an incomplete diaphragm, produced by the inversion of the bowel-wall at the point of union (Ballance and Edmunds, *Med. Chir. Trans.*, 1896, vol. lxxix, p. 300); or to the permanent effects produced by the action of toxines formed in the stagnating contents of the bowel in cases where obstruction has existed (Barker, *Lancet*, 1905, vol. i, p. 1062). A perhaps more

plausible explanation may be, that the complete division of muscular nervous plexus produces a dead point or stop in th peristalsis, with the result that local distension occurs, while strain is thrown on the distal segment of the bowel in the pro the contents forwards. Again, disturbance of the normal tro ences following section of the plexuses may be concerned in t in the intestinal wall.

Putting this objection aside, the significance of which fo being of the patient can hardly be determined, it is remarkable lengths of the small intestine may be resected without proc serious signs of interference with the general nutrition of t This observation goes to show that the intestinal tract forms n to the rule observed elsewhere in the economy of the body, *i* provisions for the performance of the normal functions alw a wide working margin. It has been pointed out by Schlatter *f. Chir.*, 1906, vol. xxxii, p. 1354) that the length of gut not the sole factor concerned, since 2 yards may be removed patients with small effect, while in others the removal of a may be of importance. In two cases recorded by him, 1½ a respectively were removed with no bad result beyond slig strength. In these cases the loss of absorption of albumen ar shown to be abnormally great; while the patient from whom were removed needed more food than the one who lost 2 y the former the case was complicated by the presence of ex hesions. Care ought to be taken in dieting these patients to for the loss of absorbent surface. Removal of the large intes urally of less moment in this particular than is the case wit gut (see p. 769).

Gangrenous hernia. In gangrenous hernia two class are met with: (1) Those in which the gangrene is limited to the constriction, or takes the form of a more or less localiz the convexity of the strangulated loop corresponding with th plied by the terminal portion of the circulation. (2) Thos infective cellulitis exists, either as a cause or a conseque strangulation, and extends for a varying distance along th segment of the gut into the peritoneal cavity. In this class son may be experienced in determining at what level the section o should be made. The appearance of the gut and its pow traction are perhaps the best guides, to which may be add dence of thrombosis of the mesenteric vessels gathered from of pulsation, possible palpability as cords, and the absence bleeding on incision of the bowel.

berculous disease. This may become an indication for omy in three forms: (1) As the hyperplastic, where definite , often of large size, have to be dealt with. (2) As the entero- al form, in which peritoneal adhesions, surrounding infiltra- d possibly stenosis may one or all be present. (3) As single or stenoses of the intestine, often free from adhesions or surround- ase, and possibly at the time that operative interference is under- ffering little evidence, even histologically, of their original nature. symptoms demanding enterectomy are in the main those of more severe chronic obstruction, interference with the digestive func- ccompanied by progressive weakness and emaciation; or where ease is active and accompanied by ulceration, those indicating entero-intoxication.

y of the earlier successful cases of operative treatment were in- in which tuberculous tumours of the hyperplastic variety had been n for malignant growths, and subsequent experience has shown discrimination of the two diseases is far from easy clinically, and essitate the use of the microscope, if a certain conclusion is to be at. This is happily of comparatively less moment, since extirpa- the method of treatment best suited to either condition. Mayo in recording some successful cases of intestinal tuberculosis by enterectomy, exclusion, or colostomy, compares the results with btained by laparotomy in peritoneal tuberculosis, and urges that al advantage is gained by removing a local infecting centre *Soc. Trans.*, 1902, vol. xxxv, p. 58).

act, cases of obvious tuberculous disease of the cæcum, of the us variety, do appear to have benefited by a simple laparotomy. artmann quotes nineteen cases, collected by Campiche (*Deutsch. r. f. Chir.*, 1905, vol. lxxx, p. 519), in which 15.7% cures were l by this measure. In cases, however, where the disease exceeds t the simple subserous form, little is to be hoped for from simple omy, and this opinion is supported by the unsatisfactory results llowing appendicectomy for tuberculous disease, if not limited to removed.

conditions to be dealt with differ somewhat in the small and ntestine. In the former, localized strictures, not unfrequently , and adhesions are the conditions most frequently demanding In the latter, tumours of considerable size may require removal, ourite seat of which is the ileo-cæcal region. Occasionally the may assume the hyperplastic form in the small intestine; thus and Thacker (*Med. and Surg. Rep. of the Presbyterian Hospital, ork,* January, 1902) record the removal of a spindle-shaped

tumour of the ileum, 4–5 inches long and 2½ inches in di
several lymphatic glands enlarged to the size of a pigeon
mesentery, which was probably of this nature.

When the small intestine is the seat of the disease, the r
indication for enterectomy is stenosis. Excellent rules for t
in cases either uncomplicated or accompanied by the presence
adhesions and gla
cation, have been
Caird (*Scottish M
Journ., 1904, vol.

FIG. 348. ENTERO-PERITONEAL DISEASE OF THE SMALL INTESTINE. The coils are connected by a mass of dense connective tissue. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum*, No. 1144.)

1. 'If the stri
adherent, be locali
tary, divide wel
proximal dilated
there is a tendenc
velopment of secc
cles and points of
ulceration above
lesion. Always
other strictures.
be multiple strictu
by a lengthy interv
intestine without
plication, it is be
with each stricture
than to excise an
of the alimentary

2. 'In dealing
of coils matted to
first ascertain the e
lation of the pa
then identify the f
and distal intestine; apply clamps, and proceed to remove the
The mesentery may be divided close to its origin, as thi
division of fewer, if larger, vessels, and allows the remov
infected lymphatic glands. The latter cannot well be dissec
out damage to the blood-supply of the intestine, hence it m
sary to remove much bowel in the process of clearing
Should the mass be at any point adherent to an adjacent he
would appear necessary to excise the implicated wall of that
avoid the possibility of leaving a future focus of the diseas

These rules apply equally to the rare instances in whic

tic tumour of the small intestine needs removal. The operative of extensive entero-peritoneal disease is considered under the f Exclusion of the bowel.

ery considerable proportion of cases tuberculous disease of the tract is limited to the ileo-cæcal region; thus, in 100 cases by Fenwick and Dodwell, the cæcum was affected in eighty-five, 6% of these it was the only part affected. Ileo-cæcal tuber- fers one of the varieties most suitable to surgical treatment, and

349. Hyperplastic Ileo-cæcal Tuberculosis. (*Hartmann.*)

t has been admirably handled in an address given to the Medical f London by Hartmann (*Med. Soc. Trans.*, 1907, vol. xxx, p.

in chronic inflammatory conditions. This indication is upon a number of observations made in cases treated by enterec- der the false impression that the surgeon was dealing with disease of the bowel. A small proportion of them are possibly us in origin, but the large majority probably belong to the cate- hich practical surgical attention has been particularly drawn by surgeons, under the somewhat unfortunate designation of itis. The association of false diverticula of the intestine with n of its lumen has long been recognized, and a certain number es have found their way into modern statistics of the causes of obstruction, while the condition was described, as early as 1858, y Jones in the *Transactions of the Pathological Society of*

London, vol. x, p. 13. In recent years a number of obser
been made as a result of operations, in which the symptor
produced by inflammatory conditions have simulated in an e
degree those of malignant disease. Again, the mysterious c
of tumours deemed to be malignant and inoperable by surge
rience after sin
tion, and the s
sults of colos
somewhat sim
stances, all tend
inflammatory
especially in the
giving rise to ob
its complicatio
from uncomm
han, *Trans. Cli*
vol. xl, p. 31).

FIG. 350. PERIDIVERTICULITIS OF THE SIGMOID FLEXURE. Thickening due to chronic inflammation, principally in the muscularis and subserosa. Numerous diverticula. (*Mayo.*)

A certain s
tion of cases o
demand an
When the inflar
dition leads to l
tion, a simple
suffice to reliev
but in some ins
the abscess empt
neighbouring v
extensive proc
need to be unc
an instance
Brewer (*Trans.*
Assoc., 1907,
258), a perfo
was discovered
section, and unsuccessfully treated by suture. When
tumours lead to the development of acute obstruction, a tem
tomy may relieve the symptoms and even cure; more commo
tomy needs to be followed by a secondary enterectomy. I
a chronic tumour, accompanied by signs of obstruction
primary one-stage enterectomy is indicated. In five cases o
by W. J. Mayo (*Trans. Amer. Surg. Assoc.*, 1907, vol. xxv,
disease was found to be limited to from 4 to 8 inches of the

nant disease. The indications for operation in cases of tumour of the bowel are signs of obstruction combined with al conditions.

natous tumours are of comparatively rare occurrence, forming han 2% of all malignant tumours of the bowel. They are met more frequently in the small than the large intestine, and only discovered in an advanced stage of growth, since they little or no narrowing of the lumen of the bowel.

axial enterectomy in one stage is the most suitable method of the small intestine. The main difficulty in this procedure may xtirpation of the mesenteric glands, which when involved may in size the primary growth and necessitate for their removal on of an area of mesentery which compromises the vitality of for a much greater extent than that occupied by the tumour. onal existence of multiple tumours must also be borne in mind. at majority of instances the growths themselves are free and

omatous tumours are more common, and of these 95% are some portion of the large intestine. They present themselves ms as affecting practical surgery. (1) As a growth of con- ulk, increasing rapidly in size, accompanied by superficial towards the lumen of the bowel, and often by considerable sur- nflammatory infiltration, resulting in the formation of external both peritoneal and retroperitoneal. Such growths may ob- lumen of the bowel but little. (2) As localized annular in- involving a very limited length of the bowel-wall, unaccom- much ulceration, but causing extreme stenosis. A growth of , when viewed from without, may be so limited as to suggest ure with a piece of whipcord has been applied.

e 40% of all cases a tumour may make the diagnosis com- easy; in others the growth may be completely impalpable. able, its presence may only be occasionally demonstrable, and circumstances its position may be indicated by local peristaltic e proximal portion of the gut; again, local pain or tenderness the determination of its site. In many cases the portion of he tumour is thickened and distinctly palpable, but care must ot to mistake the cord-like thickening due to enterospasm for ophy accompanying distal obstruction.

thods of dealing with colic growths by enterectomy vary with nt conditions, but they may be divided into four classes.

growth is excised, and immediate union, preferably of the , is effected. This method constitutes the ideal, and is that

which has been followed by the best results. It is unfo
stricted in its application, since for its safe performance the
dition of the patient must be good, and no distension of the i
be present.

2. *A preliminary anastomosis is effected, to be followed
excision of the growth.* This method, like the first, is only
taken under satisfactory conditions, such as the absence of
able chronic distension, or anything approaching acute obstr
founded upon the same principle as a gastro-enterostom
as a preliminary to the performance of a partial gastrectom
which the general condition of the patient is bad, and whe
relief to the obstr
expected to effect
both in the gene
conditions. This
sesses the very gr
over the next of
secondary entere
performed under
ditions as far as
operative infecti
cerned.

FIG. 351. ANNULAR MALIGNANT STRICTURE OF THE SIGMOID FLEXURE.

3. *Preliminar
followed by secon
tomy and eventu
the artificial anus.*
is that most gener
adoption in cases
chronic or acute o
ists. The establi
artificial anus re
diate risks, allows
distension of the
side, for recovery from atony of the intestinal muscle, and
increased risk dependent on the exceptionally septic state o
of the intestine when obstruction has been marked. It h
vantages of the discomfort which accrues from the presen
ficial anus, and the more serious one of prejudicing the c
secondary enterectomy by affording an additional source o
the time of operation. The desirability of eventual cl
artificial anus is also a disadvantage, since this step neces
siderable prolongation of the time needed for the completio

ne artificial anus may, however, prove a valuable adjunct, a vent-hole, and preventing distension in cases where the atonic of the intestinal muscle is not satisfactorily recovered from. e vent may prove a useful safeguard when the local conditions nat eventual contraction at the point of union of the bowel may e reckoned with later.

liminary mobilization and eventration of the growth, combined stomy, followed by secondary removal of the tumour, and losure of the artificial anus by an instrument on the principle erotome of Dupuytren. This method has the disadvantages of a very prolonged period and repeated operations for its com- ut in the hands of von Mikulicz, its chief supporter, it has excellent results both immediate and remote. This is the more n that the possibility of complete extirpation of the lymphatic l vessels is less likely than in a one-stage primary enterectomy.

TECHNIQUE OF ENTERECTOMY

on of the intestine after the excision of a portion may be y one of three methods:

ial, or end-to-end union.

eral anastomosis, with closure of the cut ends.

eral implantation, or end-to-side union.

ENTERECTOMY WITH AXIAL UNION

-end union supplies an ideal result from a cosmetic point of joint only requires to be made, and thus a minimum expendi- ne is ensured, while risk of leakage is limited to a single source. n practical dangers, however, attend the method; thus the of including the 'mesenteric angle' in the line of union in s involving the small intestine, or the much wider uncovered aspect of the bowel in some parts of the colon. Again, the ision crosses the course of the larger branches given off by the to the bowel itself, thus tending to endanger the nutrition of argin more than is the case with incisions involving the ante- c aspect of the bowel. Further, the main blood-supply to the s to some extent compromised by the necessary incision of the . Likelihood of the formation of a diaphragm as a result of of the united margins may be fairly claimed to have been elimi- modern methods of suture, although this was a fertile source of the early history of enterectomy, sometimes giving rise to more rious obstruction.

sideration of the statistics relating to the general results of

enterectomy clearly shows that these dangers have exerted a
influence on the success of the operation in the past, and i
great care should be exercised in the selection of cases f
method, since the numbers undoubtedly prove a greater gene
to attend it than has been observed after either lateral unio
implantation.

The question whether cosmetic reasons, and economy in
formance, can wholly compensate for the somewhat increased
axial method scarcely allows of an absolute expression of
is one of those likely always to remain open to argument acc
predilections and specific capability of the surgeon. It must
however, that axial union is to be regarded as the normal
most cases where the small intestine has to be dealt with, a
where an operation on the colon is within the limits of the t
sigmoid segments.

Operation. The preliminary steps for the exposure
tion of the portion of the bowel to be removed having bee
field of operation is protected by the insertion of gauze plugs
series is first introduced, both to help in the retention of th
abdominal contents, and to preserve them from contamina
will not be removed before the termination of the operation
be so arranged that their outer extremities thoroughly prote
of the wound in the abdominal wall. A less bulky series, w
changed if soiled during the progress of the operation, is th
within the protected area.

The portion of bowel to be dealt with, having been pre
drawn forward, is now clamped, the clamps including the co
portion of the mesentery. Some stress is laid by Kocher
the clamps with a slight obliquity to the transverse axis o
in order to ensure a slightly more extensive removal of the
of the bowel. This ensures a somewhat better blood-suppl
of union, but care must be exercised not to produce an angle
of junction. The proximal clamp should if possible be first
contents of the bowel below gently passed downwards by
with the fingers, and the second clamp placed in position.
thus rendered as free as possible of contents.

Two inner smaller clamps are applied to control the inclu
enough space being left between them and the retaining cla
a proper length of bowel to project for the purpose of the
of the suture.

The bowel is divided at either end about one inch within
clamps, a small plug of gauze having been placed under

incision to absorb any leakage, and protect the deeper guards. Each end, as divided, is cleansed by wiping with a dry sponge, and if desired may be treated with an antiseptic—preferably alcohol or solution of biniodide of mercury—prior to wrapping it up in a piece of gauze. Section of the bowel is most simply effected by the use of the knife or scissors. Since, however, this step forms one of the crucial moments in the operation, many devices to lessen the risk of diffusing infection have been employed. Thus a crushing clamp is often applied at the point to be divided, or the section is made with the thermo-cautery.

The ends having been temporarily safely disposed of, the mesentery is divided to the required extent, and removed. There is some practical advantage in commencing the procedure at the proximal point, as by this means the larger vessels are first met with, and the amount of hæmorrhage is minimized. It must be borne in mind that the free escape of blood into the field of operation much increases the risks of diffusing infective matter. The amount of mesentery to be removed varies much, according to the indication for the enterectomy. When the mesentery is healthy, as in cases of wound, and where a small piece of gut only needs removal, the mesentery may be freed from the attached margin, the vessels secured, and the mesentery plicated with sutures (see Fig. 352). In cases where extensive gangrene with thrombosis of the vessels exists or in cases of malignant or tuberculous disease, where it is necessary to extirpate lymphatic glands and vessels, a wedge-shaped area of some size may need removal; in the performance of this step the greatest care must be exercised in dealing with the apex, lest large trunks be unnecessarily wounded, and the blood-supply to the ends of the bowel about to be united seriously endangered.

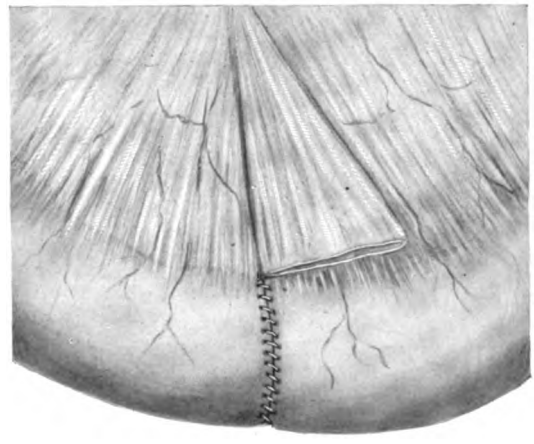


FIG. 352. PLICATION OF THE MESENTERY. The margin of the mesentery has not yet been sutured.

If the section of the mesentery be made prior to that of the intestine, the amount of hæmorrhage is reduced to a minimum; but this is not always convenient, and hæmorrhage from the cut ends of the bowel may

always be controlled by temporary tightening up of the retai
to a requisite degree.

The desired area of mesentery and bowel having been r
inner layer of plugs, if soiled, may be changed, and a special
folded in narrow layers having been introduced through th
mesentery and between the ends to be united, these are a
(see Fig. 353).

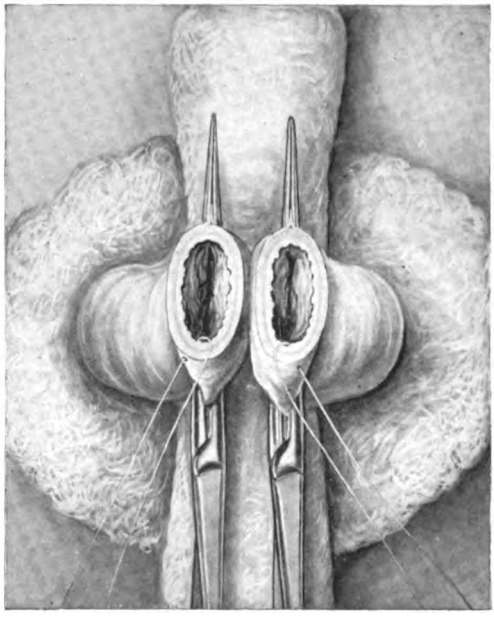


FIG. 353. CLAMPED INTESTINE IN POSITION. The abdominal wound is protected by plugs, and a longitudinal plug is in position beneath the line of suture. Temporary fixation threads are inserted at the ante-mesenteric margin.

FIG. 354. ENTERECTO
BY END-TO-END UNION.
of suture A has been ins
stitch * * has been ins
mesenteric margin, but n
fixation threads have bee

The handles of the clamps lying on the abdominal w
roughly hold the bowel in position, but for the even introdu
suture it is convenient to insert temporary fixation threads
margin of the bowel. Fixation of the mesenteric margin is
utilizing the free end of the first knotted stitch, A, of the se
series. The further stitches are introduced one-tenth of a
the cut margin; they include serosa and muscularis, dipping i
mucosa, and are continued as far as the fixation thread at the
teric aspect of the bowel. At this point the thread is knott

long to unite with the terminal stitch of the final series to be introduced (see Fig. 358, D).

This first series of stitches having been introduced, the fixation threads may be removed, and attention is turned to the 'mesenteric angle.'

The importance of the mesenteric angle as a source of danger has led to the introduction of numerous devices for its effective closure. One of the most widely employed methods is the ingenious adaptation of a mattress suture of Lee, which pierces all four layers of the mesentery and the intestinal wall, completely obliterating the 'angle' (see Figs. 354, 361).

The needle is entered from the lumen of the bowel end lying on the operator's right, made to emerge exactly at the point of union of the

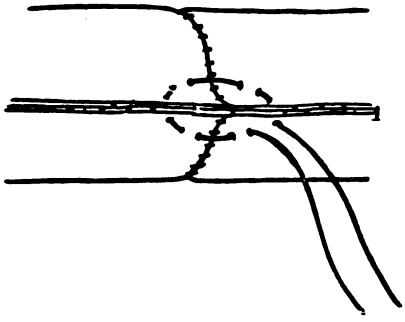


FIG. 355. MITCHELL AND HEAMNER'S MESENTERIC STITCH. (*Senn.*)

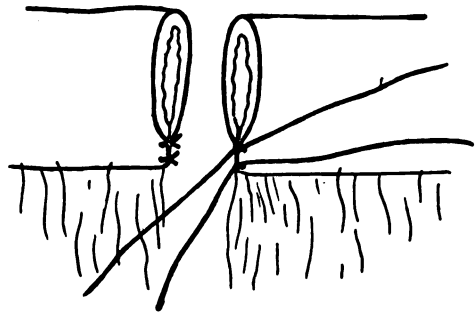


FIG. 356. SHOEMAKER'S METHOD OF TREATING THE MESENTERIC ANGLE. Two sutures have been passed through the entire thickness of the wall on either side of the mesentery.

mesentery and bowel-wall externally, and carried across the front of the gap in the mesentery to the opposite side; here it is entered at the junction of the mesentery and bowel-wall, and carried into the lumen of the bowel, whence it is made to emerge again on the posterior aspect of the gap and to enter the opposite end of the gut. The suture is knotted immediately before commencing the first half of the inner row of sutures, and if passed as above described, its knot lies within the bowel.

The mesenteric stitch lies in the same line as the inner row of sutures, and care should be taken that it does not unnecessarily include any mesenteric vessel near the cut margin.

Two other methods, illustrating the adaptation of a simple suture and a mattress suture respectively, may be mentioned. It will be noted that Shoemaker's is a preliminary measure; Lee's an intermediate step; and Mitchell and Heamner's a terminal act, in the process of union.

Mitchell and Heamner's stitch is passed at the termination of the

union (see Fig. 355). The needle is carried (1) through th attachment, dips into the bowel-wall, (2) is thence carried ac of union, dipping again into (3) the bowel-wall, and emer again traverse the mesenteric attachment, thence it crosses union a second time, and a complete circle is established wh are knotted.

Shoemaker's method (see Fig. 356) consists in passing tw the mesenteric margin in such a manner as to close the entire

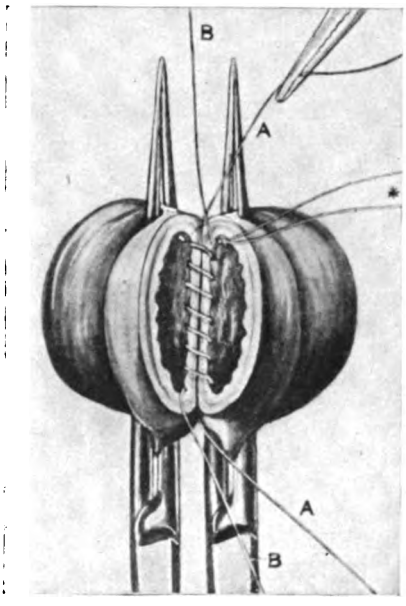


FIG. 357. ENTERECTOMY FOLLOWED BY END-TO-END UNION. The first half of the inner line of suture B has been inserted. Lee's mesenteric stitch * has been knotted, but not cut short.

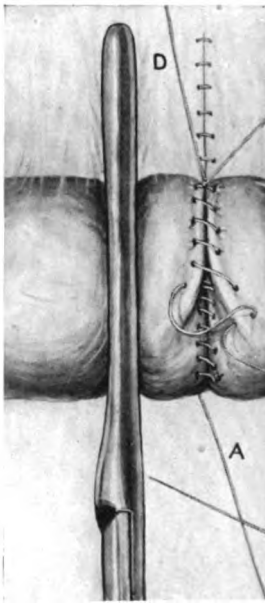


FIG. 358. ENTERECTO line of inner stitches con half of final line D inserte knotted to the free end and the mesenteric gap is It only remains to compl it to the lower free thre

bowel. A complete peritoneal clad ring for apposition is th and the mesenteric angle closed. The two threads on one kept long, and employed for the first and second lines of sutu

On the completion of the first line of suture, A, and the t the Lee's mesenteric stitch, the first half of the inner series, B and knotted at the ante-mesenteric margin (see Fig. 357) same line is continued over the anterior aspect, and the l closed.

The inner series of sutures, B, is usually made to perforate the whole thickness of the bowel, and thus serves to control all hæmorrhage. If desired, it may be confined to the mucous membrane, under which circumstances it is usually necessary to ligature a few bleeding points. The former procedure is to be generally preferred, as giving more strength of union, and as avoiding the introduction of unnecessary ligatures within the confines of the wound.

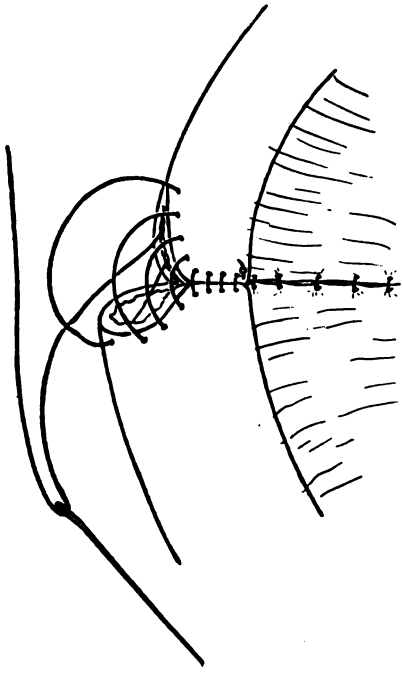


FIG. 359. METHOD OF DEALING WITH INCONGRUENCE IN SIZE.

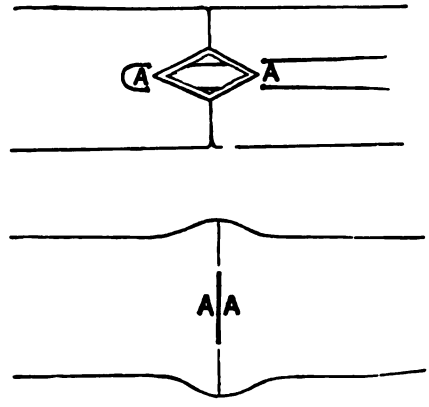


FIG. 360. METHOD OF ENLARGING THE POINTS OF UNION. This is done by a longitudinal incision at the ante-mesenteric margin of both elements of the junction, followed by approximation of the ends of the incisions in the vertical line by a mattress suture. (*Cheatle.*)

The fourth line (see Fig. 358, D), the anterior series of Lembert, is now introduced, the two ends being knotted to those of A, and the union is completed.

It only remains to close the mesenteric gap, if present. This requires a sufficient number of stitches to prevent any chance of leaving a hole which would be capable of giving rise to ulterior trouble as a site of strangulation. Moynihan advises that the procedure should be effected in part by tying the vessels successively on either side of the gap with the same ligature, thus minimizing the number of sutures to be introduced, and avoiding the possible inclusion of uninjured vessels by the stitches.

If preferred, the union of the bowel may be readily effe use of two threads of sufficient length, the first stitch being kn the centre of the thread, and the long free end left emplo second half of each line of suture respectively. The two kn made in each line prevent any chance of puckering of the consequently of narrowing of the lumen of the bowel.

In some cases considerable *incongruence* exists in the ca two ends of bowel to be united. The difficulty may somet by the removal of a sufficient portion of the narrow eleme seldom that this simple expedient will suffice.

Two simple methods are then at the disposal of the surgeo length of the cut margin available for employment may be incising the bowel longitudinally immediately opposite to th attachment (see Fig. 359). (2) The narrow element obliquely (Jeannel), the obliquity being at the expense of the teric aspect.

Of the two methods the former is preferable.

Axial union may also be desired between portions of bo which are considerably narrowed, and for such the method re by G. L. Cheatle and resembling that of Chaput may b (*Lancet,* 1897, vol. ii, p. 1113).

A similar longitudinal incision, parallel to and opposite th attachment, is employed, but in this instance in the case of The whole length of the cut margin thus gained is united and the lumen of the bowel at the point of union is actual (see Fig. 360).

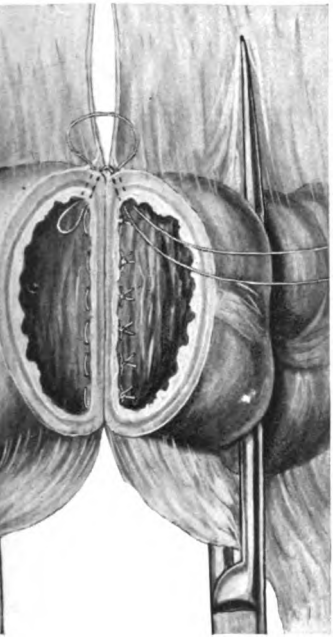
If axial union be for any reason attempted in the contin portions of the bowel as the ascending or descending colons, of obtaining a complete peritoneal ring for apposition is usu able. The difficulty may be lessened by certain methods, bu lute necessity should allow such unions to be made.

The uncovered aspect of the colon may be to some exte by care in the division of the parietal peritoneum, and the f a small peritoneal flap from it, which flap is stitched to the cu the bowel prior to the commencement of the main suture; is only practicable when the bowel is somewhat contract formation of a flap be impracticable, the uncovered portion at least should be united by Connell's method, as this affo immediate union of the opposed parts; the remainder of suture may be completed in the ordinary manner if desired.

Connell's method of union. A single series of completely stitches is employed. The ends of the bowel having bee

n, a Lee's stitch is introduced at the mesenteric margin, and a of interrupted mattress sutures are used to unite the applied s of the bowel (see Fig. 361).

s first half of the suture is passed with ease; the second needs practice, and a fully curved needle is required. The needle is ced from the interior of the right element, and emerging on the eal aspect is carried across the gap to enter the left element from



. 361. Union of the Trans-Colon by Connell's Method. st series of interrupted sutures en inserted and knotted. Lee's has been inserted at the mesen-argin, but not tied.

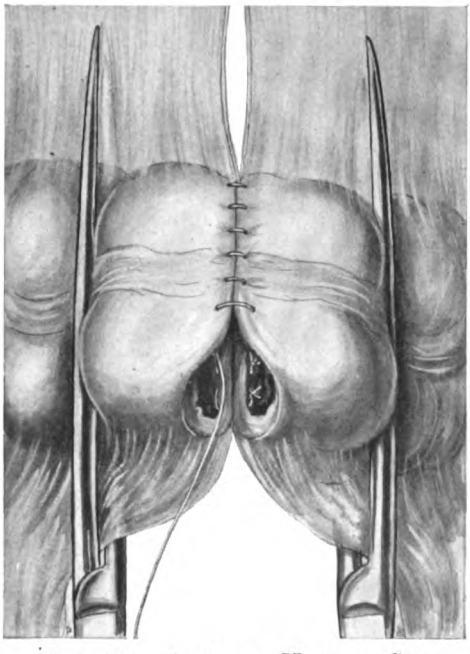


Fig. 362. Anterior Half of Connell's Suture. The stitches are being inserted with a continuous thread, and are not drawn tight, in order to show their direction. Note the necessary inversion of the margin shown at the lower angle of the union.

ritoneal aspect and gain the lumen; the needle is then made to emerge from the lumen ⅛ inch further forwards and is carried the gap to re-enter the right element ⅛ inch from the point lly pierced (see Fig. 362). The two free ends now hang from nen of the right element and are knotted within the bowel. The ary incurvation of the margin of the bowel may be maintained, if l, by the application of Poirier's forceps on either side of the gap.

e sutures of the second half are readily tied until the opening is

nearly closed. To allow of the knotting of the last stitches needle is introduced eye forwards from the deep aspect o between two of the already knotted sutures of the first line. eye of the needle projects, the contained thread is drawn into which the free ends of the stitch to be knotted are inserted (see The needle and loop are then withdrawn, bringing the two

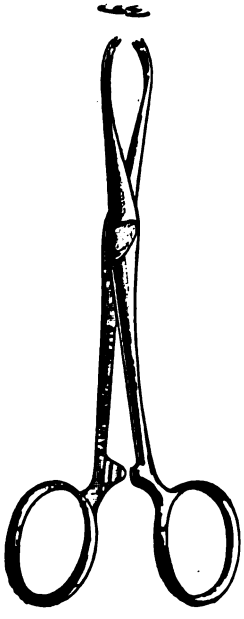


FIG. 363. POIRIER'S FORCEPS. Useful as a substitute for controlling threads.

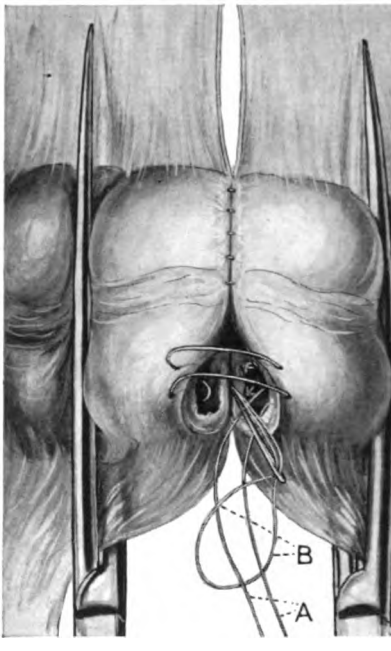


FIG. 364. METHOD OF COMPLETING SUTURE. B, Loop of thread in the eye which has been passed between two sut deep line; A, Ends of the superficial s into the loop preparatory to being dra on the deep aspect of the joint and kno

with them out of the posterior line of suture. Traction is nc on the ends of the thread in such a manner as to obliterate of the bowel and bring the two lines of suture at this point int the stitches are then firmly knotted, and cut short, and as resumes its normal tubular form the free ends are retracted into

The method may be varied, if desired, by the employment tinuous stitch, instead of the interrupted mattress suture (see but this slightly increases the difficulty, as the thread is not re taut during each passage of the needle. The somewhat tr

of inserting the final stitches may be safely avoided by the sub- of two or three deeply passed sutures of the Lembert type to last portion of the gap on the anterior surface of the union.

ENTERECTOMY WITH LATERAL UNION

al union is applicable to almost any portion of the bowel, pro- y that sufficient length and mobility exist to allow of the desired ient of the free ends. These latter conditions are rarely absent the presence of formidable adhesions, or in the case of the lower e pelvic colon. By the lateral method the parts to be approxi- ay be so arranged as to ensure the contact of plane peritoneal throughout, without the necessity of any invagination at the nion. The incision for the purposes of communication is made ea of the terminal twigs of the blood-supply, thus reducing in- e with the nutrition of the bowel-wall to a minimum, also at a rom the divided mesenteric trunks. The opening may be made ive as the surgeon may desire, while the tendency to subsequent on is slight. Disparity in the width of lumen of the two por- owel is of little importance, and calls for no special procedure. er is incurred of either temporary or secondary obstruction of ing by a diaphragm, and, lastly, experience has abundantly e risks from leakage at the line of suture to be far less than in f axial unions. In fact, if the main aperture of communication e taken into consideration, the large proportion of competent ses for gastro-enterostomy and ileo-colostomy would show that rom this cause is minimal. In enterectomy with lateral union, it must be allowed that the risk of leakage is from the blind ends, which in a lesser degree offer the same conditions which the danger in axial unions; still, even here, the inference can- oided that an axial union might have failed where a closed end way. A full appreciation of this source of danger might per- ce to lessen it, in so far as it is not infrequent for the surgeon onally to employ rather more care and vigilance in the suturing ual anastomosis, than in the less exacting closure of the ends of ed bowel.

al union is the normal method of enterectomy in the large in- e transverse colon, the sigmoid flexure, and pelvic colon offer- nly debatable exceptions.

ation. The preliminary procedures are the same as in prepar- n axial union, with the single exception that a longer length of eds to be exposed for the operation.

required segment having been excluded by the application of

clamps, the bowel is divided, and the portion to be removed according to circumstances. As a general rule the end cleansed, wrapped up in gauze, and the removal of the part proceeded with, since by this means a major source of in moved, and the process of suturing is carried out under the conditions. In some cases, however, particularly when ther in effecting a free ext bowel, it may be saf each end to be clo divided, and proceed moval of the disease part later.

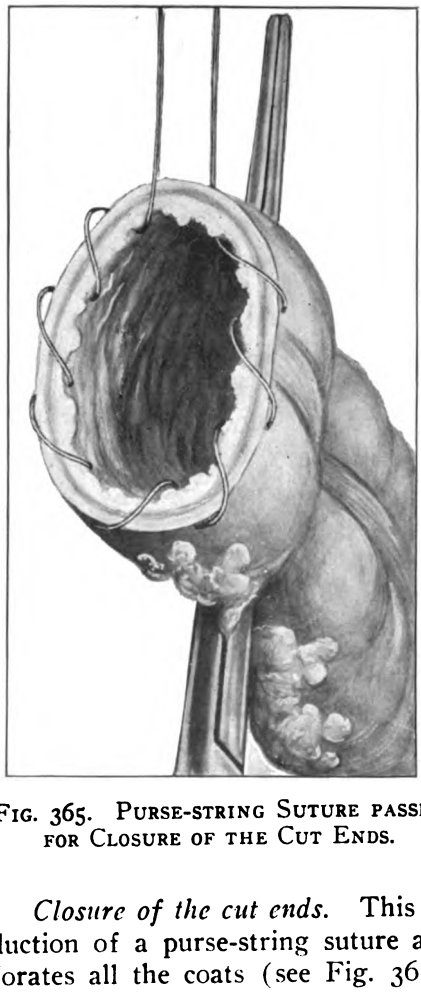


FIG. 365. PURSE-STRING SUTURE PASSED FOR CLOSURE OF THE CUT ENDS.

The removal of th injured segment in th small bowel offers li in the absence of adh tensive infiltration o tery. In the large difficulty may be from hæmorrhage process, and possi from infiltration of t toneal tissue; again, volved by the operat ally appreciably wide these difficulties, the lar trunks should as divided and secured, istence of extensive may call for carefu Section of the tissu knife is generally forcible stripping, phatics are thus more moved.

Closure of the cut ends. This is most rapidly effected duction of a purse-string suture at the immediate margin forates all the coats (see Fig. 365); this is tightened an tied end is inverted (see Fig. 366), a second continuous Len involving the serous muscular and submucous coats is s and the closure is completed (see Fig. 367). If preferred clamp may be previously applied at the site of the proje

inishes the volume of tissue to be surrounded by the purse-string
ut if the bowel dealt with is wide, the crushed portion is so
ut by the pressure of the clamp, that the extra convenience
not great.

ace of the initial purse-string suture, an ordinary continuous
volving all the coats may be used, and when the end to be

66. Purse-string Suture prior to Insertion of the ine.

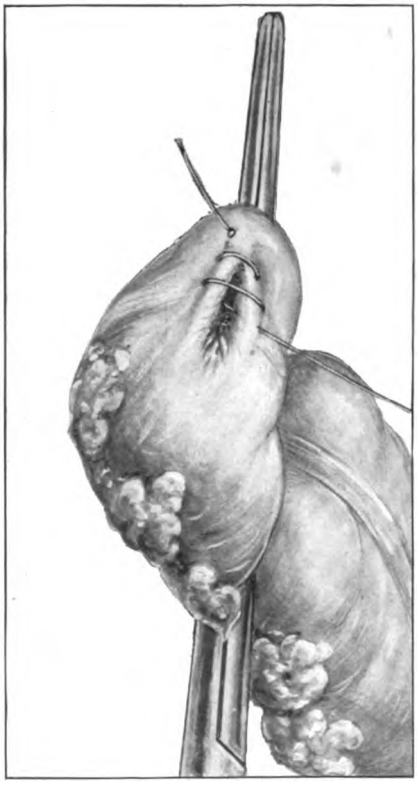


Fig. 367. Insertion of the Second Line of Suture over the Inverted End.

large this method is preferable. In either case the difficulty
on the incomplete peritoneal clothing of the ascending and
g colons can be readily dealt with, as a result of the puckering
y the purse-string suture, and if a simple line has been employed
ution in extent can be increased by tying the end of the thread
commencing knotted stitch to that left at the terminal one.

losure completed, the ends are carefully cleansed, and some

rearrangement may be necessary. The removal and rear
the inner series of pads may suffice to give working room
lishment of the anastomosis; if not, the ends must be dra

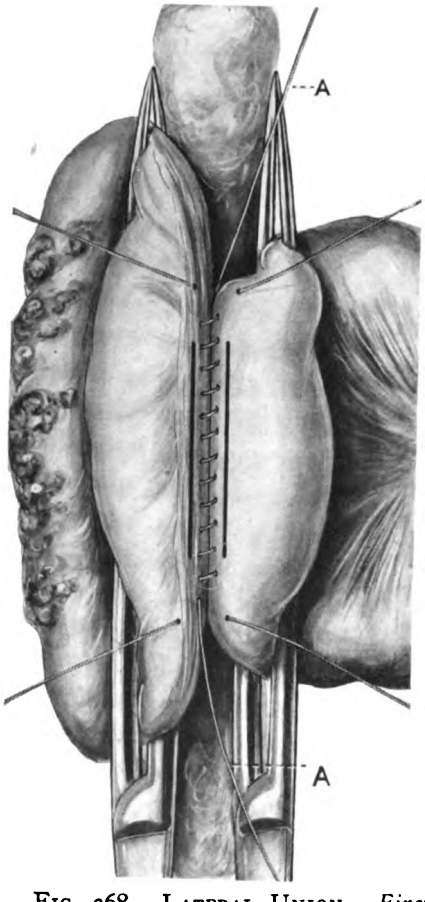


FIG. 368. LATERAL UNION. *First tier of the sero-muscular suture completed.* A, A, Ends left long for future knotting with the superficial tier. The two terminal sutures are inserted opposite either extremity of the line of incision.

some readjustment of
plugs may be necess
commencing the anast
especially important to
from contamination an
nuded of peritoneum i
the wound, as such su
tute one of the chief so
ger in resections of
testine.

Lateral anastomosis
ends are now rendere
possible free of conte
manipulation, and cla
plied distally to the sit
jected anastomosis.

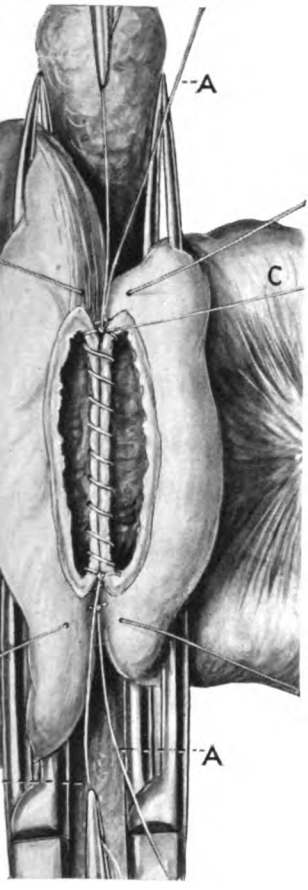
The further steps
with those of a simple
of two loops of bowel.

A continuous line
2½–3 inches in length
the serous and muscu
tering the submucous
troduced, each end be
and the projecting po
thread placed in artery
union later with the c
ends of the final line o
Fig. 368).

Two short threads
duced in such a manne
the line of the proje
into the bowel, and a
to be tied as the last
procedure. These stitches are intended to thoroughly protec
tremities of the anastomotic opening.

An incision, corresponding in length to some four-fifths
of the line of suture already introduced, is now carried
serous and muscular coats, entering the submucosa and

As the latter are divided it may be necessary to secure some ger ones by forceps, as they cannot always be efficiently com- y the retaining clamps. All hæmorrhage being controlled, a



69. LATERAL UNION. *The ed.* First half of the inner ture B completed. Thread ompletion of the third line C.

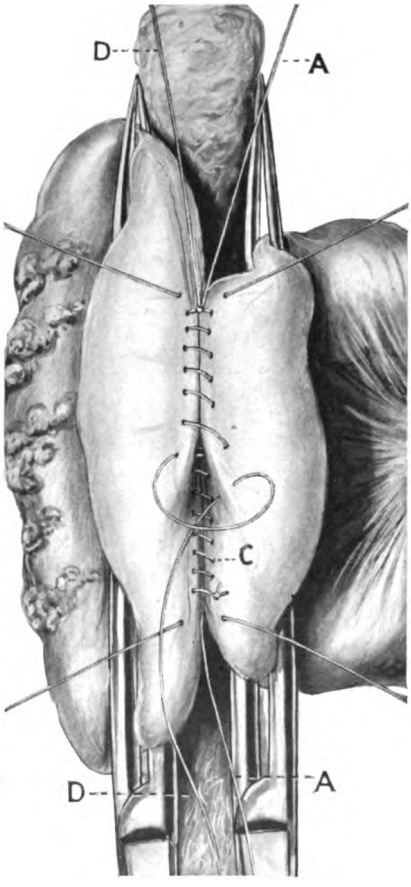


FIG. 370. LATERAL UNION. *Third line of suture* C *complete.* Fourth line, D, half completed, and the terminal sutures still untied.

s made at one end of the exposed mucous membrane, and it is the whole length of the desired opening, any fæcal contents fully caught or sponged away. The divided mucous membrane rom the margin of the wound, and it is desirable to excise an rea ¼–½ inch wide at the centre of the wound, as suggested ood (*Lancet,* 1901, vol. i, p. 1817), this procedure ensuring

a thoroughly patent opening, and obviating any chance of ulterior obstruction.

For the introduction of the inner line of suture it is commence by inserting the two threads intended for the de ficial segments respectively, knotting one at either extr opening, and leaving a short free end which is secured by a forceps. These short ends are useful to steady the bowel, upon them tends to maintain parallelism of the margin of th opening. With one long end, continuous through and th are carried along the entire length of the opening, and it short end of the second suture thread. A similar line carried in the reverse direction through the remaining fr the opening with the long end of the second thread; this is the short end of the first, and the lumen of the bowel Fig. 369).

The remaining line of continuous sero-muscular suture the free ends being knotted to those of the first, the two crossing the line of the anastomosis at either end are tied, is completed (see Fig. 370).

The exposed bowel is now carefully wiped over, and washed with saline solution, and the protecting plugs at the wound removed to allow of the repair of the peritonea posterior abdominal wall. This latter step is an importa retroperitoneal tissue is liable to exude serum, and infectio with great rapidity. If any extensive area has to be left is advisable to make a puncture in the loin, and introduce to closing the abdomen. When a lateral union is made in testine the suture of the mesentery is a comparatively sim the two segments overlap, but care must be exercised to a the blood-vessels in the introduction of the few sutures re

ENTERECTOMY WITH LATERAL IMPLANTATION—E UNION

This method possesses many of the advantages of and an individual one, in the reduction of the risk of givin end to one source instead of two. It has found its chief partial gastrectomy by Kocher's method, in ileo-colosto colostomy. The method is most suited to ileo-colostomy. two portions of the colon it has, in the experience of the somewhat liable to contract; thus in two instances where t colon was implanted into the transverse after removal flexure for growth, the establishment of a safety-valve in

colon was necessary some nine months later. This narrowing has also been observed by other surgeons, but the danger of its occurrence may no doubt be lessened by the employment of certain details to be mentioned below. The fact that Kocher, in a series of eighty-four partial gastrec-

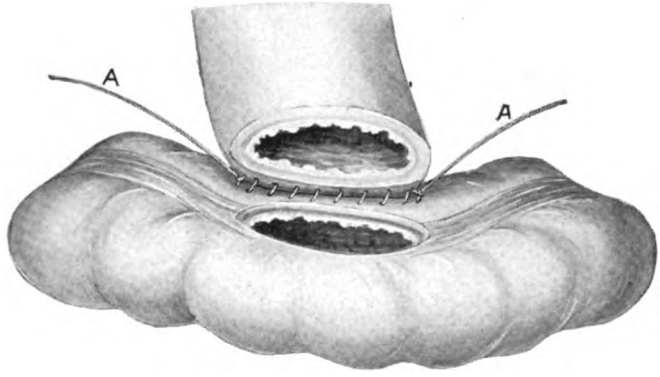


FIG. 371. LATERAL IMPLANTATION. *First stage.*

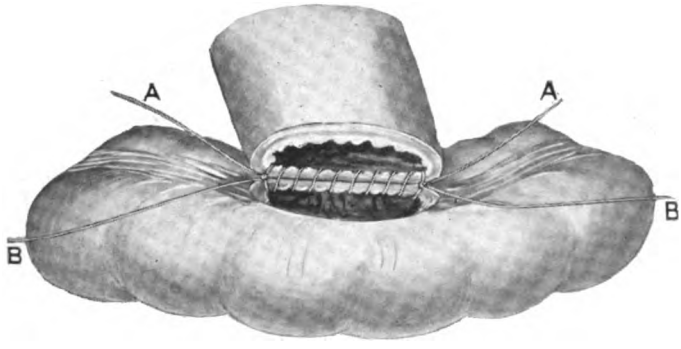


FIG. 372. LATERAL IMPLANTATION. *Second stage.*

tomies, only lost a single patient from leakage at the site of the lateral implantation, speaks strongly for the immediate efficiency of this method, even if the results be discounted by the special advantage offered by the stomach as a basis of support for the union, and the technical ability of the operator concerned.

Operation. The required portion of the intestine having been removed, the cut end of the segment of bowel of larger calibre is closed by one of the methods already described, and the site of the implantation decided upon. The latter should be at least an inch and a half within the closed end, and a longer distance may often be chosen, especially if any doubt exists as to the condition of the intestine at the point of section.

The protecting plugs are arranged beneath the point o
the clamped end to be implanted is brought to the side of
intestine destined to receive it.

FIG. 373. LATERAL IMPLANTATION. *Third and fourth st*

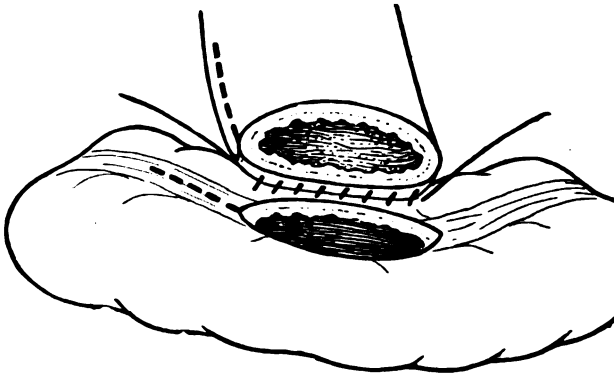


FIG. 374. LATERAL IMPLANTATION. *Method of enlarging a n*
by incision of the ante-mesenteric margin. The dotted lines indic
the additional incisions.

The first row of external sutures is inserted in exact
manner as in an axial union, and should extend to half the c
of the portion of bowel to be implanted (see Fig. 371).

When this is completed, the ends of the thread which ha
long are taken in pairs of artery forceps, for later use as supp
knotting with the anterior series at the completion of the unio

An incision of the required length is made in the closed
conveniently by prior division of the serous muscular and
coats, any bleeding points being controlled provisionally by ar
The mucous membrane is incised, and a strip on each side
tage removed.

A series of through and through continuous stitches is now inserted, closing first the deep, and then the superficial halves of the opening (see Fig. 372).

Finally, the anterior half of the external Lembert's line of suture is completed, the free ends of the threads being knotted to those of the posterior segment which have been used as supports during the later stages of the suture (see Fig. 373).

As already mentioned, the weak point in the method of lateral implantation is the tendency of the opening to contract. As a general rule this is to be combated by the excision of a certain amount of the mucous membrane of the receiving segment at the time of operation. This does not, however, suffice to meet all cases, and when the segment to be implanted is too narrow, the most simple procedure is to make a longitudinal incision at its ante-mesenteric aspect; by this means an opening of at least 2 inches in length is readily procured (see Fig. 374).

Omental flaps and grafts. When there is reason to suspect weakness in the union after a resection, or the inefficient closure of a perforation of the intestine, the omentum may occasionally be employed as a graft or flap sutured over the doubtful spot. Again, the omentum as a whole may be sometimes so affixed to the margins of the abdominal wound as to localize a weak spot, and protect the general peritoneal cavity in case of leakage. With regard to these methods, it may be pointed out that the use of the *omental flap* is only satisfactory in the upper segment of the abdomen, where the risk of leaving a bridge beneath which strangulation can occur may be avoided. Thus the omentum is often useful in gastric or duodenal perforations. In resections of the small intestine, an omental graft is not advisable, and is rarely necessary if sufficient intestine be removed. In resections of the colon, the appendices epiploicæ may often be used, or in the case of the transverse colon the great omentum, since their employment is not accompanied by the risk of giving rise to the development of objectionable adhesions.

Small *omental grafts* may be cut free, and sutured over the required spot. This method again is open to the objection of encouraging the development of adhesions, since the separated graft adheres equally readily to the neighbouring coil of bowel as to that to which it is sutured. As a general rule, therefore, the use of either flaps or grafts is to be deprecated, except in cases the gravity of which renders the development of subsequent adhesions a matter of negligible moment.

ARTIFICIAL AIDS TO ENTERECTOMY

Although the general trend of surgical opinion is strongly towards the view that simple suture is the more desirable method for employment in

enterectomy, yet in some positions undoubted convenience tained by the use of certain mechanical devices, while so still employ them habitually by preference.

Two principles are involved in the numerous aids whi surgeon's disposal:

1. *The simple provision of a temporary support* to ready introduction of the sutures. This is illustrated by t rubber bag used by Treves and others, while the various bob Mayo Robson's, Allingham's, and Stanmore Bishop's, are a not need immediate removal, and provide a passage for contents during the time they remain in position.

2. *The substitution of a mechanical device for sutures* effecting both the union of the bowel, and the removal, necrosis,' of the redundant tissue grasped by it. In these a is provided for the passage of the intestinal contents duri that the device remains in position. Such is the 'button' which, it may be well claimed, has exercised a more potent in free application of intestinal surgery than any other individu

The two methods of best proved general utility are decalcified bone bobbin, and Murphy's button, and these will taken to illustrate the above principles.

Mayo Robson's bobbin. Of the various appliances dev object of providing an artificial support, none has proved generally satisfactory than the decalcified bone bobbin. M writing in 1896 (*Clin. Soc. Trans.*, 1896, vol. xxix, p. 151 ing certain statistics, expressed himself as follows: 'I bel aids in enterectomy afford greater safety than the unaided su the artificial aids a decalcified bone support has shown in four different surgeons the comparatively low mortality o results obtained by Mayo Robson show the success with w of the bobbin has been attended in the hands of its design less he has at the present renounced its routine use in favou of simple suture.

'For the application of the bobbin, two medium-sized se bent into the shape of the third of a circle are threaded, one one with catgut, the former for approximating the serous latter the mucous margin. If one suture only be appli chromicized catgut.

'A needle-holder is neither necessary nor desirable, sinc ment means loss of time.

'After the bowel to be operated upon has been clampe below, or if possible isolated by encircling the whole loop w

tourniquet, the affected portion is excised, leaving the open ends to be dealt with. For convenience it is better to apply the serous suture around the distal half first, and to lay aside the threaded needle until the mucous edges have been approximated and the bone bobbin inserted, when the serous circle can be completed.

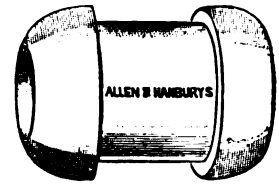


FIG. 375. ROBSON'S BOBBIN.

'The bobbin is not inserted until the marginal suture has been carried around the distal half of the circumference.

'After the insertion of the bobbin, the marginal stitch is continued around the circle, until the loose end of the catgut stitch at the starting-point is reached; the two ends are then drawn on, tied, and cut short.

'The serous suture is now continued around the circle, and when it reaches the starting-point the loose end of the silk stitch is picked up and both are drawn on, tied, and cut off. Both stitches are now buried, and a line only is seen where the union has been effected.

'If on account of want of time one suture only be employed, the marginal stitch, taking up the serous muscular and submucous coats, and avoiding as far as possible the mucous membrane, should be employed.

'The mucous margins will then be approximated though not perforated, and the buried stitch will run little danger of becoming infected.'

Murphy's button. The buttons are at present made in two forms, a circular for end-to-end and end-to-side unions, and an oblong for lateral anastomoses. The buttons are made in two halves, the male half being provided with a spring flange which exercises pressure on the ends of the included gut, while two spiral springs, projecting through openings in the hollow stem, act as the thread of a screw when the male half of the button is telescoped within the female segment (see Figs. 376, 377).

Murphy lays down the following instructions for the use of the button: 'Neither the button, its modifications, nor suture should ever be used in end-to-end anastomosis of the large intestine (except in the rectum and sigmoid), where an end-to-side or a side-to-side anastomosis is possible, as anatomically too large an area of the bowel circumference is uncovered by peritoneum' (Kelly and Noble, *Gynæcology and Abdominal Surgery,* 1908, vol. ii, p. 434).

Axial union. A No. 3 button is most generally applicable.

1. The coil of bowel is freed from contents by careful compression.

2. The retaining clamps are applied to exclude the portion to be excised.

3. An aneurysm needle and thread is passed through the mesentery

of the portion of bowel to be excised, 1½ inches from t
border. A ligature is tied so as to include the vessels only of
of the mesentery complementary to the area to be excised.

4. The mesentery is slit centrifugally from the intestine
tured point.

5. A thread, ten inches in length, provided with two
inches long, is prepared. The needles are passed as in ma

FIG. 376. MURPHY'S CIRCULAR BUTTON FOR END-TO-END OR END-TO-SIDE UNION.

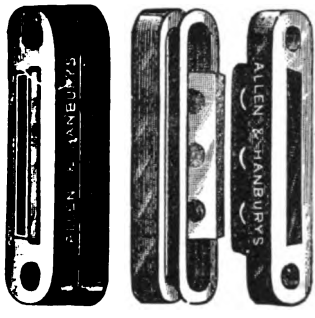


FIG. 377. MURPHY'S OBL
FOR LATERAL ANAST

one on either side of the gut from the mesenteric to the free r
bowel. The threads are not drawn, but the needles are n
position to act as splints during the division of the bowel
By this manœuvre any risk of division of the thread is av

6. The gut divided, the puckering thread is drawn thr
needles, and the button, held by its central hollow stem
forceps, is placed in position in the end of the bowel. T
thread is then drawn tight, knotted, and cut short.

7. The process is repeated at the other end of the bow
halves of the button are now taken up in Hartmann's clam
378). The necessary amount of mesentery is excised, an
two segments are approximated and firmly pressed togeth
ternal supporting sutures are required.

Lateral implantation. The method is the same; a rou
employed, and the segment of the button inserted in the rece
of the junction is introduced as in a lateral anastomosis.

Lateral anastomosis. For this procedure an oblong b
ployed. The site of the incision is encircled with a puckerin
here again Murphy passes the needles, and employs them as
ing the process of incising the bowel. The opening requir

length corresponding with that of the button; the introduction of the latter is effected by introducing the lateral edge first beneath the upper margin of the opening; the button, which is held by its central stem in forceps, is then rotated beneath the lower margin of the opening, which is held up by a pair of forceps. The puckering thread is tightened, and the further details do not differ from those in an axial union.

Murphy lays great stress on the outer margin of the pressure surface of the button being an accurate semicircular curve, and not a rounded

FIG. 378. HARTMANN'S CLAMP FOR HOLDING MURPHY'S BUTTONS.

off angle. He considers this of the utmost importance in the proper limitation of the extent of the 'pressure necrosis,' which he says should have attained its maximum at the expiration of three days.

In spite of the success which has attended the use of the button in the hands of the inventor, and in those of many distinguished operators, its use is best restricted to positions in which methods of suture are difficult or impossible, and to cases in which a minimum of expenditure of time is obligatory. The latter indication is hard on the method, since it relegates its employment for the most part to cases of the most compromising description. The improvement in methods of suture has, however, been so great that most of the early complications and dangers have been removed from their employment, while no doubt can exist as to their greater elasticity of application, and they possess the undoubted advantage of entirely avoiding all the risks which may attend the introduction of a foreign body into the intestinal canal.

A series of entero-enterostomies comprising 750 operations for all causes has been collated from various sources by one of Murphy's assistants. In this series the remarkably low mortality of 19% is shown, or if the cases in which the operations for malignant disease are subtracted, of 14% only (*Philad. Med. Journ.*, 1900, p. 1271).

TECHNIQUE OF COLECTOMY

The removal of portions of the colon involves difficulties not encountered in similar operations on the small intestine. The more important

of these depend on the fixation, location, vascular supply, and
ment of the lymphatic vessels and glands of the segment of
ing to be resected.

1. *Fixation.* Comparative fixity, whether dependent
arrangement or on secondary infiltration, has in the past ex
influence on the results of partial colectomy. Extended e
demonstrated the freedom with which fixed portions of t
be mobilized by division of the parietal peritoneum at the
of the bowel, which measure has done much to reduce the i
this difficulty.

2. *Location.* The depth of the situation occupied by a
to difficulties similar in nature to those of fixation, which
also by free mobilization of the part requiring resection. F
sure of the field of operation may be rendered easier by a p
of the patient during the performance of the operation, an
the affected part may be facilitated by the resection of a
intestine out of all proportion to that actually diseased.
these aids, certain positions, such as that of growths situa
the pelvis, still retain grave importance from a purely techn

3. *Vascular supply.* In this respect operations on the
special characteristics, since the effect of obliteration of any
trunk is known to correspond with a loss of vitality in a
of the bowel, and hence may determine with some exactitu
to be removed.

4. *The arrangement of the lymphatic vessels and glands*
The subdivision of the system into areas corresponding
arterial trunks favours the possibility of dealing with th
area ' in which the growth is situated in a more radical m
possible in the case of the small intestine, with its common
the large superior mesenteric artery.

Although colectomy may be demanded for the treatm
simple or malignant conditions, yet the latter form the n
and important indication. Until recently no very definit
been laid down for the attempt to completely extirpate
vessels and glands corresponding to the area occupied by
such as have been propounded for the removal of carcino
regions, as the breast and tongue, since the anatomical data
rules could be founded cannot be said to have existed.
effort to remedy this deficiency has been made by Jamieso
in a series of papers dealing with the normal lymphatic s
colon, in which the course of the lymphatic vessels and the
of the glands are accurately described, and upon the res

anatomical investigations definite rules for the extirpation of the several lymphatic areas have been laid down. These investigations are of the greater value, since they correspond in general with the information to be gained by consideration of the numerous isolated pathological observations scattered throughout the extensive literature of the surgery of the colon, and especially with the careful pathological review of 72 cases of colic carcinomata by H. S. Clogg, appended to which are a series of suggested operations differing only slightly from those devised by Jamieson and Dobson on strictly anatomical lines (Jamieson and Dobson, 'Lymphatics of the Cæcum and Appendix,' *Lancet*, 1907, vol. i, p. 1137; Dobson, *Lancet*, 1908, vol. i, p. 149; Jamieson and Dobson, *Proc. Roy. Soc. of Med.*, 1909, vol. ii, Surg. Sect., p. 149; H. S. Clogg, 'Cancer of the Colon,' *Lancet*, 1908, vol. ii, p. 1007).

Jamieson and Dobson's observations were made on a series of specimens prepared by the method of Gerota, and may be shortly summarized as follows:—

It is pointed out that the lymphatics connected with any given segment of the colon correspond in their course and arrangement with the main arterial branches of supply to such segment. Hence the course and distribution of the latter afford an all-important general indication as to the extent of bowel, parietal peritoneum, retroperitoneal tissue, or mesentery, which requires to be removed in an attempt to completely extirpate the 'lymphatic area' which pertains to a tumour situated in any given position. Four lymphatic areas are described: (1) ileo-colic, (2) middle colic, (3) left colic, (4) inferior mesenteric. As an inconstant vessel in origin, with few glands arranged upon it, the right colic is not assigned an individual area. The lymphatic glands connected with each individual area are divided into four distinct but intercommunicating groups: (1) *Epicolic*, glands contained in the appendices epiploicæ and lying on the wall of the bowel; (2) *paracolic*, glands arranged in a line parallel to the mesenteric margin of the bowel, between the intestine and the arterial arcades and on the arcades; (3) *intermediate*, glands arranged around the trunk of the arteries, about midway between their origin and the gut; (4) *main*, glands arranged around the main trunk of the artery near its origin.

The 'intermediate' groups for the most part receive lymphatic vessels from the epicolic and paracolic groups, but some vessels may pass to them directly from the bowel itself. The 'main' groups receive chiefly vessels from the three peripheral groups, in certain regions, notably the lower part of the inferior mesenteric system, directly from the intestine itself, and on the other hand are connected centrally with the lumbar and mesenteric glands. The observations show that the complete removal of any

given lymphatic area may be impracticable when infiltrat
'main' glands has occurred, in consequence of their near con
the central system; also, that intercommunication between th
tems and others, such as the splenic, may offer an obstacle to
tirpation. On the other hand, they clearly indicate the line
complete operations should be planned, and are hence of very

It is at the present time hardly possible to lay down d

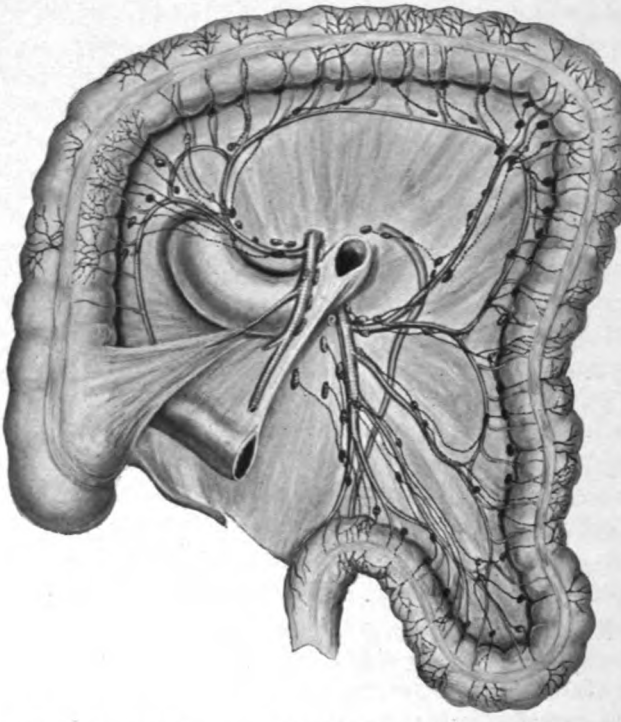


FIG. 379. THE LYMPHATICS OF THE COLON. The upper part
colon, after Gegenbaur, has been added to show the interruption o
arcades below the distribution of the lowest sigmoid artery. (*Af
and Dobson.*)

for the choice of the major or minor operations described be
considering the suitability of either to individual cases great
tion must be exercised. For simple conditions the minor
suffice, and even in malignant disease the ulterior results
these cannot be said to have been altogether unsatisfactory.
tion, therefore, must arise as to when it is justifiable to subr
to the increased risks involved by the employment of the mo

ons designed for the radical removal of the 'lymphatic area' con-
and the points which affect this decision must be shortly con-

The extent of the local disease. Surrounding infiltration or the
ce of adhesions is as fully opposed to an extensive as a limited
on. Under such conditions, even if adhesions can be dealt with
by the removal of a portion of adherent bowel, yet it is improbable
necessary additional removal of the second series of glands could
factorily proceeded with.

The position of the growth with regard to the blood-supply. It is
apparent, since the individual lymphatic areas correspond with
the main arteries supplying any one segment of the colon, that
st extensive resections of intestine will be required when the
occupies a point corresponding to the anastomosis of any two
systems—thus, at the flexures; also that the amount of bowel to
oved bears no sort of proportion to the magnitude of the tumour
The fact that these very extensive operations are indicated in
ns in which experience appears to have shown the ulterior re-
more limited operations to have been comparatively favourable,
it necessary to exercise some caution before deciding upon their

h regard to the regions in which special care needs to be taken in
ing with the arterial supply, it may be said these are few. Al-
certain anastomoses, notably that between the middle and left colic
are occasionally absent, yet as a rule the intercommunication
the colic arteries has been shown to be sufficient to maintain the
of the bowel in spite of the obliteration of any one main trunk.
points are, however, worthy of mention. (*a*) Division of a
unk is safe only if interference with the system of primary
is avoided. (*b*) In removal of the cæcum and ascending colon,
of the lowest ileo-colic branches endangers the vitality of the
ix inches of the ileum. (*c*) The general system of arterial
is interrupted between the lowest sigmoid branch and the highest
of the superior hæmorrhoidal artery. As a consequence the
otic circulation in this region can only be maintained by a flow in
rse direction in the lowest sigmoid artery itself to the superior
hoidal trunk. Thus Manasse (*Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, 1907, vol.
p. 999) has pointed out that a division of the inferior mesenteric
bove the origin of this vessel is unattended by danger, while
of the trunk below its origin endangers the vitality of the cut
y of the lower segment of the bowel.

The extent of glandular infiltration or enlargement. The date at

which this may commence is incalculable, but it appears
it occurs early only in instances of great malignity and rapid
as are occasionally met with in young subjects. Butlin c
more than 50% of patients affected with colic carcinoma
struction of the lumen of the bowel before glandular metas
veloped, and although this computation of freedom fr
infiltration is probably too high, yet in Clogg's series (*loc. c*
enlarged glands were found in a much larger proportion o
a considerable number the enlargement did not depend
infiltration, and this latter observation is confirmed by th
other observers. Pathological evidence (Clogg) and clinic
during the course of operations have shown that in certain
transverse colon and sigmoid flexure, and to a lesser degre
flexures, the glands affected tend to be those in the immedi
the growth, and these observations are supported by the
taken by the lymphatic vessels in relation to the glands
by Jamieson and Dobson. The observations of the latter a
course taken by the lymphatic vessels in the neighbourhood
and pelvic colons somewhat discounts the importance of th
region, but, generally speaking, clinical evidence of the resu
resections of the sigmoid flexure shows that it is not to be

Lastly, it must be remembered that the course of infec
means regular, and that glands may often be discovered
from the growth, while those in the immediate proximity
unaffected. Such enlarged glands are not necessarily c
but the escape of the proximal glands has been clearly exp
direct course taken by some of the lymphatic vessels to the
glands by Jamieson and Dobson, and this fact, together w
vation that the intervening vessel is free from growth,
utilized by them as support for their contention that inf
glands is embolic in character and not consequent on 'perr

Infection of the 'intermediate' series of glands marks
which a 'radical' operation is worth performance. If the
be infiltrated, the probability of existing extension to the
lumbar glands is opposed to the likelihood of a radical r
successful.

4. *The actual magnitude of the operation.* This factor
counted, not only by the greater possibilities of permanent
by the operative advantages gained. Although the free rem
necessitates a somewhat larger incision, and greater exp
abdominal cavity, yet, on the other hand, it renders manipu
and more rapid, while the risks of infection of the abdomi

materially reduced. Again, the free removal of intestine in some situations rather facilitates than opposes the union of the divided ends.

Consideration of the above points seems to lead to the somewhat paradoxical conclusion that only the least extensive and apparently favourable cases are those suited to the more extensive methods of operation. Even if this prove to be the case, the results obtained by the more radical methods in other parts of the body indicate that a similar improvement is probable with the application of the same principle to the growths of the colon, and the general trend of surgical opinion is in this direction.

Putting the most extensive operations on one side, it is evident also that advantage may be gained by a systematic search for glands along the line of the vascular trunks in the retroperitoneal tissue, the more so as anatomical knowledge now permits us to determine with some precision the situation in which such glands should and should not exist, and which are of the greater importance. Such knowledge allows of a less extensive removal of the main arterial trunks, and this fact has influenced operators in somewhat limiting the scope of operations, which theoretically should be wider.

REMOVAL OF THE CÆCUM AND ASCENDING COLON

The cæcum shares with the sigmoid flexure certain characteristics; thus, in both portions of the bowel the intestinal contents tend to stagnate, and in both carcinomatous tumours are common. The cæcum differs from the sigmoid flexure in that its contents still retain highly digestive powers; hence perhaps an explanation that in the cæcum the medullary form of carcinoma is more common. The tumours are often large, with a tendency to ulcerate freely, and excite very considerable surrounding tissue reaction, leading to comparatively early fixation, often of a simple inflammatory character. Growths of the cæcum are also occasionally atypical in their structure, conforming rather to the type of an epithelioma than to that of a true columnar carcinoma.

Again, both these segments of the colon are especially liable to become the seats of inflammatory processes, sometimes accompanied by the formation of abscesses and fistulæ, tuberculous infiltration being more common in the cæcum, and simple inflammatory changes in the sigmoid flexure.

The cæcum may need removal not only when the disease is actually located in its walls, but also in many cases where the ascending colon is the part primarily affected, since under the latter circumstances the cæcum is often much dilated, its walls are thickened, and the width of the lumen may render it unsatisfactory either for axial union or closure. Again,

the close connexion of the lymphatic system of the two segr
the removal of the cæcum a desirable proceeding, when t
colon is the seat of malignant disease. In some cases, ho
the growth occupies a high position in the ascending colo
strong cæcum is well adapted for the lateral approximatio
tranverse colon.

Anatomically these portions of the colon are in some res
ably situated for operation; the cæcum itself lies ventrally,
by peritoneum, and the lower portion of the ascending colo
tively movable. In from 26 to 30% a mesocolon is pre
ascending colon becomes steadily less movable from comm
termination. Occasionally the mesocolon is abnormally lo
is continuous with the mesentery of the small intestine, a
much importance for the occurrence of the so-called cæcal

Operation. For removal of the cæcum or ascendi
patient should be arranged with the right side of the bod
the pelvis higher than the abdomen, in order that the small
fall as far as possible out of the field of operation.

The incision is made in the right semilunar line, and n
or more inches in length. When the operation is done f
disease, a thorough exposure of the area to be dealt wit
importance than the final condition of the abdominal wa
limitation of the length of the incision is advisable, the mo
access to the parts not only renders the subsequent manipu
but also diminishes the risk of infection.

The portion of bowel requiring removal having been
defined, the points at which division is to be effected are
and plugs are introduced to isolate the area of operation fro
peritoneal cavity.

If necessary, the bowel is mobilized by division of the
toneum at its outer margin, the colon being raised toget
retroperitoneal tissue, and drawn forwards and inwards.
involves little hæmorrhage, as the main vessels reach the i
inner margin and only anastomotic branches are involved.

Clamps are applied on either side of the two points to be
the removal of the included portion of bowel proceeded
generally more convenient to first divide the distal end of t
the cut ends having been carefully cleansed and wrapped
part to be removed is rapidly freed in a downward direct
part of the procedure it is convenient to clamp the large ve
little distance from the margin of the colon before dividing
measure diminishes the amount of bleeding and facilitates

of any enlarged lymphatic glands lying in their course. The retroperitoneal tissue in the area exposed should be cleanly removed from the posterior abdominal wall, especial care being taken that the ureter is not injured during the process of dissection.

The difficulties that may arise during the procedure of freeing the bowel may depend on inflammatory infiltration of the retroperitoneal tissue, or simple adhesions to neighbouring organs. Peritoneal adhesions are not uncommon when the disease is of an inflammatory or tuberculous nature, or in the florid medullary form of carcinoma; in the annular scirrhus form of growth, fixation due to malignant invasion of the retroperitoneal tissue may be very extensive compared with the small extent of involvement of the bowel itself.

The freed cæcum and colon are delivered from the abdominal cavity, and the uncovered retroperitoneal space carefully protected with gauze plugs prior to section of the small bowel. The ileum having been divided and duly cleansed, two courses are open: either to close both the proximal and distal ends of the bowel, and make a lateral anastomosis, or to close the colic end, and implant the ileum into the side of the colon. Axial union, although it has often been performed, is not to be recommended. Lateral anastomosis is the preferable method, and it is often more conveniently made to the transverse colon than to the more fixed remnant of the ascending colon, should this have been preserved.

When the free ends have been closed, the plugs protecting the retroperitoneal space are removed, and in order to bring the two portions of bowel into position for the anastomosis, it may be necessary to effect some rearrangement of the plugs which have served to retain the general abdominal contents during the operation. When satisfactory adaptation has been secured, the surrounding area is protected in the usual way and the union may be completed.

The last special step in this operation, closure of the defect in the posterior parietal pertioneum, is now proceeded with. When the removal of bowel has been extensive, this may be difficult, but it is rendered somewhat easier by the drawing upward of the mesentery which has accompanied the apposition of the ileum to the colon. The repair of the gap should be as complete as possible, since the opened-up retroperitoneal space is a source of great danger should infection have occurred. If it prove impracticable to entirely close the gap, it is usually advisable to introduce a drain from the loin, which may be removed at the end of from twenty-four to thirty-six hours.

Dobson (*Lancet*, 1908, vol. i, p. 149) gives the following description of an operation performed for the removal of a carcinoma of the ascending colon, together with the corresponding 'lymphatic area':—

'An incision 7 inches long was made in the right lir
the tumour in the ascending colon was defined, and the
was packed off to the left side of the abdomen. The duc
ileo-colic vessels were then defined, the overlying peritoneu
and a fair
most glan
ileo-colic g
pushed do
artery and
clamped ar
ligature
about ½
superior me
At this sta
applied to
colon close
flexure, ar
about 6 ir
ileo-colic v

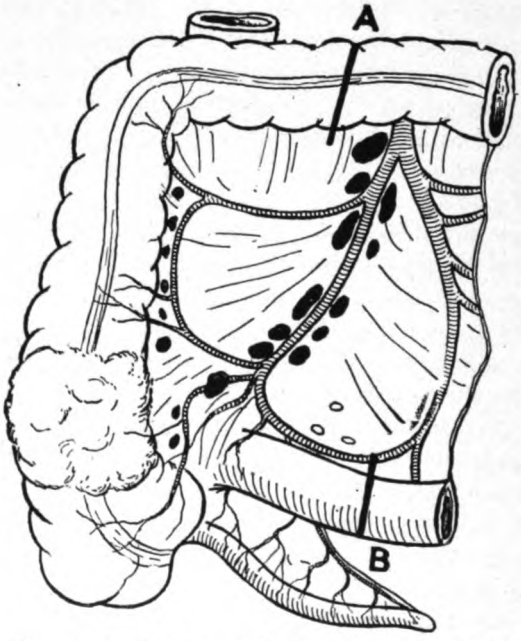


FIG. 380. ILEO-COLIC LYMPHATIC AREA WITH A COLIC GROWTH. The division of the colon, A, is that now recommended, but somewhat wider than that described in the above operation. B, Point of section of the ileum. (*Dobson.*)

'The
the outer
cending co
divided,
mass—asce
cæcum, an
tion of th
thrown ov
the peritor
vessels, a
glands bei
up to the duodenum; the ureter was seen and avoided ar
were tied. The mesocolon was then divided from the du
selected point on the colon, some branches of the middle co
tied. In the same way the peritoneum of the anterior laye
tery was divided down to the ileum, and also the posterio
terminal branch of the mesentery artery were secured. T
was now easily withdrawn from the abdomen (see Fig.
colon and ileum were divided between clamps; both ends
celluloid thread continuous suture, three layers in the col
the ileum. Lateral anastomosis between the two portions
effected, thus drawing up the mesentery and covering in th
on the posterior abdominal wall. A small tubular drai

a stab wound in the loin and the anterior wound was closed in
l way.'

son claims by this operation to ' remove all the primary lymphatic
eceiving direct vessels from the cæcum and ascending colon, the
ic vessels, and the tissue in which these vessels run. The blood-
f the portion of intestine to be removed is effectively controlled
risk of contamination of the field of operation is minimized by
g the division of the gut until towards the end of the operation.'
ioval of several inches of the ileum enables the small intestine
ought up to the colon with ease, and allows of a satisfactory
osis being performed. Division of the transverse colon at the
of the middle and right thirds is now recommended.

VAL OF THE TRANSVERSE COLON AND THE FLEXURES

hepatic flexure is not very commonly (6.4%) the seat of
; when present they are comparatively easy to deal with, since
re, although fixed, is uncovered and near the anterior abdominal
he acuteness of the flexure and the length of the mesenteric at-
t fluctuate considerably. A variable fold, corresponding with the
lic ligament of the left side, extends from the flexure to the ab-
parietes, and occasionally folds stretch from it to the liver and

ration. The incision may be made through the right rectus
or in the semilunar line. The procedure is considerably facili-
placing an air-cushion or pillow under the back of the level of
r ribs (as in an operation on the bile passages); this manœuvre
renders the flexure more prominent and easily extruded, but
ours the falling away of the small intestine from the field of
n. Union of the two ends of the colon by lateral anastomosis is
erable method of junction.

writer's experience of a limited operation in this region has been
able one; thus one patient is alive and well at the end of fifteen
ne survived four years before a recurrence took place, and a third
well after a short period. But both Jamieson and Dobson, and
ecommend an extensive removal for growths in this situation.
nsider it advisable to remove the whole lymphatic area corre-
g to the distribution of the middle colic artery. The middle
ery is isolated and tied at its origin, and the mesocolon incised
is point to the extremities of the parts of the intestine supplied
vessel. This necessitates the removal of the upper third or half
scending colon, and of two-thirds of the transverse colon. The
separated cut ends are closed, and an ileo-sigmoidostomy per-

formed; or the lower part of the ascending colon, the ca
lowest six inches of the ileum are to be removed, and
anastomosed with the remaining third of the transverse c

The operation is wide, but it is claimed that it permits
zation of the growth, complete control of the blood-supp
intestine to be brought well out of the abdomen with
diminution in the risk of contamination of the field of
allows of the anastomosis of movable portions of the gut w
from the seat of disease.

The tranverse colon. The existence of a long me
simplifies the operation of colectomy in this segment, es
left half. It is well to bear in mind that the mobility of
lows considerable range of position, which may allow
descend so low as to be mistaken for one of the sigmoid fle
is exposed. The transverse colon is readily united axia
precautions being taken with the mesenteric angle. The gl
along the branches of the middle colic artery are favou
both for detection when enlarged, and for removal; but ca
exercised, in dealing with the central parts of the meser
superior mesenteric artery be not damaged. This portion
also especially well situated should it be wished to make use
flap to cover a union of doubtful stability.

The observations of Jamieson and Dobson go to sho
testinal lymphatic vessels are all intercepted before they
far by the 'paracolic' glands, while the 'intermediate and
of glands receive no vessels directly from the gut. Under
stances they only consider it necessary to remove as much
side of the growth as to permit of a satisfactory anastom
colic glands at some little distance from the growth bein
gether with it.

The splenic flexure is deeply situated, and entere
position is more difficult of performance than in any ot
that of the pelvic colon. The flexure is more constant tha
as might be expected from the fact that it perpetuates one
developmental bends of the alimentary tube. The bend is
lies directly upon the left kidney, and is fixed in position
colic band. A mesocolon is present in only 5% of all cases

The deep position, and the fact that this segment of the
ticularly often the seat of typical annular growths, render t
of tumours in this region very difficult, so much so that they
detection, even during an abdominal exploration, when m
existed.

se peculiarities render a vertical incision inconvenient, the flexure
ıost satisfactorily exposed and mobilized from an incision made
.y along the left lower costal margin 6 inches in length.
tumour having been removed, the form of union may be a diffi-
estion to decide. The descending colon lies deeply, and in cases of
ma of the splenic flexure is often contracted and small. End-to-
on is dangerous and unsatisfactory; lateral union may be difficult,
racticable is to be chosen.
difficulty lies in the fact that while the transverse colon is pro-
ith a mesentery, mobility may be insufficient to allow it to be con-
y placed alongside the fixed descending colon, and the necessary
may have to be carried out within the confines of the abdominal
If the descending colon cannot be sufficiently mobilized to
e union, the trouble may sometimes be met by closing the cut
d uniting the transverse colon laterally to the sigmoid flexure.
implantation of the descending colon into the transverse has, in
ds of the writer, proved itself an unsatisfactory method, as in
ances in which it was adopted secondary stenosis occurred, neces-
the formation of a proximal vent.
lelung (*Archiv f. klin. Chir.*, 1906, vol. lxxxi, Pt. 1, p. 206) has
ed the opinion that the prognosis after removal of growths of the
flexure is especially good, even if the disease be advanced, on
of the paucity of the lymph paths, and that metastases are
atively uncommon. Jamieson and Dobson, on the other hand,
an opinion in favour of a wide removal of this flexure, as in the
the hepatic. They observed the large majority of the lymphatic
o pass into the epicolic and paracolic glands, rarely to the inter-
group, and never directly to the main groups situated on the left
ery or on the upper part of the inferior mesenteric vein. Some
ic vessels were, however, observed to pass to the splenic glands,
complete removal of the lymphatic area is impracticable.
ıoval of the growth, together with that part of the lymphatic
ınected with the branches of the left colic artery, is recommended.
t colic artery and vein are to be defined as they leave the outer
of the inferior mesenteric vein, and tied. The splenic flexure,
with the left third of the transverse colon, and the greater part
escending colon are to be mobilized and removed, and an axial
stablished. This operation, although extensive, has the great ad-
of avoiding the difficulties of union above mentioned to a con-
e degree.

e descending colon. Tumours in the descending colon are rare
%), possibly since this portion of the large bowel serves less as

a reservoir and there is little tendency of the contents to sta
leaving the splenic flexure the fæces descend rapidly, per
aided by the force of gravity from the straight vertical co
the bowel. In fact, at post-mortem examinations the desc
is rarely in a state of distension.

The difficulty of a limited colectomy here comes next
gravity after the splenic flexure, and, for much the same r
and fixity. A mesocolon is met with more commonly tha
of the ascending colon, partly as a result of the lesser deg
sion. The isolated blood-supply, and consequent simple ar
the lymphatics, makes the removal of glands less difficul
case of the cæcum and ascending colon. According to
Dobson, the lymphatic area comprises the epicolic and par
and the intermediate glands on the branches of the left c
sigmoid arteries; as in the case of the splenic flexure, a co
with the splenic system exists. The operation recommende
with that for removal of the splenic flexure, except that th
sion is of the upper part of the sigmoid flexure instead of
ing colon, and the first sigmoid artery is tied close to its o

The sigmoid flexure. This segment of the colon is
mon seat of surgical operation than any other. Malignant
frequent, while the function of the loop as a reservoir mak
larly liable to the occurrence of inflammatory changes. C
the arrangement of the sigmoid flexure is singularly const
in common with a general transposition of the viscera it ma
lie to the right side of the body; and rarely, it may b
descending colon terminating in a direct continuity with t
which latter case a large cloaca is sometimes developed to
the higher reservoir which should normally exist. The lo
in width, length, and degree of convolution, but the mo
practical variations are dependent on the relative length of t
Congenital cicatricial bands and lateral adhesions are occ
with, while a short mesentery, especially with a distende
equally be a mere individual anatomical arrangement. Ei
conditions may give rise to operative inconvenience, ev
flexure itself is not the actual seat of the disease; but the r
source of difficulty lies in the shortening of the mesentery
accompanying the presence of malignant tumours and inflar
ditions. A long mesentery favours the occurrence of volvu

The sigmoid flexure is the seat of malignant disease i
38% of all cases of carcinoma of the colon, excluding the re
this segment the growths show a special disposition to assum

nd to be circumscribed in area. When situated at the distal of the loop, they lie within the pelvis and are difficult to palpate, such cases help in diagnosis may often be obtained by noting ng in the proximal portion of the bowel, the collection of con- e masses of scybala, or well-marked local peristalsis. Growths l size may be visible on exploration with the long proctoscope or oscope. Again, growths, impalpable from above, may often be ed by bi-manual examination *per vaginam* or *per rectum* in the or *per rectum* in the male. When the growths are of the pro- l annular form, and situated in the lower part of the loop, an tory incision is often the only method of actually palpating them, cases where the growth has acquired firm adhesions to the pelvic en if it be of considerable extent, a very moderate amount of on of the bowel or a thick abdominal wall renders an open ex- n the only means of digitally determining its presence.

eration. The patient should be arranged in the high Trendelen- osition with the left shoulder and side of the pelvis somewhat y pillows. The incision is made in the left linea semilunaris, or etter through the left rectus sheath, since the more difficult end owel to manipulate, the distal, lies fairly mesially. Should diffi- ise in dealing with the upper end, the incision may be enlarged the left, the line of cleavage of the fibres of the broad muscles bdomen being followed when the limits of the rectus sheath are d.

exposure of the tumour is easy if the growth be situated in the portion and provided with a long mesentery; more difficult, if to be removed is at the upper or lower part and the mesentery

bowel itself along the mesenteric margin and the mesentery in s of the arteries are palpated for the detection of enlarged glands, amount of bowel to be removed is decided upon. The general nal cavity is protected by the insertion of plugs, and the reten- mps are applied to the bowel. If necessary, the bowel is now ed by an incision made into the mesentery at its outer line of ity with the parietal peritoneum, and the excluded loop is drawn d and removed, together with a portion of the mesentery and larged glands as shall have been discovered. Hæmorrhage may imized by securing the large sigmoid branches prior to section bowel.

on may be of the type axial variety, or the ends may be closed ateral anastomosis established. The latter method is preferable any doubt exist as to the healthy condition of the bowel-wall.

When any question arises as to the efficiency of the s
from the actual condition of the bowel-wall, the tension ex
union, or the general state of the patient, it is often possible
line of suture extra-peritoneal. In the early days of intes
this was often done, by retaining the loop of bowel, when
without the limits of the abdominal cavity, and either a
sink, or replacing it at a later date when union had taken
loop was too short to allow of this procedure, the wound
down to the seat of suture and not entirely closed. Both the
are open to objection, and have been much improved upon b
employed by Bloodgood.

'The parietal peritoneum is separated from the margins
for a sufficient distance to allow it to be pushed back and s
mesentery of the bowel on each side of the suture. Abov
the margins of the peritoneum are brought together as u
curing the line of suture in an extra-peritoneal position at t
the external wound, a gauze drain being inserted down t
In the case related 'the method protected the peritoneal
effectively, but no leakage from the line of suture occurre
granulated up rapidly' (*Trans. Amer. Surg. Assoc.*, 190
p. 115).

When the growth occupies the lower extremity of the
a considerable length of bowel has needed removal, great t
culty may arise in the union of the remaining bowel ends.
circumstances two courses are open, the simplest to utili
end for a colostomy, and sew up and sink the lower in
When the difficulty depends on fixation of the upper segme
is the safer and to be preferred.

When the difficulty depends on the shortness of the lo
a colostomy may be avoided if desired in the manner sug
next operation (see p. 757).

Jamieson and Dobson in dealing with the sigmoid flexu
part of the rectum state that the glands implicated are
para- and epicolic groups, the intermediate group upon
arteries, and the main glands on the inferior mesenteric
did not observe the passage of any lymphatic vessel *direct*
at a higher point on the inferior mesenteric trunk than tha
ing with the middle and upper thirds, *i.e.* just below the
left colic artery. The proximity of the inferior mesenteric
bowel in the lower part of its course practically necessitate
of some portion of the vessel, but considering the paran
tance of the left colic artery for the anastomotic circulation

t of the bowel concerned, they recommend the following opera-
growths of the lower part of the sigmoid colon.
inferior mesenteric artery and vein are exposed and tied imme-
below the origin of the left colic artery. A long incision is made
outer side of the mesorectum and mesosigmoid, and the descend-
on and sigmoid mobilized by stripping them inwards towards
dle line. In doing this the ureter and spermatic vessels will be
ered and must be avoided. The mesosigmoid is then divided
blique line downwards from the point of ligature of the inferior
eric to about the middle of the sigmoid flexure, care being taken
erve as far as possible the secondary arches on the sigmoid
. The peritoneum to the inner side of the artery is divided down-
o the inner side of the mesorectum. The mass of tissue to be
d is then stripped forwards from the upper part of the sacral
and the gut clamped and divided at the middle of the sigmoid
and at the junction of the first and second parts of the rectum.
rt removed will consist of the lower half of the sigmoid flexure
e upper part of the rectum, the greater part of the inferior
eric vessels with the accompanying chain of glands and lymphatic
and the surrounding subperitoneal tissue.
blood-supply of the upper end is assured, owing to the preserva-
the left colic artery, that of the lower, which depends on the
and inferior hæmorrhoidal arteries, suspect (see p. 745); it
e tested by release of the clamp. If no bleeding occurs, one of
arses must be taken: (*a*) to complete the operation by a colos-
b) to remove more of the lower portion, everting the rectum and
g the freed sigmoid down through the anus to perform a union
nsell's method. If, on the other hand, the lower end bleeds, an
ate suture *in situ* may be performed.
the middle and upper parts of the sigmoid flexure they point
t an equally severe operation is necessary to secure the ideal,
view of the fairly satisfactory results obtained in the past by
operations they recommend a modified operation.
peritoneum is divided over the inferior mesenteric vessels, and
y of the main glands are stripped off them as is possible without
ng the vessels. This is done from the point of origin of the left
tery down to the origin of the lowest sigmoid artery. The sig-
rteries are tied at their origin, the lowest being preserved if its
l be not necessitated by the position of the growth. The descend-
on is then mobilized by an incision of the peritoneum at its outer
and the gut divided above at the junction of the descending
nd the flexure, and below in the lower part of the flexure. Almost

the whole of the mesosigmoid will thus be removed, includ
mediate paracolic and epicolic glands, and probably the gr
of the main group corresponding to this part of the sig
If it be found necessary to tie the lowest sigmoid artery at i
must be taken to divide the gut below the level of the
pelvis, in order to avoid the 'dead end' which may be left
and Archibald have shown, owing to the non-union of the
the lowest sigmoid and superior hæmorrhoidal arteries.

Moynihan (*Surg. Gyn. and Obst.*, 1908, vol. vi, p. 463
description of similar extensive operations carried out by
main features of which lie in the free mobilization of the
he shows to be practicable, and the free removal of lymp
An equally extensive operation has been devised by Kümm
klin. Chir., 1899, vol. lix, p. 555) on the ground of possib
of the vascular anastomoses when the lower colon is ex
sected.

HIRSCHSPRUNG'S DISEASE

Congenital idiopathic dilatation of the colon involves
one-third of the cases the sigmoid flexure, but the whole l
may take part in the process, while the rectum and small
practically always spared. The bowel may be greatly dil
a 30-inch circumference, and its walls are thickened by
Most of the cases occur in infants who have suffered en
depletion of strength from their condition, a fact to be b
in selecting an operation.

Enterostomy or colostomy with post-operative lavage
a tube in the dilated segment and through the rectum may b
colostomy may be followed by a lateral colo-colostomy
of the dilated and hypertrophied bowel at the same time
period. In the latter case, the colostomy opening may be

ACCIDENTS SUBSEQUENT TO, AND AFTER-CONSEQUENCES FOLLOWING, ENTE

Primary peritoneal infection. This, the most
fatal complication of enterectomy, has become less frequent
operations have been abandoned in the presence of serious
It is most commonly the result of infection during the
of the operation; less often, of a primary incompetence o
Death from this cause is usually rapid, occurring in the co
two days to a week.

atever mode of operation is adopted, the risks of infection during ormance cannot be entirely obviated, but the danger steadily s with the degree of fixity of the portion of bowel involved, and ent necessity of performing the section of the lumen within the of the peritoneal cavity, also with the relative amount of intes- ntents. Infection is greatly more to be feared during the per- ce of colectomy than in enterectomy of the small intestine, and nces of its occurrence increase with the degree of fluidity of the ontained in the large bowel. The mechanical difficulty due to must be met as far as possible by free mobilization of the part bowel concerned. When circumstances appear to render the nce of infection probable, it is to be met by the provision of free drainage at the time of operation, and prompt opening up of nd should the drainage prove insufficient to prevent diffusion.

extensive experience is forthcoming as to the value of prophylactic ns of anti-colon bacillus serum, but in a few instances adminis- of the serum on the appearance of signs of serious infection has that it may influence the general and local symptoms much as in appendical peritonitis.

s, a man aged 52, from whom an extensive carcinoma of the ng colon was removed, and an axial enterectomy performed, a sleepless night in spite of morphine, and on the following day se had risen to 130, and the temperature to 103.6° F. The ory movement of the abdominal wall was very restricted, local ess and some distension developed, and there was great pain. ction of 25 c.c. of anti-colon bacillus serum was given at the end nty hours, followed by a second at the end of a further twelve The first injection was followed by a fall in the pulse to 116, the ature to 100.4°, relief of the pain, and comfortable sleep. Two ns were given, and after the third day no further alarming ms were observed. On the eighth day the temperature rose, and f intraperitoneal abscess were discovered. Incision and drain- the abscess were followed by rapid recovery. This case fol- he same course often seen in bacillus coli infections in connexion ute perforations of the appendix, both as to the relief of general ms of septicæmia, and in the occurrence of rapid localization rea of infection.

en the resistance of the patient is good, or the infection of degree, local abscesses may develop. These abscesses usually do early and freely incised and drained, and, except for the possible ion of a fæcal fistula, and the increased risk of the development nanent local adhesions, may do little harm. Those situated in the

retroperitoneal space are the more difficult to deal with, a to the more chronic form of fistulæ.

Failure of the suture. Apart from deficiencies in th nique, this accident may be the result of several causes, a be followed by general infection of the peritoneal cavity, o tion of a localized suppuration.

The suture may give way at the point in the line of un the peritoneal investment of the bowel is deficient. This h commonly seen in axial unions of the ascending and desce less frequently in the small intestine, since improved metho of the 'mesenteric angle' have been devised.

The stitches may cut through the included tissue as a ficient vitality of the bowel-wall, or as a consequence of of the tissue dependent on inflammatory infiltration. Th gives a useful warning against drawing the sutures too tigl conditions of the bowel exist.

The general condition of the patient may be such tha deposit of plastic material for the satisfactory closure of not provided, especially where malignant disease is the prin Again, the plastic material primarily effused may not be co properly organizing tissue, or under these circumstances reabsorbed. The latter process is specially likely to occur in of peritoneal infection. In this relation the observations are of much interest; he has shown that the union of intes is firmer upon the first than upon the three following day the fifth onwards the strength steadily increases, while at it should be thoroughly secure (Kocher, *Chir. Oper.*, p. 937

Local stitch abscesses may form in the line of union a infection of the suture thread. Speaking generally, the this accident is an argument against the employment of of through and through sutures when circumstances do n necessity.

When lateral unions are made, the closed ends of the give way secondarily. Some remarks have been already m subject under the general heading of Enterectomy. The pears to have happened much more frequently after the ex bowel tumours than where the ends have been closed in the of unilateral exclusions, a fact probably to be explained by time needed for the performance of the former operation, a greater amount of interference with the vascular supply of involved. This observation serves to impress the necessity the possibility of this accident well before us in the per

colectomies. The eighth or ninth day is that on which failure is prone to occur, and care must be exercised in the exhibition of purgatives, or still more, the administration of enemata at this period.

The formation of a local abscess in connexion with the suture is not necessarily a serious matter to the patient, either as to danger to life, or great prolongation of the length of treatment, but it is important, as probably leading to the formation of adhesions which may permanently prejudice the viability of the channel in the bowel, interfere with normal peristalsis, and possibly give rise to ulterior obstruction of neighbouring coils of intestine.

The formation of immediate adhesions. Adhesions may develop between the actual seat of union and adjacent coils of small intestine, between the seat of union and the abdominal parietes, or between coils of small intestine in the neighbourhood of the enterectomy. Such adhesions naturally form most frequently in the presence of infection, but more especially when the infection is a slow one, due to leakage from the line of suture from whatever cause. Acute obstruction from kinking of the intestine may result, leading to the necessity of a further laparotomy and possibly to the death of the patient.

Stenosis at the seat of union. As an immediate sequence of enterectomy this complication has practically disappeared with the introduction of improved technical methods. When a later consequence it has more frequently been observed after axial unions and lateral implantation than after lateral junctions of the bowel.

PROGNOSIS AND RESULTS OF ENTERECTOMY

Whatever form of enterectomy be undertaken, the operation must rank as one of the more formidable of surgery. Although isolated small series of cases showing a very low rate of mortality have been published by individual operators, yet if the records of a large number of eminent surgeons be reviewed the death-rate after this operation cannot be placed below 30%. Anatomical conditions render resection of the small intestine a less serious procedure than that of the large, while the nature of the contents of the bowel is more favourable for the safe conduct of the operation; on the other hand, resections of the small intestine often have to be performed under most unsatisfactory conditions.

Two factors mainly influence the prognosis after an enterectomy: (1) the danger of infection during the performance of the operation, (2) the nature of the conditions for which it is undertaken. In the light of present experience it is difficult to see how the risks of immediate infection are to be further greatly diminished, although it is clear that

attention to technical details is the predominant factor in
best results, and that obvious improvement in results has
to accompany the more efficient protection of the gene
cavity during the performance of the suture, such preca
removal of a sufficient length of the bowel, preliminary m
the large intestine, and perfectionment in the methods of
As to the second factor, putting aside operations done in
of deficient vitality from acute conditions, the nature of
seen to exert a very definite influence on the results att
while the mortality in malignant disease has not been bro
one-third of the whole number of cases, the proportion
enterectomies performed for tuberculosis has been mater

Remarks will be found elsewhere as to the recorded re
ectomy for such conditions as result from strangulation
but it may be mentioned here that one important factor in
ment of results has been the removal of sufficient lengths
ensure the tissues in the line of union being healthy. Th
cases recorded by Roswell Park (*Centralbl. f. Chir.*, 190
which more than 200 centimetres of gut were removed,
25%, died.

Enterectomy for inflammatory conditions has been foll
results, but even here we find as large a proportion as two
five operations performed on the sigmoid flexure by W. J. M
Amer. Surg. Assoc., vol. xxv, p. 237).

In Hartmann's collation of enterectomies for tuberc
(*Trans. Med. Soc. of Lond.*, vol. xxx, p. 334), he finds that
tions performed before 1900, 22, or 30%, died, while of
after that date only 7, or 12%, died, a difference no doubt r
the more careful choice of cases on the one hand, and impro
on the other. Caird (*Scot. Med. and Surg. Journ.*, vol. xi
published a series of 11 operations with 7 recoveries
(*Centralbl. f. Chir.*, 1904, p. 395) has collated 130 cases
for tuberculous stenosis, mostly in the cæcal region, in wh
tality after enterectomy was 30% and after anastomosis 17%

In malignant disease the immediate prognosis is grave,
mate results are fairly satisfactory, since it may be fa
that patients from whom the growth has been removed, ever
survive a period of months, are in a happier condition tha
have been subjected to colostomy, while a good proportion
free from trouble for years.

The late date at which sarcomatous tumours are detec
against satisfactory results. Lecène (Hartmann, *Chir.*

p. 433) gives the mortality in 25 cases subjected to enterectomy as 25% (adults, 18 axial unions with 7 deaths (33.3% mortality); lateral unions, adults, 4, no death; children, 3 axial unions with no death). Eight of these patients remained alive and well at 8 years, 4 years, 3½ years, 2 years, 1½ years, 1 year, 10 months, and 8 months respectively. Moynihan (*Abdominal Operations,* 1st ed., p. 323) in his collation, which contains several of the same cases, reports similar results. Corner and Fairbank (*Trans. Path. Soc. of Lond.,* 1905, vol. lvi, p. 20) have collected 13 cases of sarcoma of the large intestine subjected to enterectomy, with a mortality of 46.1%.

The following table contains the recorded results in 276 enterectomies for carcinoma. In all 104 died, a mortality of 37.6%.

Collected by Hartmann .	143	died 48	Mortality 33.5%
St. Thomas's Hospital .	58	" 23	" 39.5%
Voelcker, Czerny's Klinik .	58	" 27	" 46.5%
Caird	17	" 6	" 35.2%

Without doubt, these statistics contain a large number of patients operated upon under unsatisfactory conditions, but none the less they set out the immediate mortality which has been experienced up to the present time.

Anschütz (*Mittheil. aus. d. Grenzgeb. d. Med. & Chir.,* 1907, 111 Suppl.) in a report from the Klinik of von Mikulicz records 20 one-stage operations for carcinoma with 11 deaths, while of 30 cases treated by the several stage operation, only 6 died. He further states that, including the results of other surgeons, the mortality of the several stage operation has not risen beyond 12%, while among 139 one-stage operations collected from the literature the mortality reaches 46%.

In 27 of the above 30 cases which were able to be followed subsequently, 14 patients remained well and free from recurrence at the end of three years, or 52%.

CHAPTER XII

LATERAL INTESTINAL ANASTOMOSIS AND E

SIMPLE LATERAL ANASTOMOSIS

THIS procedure repeats the natural process observed i
tion of spontaneous communications between neighbouring
testine or other tubes. Originally devised by Maisonneuv
resulted in two failures, and probably on this account t
received no support and little consideration until the qu
utility was raised by Hahn some forty years later. The
plication of the method dates from the publication of the in
instructive work of Senn in 1889, and to his able advocacy
quent employment of methods of lateral anastomosis is du

Simple lateral anastomosis has more recently suffered so
in its field of application by the introduction of the metho
sion. Practical experience has shown that a lateral op
delivering segment of the bowel is insufficient to wholl
passage of its contents into the distal receiving one. Whe
tion is designed to overcome the obstruction due to a stenos
may lead to undesirable collections of intestinal contents
circuited portion of the bowel; while, if the anastomosis
favour the closure of an intestinal fistula, or with the desi
divert the passage of intestinal contents from the normal ch
in its object. This failure depends in part on the natural
the fluid contents of the various canals in the body to tr
usual course if possible, in part on the tendency of the
openings to contract when an alternate route exists.

Indications. 1. Cases of *chronic obstruction* of t
growth, unsuitable for any more extensive or radical meas
formed for this cause, the undesirable collection of intestina
the short-circuited segment may be met by the establishmen
in this part of the bowel, or, in suitable instances, by the a
appendicostomy, to allow a vent for gas and the possibilit
out the interior of the excluded portion of the intestine.

2. A lateral anastomosis may be employed *as a prelimi*
to the performance of an enterectomy, forming a desirable
a preliminary colostomy.

n obstruction is acute it is rare that either of these indications afely acted upon, both on account of the danger which depends ighly septic character of the abundant intestinal contents, and tisfactory conditions offered by the stretched bowel-wall for the s of suture. Should the procedure be taken into consideration ig with such cases, the amount of distension and the power of ion still possessed by the intestinal muscle are the two local ns which, combined with the general state of the patient, must ne question; but as a rule anastomoses are only desirable when s of obstruction are of minor degree or chronic in character.

n cases of tuberculous disease of the intestine, especially in the eritoneal form and small gut, a lateral osis is often prefer- an exclusion in view difficulty which may n determining the nd lower ends of the of bowel affected in sence of numerous ns. In these cases, r, more than one osis may be desir-

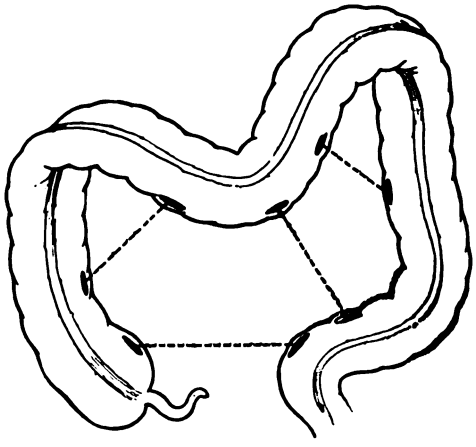


FIG. 381. SOME POSITIONS IN WHICH COLO-COLOSTOMY MAY BE PERFORMED. (*Modified from Hartmann.*)

Lateral anastomosis employed as *a pre- to the closure of an anus or fæcal fis-* suture or enterec- On subsequent closure of the ends a lateral enterectomy is ob-

n cases of gangrenous hernia a lateral anastomosis is sometimes ed at the base of the loop, the gangrenous apex being drawn out vound left for future treatment (Roux's operation).

Lateral entero-anastomosis forms a portion of the operation in rms of gastro-enterostomy and jejunostomy.

ne choice of the most suitable situation for the establishment of tinal anastomosis, certain points are open to consideration. ossible a spot should be selected at which the bowel-wall is as ossible in a normal condition; while, when the disease for which ration is performed is malignant in character, the new com- on should be sufficiently widely removed from the primary dis-

ease to render secondary invasion of the opening imp
situation of the anastomosis should be so chosen as to avo
tion of any undesirable degree of tension on the joint.
colostomy or ileo-sigmoidostomy is as a rule superior to
colo-colostomy, because the comparative mobility of the
allows it to be placed practically in almost any position
Colo-colostomy may be said to be generally undesirabl
avoided, for in addition to the question of fixation of th
be remembered that the peristalsis is comparatively weak
of the bowel, and hence the chances of an efficient anast
minished (see Fig. 381). Published results show that a
tion of failures have attended the establishment of colo-co
of anastomoses between the small and large bowel.

Operation. The technique of uniting the bowel in
moses differs in no way from that already described on p.
heading of Lateral union in enterectomy (see Figs. 368–
portance of ensuring an iso-peristaltic union should be bo

METHODS OF EXCLUSION

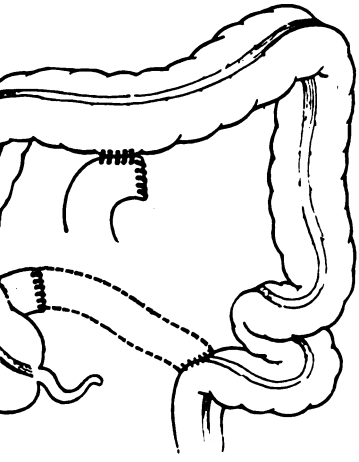
Since the advocacy of total exclusion by Salzer in 18
der Deutsch. Gesellsch. f. Chir., 1891, vol. xx, p. 305)
have undergone numerous modifications, and several ar
the present time. All, however, are variants of the two m
Unilateral exclusion, in which the delivering segment is
its continuity immediately beyond the seat of the ana
Bilateral exclusion, the original method of Salzer, in whic
divided a second time at the distal extremity of the excl

Pure bilateral exclusion has been shown to be an ur
cedure, since the collection of intestinal secretions, of gas
cases the accumulation of the products of ulceration of t
excluded segment of bowel, give rise to the formation of
interior of which systemic auto-intoxication and infection
which, by bursting, may give rise to local disaster.

To obviate these defects various methods have been d
unilateral exclusion is performed, and the proximal end o
segment is drained by its implantation into the colon bey
at which the anastomosis has been established (Monpro
382). (2) The distal end of the excluded segment may
to a special opening in the abdominal wall. (3) To the
ment may be added the establishment of a small safety
proximal end of the excluded segment. (4) In a cruder m
Hochenegg, the two open ends of the excluded segment

urface at special openings made in the abdominal wall for their tion away from the original operation wound (see Fig. 383). method is convenient in cases in which it is desired to treat the or of the excluded segment with medicaments, and it has been d by experience that only the distal opening remains of any mate- size, the normal peristalsis directing the discharge of contained er in the habitual direction.

he method of unilateral exclusion is more widely employed, al- gh it is not altogether free from the objections that have been raised st simple anastomosis. A tendency still exists for the accumulation testinal contents, especially gas, which enter the excluded portion of



IG. 382. METHOD OF MONPROFIT. roximal end of the ileum has been omosed to the transverse colon. otted line shows the distal end of eum implanted at the upper end e pelvic colon. (*Modified from ıann.*)

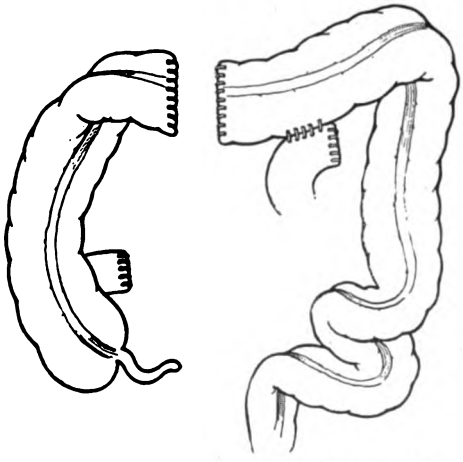


FIG. 383. BILATERAL EXCLUSION. Ends of the excluded segment closed. The ends may be treated in other manners. (1) They may be brought up and sutured into separate special openings made in the abdominal wall. (2) A vent may be established in the cæcum, or by an appendicostomy, and the distal end of the excluded segment brought to the surface. (*Modified from Hartmann.*)

by reflux from the point of anastomosis. This occurrence has denied by Roux, who states that it occurs only when an intestinal exists in the excluded portion, and interferes with the normal altic action. Roux's theory has not, however, been substantiated her observers, hence the temporizing expedient of establishing a t the proximal end of the excluded segment from which the bowel

can be periodically flushed out has been introduced. In oth
the difficulty has been met by excising the whole portion o
cluded, the parts in some instances amounting to almos
length of the colon.

Indications for unilateral exclusion. The operati
the place of simple lateral anastomosis in chronic obstruc
bowel unsuitable for radical measures. In the case o
growths, however, experience has not shown that any bette
attained (Hartmann, *loc. cit.*, p. 88), while it is probable th
ucts of degeneration, should the growth be breaking down, a
likely to be passed steadily onwards the less the peristalsis
with. As far as the other indications set forth for si
anastomosis are concerned, it is evident that unilateral excl
not be performed when the result required is only a tempo

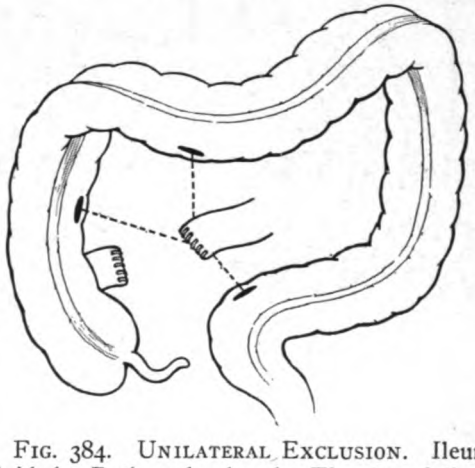


FIG. 384. UNILATERAL EXCLUSION. Ileum divided. Both ends closed. The dotted lines indicate some of the positions in which an anastomosis may be established. A proximal vent may be established in the cæcum or by appendicostomy if desired.

The operati
frequently indic
following condi

1. *Pyo-sterc*
such as may b
after attacks of
appendicitis. In
local operation
fail from the
that has preven
ure of the fist
the presence o
suppuration.
closure of the
the bowel near
gives way with
of suppuration
dominal wall, w
cessity of prov
age in such cas

ther prejudices the probability of success. On the other ha
lateral anastomosis is insufficient to completely divert the pa
fæces from their normal course.

2. *Pyo-stercoral fistulæ consequent on tuberculous dis*
able for treatment by more radical measures. In tubercu
beyond the question of removing the inconvenience of the
diversion of the fæces from the diseased portion of the bo
possibility of the local application of medicaments by mea

the fistulous opening itself, or a more efficient supplemental vent, may allow a rapid improvement in the primary diseased area.

3. *Fistulous communications* between the bowel and other abdominal or pelvic viscera. Hartmann has successfully treated a vagino-intestinal fistula by bilateral exclusion of the affected segment of small bowel. The two ends of the excluded portion were sunk, since a vent for their contents existed in the presence of the vaginal fistulæ, and it was observed that the vaginal discharge rapidly diminished in amount, and eventually ceased, the unused intestine no doubt rapidly contracting and atrophying.

4. The method has been employed in various forms of colitis *as a substitute for colostomy*. Its application for such cases can only be a very limited one, since for the slighter cases of membranous colitis or dysenteric ulceration the measure is too grave, while in the presence of severe ulceration the possibility of reflux into the excluded portion of the bowel contra-indicates its use; again, the lower portion of the large intestine is rarely itself free from ulceration. Moreover, if employed, a vent (possibly an appendicostomy, which it must be allowed is a far less serious inconvenience than a colostomy) is necessary in order to prevent accumulation of gas and fæces, and to allow of local applications being made.

5. Unilateral exclusion has been somewhat largely resorted to in cases of chronic constipation, especially by Arbuthnot Lane (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1908, vol. i, p. 126). The experience gained by this operation has been to emphasize the occurrence of distension in the excluded segment, and although troublesome symptoms from this cause are not constant, they have been sufficiently frequent to lead Lane to recommend a secondary removal of the excluded colon in a large majority of cases.

That the exclusion of the colon by an ileo-sigmoidostomy is not incompatible with fair body nutrition, and may even result in a large gain in subjects who have long suffered from the effects of auto-intoxication from the colon, has been abundantly proved by the operation of Arbuthnot Lane, and in a lesser degree by the observation of patients in whom the same operation has been performed for the relief of obstruction from malignant disease. Moreover, it has been proved that trouble arising from the fluid nature of the intestinal contents delivered into the sigmoid flexure of the rectum is very shortly got over. That the latter should be the case is no cause for surprise, when the experience of a similar solidification of the fæces is observed in colostomies performed in the cæcum, even if the conditions for the absorption of fluid are not equally good. In this relation the free absorption of saline fluid introduced into the lower bowel, and the rapid gain in consistency of a

diarrhœic motion, if retained for a time in the rectum, may to show that the reputed special capability of the cæcum unnecessary fluid component of the fæces may be more a position than due to any special character possessed by th the colon.

E. W. Hey Groves and J. Walker Hall have reported o of the excreta in two cases in which portions of the colon cluded by operation (*Lancet,* 1909, vol. i, p. 236).

The results in the first case showed: (1) 'that the a sorption of water was abundant, the diarrhœa being due discharge of mucus; (2) that the amount of nitrogen a fæces, although high in proportion to the intake, represent irreducible minimum that was always present in the fæce

In the second case, an ileo-sigmoidostomy in a youth where the bowels acted regularly once daily, 'that wat was amply carried on by the pelvic colon and rectum, and absorption was not quite so good after the colon had bee was quite sufficient for the nutritive economy.'

When, however, these points are conceded, it appe whether the operation should be often performed for simple in view of the facts that a secondary removal of the colo quired, and that, in spite even of these radical procedu medicines may still be necessary to ensure the action of the results of ileo-sigmoidostomy have indeed only afforded tration of the difficulty of dealing with chronic constipati efficient action of the intestinal muscle by any surgical m

6. In some instances, where an enterectomy has bee approximation of the remaining bowel ends may be extre or impossible. Under these circumstances it may be desirab an ileo-sigmoidostomy, and fix either the distal end of the ment into an opening in the abdominal wall, or the two ends may be brought up to the surface at separate openings by method.

Operation. The first stages in the performance of a clusion differ in no way from those necessary for the estab lateral anastomosis, the only addition consisting of the di proximal element of the junction immediately beyond the opening.

The division may be accomplished by simple section of t closure of the ends by suture as already described on pp. 73 operation, however, the additional security obtained by crushing clamp, as advised by Kocher, Doyen, and others,

since any actual opening of a patent intestinal lumen is avoided. The clamp may be applied prior to the establishment of the anastomosis, and left in position until the suturing of the junction is complete, by which method the complete adhesion of the compressed intestinal mucous membrane is assured; but really only a few minutes are necessary to attain this end.

Some of the various methods of intestinal exclusion are indicated in

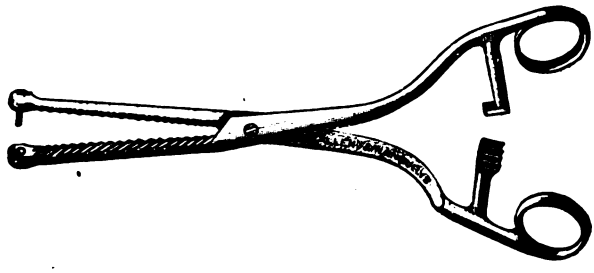


FIG. 385. KOCHER'S CRUSHING CLAMP.

FIG. 386. ILEUM CRUSHED BY A CLAMP (ENTEROTRIBE). A double width has been clamped to allow of convenient division.

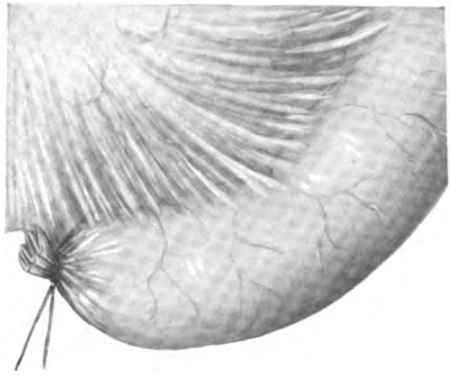


FIG. 387. END OF ILEUM CRUSHED AND LIGATURED PRIOR TO ITS INVERSION BY A LINE OF SUTURE.

Figs. 381–4, and no further description of detail seems necessary for their comprehension.

Prognosis and results. The establishment of an intestinal anastomosis is an operation in itself so simple, and it is so frequently performed on the bowel in a comparatively normal condition, that the results obtained might be expected to surpass those of most other operations on the intestinal canal. The rare occurrence of failure in obtaining

good local union in gastro-intestinal anastomoses also
expectation. Lateral anastomoses and partial exclusion
methods so commonly employed in patients whose gene
condition is in the last degree unsatisfactory, that we find
statistics of the results of the operations far from good. T
are naturally most successful when performed for non-m
ditions, as in intestinal fistulæ, for some forms of intestina
or somewhat less so in cases of tuberculous disease.

Of 21 anastomoses established in cases of carcinoma o
St. Thomas's Hospital 7 (or 33.3%) died, the average re
mating itself closely to that obtained after partial colec
mann quotes 37 cases collected by De Bovis, with 9 d
Terrier, with 3 deaths; and 14 by himself, with 4 deaths (
tomies). Thus, 62 cases in all, with 16 deaths, a morta
Of 10 cases of ileo-sigmoidostomy for chronic constipat
by Arbuthnot Lane, in which further interference with t
not undertaken on account of the bad general condition o
2, or 20%, died.

CHAPTER XIII

OPERATIONS FOR FÆCAL FISTULÆ AND ARTIFICIAL ANUS

FÆCAL fistulæ may be congenital, and then usually consist in the external orifice of a patent vestigial vitello-intestinal duct. The operative treatment under these circumstances does not differ from that described in the section relating to Meckel's diverticulum, except in so far as a preliminary closure of the opening by suture is needed prior to the removal of the diverticulum. This operation should not be undertaken at too tender an age.

Acquired fæcal fistulæ may result from injury, the sloughing of strangulated portions of the bowel, sloughing of the bowel-wall due to gangrenous cellulitis, or the perforation of simple stercoral ulcers. Certain diseases of the intestine, such as tubercle, actinomycosis, and carcinoma, may also be accompanied by the formation of fæcal fistulæ, usually secondarily to the development of an abscess. More rarely, disease of neighbouring structures, *e.g.* tuberculous disease of the bone or disease of other abdominal viscera, may give rise to the formation of an abscess, which by opening spontaneously both into the bowel and on to the surface of the body, results in the development of a fæcal fistula.

For purposes of treatment fæcal fistulæ must be divided into two classes: (1) the purely stercoral, and (2) the pyo-stercoral.

OPERATIONS FOR STERCORAL FISTULÆ

In the least important variety, such as is seen after appendicitis operations or suppurations, and sometimes in herniæ where the gangrene has been of a limited character, the track of the fistula is of some length, and no fusion of the skin and mucous membrane takes place. The track of the fistula is then lined by ordinary granulation-tissue, and spontaneous closure is the rule if sufficient patience be exhibited in the treatment.

Operation. When such fistulæ are short, and open directly upon the surface, healing may sometimes be aided by the formation of a small skin flap which is slid over the opening and fastened in such a manner as to allow free vent to the discharge at the margins. The valvular exit

and obliquity in the course of the track thus attained w taneous closure. This method is well worthy of trial in with slight amount of discharge, when a more extensive pro advisable.

When the fistula is of more important dimensions and f and mucous membrane has taken place at its mouth, a m operation is required.

The preliminary preparation of the patient for any c cedures is of the first importance for their success. Care sho by the previous administration for some days of intestin such as salol (gr. 5–10 t. d. s.), or a culture of lactic acid p ganisms, that the intestinal canal be as aseptic as practicable should be administered thirty-six hours previous to the time and the bowel should be well washed out locally some five the patient comes to the table.

If the small intestine is to be dealt with, and there is re pose that the distal segment of the bowel is contracted, it tempt to dilate this by the passage of bougies for a few d case of the large intestine, a Mitchell Banks's tube may be the same object. If an ascending or transverse colostomy be closed, the administration of large enemata by the nat dilate the lower colon, may help to increase the calibre of th bowel and prepare it for the resumption of its normal fun

Lastly, the preparation of the skin of the field of op matter of much importance and difficulty. When the fi nected with the small intestine, or the cæcum, the power possessed by the fluid intestinal contents needs to be com may be attempted mechanically by the application of a fenes apron, fixed at the margin of the opening by rubber solut the introduction of a tube may allow the greater portion of fluid to be diverted from contact with the surface. The ot protection is by the application of ointments. Hard paraf which is liquefied by heat and applied with a brush, some well, but it has a tendency to crack off and expose the skin this be so, a softer ointment must be thickly applied. In sp deavours, however, the operation has often to be perfo presence of an unsatisfactory condition of the skin, and in employment of an apron fixed to the margin of the incision during the performance of the operation.

The first step, after a thorough cleansing of the surrour ment and the bowel in the immediate neighbourhood, is to circling incision of the skin about a tenth of an inch from th

ula. The opening is then closed by a continuous suture, the ends
ch are left long to give the surgeon control of the bowel.
ongitudinal incision is carried from either end of the oval defect,
means of this the tissues of the abdominal wall are carefully
ed away from the central neck enclosing the fistula. For this
e the incision is first deepened from either end, until the parietal
eum is reached, and the dissection is then carried up to the neck
fistula.
e further procedure varies with the size of the opening, and the
of tissue enclosed in the neck. If these be small, a purse-string
may be passed around them, tied, and the projecting neck cut
If large, a controlling suture should be passed at either ex-
of the closed opening in the bowel, the bowel and peritoneum are
forward, and the wound is protected by gauze. The projecting
then cut away, and a continuous through and through suture is
passed to close the defect in the bowel-wall.
e closed opening is now sunk by a second line of suture passed
n both parietal peritoneum and the bowel-wall itself. In the
owel the line of suture should be transverse to the long axis
bowel; in the large intestine the direction of the line of suture is
er of little moment.
e above operation (Grieg Smith) aims at not opening the peri-
cavity. In many cases, however, this aim is frustrated by acci-
injury to the peritoneum during the process of freeing the neck,
nerally the introduction of the second line of suture may be much
fficiently performed if the peritoneal coat of the bowel is exposed.
efore the earlier stages of the operation have been carried out with-
escape of fæcal matter, it is preferable, after the first line of su-
s closed the opening, to bring the bowel forward from the peri-
cavity, if necessary freeing adhesions, insert some protecting
and complete the suture with the bowel freely exposed. Not only
is plan allow of more satisfactory stitching, but it also avoids the
ty of leaving the bowel firmly anchored to the abdominal wall.
e opening in the bowel having been closed, the defect in the peri-
is repaired, the muscular layers of the abdominal wall are re-
by means of catgut sutures, and the skin wound is sutured with
rm-gut.

OPERATIONS FOR PYO-STERCORAL FISTULÆ

ese fistulæ are unsuitable to the mode of treatment last described,
ne presence of suppuration introduces a new and greater element
to the peritoneal cavity; while union of the external wound

cannot be hoped for unless drainage is provided, which lat prejudices the success of the whole undertaking. Such fi over, are often multiple, and the result of tuberculous or oth disease, in which more radical treatment is desirable.

As a rule, then, in pyo-stercoral fistulæ one of the forms is indicated (see p. 768), and this may require to be supp local treatment of the original focus of disease.

Of a somewhat similar character are the long tortuous fi ling between coils of intestine, such as may pass from the su into the pelvis in cases of tubal or ovarian suppuration, i intestine has been implicated. The greatest patience is dealing with these. The exposure of the opening in the bow and entails great risk of the diffusion of infection with what general abdominal contents are plugged away, while when opening may be in a part of the bowel so fixed by adhesion ing parts and so deeply placed, that suture is impracticable. eral rule, therefore, the treatment of such fistulæ should be providing a free passage for escape of the intestinal conte moting the formation of granulations.

OPERATIONS FOR ARTIFICIAL ANUS

This condition, in which the great majority of the en fæces is passed by the adventitious opening, is usually t surgical procedures, although it occasionally follows extensi of the bowel in herniæ, or as a result of gangrenous cellulit

Operation. The methods available for the closure ostomy opening differ with the form of operation which h marily employed. In many cases in which a temporary v been required, the lateral wall alone has been involved. Su possess rather the character of a fæcal fistula, than those of anus, and the treatment of them differs merely in degree f ready described.

When the whole calibre of the bowel has been involve excision or loss of substance from sloughing, an additiona closure is offered by the ' spur ' furnished by the projection c teric border. When the spur is of moderate dimensions, esp large intestine, its prominence may be gradually lessened by of Mitchell Banks. To the centre of a piece of large rubber 4 inches in length a strong string is attached. The tube th is inserted into the distal segment of the bowel through anus, and passed downwards until entirely within the exter

By means of forceps and the controlling string the tube is now drawn upwards into the proximal limb of the bowel until the string is in the centre of the opening. Lastly, the string is tied around a pad, or a second piece of tubing laid on the abdominal wall across the anus, and parallel with the course of the bowel beneath. In some cases the tube is with difficulty retained; in others it may be kept in position for days and the whole intestinal contents diverted into their proper channel. This method is extremely useful as a test of the capability of the bowel to resume its function, when the closure of a temporary artificial anus for such diseases as ulcerative colitis is contemplated.

Should this preliminary measure prove successful, not only will the projection of the spur be lessened, but the adventitious anus will also decrease in size, and a simple plastic operation may suffice.

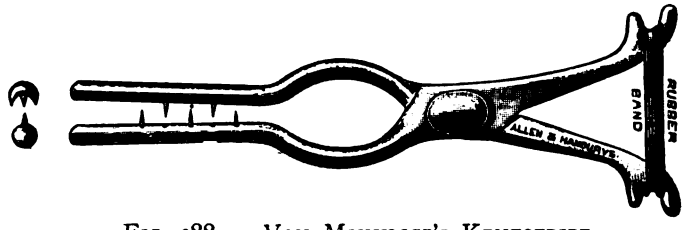


FIG. 388. VON MIKULICZ'S KENTOTRIBE.

In more complete cases the method of closure differs in the case of the small and large intestine.

In the small intestine, if the diversion has been complete, and any considerable time has elapsed since the anus was established, a great incongruence usually develops between the upper and lower limbs of the bowel. Hence, not only is an enterectomy needed, but a considerable portion of the lower segment may require to be resected. (For methods of meeting the difficulties of incongruence in size, see p. 724.) Resection of the ends and a typical axial union is the preferable method in all such cases.

A type enterectomy is less often desirable in the large intestine, since the dangers of the procedure from the possibilities of operative infection are greater, while the persistence of a fæcal fistula in the event of incomplete success is a matter of far less importance.

Two methods of overcoming the difficulty dependent upon the existence of the 'spur' are available: (1) destruction of the spur by pressure with an instrument of the nature of Dupuytren's enterotome, or von Mikulicz's kentotribe; (2) the establishment of a lateral anastomosis at a distance from the artificial anus, which latter is closed by one of the plastic methods employed in fæcal fistulæ.

Of these methods the latter is the more rapid, and or often preferable. The former involves a considerable e time, but in the hands of von Mikulicz has proved itself rer

When it is desired to establish a lateral anastomosis as to a plastic operation for the closure of the artificial anus, t details to be taken into account are the cleansing of the exclusion of the anus from the field of operation by pluggi of the bowel, and by careful sealing with collodion during ance of the operation.

When it is intended to employ an enterotome, the m Mikulicz is the best. At the time of the primary operation of the bowel are sutured side by side for some 3 or 4 in to ensure their parallel arrangement and a certain degre prior to the application of the enterotome. The enterotom exerts its pressure by means of an elastic band applied roun The pressure is moderate, thus 6–8 days elapse before t separates, instead of the 3–4 necessary when the enteroto tren is employed. Only ¾–1 inch of the tissues are inclu

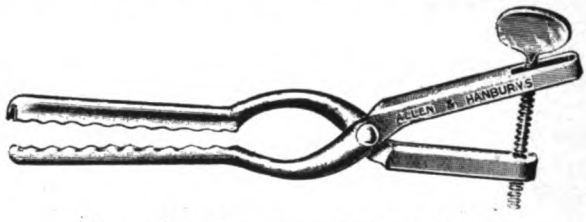


Fig. 389. Dupuytren's Enterotome.

and th margin o left to the destroyed cation o ligature. mination sufficient spur ha stroyed to ensure a free passage is made by digital exa when this has been effected the anus is closed by a plastic

F. Krauss has modified the kentotribe of Mikulicz, in s that only the deeper part of the spur is perforated. Thus, tomosis is established from within the bowel, and the ex is then closed as in the other procedures.

The treatment of the intestino-vesical and intestino-v is referred to under the headings of colostomy (p. 696) an tomosis and exclusion (p. 768). It is rare that such suitable for direct treatment unless due to simple inflamm Fistulous communications between neighbouring coils of in instance between jejunum and rectum, may occasionally ment, and for such an abdominal exploration is the only adhering portions of intestine may be able to be separated ings closed by suture. If this prove impossible. as in the c

of the intestine, the small bowel must be clamped and divided above and below the opening, and an axial union effected between the extremities. The two ends of the portion of small bowel communicating with the large are then closed, and a total exclusion is made.

Prognosis and results. The minor operations for the closure of fæcal fistulæ entail little danger when carefully performed. The operations for the closure of an artificial anus are more serious, but the gravity in great part depends upon the nature of the cases for which they are needed.

Resection of the small bowel for artificial anus has been followed by good results. As long ago as 1885, when the writer, on the occasion of performing the first successful resection of the small intestine in this country, collected some Continental results (*St. Thomas's Hosp. Rep.*, vol. xiii, p. 181), the mortality was shown to be 38.4%, but it is now far lower.

Resections of the large intestine have been less favourable, but the results of short-circuiting and the use of the enterotome have been good. The closure of an artificial anus made for the treatment of ulcerative colitis is especially attended with risk (see p. 695).

CHAPTER XIV

OPERATIONS UPON THE VERMIFORM APP

APPENDICECTOMY

INDICATIONS FOR THE OPERATION

(i) **Acute appendicitis.** Acute inflammation of the a most important indication, is often the most difficult to insis the surgeon has not always a free hand. It is necessary, discriminate between cases in which an operation is indis those in which it is merely expedient or justifiable. Thu removal of an appendix in a condition of acute catarrhal may be fully justified, yet in the large majority of instan be said to be absolutely necessary; while, on the other hand ditions, such as acute gangrene or gross perforation, dem ate operation if a fatal issue, widespread infection, or th complication of an abscess is to be avoided. The judgmen jority of American surgeons is that immediate operation time the inflammation of the appendix is recognized is not o but will conserve the best interests of the patient.

Time at which to operate. Operations for acute appe require to be undertaken in three definite stages of the di

1. *Early.* These operations are performed during the four to forty-eight hours after the commencement of the such the formidable complications due to severe or extensi infection are rarely met with, and the 'early operation' i most successful and satisfactory in abdominal surgery.

2. *Intermediate.* Operations in this stage are design tions of necessity'. They are performed on from the thir day, and form the most dangerous and least satisfactory whole series. General or very extensive peritoneal infecti local spreading infection is the condition which commonly dealt with. The indications for operation have often supe the so-called 'latent period', and the experience of such ca more to popularize the 'early operation' than any records the performance of the early operation itself.

3. *Late.* Operations performed from the sixth day onv

ıally demanded by the occurrence of symptoms indicating a slow ing infection, or when severe symptoms indicate that a secondary on has spread from a previously localized infection. This se- ess places them between the early and intermediate operations in .

) **Recurring appendicitis.** Since the early advocacy of appendi- y for this condition by Treves, this indication has been the one ommonly acted upon. Such operations, commonly spoken of as al operations,' can be performed with little risk to the patient, en very easy of accomplishment, and, it must be owned, have been ed with a greater degree of frequency than necessity warrants. f much importance that the operation should not be performed in f uncomplicated mucous colitis or enterospasm, since such opera- re responsible for the greater number of the failures to relieve g symptoms, and bring the procedure into discredit.

ications. Certain questions need to be considered. First, is a attack allowed to pass from the acute stage to be recognized as cation? The majority of surgeons feel that an appendix that ce shown evidence of infection should be removed, although this o imperative if the attack has been one without fever and without evidence of peritoneal irritation.

a second attack occurs, even if slight, no doubt exists as to the ility of an operation. The risks of any subsequent seizure are calculable; thus, after numerous insignificant attacks, which have essitated more than a day's rest in bed, a seizure of the most grade may ensue, and place the life of the patient in imminent Again, the mere inconvenience attending the recurrent interrup- health and occupation is in itself a strong indication for removal ause of the attacks, when the small risk to life or health involved peration is considered.

) **Chronic appendicitis.** This is an important indication, only le from the last on the ground that the symptoms of the disease, larly those dependent on auto-intoxication, are more or less con- In this condition, as in that of rapidly recurring attacks, the good f removal of the appendix is most striking.

) **The previous occurrence of a local abscess.** In every in- where possible without too great danger to the patient the ap- should be removed, even in the presence of a local abscess. If, r, owing to the inexperience of the operator, to the gravity of ient's general condition, or to difficulty in finding the appendix, not possible, it is advisable at a subsequent operation to remove pendix or what part of it remains. This should be done if pos-

sible before the patient leaves the hospital, since he may
he is discharged. In such a condition after the infection
in three to four weeks, an incision is made directly down
of the appendix and its remains sought for. In the majority
it will be found that a considerable part of the appendix
though at times cicatrization or destruction or atrophy of th
have obliterated it.

With regard to the difficulty of such operations it is n
some eight or ten weeks are allowed to elapse before p
remove the appendix, how more or less completely periton
may have disappeared. The most frequent exception to th
ment is found with a retrocæcal position of the appendix
allowed that in this instance very formidable difficulties
with, and for this reason the rectus-sheath incision (see p.
preferred in dealing with such cases as affording greater p
easy extension of the wound.

(v) **Abnormal conditions of the mesentery of the ap**
most common of these is the sharp bend in the appendix d
congenital peculiarity, or more frequently to mesenteritis,
an intramesenteric perforation. In either case attacks of c
mon, and more serious inflammatory attacks due to reten
matter in the distal part of the organ are to be feared.

Occasionally an abnormally long mesentery allows a to
vulus; this has been known to give rise to gangrene of
also to well-marked recurrent attacks of appendicitis. It
indication for appendicectomy, but more often discovered
than diagnosed beforehand.

(vi) **The presence of a stercolith or foreign body**
pendix.

(vii) **Appendicitis accompanying or complicating m**
This indication is one of the most difficult to lay down w

In some instances mucous colitis is undoubtedly second
dicitis, and in such appendicectomy suffices to bring about
cially if followed by careful after-supervision as to diet a
of the bowels.

In others the signs of appendicitis are only a part of th
eral colitis, and removal of the appendix at the most affor
porary relief from the symptoms.

The discrimination of the two conditions is one of gr
while the discredit which obtains to errors in the choice
operation renders the greatest care necessary.

Speaking generally, the free passage of mucus in th

definite contra-indication to the performance of appendicectomy, except in the presence of gross local signs of disease of the organ.

(viii) **Malignant disease of the appendix.** The actual frequency of this condition is a matter of some uncertainty, since it has been discovered only as a result of operation or post-mortem examination. Rolleston and Jones (*Trans. Med. & Chir. Soc.*, 1906, vol. lxxxix, p. 125) have collected 33 instances in which primary malignant disease was found in appendices removed during life; 4 of these operations were undertaken for the relief of symptoms referable to the female pelvic viscera, 2 in consequence of the existence of fistulæ, and 27 for symptoms pointing to appendicitis in one form or another. As an indication for operation, the uncertainty or impossibility of diagnosis robs the condition of much importance. The growths are usually carcinomata, but cases of sarcoma and endothelioma have been reported.

(ix) **Tuberculous disease.** This is not often localized to the appendix, and removal of the latter has not been attended by very gratifying results. In connexion with the operation the beneficial effect of the mere opening of the abdomen for tuberculous conditions is to be borne in mind. Should advanced tuberculous disease of other organs exist, the operation of appendicectomy is contra-indicated, since tuberculous disease of the appendix is rarely followed by the acute complications common in the pyogenic infections.

(x) **Actinomycosis.** It is uncommon for actinomycotic infections to be discovered until the cæcum or surrounding parts have become invaded by the disease; hence the disease is rarely to be regarded as an indication for a simple appendicectomy.

METHODS OF OPERATION

The incision. One of two methods of incision of the abdominal wall suffices for the removal of the appendix in most cases.

McBurney's incision. This method is the most suitable for interval operations where there is no reason to suspect any unusual difficulty in the removal of the appendix. The incision gives good access to the field of operation, hence is greatly superior to the small opening by division of muscle where the whole process of detection and separation of the appendix needs to be accomplished by aid of the sense of touch and out of the sight of the surgeon. The resulting cicatrix is also stronger and less likely to form the seat of a ventral hernia.

An oblique incision about 3 inches in length, but varying with the size or degree of obesity of the patient, is made, commencing about 1 inch above a line drawn from the umbilicus to the anterior superior iliac spine, and crossing the line about 1½ inches from the latter process,

and is carried through the skin and subcutaneous fat. A
usually needs to be secured at the upper angle of the wound
lower end of the superficial epigastric vessels may be divide
390).

The fibres of the aponeurosis of the exposed external ob
are separated by an incision running parallel to their cou

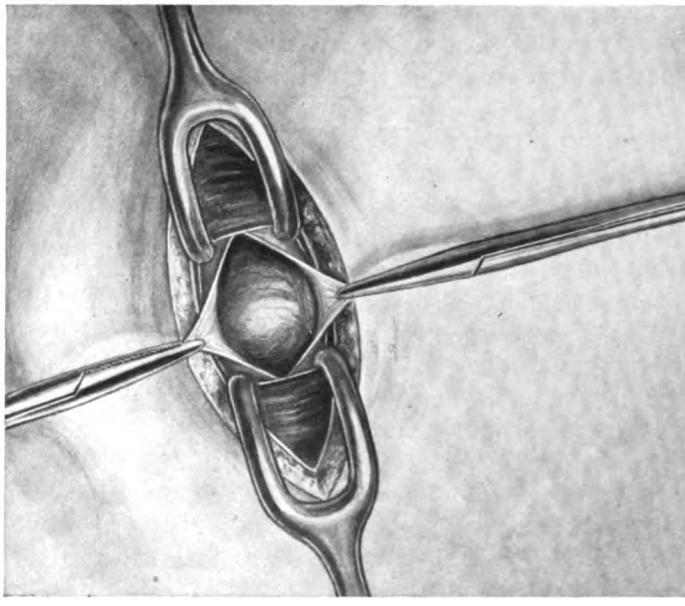


FIG. 390. MCBURNEY'S INCISION. The divided aponeurosis of
oblique muscle is indicated by the white line. Retractors control
margins of the internal oblique and transversalis muscles. The pe
gins are held in forceps.

fibres of the internal oblique muscle are exposed, running in
at right angles with those of the overlying aponeurosis. B
a retractor and blunt dissector the fibres of the muscle at
more obvious intersections are separated (that containing th
branch of the ilio-inguinal should be avoided) and drawn a
ing those of the transversalis and a portion of the anterior
of that muscle. The fibres of the transversalis are simi
apart, and the transversalis fascia exposed. Traction by a
tractors may now be employed to obtain a sufficiently wi
Some small branches of the deep circumflex iliac artery may
need to be secured, but hæmorrhage is minimal.

If a pair of slightly hooked retractors be employed, as

the floor of the wound may be raised by an assistant, the transversalis fascia divided in the line of the external incision, and the peritoneum carefully opened and incised to a corresponding extent. The two edges of the cut peritoneum being secured with pairs of artery forceps, the field of operation is now freely exposed.

If during the subsequent stages of the operation the space provided by McBurney's incision should prove insufficient, it may be increased by division of the anterior aponeurosis of the transversalis carried onwards into the sheath of the rectus muscle. In prolonging the incision the fibres of the rectus may be displaced inwards, and the opening continued nearly to the middle line, care being taken to spare the deep epigastric vessels, if possible, by displacing them with the muscle.

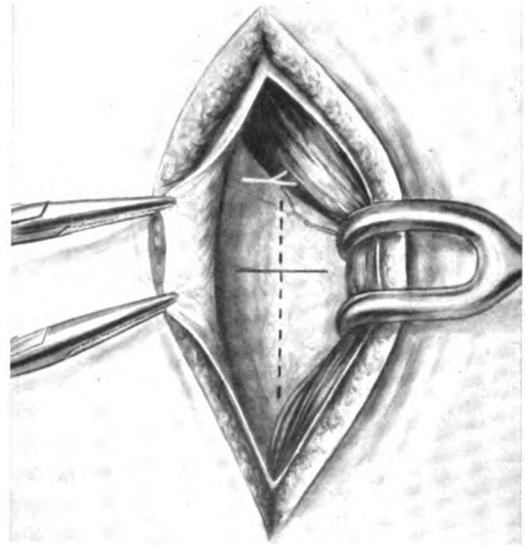


FIG. 391. RECTUS-SHEATH INCISION. The rectus sheath has been opened, and the muscle and epigastric vessels retracted inwards. The posterior layer of the rectus sheath remains undivided. The dotted line indicates the ordinary incision, the firm line the direction of the transverse.

The rectus-sheath incision. This incision is suited to all appendicectomy operations.

While drainage is more easily secured through this incision, the danger of secondary hæmorrhage from the deep epigastric is such that many surgeons prefer drainage through McBurney's incision rather than through the right rectus. The right rectus incision does permit one to explore more widely in case of doubt as to the origin of the disease, but where suppuration is distinctly recognized in the region of the appendix before operation, the McBurney incision is used by the majority of surgeons. It should be borne in mind, however, that if the

right rectus incision is used and secondary hæmorrhage after some days, immediately after the patient has rec the shock of the hæmorrhage, the wound having been porarily to control it, the surgeon should proceed to a the deep epigastric artery and not await further hæmorrh wounds.

The rectus-sheath incision has the disadvantages of directly situated over the root of the appendix, hence som gree of traction on the outer margin of the wound may be area of the abdomen occupied by the small intestine is mor croached upon, and a part of the nerve-supply of the rect gered. These minor defects are, however, to be met by c more than fully counterbalanced in suitable cases by the a the incision set forth above.

As originally devised by Battle, the incision through subcutaneous tissue is an oblique one, about 4 inches in centre of the incision bisects at right angles the line from t to the anterior superior iliac spine at its mid-point, and it li right linea semilunaris.

A vertical incision over the outer third of the rectus length, and commencing below the level of the umbilicus, s well. Some small subcutaneous vessels only need to be ta artery forceps (see Fig. 391).

The sheath of the rectus is divided for the whole length o this structure being arranged in two distinct layers in at lea two-thirds of the wound. The outer margin of the rect exposed by a few touches of the knife, the open sheath drav the margin of the muscle freed and drawn inwards, the de artery being freed if necessary and retracted together with One transverse arterial branch usually needs division, and t of the twelfth intercostal nerve are met with. The lower n one, is usually divided; the upper large branch must be possible.

The exposed posterior layer of the sheath, the fascia t and the peritoneum are successively incised vertically, and opened.

The outer margin of the wound is now freely retracte necessary exploration, the area of operation is limited by the of protecting plugs as in the other incision.

When no great amount of space is required the incision rior layer of the rectus sheath may be made transversely so risk to the nerves to the rectus muscle, but this method com

chief merits of the incision, *viz.* the capacity for prolongation and uent free access to the abdominal cavity.

THE OPERATION IN QUIESCENT INTERVALS

Burney's incision is generally preferable. The abdomen being , search for the appendix is made. The portion of bowel exposed incision is usually the ascending colon, 2 or 3 inches above the . When previous attacks of appendicitis have been accompanied itoneal inflammation, adhesions often exist between this portion colon and the anterior abdominal wall. Due care must be ob- in the separation of these, and the possibility of their existence e borne in mind in the preliminary incision of the peritoneum. istence of permanent adhesions in this position is of interest as ing the increased disposition to their formation when a fixed of bowel is concerned, since the more mobile cæcum is rarely nt anteriorly, although often fixed deeply by occlusion of the fold toneum passing from its deep aspect to the iliac fossa.

e appendix when enlarged, or if free, is generally readily detected pation; if free, it may be at once drawn up into the wound; if nt, it may often be easily freed by careful manipulation with the when this is not the case, dissection may be needed.

e appendix discovered, and if possible delivered together with the nd of the cæcum, plugs are introduced downwards to the entry e pelvis, inwards to protect the small intestine, upwards on the e of the colon, and into the groove between the outer wall of the nd the abdominal wall. The ends of these plugs, where brought rotect the external wound. In this way all chance of internal ination of infection is avoided; a piece of gauze is placed over the d cæcum, and the removal of the appendix is proceeded with.

nen difficulty arises in the detection of the appendix, search is on the following lines. The anterior longitudinal band on the e of the cæcum is followed to its commencement, which procedure rough indication of the position of the base.

tention is then given to the more common positions.

The appendix may project forwards. In these instances the distal n is usually sharply bent, and this and the tip are often surrounded herent omentum. The combined mass is usually readily detected ital exploration (indeed a previous conclusion as to this position ave been made from external examination), but the mass is usually ut of sight to the inner side of the wound by adhesions to the or abdominal wall which require to be separated.

The appendix may lie at the pelvic brim, often then closely asso-

ciated with the under surface of the mesentery; or it may lie deeply in the pelvis, commonly adherent to the pelvic wall, less frequently to the bladder in either sex, while in the female it may be intimately connected with the uterine appendages.

3. *The appendix may be retrocæcal.* In this case it may possibly be palpable through the walls of the cæcum. The retrocæcal appendix is one of the most troublesome to remove, as very firm adhesions often exist between the posterior wall of the cæcum and the iliac fossa. When the latter are separated the base of the reflection of the peritoneum is generally broken, and the rectrocolic subperitoneal space is opened up, and this may need to be extensively disturbed in the removal of the appendix if long. In such instances especial care is needed to avoid infection, and if there is reason to think this has occurred it is wise to provide drainage.

When the appendix lies to the outer side of the cæcum, trouble may also be met with. The position in itself is apt to indicate a long appendix, and in fact such is often found, the tip of the organ even extending as far upwards as the under surface of the liver. It is in these cases that the McBurney incision is least convenient, and may require considerable extension to allow of the necessary manipulations.

The freeing of an adherent appendix is usually much facilitated by delivery of the cæcum from the wound, and entrusting it to the hands of an assistant to be held up after carefully wrapping it in gauze.

Other difficulties in tracing the appendix. Other difficulties may arise from the condition of the tube itself. The ordinary bulbous appendix resulting from the retention of secretion or muco-pus beyond a stricture gives little trouble, except that needed to avoid the bursting of the structure during removal. In some instances the appendix may be practically divided, the distal portion having become atrophic instead of dilated, and this portion may be easily overlooked. In extreme instances of the latter condition the organ may be represented by its base and extreme tip only, the central portion forming a more or less tenuous cord. This cord, although with difficulty palpated by pressure against the abdominal wall, is generally to be traced as a band by traction on the cæcum. Such appendices are usually produced by repeated attacks of inflammation unaccompanied by suppuration. When the tip is attached to a neighbouring free viscus the band is a source of possible future intestinal obstruction; hence this reason for complete removal is to be remembered in addition to the possibility of the retention of secretion in the separated tip (see p. 827).

Difficulty in delivering the appendix more frequently depends on shortening and distortion of the meso-appendix than on surrounding

adhesions. This condition is most common subsequently to attacks of appendicitis in the course of which perforation has occurred between the layers of the mesentery. In such cases a firm band of hard tissue usually gives rise to very firm fixation, and it must be remembered that the division of this tissue after at all recent attacks involves the laying open of infected tissues, and is consequently a cause of risk which may raise the question of the necessity of drainage. When the characteristic yellow areas of infected tissue in a state of coagulation necrosis are met with, it is advisable to snip them carefully away, and possibly to apply an antiseptic to the area under supervision.

Surrounding adhesions having been separated, the mesentery of the appendix is divided. If the mesentery be of sufficient length a single ligature is drawn by an aneurysm needle or pair of artery forceps through an opening in the bloodless area found near the base of the appendix and tied. A small vessel at the junction of the cæcum, which is not included, may generally be clamped for the moment, and is eventually controlled by the purse-string suture employed in sinking the appendix. When the mesentery is short and rigid it is better divided in sections after the previous application of artery forceps, and two or three ligatures may be required. It is convenient to keep the ligatures long until all have been tied, as control is thus retained should the hæmorrhage be not completely stopped.

Although the usual and most satisfactory procedure is to free the appendix prior to its removal, yet in some instances the density and extent of the adhesions present render this difficult or impossible. Again, the process may demand so free interference with the cæcum as to involve much risk of damage to the integrity or vitality of the organ, as well as opportunity for the spread of infection. Under these circumstances it is often preferable to define the base of the appendix, and after dividing it, to dissect or strip out the organ from its base. If this method be decided upon, it is convenient to insert two mattress sutures into the cæcal wall on either side of the base of the appendix, prior to its division and ligature. In this way a safe command of the divided base is retained when that depending on traction of the appendix itself is removed, and no difficulty occurs in drawing over a proper covering of cæcal wall to sink the stump. The separated appendix, the base of which has been secured by a clamp or a provisional ligature, is now held up and the dissection or separation commenced from the proximal end.

When the appendix is embedded in adhesions of such density and extent that its safe separation appears impracticable, Kelly's method may be employed. The appendix is freed at its base, a longitudinal incision down to the internal muscular coat or submucosa is made over

it, and the tube is stripped out of its bed by gentle traction and blunt dissection.

Removal of the appendix. Previous to this step, the cæcum, or exposed bowel, is covered with some layers of gauze. Much ingenuity has been expended on devices for the actual separation of the appendix from the cæcum, the main objects of all being the avoidance of immediate infection from the stump, and the provision of a firm cicatrix to cover it in.

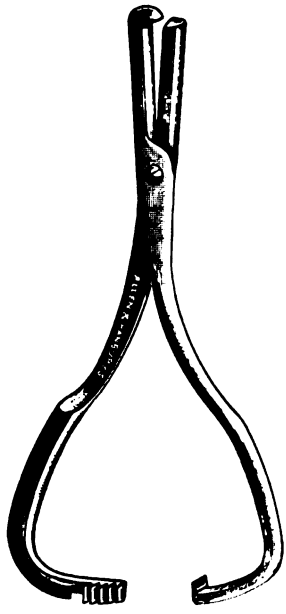


FIG. 392. KOCHER'S APPENDIX CLAMP. *Corner's modification.*

The most satisfactory methods are those in which the lumen is obliterated previously to section of the appendix. This end may be obtained by employing a special crushing clamp such as Kocher's (see Fig. 392). If the clamp be used an artery forceps is applied to the distal part of the appendix to prevent any escape of contents when it is divided. The edge of the thin ribbon-like crushed portion exposed on the upper surface of the instrument is rubbed over with a probe dipped in pure carbolic acid, the excess removed with a dry sponge, the clamp removed, and the base of the crushed portion is ligatured.

A purse-string suture is inserted around the stump, and the latter sunk. When there is any difficulty in raising the cæcum, or if it be held forward with tension, it is desirable to insert either the purse-string or two mattress sutures prior to the separation of the appendix, and in this way trouble in introducing the sutures in the depth of the wound is avoided.

When the clamp is not preferred the same crushing method can be attained by the use of an ordinary pair of artery forceps. The best method consists in the application of three pairs side by side (Halsted). The middle pair is first removed, and the appendix divided in the groove between the two remaining ones. The distal clamp serves to prevent the escape of contents from the distal portion of the appendix.

When the base of the appendix is inflamed and thickened by either acute or chronic disease, the crushing method is inapplicable, since the clamp is apt to cut through the tissues entirely, the infiltrated and brittle mucous membrane giving way together with the serous and muscular coats.

A flap method is then desirable, and the coat-sleeve circular amputa-

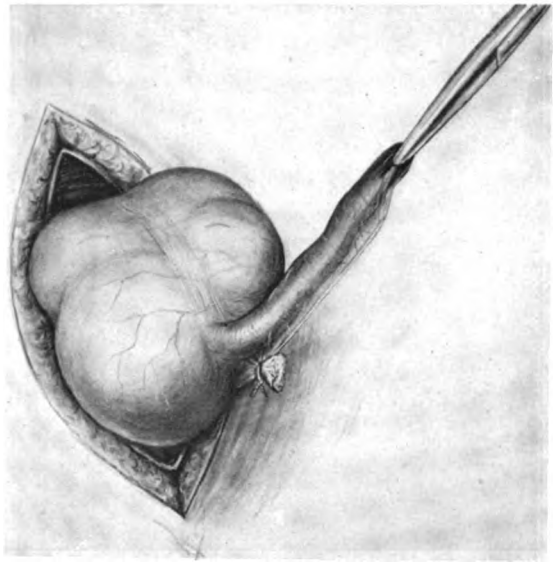


FIG. 393. THE CÆCUM DELIVERED. The appendix has been freed from its mesentery, which has been tied.

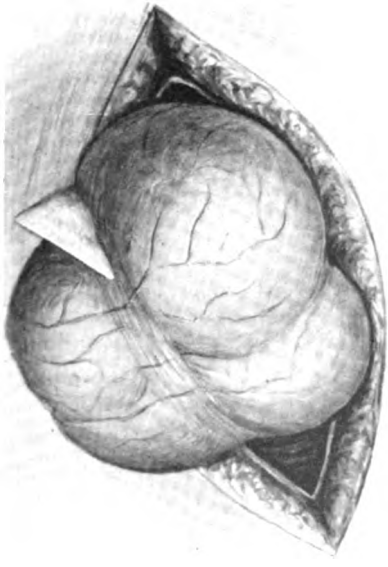


FIG. 394. THE APPENDIX REMOVED. The stump has been freed from the clamp.

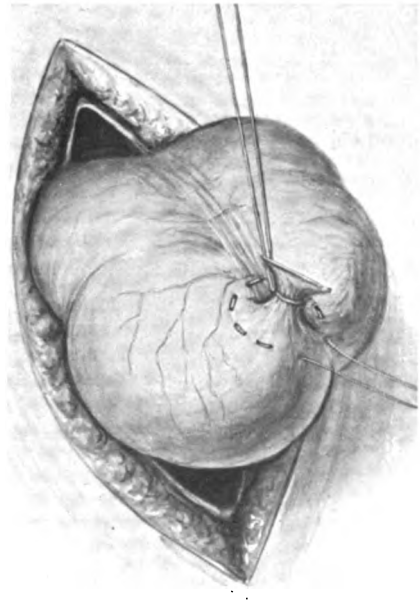


FIG. 395. THE APPENDIX STUMP LIGATURED, AND A PURSE-STRING SUTURE INTRODUCED.

tion of Barker may be employed. The knife is carried by a series of light sweeps through the serous and muscular coats until the pale mucous membrane is exposed; with a blunt dissector, the cuff is separated and turned upwards, a ligature is applied to the mucous membrane, and, after the application of a retaining forceps on the distal side of the ligature, the appendix is removed.

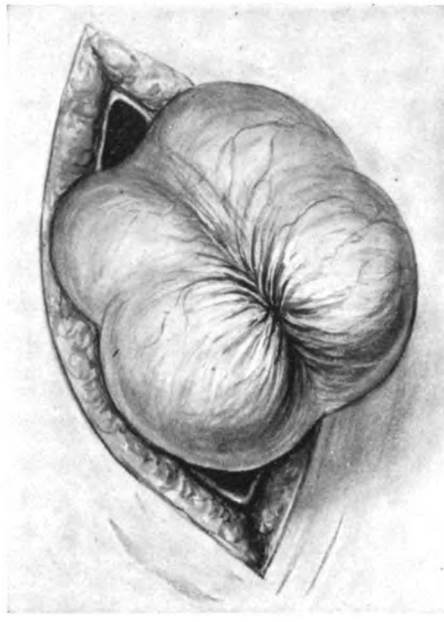


FIG. 396. THE APPENDIX SUNK, AND THE PURSE-STRING SUTURE TIGHTENED AND KNOTTED.

Some risk may arise in the removal of a so-called hydro-appendix, which may be a tightly distended sac, from the possible escape of fluid. Under these circumstances it is often better, after thoroughly protecting the subjacent area, to puncture the appendix and remove the fluid, when the remaining steps can be completed as before.

When the suturing of the stump is completed, the protecting plugs are removed and the closure of the wound is proceeded with. The peritoneum is closed with interrupted silk stitches. The separated muscle fibres are brought into position, and if necessary, which is rarely the case, unless the type wound has been extended, secured by one or more loosely drawn catgut sutures. The external oblique aponeurosis needs three catgut sutures; these should be so passed as to draw the upper margin slightly over the anterior surface of the lower in order to ensure a firm union. With this object the needle, after piercing the upper segment, is entered on the surface of the lower segment and brought out in the same manner as in introducing a Lembert's suture in the intestine. The closure of the wound is now completed by the introduction of a sufficient number of cutaneous stitches.

THE OPERATION IN ACUTE APPENDICITIS

In really 'early' intervention this procedure is not usually accompanied by the serious difficulties which may attend 'interval' operations, but the conditions met with in the intermediate and late stages vary con-

bly and great judgment is required in the treatment of individual

n opening the abdomen free fluid may at once escape, rarely clear, often of a gruel-like character, or so-called sero-pus. This should once absorbed by dry gauze plugs, care being taken not to unneces- disturb the immediate region of the appendix, especially if the on is not offensive in odour, since during the first forty-eight hours uid may be mainly reactionary effusion, and not necessarily highly ive. Plugs to protect the main abdominal cavity are introduced, e search for the appendix carried out on the same lines as has been bed in the previous operation.

no gross perforation has occurred, the appendix is usually readily ht to the surface, exhibiting signs of acute inflammation, some- covered with lymph.

nder these circumstances it is removed and dealt with as in the al operation, but it is important to bear in mind that the walls appendix are often in such a condition as to render the use of the ng clamp dangerous.

a gross perforation has occurred the immediate neighbourhood upied by stinking pus, sometimes mingled with fæces or escaped liths, and to a certain extent localized. Perforations vary in posi- A frequent and happy direction is into the meso-appendix. Under circumstances peritoneal infection is often very limited in extent. perforation be in a free portion, the tip or a bend in the organ ommon site. If the appendix be pelvic in position, widespread peritonitis is usually present; if retrocæcal or at the outer border cæcum, infection is less extensive, but more difficult to deal with. us is to be carefully sponged away, and then the appendix is for and freed. This stage of the procedure may be fraught with difficulty; the appendix may be very adherent, possibly as the of both old and recent adhesions, while the organ itself is softened equently more or less broken at the site of the perforation. The tion must be accompanied with all due care, but it is often neces- carry it out quickly, and the elaborate precautions employed in al operations to avoid infection are unnecessary under the circum- s. If the cæcum be very adherent it is not advisable to try and leliver it, since this step entails risk to the bowel itself, and also opening up and infecting the loose tissue of the retrocolic space. base of the appendix cannot be readily brought up, controlling s should be passed into the cæcal wall, an attempt made to fashion toneal flap from the peritoneal and muscular coats, the mucous gatured, and the organ removed. The controlling sutures pre-

viously introduced into the cæcal wall may now be employed to sink the stump.

In some cases the condition of the appendix, or its situation, may be such that a simple ligature of its base *en masse* is the only practical alternative.

When the appendix is in a state of general necrosis from gangrenous cellulitis, its removal is often easy, since adhesions are slight or absent; the danger in such cases is the extension of the infective process to the wall of the cæcum, or even to the ileum.

The appendix having been removed, the area of operation is carefully cleansed; if bowel has been delivered this may be washed over with normal saline, but the interior of the abdomen is better treated with dry gauze plugs only. The difficulty at this stage of the operation increases with the area of the peritoneal cavity involved; when not more than a quarter is invaded, the whole manipulations are carried out from the primary incision; if the condition be one of widespread diffuse peritoneal infection, secondary incision of the left side of the abdomen is sometimes advisable, both for immediate convenience and for the purpose of future drainage.

The question of drainage must be decided on the conditions present. When the appendicitis is of the acute catarrhal type and the effusion sweet, no drainage is required. The same may be the case even in acute gangrene, if no gross perforation has occurred, and the operation is performed during the first twenty-four or thirty-six hours. More frequently wide infection has occurred, and then drainage must be provided by the introduction of tubes and plugs. It is generally advisable to introduce two tubes, one into the pelvis, and the second into the iliac fossa in the neighbourhood of the base of the appendix, a long plug being introduced around and between the two tubes. Drainage by plugs alone is unsatisfactory, since when once removed they cannot be satisfactorily replaced. The removal of the plug should be commenced on the third day, or the whole may be drawn out at the same time, a smaller plug being reintroduced to ensure sufficient gaping of the external wound.

The arrangements for drainage having been completed, the external wound is closed to a sufficient degree not to interfere with the outlet of discharge, or if drainage has been unnecessary, the wound is closed in layers in the ordinary way, silk stitches being used for the peritoneum, catgut for the rectus sheath, and silkworm-gut for the skin.

COMPLICATIONS AND SEQUELÆ OF APPENDICECTOMY

The frequency of occurrence of complications after the operation of appendicectomy varies in accordance with the stage of the disease in which it has been undertaken. Thus, complications are rare after operations performed during the first forty-eight hours, and in those undertaken during a quiescent interval. They are numerous and serious in operations performed in the intermediate period, in consequence of the more serious conditions induced by the progress of the disease.

The operation may fail to give relief from the symptoms of general infection. This is usually the result of too late interference and offers little scope for further measures. The special want of resistance exhibited by some patients must also be credited to the operation in some cases.

If the abdomen has been closed, the wound must be reopened and free drainage established. Other measures to be considered are continuous rectal injections of saline; or when collapse occurs, intravenous infusion, as much as 2 or 3 pints being introduced.

(A discussion of the treatment of general peritonitis will be found under that head in later chapters.)

Subcutaneous injection in the flanks of anti-colon bacillus serum may be tried. 30 cubic centimetres should be given as a first dose, followed by 20 cubic centimetres at the end of the first twenty-four hours. The writer believes that great benefit results from this method of treatment. In any case the injections are followed by fall in temperature, decrease of pulse rate, easier respiration, greater ease, and frequently sleep. Injections of 10 to 20 cubic centimetres may be given every other day. Observation has shown that the use of the serum appears to further the process of localization in addition to its effect on the general condition, and even in cases which do not recover it definitely retards the progress of the disease (Makins and Sargent, *Trans. Clin. Soc.*, 1907, vol. xl, p. 146).

Spreading suppuration. The operation may fail to arrest the tendency of the process to extend. In some instances the extension may lead to a rapidly fatal issue; in others the patient may only succumb at the end of weeks, more rarely even months, after the operation. The treatment of this condition is identical with that of the last, the provision of secondary outlets for the suppuration being the main distinctive feature.

Infection and progressive suppuration and sloughing of the muscles of the abdominal wall. This distressing complication of operation in the acute stages is fortunately rare, but it may necessitate numerous inci-

sions, and only terminate favourably after the destruction of large areas, even nearly half of the entire muscular element of the abdominal wall.

The formation of secondary abscesses after operations in the acute stages. The abscesses vary in degree of contiguity, the most common being, in relative order of frequency, pelvic, left iliac, right lumbar, subdiaphragmatic, subhepatic, and perisplenic. The position in each case is likely to be dependent on the original localization of the appendix. Early incision is indicated in either position.

More rarely, suppurations may be more distant; thus in the pleura or lung. Such may occur independently of subdiaphragmatic abscesses, and may be remote complications occurring weeks or months after the original operation.

In operations performed during quiescent intervals secondary suppuration is rare, the most important forms being the stitch abscess and suppuration of blood-clot in the abdominal wall.

In a small proportion of interval operations abscesses may form at the end of the first week in connexion with the appendix stump, the area of operation, or in connexion with a small residual abscess cavity which was disturbed during the operation. Such abscesses require the provision of a free outlet and the maintenance of a short period of drainage. Many so-called stitch suppurations are really of this nature.

Pylephlebitis and pyæmia.

Fæcal fistula. This sequela may result from various causes. (*a*) Insufficient closure of the appendix stump, often unavoidable where the latter is much thickened and inflamed, and the cæcum fixed. (*b*) Spread of gangrenous cellulitis to the bowel-wall after the removal of the appendix. (*c*) Damage to the bowel during the performance of the operation, either in the separation of the adhesions, or from the softened condition of the bowel-wall. In either of the latter circumstances the ileum may be the seat of the fistula. The strong tendency to rapid spontaneous closure of these fistulæ, even when a very large proportion of the contents of the small intestine escapes, must be borne in mind, and as a rule many weeks or even months should be allowed to elapse before any operation for their closure is undertaken (see p. 773).

Fistulous communications between the abscess cavity and the bladder, sloughing of the right ureter, or openings into the rectum or vagina.

All of these, except the ureteral complications, are unlikely to need special treatment, since they heal spontaneously. The unimportance of the bladder complication is very striking, the amount of cystitis produced being slight, in some cases *nil;* and spontaneous closure is the rule. Injury to the ureter may demand a plastic operation, or possibly the removal of the kidney.

Intestinal obstruction. This complication is most common in connexion with localized appendical abscesses, but may occur after appendicectomy operations where suppuration has occurred. It is most frequently due to kinking of adherent small bowel, and is readily relieved by operation. Rarely, large inflammatory masses may form in the pelvis, and give rise to obstruction of the large intestine. In such a case a temporary colostomy has even been needed.

Permanent adhesions may give rise to incomplete obstruction as a remote sequela, such obstruction occasionally needing relief by abdominal section and freeing of the implicated bowel.

Pulmonary complications. These form a considerable proportion of those observed after either operations in the acute, intermediate, or quiescent periods. The part played by the anæsthetic in their production is difficult to determine, but there is no doubt that a considerable proportion of the cases of bronchitis and pneumonia are to be ascribed to this cause. Pleurisy is more commonly the result of direct extension of the inflammation, while pulmonary embolism must be directly connected with thrombosis of the veins of the area of the operation itself.

Femoral thrombosis, more commonly of the left limb, has been observed with some frequency, and has been explained as due to an extension from the branches of the deep epigastric vein (Witzel), or to a too prolonged period of absolute rest in bed.

Contraction of the right psoas muscle; producing flexion of the corresponding hip. This only occurs in the comparatively rare instances of extension of serious inflammation to the muscle.

Catarrhal jaundice. As in cases untreated by operation, this complication is sometimes observed, more frequently after operations in the acuter stages.

Ventral hernia. This should never occur in cases in which either of the incisions recommended are employed, except when drainage has had to be maintained for a considerable period. When muscle is divided, however small the incision, ventral hernia occurs in a much larger proportion as a post-operative sequela.

OPERATIONS FOR PERI-APPENDICAL ABSCESSES

The choice of an incision for the drainage of an appendical abscess is primarily determined by the position of the abscess, but in certain cases it may also be influenced by the wish to utilize the resulting cicatrix for subsequent removal of the appendix.

For purposes of operation the abscesses may be considered under two headings. First, those which are thoroughly localized and connected by adhesion with the anterior or lateral abdominal wall; secondly,

those which, although sharply localized, cannot readily be reached except by a route crossing the free peritoneal cavity.

The drainage of the first class offers little difficulty, the main points in the treatment being the exercise of care in planning the incision so as to cross the area in which the abscess is adherent to the abdominal wall, and the provision of an adequate opening for future escape of the pus. In order to meet the first point, a reliable sign of adhesion during the operation is usually offered by evidence of inflammatory infiltration of the deeper layers of the abdominal wall, and if this be absent the opening of the peritoneum should not be proceeded with before the margins of the wound have been laterally retracted, in the hope of finding a more suitable spot in the near neighbourhood. If the peritoneum be found free throughout the floor of the wound the further procedure must be as described below. To provide a sufficiently free exit opening it is often advisable to divide the muscle fibres rather than to separate and span them.

In the drainage of appendical abscesses across uninfected areas of the peritoneal cavity, the risk of diffusion of infection and setting up widespread or general peritonitis has been much lessened by the adoption of precautions suggested by the experience gained in operations for acute appendicitis. Indeed, the danger has been so nearly extinguished as to render the necessity of employing any of the special incisions mentioned below rare.

When the incision made to evacuate the abscess impinges on the free peritoneal cavity, the first step consists in careful displacement of the free intestine, until the inflamed area is reached. Gauze plugs are now introduced so as to hold back the normal bowel and to thoroughly protect the main cavity of the peritoneum. This ensured, the adhesions are carefully broken down at one point, and the pus rapidly absorbed as it escapes. When free flow has ceased, the abscess cavity is more widely opened up and its interior carefully wiped out with dry gauze. A large drainage tube and a surrounding gauze plug are introduced to the bottom of the cavity, the soiled retaining plugs being carefully withdrawn and replaced by a smaller plug if necessary. The plug and tube having been arranged in the most convenient position in the opening of the abdominal wall, the tube is fixed by a stitch, and the wound may, if required, be reduced in size by the insertion of sutures.

If it should prove that the primary incision, although carefully planned, is in an inconvenient position both for immediate evacuation and subsequent drainage, two courses are open: (1) The abscess being now accurately localized, a second incision may be made directly over the adherent area, and the exploratory incision closed; the primary inci-

being sutured and protected prior to the escape of pus; or (2) the ions may be broken down with the finger, and the abscess cavity ed; the finger is then cut down upon from without, and the counter- ng is used for the permanent drainage of the cavity, a temporary being inserted by the primary incision.

he large majority of primary appendical abscesses are met with in *ght iliac* region, and here one of the type incisions for appendicec- already described may be utilized. One or other can usually be to cross the point at which the abscess cavity is nearest to, or has ly reached, the anterior abdominal wall. In the greater number of McBurney's incision is the better situated, but some limitation must ced on its general adoption, since the disturbance of the muscular favours the spread of infection in the abdominal wall, and the ng, from its tendency to rapidly contract, may provide only inade- space for drainage. When the abscess is large, and especially the bounding wall is very irregular, spanning of the muscle fibres ter replaced by incision, and indeed this rule obtains equally in ons made in any other position.

When the abscess is situated near the median line, the rectus-sheath on may always be employed, and is exempt from the disadvantages pertain to the gridiron method. This incision is also generally rable for pelvic suppuration.

bscesses in the right lumbar region, or the left iliac region, are best d over the point of greatest prominence, and this principle holds in most of the other positions in which either primary or secondary sses may form.

ertain regions may be occasionally approached by special routes, as the retrocæcal and pelvic.

etrocæcal abscesses frequently attain large dimensions, even suffi- to obviously raise the abdominal wall in the line of the ascending without acquiring any anterior or wide lateral adhesion. Due d being had to the remarks made below on the question of evacuat- nd draining appendical abscesses across uninfected portions of the oneal cavity, yet it is clearly preferable to avoid this complication an be readily done. Two methods are at the disposition of the sur-

When the abscess is low in the iliac fossa, the classical incision, nger's breadth above Poupart's ligament, may be made, the muscles ed, and the extra-peritoneal cellular tissue exposed. The peri- m is then carefully separated from the iliac fossa, and the cæcum until the abscess cavity is reached. The second alternative is to ach the abscess from the loin. This method is more suitable to cæcal abscesses situated at a higher level.

Operations upon pelvic abscesses. Abscesses in the pelvis frequently require evacuation and drainage long before they reach the anterior abdominal wall. In such instances the small intestines are usually more or less distended and raised from their normal position; hence, if reached by an abdominal incision, a non-infected area of some extent frequently needs to be traversed. Under these circumstances some risk may be avoided by opening the abscesses from below, by an incision through the rectum or vagina into the pouch of Douglas. This method has the disadvantage of partaking of the character of a stab in the dark, but it is somewhat widely employed, although much less so since experience has shown that, with proper precautions, drainage may be safely established across an uninfected portion of the peritoneal cavity.

If the rectal route be chosen, the anus is first fully dilated, both for purposes of immediate convenience and to facilitate the later escape of pus. The rectal mucous membrane is then incised, and the further perforation effected by means of a blunt dissector or a pair of forceps. When the pus is reached, the opening is sufficiently dilated. The retention of a drainage tube is not practicable or advisable, since it opens the way not only for the escape of pus, but also for the entrance of fæcal matter into the abscess cavity.

When the vaginal route is preferred the procedure is similar, the primary incision being made in the posterior fornix, and the opening is again completed by a blunt instrument. Vaginal drainage is more commonly employed in the form of a counter-opening, the pelvic abscess having been previously opened from above. The risk of injuring adherent coils of intestine by either route of incision goes far to counterbalance the advantage of avoiding the free peritoneal cavity; hence, the use of these methods should be restricted to cases in which the general condition of the patient renders the risk of an abdominal incision unusually great.

Operations for abscesses in the upper regions of the abdomen due to extension. Appendical abscesses as the result of extension are frequently far distant from the original focus of disease. The extension is usually of a direct character, but rarely it may be the result of a spreading lymphangitis, or an accompaniment of local septic phlebitis, or pylephlebitis and portal pyæmia.

The routes by which extension to the upper abdomen may travel are shown in Fig. 397.

Abscesses ascending by the *right lumbar fossa* usually originate in connexion with an appendix lying to the outer side of the cæcum. They may extend inwards at the level of the hepatic flexure of the colon and occupy the hepato-renal pouch, forming the subhepatic variety, and

from this position the pus very occasionally enters the foramen of Winslow and may travel across behind the stomach to the left half of the abdomen.

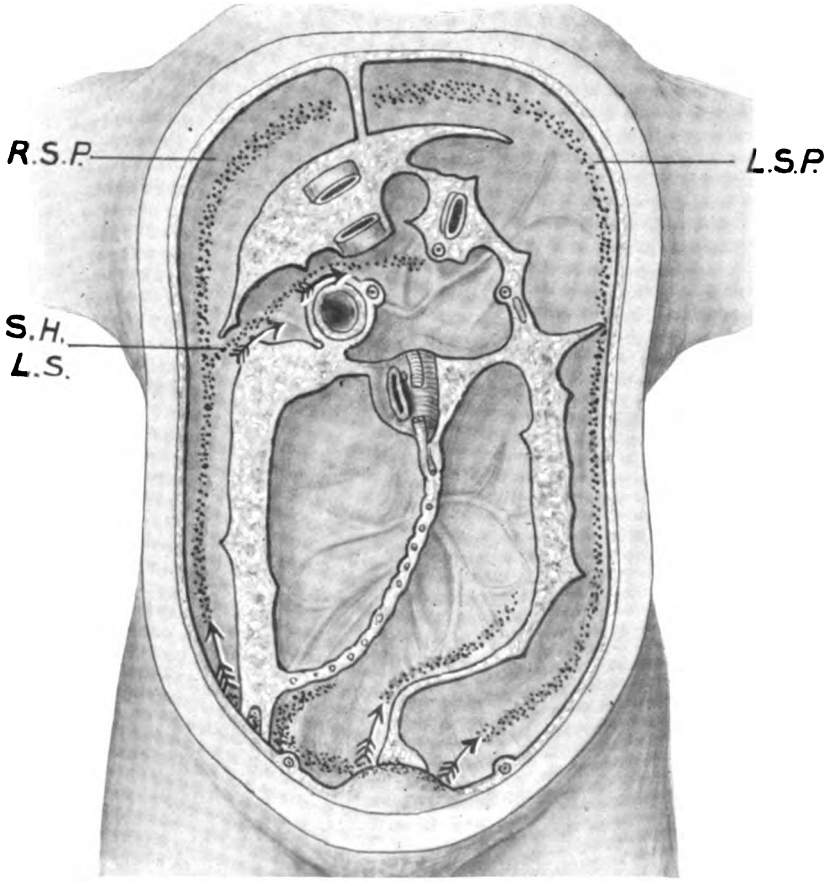


FIG. 397. ROUTES BY WHICH SUPPURATION MAY TRAVEL FROM THE RIGHT ILIAC FOSSA. Modification of Cunningham's diagram of the mesenteric attachment. R.S.P., right subphrenic; L.S.P., left subphrenic; S.H., subhepatic; L.S., route to lesser sac.

Subhepatic abscesses. These are most conveniently opened by an incision in the right loin below and corresponding in direction with the last rib. The condition of the peritoneum should be carefully observed when it is reached, and it may be possible to evacuate the pus without opening the general peritoneal cavity. If this be not the case, the peritoneal cavity should be plugged before the pus is evacuated by the

finger. In early cases the condition may more nearly approximate itself to a localized peritoneal infection than a true abscess, only highly stinking turbid fluid being evacuated. The character of the effusion may also depend on the resistance shown to a bacillus coli infection by the individual, and possibly on the particular virulence possessed by the organism concerned.

Subhepatic abscesses may exist in connexion with an extension to the upper surface of the diaphragm; if this be so the two cavities may be drained by the same incision, tubes being passed over the upper and under surfaces of the liver. In a case of the writer's, a collection in the lesser sac of the peritoneum was successfully drained by the lower tube, without the necessity of any further incision.

When the abscess is truly *subphrenic* and limited to the intraperitoneal space between the upper surface of the liver and the diaphragm, a posterior transpleural incision is the best method of treatment.

The patient is placed on the left side, and the trunk rotated to the three-quarters prone position.

The diagnosis is first confirmed by preliminary puncture with a full-sized aspirating needle, passed to the depth of 3 inches through the lower intercostal spaces in the line of the angle of the scapula. The three or four lower spaces may need to be searched, and a second series of punctures may be necessary in the mid-axillary line. These abscesses are, however, more commonly situated in the posterior part of the space, and limited anteriorly by adhesion between the liver and the diaphragm.

It must be borne in mind that two sources of fluid may exist, *e.g.* the pleura and the subphrenic space. The pleural collection only may be reached; if this forms the primary escape the pleural effusion is abundant, or if the fluid only escapes with the withdrawal of the needle it may be small in amount. If clear or turbid fluid only be evacuated, no further interference with the pleural sac is indicated; if it be purulent, an empyema has to be dealt with.

When pus is found beneath the diaphragm, 3 inches of the most suitable rib is excised. This should be one of the lower five; above the seventh rib the diaphragm cannot be approximated to the intercostal muscles to close the pleural space. If the pleural space proves to be unobliterated by adhesions, the margins of the opening must be stitched to the surface of the diaphragm, and the abscess is incised. Barnard (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1908, vol. i, p. 371) has laid stress on the importance of suturing the diaphragm to the intercostal wall in all cases, since with the evacuation of the contents of the abscess the diaphragm descends and recent adhesions become torn, opening up the pleural space secondarily. If adhesions be present, however, the suturing of the dia-

phragmatic opening to the thoracic wall is more easily and satisfactorily performed after the incision has been made. A large drainage tube, penetrating to the whole depth of the cavity, should be inserted.

Retrocolic suppurations may extend upwards in the retroperitoneal tissue in the line of the colon, and reach the posterior surface of the liver, forming extra-peritoneal subphrenic abscesses. In the earlier stages they may be reached by a right loin incision; the writer has successfully opened one by an anterior incision. This abscess formed a prominence below the liver, while there was no fullness in the right iliac region. The incision into the abdomen revealed a free peritoneal cavity, the abscess bulging the upper layer of the transverse mesocolon. After plugging off the surrounding area the abscess was opened and drained. The appendix (retrocæcal in position) was removed three months later.

When subphrenic, these abscesses are best reached by the posterior transpleural route.

Perisplenic abscesses are generally secondary to pelvic suppuration. They travel by the left lumbar fossa at the outer margin of the descending colon. They usually demand a posterior transpleural incision, occasionally they may be reached by a left loin incision. The latter is preferable in view of the direction from which the extension has come.

Barnard (*loc. cit.*, p. 376) has drawn attention to the advantages gained by delaying operation on subphrenic collections for a few days when the local signs are not extensive. He points out that a wait of three or four days allows the abscess to enlarge, which it does by pressing down the abdominal viscera; this permits the operation to be done at a lower and more satisfactory level, and also renders the probability of pleural adhesion much greater. In some cases it may even allow a subcostal incision,—an undoubted advantage.

PROGNOSIS AND RESULTS

The general mortality after operations for diseases of the appendix may be said to vary from 2% (Murphy, *Keen's Surgery*, vol. iv, p. 778) to 12%, if the results of a large number of operators under varying conditions are reviewed. The mortality rises and falls with the relative number of acute and complicated and quiescent cases included in any given set of statistics; it depends, in fact, upon whether the primary disease or its secondary consequences assume the place of first importance in the cases operated upon.

To obtain a fair view of the actual operative mortality it is necessary to divide the operations into two classes: (1) those performed during quiescent intervals of the disease, (2) those performed in the presence of acute conditions.

Mortality after interval operations. Little requires to be said with regard to appendicectomy during a quiescent period. It has been fully proved that the mortality attending this procedure is under 1%, in spite of the fact that many of the operations are of considerable severity. The main factor in ensuring success lies in the choice of a moment for the operation in which not only all acute or slighter symptoms have subsided, but also when it may be assumed that all traces of infective material in the neighbourhood of the appendix have disappeared. Such accidents as occur, apart from those attributable to actual faults in operative technique, are usually due either to the disturbance of small localized infective areas which escape notice during the operation, or to the diffusion of infective material from the interior of the appendix during the process of its sequestration and removal.

Many individual operators have published series of 100 to 200 operations without the occurrence of a single fatality, while such large numbers as 2,000 with one death (0.005%, Murphy), 702 with two deaths (0.28%, Roux), or 695 with four deaths (0.51%, Kümmell) have been reported.

Mortality after operations for acute appendicitis. More detailed consideration becomes necessary in dealing with the results of removal of the appendix in the presence of acute conditions, in consequence of the frequency with which serious complications have already developed when the patient comes into the hands of the surgeon.

It may be said that this contingency should not have to be taken into account, but unless the conclusion that all cases of appendicitis are to be dealt with by immediate operation is generally arrived at, which opinion is far from universally held in this country, the treatment of complicated cases will remain one of the serious problems of surgery. Under existing conditions of professional opinion, the hospital surgeon or the consultant frequently sees cases of appendicitis under one of two conditions, either to confirm a diagnosis in view of the ulterior procedure of an 'interval' operation, or because the attack is of unusual severity and has developed serious peritoneal complications. Hence the surgeon first comes into contact with patients at the termination of the second or the commencement of the fatal third day, far more commonly than on the first or second days, when a really 'early' operation can be taken into consideration.

For a satisfactory estimation of the results of operations during the acute stages, the classification adopted by Sprengel (*Deutsche Chirurgie*, Appendicitis, 1906, p. 569) is the most convenient. Thus, 'early operations,' those undertaken during the first 48 hours, 'intermediate operations,' those performed on from the second to the sixth day

inclusive, and 'late operations,' those performed from the sixth day onwards.

Mortality after early operations. In this category are included two very different sets of cases from a prognostic point of view: (1) those in which the inflammation of the appendix is accompanied by no more than simple reactionary changes in the peritoneum, (2) those in which definite peritoneal infection has already occurred.

The former class includes cases of simple catarrhal appendicitis, and also a considerable number of instances of acute general gangrene of the appendix. The results of appendicectomy for either of these conditions are almost as good as those of the interval operation, and their inclusion in the general results of early operations is the main factor in the attainment of the low mortality experienced by surgeons who most strongly support an active attitude in the treatment of appendicitis in its acute stage.

In the early operation, peritoneal infection does not acquire the enormous importance it possesses for operations in the intermediate stage. If, however, nearly the whole of the first 48 hours have been allowed to elapse, the area of peritoneum infected may be considerable and the consequent systemic infection severe, especially in children, with a corresponding grave prognosis.

Mortality after intermediate operations. Appendicectomies performed between the second and seventh days of the disease afford the worst results. When peritoneal infection is diffuse, the prognosis is affected both by the duration of the condition and the area of the peritoneal cavity implicated.

Duration is of importance as denoting the degree of systemic infection reached, and it should be borne in mind that the general appearance of patients in whom infection has been in existence for some days by no means always corresponds with the actual gravity of their condition. The subjects may be bright-eyed and cheerful and yet prove quite unequal to resist the sudden increase in toxæmia which results from absorption by the freshly cut surface of the operation wound, and rapidly succumb after an appendicectomy.

The extent of the peritoneal cavity implicated is of little less prognostic significance than the duration of the infection. Amongst my own cases I have separated those in which the process had not extended beyond the right half of the abdominal cavity, from those in which the affection had spread to the left half, and the percentage mortality for the former is 22 against 77 for the latter.

The mortality in such cases necessarily varies with the ability of the surgeon, some being as low as 2–3% and others running as high as

12–15%, of course much higher in the hands of inexperienced surgeons.

Mortality after late operations. Appendicectomies performed after the sixth day have a relatively favourable prognosis. This is dependent on the facts either that a localized infection has to be dealt with, or that if diffuse infection is present, it is commonly the result of extension from a previously localized centre, and is attacked early as far as the general infection is concerned. With regard to the latter point, however, the local condition may severely compromise the possibility of dealing satisfactorily with the recent diffuse infection, and, moreover, it is in cases of this class that subsequent creeping extension of the infection is particularly to be feared.

Mortality after operations for local abscess. The prognosis of well localized suppurations acquires especial interest from the claim which has been made of their occurrence terminating the liability to further attacks of appendicitis, even when treated by simple incision and drainage.

The condition is liable to be accompanied by many of the complications of the disease in general; thus of 59 cases serious complications were met with in 22 (intestinal obstruction 5, fæcal fistula 6, spontaneous opening into the bladder 2, and into ureter 1, subdiaphragmatic abscess 3, empyema 3, cerebral abscess 1, pulmonary abscess 1), and 7 of the patients (13.4%) died.

Of the cases in which the future course has been able to be followed, 23, or 39.9%, are known to have suffered from recurrences, and in 17 of these the recurrence was accompanied by suppuration. All the patients were recommended to undergo an 'interval' operation, with the single exception of one case in which the gangrenous appendix was found floating free in the cavity of the abscess. In 18 a subsequent interval operation was actually performed, and in all an appendix was found capable of giving rise to further attacks; all recovered.

Finally, it may be stated that a general review of the published results of appendicectomy appears to show clearly that the 'early operation,' if performed as a routine procedure, would lead to the disappearance of practically the whole of the complications which at the present time account for the fatalities which occur; further, that the 'early operation' may be fairly placed in almost the same category as regards mortality with that performed during a quiescent interval.

CHAPTER XV

OPERATIONS FOR INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

OPERATIONS for the relief of intestinal obstruction are so varied in detail as to be most conveniently considered under the special headings corresponding to their nature.

Indications. Certain broad indications for operation are common to all varieties, such as pain, vomiting, and complete or incomplete obstruction to the passage of flatus or fæces, these symptoms being followed by those of intestinal toxæmia, often by peritonitis, and, if the condition remains unrelieved, by death.

Preparations for operation. The condition of the patient is often bad, and in cases of acute obstruction especially the operations are of an 'urgent' nature. The first precaution should be directed to the temperature of the room in which the operation is to be performed, which should not be below 68° F. Next, care should be taken to see that the patient is well clad; for this object the limbs may be encased in cotton-wool and flannel bandages, and the table should be kept warm by hot bottles so arranged as to run no risk of burning the patient.

Cleansing of the abdominal wall should be carried out with as little expenditure of time and exposure of the patient as possible, and due precautions should be taken during the washing that the table on which the patient lies is not soaked. An abdominal apron, provided with an opening opposite the site of the wound, is an advantage in view of the hasty preparation of the skin which has been possible.

When vomiting is a prominent symptom, the stomach should be washed out. This procedure avoids the risks attendant on aspiration of vomit which may be imperfectly ejected during the operation, and relieves a stomach often objectionably dilated; it is preferably carried out prior to the administration of the anæsthetic. When the general condition of the patient is bad, especially if attended by great abdominal distension, a hypodermic injection of a thirtieth of a grain of strychnine may be administered with benefit.

The most satisfactory anæsthetic is chloroform, or a mixture of chloroform and ether. When the condition is such as to warrant at the most the performance of an enterostomy, local infiltration anæsthesia may be employed, but this method is not convenient or advisable if more extensive measures are contemplated.

Operation. The foot of the table should be raised, or a modified Trendelenburg position arranged which helps to counteract the tendency of the loaded bowel to protrude. When the seat and nature of the obstruction are undetermined, a paramedian incision commencing just above the level of the umbilicus, with displacement of the rectus, provides the most convenient route of access, and allows of ready extension if needed.

When the abdomen is opened, distended coils of intestine are exposed and tend to prolapse, and it is at this period of the operation that the anæsthetization needs to be deepest. Care should be taken to prevent the escape of intestine at this stage, since its exposure favours further distension and an increase in general shock.

It is most important that the search for the seat of obstruction should be made systematically, otherwise much valuable time may be lost. Points in the history or local signs may indicate the advisability of searching certain regions first, but in the absence of these the condition of the cæcum may be best at once determined, as distension or a contracted state of this localizes the obstruction in the large or small bowel respectively. If the cæcum be contracted and empty, an attempt should be made to find a collapsed portion of the small intestine in the pelvis, and in the course of this attempt the various 'hernial openings' may be rapidly passed in review. If collapsed intestine be discovered, the gut should be as rapidly as possible passed through the hands, an assistant replacing each length of bowel as it is drawn out by the surgeon. The degree of distension of the intestine may render this mode of procedure impossible, in which case either a considerable extent of the small intestine must be allowed to escape into warm towels, or the intestine may be unloaded by an enterotomy (see p. 686). The latter procedure is preferable, especially in the presence of signs of intestinal toxæmia.

If the cæcum be loaded, the sigmoid flexure must next be examined, and then the remainder of the colon. In searching the large intestine it is important to bear in mind that the gut on the distal side of the obstruction is occasionally 'ballooned,' hence every effort must be made to localize the actual point of obstruction; want of attention to this rule has occasionally led to the performance of a colostomy on the distal side. It is in cases of obstruction due to malignant growths that this phenomenon is most commonly met with; it resembles in nature the corresponding condition of the rectum when malignant disease affects that portion of the bowel.

If a considerable degree of escape of distended bowel has been inevitable, its replacement may be a matter of great difficulty. This may be facilitated by evacuation of the contents of the bowel, or more rapidly by the 'towel method' of Murphy. The exposed intestine is

covered by a towel, the margins of which are tucked in to the abdominal cavity around. The abdominal wall is now lifted on either side alternately by an assistant, and by means of pressure and manipulation the intestines are made to re-enter the abdominal cavity. The towel is withdrawn gradually during the progress of suture of the abdominal wound. In less difficult cases an excellent broad metal retainer to insert during the introduction of the sutures has been devised by P. W. G. Sargent (see Fig. 398).

After-treatment. Post-operative vomiting may at first be due to the anæsthetic, and then is to be treated if it continues by free draughts of warm water, or a tumbler of water containing a drachm of sodium bicarbonate. The occurrence of vomiting of this class may often be prevented by allowing the patient to inhale a small amount of oxygen until the effects of the anæsthetic have passed off.

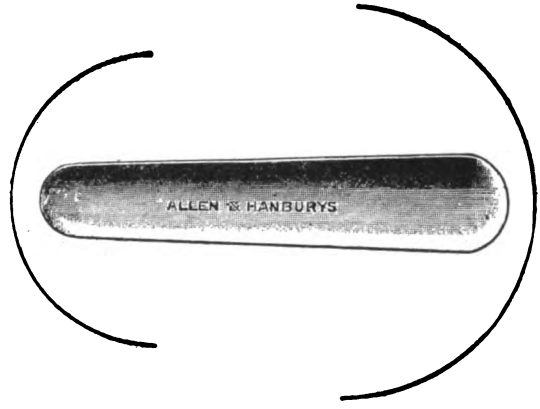


FIG. 398. SARGENT'S INTESTINE RETAINER.

More persistent vomiting may be checked by the administration of half a grain of cocaine, or five minims of tinct. iodi in a tumbler of water. When the vomit continues to be of the offensive character existent before the operation, washing out of the stomach with warm water is advisable.

Hypodermic injections of one-sixtieth of a grain of strychnine may be given to counteract shock, and these are also useful when there is much abdominal distension. Shock and thirst are to be combated by the administration of enemata of normal saline solution, one pint every four or six hours; in bad cases, especially those in which intestinal toxæmia is marked, continuous proctoclysis after the method of Murphy is desirable, 1½ pints being introduced during each two hours (see p. 848).

Peristalsis is to be encouraged by the administration of repeated small doses of calomel, a grain every two hours until five grains have been taken. Turpentine enemata may be useful to relieve distension and encourage the passage of flatus; hypodermic injections of eserine salycilate gr. $\frac{1}{100}$ may be given with the same object in conjunction with a dose of magnesium sulphate. On the third day a purgative is generally desirable, and in cases of intestinal toxæmia purgation may often be commenced earlier.

General results for operations for intestinal obstruction. The results obtained by these operations up till the present leave much to be desired, although a more general appreciation of the necessity of early operation, and of the ill-effect of delay, has been followed by a certain amount of improvement.

The following tables give the results of 400 operations performed for obstruction due to simple causes, and of 143 performed to relieve obstruction occasioned by malignant disease.

The operations represent the entire consecutive series performed in a large London hospital during the twenty years ending with December, 1907, and possess the great advantage over any collection of cases from outside sources of including every patient operated upon, while the operations have been performed by a number of different surgeons.

Of 400 patients operated upon for obstruction from simple causes (excluding external herniæ), 227 died, or 56.7%. Of 143 patients suffering from obstruction from malignant disease, 92 died, or 64.3%.

If the cases operated upon during the last five years of the period are separated, some improvement in the results is shown.

Thus, simple cases, 155; died, 70, or 45.1%. Malignant cases, 79; died, 48, or 60.7%.

FOUR HUNDRED CASES OF INTESTINAL OBSTRUCTION FROM SIMPLE CAUSES, ST. THOMAS'S HOSPITAL, 1888-1907.

Nature.	*Total.*	*Recovered.*	*Died.*	*Percentage mortality.*
Intussusception	202	109	93	46.3
Volvulus	29	10	19	65.5
Broad Peritoneal Adhesions	60	24	36	60.0
Cicatricial Bands	42	11	31	73.8
Mesenteric Holes	5		5	100.0
Meckel's Diverticulum	22	8	14	63.6
Adherent Appendix	1		1	100.0
Opening in Mesocolon	1		1	100.0
Opening in Omentum	1	1		
Strangulation in Retroperitoneal Fossa.	1		1	100.0
Properitoneal Hernia	1		1	100.0
Retroperitoneal Hernia	1	1		
Diaphragmatic Hernia	1		1	100.0
Cicatricial Stricture	9	1	8	88.8
Impacted Gall-stone	5	1	4	80.0
Fæcal Impaction	1	1		
Angulation of Sigmoid	1		1	100.0
Idiopathic Dilatation of Colon	3	2	1	33.3
Gangrenous Ileum, ? cause	1		1	100.0
Acute Obstruction, ? cause	9	3	6	66.6
Uterine Fibroids	3		3	100.0
Lipoma of Sigmoid	1	1		
	400	173	227	56.7

ONE HUNDRED AND FORTY-THREE CASES OF OBSTRUCTION CONSEQUENT ON MALIGNANT DISEASE, 1888-1907.

Situation.	*Total.*	*Recovered.*	*Died.*
Ileum	2		2
Cæcum	7	1	6
Ascending colon	2		2
Hepatic flexure	7		7
Transverse colon	4	1	3
Splenic flexure	12	7	5
Descending colon	6	1	5
Sigmoid flexure	67	22	45
Rectum	28	15	13
Colon, ? site	2	1	1
Stomach	1		1
Ovary	2	1	1
Cervix Uteri	1	1	
Uterus	1	1	
Pelvic Tumour	1		1
	143	51	92

Percentage mortality, 64.3.

OPERATIONS UPON SPECIAL FORMS OF OBSTRUCTION

SYMPTOMATIC OBSTRUCTION

Indications. The commonest form is that accompanying peritonitis consequent on infection. Organic obstruction may also be simulated in cases of injury to, or disease of, the abdominal viscera. Thus, signs of obstruction may follow severe blows, retroperitoneal hæmorrhage resulting from injury, fractures of the spine; the passage of biliary or renal calculi; torsion of the testis, the pedicle of an ovarian cyst tumour, or a floating kidney; and acute pancreatitis.

Symptomatic obstruction characterized by great distension, sometimes persisting for weeks, may be due to hysteria, comparable in its nature to the pseudo-paralysis often noted in the limbs. Of a similar nature is the opposed condition of enterospasm, especially liable to occur in the large intestine.

Of these forms of symptomatic obstruction operation on the intestine is sometimes indicated in the case of peritoneal infection (see p. 847). Certain forms of symptomatic obstruction are of more importance from the point of view of operation, such as those accompanying torsion of the omentum, and embolism or thrombosis of the mesenteric vessels.

Torsion of the omentum may occur within the abdominal cavity, or in a hernial sac, in this respect closely resembling the allied condition of volvulus of the intestine. The symptoms vary; in some cases the

bowels act, or even diarrhœa may be present; in others flatus only is passed, or obstruction may be absolute. *The indications for operation* consist in pain, the presence of a tumour in the abdomen, or signs of strangulation or incarceration in a hernial sac. A rise in the temperature and pulse rate of moderate degree accompanies these signs. Cases have been operated upon usually on a false diagnosis.

The operation consists in the removal of the twisted portion of the omentum, the point which needs division being frequently a more or less atrophied pedicle. When the twisted portion is within a hernial sac the omentum can be readily drawn down. In instances of torsion within the abdomen, the paramedian subumbilical rectus-sheath incision is the best. In the six cases of pure abdominal torsion collected by Corner and Pinches (*Trans. Med. and Chir. Soc.*, 1905, vol. lxxxviii, p. 611), the tumour was situated in the right half of the abdomen, which fact would clearly indicate the most suitable site of incision to the operator.

OBSTRUCTION DUE TO ARTERIAL EMBOLISM AND VENOUS THROMBOSIS

Indications. The arrest of the embolus is followed by a short stage of irritation evidenced by increased peristaltic activity, bloody diarrhœa (in 34.7% of 46 cases, Wilms, *Path. und Klinik des Darmverschlusses*, 1906, p. 116), vomiting, which in a few instances has been noticed to be sanious, and distension of the abdomen. These preliminary symptoms are followed by those of absolute obstruction. When the obstructed arterial branch is small and a limited area of the small intestine is affected only, distension of the affected coil and hardening of its wall may give rise to a localized elongated tumour which simulates an intussusception. When the embolus lodges in a branch of the inferior mesenteric artery, in addition to bloody diarrhœa, tenesmus and a patent anus have been observed.

Signs of obstruction of a similar character less frequently develop as a result of thrombosis of the mesenteric veins. The symptoms may be somewhat less acute, while the history often indicates the origin and nature of the lesion. Thus, ascending thrombosis may follow inflammation about the anus, pelvic organs, or the appendix; descending thrombosis has been observed in connexion with syphilitic disease or cirrhosis of the liver, pylephlebitis, or operations on the gall-bladder, bile ducts, duodenum, or pancreas. In Bradford's case (*Trans. Clin. Soc.*, 1898, vol. xxxi, p. 203), the thrombosis was apparently secondary to suppuration of the mesenteric glands.

The occurrence of the above train of symptoms, whether due to embolism or to thrombosis, indicates the necessity of an abdominal

exploration, provided the general condition of the patient warrants the procedure.

Operation. The ideal procedure is an enterectomy, in the performance of which the following points are to be borne in mind:—

When a definite tumour has been previously located, its position determines the most suitable level for the incision. In the absence of this indication a paramedian incision with outward displacement of the rectus, starting from the level of the umbilicus, is the most suitable, since in the great majority of instances the small intestine needs to be dealt with.

On opening the peritoneal cavity, blood-stained fluid will probably escape in early operations; in later ones inflammatory exudation and the presence of lymph on the intestines are more likely. The affected portion of bowel may be bright red, ecchymosed, blue and stiff, or possibly gangrenous, and is usually readily palpable. The corresponding mesentery is also stiff and ecchymosed, or the thrombosed vessels may be felt.

Distension of the bowel is commonly a prominent feature, a matter of great moment, since fouling of the peritoneal cavity by intestinal contents has occurred in a considerable proportion of the cases operated upon. A preliminary enterotomy and evacuation of the contents of the bowel should therefore precede the performance of the enterectomy if much distension exists.

Sufficient bowel should be removed to ensure that the parts to be united receive a direct blood-supply. In five successful operations for thrombosis the length needing removal varied from 3½ to 48 inches, and on two occasions a Murphy's button was employed as the means of union.

In the small intestine an axial union is generally preferable. In the colon it may be better to unite the bowel by the lateral method, or to make a primary lateral anastomosis, and then resect the portion of damaged colon.

The patient's condition may render it necessary to rapidly resect the affected portion of intestine, and establish a temporary enterostomy with the aid of Paul's tubes. In the small intestine this plan is naturally undesirable, but it may give time, and tide the patient over the immediate risk.

Prognosis and results. The prognosis depends primarily on the length of the gut implicated; secondarily, on the general condition of the patient, and the time which is allowed to elapse prior to the performance of the operation. Haagn (*Deutsche Zeitschr. f. Chir.*, 1908, vol. xcii, p. 79) points out that the most satisfactory cases for operation

are those in which acute symptoms of obstruction are marked, and it is in such that the indications for exploration are clearest.

Brunner (*Deutsche Zeitsch. f. Chir.*, 1907, vol. lxxxix, p. 624) has collected 125 cases of arterial thrombosis, of which 26 underwent operative treatment, and 2 only recovered (mortality 92.3%). In the same paper 89 cases of venous thrombosis are collected, of which 31 underwent operation, and 4 recovered. To these 31 cases may be added the 2 successful ones recorded by Brunner and Haagn, which reduce the mortality to 81.8%.

INTUSSUSCEPTION

Indications. Symptoms of acute obstruction, or, more rarely, of intermittent or incomplete obstruction in subacute or chronic cases. The following features point to the special nature of the condition present:—

Sudden pain, which may be persistent, but is more commonly intermittent, and of a colicky character. Vomiting, at first reflex, which later may become continuous. Even in untreated cases it rarely acquires fæcal characters (25%). When active, vomiting tends to prevent the development of distension and is to some extent a favourable moment both as regards diagnosis and treatment. The passage of blood-stained mucus or blood and mucus in the stools. This sign is less constant in enteric intussusceptions, and is more frequently observed in adults than in children. Chronic intussusceptions are often accompanied by diarrhœa.

Examination of the rectum may allow the apex of the intussusception to be felt. In such cases especially there may be tenesmus. On palpation, an elongated tumour may be felt in the abdomen; this sign is fairly constant, but it must be remembered that the tumour is often palpable only during an attack of enterospasm and pain, when it may be felt to harden under the hand; again, that the position of the tumour shifts with the advance of the invagination. This latter fact sometimes allows a definite want of resistance in the right iliac fossa to be determined (signe de Dance). Enteric intussusceptions are generally palpable in the neighbourhood of the umbilicus; the other varieties in the course of the colon.

It is important to bear in mind that infants and children, the subjects of intussusception, are often particularly strong and healthy, and during the first twenty-four hours they may look remarkably well, suffering from pain only at intervals, while the pulse rate is little quickened.

An intussusception of any form or variety demands an abdominal section at the earliest possible moment after its detection. Treatment by inflation or injection is always untrustworthy and generally useless.

Operation. The most suitable site for the abdominal incision is subumbilical and through the sheath of the right rectus muscle. The muscle may be displaced either inwards or outwards; if the intussusception be extensive the latter direction is preferable, since it facilitates access to the left half of the abdomen.

Prior examination may have determined the position of the apex of the intussusception, and in this case it may be dealt with at once. If the position of the intussusception has not been able to be defined, the cæcum should be first sought; if this be absent from the right iliac fossa, the colon must be traced, preferably from below upwards.

The apex of the intussusception having been discovered, it is steadily passed backward by pressure exercised by the finger and thumb on the containing bowel from below. The early part of this procedure is easy, but gradually becomes less so as the neck of the intussusception is reached. When the difficulty becomes pronounced, the intussusception should be brought into view, the wound, if necessary, being elongated for this purpose, and the final manipulation should be concluded by the employment of sight as well as touch. This part of the procedure is much facilitated by the envelopment of the compressing digits in a layer of gauze, and the addition of gentle traction on the intussuscepted part. It is at this stage of the operation that rents in the softened peritoneal covering of the bowel are in greatest risk of being produced, both by the resulting distension of the intussuscipiens, and the traction on the fixed point at the neck. Such rents are dangerous, as liable to lead to subsequent auto-infection, and they also favour the ulterior formation of adhesions. Every effort must therefore be made to avoid their production, and should they occur, the rents must be repaired by the introduction of fine sutures.

When reduction is complete, the swollen and œdematous mucous membrane, particularly the segments of the ileo-cæcal valve, may suggest the presence of a polyp in the interior of the cæcum. The explanation of this condition must be borne in mind, since the false impression produced by it has sometimes led to an unnecessary exploration of the interior of the cæcum.

Exploration of the abdomen and the necessary manipulation for reduction are to be as far as possible carried out without unnecessary exposure of the intestine—an important prognostic precaution—but in cases of difficulty it is preferable to allow some of the abdominal contents to escape into warm towels, rather than to expend valuable time and carry out the manipulation under manifest disadvantage.

Moynihan recommends that a few sutures should be finally inserted to fix the cæcum in position, on the ground that an abnormal mobility

of the cæcum is responsible for the possibility of occurrence of extensive ileo-cæcal intussusception. It may be remarked that recurrence of an intussusception after operative reduction is a rare event, possibly in part because the strain to which the bowel has been exposed does not permit the resumption of over-active peristalsis for some time.

The last portion of the intussusception having been douched with saline solution, the bowel is replaced and the abdomen closed. Rapidity of execution in the case of this operation is specially to be desired.

Difficulties. 1. Enteric intussusceptions, especially of more than twenty-four hours' standing, are less easy of reduction than the other varieties; the adhesion of the layers is more pronounced, probably on account of the favourable conditions offered by the smooth even wall of the small intestine for cohesion.

FIG. 399. ENTERIC INTUSSUSCEPTION OF EIGHT DAYS' STANDING. Gangrene at both the neck and apex of the intussusception. Separation of the neck has occurred. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum*, No. 1203 A.)

2. Reduction of the invagination may prove impracticable, or the involved bowel may be hopelessly damaged by the manipulations exercised.

3. Gangrene of the intussusception may have already occurred.

In either of the two latter events recourse must be had to enterostomy or enterectomy. Enterostomy is a highly undesirable alternative, and is to be reserved for cases in which the general condition of the patient forbids any but the most rapid procedure. If performed, a Paul's tube should be tied into either end of the intestine, and secondary closure should be attempted as soon as practicable. Very few patients survive in whom this course has to be taken.

In rare cases a substitute for enterostomy is to be found in a lateral anastomosis. This can seldom be the case in infants or children suffering with an acute intussusception, since the time needed for the operation is little less than that needed for the form of enterectomy to be below described; moreover, if an anastomosis be established it runs the

risk of secondary occlusion by further descent of the intussusception. Lateral anastomosis may, however, rarely be indicated in cases of chronic intussusception, in which the state of the patient renders an enterectomy too dangerous, and here the objection depending on possible secondary occlusion is less strong. In such cases an expectant attitude has been recommended, in order to allow the possibility of spontaneous separa-

FIG. 400. ILEO-CÆCAL INTUSSUSCEPTION. Intussusceptum gangrenous. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum*, No. 1198.)

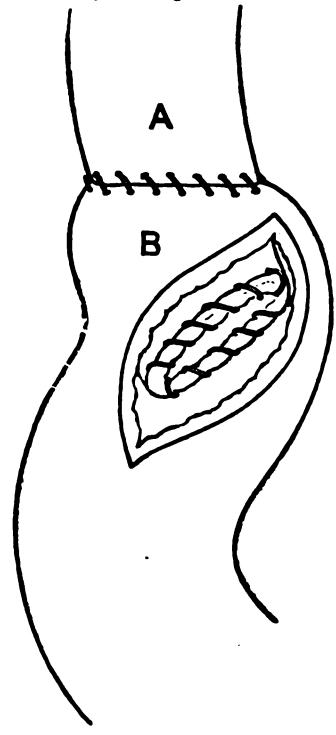


FIG. 401. DIAGRAM ILLUSTRATING TREATMENT OF THE INTUSSUSCEPTION SHOWN IN FIG. 400 BY THE JESSETT-BARKER METHOD.

tion of the intussusception; a safer course is to await a general improvement in the condition of the patient, and then proceed to its removal.

Where the reduction of the bowel has been practically completed, and enterectomy appears a necessity, or if the tissues of bowel beyond the intussusception itself have become infected by extension, a resection of the usual type must be performed, with the ordinary treatment of the mesentery. An axial union should be performed in the case of the small intestine, or a lateral union with closure of the free ends where small and large intestine are concerned.

Where removal of the intussusception is decided upon at once, either on account of the initial difficulty experienced in its reduction, or on account of the doubtful state of vitality of the bowel, the operation conceived by Jessett, and carried out and perfected by Barker, Rydigier, and others, is preferable. The principle of the operation is founded on the observation that in some cases of subacute or chronic intussusception adhesion takes place at the neck, and the intussusception perishes and is passed spontaneously *per anum*. The result attained by the operation closely resembles that following an enterectomy by Maunsell's method.

For the performance of this operation the neck of the intussusception is drawn well forwards, and the normal gut clamped above, and if possible below. If the latter procedure be impracticable, by reason of the extent of the intussusception, the clamp must be placed on the whole mass and provisionally removed during the later withdrawal of the intussusception. The abdominal cavity and wound are protected by gauze plugs.

The entering gut is sutured to the prominent neck of the ensheathing segment, the line of suture being carried on to the mesentery in such a manner as to preserve the folds produced in it by the descent of the intussusception.

A longitudinal incision, 1 or 1½ inches in length, is made into the intussuscipiens ¾ inch below the neck, and from the opening thus obtained the intussusceptum is delivered, the lower clamp being provisionally removed if required.

The intussusceptum is now drawn forward, and its base is divided in segments, stitches through the whole thickness of the wall of the two elements being introduced as the division proceeds. Special care is to be exercised in dealing with the mesenteric margin, in order to prevent any risk of hæmorrhage from this part.

Lastly, the longitudinal incision in the bowel-wall is repaired by the introduction of two tiers of sutures, one perforating all the coats, and the superficial one of the Lembert type. Care should be taken not to include too great an extent of the bowel-wall, since a transverse closure of the wound is not advisable in these cases, in consequence of the near proximity of the other line of suture.

4. Other complications may be met with occasionally. The simplest is the discovery of an intestinal polyp as the original cause of the condition; much more rarely a simple tumour, such as a lipoma of the bowel-wall. In either case the removal of the tumour is indicated, a polyp being cut off at its base and the gap in the mucous membrane repaired over the resulting gap. For this procedure a simple longitudinal incision of the bowel-wall suffices. For a tumour of any size,

either simple or of sarcomatous nature, a type resection of the affected portion of intestine is required. A rare complication may be the discovery of the cause as a Meckel's diverticulum, when the removal of the latter will be indicated after the reduction of the intussusception.

5. Malignant growths of the large bowel of the annular variety not very infrequently become invaginated. When this occurs within the abdominal cavity, the case is to be treated on the lines which govern the surgeon in dealing with such growths in general. Occasionally, however, tumours of the pelvic or sigmoid colon descend to the anus, or even prolapse. This accident may be regarded as a happy one, since the operation for the relief of the condition is one of the easiest in connexion with the intestines. The growth is well drawn down, and then the base of the two thicknesses of bowel-wall is divided in segments, through and through stitches being introduced as the division is proceeded with. When released the line of suture either re-enters the anus spontaneously, or may be readily replaced. In fact, the line of suture may at once rise far out of the reach of the finger.

These operations have been followed by surprisingly good results, both immediate and remote, in spite of the fact that any interference with the lymphatic glands far from the margin of the bowel is impracticable. The mere fact of the possibility of such free prolapse indicates a condition of the mesentery which renders it improbable that extensive lymphatic infiltration has occurred.

Prognosis and results. Experience in operations for intussusception has clearly demonstrated the importance of early interference, and recorded statistics show that in operations performed during the first twenty-four hours, the results obtained compare favourably with those of all other forms of obstruction. Early operation excludes the probability of all the serious complications alluded to above, while the patients themselves usually offer the real advantage as subjects of being perfectly healthy up to the immediate occurrence of the accident. The second element of importance in the prognosis is the relative time spent in the reduction of the intussusception. There is no doubt that, especially in infants, a rapid operation is of the first moment, hence the operator should be careful to choose that method which ensures to him the greatest rapidity and involves the least amount of intra-abdominal manipulation and exposure of the intestines.

The general results of operations are in fact good, and the mortality which exists is in great measure to be ascribed to cases already complicated by the existence of gangrene, the supervention of peritonitis, or general toxæmia.

That even the formidable operation of complete resection is not

in itself to be unduly feared, is shown by the results obtained by von Eiselsberg (*Arch. f. klin. Chir.*, 1903, vol. lxix, p. 26), who records nine recoveries in twelve cases of ordinary intussusceptions treated by excision; mortality 25%. These results are of course not comparable with those of resections performed for gangrene, or in toxæmic patients. The latter class of case unfortunately still depresses the percentage of recoveries obtained in General Hospitals, and in consequence of the rarity of this condition amongst the children of the better classes it is to hospital records alone that we can look for information.

During the years 1888–1908 inclusive, 202 patients were consecutively submitted to operation of various forms at St. Thomas's Hospital; of these ninety-three died, a mortality of 46.3%. Of these operations twelve consisted in resection with immediate union, of which number only two adults recovered; and fifteen of enterostomy alone, or enterostomy combined with excision, of which number all succumbed. If the latter twenty-seven cases be subtracted, the mortality for abdominal section combined with reduction is reduced to 38.8%.

If the cases occurring during the last five years of the period are considered alone, the numbers are slightly better. Thus, of sixty-five cases, twenty-three died, a mortality of 35.3%. In this series nine cases of enterostomy, or resection, are included, with only one recovery (an adult); if these be subtracted we have fifty-six cases with fifteen deaths, a mortality for cœliotomy and reduction of 26.7%.

Clubbe (*Brit. Med. Journ.*, 1905, vol. i, p. 1327) records 100 consecutive operations with a mortality of 37%. He further divides these cases into two successive periods, each including fifty, and finds that while in the years 1893–1901 the mortality was 50%, in the years 1901–4 the mortality was reduced to 24%. Clubbe ascribes the improvement in the later results to the fact that the patients came earlier under observation. Cuthbert Wallace (*Clin. Soc. Trans.*, 1905, vol. xxxviii. p. 55) has recorded twenty consecutive operations with a mortality of 20%. Excluding cases in which resection was necessary, Wallace's mortality is decreased to 11.11%.

VOLVULUS

Indications. The indication for operation is usually acute intestinal obstruction of undetermined nature, except in the case of sigmoid or cæcal volvulus, where isolated distension of the loop is often sufficiently well marked to allow a distinctive diagnosis being made. The latter cases also frequently give a history of previous attacks of temporary obstruction of a similar character.

Operation. The primary incision should be subumbilical, this be-

most suitable for dealing with either cæcal or sigmoid volvuli exploration of the small intestine. If the signs indicate a cæcal oid volvulus the incision may be over the outer part of the rectus and the muscle is displaced inwards; for cases of indeterminate he paramedian position with displacement of the muscle outwards erable.

abdominal cavity having been opened, the volvulus may present n several forms.

lvulus of the small intestine. 1. In young patients, practi- he whole small intestine may be implicated, appearing black and angrenous. This condition has most frequently been observed in infants, and is accompanied by very acute symptoms. In such he ileal mesentery may be so deficient as to give rise to a much ed line of attachment to the posterior abdominal wall; or the having failed to descend and travel to the right, a similar nar- area of fixation is present in spite of the possible existence of a n mesentery.

A local coil, or coils, only may be implicated. In this case adhe- ay be present, either fixing the coil of intestine itself, or crossing achment of the mesentery in such a manner as to narrow its In other instances no definite cause for the torsion can be dis- l. Volvulus of local coils is naturally the most common variety th in connexion with herniæ.

en the volvulus is extensive, the ileum is always involved, some- he whole ileum and jejunum, but never the jejunum alone. Such re frequently hopeless, but the treatment consists in the untwist- the intestine from right to left, and an attempt to fix the upper ver extremities of the mesentery in such a manner as to render d torsion impracticable. Five cases in which operation was suc- ly performed have been collected by G. Serda (*La Riforma Med.*, No. vii, p. 177).

en a volvulus affects a single loop of small intestine the treat- epends upon the variety; if the torsion has occurred as a result tion around an abnormal adhesion, or as a result of plication of sentery by a band, simple division of the latter is sufficient. when a volvulus develops in, or in connexion with, a hernial sac, on of the loop and extirpation of the sac is alone indicated. If, other hand, no explanation of the twist is to be found in acquired ons, the affected loop should be resected, and an axial union es- ed if the state of the patient and the local condition of the bowel this step.

lvulus of the large intestine. In the large majority of cases,

either the cæcum or the sigmoid flexure is the segment implicated. More rarely, the ascending or transverse colon. The writer has had to deal with the latter condition by resection in an umbilical hernia.

Cæcal volvulus. The cæcum is absent from its normal position; in more than half the cases it lies in the lower abdomen, but it has been met with beneath the mesentery, in the left flank, or in contact with the hepatic or splenic flexures of the colon. A long free mesentery to the cæcum, or cæcum and ascending colon, usually exists; in other cases the rotation appears to have been due to the overloading of acquired lateral pouches of the cæcum. Considerable distension of the cæcum is common, the contents being in great part gaseous. A preliminary temporary colotomy and evacuation of the contents allows the distended loop to be delivered more easily, and much facilitates the untwisting of the mesentery in a direction from left to right. In one case the writer was, in fact, unable to deliver the cæcum, which was impacted in the pelvis, until this measure had been undertaken. A firm palpable band is frequent, passing from below to the point in the ascending colon marking the distal extremity of the loop; this is formed by the mesocolon.

The rotation having been corrected, the cæcum should be fixed as nearly in its normal position as possible. In some instances this may be high, as the cæcum has never descended to its proper level, although provided with an abnormally long mesentery.

Fixation may be by a few sutures passing from the bowel itself to the abdominal wall, but if the mesentery is very long it is better to plicate this on its right aspect, or to stitch the mesentery to the parietal peritoneum. Corner and Sargent recommend plication of the cæcum itself in some cases.

Sigmoid volvulus. The distended coil may lie in any part of the abdomen, but most commonly it passes obliquely upwards and to the right. Its dimensions may be enormous. As in cæcal volvuli, evacuation of the contents is advisable prior to making an attempt to untwist the loop. When the bowel has been emptied the rotation necessary is easily effected, and the question arises as to what measures must be taken to prevent a recurrence.

Sigmoid volvulus is particularly the form in which chronic distension of the bowel and consequent great elongation of the loop take the main causative position. This chronic distension may depend on simple constipation; it may be a part of a general neurosis, as in hysterical subjects; or of a local condition due to some imperfection in the nerve-supply, as in the congenital dilatation of the colon. The chief measures which have been employed to prevent recurrence are fixation of the loop, lateral

anastomosis at the base of the loop, and removal of the loop. Each and all have proved themselves unsatisfactory.

Fixation of the loop may be to the abdominal wall in the iliac region, or an attempt to limit its mobility may be made by suturing the left aspect of the mesentery to the parietal peritoneum. Fixation of the loop to the abdominal wall does not suffice to prevent future distension; in one case of the writer's, a woman of fifty, in spite of this measure, the sigmoid flexure a year later was sufficiently distended to reach the liver, and obstruction again developed.

Lateral anastomosis at the base of the loop is dangerous; in two cases of the writer's this was followed by recurrent torsion, once within a week, and once at the end of twelve months. In a third case, of megacolon in a boy of five, the anastomosis has been a success, the patient remaining well at the end of five years. Lastly, as to removal of the loop, the writer has twice performed this, once with success; in the second case dilatation of the distal segment slowly developed, a large sac being formed by the pelvic colon, which again gave rise to obstruction (see Fig. 402).

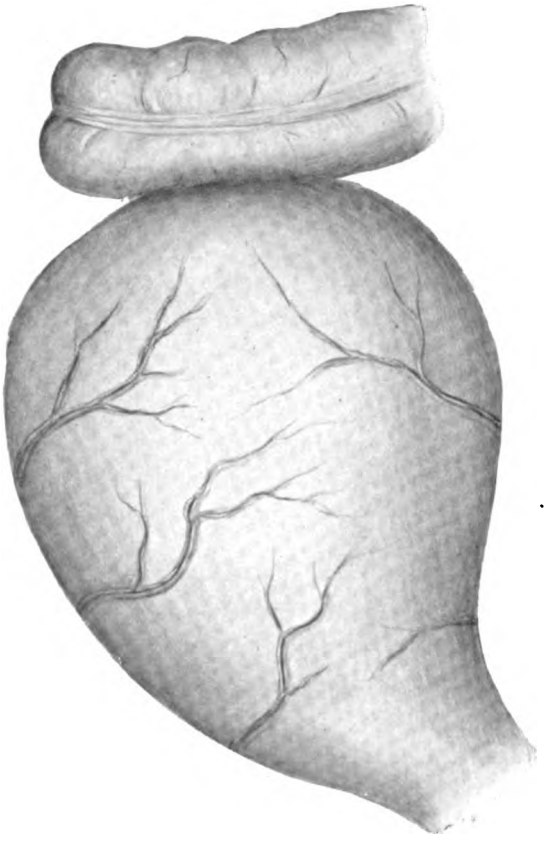


FIG. 402. DILATATION OF THE DISTAL SEGMENT OF THE PELVIC COLON, SUBSEQUENT TO THE REMOVAL OF THE SIGMOID FLEXURE AND UNION BY LATERAL APPROXIMATION. The proximal segment retains its normal size, and the projecting closed end is unaltered.

This experience shows that except in cases of recent sigmoid volvulus with a single loop, all existing modes of treatment are unsatisfactory. In fact, a simple colostomy and drainage of the dilated loop may be as

satisfactory as any of the more radical methods when a large loop exists.

In cases of volvulus, whether of the large or small intestine, in which the general state of the patient or the local conditions are bad, resection of the loop combined with an enterostomy is indicated.

In connexion with sigmoid volvulus may be mentioned the condition in which a long sigmoid loop rises into the abdomen and the upper part again falls, compressing in the angle a coil, or coils, of small intestine. When possible, the loop should in such cases be resected.

What has been said above as to sigmoid volvulus applies with equal force to the treatment of obstruction due to congenital hypertrophic dilatation of the colon, but in these cases it must be borne in mind that a simple colostomy opening in the sigmoid colon may fail to act if the entire colon be involved in the condition.

Prognosis and results. The mortality after operations for volvulus is high, and highest in cases of volvulus of the small intestine. Of the 29 cases contained in the St. Thomas's series 19 died, a mortality of 65.5%. The cases were distributed as follows: sigmoid flexure 9, cæcum 8, ascending colon 5, small intestine 7. The operations performed were—untwisting and fixation: sigmoid 7 with 2 deaths, cæcal 4 with 3 deaths, ascending colon 2 with 2 deaths, small intestine 5 with 5 deaths. Untwisting alone: cæcal 1, fatal; cæcoplication 1, recovery. Primary resection and reunion of bowel: sigmoid 1, small intestine 1; both recovered. Resection and enterostomy: cæcal 3, small intestine 1; all four fatal.

Corner and Sargent (*St. Thomas's Hospital Rep.*, 1903, vol. xxxii, p. 413) state that of 40 cases of cæcal volvulus collected by them, and in which operations were performed, 21 died, a mortality of 52.5%.

OBSTRUCTION PRODUCED BY INTRAPERITONEAL ADHESIONS

Indications. Obstruction by the action of adhesions may be of the most acute form, especially when of the nature of a strangulation beneath a band. When the adhesions are of the broad form, or multiple, complete obstruction may only follow a period of variable length during which signs of chronic obstruction have been noticed.

A history of previous peritonitis, accompanying inflammation of the gall-bladder, vermiform appendix, or the female generative organs; a history of tuberculous peritonitis, a severe attack of enteric fever, or the presence of an old hernial sac may aid in indicating the existence and also the locality of adhesions. In other cases similar information may be afforded by the presence of a scar in the abdominal wall, the result either of injury or a previous surgical operation.

The site of the adhesions may further be indicated in the early stages of obstruction by the position of the initial pain, the existence of localized tenderness and rigidity, and in conjunction with these signs evidence of distension of a circumscribed length of bowel and increased local peristalsis.

Operation. The site of the incision in the abdominal wall is frequently indicated by the history, or local signs; in the absence of reliable evidence of this character, the paramedian subumbilical incision with displacement of the rectus muscle outwards should be chosen.

When the abdomen has been opened the search for the point of obstruction is governed by definite lines: (1) If the history or the local signs have indicated a special region this should be first explored. (2) If this be not the case, the pelvis should first be investigated in the hope of discovering a collapsed portion of the small bowel. If this be found, the gut is rapidly passed through the fingers, each length being replaced as a further is brought out until the source of obstruction is reached. (3) If the cæcum be distended, the sigmoid flexure is first sought, and should the latter prove collapsed, the incision must be prolonged somewhat, to give ample space for the introduction of the hand for exploration of the upper half of the abdomen and remaining segments of the colon.

The obstructing adhesion discovered, it is dealt with according to necessity.

Cord adhesions may pass between neighbouring coils, between coils and the solid viscera, between the gut and the mesentery, or between the intestine and the parietal peritoneum. They should be divided between two pairs of artery forceps, and then ligatured at the base, and any projecting free portion removed.

Broad adhesions are dealt with somewhat differently; if recent they are most suitably separated by gentle pressure with the fingers covered with a piece of gauze, and if there appears to be a chance of reabsorption it is well to separate any adhesions which come into view. When the adhesions are old and of firm cicatricial tissue, it is not advisable to separate more than appear to be necessary to relieve the obstruction The actual process of separation involves risk to the integrity of the intestine, the knife or scissors often needing to be employed, and the bleeding from the torn surface may be difficult to control. Lastly, the raw surfaces are practically certain to acquire new connexions, probably with the development of two adhesions in the place of the one temporarily separated.

Difficulty in dealing with the adhesions may arise from the degree of distension of the bowels present. Under these circumstances the

contents of the bowel should be evacuated by enterotomy (see p. 687). This procedure renders extensive evisceration unnecessary, and much diminishes the immediate risk of the operation. Pelvic adhesions often give rise to the greatest manipulative trouble; considerable advantage in dealing with these may be gained by placing the patient in the Trendelenburg position.

In cases of very acute strangulation, or when the patient comes to the operating table at a late date, simple freeing of the adhesions may not suffice, since the bowel may already be gangrenous, under which circumstance an enterectomy may be necessary.

In other cases the condition may be too bad to allow of an enterectomy being undertaken, and an enterostomy must be performed. The artificial anus will usually be made at the seat of obstruction, but if there is reason to believe that the obstruction is not due to strangulation, and this is especially likely to be the case with recent inflammations, a temporary enterostomy above the seat of obstruction may be the safest procedure. An enterostomy serves to tide the patient over until the toxæmia secondary to the obstruction has been sufficiently removed to allow a more extensive procedure being performed with safety, and minimizes the risks of the immediate operation.

Multiple adhesions, especially such as are met with in tuberculous peritonitis, are often too extensive to be dealt with by separation, and the arrangements of the matted coils too intricate to allow a resection to be performed with safety. In such cases lateral entero-anastomosis is the most suitable method, and more than one intercommunication may be desirable. Entero-anastomosis is also the only resource in cases of adhesion of the intestine to inoperable morbid growths. A single knotted mass formed by intestine which has lain in an old hernial sac may, on the other hand, be resected with advantage.

Prognosis and results. In spite of the comparative simplicity of the operations for separation of adhesions, the form of obstruction due to this cause is a remarkably fatal one. That this in considerable measure depends on too tardy interference cannot be denied, but in many instances, particularly those dependent on internal strangulation, the degree of early toxæmia is striking. Of 102 cases of obstruction from adhesions treated by operation at St. Thomas's Hospital between 1888 and 1907, 64 died, a mortality of 62.7%. In 60 of the cases broad adhesions were the cause, with a mortality of 60%; in 42 band adhesions, with a mortality of 73.8%. The best results are obtained in internal strangulations attacked early, and in recent broad adhesions such as follow on operations, or develop in connexion with appendical abscesses. In the latter form early recurrence sometimes takes place. In any case

in which numerous old adhesions exist, recurrence of the trouble at some future date is not uncommon, and such attacks of obstruction may be many times repeated.

OBSTRUCTION BY ADHERENT VERMIFORM APPENDIX

This is not very uncommon; it partakes in one character with the form next to be described, *viz.* that a double source of danger may exist in gangrene of the constricting tube as well as of the constricted portion of intestine. This danger is, however, in some cases eliminated by the fact that the constricting appendix has previously undergone a process

FIG. 403. STRANGULATION OF A LOOP OF INTESTINE BY A VERMIFORM APPENDIX. The tip of the appendix is adherent to the mesentery at the site of a softened mesenteric gland. H. B. Robinson's case. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum*, No. 1287 A).

of obliteration; while in others, either only a cicatricial band passing from the tip of the appendix is concerned in the strangulation, or the band causes obstruction by tension and kinking, and not by encircling the affected portion of intestine.

Operation. The operative treatment differs from that of cicatricial bands only in the fact that removal of the appendix by the ordinary method should form a part of the operation for the relief of the obstruction.

OBSTRUCTION BY AN ADHERENT MECKEL'S DIVERTICULUM

This persistent remnant of the omphalo-mesenteric duct is found in some 2% of all subjects, but much more frequently in male subjects (86–14, Hilgenreiner).

Indications. Half the patients are children or young adults under twenty years of age, but obstruction from this cause is met with much later. A history of previous temporary attacks of obstruction often exists; this is probably particularly the case when the diverticulum itself is the strangulating agent and not a band passing from it, since the diverticulum forms a comparatively soft and broad constricting ring, and the engaged intestine may escape with changes in the position of the patient and of the abdominal contents. For the same reason the symptoms of obstruction may be comparatively mild. When the patient is seen early local distension and peristalsis may be detected, and local tenderness just above McBurney's point may be elicited. In a considerable number of instances an abnormal degree of scarring at the umbilicus exists.

FIG. 404. STRANGULATION BY A MECKEL'S DIVERTICULUM. A group of coils of small intestine encircled and strangulated by a Meckel's diverticulum, the distal end of which is attached to the mesentery. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum,* No. 1282.)

Operation. A paramedian subumbilical incision, with outward displacement of the rectus, is the best, since the point of origin of the diverticulum from the ileum is usually within thirty inches of the ileocolic valve.

In carrying out the exploration several points should be kept in mind. (1) The probable seat of origin of the diverticulum. (2) The position of its distal attachment. This is most frequently to the mesentery, somewhat less so to the umbilical cicatrix, and rarely to the intestine. With a mesenteric attachment the strangulated coil may lie deeply; when the attachment is to the intestine the obstruction may be due to kinking. (3) The varieties of arrangement which may be present. Thus, the tube varies in length from 2 to 4 to 8 inches; its calibre may equal that of the ileum itself, or be small or irregular. A mesentery may be present; this may be complete with a thick fibrous margin, representing the original omphalo-mesenteric artery. In other instances the mesenteric fold atrophies and disappears, leaving the fibrous cord unattached to the diverticulum, but retaining its original position; or both mesentery and tube may have disappeared, leaving the vestigial fibrous cord alone. (4) The nature of the obstruction is not in all cases a strangulation; in a minor proportion of instances tension by the diverticulum may produce kinking and valvular obstruction of the bowel, while tension, invagination, prolapse, and secondary stenosis of the intestine have all been observed. (5) In some instances signs of obstruction appear to develop secondarily to an acute inflammation of the diverticulum resembling the corresponding condition of appendicitis.

Examination of the lower end of the ileum and the umbilical region of the anterior abdominal wall is the first step in the exploration; if the search here proves unsatisfactory, a certain degree of evisceration may be necessary to expose the seat of obstruction. When the diverticulum has been localized it is usually necessary to separate one extremity, preferably the distal, in order to free the strangulated bowel. If this attachment be to the umbilicus, the same precautions must be taken as if the bowel required to be opened, since a lumen may exist up to the actual point of termination. When the obstructing agent is formed by the band already alluded to, simple division between clamp forceps suffices.

The distal attachment freed, the engaged bowel is examined, and if in good condition replaced. The coil of intestine from which the diverticulum springs is then drawn out of the belly and clamps are applied, either a proximal and distal one, or, where a long mesentery exists, one long clamp may be applied across the base of the loop. The cavity and margins of the abdominal wound are protected by plugs and the diverticulum removed.

Removal is best effected by the application of Kocher's crushing clamp to the base, as in removing an appendix. The resulting stump is ligatured, and sunk by the introduction of a continuous Lembert's or

mattress suture, passed in the transverse axis of the bowel. If the clamp be not to hand, the base, if small, may be crushed with an artery forceps and similarly treated.

When the diverticulum is inflamed and stiffened, the clamp method is inapplicable, and it is preferable to incise the serous and muscular coats and raise them either as a circular cuff or in two flaps. The mucous membrane is then ligatured, and the defect sutured as above described. Should the condition of the mucous membrane, or the width of the base of the diverticulum, preclude the use of the ligature, the opening must be closed by two tiers of sutures passed in the transverse axis of the bowel.

Complications in the performance of the operation may depend either on the condition of the bowel or of the diverticulum itself. Strangulation may have resulted in gangrene of the included loop; in this case an enterectomy will be indicated, unless the general condition of the patient should be such that the performance of a temporary enterostomy alone can be entertained. If the condition has commenced with, or resulted in, inflammation of the diverticulum itself, the latter may readily tear and give exit to highly infective material, or a condition of gangrenous cellulitis may have extended to the ileum. The latter condition may demand an extensive resection such as is occasionally required in cases of gangrenous hernia.

Prognosis and results. The prognosis depends upon the date at which the operation is undertaken, and upon the nature of the obstruction. The chief cause of mortality is peritoneal infection, which in cases of strangulation or inflammatory conditions may have already developed on the second or third day. The local complications already alluded to also obviously depend on the flux of time, and operation is not to be held responsible for deaths from such causes. Of twenty-two operations performed at St. Thomas's Hospital between 1887 and 1908, eight were successful, a mortality of 63.6% occurring, which is 1% higher than that observed in all the cases of obstruction, excluding malignant cases and external hernia. In Hilgenreiner's (*Beit. z. klin. Chir.*, 1902, vol. xxxiii, p. 177; also vol. xl, p. 69) 102 collected cases the mortality amounted to 71.5%.

Strangulation by the Fallopian tube, or by a long pedicle of an ovarian cyst, has been occasionally observed. The portion of intestine included may be small gut, as in Fagge's cases, or the sigmoid flexure. In the latter instance isolated distension of the loop may give rise to a diagnosis of sigmoid volvulus. In such a case of the author's the cyst, having risen into the abdomen from the left ovary, crossed the base of the sigmoid flexure from right to left, and descended into

the pelvis, where it became impacted. The first step consisted in enterotomy for evacuation of the contents of the sigmoid, followed by puncture of the cyst; the latter was readily lifted from the pelvis, the intestine freed, and the emptied cyst was then removed.

Intestinal obstruction due to the presence of ovarian tumours is much more commonly the result of intestinal adhesion to cysts which have become inflamed or of which the pedicle has undergone torsion.

OBSTRUCTION DUE TO STRANGULATION IN ABNORMAL OPENINGS IN THE MESENTERY, OMENTUM, AND BROAD LIGAMENTS

Indications. These forms of obstruction are rare, and the indications for operative treatment are usually signs of an acute nature calling for abdominal exploration.

Operation. *Apertures in the mesentery* are discovered by abdominal exploration, and the treatment consists in delivering the bowel and closing the adventitious opening. Should the constricting margin require incision, the latter should be radial in the course of the main vessels. Experience has shown that the constriction in these cases is usually not very severe in character. Thus, in Stabb's case (*St. Thomas's Hospital Reports,* 1891, vol. xxi, p. 174) two separate loops of intestine, one 5 inches long, and a second 10 inches long, situated 30 and 64 inches from the ileo-colic valve respectively, were readily withdrawn from the circular opening in the mesentery. The strangulated bowel and corresponding mesentery were only slightly nipped, in spite of the fact that the symptoms had been very acute. In Howard Marsh's case (*Brit. Med. Journ.,* 1888, vol. i, p. 1157) again, the intestine was released after stretching the yielding margin of the ring with the finger-nail.

Apertures in the omentum, either traumatic or developed in connexion with disease of the omentum, may give rise to strangulation, but their treatment calls for no special attention.

Apertures in the broad ligament are rare sites of strangulation. In the cases described, a similar slight degree of constriction to that observed with mesenteric apertures has been noted.

Prognosis and results. During the twenty years ending with 1907 5 cases of strangulation in mesenteric apertures, 4 in the classic situation near the ileo-colic junction, and 1 secondary to tuberculous disease in the transverse mesocolon, were admitted into St. Thomas's Hospital. Of these 1 died before operation could be undertaken; the other 4 succumbed after operation, 1 needing resection of gangrenous gut. Prutz ('Die angebornen Lücken und Spalten des Mesenteriums,' *Deutsche Zeitsch. f. Chir.,* 1907, vol. lxxxvi, p. 399) has collected 18 cases treated

by operation, of which 13 died (*72.2%*). Of 6 cases of strangulation in broad-ligament gaps collected by Wilms (*loc. cit.*, p. 362) 1 only recovered.

HERNIA INTO THE RETROPERITONEAL POUCHES

From an operative point of view these herniæ may be divided into two series, an upper and a lower. The first group includes hernia through the foramen of Winslow and the various fossæ in the region of the duodenum and root of the mesentery; the second group, those into the fossæ around the cæcum, the intersigmoid, and the rare hernia into Douglas's pouch.

Upper series. These herniæ possess some special features in common: they are commonly large; they belong to the category in which recurring temporary attacks of obstruction are not rare; they give rise to somewhat characteristic localized distensions of the abdomen in the upper and central areas, and they are to be explored when diagnosed or suspected by an incision giving access to the epigastric and umbilical regions.

The indications for operation are those of acute obstruction of the small intestine, although in the herniæ into the foramen of Winslow the colon may be affected.

Herniæ into the lesser sac of the peritoneum. The most common form is that in which the neck of the sac is formed by the foramen of Winslow. The contents consist most frequently of coils of small intestine, but both small and large intestine have been included, also large intestine alone. The contents of the hernia may be confined to the normal limits of the sac, or they may extend into unobliterated portions of the spaces between the layers of the gastro-hepatic or gastro-colic omenta, or even secondarily penetrate one of these layers from within to re-enter the main peritoneal cavity.

Operation. In the exploration of a hernia through the foramen of Winslow, if the nature of the case be suspected, a paramedian supra-umbilical incision through the right rectus sheath with displacement of the muscle upwards will be the most suitable.

The points which will need consideration during the prosecution of the operation are the following:—

1. The neck of the hernia is first to be explored; this is at the right extremity of the sac, and the distension present will mainly affect the part of the intestine contained within the sac. It may be found that the contained intestine can be withdrawn without much difficulty; in this case the obstruction may have depended on twisting of some of the coils within the sac, or it may be found to depend on a second constriction at

a point in the walls of the omental sac where the contents have made a secondary exit.

2. When the large intestine is included, it has been pointed out by Moynihan that this depends on abnormal mobility of the cæcum, and possibly of the ascending colon due to the presence of a 'common mesentery.' Under these circumstances it may be well to attempt to try and limit this mobility by fixing the cæcum into its proper position by the introduction of sutures between its base and the abdominal wall, or by pleating its mesentery, since an effectual closure of the peritoneal clad ring cannot be made.

3. When difficulty arises in the extraction of the contained bowel, the first step should be the evacuation by enterotomy of its contents, since the strangulated intestine can be readily reached by tearing through the thin omental wall in a convenient position. This will much facilitate subsequent procedures. In Delkeskamp's case the evacuation was effected by merely pressing the contents of the incarcerated cæcum and ascending colon onwards through the hepatic flexure, when the bowel was readily drawn out of the foramen.

The extraction of the bowel has, however, proved impossible, as in the classical case of Treves, where even after death the bowel could not be drawn out until the portal vein, hepatic artery, and the bile duct had been divided. It has been suggested by Moynihan and Wilms (*loc. cit.*, p. 384) that the constricting neck may be enlarged by division of the peritoneum as it passes from the duodenum to the posterior abdominal wall, the incision being carried up to the lower margin of the foramen. This mobilizes the duodenum, and allows of its displacement downwards with some enlargement of the ring.

4. Other forms of hernia into the omental sac need no special measures, the constricting ring formed by the omentum being thin and easily stretched or divided without danger of injury to any important structures.

Hernia of the duodeno-jejunal, parajejunal, and retromesenteric varieties. The most important forms are those which have been conveniently classed by Moynihan under the names of right and left duodenal hernia. For these, a sufficient number of observations have been collected by Moynihan to allow of some definite lines being laid down for operative treatment; the rarer varieties need to be dealt with as the conditions discovered at the moment may suggest.

Left duodenal hernia (hernia into the duodeno-jejunal fossa). A correct diagnosis of the nature of the obstruction in strangulations in the duodeno-jejunal fossa is sometimes possible if the indications first laid down by Leichtenstern be borne in mind. Thus, the presence of a

globular swelling in the mesogastrium; hollowness in the colic area; in thin patients, the detection on palpation of a circumscribed elastic tense globular tumour resembling a large slightly movable cyst extending from the mesogastrium to the left; a sonorous percussion note over the tumour; and possibly the presence of hæmorrhoids, and the passage of blood *per anum;* the last symptoms resulting from obstruction and pressure at the neck of the hernia on the inferior mesenteric vein.

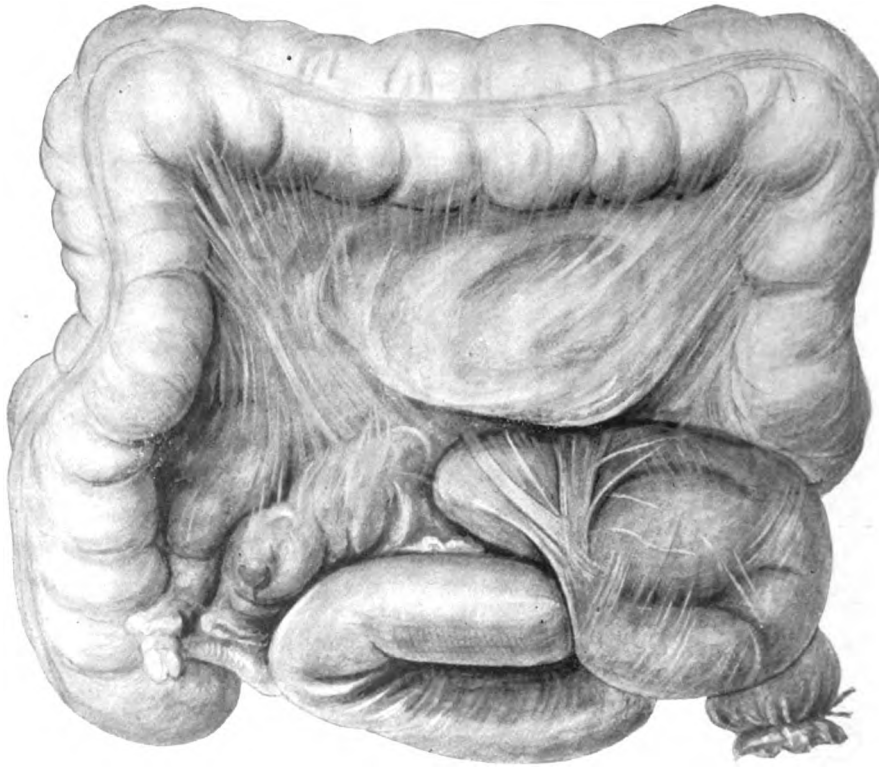


FIG. 405. SMALL LEFT DUODENAL HERNIA. The highest coils of the jejunum are in the sac. The vessels are seen in the neck of the latter. Shattock's case. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum,* No. 1279.)

If the hernia be suspected to be into one of the duodenal pouches a paramedian incision is that most likely to be convenient, and as left duodenal hernia is the most common variety, the incision should be as a rule made through the left rectus sheath.

The size of such herniæ varies enormously; the contents may consist in a single short coil of intestine, or nearly the whole small intestine may be included. As a rule the cases subjected to operation have been

of the larger class, and these are perhaps prognostically the relatively favourable, since in small herniæ the strangulation is apt to be the more acute (see Fig. 405). In the large herniæ the appearance on exploring the abdomen is very striking, since nearly the whole small intestine may be hidden from view. In extreme cases the peritoneum of the mesenteries of the descending and transverse portions of the colon may have been so drawn upon in the development of the sac, that these portions of the large bowel are as it were spread out upon its surface.

In left duodenal hernia the neck lies to the right of the sac, and is situated to the left of the third lumbar vertebra. If the hernia be small the opening retains the normal direction of the mouth of the fossa, looking forwards and to the right. As the hernia increases in size the opening tends to rotate backwards, looking first directly to the right, then directly backwards. In this case it will be necessary for exposure of the neck to drag the sac over towards the left.

FIG. 406. LARGE DUODENAL HERNIA. Escape of a single limb of the bowel. (*Aschoff.*)

The size of the opening does not always correspond with that of the hernia, and may in fact vary inversely, being large with a small sac. The neck is bounded anteriorly by the fold containing the inferior mesenteric vein, and possibly the left colic artery; the posterior boundary is formed by the posterior parietal peritoneum.

Certain peculiarities of this hernia are to be borne in mind: (1) as

a result of the mode of the formation of the neck, the duodeno-jejunal junction may be enclosed within the sac, so that the emerging intestine only is seen (see Fig. 406); (2) the upper portion of the contents may have escaped, leaving perhaps only ileum in the sac, in which event both the entering and emerging limbs will be seen; (3) in large herniæ one or more individual coils may escape from the sac, and again enter the peritoneal cavity. The strangulation may then involve one of such coils and not the main contents of the sac.

In many cases reduction is easy; if this be not the case, the neck of the sac must be cautiously divided at its lower margin, care being exercised to avoid injury to the inferior mesenteric vein or left colic artery. When difficulty is met with, the parietal peritoneum and the anterior wall of the sac itself should be incised, and the intestine drawn forward and emptied. Removal of the sac is usually impracticable, but an attempt to close the neck by suture should be made. Bearing in mind the mode of development of these herniæ, any possibility of re-formation would probably be prevented by a limited fixation of the jejunum to the wall of the abdomen, to the left of the inferior mesenteric vein. Sherren (*Clin. Soc. Trans.*, 1906, vol. xxxix, p. 99) reports a successful case of operation. The vessels occupied the upper and left border of the neck for a short distance only. He divided the neck downwards, removed as much as possible of the peritoneal reduplication, and sutured the edges with catgut.

Right duodenal hernia. In general characteristics this hernia closely resembles the last, except in the fact that the body of the sac and its neck occupy the right half of the abdominal cavity, the sac only spreading to the left when it assumes large proportions. The right variety has not been so often observed; thus Moynihan was only able to collect 17 cases, against 57 of left duodenal hernia.

Operations for the relief of strangulation are to be conducted on the same lines as in left duodenal hernia, but it must be remembered that the sac itself often occupies a lower position in the abdomen, that the neck is at the left end of the sac, but situated to the right of the vertebral column, and that the superior mesenteric artery takes the place of the inferior mesenteric vein in the anterior boundary of the neck. The wandering of the neck of these herniæ appears to be responsible for some of the rare varieties of retromesenteric hernia which have been observed.

Lower series. The herniæ of this series, when strangulated, are commonly to be diagnosed only by abdominal exploration, the indications for operation being symptoms of acute obstruction of unknown cause. The most convenient site for the exploratory incision is subumbilical

through the right rectus sheath, since an opening in this position gives access to all the varieties.

The cæcal region is first to be explored, as the very large majority of the herniæ are to be found here (see Fig. 407). Intersigmoid hernia has only been certainly observed on two occasions (Eve, McAdam Eccles), and the hernia through a diaphragm occupying the entry to Douglas's pouch once (Saniter).

Release of the strangulated portion of bowel is usually easy, and the neck of the sac should be obliterated by suture, if practicable. In herniæ into the ileo-appendicular fossa (the hollow between the ileo-appendicular fold and the mesentery of the vermiform appendix), removal of the appendix serves to completely remove the fossa (Moynihan).

Prognosis and results. Operations in these forms of obstruction are rare. Moynihan mentions five operations for herniæ through the foramen of Winslow with two recoveries. In one fatal (Treves), and in one successful case (Neve), reduction proved impossible. Eight cases of herniæ in the fossa in the neighbourhood of the cæcum with four recoveries, and one successful operation on an intersigmoid hernia (McAdam Eccles), are also recorded by him.

A wealth of information on the subject of these herniæ is contained in Moynihan's work (*On Retroperitoneal Herniæ*, Second Edition, 1906) on the subject, to which the writer has been mainly indebted in the compilation of this short section.

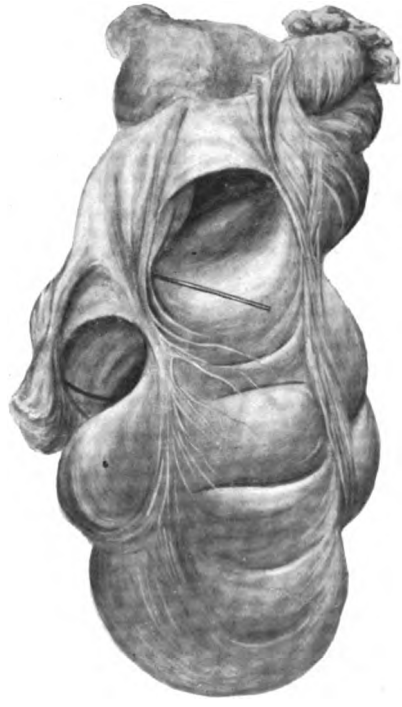


FIG. 407. TWO RETROCÆCAL POUCHES ASCENDING BEHIND THE COLON. The vermiform appendix lies in the lower pouch. (*St. Thomas's Hospital Museum*, No. 1281.)

STRICTURES OF THE INTESTINES

Strictures of the intestine may be congenital or acquired, and are met with in all parts of the intestinal canal.

Congenital stenoses. Of 89 cases collated by Schlegel (Wilms,

loc. cit., p. 140), 29 or 32.5% were duodenal, 54 or 60.6% jejuno-ileal, and 6 or 6.6% colic.

Duodenal stenoses are more common above the level of the papilla of Vater; the signs then resemble those of pyloric obstruction; when the stricture is situated below the papilla the vomit contains bile and pancreatic ferments.

Strictures of the jejunum and ileum may be situated in any part and are sometimes multiple. Ileal strictures may be associated with a persistent Meckel's diverticulum. In the large intestine the ascending colon and the sigmoid flexure are the most common seats.

The condition to be dealt with varies. In the small intestine there may be a complete absence of continuity, the proximal and distal segments may be connected by a fibrous cord, the connecting cord may possess a minute lumen, or the gut may be completely occluded by annular constrictions. In the colon either a thin septum or a complete interruption of continuity is the more common form.

Operation. The possibility of an enterectomy seldom exists, not only on account of the tender age and general condition of the infants, but also on account of the disparity in size between the upper and lower segments of the bowel.

For the high duodenal stenoses a gastro-enterostomy is indicated. In the low duodenal stenoses the dilated duodenum may be connected with the jejunum, the latter being brought through the transverse mesocolon. Murphy advises that the jejunum be divided for this purpose, the free end closed, and a lateral anastomosis made.

For most strictures in a lower position an enterostomy is the only immediate resource, the opening being utilized for purposes of nourishment pending the later establishment of an anastomosis.

Results. The recorded results have not been of an encouraging nature; thus of 25 infants on whom operations have been performed (19 enterostomies, 4 anastomoses) not one recovered (Braun, *Beitr. z. klin. Chir.*, 1902, vol. xxxiv, p. 993).

Acquired stenoses. These may be the consequence of injury, and are then commonly complicated by the coexistence of adhesions. Circular stenoses may develop at the site of a hernial constriction of the gut, at the neck of an intussusception which has sloughed away, or follow an axial enterectomy. In other instances the stricture may follow disease of the wall of the bowel; thus, the cicatrization of stercoral ulcers, the ulceration of enteric fever or dysentery, or tuberculous or gummatous infiltration. Strictures resulting from tuberculous or enteric ulceration are usually situated in the ileum.

Operation. The ideal treatment in cases of stricture consists in some

form of enteroplasty, but this is only applicable to cases in which at least a half of the natural lumen persists, and in the localized annular forms.

The simplest and most satisfactory procedure consists in making an incision in the long axis of the bowel at the antemesenteric margin, 1 to 1½ inches in length.

A single mattress suture is passed through the bowel-wall in such a manner as to include the two ends of the incision. Traction on this stitch allows the two angles to be approximated at a point which corresponds with the centre of the subsequent transverse line of suture. The coaptation stitch may be tied loosely with a surgical knot, and the transverse suture is commenced from above downwards. The latter should be continuous, and carried through all the coats of the intestine; when complete the coaptation stitch may be removed, and the whole line of suture sunk by the introduction of a second tier of continuous Lembert's stitches (see Fig. 408).

Conditions such as the presence of external adhesions, neighbouring diseased tissue, the implication of a considerable length of the bowel-wall, or the presence of multiple stenoses, frequently contraindicate a simple enteroplasty. Under these circumstances, resort must be had either to lateral anastomosis or enterectomy. When the stricture is single, an enterectomy is preferable; when the stenoses are multiple, the obstruction is best relieved by the establishment of a lateral anastomosis. In such cases as those due to tuberculous disease, more than one anastomosis may be required (see p. 765).

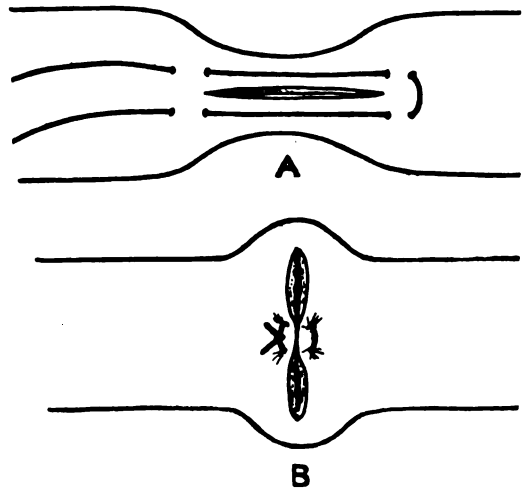


FIG. 408. INTRODUCTION OF A COAPTATION MATTRESS STITCH IN SIMPLE ENTEROPLASTY.

Enterostomy comes under consideration as a temporary measure only in those instances in which the general state of the patient is bad, or the local condition of the intestine forbids for the moment any more satisfactory procedure.

Prognosis and results. The prognosis in cases subjected to either

enteroplasty, enterectomy, or anastomosis should be good, but many patients come into the hands of the surgeon having already developed serious complications. This is well illustrated by the series of 9 cases included in the St. Thomas's table, of which only 1 recovered. Five were strictures of the small intestine, of which all died. In 3 of the fatal cases the operation was indicated by peritoneal infection resulting from spontaneous perforation. The remaining 4 cases were situated, 1 in the ascending colon, 2 in the sigmoid colon, and the fourth in the upper part of the rectum. Sargent has collected (*Ann. of Surg.*, 1904, vol. xxxix, p. 733) 18 cases of cicatricial stricture consequent on strangulation of the intestine in hernial sacs. On 11 of these operations were performed, 4 dying, a mortality of 36.3%. Three enterectomies recovered, also an enterostomy followed by anastomoses. Two enteroplasties were successful, and one of two lateral anastomoses. Three enterostomies were followed by death.

The bad prognosis experienced in the treatment of stenoses depends on the fact that premonitory symptoms of chronic obstruction have been overlooked or remained untreated, since the surgical treatment of a cicatricial stricture is in itself unattended by serious difficulty or danger.

OBSTRUCTION BY BILIARY OR INTESTINAL CALCULI

Intestinal calculi are rare; they occur twice as frequently in men as in women.

Obstruction by biliary calculi is more common, the stone passing either by the duct, or by ulceration from the duct into the duodenum, transverse colon, or, rarely, the stomach. Those that pass into the colon seldom give trouble, but several cases of sigmoid obstruction are on record, and occasionally stones may be retained near the anus for some time. Large stones entering the duodenum more often give rise to intestinal obstruction.

Indications. The occurrence of obstruction is sometimes preceded by a history of gall-stone colic, but this may be absent. The attack presents peculiar features due to the fact that the source of obstruction is of a shifting nature. Initial pain is followed by free vomiting, which may entirely evacuate the contents of the alimentary canal above the impacted calculus. This feature, together with the fact that the primary obstruction is high, renders distension of the abdomen uncommon. A remission of the primary symptoms may therefore occur, followed by a recurrence when the progress of the moving stone again ceases. The arrest of the stone may give rise to considerable enterospasm, or even be followed by a moderate degree of intussusception. The symptoms are

accompanied by resistance in the lower abdomen, sometimes localized to the right iliac fossa, and the absence of distension occasionally allows the stone to be actually palpated.

Operation. A right paramedian subumbilical incision with outward displacement of the rectus is most suitable. Search for the stone is commenced by examination of the lower ileum, the most common point of arrest. If the termination of the ileum be collapsed, the bowel is rapidly searched in an upward direction. In this particular, however, it should be borne in mind that the stone is readily felt, and the introduction of the hand into the abdomen usually allows of its localization at once, which may save considerable unnecessary manipulation of the bowel.

Certain other possibilities are to be borne in mind with regard to the point of arrest. This may be determined by the presence of local adhesions of the external surface of the bowel, or by the existence of a stenosis. Thus, in a case of tuberculous disease Mayo Robson found a gall-stone above a stenosed portion of the bowel. Again, the stone may be impacted on the proximal side of a hernia, or indeed within the confines of the hernial sac itself.

When the stone has been localized it should be passed backwards from the point at which it has been arrested, to avoid incising the bowel at a damaged spot, and the coil of gut containing it is drawn well out of the abdomen.

A long retaining clamp is applied to the base of the coil, or a small clamp is applied on either side of the stone, and the peritoneal cavity and the wound in the abdominal wall are protected by the insertion of gauze plugs. A longitudinal incision is made in the wall of the bowel at the antemesenteric aspect of sufficient extent to allow the stone to be expressed. The wound in the bowel is closed by two rows of sutures, an inner through and through, and an outer of continuous Lembert's or a series of mattress stitches. If the incision be of moderate length it is best united in the transverse axis of the bowel. The exposed coil is now thoroughly cleansed, the retaining clamp and the gauze plugs are removed, and it is returned into the abdomen.

In some cases it may prove easy to pass the stone upwards into the colon, and if this is the case, and the bowel-wall is in good condition, it is the best plan to adopt.

When the stone has been removed it may exhibit one or more facets, suggesting the existence of a second calculus. Under these circumstances the surgeon should satisfy himself that a second stone is not concerned in the production of obstructive symptoms, but a too exhaustive search in the region of the gall-bladder is undesirable, since by it adhe-

sions between the gall-bladder and the bowel may be disturbed, leading to leakage and consequent peritonitis.

The occurrence of a period of latency in the symptoms is responsible for a certain proportion of these cases coming under the notice of the surgeon at a late date; hence, the intestine in the neighbourhood of the stone may have become gangrenous. An enterectomy is then indicated, or if the condition of the patient forbids this, an enterostomy must be established. This eventuality, in the case of the small intestine, is naturally to be avoided if possible.

Results. The results of operations for the removal of gall-stones are steadily improving, and the mortality of 40% will no doubt be materially reduced as operations are more generally undertaken at an early date.

FÆCAL IMPACTION

The simple retention of fæces may sometimes give rise to complete intestinal obstruction, but it is rare that the condition calls for surgical measures, apart from the cases in which the impaction is due to the obstruction of a narrowed portion of the bowel by a mass of hardened fæces.

The condition is most frequently met with in patients afflicted with general enteroptosis, the subjects of severe chronic constipation, the old, or the feeble-minded.

When the obstruction is complete, is accompanied by vomiting, and has proved resistant to every other means, an abdominal exploration may become necessary. Two methods of treatment then exist. The obstruction may be found to depend on the impaction of separate hardened masses, especially in the sigmoid flexure, which by manipulation may be passed downwards in the colon. If this method fails, a temporary colostomy must be established.

CHAPTER XVI

GENERAL LINES OF TREATMENT OF DIFFUSE PERITONEAL INFECTION

DIFFUSE peritoneal infection may rarely be of hæmatogenous origin; occasionally it results from the entry of organisms by the Fallopian tube; in other instances the infection results from the migration of organisms through an intestinal wall, the vitality of which is lowered by acute distension usually accompanied by an increase of toxicity of the contents of the bowel; but as affecting surgical treatment its genesis is more common in connexion with a gross perforation of some portion of the gastro-intestinal canal than from any other cause. Certain definite lines should guide the technical treatment of the condition, with minor variations depending upon the stage to which the process has attained, the nature and situation of the occasioning primary lesion, and the variety of the organism concerned.

Indications. It may be broadly laid down that cases of acute diffuse peritoneal infection accompanied by effusion demand prompt surgical intervention, the objects of the aid afforded being the relief of the mechanical tension which favours absorption, and the provision of a free channel of exit for the infective material from the peritoneal cavity.

Need for some discrimination in the application of this indication is obvious, and very great difficulty may arise in arriving at a correct decision if more than thirty-six hours have been allowed to elapse after the occurrence of the initial infection. Exceptions to the rule may be made: (1) When the incidence is accompanied by so severe a degree of shock as to render the increase likely to follow an operation prohibitive of success, especially when the infection is in the region of the gall-bladder or in the lower abdomen. (2) When the condition has been allowed to remain untreated beyond a period of forty-eight hours, and any signs indicating localization are developing.

Operation. For some details as to the preliminary preparation of the patient for these operations, reference may be made to p. 807. The site of the primary incision will in some cases be determined by a previous diagnosis of the seat of the occasioning lesion; if doubt exists

as to the nature and situation of the latter, the paramedian subumbilical incision should be chosen for the exploration.

The locality of the primary lesion should, if possible, be first determined. If it be practicable to deal with this in such a manner as to prevent any further supply of infective material, as by the suture of a wound or perforation, or sometimes by the removal of an inflamed organ, as a suppurating Fallopian tube or an infected ovarian cyst, this step should form an integral part of the operation. It is rare for a case of diffuse peritoneal infection to terminate favourably when the surgeon remains in ignorance of the initial origin of the condition; still, the state of the patient may preclude any more extensive procedure than the mere evacuation of the peritoneal effusion and the establishment of drainage, and this defective operation is preferable to the maintenance of a purely expectant attitude, since a recovery occasionally follows.

Methods of dealing with the effusion. The mere act of opening the peritoneal cavity allows the escape of a considerable amount of fluid in some cases, which may be supplemented by the introduction of a syphon tube if desired. Further steps are guided by definite rules, the essential spirit of which is the occasionment of as little disturbance of, and damage to, the peritoneum as possible. In the removal of effusion, all possible delicacy of manipulation is to be observed; the fluid should be literally *absorbed* by the introduction of soft dry sterile gauze strips into cavities made by gentle displacement of the intestine. No *scrubbing* is allowable, since this both favours immediate absorption and increase in toxæmia, and the formation of ulterior adhesions. Care should be at the same time exercised to avoid favouring absorption by the exposed tissues of the wound in the abdominal wall, which should be protected as far as possible by holding forward the margins of the peritoneum and the application of a gauze covering during the intraperitoneal manipulations.

When the infection is quite recent, the fluid consists mainly of reactionary peritoneal effusion, which should be absorbed by sterile swabs with as little disturbance of the contents of the abdomen as possible. If it be due to a perforation of the stomach or duodenum, escaped contents of the viscera require to be removed, and this process may need somewhat widespread examination of the hepato-renal pouch and the under surface of the diaphragm. In such cases reactionary peritoneal effusion has usually gravitated into the pelvis, either over the great omentum, or along the course of the ascending colon, according to the position of the primary lesion. If this be the case it is usually perfectly safe, when the perforation is not of more than twenty-four hours' standing, to neglect the intervening portion of the abdominal cavity and

simply remove the fluid which has collected in the pelvis from a second hypogastric incision.

When the infection is of longer standing the difficulties may be greatly increased by the addition of peritoneal adhesions, and the fact that a part of the effusion will be much more highly infective than the remainder. When this is the case, it is preferable, if possible, to first absorb the peripheral less highly infective portion of the effusion and then protect the general peritoneal cavity with plugs before dealing with the area immediately surrounding the primary lesion, which may be to a certain extent localized. The surrounding effusion will otherwise serve as a medium for the wide diffusion of the more highly infective matter. This is especially liable to be the case in infections from the appendix or Fallopian tubes.

As a general rule the less existing adhesions are interfered with the better, since their disturbance favours local absorption and wider diffusion of the infection. Their separation can serve no useful purpose in preventing the formation of permanent adhesions, but rather favours the development of more resistant ones. None the less if it is found that adhesions include localized collections of pus, as may be the case when the condition is only attacked at a late stage, liberation of the confined pus is a matter of necessity if the operation is to be of permanent benefit.

Certain infections are less liable to be accompanied by the formation of adhesions than others; thus they are generally absent in the presence of streptococcus, usual in the presence of bacillus coli communis, common in gonococcal peritonitis, and variable when pneumococcus is the organism. In the last-named infection the condition may vary from a general bathing of the whole abdominal contents in pus without a single adhesion, to the presence of such sharply localized collections of pus in the lower abdomen that the sensation of a localized cyst may be experienced on examination.

Washing with saline solution, or other fluids, should be restricted to portions of intestine which may happen to be without the confines of the abdominal cavity; occasionally it is well to wash out a localized area of the cavity which has been serving as the seat of an operation, the remaining portion being protected with gauze plugs. Under all circumstances general flushing of the peritoneal cavity is to be avoided, as likely to enlarge the area of infection, and to favour the absorption of both bacteria and toxins. The importance of this rule, especially when portions of the cavity are affected from which diffusion is not as a rule free, such as the right hypochondriac region, the right iliac fossa, or the pelvis, is very great. Evisceration for the purpose of cleansing the intestines and the peritoneal cavity is still more strongly to be depre-

cated, since to the objections already raised to the process of flushing must be added great increase of shock, increase of distension of the exposed coils, and a definite lowering of their vitality.

Peritoneal Drainage. In early peritoneal infections, such as those met with in perforations of less than twenty-four hours' standing, drainage may be dispensed with, provided the initial lesion has been satisfactorily dealt with. Under these circumstances the peritoneum is perfectly capable of dealing with the degree of infection which has already taken place. When actual suppuration has developed drainage is desirable.

The question then arises whether drainage from a single opening or the introduction of several tubes after multiple incisions of the abdominal wall is indicated. Generally speaking, a single drainage aperture at a dependent spot is to be preferred if adhesions are not present.

It is to be remembered that the efficient action of a peritoneal drain is seldom continued beyond a period of twenty-four hours; again, that if adhesions are not already present, the immediate effusion tends to gravitate towards the pelvis if the patient be placed in a suitable position. The passage of any but strictly local effusion by a drainage tube ceases at a period corresponding to that at which gravitation of the general effusion also ceases to continue. Hence the action of a drainage tube, except as a purely local matter, is of short duration and utility.

Any advantage to be gained by the use of multiple incisions is therefore highly doubtful, and they should only be employed when large irregular localized collections are met with. Thus, while the advantage of separate drainage of the two iliac fossæ in appendical infections crossing by the pelvic route, or where the effusion is more or less localized in both loins, cannot be denied, yet, in general infections unaccompanied by the presence of adhesions, a single tube inserted deeply into the pelvis is much to be preferred to multiple incisions with a series of tubes emerging from the flanks and loins.

The most effective drainage is obtained by the use of large-sized rubber tubes, but when it is desired to maintain a free opening for more than twenty-four hours, it is well to supplement the tube by the passage of a gauze plug by its side; or, where two tubes are inserted in different directions from the same opening, by the introduction of a gauze plug between them so as to preserve a temporary potential space. The plugs are of use as acting by capillarity, and still more by maintaining a sufficiently free separation of the margins of the abdominal wound, which tend to rapidly contract around a simple tube. It is to be constantly borne in mind that the presence of a drain involves the formation of surrounding adhesions, hence the large gauze tampons formerly used freely

are to be avoided. The employment of such large plugs, inserted for instance in the pelvic cavity, may lead to the formation of adhesions between as much as a fourth of the whole extent of the small intestine with all its attendant risks and inconveniences.

Enterotomy and enterostomy. In some cases of peritoneal infection accompanying acute obstruction of the intestines, and in perforative infections of some standing, great distension of the bowel combined with paresis of the wall may be present. In such cases evacuation of the contents of the bowel may be desirable, either for convenience in manipulation in dealing with the site of the initial lesion or for the replacement of escaped bowel. For these a temporary enterotomy suffices. In others a marked degree of paresis of the intestinal wall, together with a highly toxic condition of the intestinal contents, may render it desirable to establish a temporary enterostomy. For this purpose a Paul's tube may be tied in, or, if it be considered that a mere vent will suffice, the method of Witzel may be employed (see p. 689).

After-treatment. The patient should be placed in the 'almost sitting position' of Fowler. To maintain this attitude, which resembles that obtained by the use of the double inclined plane, a pillow is placed beneath the knees and fastened by webbing attached to its two ends to the posts at the head of the bed, and support is afforded to the feet. The position eases the respiration, and favours gravitation of the peritoneal effusion into the less absorbent area afforded by the pelvic peritoneum. Passage downward of the fluid is also helped by the general peristaltic movements of the small intestine.

Vomiting. That due to the anæsthetic may be treated by copious draughts of warm water, to which is added a drachm of bicarbonate of sodium. By this method the after-effects of chloroform absorption are combated, and the stomach is washed out automatically. Irritability of the stomach may be quieted by the administration of cocaine in quarter to half-grain doses, or by the administration of a couple of drops of tincture of iodine in a wine-glassful of water. In more severe cases, especially if there be distension, gastric lavage may be resorted to with much benefit.

Feeding. Should vomiting persist, feeding by the mouth is useless; in any case, nothing but sips of warm water only are to be allowed during the first twelve hours. Later it is best to commence with albumen water, whey, or milk and soda-water. To these may be added some of the various patent foods, and meat extracts after the first twenty-four hours. Thirst in the early stages is best met by infusion of normal saline solution *per rectum.*

Rectal infusion. Infusions of normal saline may be given at inter-

vals, or the continuous method of Murphy may be employed. If the interrupted method be chosen, a pint of fluid may be given with a funnel and tube every four hours.

When practicable the continuous method is to be preferred. A convenient apparatus is shown in Fig. 409. Murphy objects to a regulating clip on the syphon tube; he says it prevents reflux to the cistern if expulsive efforts are made by the patient, and that escape takes place by the anus and the patient's bed is wetted. The delivery tube is fixed by strapping to the patient's thigh.

The fluid should be kept at a temperature of 100° F., and the flow so regulated as to allow the supply of about one and a half pints in two hours. The flask needs to be elevated only a few inches above the level of the patient's buttocks. By this method some eighteen pints may be introduced in the twenty-four hours, but watch must be kept on the patient's pulse to see that it does not become too full, and care must also be taken that pulmonary œdema is not produced.

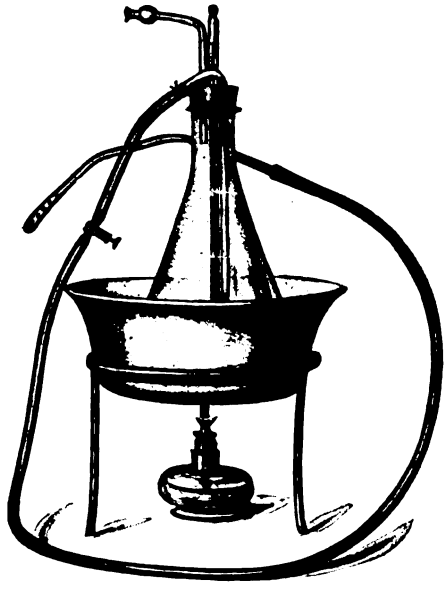


FIG. 409. FLASK PROVIDED WITH THERMOMETER, BLOW TUBE TO START THE SYPHON ACTION, AND DELIVERY TUBE TO RECTUM. It is placed in an iron basin containing water, beneath which a spirit lamp is arranged.

The infusion relieves thirst, combats shock, quiets the patient, and by favouring free renal excretion aids in the elimination of toxins and organisms from the general circulation.

While normal salt was originally used, surgeons for the most part now use ordinary tap water heated to body temperature. Where there is much depletion and acidosis is threatened, 5% glucose solution or sodium bicarbonate may be added to reduce the acidity. In urgent cases where enteroclysis is not available or where fluid in addition to this seems inadvisable even as a primary measure in severe cases of dehydration from vomiting or other causes, Kanavel has advised the administration of normal salt or alkaline solution by continuous hypodermoclysis. This is advocated since the administration of normal salt at stated intervals calling for the reinsertion of the hypodermoclysis

needles distresses the patient and entails much work on the part of the surgeon. He states that the following technique has been satisfactory.

The ordinary hypodermoclysis set is used with the exception that the needles are much finer than are those commonly attached and provision made so that the solution can be shut off from either needle. The needle chosen is four inches in length, No. 20. The assistants are impressed with the fact that no pain must be given the patient either during the insertion of the needles or the administration of the solution. To obviate this the skin is blistered with a few drops of novocaine (½ per cent solution) using the finest hypodermic needle, then a few drops of the same solution is forced along the course we expect the needle to follow in the deeper tissue. The point of a fine, sharp hypodermoclysis needle is then placed against the skin and gently rotated with firm pressure. This carries the needle in absolutely without pain. After being in place, the head is wrapped in gauze so that the flange does not touch the skin and cause pressure and the needle is fixed in position with adhesive plaster. The solution is kept warm by frequently refilling the can or using a sterile hot water bottle in the can. The solution is allowed to drop in slowly, never distending the tissue to the point of pain. Whenever the patient says there is a sense of fullness, the rubber tube on that side is shut off.

In this manner continuous normal salt solution has been given for three or four days with no discomfiture or ill consequences to the patient. It has been used in children without the slightest complaint on their part. Its use has become a routine in all cases of persistent vomiting and toxæmia as peritonitis, ileus, pernicious vomiting of pregnancy, toxic nephritis, septicæmia, etc. In debilitated patients the needles have been inserted and hypodermoclysis begun at the beginning of an operation and the patient has been returned to bed with the needles in place and the administration continued indefinitely. It is used supplementary to rectal administration of tap water and in those cases where, owing to the nature of the operation, *e.g.* intestinal resection, this could not be used. By this method a seven-year-old child suffering from paralytic ileus was given 40,000 c.c. over a period of three days. In another case much dehydrated from persistent vomiting 13,000 c.c. were given in forty-four hours (Kanavel, *Surg. Gyne. Obst.*, Oct., 1916, p. 483).

In cases where the heart is growing weak there has been at times a tendency to water-logging of the tissue. Therefore such cases are watched carefully so that, on the one hand, this will not occur and, on the other, we shall not overload the circulation and strain the heart.

To combat acute dilatation of the stomach and persistent vomiting

of any type continual stomach lavage combined with the above has proved of great benefit. He describes his technique as follows:

For surgical purposes a stomach tube modified from the Einhorn and Rehfuss types has been devised. This modification is necessary since we wish a tube that can be inserted in the stomach and left in position days if necessary; moreover, the tube should be one that can be introduced without the active co-operation of the patient, since it should be available even though the patient be nauseated and vomiting continually or be still anæsthetized (see Fig. 410).

The tube and its carrier are constructed as follows: The bulb is of the same size as the Rehfuss bulb except that the lumen of exit is larger and it is so constructed that it is impossible for the wire carrier to slip out. The rubber tubing is of the same size as the Rehfuss tube but only

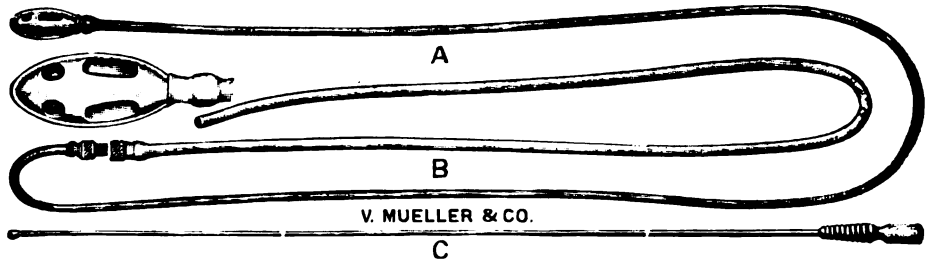


FIG. 410. STOMACH LAVAGE TUBE, BULB, AND WIRE CARRIER. (*Kanavel.*)

30 inches long, being attached to a second heavier tube 25 inches long by a screw lock. A carrier of piano wire is made to fit the first tube so that it can be introduced without difficulty. The second tube is attached after the removal of the carrier and the contents of the stomach aspirated or siphoned off.

If the patient will swallow the tube, the lumen of exit of the bulb being larger than the Rehfuss tube, the stomach contents can be aspirated with greater freedom and the mucus interferes less. This latter is of considerable importance in post-operative lavage when the mucus is generally considerable and interferes even with this tube at times. It will be seen that the bulb is so constructed that the point of the wire carrier cannot slip out of the bulb and injure the stomach. Owing to the shortening of the rubber tubing, there is less probability of the collapse of the tube upon suction and there is less difficulty in removing the carrier. This latter procedure is also aided by having the patient throw his head back, thus lessening the sharp angle in the tube.

The tube described has proved of signal benefit in the vomiting of peritonitis or persistent vomiting from any cause as well as being of

great aid in the routine examination of stomach contents for diagnosis. In the former instance the tube is either introduced by the surgeon, or is swallowed by the patient. It is then attached to the chin by a piece of adhesive plaster and may be left in for days. In the regurgitation incident to peritonitis, the stomach contents are aspirated every half-hour to an hour and at regular intervals the stomach is washed out by injecting soda solution, or other liquid, through the tube and aspirating it. Between the washings the end of the rubber tube attached is placed in a basin with the end covered by fluid so that a continuous siphonage takes place. The retention of the tube is without discomfort, while the absence of stomach distention and vomiting gives the greatest relief to those distressed patients.

Fluid may be left in the stomach or medication given if desired.

Sleep. Insomnia is mainly due to toxæmia, and the use of saline infusion, and sometimes of sera or vaccines, may be of help. Morphia, as hindering free excretion and favouring the occurrence of intestinal distension, is to be avoided. The introduction of fifteen grains of aspirin into the rectal infusion is often useful, and if hypnotics are used, either veronal or sulphonal is perhaps the least objectionable.

Distension. Intestinal distension in late cases is often beyond the limits of treatment. When not due to complete atony, gastric lavage and the alternation of an occasional enema containing from half to one ounce of turpentine may help. Again, the passage of a rectal tube often allows the escape of flatus in considerable quantity. Hypodermic injections of eserin salycilate, gr. 1/100, often favour intestinal peristalsis, as do also small repeated doses of calomel, ½ or 1 grain, which at the same time help intestinal asepsis. In bad cases large doses (up to one ounce) of sulphate of magnesia are useful.

Sera and vaccines. The acute nature of the disease restricts the early employment of sera to stock preparations. Polyvalent sera of bacillus coli communis, streptococcus pyogenes, or pneumococcus may be useful. The first injection should be made before the patient leaves the operation table. The routine inoculation of a culture tube in all cases renders it practicable to prepare a special vaccine which may be substituted for the serum later if desired.

Dressings should be frequent if discharge is free, and the surface of the abdomen should be carefully cleansed on each occasion. Drainage tubes must be retained as long as any discharge persists; they should be shortened rather than diminished in calibre prior to removal, when they have been retained for more than a couple of days. A small gauze plug may be substituted when the tube is finally removed.

Results. Those obtained by the surgical treatment of diffuse peri-

toneal infection due to perforations have been already referred to under the special sections devoted to that subject (pp. 669, 673, 678, 682, 803). A general numerical computation from statistical records can hardly serve any practical purpose, since authors differ so widely in their views as to what is to be designated 'diffuse' infection.

The prognosis in any given case depends upon the nature of the infection, upon its duration, upon the extent of peritoneal surface involved, and upon the locality infected. Thus streptococcic and bacillus pyocyanic infections prove almost uniformly fatal, the rare staphylococcic are somewhat less serious, while infections by bacillus coli communis and the gonococcus are comparatively favourable. Pneumococcus infections may be rapidly fatal, or in other cases tend to localize themselves securely and lead to moderate sized abscesses. A large proportion of all peritoneal infections are of a mixed character. The treatment of acute infections of more than thirty-six hours' duration is unpromising, and when more than one-third of the peritoneal cavity is involved the prognosis is very unfavourable. Infections of the central area of the abdomen occupied by the small intestine are especially dangerous on account of the rapidity with which diffusion is effected by the peristaltic movements of the bowel, while in such comparatively quiet situations as the right hypochondrium and the right iliac fossa diffusion takes place more slowly, and localization develops more readily. Systemic absorption is much more rapid and abundant from the upper abdomen than from the pelvis.

INDEX

Abdomen, exploratory opening of the, rarely necessary, 634
Abdominal disease, hyperalgesia as an aid to diagnosis in, 643
organs, viscerosensory reflex of, 643-648
pain, confusion of thought in relation to, 643
serious, significance of, 638
wall, cellulitis of the, a complication of iliac colostomy, 707
closure of wound in the, in repair of intestinal injuries, 668
wound, suture of the, after operations for diseases of the stomach, 556
zones, description of, 659
Abduction, after operation for ankylosis with sinuses after hip-joint disease, 254
after operation for tuberculous disease of the shoulder-joint, 199
essential in the after-treatment of excision of the hip-joint, 242-247
hip-splint, description of, 242-244
Stiles's, photograph of, 242
Stiles's, applied after excision of the joint, photograph of a child with, 243
method of maintaining, during the dressing after excision of the hip-joint, photograph showing, 244
splint, use of, after operation for osseous ankylosis after hip-joint disease, 253
use of, after tenotomy of the adductors, 249
Thomas's, use of, after excision of the hip-joint, 245
Abscess, appendical, local, operations for, mortality after, 806
after appendicectomy, formation of secondary, 796
Abscess and sinuses, the result of tuberculous disease of the hip-joint, operations for, 254
rest in the treatment of, 254
bone, staphylococcal, differentiation of, from chronic tuberculous abscess, 122
following excision of elbow, 196
intraperitoneal, treatment of, 759
intrathoracic, operation for, 169
in tuberculous disease of the ankle-joint, treatment of, 205, 211
femur, treatment of, 146
hip, treatment of, 240, 241
jaw, lower, operation for, 157, 158
upper, and malar bone, operation for, 159
ribs, treatment of, 173-175
scapula, treatment of, 199
ulna, diaphysis of the, operations for, 139
wrist-joint, treatment of, 187
lingual, acute, operations for, 455
after-treatment, 455
local, previous occurrence of a, an indication for appendicectomy, 781
lumbar, route of, 800
pelvic, operations for, 800
peri-appendical, operations for, 797
perisplenic, operation for, 803
pharyngeal, operations for, 499
popliteal, resulting from tuberculous osteomyelitis of the femur, treatment of, 143, 144
posterior mediastinal, treatment of, 169
prevertebral cervical, development of, 165
thoracic, operation for, 166
retrocæcal, incision for, 799
retrocolic, operation for, 803
retro-peritoneal, 759, 760
retro-pharyngeal, of intra-pharyngeal origin, 500
extra-pharyngeal origin, 500
acute, operations for, 500

Abscess, secondary to tuberculous disease of the spinal column, course of, 160
spinal, aspiration of, 173
curettage of, 172, 173
development of, 165
origin generally tuberculous, 499
subhepatic, operation for, 801
subphrenic, operation for, 802
tuberculous, chronic, differentiation of, from Brodie's abscess, 122
iliac, operation for, 171
lumbar, operation for, 169
of the diaphysis, 124
skull, operation for, 155, 156
under the pectoralis major, operation for, 173
Absorption, systemic, rapidity of, in relation to location of peritoneal infection, 852
Accidents and after-consequences of enterectomy, 758
from nasal injections of hot paraffin, 380
Acetabular cavity, formation of a new, in arthroplasty of hip, 105-108
Acetabulum, involvement of, in tuberculous hip-disease, 240
partial obliteration of the, after dislocation of hip-joint, 112, 113
primary seat of tuberculous disease of the hip-joint in some cases, 233
Acetonæmia, influence of starvation upon occurrence of post-operative, 492
Acidosis after operation for peritoneal infection, rectal infusion for, 848
Actinomycosis an indication for appendicectomy, 783
Acute appendicitis, operations for, mortality after, 804
Adams's operation for Dupuytren's contraction, 426
osteotomy of the femur for ankylosis with malposition, 250
Adduction, marked, in old healed cases of hip-disease, advantage of open division of adductors for, 250
Adduction, with lameness, tenotomy of the adductors best method of treating, 248
Adductor muscles, tenotomy of the, 247
Adenoids, removal of, before staphylorrhaphy after infancy, 276
Adenoma, lingual, removal of, 459
Adrenalin, use of, in hemorrhage after operation for cleft-palate, 282
gastro-enterostomy, 616
chloride, use of, in recurrent or secondary hæmorrhage after removal of the upper jaw, 312
injection of, antidote for shock, 312
Advancement flaps in the treatment of face injuries, 448
Age in relation to: carcinoma, lingual, 467
cleft-palate operations, 271, 272, 275
duodenum, perforations of the, 675
elbow, after-treatment of excision of the, 195
fæcal impaction, 842
hypopharyngeal tumours, 519
os calcis, operation for tuberculous disease of the, 203, 204
patella, operations for fracture of the, 64
plastic surgery, 354
skin grafting, 365
spinous processes, depth to which they are split in Albee operation for Pott's disease, 162
webbed fingers, operations for, 419
Ala nasi, restoration of the (Legg), cut showing, 387
by a flap taken from the cheek, cut showing, 388
same side of the nose, 386
Alæ nasi and columella, relation of cancer of upper lip to, 293
and side of the nose, operations for restoration of the, 384
Albee operation for Pott's disease, 160
processes in, cuts showing, 161
Albert's method of jejunostomy, 691
Alcoholics, characteristics of lingual carcinoma in, 466, 467
Allingham's bobbin, 738

Almond oil, lime water, zinc oxide, and carbolic acid, in the treatment of burns, 441
Aluminium acetate in the treatment of burns, 441
Alveolar margin of upper jaw, early spread of cancer of upper lip along the, 292
process, deformities of the, correction of, 348
fracture of the, avoidance of, in the operation for cleft-palate, 275
involvement of, in tuberculous osteomyelitis of the upper jaw and malar bone, 159
resection of, for deformity due to scar contraction, 349
processes, normal development of, after operation for cleft-palate, 272
'Ambrine' in the treatment of burns, 441
wax method (W. O. Paraffin No. 7) in the treatment of burns, 444
Amœbic dysentery, appendicostomy for (Ewart), 692
colostomy for, 695
Amputation for ankylosis with sinuses after hip-joint disease, 253
Barker's coat-sleeve circular, in appendicectomy, 790, 792
for tuberculous disease of the knee-joint secondary to a focus in one of the bones, 223, 244
osteomyelitis of metacarpo-phalangeal joint, 152
tuberculous osteomyelitis of the phalanges of the foot, 153
of finger for tuberculous osteomyelitis of interphalangeal joint, 152
of supernumerary digits, 423
Anæmia, a sign of bleeding from chronic gastric ulcer, 636
yellow, a sign of cancer of the stomach, 641
Anæsthesia for, Crile's block dissection, 486
removal of the tongue, general, 468; local, 468
tonsillectomy, 492
Anæsthesia, light, in operation for cleft-palate, 277
local, for jejunostomy, 691
infiltration, for operation for intestinal obstruction, 807
Anæsthetic, choice of, for operations for lingual carcinoma, 468
use of, for cleft-palate operations, 277
for hare-lip, operation, 259
Anastomosis, antiperistaltic, in posterior gastro-enterostomy, cuts showing, 610, 611
intestinal, artificial aids to, 737
end-to-end, 719
end-to-side, 734
lateral, *see* Lateral intestinal anastomosis, 740
simple lateral, 764
operation, 766
prognosis and results, 771
of stomach and jejunum, 573, 577
'Angle, mesenteric,' *see* 'Mesenteric angle'
splint after operation, lateral view (Blair), cut showing, 342
showing flanges drilled for bolts, and also bicuspid teeth removed at operation (Blair), cut, 342
Ankle, excision of the, by Kocher's external J-shaped incision, cuts showing, 206, 207, 209
six years after operation, skiagram showing result of, 211
and foot, operations for tuberculous disease of the, 200
Ankle-joint, arthrodesis of the, 49
arthrotomy and drainage of the, 45
for acute suppurative arthritis, 45
for fractures into the, 46
for fractures of the astragalus, 46, 49
for Pott's fracture, compound, 47; recent, 47
simple, of long standing, 48
excision of the, 50, 204
operations upon the, 45
for tuberculous disease, 204
after-treatment, 212

Ankylosis of elbow-joint, division of, in arthroplasty, 26
excision for, 18
following excision of the elbow, 196
of the hip, in faulty position, arthrotomy for, 92
osseous, following hip-joint disease, operations for, 250
after-treatment, 252
knee in the flexed position, cuneiform resection for, 84, 230
in a faulty position, excision for, 77, 84
shoulder, excision for, 35, 38
following conservative treatment of tuberculous disease of the shoulder-joint, 197
predisposition to, abduction after excision of hip favouring, 247
temporo-maxillary (Murphy), 331
diagnosis, 332; operation for, 333
operative complications, 338
post-operative treatment, 338
with adduction, tenotomy of the adductors for, 248
with sinuses after hip-joint disease, operations for, 253
Annandale's cases of operation for subluxation of the inter-articular fibro-cartilage of the temporo-maxillary joint, 318
Anorexia a sign of cancer of the stomach, 641
Anterior gastro-enterostomy (Wölfler), 598, 613
and posterior gastro-enterostomy, relative merits of, 620
Anterior tarsectomy, complete, 200
triangle lymphatic glands, exposure of, in operations upon the angle of the mouth, 292
triangle, preservation of contents of, Butlin's statistics in forty-four cases of, 488
question as to removal of contents of, in lingual carcinoma, 491
Anti-colon bacillus serum, injection of, after appendicectomy (Makins and Sargent), 795
effects of, 759
Antiseptics, use of, after operations upon the tongue, 455, 458
preparatory to operations for lingual carcinoma, 468
after tonsillectomy, 497
Whitehead's operation, 472
in diarrhœa after gastro-enterostomy, 620
intestinal, use of, preparatory to operation for stercoral fistulæ, 774
Antrum, distension with pus and granulation tissue of, care necessary to exclude possibility of, in diagnosis of malignant growth of upper jaw, 301
Anus, artificial, appendix used as (Keetley), 692; closure of, question of, 695, 696, 718, 719
establishment of, in malignant disease, 718
growth of rectum or pelvic colon, 694
failure to act of, 708
lateral anastomosis preliminary to the closure of, 765
lumbar, disadvantage of, 697
Marro's method for making, 703
operations for, 776
cæcal, advantages and disadvantages of, 698
colic, advantages of, 693
imperforate, disadvantages of inguinal colostomy for, 708
Aperients, use of, after operations upon the stomach, 559
Apparatus for anæsthetization by the intra-tracheal method (Boyle and Gask), 469
limiting degree of flexion after operations for fracture of the patella, 71
rectal infusion, cut showing, 848
stomach lavage (Kanavel), 850
Appendicitis, *see* Appendicectomy
Appendicectomy, 780
adhesions after, formation of, 797
complications and sequelæ, 795
for abnormal meso-appendix, 782
abscess in upper regions of abdomen, 800
actinomycosis, 783
appendicitis, 780
acute, 780, 792

Appendicectomy for chronic appendicitis, 781
complicating mucous colitis, 782
foreign body in the appendix, 782
malignant disease, 783
pelvic abscess, 800
peri-appendical abscess, 797
perisplenic abscess, 803
previous local abscess, 781
recurring appendicitis, 781
retrocolic suppuration, 803
subhepatic abscess, 801
tuberculous disease, 783
indications, 780
in quiescent intervals, 787
McBurney's incision for, 783
mortality of, 804
prognosis and results of, 803
rectus-sheath incision in, 785
Appendicostomy, 691
operation, 692
Appendix, vermiform, adherent, intestinal obstruction by, 827
affection of, maximum point of hyperalgesia for, 646
dyspepsia, 641
freed, removed, and stump ligatured, cuts showing, 791
operations upon the, 780
perforations of the, in enteric fever, treatment of, 681
positions of the, common, 787
removal of the, 790
sunk, cut showing, 792
tender, meaning of, 643
Apposition stitches, use of, in suturing flaps, 359
Arcades, anastomotic, vascular, injury of, 673
interruption of, 745, 757
cut showing, 744
Arm-bath, use of, in drainage of elbow-joint, 13
Arm, flaps derived from the, 415
Arthrectomy, definition of term, 7
for diffuse tuberculous disease of the synovial membrane of the knee-joint, 216
Arthritis, suppurative, arthrotomy for, 3
acute, of the ankle-joint, arthrotomy and drainage for, 45
elbow, arthrotomy for, 13
modified excision for, 18
Arthritis, suppurative, chronic, of hip-joint, excision for, 100
septic, of hip-joint, excision for, 92
of the knee-joint, arthrotomy and drainage for, 59
intractable, question of excision for, 77
of the shoulder, drainage in, 28
pyæmic, gonorrhœal or rheumatoid, bony or fibrous ankylosis of the temporo-maxillary joint resulting from, excision of the condyle of the lower jaw for, 319
tuberculous, of the hip-joint, relative value of conservative and operative measures in the treatment of, 232
Arthrodesis, ankylosis in paralyzed and flail joints, for production of, 6
operation, 7
of the ankle-joint, 49
elbow, 21
knee, excision for, 77, 83
shoulder, 41
Arthroplasty, 5
after-treatment, 6
of the elbow (Murphy), 23
for complete bony ankylosis between the humerus and ulna in a position of complete extension (Murphy), cuts showing, 22
hip (Murphy), 103
cuts showing, 104-111
jaw (Murphy), for ankylosis, 333
knee (Murphy), 85
articular surfaces of femur and tibia ready for insertion of interposing flap, subpatellar flap prepared (Murphy), cuts showing, 87, 88
bone and anterior flap relations at completion of operation (Murphy), schematic, cuts showing, 90
external tibio-femoral flap inserted and outer end of internal patella flap (Murphy), cut showing, 89
freeing ankylosed patella from femur with 'artist' chisel,

Arthroplasty: (*Cont.*)
interposing flap prepared (Murphy), cut showing, 87
freeing tibia from femur with curved chisel, interposing flap prepared (Murphy), cuts showing, 86
overlapping of internal and external interposing flaps (Murphy), cuts showing, 89
shoulder, 29, 34
(Coville), 42
(Murphy), 42
Arthrotomy, 3
and drainage of the ankle-joint, 45
and drainage of the elbow, 13
ankle-joint, fractures, 46
technique, 47-49
and drainage of knee-joint, 59
and drainage of the shoulder-joint, 28
for tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 189
for abscess resulting from tuberculous disease of hip-joint, 254
of the hip, 92
of the knee, external, 216
for tuberculous disease of the synovial membrane of the knee-joint, 215
production of chemical inflammation of knee-joint preparatory to, 225
stage of excision of the knee by Kocher's external, slightly J-shaped incision, cuts showing, 217, 218, 221
stage of Kocher's excision of the hip, cut showing, 236
Artificial aids to enterectomy, 737
anus, 776
operation, 776
prognosis and results, 779
Arytæno-epiglottic fold, tumour of the, removal of, 511, 512
involvement by lingual carcinoma of the, operative measures generally contra-indicated in, 467
Asepsis essential to success of plastic surgery, 354
Ashurst, *see* Harte and Ashurst
Aspiration of spinal abscess, 173
Aspirin in the treatment of diffuse peritoneal infection, 851
Astragalus, a caseous tuberculous focus in the head and neck of the, skiagram showing, 205
excision of the, 46, 49, 50
technique, 51
exposure of the, cut showing, 52
fracture of the, arthrotomy for, 46, 49
operations for, 49, 50
removal of the, cut showing, 53
in whole or in part, in excision of the ankle-joint, 208, 210
shaping of the, in operation for tuberculous disease of the ankle-joint, 208
and ankle, skiagram showing result of excision of the, nine years after operation, 212
and os calcis together with the soft parts of the heel, removal of, 213
Astringents, use of, in diarrhœa after gastro-enterostomy, 620
Atropin, injection of, preliminary to tonsillectomy, 492
Auricle, plastic operations on the, 388
Axial union in operation for artificial anus, 777
after enterectomy for obstruction, 813
in enterectomy, 719
operation, 720
operation for intussusception, 817
volvulus, 821
Murphy's button in, 739
of transverse colon in colectomy, 752
Axilla, abscess in the, a complication of tuberculous osteomyelitis of the ribs, 175
quadrilateral space in the posterior wall of the, boundaries of the, 128, 129
Azygos artery, ligature of, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 220

Bacillus coli communis, peritoneal adhesions in relation to, 845
infection, prognosis of, 852
pyocyanic peritoneal infection, prognosis of, 852

Back, skin grafting on, less frequently successful than on limbs, 365
Balfour operation for partial gastrectomy, 579
Ballanger's method of tonsillectomy, 497
Banks, Mitchell, tube, use of, in ulcerative colitis, 696
Bardenheuer's method for overcoming the disadvantage of the free communication between the nasal cavity and the mouth in removal of upper jaw, 310
of treatment of tuberculous acetabulum, 240
Barker's coat-sleeve circular amputation in appendicectomy, 790, 792
case of volvulus of the bowel after gastro-enterostomy, 620
flushing gouge, use of, in operations for pharyngeal abscess, 499, 500
spoon, use of, in operation for iliac abscess, 172
upon the hip-joint, 241
theory concerning drainage after resection of the hip, 241
Barnard's (Harold) method for drainage of the knee-joint, 59, 60
of operation for perisplenic abscesses, 803
subphrenic abscess, 802
Barnsley's case of bursting of wall of sigmoid colon, 708
Battle's incision for appendicectomy, 786
Beck-Jianu operation for repair of defects of lower end of œsophagus, 552
Beck's bismuth paste, injection of, in case of suppuration, 348
Beckmann's use of cartilage splint in bone transplant in nasal depressions, 379
Bed-frame (Bradford), use of, after operation for spinal abscess, 173
Beef jelly, use of, after operation for cleft-palate, 281
Beesly (Lewis S.) on the advantages of abduction after excision of the hip, 246
Belt, abdominal, use of, in gastroptosis, 629
Bending at or near the seat of operation for excision of the knee in children, 228-230
Bergmann's (Von) Clinic, statistics of complete removal of the upper jaw in, 313
Bergmann's (Von) method for improvement of deformity of receding chin, 330
Berry and Guiseppi's reports of results of repair of intestinal injuries, 670
Beyea's operation for gastroptosis, 631
cut showing, 632
Bicarbonate of soda, use of, for pain of chronic gastric ulcer, 639
Biers cupping in the treatment of suppuration of facial wounds, 452
Bigelow's method for reduction of dislocation of hip-joint, 112
Bilateral exclusion (Intestinal), 766
Biliary calculi, intestinal obstruction from, 840
Biniodide lotion, use of, in excision of the hip for suppurative arthritis, 103
Bircher's method of trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 545
Bismuth meal, use of, in diagnosis of cancer of stomach, 641
obstruction at the cardiac inlet of the stomach, 635
Bite, open, *see* Open bite
Blair, Vilray P., on Correction of Development or Acquired Deformities of the Lower Jaw, 339
Blair's cases of operation for obliquity of the chin, 348
description of the Rose operation for hare-lip, 263
modification of the Gunning splint for use in operations upon the jaws, cut showing, 348
saw, use of, for cutting bone in operation upon the lower jaw, 341
Blanket suture in the treatment of face injuries, 451
Block dissection, Crile's, 486
Bloodgood's method of suture in the removal of the sigmoid flexure, 756
Blood-vessels, plastic operations upon the, 353

Blood, vomiting of, significance of, in intestinal injuries, 664
Bobbins, an aid to enterectomy, 738
Bone, adjusting the, after removal of bone sections in submucoperiosteal operation for protrusion of the lower jaw, 343; cuts showing, 342, 343
adjusting the, in operation for retraction of the lower jaw, 345
bobbin, decalcified, 738
cutting forceps (Murphy's), cuts showing, 334
cutting the, in operation for retraction of the lower jaw, 343
in submucoperiosteal operation upon the lower jaw, 342
in transmucoperiosteal operation for protrusion of the lower jaw, 340
drill for wiring fragments of patella, cut showing, 67
extraction of, piecemeal, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 307
forceps, use of, in excision of the lower jaw, 322
in excision of the condyle of the lower jaw, 320
in removal of the upper jaw, complete, 307, 308
partial, 314
in osteoplastic resection of the upper jaw, 315
graft, in the treatment of face injuries, 447
malar, *see* Malar bone
marrow, importance of, in bone grafts, in Albee operation for Pott's disease, 163
or cartilage, transplantation of, in obliquity of the chin, 347
plates, formation of, in Hibbs's operation for Pott's disease, 164
section in Langenbeck's osteoplastic resection of the upper jaw, lines of, cut showing, 316
removal of the upper jaw, lines of, 306; cut showing, 307
transplant in nasal depressions, 379
Bones, fat transplants into, results of, 393
fixation of the, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 220, 222
long, tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphyses of the, operations for, 121
metacarpal, tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, operations for, 152
after-treatment, 153
metatarsal, tuberculous disease of the, operations for, 154
of finger, removal of, in operation for webbed fingers with osseous union, 423
sawing of the, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 219
the short long-, tuberculous osteomyelitis of, operations for, 151
tuberculous affections of the, operations for, 121
and joints, tarsal, operations upon the, 50
Bönnecken's metal splint, use of, after resection of the lower jaw, 324
Boot, high, means of compensation for shortening after excision of the hip, 247
building up of sole of, a means of compensation for shortening of opposite leg after excision of the knee in children, 228
Boracic acid solution, use of, after operation for cleft-palate, 281
Boric lotion, use of, in infection following removal of the upper jaw, 312
ointment in the treatment of burns, 441
preparations, use of, in operation for hare-lip, 263
Bougie, use of, in excision of an œsophageal diverticulum (Butlin), 527
for determining position of foreign body in the œsophagus, 530
in the treatment of stricture of the cardiac orifice, 635

Bow saw, use of, in operation for tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 193
in operation for tuberculous disease of the knee, 219
Bowel, closed ends of, secondary giving way of, 760
Bowel, *see also* Intestines
Bowels, sudden action of, significance of, in intestinal rupture, 664
Bowlby's case of first successful suture for perforation in enteric fever, 682
Box-splint, use of, after operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the tibia, 148
Bradford bed-frame, use of, after operation for spinal abscess, 173
bed-frame, use of, after operation for tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 256
Bradford's case of thrombosis causing intestinal obstruction, 812
Brain, avoidance of injury to, in operation for temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 333, 338
defects, fat transplants in, 393
Brandy, use of, after gastrostomy, 566
Braun's observations concerning jejunal ulcer, 618
Bread and milk, use of, after operation for cleft-palate, 281
Breathing, difficulty of, after operation for hare-lip, measures for alleviating, 262, 263
Brewer's case of perforating intestinal ulcer, 716
Bridge flaps in the treatment of face injuries, 449
nasal, *see* Nose, bridge of the
Broad adhesions in intestinal obstruction, treatment of, 825
Brodie's abscess, differentiation of, from tuberculous abscess of bone, 122
Bronchitis, a sequela of appendicectomy, 797
Brophy needle for operation for cleft-palate, 274
operation for cleft-palate, 271
Brophy's theory concerning the diameter of the roof of the mouth in cleft-palate, 272
time for operating upon cleft-palate, 271
Brown's case of severe ectropion of the lip corrected by flap taken from the arm, 396
Brunner and Haagn's cases of operation for intestinal obstruction due to thrombosis, 814
Bryant (J. D.), on advisability of preliminary ligature of the external carotid, in complete removal of upper jaw, 304
Bryant's method of trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 539
Buccinator lymphatic glands, exposure of, in operations upon the angle of the mouth, 292
removal of, in the formation of a new upper lip after operation for cancer, 294
in operation for cancer in the centre of one side of the upper lip, 295
Buck's extension, use of, after arthroplasty of hip, 109
Bullæ following burns, etiology of, 439
treatment of, 441
Bullets, intestinal injuries caused by, nature of, 671
Burghard, Fred^c. F., on Operations for Non-tuberculous Affections of Joints, 3
Burghard's colostomy pins, cut showing, 702
method for operation for congenital dislocation of the hip, 114
removal of the synovial membrane in papillary non-tuberculous synovitis of the knee, 63
Burghard and Cheyne, *see* Cheyne and Burghard
Burns, constitutional effects of, 439
diagnosis, 440
prognosis, 440
symptoms, 438
treatment, 440
Burns and scalds, 438
Butlin's observations concerning statistics and special points of operations for lingual carcinoma, 487
operation for excision of chronic disease limited to the border of the tongue, cuts showing, 457
report of cause of death in colic carcinomata, 746

Buttock, pocket on, in operations for contractions of the fingers, 425, 426, 430, 431
Button, Murphy's, 731

Cachexia, a sign of cancer of the stomach, 641
Cæcal hernia, 837
Cæcostomy, 697
Cæcum delivered, appendix freed from its mesentery, in appendicectomy, cut showing, 791
fixation of, in operation for cæcal volvulus, 822
removal of the, 747
volvulus of the, 822
Calculi, biliary or intestinal, obstruction by, 840
Calomel, use of, after operations upon the stomach, 559
in intestinal distension, 851
Cameron's (Sir Hector) use of mattress suture in operations for fracture of the patella of long standing, 73
Cancer, *see also* Carcinoma
Cancer at the inner or outer canthus of the eye, distribution of, similar to that of cancer in the lips, 296; removal of, 296
of the duodenum, an indication for gastro-enterostomy, 599
face, operations for, 287, 296
forehead, excision of, 296
lips, operations for, preliminary measures for, 288
large, removal of, 295
recurrence of, due to V-shaped incisions, 290
originating in any part of the lips, angle of mouth, or skin over cartilaginous part of the nose, method of extension of, 287
in the lower lip, operations for, 289
and angle of the mouth, large, not involving the inferior maxilla, 296
upper lip, small, necessary steps in removal of, 293
in the centre of one side of the upper lip, small, necessary steps for excision of, 294
lips and face, operations for, 287
three stages of, 289
Cancer, lip and face, operations for, precautions necessary against the possibility of transplanting malignant cells during, 289
of the floor of the mouth, operations upon, 474, 480, 483
naso-pharynx, excision of the upper jaw for, 301
stomach, 640
diagnosis of, from simple ulcer, 640
physical signs, 641
treatment, 641
upon the angle of the mouth, operations upon, 291
pyloric, involvement of the duodenum in, 568
mode of spreading of, 567, 568
removal of, factors determining, 567
Canthus of the eye, operation for cancer at the, 296
Capsule, lateral, suture of the, for fracture of the patella, 71
Carbolic acid, mouth wash, use of, preliminary to operation for cancer of the lips, 288
use of, in the disinfection of tuberculous sinuses, 127, 141, 253
in operation upon lower lip, 290
the angle of the mouth, 292
for tuberculous osteomyelitis, 124
and alcohol, in operation upon the hip-joint, 241
lotion, use of, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 308
Carcinoma, columnar-celled, complete removal of the upper jaw for, 301, 304
enterectomy for, mortality statistics of, 763
of the appendix, 783
of the cæcum, common characteristics of, 747
of the colon, report of a series of, 743
anastomosis for, mortality statistics of, 772
ascending, together with corresponding 'lymphatic area,' Dobson's description of removal of, 749

Carcinoma of the intestine, colostomy for, 694
methods of enterectomy for, 717
of upper jaw, excision for, 301, 304
œsophagus, Bircher's operation for, 545
jejunostomy for, 688
thoracic œsophagus, 537
sigmoid flexure, 754
stomach, duodenostomy or jejunostomy for, 597
inoperable, first performance of jejunostomy for, 688, 691
partial gastrectomy for, 596
tongue, operations for, 469, 472, 476, 482
operative statistics, 488-490
questions concerning, 465, 466, 467, 487, 489, 490, 491
rate of growth of, 466
and lymph glands, simultaneous removal of, 469
'Carcinoma, post-cricoid,' 506
Carotid artery, external, ligature of the, preliminary, to complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
removal of one-half of the lower jaw, 325
Carron oil, use of, not advisable in the treatment of burns, 441
Cartilage or bone, transplantation of, in obliquity of the chin, 347
splint, *see* Splint, cartilage
value of, in face injuries, 446, 447
Carwardine's intestinal clamp, 656, 657
Castor oil, use of, after operations upon the stomach, 559, 566
Catgut, use of, for intestinal suture, 655
sutures, use of, after removal of half of lower jaw, 327
for suturing flaps, 357
Cauterization of cancer of the lips preparatory to operation, 288
Cautery, use of, in gastric ulcer (Balfour), 587
actual, use of, in operations upon the pharynx, 504
Caustics, corrosion of gastric mucosa by, gastro-enterostomy for, 599
Cavities, bony, paraffin injections for filling, 381
Cellulitis a possible sequela of removal of the upper jaw, 312
of the abdominal wall, a complication of iliac colostomy, 707
tongue, operations for, 455
spreading, a complication of operations for malignant pharyngeal tumours, 504
Celluloid plate, results of use of, in face injuries, 446
thread, use of, for intestinal sutures, 655
Cervical abscess, prevertebral, operation for, 165
glands, secondary deposits in, generally a contra-indication to operation for complete removal of upper jaw, 303
œsophagectomy, 535
history, 536
indications, 535
operation, 536
results, 537
œsophagostomy, 535
after-treatment, 535
difficulties of, 535
indications, 535
operation, 535
œsophagotomy, 529
after-treatment, 534
dangers, 535
difficulties, 534
operation, 532
Cervix uteri, viscerosensory reflex of, 643, 644
Cheatle, G. Lenthal, on Operations for Cancer of the Lips and Face, 287
Cheatle's cases of cancer of the lower lip, operative statistics of, 296
investigations concerning degrees of displaceability of the bowel, in relation to bullet apertures, 672
method of axial union between two narrow portions of bowel, 726; cut showing, 725
Cheek, closure of a defect in the, by gliding a flap from the submaxillary region, cuts showing, 410
superimposed flaps, 412

Cheek, closure of a small defect in the, by a flap taken from the skin over the masseter, 414
Gussenbauer's operation, 415
Israel's method, 412
plastic operations on the, 404
restoration of a defect in the, large, cuts showing, 408, 409
Cheiloplasty, 394
Chemotaxis resulting from burns, 440
Cheyne's (Sir Watson) dissector, use of, in tenotomy of the adductors, 249
method of operation for saddle-back nose, 377
restoring the bridge of the nose, cuts showing, 378
operation for osseous ankylosis after hip-joint disease, 252
report of rupture of small intestine by bullet not penetrating the skin 673
Cheyne and Burghard's preference for partial removal of the jaw to osteoplastic resection, 317
H-shaped incision, in operation for diffuse tuberculous disease of the synovial membrane of the knee-joint, 216
statement as to desirability of operation, for tumour of slow growth of upper jaw, 302
theory concerning importance of preservation of continuity of the lower jaw in the removal of an epitheliomatous growth, 321
method of reflecting the muco-periosteum of the palate in removal of upper jaw, 311
removal of the patella during excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 224
treatment after operation for tuberculous disease of the shoulder-joint, 199
Chiene's method of operation for prevertebral cervical abscess, 165
Child with abduction splint applied after excision of the hip-joint, photograph showing, 243
Children, continuous hypodermoclysis for, 849
gastro-intestinal infection of, maximum point of hyperalgesia in, 647
mortality statistics of enterectomy for sarcoma in, 763
operation for tuberculous disease of the os calcis in, 204
report of operation in perforation in enteric fever in, 682
Chin, obliquity of the, methods for improvement of, 346-348
Chinese twist, use of, for intestinal sutures, 654
Chinosol, use of, after removal of half of lower jaw, 327
before complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
Chisel, use of, in arthroplasty of hip, 105, 106
Chloroform, administration of, for cleft-palate operations, 277
hare-lip, operation, 259
in first dressing after operation for hare-lip, 261
for operation for intestinal obstruction, 807
anæsthesia, for removal of the tongue, 469
in tonsillectomy, 492
Chlumsky's investigations concerning the line of extension of post-operative infection, 652
observations concerning the union of intestinal wounds, 760
Cholecystitis, maximum point of hyperalgesia for, 646
Christian Science, use of, for relief of appendix dyspepsia, 642
Chronic ulcer of the tongue, cuts showing, 456
Cicatrices in the various structures after arthrotomy, non-correspondence advisable, 5
Cicatricial deformities after injuries, operations for, 431
Cicatrix after McBurney's incision, 783
Circumflex nerve, avoidance of injury to, in operation for tuberculous disease of the shoulder-joint, 198, 199
Clamp, bayonet-shaped, use of, in excision of gastric ulcer, 584
crushing, on the stomach, cut showing (Mayo), 576

Clamp, Hartmann's, cut showing, 741
Kocher's appendix (Corner's modification), cut showing, 790
crushing, cut showing, 771
right-angled, rubber-covered, value of, in operation for partial gastrectomy, 582
Clamps, application of, in axial union of intestine, 720, 721
applied, preparatory to gastro-enterostomy, 574
cut showing, 572
intestinal, 655-657
Cleanliness of stomach and jejunum, importance of, in abdominal operations, 555
Cleft-palate, operation for, 272
time for, 271
and hare-lip, operation on palate prior to that on the lip, 272
pressure in the treatment of, 271
Closure of cut ends of bowel in enterectomy, 730
Cocaine after operation for diffuse peritoneal infection, 847
intestinal obstruction, 809
Coffey's operation for gastroptosis, 633
Coins in the œsophagus, removal of, 530
Cold, applications of, in the treatment of recurrent or secondary hæmorrhage after removal of the upper jaw, 312
Colectomy, difficulties of, 741
in the operation for perforation in diverticular disease, 684
magnitude of operation, factors influencing, 746
technique of, 741
Colic in abnormal conditions of the mesentery of the appendix, 782
Colic artery, left, avoidance of injury to, in operation for left duodenal hernia, 836
middle, avoidance of injury to, in partial gastrectomy, 580
vessels, avoidance of injury to, in colostomy, 699
Colitis, appendicostomy in, 692
catarrhal, relief of, by colostomy, 693, 694
mucous, appendicitis complicating, 782
colostomy for, 695
ulcerative, colostomy for, 695
Collapse from perforation of gastric ulcer, 637
Colles's fracture, badly united, opening of wrist-joint in, 9
Collodion dressing after operation for hare-lip, 261, 262, 263
in the treatment of face injuries, 451
Colo-colostomy, disadvantages of, 766
some positions in which it may be performed, cut showing, 765
Colon, ascending, removal of the, 747
or transverse, volvulus of, 822
carcinoma of the, anastomosis for, mortality statistics of, 772
Clogg's report of a series of cases of, 743
congenital hypertrophic dilatation of the, treatment of, 824
idiopathic dilatation of the, 758
description of, 660
descending, removal of the, 753
lymphatics of the, description of the, 742; cut showing, 744
perforation of, in enteric fever, 680
transverse, and the flexures, removal of, 751
Colostomy, 703
ascending, 697
complications, 707
cup and belt, cut showing, 706
with receptacle, 703
difficulties, 706
for diverticular disease, 683
fæcal impaction, 842
Hirschsprung's disease, 758
malignant disease of the bowel, 718, 719
perforation in malignant disease, 684
sigmoid volvulus, 823
iliac, 700
Lilienthal's method, 704, 705
lumbar, 697
prognosis, 710
results, 710
transverse, 699
unilateral exclusion as a substitute for, 769
Colotomy and colostomy, 693
Colour of living skin-grafts, 372
dead skin-grafts, 372

Columella, base of, removal of the, in operations upon the upper lip, 293
formation of the, 376
from the upper lip, 387
dorsum of the nose, 388
Condy's fluid, use of, after operation for cleft-palate, 281
Condyle of the lower jaw, excision of the, 319
prevention of recurrence of bony ankylosis after, 321
Congenital dilatation of the colon in relation to sigmoid volvulus, 822
dislocations of the hip, operations for, 113
fæcal fistula, 773
idiopathic dilatation of colon, 758
stenosis of pylorus, operation for, 625
post-operative care, 628
Connell's method of union of the transverse colon, 726
Constipation, chronic, ileo sigmoidostomy for, 772
unilateral exclusion for, 769
in relation to fæcal impaction, 842
perforation of stercoral ulcers and diverticular disease, 683
sigmoid volvulus, 822
intractable, appendicostomy for, 692
Continuous Lembert's suture, 653, 654
Contour, importance of, in the treatment of face injuries, 445
Contraction, Dupuytren's, *see* Dupuytren's contraction
flaps, allowance for, 409
intestinal, a difficulty in iliac colostomy, 707
of the fingers, acquired, operations for, 424
probable after repair of cicatricial deformity of the face, 391
tendency to, after operation for webbed fingers, 418
Contracture resulting from burns, 440
Coprostasis, clamps for, 655
Cord adhesions in intestinal obstruction, treatment of, 825
Corner's modification of Kocher's appendix clamp, 790
Coronary artery, ligature of the, 573
cut showing, 571
Coronoid process, fracture of, in dislocation of the elbow-joint, 16
Cosmetic considerations secondary in removal of malignant growths of upper jaw, 304
Costal cartilage, exposure of the, for transplantation to chin, 347
Costo-transversectomy, (Ménard), 167
Coughing, control of, after transthyreoid pharyngotomy, 513
reflex, abolishment of, preparatory to tonsillectomy, 493
Coxa vara, arthrotomy of the hip in, 92
avoidance of, after operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the femur, 142
cuneiform osteotomy in, 94
Creaking in the knee-joint after repair of the crucial ligaments, 62
Crile's block dissection, 486
Crucial ligaments, removal of, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 218, 219
repair of the, 61
Crusts or scabs, removal of, after operation for hare-lip, 270
Cuneiform osteotomy of the neck of the femur, 94
resection, for ankylosis of the knee in flexed position, 84, 230
Cunéo's description of gastric lymphatic system, 567
Cunéo and Borrmann's investigations in relation to the involvement of the duodenum by gastric cancer, 568
Cunning's case of restoration of a large defect in the cheek, 409
Curettage in tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 191
tuberculous abscess, iliac, 172
elbow-joint, 191
hip-joint, 240, 241, 254, 255
knee-joint, 223
of the ribs, 174
prevertebral, cervical, 166
shoulder-joint, 198
spinal, 172, 173
Cushing's modification of method of introduction of needle in continuous suture, 654
Cyanide gauze, use of, in operation upon the lower lip, 290
angle of the mouth, 292

Cyst, lingual, due to persistent thyreoglossal duct, 461
ovarian, pedicle of an, intestinal strangulation by a, 830

Davis's (Staige) experimental work with cartilage, 446
'Dead end,' avoidance of, in removal of the sigmoid flexure, 758
Deafness in syphilitic affections of the palate, 416
Death due to peritoneal infection following enterectomy, 758
most common causes of, after complete removal of the upper jaw, 313
Defect in the cheek, *see* Cheek, closure of defect in the
Deformities after tuberculous hip-joint disease, operations for, 247, 250
Deglutition, re-establishment of normal, after transthyreoid pharyngotomy, 513
Dental plate in the stomach, removal of, by gastrotomy, 560
treatment essential before prosthesis for repair of resection of the lower jaw, 324
Dental-surgeon, advice of, essential in correction of deformities of the alveolar process, 349
and surgeon, necessity of co-operation between, in face injuries, 444
Dentist's services necessary, in the removal of a section of lower jaw, 323
Dent's (Clinton), pyloroplasty for pyloric stenosis, 599
Denture, use of, after removal of the upper jaw, 310
Depressions after removal of upper jaw, paraffin injections for filling, 381
De Quervain's reports on results of cervical œsophagectomy, 537
Descending colon, removal of the, 753
Dextrine, use of, in plaster of Paris case, 245
Diabetes in relation to skin grafting, 365
Diagnosis in abdominal disease, hyperalgesia as an aid to, 643
importance of the study of, in gastric disorders, 634
Diaphyses of long bones seat of election for tuberculous focus, 121
primary tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, operations for, 121, 122
Diarrhœa a sequela of gastro-enterostomy, 620
bloody, a symptom of intestinal obstruction due to embolism, 812
symptom of intussusception, 814
Didot's operation for webbed fingers, 422; cuts showing, 421, 422
Dieffenbach's forceps, Makins's modification of, 657
incision for the complete removal of the upper jaw, 309
operation for restoration of upper lip, 400
results of removal of the upper jaw, 312
Diet, importance of, after gastro-enterostomy, 619, 620
operation for cleft-palate, 281
in the treatment of chronic gastric ulcer, 638
of pyloric ulcer, 640
preliminary to tonsillectomy, 492
Digital divulsion, *see* Divulsion, digital
Digits, supernumerary, operations for, 423
Dilatation of the colon, congenital hypertrophic, treatment of, 824
of the distal segment of the pelvic colon, subsequent to the removal of the sigmoid flexure and union by lateral approximation, 823
Diploë, exploration of, during operation for tuberculous myelitis of the skull, 156
Diplopia result of complete removal of upper jaw, 303
Disinfection of the skin preparatory to operation for fracture of the neck of the femur, 96
arthrotomy of the hip, 92
operation for congenital dislocation of hip, 114
upon the hip-joint, tuberculous, 234

Disinfection of the skin preparatory to removal of the synovial membrane of the knee, 63
operation for recent fracture of the patella, 65
Pott's disease (Hibbs's), 163
upon the pharynx, 504
skin-grafting, 365-367
tenotomy of the adductors, 248
Dislocations of elbow-joint, operations for, indications, 16
unreduced, excision for, 17
hip-joint, congenital, operations for, 113
traumatic, operations for, 110
complicated by fracture, operations for, 110, 111
lower jaw, an unreduced, operation for, 319
shoulder, operations for, 30
after-treatment, 32, 33, 34
complicated by fracture, operation for, 30-32
technique in recent cases, 31
unreduced cases, 32
unreduced, operations for, 30-35
Dissection, Crile's block, 486
of the submental, submaxillary, sublingual, and deep cervical regions (Robinson), cut showing, 464
Dissectors, use of, in tenotomy of the adductors, 249
Distension, cæcal, use of appendix as a vent for, 691
a cause of sigmoid volvulus, 822
a difficulty in iliac colostomy, 707
a symptom of intestinal obstruction due to thrombosis, 812, 813
colostomy for relief of, 694, 697
in diffuse peritoneal infection, treatment of, 847, 851
in obstruction by intraperitoneal adhesions, 825
by Meckel's diverticulum, 828
Diverticulitis, enterectomy for, 715
Diverticulum, invagination of, into the œsophagus, 528
Meckel's, adherent, intestinal obstruction by an, 827
œsophageal, excision of, 523
(Richardson), cut showing, 527
Diverticulum, œsophageal, removal of, cut showing, 526
of Vater, formation of new, in posterior gastroenterostomy, 612
Divulsion, digital, for hour-glass stomach, 592, 596
Dobson, *see also* Jamieson and Dobson
Dobson's description of removal of a carcinoma of the ascending colon together with corresponding 'lymphatic area,' 749
Dodwell, *see* Fenwick and Dodwell
Domett bandage, use of, after excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 222
Dorsal nerve, last, avoidance of injury to, in operation for lumbar abscess, 169
Dorsalis pedis artery, avoidance of injury to, in resection of the foot, 213
Dorsiflexion of hand after Kocher's excision of wrist-joint, 188
Double epithelial flaps in the treatment of face injuries, 449
pedicled flaps in the treatment of face injuries, 449
hare-lip, *see* Hare-lip, double
Dowd's method for restoration of the lip, 399
Downes's modification of the Rammstedt operation for congenital pyloric stenosis, 628
mortality statistics for operation for congenital pyloric stenosis, 626
Doyen's clamps for coprostasis, 655
intestinal clamp, 655
handled needle, use of, in operation upon the hip-joint, 241
Dressing after abdominal operations, Moynihan's description of, 557
after operation for diffuse peritoneal infection, 851
tuberculous disease of the shoulder-joint, 199
application of skin grafts, 371
Dressings in the treatment of face injuries, 451
after operations for webbed fingers, 419
hare-lip, 261, 262
microstoma, 403

Drill, electrically-driven, in the operation for fracture of the elbow, intra-articular, 14
fracture of the neck of the femur, 98
fracture of the patella, 67
globular, or reamer, use of, in arthroplasty of hip, 106
Drilling in the operation for fracture of the neck of the femur, 97, 98
the bone in operations for fracture of the patella, 67-69
Duct, omphalo-mesenteric, persistence of, 827
thyreo-glossal, *see* Thyreo-glossal duct
Duodenal hernia, large, 835
hernia, left, 833-836
right, operation for, 836
ulcer, maximum point of hyperalgesia for, 647; gastro-enterostomy for, 598
Duodeno-jejunal hernia, 833
Duodenostomy, 688
or jejunostomy for hour-glass stomach, 592, 597
Duodenum, division of, 570
involvement of the, in pyloric cancer, 567, 568
leakage from the, prevention of, after partial gastrectomy, 569
or stomach, perforating ulcer of the, operation for, 588
perforations of the, 675
operation, 675
often confused with perforation of the appendix, 675
subacute, operations for, 678
posterior wall of the, perforations of the, operations for, 678
strictures of the, 838
stump of, in crushing clamp with suture placed for closing, cut showing (Mayo), 575
transfixed and tied with catgut in the Balfour operation, 579
end of, closed, cut showing (Balfour), 580
ulceration of the, following burns, 439
Dupuytren's contraction, operations for, 426
Adams's, 426
Dupuytren's contraction, division of skin and fascia by V-shaped incision, 427
excision of the contracted tissue, 428; cut showing, 427
contracture, with removal of palmar fascia and transplantation of fat, photograph of patient showing result after operation for (Kanavel), 430
contracture-technique of operation for excision of palmar fascia and transplantation of fat (Kanavel), 429
enterotome, cut showing, 778
fracture, arthrotomy for, 46
suture, 651, 654
Duret's operation for gastroptosis, 630
Durham's elevator, use of, in cervical œsophagotomy, 533
Dysentery, amœbic, *see* Amœbic dysentery
Dyspepsia, appendix, 641
gall-stone, 642
Dysphagia, relief of, cervical œsophagostomy for, 535
Dyspnœa, avoidance of, in excision of the lower jaw, 322

Ear, external, deformities of the, plastic operations for, 388
excessive size of the, operations for, 388, 390
prominence of the, operations for, 388
results of, 390
Early appendicectomy, mortality after, 805
Ectropion of the lower lip, operation for, 394
with much scar tissue, operation for, cuts showing, 395
Effusion, peritoneal, methods of dealing with, 844
Einhorn stomach tube, Kanavel's modification of, 850
Eiselsberg's (von) method of jejunostomy, 689
statistics of intussusception treated by excision, 820
Elbow-bath, use of, after arthrotomy and drainage, 13
Elbow-joint, arthrodesis of the, 21
dislocations of, operations for, 16

Elbow-joint, excision of the, 17
by Kocher's external, slightly J-shaped incision, 189-195
reflection of the soft parts in, cut showing, 18
sawing the humerus in, 19
exposure of the capsule of the, from the radial side, 23
of child aged six years with tuberculous foci in the upper end of the ulna, skiagram showing, 193
operations upon the, 13
for tuberculous disease of, 189
after-treatment, 195
results, 196
technique, 189
tuberculous disease of the, relative merits of conservative and radical treatment of, 189
Electro-therapeutics in relation to face injuries, 452
Elliptical gaps, closure of, 362
by undermining the skin and subcutaneous tissues around it, cut showing, 365
large, by means of flaps, 366
Elsberg's statistics of operation for perforation in enteric fever, 682
Emaciation a sign of cancer of the stomach, 641
gastric ulcer, 641
symptom of pyloric ulcer, 639
Embolism, arterial, intestinal obstruction due to, operation for, 813
and venous thrombosis, obstruction due to, 812
operation, 813
prognosis and results, 813
pulmonary, a sequela of appendicectomy, 797
Emphysema, cellular significance of, in intestinal injuries, 664
Empyema and infection of the mediastinal cellular tissues, avoidance of, in trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 544
End-mill, cup-shaped, use of, in arthroplasty of hip, 106
End-to-end union of intestine, 719
Endothelioma of the appendix, 783
pharyngeal, 505
tonsillar, removal of, 506
results, 510
Enemata, after operation for cleft-palate, 281
intestinal obstruction, 809
removal of half of the lower jaw, 327
the upper jaw, 311
œsophagotomy, cervical, 534
operations upon the stomach, 559
preliminary to tonsillectomy, contra-indicated, 492
preparatory to operation for stercoral fistulæ, 774
turpentine, for relief of distension in diffuse peritoneal infection, 851
Enterectomy, accidents subsequent to, 758
and colectomy, 711
artificial aids to, 737
axial, complete, causes of intestinal changes after, 711
followed by end-to-end union, 719
cuts showing, 722, 724
end-to-side union, 734
cuts showing, 735, 736
lateral union, 729
cuts showing, 732, 733
for intestinal obstruction due to adhesions, 826
arterial embolism and venous thrombosis, 813
biliary calculi, 842
Meckel's diverticulum, 830
stenoses, acquired, 839
intussusception, 816
perforation in enteric fever, 681, 683
general indications for, 711
prognosis and results of, 761
technique of, 719
axial union, 719
end-to-side union, 734
lateral union, 729
Enteric fever, appendicostomy in (Ewart), 692
perforation in, operation for, 679
Entero-anastomosis between the afferent and efferent limbs of the jejunum, performance of, 615, 617
for intestinal obstruction due to adhesions, 826
the relief of regurgitant vomiting after gastro-enterostomy, 617, 621

Entero-enterostomy, series of cases of (Murphy button), mortality statistics of, 741
Enteroplasty for acquired intestinal stenoses, 839
introduction of a coaptation mattress stitch in simple, 839
Enteroptosis in relation to fæcal impaction, 842
Enterostomy for Hirschsprung's disease, 758
intestinal obstruction due to adhesions, 826
biliary calculi, 842
Meckel's diverticulum, 830
intussusception, 816
operation, 687
perforations in enteric fever, 681
peritoneal infection, 847
sigmoid volvulus, 824
stenosis, acquired, 839
congenital, 838
Enterospasm, a cause of symptomatic intestinal obstruction, 811
Enterotome, Dupuytren's, cut showing, 778
Enterotomy for intestinal strangulation by ovarian cyst, 831
peritoneal infection, 847
and enterostomy, 685
technique, 686
Enterotribe, cut showing effect of, 771
Epicolic lymphatic glands, 743
Epiglottis, tumours of, removal of, 511
Epilaryngeal tumours, operations for, 510-514
Epithelial inlay in the treatment of face injuries, 450
Epithelioma, boring, complete removal of the upper jaw for, 301
of the cæcum, 747
œsophagus, cervical œsophagectomy for, 535, 536
trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy for, 539
pharynx, 505, 506
lateral wall of, removed by lateral transthyreoid pharyngotomy, 515
eradication of disease, 502
recurrences, 502
infection following, 503
tonsil, removal of, 506
results, 510
recessus piriformis, diagram of mode of spread of an, 514
Epithelioma, squamous, method of extension of, 287
Epithélioma térébrant of Réclus, complete removal of the upper jaw for, 301
Epitheliomatous growth arising in floor of mouth or upon the lip, and extending on to the gum, partial removal of the lower jaw for, 321
Epulis, partial removal of the lower jaw for, 321
upper jaw for, 313
Equinus position of foot after osteoplastic resection, 213
Erysipelas a possible sequela of removal of the upper jaw, 312
Eschar following burns, 440
Esmarch's mortality statistics of complete removal of the upper jaw, 313
operation for closure of jaws, 330
Esser's method of forming lower lip from the lateral nasolabial region, 449
Ether, use of, in operation for intestinal obstruction, 807
pyloric stenosis, congenital, 625
removal of the tongue, 469
Eucalyptol salve in the treatment of burns, 441
Examination for eliciting hyperalgesia as an aid in diagnosis, methods of, 644-648
of stomach contents, chemical, microscopical and X-ray, in the diagnosis of chronic gastric ulcer, 640
Excision of the astragalus, 46, 49, 50-54
of cancer of the stomach, 641
of a carcinoma of the tongue and the floor of the mouth after lateral splitting of the cheek and division or resection of a part of the horizontal ramus of the mandible, 474
of the cervical lymph glands, submaxillary salivary gland, and fascial structures of the neck for carcinoma of the tongue and floor of the mouth, 484
of the condyle of the lower jaw, 319
of contracted tissue in Dupuytren's contraction, 428

Excision of the elbow, 17
after-treatment, 21
indications, 17
operation, 19
results, 21
of hip by Kocher's external incision, cut showing, 101
by posterior angular incision (Kocher's), 234
best position after, different views concerning, 245
for ankylosis with sinuses after hip-joint disease, 253
of the hip-joint, 92, 99
by an external incision, Kocher's, 100
for abscess resulting from tuberculous disease, 254
of interphalangeal joint for tuber-
of joints, 8
indications, 8
of the joint between the base of the first metatarsal and the internal cuneiform, 200
between the fourth and fifth metatarsal and the cuboid, 200
culous osteomyelitis, 152
of the knee, 77
indications, 77
operation, 78
by Kocher's external J-shaped incision, 217, 218, 221
of the mucosa in posterior gastro-enterostomy, 605
of œsophageal diverticula, 523
(Richardson), 525, 527
of the os calcis, 54
patella (Murphy), 225-227
of the scapula, 42
(i) for sarcoma of the bone, 42
(ii) necrosis of the scapula, 43
(iii) in the interscapulo-thoracic amputation of Berger, 43
of the shoulder, 34
for ankylosis, 35, 38
by Kocher's posterior resection, 39
compound fractures, 34
injury, 35
tuberculous disease of the joint, 34, 197
Excision for unreduced dislocations, 33, 35, 38
of the temporo-maxillary articulation, 319
of the tongue after division of the lower lip and the mandible, cuts showing, 475
after median incision of the lower lip and the submental tissues and division of the mandible, 472
incision for, 473
after-treatment, 474
methods of operation for, 465
of one-half of the tongue through the mouth, 469
for localized carcinoma by the intra-buccal method, 471
of an ulcer from the lesser curvature, 583
indications, 583
operation, 583
of the wrist, 9
for tuberculous disease, 179
by Kocher's single dorso-ulnar incision, 180-185
of the wrist-joint, partial, 9
Exclusion, intestinal, methods of, 766
bilateral, 766
unilateral, 767
indications for, 768
operation, 770
prognosis and results, 771
Exploration of intestinal injuries, indications for, 663
Exploratory incision for the palpation of growths of sigmoid flexure, 755
operation in cancer of the stomach, 641
in perforations in enteric fever, question of, 682
External carotid artery, ligature of, in hæmorrhage following tonsillectomy, 497
preliminary to operation for temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 338
cutaneous nerve, avoidance of injury to, in tenotomy for flexion deformity, 250
popliteal nerve, avoidance of injury to, in operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the fibula, 147

Extra-peritoneal wounds and ruptures, treatment of, 669
Extra-pharyngeal abscess, 500
Eye, cancers at the inner or outer canthus of the, removal of, 296
Eyeball, examination of, for determining condition of malignant growth of upper jaw, 302
factors preventing sinking of the, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 303
removal of, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 309
tendency of, to drop, chief disadvantage of complete removal of upper jaw, 303
Eyelids, double pedicled flap in relation to, 449

Face, cancer of the, necessity of removal of lymphatic glands in, 287
injuries, 443
sutures, 450
operations upon the, 296
transverse section of the, at the level of the occlusal surfaces of the molars (Blair), cut showing, 344
and lips, operations for cancer of the, 287
Facial artery, avoidance of injury to, in closure of defect in the cheek, 409
in operation for restoration of the lips, 397, 399
and vein, removal of, in operation for cancer of the lower lip, 290
nerve, avoidance of injury to, in excision of the condyle of the lower jaw, 319
avoidance of injury to, in operation for subluxation of the interarticular fibro-cartilage of the temporo-maxillary joint, 318
in operation for temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 338
in operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the lower jaw, 157
in removal of one half of the lower jaw, 325
Facial nerve (cervico-facial division of the), avoidance of injury to, in operation for retraction of the lower jaw, 344
Facies, characteristic, of perforation of gastric ulcer, 637
Fæcal fistula, *see* Fistula, fæcal
impaction, 842
Fagge, C. H., on Operations upon the Jaws, 299
method of completing operation for entire removal of the upper jaw, 308
Operations upon the Œsophagus, 521
Fallopian tube, disease of the, maximum point of hyperalgesia for, 646
intestinal strangulation by the, 830
Fat, pedicles of, for wrapping exposed tendons or nerves (Kanavel), 426
transplantation, in the correction of facial deformities, 392
injuries, 446
Kanavel's discussions, 392
potentially infected areas, 393
transplants into bones and joints, results of, 393
in operations for contractions of the fingers, 425, 426, 429-431
about tendons, Kanavel's use of, 393
Feeble-minded, fæcal impaction in the, 842
Feebleness in relation to skin grafting, 365
Feeding after cervical œsophagotomy, 534
gastrostomy, 566
of infant with cleft-palate, 272
operation for congenital pyloric stenosis, 628
operation for diffuse peritoneal infection, 847
tumours of the hypopharyngeal group, 518
Femoral head, formation of a new, in arthroplasty of hip, 105-108
thrombosis, *see* Thrombosis, femoral
Femur, exposure of the head of the, in Kocher's excision of the hip, cut showing, 102

Femur exposure of the outer aspect of the lower third of the diaphysis of the, cut showing, 142
of a tuberculous focus in the internal supracondyloid region of the, 143
fracture of the, for deformity following excision of the knee, 230
of the neck of the, operations for, 95
intra-capsular, arthrotomy of the hip for, 92, 95
operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis of the, 141
osteotomy of the, for ankylosis with malposition, 250
of the neck of the, 94
primary tuberculous osseous focus in the lower part of the neck of the, Huntingdon's operation for, 238
and tibia, fixation of the, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 220, 222
Fergusson's incision for removal of the upper jaw, 305, 306
method for relief of tension of the velum after operation for cleft-palate, 282
Fever, enteric, *see* Enteric fever
Fibroma, lingual, removal of, 459
naso-pharyngeal, osteoplastic resection of the upper jaw rarely indicated for, 314
Fibrous structures, œsophageal, division of, Gussenbauer's cervical œsophagotomy for the, 530
Fibula, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis of the, 146
Fingers, acquired contractions of the, operations for, 424
Dupuytren's contraction, 426
supernumerary, operations for, 423
webbed, operations for, 418
Finney's modification of pyloroplasty for hour-glass stomach, 594, 596
operation (gastro-duodenostomy), 622
Fistula, fæcal, a sequela of appendicectomy, 796
Fistula, lateral anastomosis preliminary to the closure of, 765
operations for, 773
persistence of, after operation for prevertebral thoracic abscess, 169
pyo-stercoral, operations for, 775
stercoral, operations for, 773
vagino-intestinal, bilateral exclusion for, 769
vesico-intestinal, *see* Vesico-intestinal fistula
Fistulous communication between bladder and rectum, colostomy for, 696
the bowel and other viscera, unilateral exclusion for, 769
sequela of appendicectomy, 796
Flail joints, arthrodesis for, 6, 7
tendency to, after excision of the elbow, 196
Flatulence due to gall-stones, 642
relief of, by colostomy, 693
Flexion deformity of the adductors, tenotomy for, 250
of arm, after excision of elbow, 195, 196
hip, advantage of slight, in ankylosis, 247
knee for relaxation of the hamstrings after reduction of congenital dislocation of hip, 116
maintained after operation for congenital dislocation of hip, 117
fingers, webbed, development of, after operation for, 418, 423
Flexure, hepatic, removal of, 751
sigmoid, removal of the, 754
splenic, removal of, 752
Fluid effusion an aid to diagnosis in abdominal pathological perforations, 674
in the flanks, significance of, in intestinal injuries, 664
Fluids, use of, after gastrostomy, 566
operations upon the stomach, 558
Food after operation for cleft-palate, 281
upon the stomach, 559
'churning' of, in pyloric ulcer, 639
Foot at a right angle, fixation of, after excision of the ankle-joint, 210

Foot: (*Cont.*)
operation for tuberculous disease of the os calcis, 204
tarsectomy, complete anterior, 202
in extreme equinus position, fixation of, after resection, 213
Mikulicz's osteoplastic resection of the, 213
phalanges of the, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 153
and ankle, operations for tuberculous disease of the, 200
Foote's operation, *see* Weir and Foote's operation
Foramen of Winslow, hernia into, 832, 837
Forceps, bone, use of, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 307, 308
bone-cutting (Murphy's), 334
Halsted's crushing method with, in appendicectomy, 790
Kocher's artery, use of, in operation upon the hip-joint, 241
Lane's biting, use of, in operation for extra-pharyngeal abscess, 501
Leedham Green's, use of, in operation upon the hip-joint, 241
Poirier's, use of, in enterectomy, 727
ring, use of, in tonsillectomy, 494
Spencer Wells's, use of, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 306, 307
Forehead, cancer of the, excision of, 296
flap derived from the, 412
Foreign bodies in the treatment of face injuries, 445
Foreign body an indication for appendicectomy, 782
in the œsophagus, impaction of, symptoms of, 531
in the stomach, removal of, by gastrotomy, 560
removal of, by cervical œsophagotomy, 529
transmediastinal œsophagotomy, 538
Formalin, use of, in operation for abscess resulting from tuberculous disease of the hip-joint, 255
Formalin, solution, injection of, for production of chemical inflammation of the knee-joint, preparatory to operation for primary tuberculous disease of the patella, 225
Formalin-gelatine solution for fixation of dressing after abdominal operations, 557
Forsyth's (Cairns) device for keeping patient in sitting position after operation, 558
Fowler's 'almost sitting position,' use of, after operation for peritoneal infection, 847
Fractures, compound, into the ankle-joint, arthrotomy and drainage in, 45
of the astragalus, operations for, 46, 49, 50
Dupuytren's, arthrotomy in, 46
of the elbow, intra-articular, operations for, 13
femur, neck of the, operations for, 95
humerus, arthrotomy of the shoulder in, 29
involving the shoulder-joint, operations for, 29
upper end of the, compound, excision of the shoulder in, 34
jaw, lower, ununited, very rare, 339
olecranon, operations for, 15
os calcis, severe comminuted, excision for, 54
patella, operations for, 64
approximation of the fragments in two stages, 74
recent, operations for, 65
Pott's, recent, arthrotomy in, 46
Frank's (Sbanajew-Frank-Albert-Kocher) method of gastrostomy, 564
French method of plastic surgery, source of flap in, 357
of rhinoplasty, derivation of flaps in, 373
Frontal sinus, opening of, in operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the skull, 155
Frost-bite, cause of nasal deformity, 373
Fruit, use of, after operation for cleft-palate, 281

Gag, keyless, for cleft-palate, operations, cut showing, 277
O'Dwyer's, modified, use of, in tonsillectomy, 493
Smith's (Sir Thomas), Owen's modification of, for operation for cleft-palate, 277
use of, in operations for syphilitic affections of the palate, 416
Gall-bladder affection, maximum point of hyperalgesia for, 646
tender, meaning of, 643
Gall-stone dyspepsia, 642
diagnosis of, from gastric ulcer, 642
Galvanism in the after-treatment of face injuries, 452
Gangrene of the appendix, 782, 794, 805, 806
intestinal, in obstruction by adherent vermiform appendix, 827; biliary calculi, 842; Meckel's diverticulum, 830
in intussusception, 816
Gap after exsection in temporomaxillary ankylosis, with the curved periosteotomes still in position (Murphy), 336
in the cheek, large, method of closure of a, by transplantation of a flap from the submaxillary region, 408, 409
elliptical, the closure of, 362
by undermining the skin and subcutaneous tissues around it, cut showing, 365
large, by means of flaps, 366
quadrilateral, the closure of, 361
large, method of closing, 364
small, cuts showing, 363
triangular, closure of, 360
by using a curved incision, cuts showing, 362
Garretson's method of placing a silver wire suture shotted at each end for a lead plate in operation for hare-lip, 270
Gastrectomy, partial, for hour-glass stomach, 592, 596
simple ulcer of the stomach, 574
Rodman's operation, 574
Pólya operation, 576
Balfour operation, 579
Gastro-duodenal ulcer, maximum point of hyperalgesia for, 647
Gastro-duodenostomy (Finney's operation), 622
Gastro-enterostomy, 598
complications and sequelæ, 615
indications and contra-indications for, 598-600
for congenital intestinal stenoses, 838
pyloric stenosis, 625
hour-glass stomach, 592
chronic gastric ulcer, 640
pyloric ulcer, 640
ulcer of the stomach or duodenum, perforating, question of performing, 589, 677
anterior, 613
cuts showing, 614, 615
and posterior, relative merits of, 620
(Wölfler), 598, 613
double, for hour-glass stomach (Weir and Foote), 592, 594
in Y (Monprofit), 592, 594
in Y (Roux), 611
for relief of regurgitant vomiting after gastro-enterostomy, 617
no-loop method, 617, 619, 621, 622
or gastro-anastomosis for hour-glass stomach (Wölfler), 592, 596; cut showing, 593
posterior (Von Hacker), 598, 600
cuts showing, 601-613
Mayo's modification, 611
Roux's operation, 611
preliminary to gastrectomy, 599
'symptomatic,' not permissible, 599
Gastro-jejunostomy, 598
posterior no-loop, for congenital pyloric stenosis, 625
Gastropexy, 629
operation, 630
Beyea's, 631
Coffey's, 633
Duret's, 630
Rovsing's, 633
Gastroplasty for hour-glass stomach, 594; cut showing, 591
Kammerer's method, 592
Gastroptosis, gastro-enterostomy contra-indicated in, 600
treatment of, mechanical, 629
operative, 630
two forms of, Rovsing's description of, 629
Gastro-pyloro-duodenostomy, 623

Gastrostomy, after-treatment, 566
methods, 561
Frank's (Sbanajew-Frank-Albert-Kocher), 564
Kader's, 563
Senn's, 561
Tavel's, 565
Witzel's, 563
for malignant cardiac stricture, 635
preliminary to excision of œsophageal diverticula, 525
resection of the œsophagus, 536
Gastrotomy, 560
Gauze dressings in the treatment of face injuries, 451
Gelatine-formalin solution for fixation of dressing after abdominal operations, 557
Genu recurvatum, after excision of the knee in children, 229, 230
angular, avoidance of, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 219
with ankylosis, operation for, 230
Germicides, strong, effects of, on skin-grafting, 366
Gersuny's method of subcutaneous injection of paraffin for restoration of the nasal bridge, 380
Gigli saw, necessity of knowledge of peculiarities of the, in operation for retraction of the lower jaw, 345
used to divide the mandible (Murphy); cut showing, 335
Gillies, H. D., on Principles of Plastic Surgery, 443
Gillies's use of the double pedicled bridge flap in the treatment of face injuries, 449
slanting incision in the treatment of face injuries, 451
Girard's invagination of a diverticulum into the œsophagus, 528
Glands, lymphatic, *see also* Lymphatic glands
gastric, tendency of, to drop down in the omentum, 572
'primary,' 567
'secondary,' 567
submaxillary, *see* Submaxillary lymphatic glands
Glands, retropyloric, 568
'right suprapancreatic,' 567
'suprapyloric,' 567
parotid, *see* Parotid glands
salivary, submaxillary, *see* Submaxillary salivary gland
Glandular infiltration, *see* Infiltration
Glossitis, chronic superficial, operations for, 455, 458
Gloves, use of, in skin-grafting, 368
Goldmann's preliminary gastrostomy in excision of œsophageal diverticula, 525
Gonococcus, peritoneal adhesions in relation to, 845
peritoneal infection, prognosis of, 852
Goodsall and Miles's cases of cæcal anus, 698
Gouge-chisel (Jones's), value of, in operations for ankylosis with sinuses after hip-joint disease, 253
and hammer for dividing the neck of the femur, 240
Gouging process in the treatment of tuberculous bone, 124
Graft or grafts:
autogenous, use of, in face injuries, 446, 447
omental, *see* Omental flaps and grafts
size of, in Albee operation for Pott's disease, 162, 163
skin, colour of dead, 372
living, 372
the cutting of, 368
Reverdin's method, 371
Thiersch's method, 368
Wolfe's method, 371
free, in the treatment of face injuries, 448
placing of, 370
preparation of area yielding, 367
site of, hairless skin essential for, 371
size of, 370, 371
proper thickness of, 368, 371
use of, in the treatment of face injuries, 446, 447
Grafting in large burns, avoidance of, by modern treatment, 442
skin, 363
Granulation, healing by, after operation for hare-lip, 263

Granulations, application of carbolic acid to, preparatory to skin-grafting, 366
foul, scraping, preparatory to skin-grafting, 367
Great omentum, *see* Omentum, great
Grieg's incision for the operation for closure of the jaws, 329
Growth, malignant, extension to the mouth of the anus of, a complication of colostomy, 710
location of, influence of, in colectomy, 742
Groves (E. W. Hey) and Hall's (J. Walker) reports on analysis of excreta after exclusion, 770
Guattani's incision for operation upon the œsophagus in the neck (diverticula), 523
(foreign body), 532
Guillotine, Mackenzie, *see* Mackenzie guillotine
Gunning splint (modification of the) that may be used for any case in which the jaws are to be held apart (Blair), 348
Gunshot injuries to the intestine, operations for, 670
Gussenbauer's method for the removal of malignant growths growing from the base of the skull, 314
operation for closure of defect of cheek, 415

Haagn, see Brunner and Haagn

Haberer's report of the obliteration of the inferior mesenteric vein without gangrene, 674
Hacker's (Von) operation, posterior gastro-enterostomy, 598, 600
Hæmatemesis following severe burns, 439
in gastric ulcer, 636
Hæmatoma, formation of, in arthroplasties, avoidance of, 337
disadvantage of, 337
treatment of, 338
Hæmorrhage after gastro-enterostomy, avoidance of, 616
control of, after tonsillectomy, in a hæmophiliac, 497
in Albee operation for Pott's disease, 163
Hæmorrhage, control of, in arthrotomy, 4
in cervical œsophagotomy, 533
in operation for removal of cæcum or ascending colon, 748
filling out the chin, 347
cicatricial deformities after injuries, 431
cleft-palate, 278
perforation of the duodenum, 675
retraction of the lower jaw, 344, 345
lingual venous nævus, 459
syphilitic affections of the palate, 416
after operation for cleft-palate, 281, 282
in enterectomy, 721, 725
in excision of the hip-joint by an external incision, 100, 102, 103
of the knee, 79, 82, 83
for tuberculous disease, 220
of the wrist, 11
in removal of one half of the lower jaw, 325, 326, 327
of the upper jaw, 311
complete, 306, 307, 308
of the synovial membrane of the knee, 63
of displaced semilunar cartilages, 57, 58
of the sigmoid flexure, 755, 757, 758
in partial gastrectomy, 569
cauterization of cancer of the lips, 288
gastrotomy, 560
Hibbs's operation for Pott's disease, 164
lateral anastomosis, 733
mesial division of the jaw, 328
partial removal of the upper jaw, 314
skin-grafting, 367
tenotomy of the adductors, 249
transmediastinal œsophagectomy, 544
avoidance of, in Lister's operation in recent fractures of the patella, 67
in excision of the scapula, 44
gastric, jejunostomy for, 688

Hæmorrhage, in Albee operation for Pott's disease, slight, 160
cancer of the stomach, 640
intestinal, colostomy for relief of, 695
in tonsillectomy, cause of, 495
pancreatic, control of, in partial gastrectomy, 571
recurrent or secondary, measures for treating, after removal of the upper jaw, 312
secondary, a complication of operations for malignant pharyngeal tumours, 504
control of, after appendicectomy, 786
Hahn's simple lateral (intestinal) anastomosis, 764
Hair ball in the stomach, removal of, by gastrotomy, 560
follicles in flap, destruction by X-rays of, useless to attempt, 407
Hair-growing flaps, disadvantage of, 407
Halsted's case of œsophageal diverticulum, 523
crushing method with forceps, in appendicectomy, 790
invagination of a diverticulum into the œsophagus, 528
Hammer-toe, etiology of, 435
operations for, 435
Hand, contracted, inserted in pocket on buttock and final result (Kanavel), photographs of, 425
dorsiflexion of the, after Kocher's excision of wrist-joint, 188
extension of, after operation for Dupuytren's contraction, 427
palm of the, covered with flap taken from the buttock, 434
phalanges of the, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 151
Hands, disinfection of the operator's, preparatory to skin-grafting, 368
position of, in cutting skin-grafts, 369; cut showing, 368
Hare-lip, operation for, 259
and cleft-palate, operation for cleft-palate prior to that for hare-lip, 259
double, operation for, 262
Hare-lip, double, complete or incomplete, Rose operation for, 269
modified Maas operation for, diagrams and photographs illustrating, 264
Rose operation for, diagrams and photographs illustrating, 265
Washington University operation for, diagrams and photographs illustrating, 264
pins not suitable for use, 261
simplified by pressure operation for cleft-palate, 274
single, Rose operation for, 264
Harte and Ashurst's report of exploratory operation in suspected perforation in enteric fever, 682
Health, general, in relation to skin-grafting, 363
Heamner, *see* Mitchell and Heamner
Heat, conservation of body, importance of, in operation for congenital pyloric stenosis, 625
Heel, soft parts of the, together with the astragalus and os calcis, removal of the, 213
Heidenhain's costo-transversectomy, 167
incision for operation for pre-vertebral thoracic abscess, 167
Heinecke and Mikulicz's operation of pyloroplasty, 622
Helferich's method for the prevention of recurrence of bony ankylosis after excision of the condyle of the lower jaw, 321
of bony union between two cut surfaces in Esmarch's operation for closure of the jaws, 331
Hepatic artery, avoidance of injury to, in partial gastrectomy, 574
flexure, removal of, 751
Hernia, cæcal, 837
duodenal, large, cut showing, 835
left, 833; cut showing, 834
right, operation for, 836
duodeno-jejunal, 833
gangrenous, an indication for enterectomy, 712
lateral anastomosis for, 765
internal, a sequela of gastro-enterostomy, 619, 621

Hernia, intersigmoid, operation for, 837
into the foramen of Winslow, 832, 837
ileo-appendicular fossa, 837
lesser sac of peritoneum, 832
operation, 832
prognosis and results, 837
retroperitoneal pouches, 832
lower series, 836
upper series, 832
parajejunal, 833
perforations in, operations for, 683
retromesenteric, 833
ventral, a sequela of appendicectomy, 797
cicatrix of McBurney's incision less likely to form seat of, 783
Hernial sac, development of volvulus in a, treatment of, 821
Hibbs's operation for Pott's disease, 163
Hiccough, after gastrostomy, relief of, 567
in cellulitis of the abdominal wall, 707, 708
High-frequency current in the after-treatment of face injuries, 452
Hip-disease, tuberculous, skiagram from a child aged five years showing, 233
ankylosis following, best position for, 247
Hip-joint, arthroplasty of (Murphy), 103
dislocation of the, congenital, arthrotomy the first stage of re-position of, 92
operations for, 113
drainage of the, 93
excision of the, 92, 99
advantages of abduction after, 246, 247
disadvantages of the straight position after, 246
by Kocher's posterior angular incision, skiagram showing the result a year after, 246
skiagram showing the result three years after, 245
arthrotomy as a preliminary to, 92
operations upon the, 92
Hip-joint, traumatic, operations for, 110
of long standing, 112
recent, 110
tuberculous disease of the, 232
abscesses and sinuses following operations for, 254
ankylosis following, operations for, 250
with sinuses after, operations for, 253
deformities resulting from, operations for, 247
drainage after resection for, question of, 241
excision for, the method of maintaining abduction during the dressing after, photograph showing, 244
by Kocher's posterior angular incision, 235, 236, 239
old healed cases with marked adduction, advantages of tenotomy of adductors in, 250
operations for, 232
after-treatment, 242
pseudo-arthrosis, without disarticulation of the head in, operation for the production of, 251
quiescent stage of, 248
Hip-splint, abduction, applied to a child after excision of the joint, photograph showing, 243
Stiles's, photograph of, 242
Thomas's, use of, after tenotomy of the adductors, 249
Hirschsprung's disease, 758
Horsehair, prepared, for sutures in the operation for hare-lip, 261, 262, 268
for suturing flaps, 357
Hour-glass stomach, operation for, 590
Howse's excision splint, 82
Hueter and Barker's anterior route for operation for tuberculous hip-disease, 233
Hullihan's resection of the jaw for correction of pure deformity, 348, 349
Hull's substitute for 'ambrine' in the treatment of burns, 441

Humerus, exposure of the upper end of the diaphysis of the, 128
compound fractures of the upper end of the, excision of the shoulder in, 34
tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis of the, operations for, 127
upper third of the diaphysis of the, resection of the, for tuberculous osteomyelitis, 129
after-treatment, 130
lower half of the diaphysis of the, resection of the, for tuberculous osteomyelitis, 132
after-treatment, 132
results, 132
ulnar side of, removal of, in arthroplasty of elbow (Murphy), cut showing, 24
Huntingdon's operation for primary tuberculous osseous focus in the lower part of the neck of the femur, 238
Hydro-appendix, removal of, 792
Hydrogen peroxide in the after-treatment of drainage of knee-joint, 61
use of, in excision of the hip, 103
before complete removal of, the upper jaw, 304
Hyperalgesia as an aid to diagnosis in abdominal disease, 643
method of eliciting, for diagnosis, 644
Hyperextension of the knee, prevention of, after excision of the hip-joint, 244
phalanges after osteoplastic resection of the foot, 214
Hyperplastic tumour of the small intestine, removal of, 714, 715
Hypertrophic scarring after burns, treatment of, 442
Hypodermoclysis, continuous, after operation for peritoneal infection (Kanavel), 848, 849
Hypoglossal nerve, question of preservation of, in excision of the tongue, 473
Hypopharyngeal group, tumours of the, operations for, 517
results, 519
Hysteria a cause of symptomatic intestinal obstruction, 811
Ichthyol in the treatment of burns, 441
Ileo-appendicular fossa herniæ into the, 837
Ileo-cæcal intussusception, 817
tuberculosis, hyperplastic, 715
Ileo-colic lymphatic area with a colic growth (Dobson), 750
Ileo-sigmoidostomy for chronic constipation, results of, 772
Ileum crushed by a clamp, 771
end of, crushed and ligatured prior to its inversion by a line of suture, cut showing, 771
from a case of enteric fever, two pieces of, cuts showing, 680
strictures of the, 838
and jejunum, involvement of, in volvulus, 821
Iliac abscess, tuberculous, operation for, 171
after-treatment, 173
colostomy, 700
vessels, internal, *see* Internal iliac vessels
Ilio-hypogastric and ilio-inguinal nerves, avoidance of injury to, in operation for lumbar abscess, 169
Immobilization of head after operation on prevertebral cervical abscess, 166
Impaction, fæcal, 842
Incongruence in size, in enterectomy, method of dealing with, 726
Indian method of plastic operations of ancient origin, 353
Indigestion, significance and treatment of, 634, 638, 639
in elderly patients, 641
Infantile paralysis, arthrodesis in, 7
advanced, arthrodesis of the ankle-joint in, 49
Infants, colostomy in, 708
pyloric stenosis in, 634
Inferior dental nerve, division of, regeneration after, 339
thyreoid artery, avoidance of injury to, in cervical œsophagotomy, 533
Infiltration, extent of, in lingual carcinoma, 465, 466
or enlargement, glandular, influence of, extent of, in colectomy, 745

Inflammation, chemical, in the knee-joint, production of, preparatory to operation for primary tuberculous disease of the patella, 225
Inflammatory conditions, chronic, an indication for enterectomy, 715
mortality statistics for enterectomy for, 762
Infusion, intravenous, after appendicectomy, 795
rectal, after operation for peritoneal infection, 847
Infra-orbital nerves, avoidance of injury to, in operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the upper jaw and malar bone, 159
Inhalation pneumonia, *see* Pneumonia, inhalation
Injection of paraffin, *see* Paraffin
Injections of saline, rectal, after appendicectomy, 795
of sera and vaccines in diffuse peritoneal infection, 851
subcutaneous, of anti-colon bacillus serum, after appendicectomy, 795
Injuries and injury:
cicatricial deformities after, operations for, 431
to the elbow, partial or complete excision for, 17
face, *see* Face injuries
intestinal, general conditions, 662
gunshot, operations for, 670
nature of violence causing, 671
pathological and traumatic, distinctions affecting the treatment of, 662
repair of, 663
significance of site of, 670
theories concerning spontaneous healing of, 672
to the small intestine, non-perforating, cut showing, 667
lips, restoration after, 400
mesentery, repair of, 673
of the shoulder, excision in, 35
'Inkpot' method of fixing tube in jejunostomy, 691
Insomnia after operation for peritoneal infection, relief of, 851
Inspection of stomach in anterior gastro-enterostomy, 613
duodenum and gall-bladder, value of, in posterior gastro-enterostomy, 600, 602
Insufflation, intra-tracheal, *see* Intra-tracheal insufflation
Interdental block (Murphy's), 334
Intermediate appendicectomy, mortality after, 805
lymphatic glands of the colon, 743
Internal circumflex artery, avoidance of injury to, in tenotomy of the adductors, 249
hernia, operations for various forms of, 712, 832
iliac vessels, avoidance of injury to, in the operation for tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 256
maxillary artery, avoidance of injury to, in removal of half of the lower jaw, 326
operation for temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 333, 335, 338
Interosseous ligament, removal of, in operation for tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 256
Interphalangeal joints, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 152
Interrupted Lembert's suture, 653
sutures in the treatment of face injuries, 451
Interscapulo-thoracic amputation of Berger, excision of the scapula in, 43
Intersigmoid hernia, operation for, 837
Interval appendicectomy, mortality after, 804
operations for appendicitis, 781
Intestinal anastomosis, *see* Anastomosis, intestinal
clamps, 655-657
obstruction, *see* Intestines, operations upon
Intestine and intestines:
affection of the, maximum point of hyperalgesia for, 647, 648
clamped in position, in enterectomy, cut showing, 722
common morbid conditions of, 660
kinking of, after enterectomy, 761
large, description of, 659
operations upon the, 649

Intestine and intestines: (*Cont.*)
operation upon, anatomical considerations, 658
appendicectomy, 780
in acute appendicitis, 792
quiescent intervals, 787
mortality of, 803
appendicectomy for peri-appendical abscess, 797
prognosis and results of, 803
appendicostomy, 691
ascending colostomy, 697
cæcostomy, 697
colectomy, technique of, 741
colotomy and colostomy, 693
congenital stenosis of, 837
duodenostomy, 688
enterectomy, 711
enterotomy and enterostomy, 685
exclusion, intestinal, 764, 766
fæcal fistula and artificial anus, 773
gunshot injuries, repair of, 670
iliac colostomy, 700
intestinal obstruction, 807
after gastro-enterostomy, 617, 619
after-treatment, 809
diffuse peritoneal infection, after, 811, 847
appendix, vermiform, 827
from adherent appendix, vermiform, 827
Meckel's diverticulum, 827
calculi, biliary or intestinal, 840
embolism and thrombosis, 812
fæcal impaction, 842
intraperitoneal adhesions, 824
strangulation by Fallopian tube, 830
strictures of intestines, 837
torsion of omentum, 811
volvulus, 820
general considerations, 807
results, 810
hernia into retroperitoneal pouches, 832
indications, 807
intussusception, 814
preparation of patient, 807
results of, 810, 811
Intestine and intestines: (*Cont.*)
a sequela of gastro-enterostomy, 613, 621
symptomatic, 811
strangulation, *see* Strangulation of the intestine
jejunostomy, 688
lumbar colostomy, 697
pathological perforation of duodenum, 675
perforation in enteric fever, 679
of infective and inflammatory nature, 683
in malignant disease, 684
of stercoral ulcers and in diverticular disease, 683
removal of cæcum and ascending colon, 747
transverse colon and flexures, 751
repair of injuries to mesentery, 673
intestinal injuries, 663
simple lateral anastomosis, 764
suture in, methods of, 651
technique of, general considerations, 651
transverse colostomy, 699
typhlostomy, 697
removal of different lengths of, effects of, 712
retainer, Sargent's, cut showing, 809
rupture of, by bullet not penetrating the skin, 673
small, entero-peritoneal disease of the, cut showing, 714
Intestino-vaginal fistulæ, 769, 778
Intestino-vesical fistulæ, 696, 778
Intra-articular fractures of the elbow, operations for, 13
knee, operations for, 64
Intra-buccal excision of tonsillar tumours, 507
Intra-peritoneal adhesions, intestinal obstruction from, 824
Intra-pharyngeal abscess, 500
Intra-tracheal anæsthetization for operation for lingual carcinoma, 469, 476
insufflation, advent of, 537, 538
description of, 547
Intussusception, 814
operations, 815

Ionization in the after-treatment of face injuries, 452
Irrigation, after operation for cleft-palate, fluids for, 281
continuous, in drainage, of elbow-joint, 13
knee-joint, 59, 60
of elbow-joint in operation for fracture of the olecranon, 15
Isoform, use of, in diarrhœa after gastro-enterostomy, 620
Israel's method of closing a defect in the cheek, 412
Italian method of plastic surgery of ancient origin, 353

Jaboulay's introduction of gastro-duodenostomy, 622
Jacobson's discussion of advisability of preliminary laryngotomy in complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
conditions amenable to cervical œsophagotomy, 531
Jamieson and Dobson's description of the normal lymphatic system of the colon, 743
method for the removal of the hepatic flexure, 751
splenic flexure, 753
Japanese twist, use of, for intestinal sutures, 654
Jaundice, catarrhal, a complication of appendicectomy, 797
following attack of gall-stone colic, 642
Jaw and jaws:
operations for closure of, 329
lower, cancer of tongue involving, 483
condyle of the, excision of the, 319
prevention of recurrence of bony ankylosis after, 321
deformities of the, correction of, developmental or acquired, 339
importance of, 339
resection for, 348
dislocation of the, unreduced, 319
lateral division of the, 328
lines of bone section for operations upon the, Esmarch's operation; excision
Jaw and jaws: (*Cont.*)
of both processes of; excision of condyle of; cut showing, 320
long, abnormally, with interdental spaces in the bicuspid region (position of cuts for correction), 340
mesial division of the, 327
operations upon the, 321
osteoplastic resection of the, 327
protrusion of the, forward, 327
operative measures, 339-343
recession of the, 343
reconstructed, showing how both forward and lateral protrusions are corrected by removing bone sections, 340
removal of the, complete, 327
partial, 321
one half of the, 325
after-treatment, 327
difficulties and dangers, 327
retraction of the, 343
bone, adjusting the, 345
cutting the, 343
fixation, 346
submucoperiosteal operation for protrusion of the, 341
submucous resection of the, cut showing, 341
transmucoperiosteal operation for protrusion of the, 340
tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 156
operations for, 156
subperiosteal resection for, skiagram showing, 157
wired in its new position after section of the ramus, 347
upper, excision of the, high mortality of, 304
malignant growths of, definite diagnosis of, greatest care necessary for, 301
free removal of, the first consideration of operator, 303
and the temporo-maxillary joint, operations upon the, 318
operations upon the, 301
osteoplastic resection of the, 314

Jaw and jaws: (*Cont.*)
upper, removal of the, complete, 301
partial, 313
statistics of resection of the, 312, 313
tuberculous osteomyelitis of, 159
tumours of the, diagnosis of, 302
operation, 304
and malar bone, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 159
Jeannel's method of dealing with incongruence in size in enterectomy, 726
Jejunal ulcer a complication of gastro-enterostomy, 618
Jejunostomy, indications, 688
operations, 689
or duodenostomy for hour-glass stomach, 592, 597
Jejunum, application of clamp to the, in posterior gastro-enterostomy, 603; cut showing, 602
cleanliness of the, importance of, in abdominal operations, 555
strictures of the, 838
upper, brought through opening to posterior wall of stomach, cut showing (Mayo), 577
use of, for replacing œsophagus, 566
in operation for stenosis of the œsophagus, 545
and stomach, anastomosis of, 573, 577; cut showing (Mayo and Balfour), 578, 581
Jessett-Barker method of treatment of intussusception, 817
Jessett-Barker–Rydigier method of treatment of intussusception, 818
Joint and joints:
fat transplants into, results of, 393
flail, arthrodesis in, 6, 7
operations for non-tuberculous affections of, general considerations, 3-8
ankle-, 45
elbow-, 13
hip-, 92
knee-, 56
shoulder-, 28
temporo-maxillary, 318
wrist-, 9
Joint and joints: (*Cont.*)
and bones, tarsal, 50
operations for tuberculous affections of the, 177
ankle-, 204
elbow-, 189
hip-, 232
for production of pseudo-arthrosis, Cheyne's, 252
Jones's, 251
Kocher's, 251
osseous ankylosis of, 250
interphalangeal, 152
knee-, 215
sacro-iliac, 255
shoulder-, 197
tarso-metatarsal, 200
and bones, 121-256
wrist-, 179
Jones (Robert), *see also* Rolleston and Jones
Jones's gouge-chisel and hammer, use of, for dividing the neck of the femur, 240
incision, trans-trochanteric, for osteotomy of the neck of the femur, 94
operation for the production of pseudo-arthrosis of hip-joint without disarticulation of the head, 251
Junker's apparatus, use of, in cleft-palate operations, 277
complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
tonsillectomy, 493

Kader's method of gastrostomy, 563
of jejunostomy, 690
cut showing, 689
Kammerer's method of gastroplasty for hour-glass stomach, 594
cut showing, 592
Kanavel's case of contracted hand inserted in pocket on buttock and final result, photograph of, 425
contracture—technique for excision of palmar fascia and transplantation of fat, 428-430
photographs showing result, 430
method of continuous hypodermoclysis, after operation for peritoneal infection, 848, 849

Kanavel's method of preventing contraction of scar tissue, 426
restoration of lower lip by plastic operation with subsequent transplantation of fat, cut showing, 393
stomach lavage tube, bulb, and wire carrier, cut showing, 850
technique for continuous gastric lavage, 850
use of free fat transplants about tendons exposed in scar tissue or after suture, 393
Kazanjian's (V.), development of various methods in the treatment of face injuries, 444
Keegan's operation for the restoration of the soft parts of the nose, 382; cuts showing, 383
Keen's statistics of operation for perforation in enteric fever, 683
Keetley's employment of the appendix as an artificial anus, 692
incision in operation upon the shoulder-joint, 32
Kelling's description of types of diarrhœa following gastro-enterostomy, 620
Kelly's method of appendicectomy, 789
Kentotribe, von Mikulicz's, 777
Keyhole saw, use of, in complete anterior tarsectomy, 202
osteoplastic resection of the upper jaw, 315
Keyless gag for cleft-palate operations, cut showing, 277
Killian's method of œsophagoscopy, 538
observations on foreign bodies in the œsophagus, 529
tube for removal of foreign bodies from the œsophagus, 530
Knee-joint, arthroplasty on the (Murphy), 85
arthrotomy and drainage of the, 59
after-treatment, 61
excision of the, 77
for ankylosis in a faulty position, 77, 84
arthrodesis, 77, 83
injury, 77, 79, 83
Knee-joint, excision of the, for intractable suppurative arthritis, 77
tuberculous disease, by Kocher's external J-shaped incision, cuts showing, 217, 218, 221
Miller's method, 224, 225
sawing the condyles of the femur in, 80
sawing the tibia in, cut showing, 81
fractures, intra-articular, 64
free exposure of the interior of the, in diffuse tuberculous disease of the synovial membrane, 216
hyperextension of, prevention of, after excision of the hip-joint, 244
non-tuberculous affections of the, operations for, 56-91
operations for tuberculous disease of the, secondary to a focus in one of the bones, 223
production of chemical inflammation in the, preparatory to operation for primary tuberculous disease of the patella, 225
synovial membrane of the, removal of the, 62
tuberculous affections of the, operations for, 179
Knife, double-edged, used for cutting the maxilla in operation for cleft-palate, 274
edge of, protection of, 369
for skin-grafting, description of, 369
Thiersch's, 369, 370
position for holding, in cutting skin-grafts, 368
after-treatment of excision of the elbow, 196
Kocher's appendix clamp (Corner's modification), 790
blunt dissector, use of, in tenotomy of the adductors, 249
crushing clamp, cut showing, 771
incision for operation upon œsophagus in the neck, 532
prevertebral thoracic abscess, 167
removal of one half of the lower jaw, 325

Kocher's incision for removal of upper jaw, 309; cut showing, 305
external J-shaped, for arthrotomy in tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 189; cuts showing, 190, 192
for excision of the ankle, cuts showing, 206, 207, 209
hip-joint, 100
knee, 217, 218, 221
operation for tuberculous disease of the synovial membrane of the knee-joint, 215
diffuse, 216
posterior angular, for excision of the hip, 235
method of feeding after cervical œsophagotomy, 534
mobilization for exploration of duodenum and pancreas, 678
prevention of stenosis after cervical œsophagectomy, 537
operation for abscess resulting from tuberculous disease of hip-joint, 254
osseous ankylosis after hip-joint disease, 251
production of pseudo-arthrosis of hip, 251
tuberculous hip-disease, 234-242
disease of the wrist-joint, 180
advantages claimed for, 188
operative statistics in limited excision for lingual carcinoma, 488
posterior resection of the shoulder, 39
recommendation of a preliminary ligature of the external carotid in complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
route for excision of the shoulder-joint, description of the advantage of the, 197
series of cases of lateral implantation in partial gastrectomy, 735
statement concerning mobility after excision of the condyle of the lower jaw, 321
König's incision for lateral division of the lower jaw, 328, 329
König's operation for complete removal of the upper jaw, 309
Krause's method of filling up defect after resection of the lower jaw, 323
partial removal of the lower jaw, 323
gastro-duodenostomy, 622
Küster's incision for operation for closure of the jaws, 330
Küster and König's mortality statistics of complete removal of the upper jaw, 313
Kyphosis, obliteration of, by Albee operation for Pott's disease, 162

Lacerations of the mesentery, treatment of, 673
of the great omentum, treatment of, 674
Lachrymal sac, avoidance of injury to, in osteoplastic resection of the upper jaw, 315
Lactic acid producing organisms, culture of, use of, preparatory to operation for stercoral fistulæ, 774
Lameness associated with upward displacement of femur, ankylosed hip in good position preferable to, 247
due to osseous ankylosis following hip-joint disease, operations for, 250
with adduction, tenotomy of the adductors best method of treating, 248
'Lane' suture, modified, in Rose operation for hare-lip, 270
Lane's (Arbuthnot) clamp, intestinal, cuts showing, 657
biting forceps, use of, in operation for extra-pharyngeal abscess, 501
employment of unilateral exclusion for chronic constipation, 769
mortality statistics of ileo-sigmoidostomy for chronic constipation, 772
operation for cleft-palate, 276
record of four cases of excision of the temporo-maxillary joint for bony ankylosis in children, 320

Langenbeck's incision, vertical, for excision of the elbow, 19
lateral division of the lower jaw, 328
excision of the wrist, 180
method of operation for tuberculous hip disease, 234
rhinoplasty, 374, 375, 384, 385
opinion of mortality of complete removal of the upper jaw, 312
osteoplastic resection of the upper jaw, 315
Laparotomy for perforation in malignant disease, 684
Laryngectomy, for epilaryngeal tumours, question of, 510
total, for tumours of the recessus piriformis, 514
Laryngo-pharyngectomy, 514
results, 517; cuts showing, 516
Laryngotomy, preliminary to operation for lingual carcinoma, 469, 476
operations upon the pharynx, 503
osteoplastic resection of upper jaw, 316, 317
removal of one half of the lower jaw, 325
complete, of upper jaw, varied opinions concerning, 304
removal of tonsillar tumours, 507, 508
Larynx, involvement by lingual carcinoma of the, operative measures generally contra-indicated in, 467
Lateral intestinal anastomosis, 732, 740
for artificial anus, 778
cæcum or ascending colon, removal of, 749, 750
intussusception, 816
obstruction due to embolism, 813
stenoses, acquired, 839
congenital, 838
volvulus, sigmoid, 822, 823
Murphy's button in, 740
simple, 764
most suitable situation for, 765
and exclusion, 764
implantation—end-to-side union in enterectomy, 734
union in enterectomy, 729
Lavage, gastric, *see also* Stomach, lavage of
after operation for diffuse peritoneal infection, 847
continuous, technique of (Kanavel), 850
for distension in diffuse peritoneal infection, 851
hæmorrhage after gastro-enterostomy, 616
pyloric ulcer, 640
regurgitant vomiting after gastro-enterostomy, 617
preparatory to abdominal operations, importance of, 556
intestinal, use of appendix as a route for, 692
of peritoneal cavity for diffuse infection, to be avoided, 845
Lawson's method of feeding after cervical œsophagotomy, 534
Lead lotion in the treatment of burns, 441
plate, use of, in operations for syphilitic affections of the palate, 417
suture, in Rose operation for hare-lip, 270
plates, for supporting wire sutures in the operation for cleft-palate, 275
Leakage, gastric, prevention of, in operation for perforating ulcer, 588
Lee's mesenteric stitch, 723
Leg, lengthening of, after osteoplastic resection of the foot, 214
Legg, T. P., on Plastic Surgery, 353
Legg's case of restoration of the ala nasi, cuts showing, 387
case of closure of large defect of scalp by means of flaps, 354
Leichtenstern's description of left duodenal hernia, 833
Lembert's intestinal suture, continuous, 653, 654
interrupted, 653
intestinal suture passed for closure of cut ends in enterectomy, 730
Leukoplakial patches, lingual, operations for, 455
Levator labii superioris alæque nasi, invasion by cancer of the, 287

Ligament, orbicular, importance of integrity of the, 21
Ligaments, broad, abnormal openings in the, obstruction due to strangulation in, 831
crucial, repair of the, 61
Ligat, David, on Hyperalgesia as an Aid to Diagnosis in Abdominal Disease, 643
Light, the 1,000 C. P. in the after-treatment of face injuries, 452
Lilienthal's method of colostomy, 705
Limbs, skin-grafting more apt to succeed on, than on neck or back, 365
Line of incision and the bony outlines at the point of ankylosis of the jaw (Murphy), cut showing, 334
Lingual artery, avoidance of injury to, in operation for lingual carcinoma, 470
ligature of, in the operation for lingual carcinoma, 465
and vein, avoidance of injury to, in excision of the tongue, 473
nerve, avoidance of injury to the, in removal of half of the lower jaw, 326
Lip, lower, cancer of the, direction of extension of, 289
lower, formation of, from the lateral nasolabial region (Esser), 449
operations upon the, 289
restoration of the, 403
(after Cheyne and Burghard), 397, 399
(Dowd), 398, 399
by means of a flap taken from the upper arm, 396; cut showing, 393
plastic operation with subsequent transplantation of fat (Kanavel), photograph showing, 393
difficulties following, 392
and angle of the mouth, large cancers of the, not involving the inferior maxilla, more favourable for cure by operation than those of the upper lip, 296
Lip, upper, cancer of the, anatomical conditions complicating the spread of, 292
decrease in size of, in cancer, 293
formation of new, after operation for cancer, 293-295
of a new columella from the, 387
operations upon the, 292
restoration of the, 400
Lip, hare-, *see* Hare-lip
Lips, cancer of the, method of extension of, 287
operations for, preliminary measures for, 288
ectropion of the, cheiloplasty for, 394
operations on the, 394
plastic, for sloughing of the, 400
restoration of the, 397
and face, operations for cancer of the, 287
general considerations, 287-289
Lipoma, a cause of intussusception, 818
lingual, removal of a, 459
Lister's (Lord) anterior splint, use of, after Kocher's excision of wrist-joint, 188
double incision for excision of tuberculous disease of the wrist, 180
operation for excision of the wrist, 9
union of a fracture of the patella of long standing with wide separation of the fragments, 74-76; recent fractures of, 66
Liston's splint, use of, after operation for dislocation of hip, 113
splint, long, use of, after excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 223
Littlewood's method of excision of elliptical area of bowel in lateral anastomosis, 733
'Liver, tender,' meaning of, 643
'Locking' of hip-joint, preventive measures against, in arthroplasty, 108
Long bones, tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis of the, operations for, 121

'Loop on the mucosa,' in posterior gastro-enterostomy, 608
Lorenz's 'bloodless' method for replacing congenital dislocation of the hip, 113
Lower jaw, *see* Jaw, lower
lip, *see* Lip, lower
Lumbar abscess, tuberculous, operation for, 169
colostomy, 697
Lumbo-sacral cord, avoidance of injury to, in operation for tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 256
Lungs, disease of the, in relation to skin-grafting, 365
Lupus, cause of nasal deformity, 373
Lymphangioma, lingual, general, or macroglossia, operations for, 460
localized, removal of, 458
'Lymphatic area,' Dobson's description of removal of, in carcinoma of the ascending colon, 749
extirpation of, in colectomy, 742, 745, 746
ileo-colic, with a colic growth, cut showing (Dobson), 750
Lymphatic glands, excision of, in lingual carcinoma, 484, 488, 490, 491
glands, excision of, operations on tonsillar tumours, 508
involvement of, in lingual carcinoma, 466
removal of, in operation for cancer of the face, 287, 288, 297
complete removal of the upper jaw, 305
operations for cancer of the lower lip, 290
upper lip, 293
en bloc, in operation upon the angle of the mouth, 292
submaxillary, *see* Submaxillary lymphatic glands
tuberculous, a complication of tuberculous osteomyelitis of the lower jaw, 157
and lingual carcinoma, simultaneous removal of, 469
system, colic, 742-747
(Jamieson and Dobson), cut showing, 744
Lymphatic system, relation of colectomy to, 751
Crile's block dissection of the regional, 486
gastric, description of, 567
Lymphosarcoma, pharyngeal, 505
tonsillar, removal of, 506
results, 510
Lymph vessels, lingual, drainage of, 463-465

Maas operation for double hare-lip, modified, 264
McBurney's incision for appendical abscesses, 799
for appendicectomy, 783, 787
Macewen's theory concerning rate of proliferation in bone grafts, 162
McGavin, on the advantages of transverse colostomy, 700
Mackenzie guillotine, modified, use of, for tonsillectomy, 497
Mackenzie's (Hector) report of most common site of perforation in enteric fever, 680
reports of mortality statistics of perforation in enteric fever, 679
MacLeod, J. M. H., on Burns and Scalds, 438
Macroglossia, operation for, 460
Madelung's theory of prognosis of the removal of the splenic flexure, 753
Magnesia usta, use of, in diarrhœa after gastro-enterostomy, 620
Maisonneuve's simple lateral anastomosis, 764
Makins, G. H., on Operations upon the Intestines, 649
Makins's case of intestinal strangulation due to ovarian cyst, 830
collection of mortality statistics of resection of the small bowel for artificial anus, 779
intestinal clamp, 657
report of cases of removal of the hepatic flexure, 751
resection of the small bowel for artificial anus, 779
Malar bone, and upper jaw, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 159

Malar bone, prominence, preservation of, a means of lessening deformity in complete removal of the upper jaw, 306
Malignant disease of appendix, an indication for appendicectomy, 783
intestinal, an indication for enterectomy, 717
of the floor of the mouth, operations for, 463
oral and laryngeal parts of the pharynx, operations for, 502
invagination of, 819
statistics of operations for obstruction due to, 811
perforation in, operation for, 684
tongue, choice of operation for the removal of, 465
operations for, 463
and floor of the mouth, varieties of, 463
tonsil, operations for, 506
growth not involving the whole maxilla, partial removal of the upper jaw for, 313
growths of jaw, upper, prognosis of, 302
maxilla, complete removal of the upper jaw for, 301
springing from the base of the skull, osteoplastic resection of the upper jaw for, 314
Mall's investigations concerning the position of the various intestinal coils, 658
Malleolus, external, excision of abscess in the region of, 205
shortening of, in tuberculous disease of the ankle-joint, 210
internal, excision of abscess in the region of, 211
Mamma, removal of, in operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the ribs, 175
Manasse's observations concerning interference with blood supply in colectomy, 745
and Archibald's observations on the removal of the sigmoid flexure, 758
Marro's method for making an artificial anus, 703
Marsh's (Howard) case of obstruction due to strangulation in an aperture in the mesentery, 831
Martens's report of statistics of complete removal of the upper jaw in the Göttingen Clinic, 313
Martin's (Claude) apparatus for prosthesis after removal of a section of the lower jaw, 323
Martini-Henry class of bullets, nature of intestinal injuries caused by, 671
Mason's gag, use of, in excision of the condyle of lower jaw, 320
Massage after arthroplasty, 6
of the elbow, 27
excision of the elbow, 196
knee for injury, 83
wrist-joint (Kocher's), 188
operation for fracture of neck of femur, 99; olecranon, 16; patella of long standing, 76
supernumerary digit, 424
removal of semilunar cartilages, 59
early, in fracture of the neck of the femur, 95
in the after-treatment of facial injuries, 452
treatment of displaced semilunar cartilages, 56
Massé's (Robin) report of statistics of Nélaton's operation for malignant growths springing from base of skull, 314, 315
Mastication after operation for temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 338
Mastisol dressing, in the treatment of face injuries, 451
Mattress suture, 654
in the treatment of face injuries, 451
operations for fracture of the patella of long standing, 73
wiring comminuted fractures of patella, cut showing, 67
Maxilla, malignant new growths of the, complete removal of the upper jaw for, 301
odontomes and necrosis of the, complete removal of the upper jaw rarely called for in, 301

Maxillæ, approximation of the, in operation for cleft-palate, 272-276
Maxillary arch, narrow, improvement of, by dentistry, after operation for cleft-palate, 282
nerve, superior, *see* Superior maxillary nerve
Maydl's method of jejunostomy, 690
Mayo's description of the Pólya operation, 576
modification of posterior gastro-enterostomy, 611
(C. H.) dissection scissors, use of, in tenotomy of the adductors, 249
(W. J.) cases of chronic intestinal tumour, 716
mortality statistics for enterectomy for inflammatory conditions, 762
Mayo Robson's bobbin, 738
case of intestinal obstruction by biliary calculus, 841
method of jejunostomy, 691
operation for repair of the crucial ligaments, 61
record of cases of operation for intestinal tuberculosis, 713
report of successful ligature of the superior mesenteric vein, 674
statistics of operation for perforation of the duodenum, 678, 679
Meal, test, use of, in the diagnosis of cancer of the stomach, 641
Meals, opaque, *see* Opaque meals
Measurements of granulating flaps, 356
Mechanical needles for cleft-palate operations, cuts showing, 278
Meckel's diverticulum a cause of intussusception, 819
adherent, obstruction by, 827
description of, 829
nature of the, 829
perforation of, in enteric fever, treatment of, 681
strangulation by, 828
Mediastinitis a sequela of cervical œsophagotomy, 535
Mediastinotomy, posterior, 167
Medicaments, introduction of, use of appendix for (Weir), 692
Medullary tuberculosis of bones, 122
Melæna, a complication of gastric ulcer, 636
following severe burns, 439
Ménard's use of costo-transversectomy, 167
Meningitis, following operation for tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 256
Mercury (biniode of) in the treatment of burns, 441
perchloride lotion, use of, in infection following removal of the upper jaw, 312
preparations, for disinfection of skin surrounding area to be grafted, 366, 367
'Mesenteric angle,' inclusion of, in axial union of intestine, 719
obliteration of, by Lee's stitch, 723
Shoemaker's method of treating, 723, 724
Mesenteric artery, superior, avoidance of injury to the, in colectomy, 752
stitch, Mitchell and Heamner's, 723; cut showing, 723
vein, inferior, avoidance of injury to, in operation for left duodenal hernia, 836
Mesentery of the appendix, abnormal conditions of the, an indication for appendicectomy, 782
injuries to the, repair of, 673
openings in the, abnormal, obstruction due to strangulation in, 831
plicated, cuts showing, 668, 721
shortness of the, a difficulty in iliac colostomy, 707
Meso-appendix, shortening of, a difficulty in appendicectomy, 788
Mesocolon, significance of, in colectomy, 748, 750, 752, 754
Mesosigmoid, certain conditions of, a difficulty in iliac colostomy, 706
Metacarpal bones, tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, operations for, 152
Metacarpo-phalangeal joint, tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, amputation for, 152
Metastases in œsophageal carcinoma, 540

Metastatic arthritis cause of temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 332
Metatarsal bones, tuberculous disease of the, operations for, 154
Metatarsals, correct position for, after resection of the foot, 213
Metatarso-phalangeal joint, tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, operation for, 153
Microscopical examination of material evacuated from antrum often necessary to determine its nature, 302
Microstoma, causes of, 402
operations for, 402
cuts showing, 406, 407
Middle ear suppuration, extension of, cause of temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 332
Mikulicz's (von) kentotribe, 777
method of treatment of intestinal malignant disease, 719
observations concerning the difficulty of reuniting the two œsophageal ends after resection, 542
osteoplastic resection of the foot, 213; disadvantages of, 214
Mikulicz and Heinecke, *see* Heinecke and Mikulicz
Miles, *see* Goodsall and Miles
Milk, peptonized, use of, after gastrostomy, 563, 566
Miller's (A. G.) method for removal of patella during excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 224, 225
Mirault's operation for hare-lip, 260
Mitchell and Heamner's mesenteric stitch, 723, 724
Mobility, significance of, in the injury or escape of any portion of the bowel by gunshot wound, 672
Monks's abdominal zones, 659
Monprofit's method of exclusion, 766
operation for hour-glass stomach, 592, 594
Morbus coxæ, operation for, 238
Morison (Rutherford), on Surgery of the Stomach, 634
Morphine, use of, after operations upon the stomach, 559
tonsillectomy, 497
preliminary to tonsillectomy, 492
in the treatment of burns, 440
Motor saw, use of, in removal of tibial graft, in Albee operation for Pott's disease, 162
Mouth, angle of the, cancer at the, method of extension of, 287
operations for, 291
care of the, after transthyreoid pharyngotomy, 513
in relation to abdominal operations, 556
operation for malignant pharyngeal tumours, 503
plastic operations on the face, 392
excision of one half of the tongue through the, 469
floor of the, carcinoma of the, excision of, 480
after-treatment, 482
malignant disease of the, operations for, 463
in free communication with nasal cavity, a result of removal of hard palate, 303
avoidance of, 303
opening of the, forcible, after excision of the condyle of the lower jaw, 321
Mouth-wash, antiseptic, use of, before complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
Moynihan, B. G. A., on Operations upon the Stomach, 553
Moynihan's cases of operations for herniæ through the foramen of Winslow, 837
classification of duodenal herniæ, 833
collection of cases of duodenal herniæ, 833, 836
intestinal drainage tube, 686
method of closing the mesenteric rent in enterectomy, 673, 725
dressing abdominal operation wound, 557
fixation of the cæcum in operation for intussusception, 815
jejunostomy, 691
operating for gastroptosis, 631
removal of the sigmoid flexure, 758
needle for posterior gastro-enterostomy, 604
statistics of enterectomy for sarcoma, 763

Moynihan's statistics of operation for perforation of the duodenum, 678
Moynihan and Wilms's method of operation for hernia through foramen of Winslow, 833
Mucocartilaginous flaps of the septum, use of, in rhinoplasty, 447
Mucosa, gastric, corrosion of the, an indication for gastro-enterostomy, 599
excision of the, in posterior gastro-enterostomy, 605
Mucous colitis, *see* Colitis, mucous
membrane of the cheek, defects in the, closure of, 415
tags in face injuries, value of preserving, 444
Multiple adhesions in intestinal obstruction, treatment of, 826
Murphy's button, circular and oblong, 739
method for arthroplasty, 5, 6
of the shoulder, 42
continuous, rectal infusion after operation for peritoneal infection, 848
operation for primary tuberculous disease of the patella, without involvement of the knee-joint, 225, 226
operation for temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 331-338
periosteotome, side and back view; bone-cutting forceps or nippers; interdental block, 334
statistics of operations for diseases of the appendix, 803, 804
perforation in enteric fever, 683
'towel method' for replacing distended intestine, 808
Muscle, psoas, *see* Psoas muscle
use of, in the treatment of face injuries, 446, 447
Muscles, adductor, tenotomy of the, 247
lingual, mostly involved in malignant disease of the tongue and floor of the mouth, 463
of the abdominal wall, sloughing of, a sequela of appendicectomy, 795
face, cutaneous striated, invasion by cancer of the, 287
hip-joint, rigidity of, in tuberculous disease, 232
Muscular attachments, importance of disturbing as little as possible, in removal of half of lower jaw, 326, 327
rigidity, sign of gastric ulcer, 638
Musculo-cutaneous nerve, avoidance of injury to, in operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the fibula, 146, 147
Musculo-spiral nerve, avoidance of injury to, in excision of the elbow-joint, 190
Myeloid sarcomata, *see* Sarcomata, myeloid
Myxœdema, developments of symptoms of, after operation for lingual thyreoids, 462

Nævus, venous, lingual, removal of, 458
Nails, for fixation of foot, removal of, 212
the bones in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 222
(Stiles's), retaining bones in position after operation for tuberculous disease of the ankle-joint, 210
Nailing of sawed bone surfaces, in operation for tuberculous disease of knee-joint, 224
Nasiloff's method for trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 539
Naso-pharyngeal growths, advantages of partial or complete removal of the jaw for, 317
benign, osteoplastic resection of the upper jaw rarely indicated for, 314
Fergusson's operation for, 317
Naso-pharynx, plugging of the, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
malignant tumours of the, complete removal of the upper jaw for, 301
Neck defect almost entirely obliterated by drawing the skin edges together, in operation for cleft-palate, photograph showing, 281
flap derived from the, 412, 413
skin-grafting on, less frequently successful than on limbs, 365

Necrosis of the appendix, 794
bone, excision of the scapula in, 43
lower jaw, extensive, partial removal for, 321
'pressure,' *see* 'Pressure necrosis'
and odontomes of the maxilla, complete removal of the upper jaw rarely called for in, 301
Needle, for operation for cleft-palate (Brophy), 274
tubular, with reel of wire, 277, 278
for posterior gastro-enterostomy, Moynihan's, 604
full-curved, for passing a carrier around the ramus of the jaw (Blair), 345
Needles, for intestinal suture, 655
knitting, for fixation of fragments in operation for fracture of the neck of the femur, 97
mechanical, for cleft-palate operations, 278
Nélaton's incision for complete removal of the upper jaw, 309
operation for the removal of malignant growths springing from base of skull, 314, 315
Nerves, repaired or exposed in scar tissue, fat transplants used to surround, 392, 393
Nervous system in relation to early operation for cleft-palate, 271
Neurosis in relation to sigmoid volvulus, 822
Neuroses, reflexes due to, of no diagnostic value, 648
New growths of the bone, excision of the os calcis for, 54
Nose, bone transplant in depressions of the, 379
bridge of the, operations for defects of the, 377
subcutaneous injection of paraffin for restoration of the, 380
cancer of the skin over cartilaginous part of the, method of extension of, 287
operations upon the, 373
complete, 374
partial, 377
saddle-back, operations for, 377
soft parts of the, operations for restoration of the, 381
Nostril, moulding of, in operation for hare-lip, 261
and lip, restoration of the, by Rose operation for hare-lip, 263
Nostrils, syringing the, after operation for cleft-palate, 280
Notch in lip, operation for effacement of, 263
resulting from old methods of operation for hare-lip, 259
Nutriment, introduction into cæcum and ileum of, appendicostomy for, 692

Obliquity of the chin, methods for improvement of, 346-348
Obstruction at the cardiac inlet of the stomach, treatment of, 635
intestinal, *see also* Intestinal obstruction
a complication of appendicectomy, 797
an indication for colostomy, 694, 696; enterectomy, 717
a sequela of gastro-enterostomy, 619, 621
by adherent appendix, vermiform, operation, 827
Meckel's diverticulum, 827
operation, 828
complications, 830
prognosis and results, 830
biliary or intestinal calculi, 840
fæcal impaction, 842
strangulation in abnormal openings in the mesentery, omentum, and broad ligaments, 831
chronic, simple lateral anastomosis for, 764, 765
unilateral exclusion in, 768, 769
simulation of, 811
Obturator carrying a denture, application of, after removal of the upper jaw, 310
dental, use of, in syphilitic affections of the palate, 416
Occupation, in relation to operations for fracture of the patella, 64
patient's, in relation to position of arm after excision of the elbow, 196

Odontomes and necrosis of the maxilla, complete removal of the upper jaw rarely called for in, 301
O'Dwyer's gag, modified, use of, in tonsillectomy, 493
Œdema following burns, 439
Œsophageal diverticula, characteristics of, 523
excision of, 523
after-treatment, 529
Œsophagectomy, cervical, 535
cervical operation, 536
results, 537
trans-mediastinal, 539
dangers and difficulties, 544
operation, 540
modifications, 545
Œsophago-plication, Reisinger's, 546
Œsophagoscopy (Mikulicz), use of, for determining location of foreign body, 530
Œsophagostomy, cervical, 535
Œsophagotomy, cervical, 529
dangers, 535
difficulties, 534
operation, 532
after-treatment, 534
trans-mediastinal, 538
Œsophagus, artificial, formation of an, 545
the Beck-Jianu operation for repair of defects of lower end of the, 552
carcinoma of the, jejunostomy for, 688
dissection of the, 549, 551
division of the, 551
incisions for operations upon the, 523; Guattani's, 523; Kocher's, 523
malignant growths involving the, cervical œsophagectomy for, 535
operations upon the, 523
cervical œsophagectomy, 535
œsophagostomy, 535
œsophagotomy, 529
excision of œsophageal diverticula, 523
œsophago-plication, 546
trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 539
œsophagotomy, 538
perforation of, symptoms of, 530
Œsophagus, resection of, Mikulicz's observations concerning, 542
difficulty of uniting two ends after, 542
substitution of piece of jejunum for, 566
suture of the, after excision of the diverticulum (Richardson), cut showing, 526
thoracic, operations upon, 537
methods of approach for, 538
trans-mediastinal operations upon the, 538
trans-pleural operations upon the, 547
beginning of dissection in, cut showing (Torek), 550
tube conecting lower end of, with gastrostomy opening, cut showing (Torek), 551
and adjacent normal structures as seen with lung drawn forward and medianward, cut showing (Richter), 549
and the intestine, points of difference between, 550
Ointment, use of, after application of skin grafts, 372
Olecranon, fractures of the, compound, arthrotomy in, 13
of long standing, operations for, 16
non-operative treatment, results of, 15
operations for, 15
after-treatment, 16
Omental flap, use of, in removal of the transverse colon, 752
flaps and grafts in enterectomy, advantages and disadvantages of, 737
graft in operation for perforation in enteric fever, 681
Omentum, abnormal openings in the, obstruction due to strangulation in, 831
gastro-hepatic, dissected, in excision of gastric ulcer (Balfour), 585
great, attachment of, to suture line, in posterior gastro-enterostomy, cut showing, 608
wounds or laceration of the, treatment of, 674

Omentum, process of tying the, in partial gastrectomy, 572
torsion of the, intestinal obstruction due to, 811
operation for, 812
Omphalo-mesenteric duct, remnant of the, persistence of, 827
Opaque meals, use of, in the diagnosis of chronic gastric ulcer, 640
Open bite, correction of, 348
of an extreme type showing how correction might be made by a V-shaped excision (Blair), cut showing, 347
Operating-table for cleft-palate operation, 277
Operation, Adams's, for Dupuytren's contraction, 426
Albee, for Pott's disease, 160
Albert's, jejunostomy, 690
Balfour's, for excision of gastric ulcer, 587
(modification of Pólya) for partial gastrectomy, 579
for perforating ulcer of the stomach or duodenum, 587
Ballenger's, tonsillectomy, 497
Bardenheuer's, removal of mandible, 310
Beck-Jianu, repair of defects of lower end of œsophagus, 552
Beyea's, gastropexy, 631
Bircher's, trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 545
Blair's, for correction of deformities of lower jaw, 339
Butlin's, on removal of corner of the tongue, 487
Cheyne's, for saddle-back nose, 377
Chiene's, for prevertebral abscess, 165
Coffey's, gastropexy, 633
Crile's, block dissection, 486
Didot's, for webbed fingers, 422
Dobson's, method of removal of cæcum, 750
Duret's, gastropexy, 630
Esmarch's, for closure of the jaws, 330
Finney's (gastro-duodenostomy), 622
Frank's, gastrostomy, 564
Grieg Smith's for stercoral fistulæ, 773
Operation, Gussenbauer's, closure of defect of cheek, 415
removal of malignant growths springing from base of skull, 314
Halstead's, excision of œsophageal diverticula, 528
Heinecke and Mikulicz's, pyloroplasty, 622
Hibbs's, for Pott's disease, 163
Israel's, closing a defect of the cheek, 412
Jaboulay's, gastro-duodenostomy, 622
Jones's, pseudo-arthrosis of hip-joint, 251
Kader's, gastrostomy, 563
jejunostomy, 689
Kanavel's, for correction of deformities by transplants of fat, 392, 425, 429
Keegan's, rhinoplastic, 382
Kocher's, pseudo-arthrosis of hip-joint, 251
tuberculosis of ankle-joint, 204
elbow-joint, 189
wrist-joint, 180
König's, plastic, removal of the upper jaw, 303, 309
Kümmell's, gastro-duodenostomy, 622
Langenbeck's, rhinoplasty, 384
osteoplastic resection of upper jaw, 315
Lembert's, intestinal suture, 653
Lilienthal's, colostomy, 705
Lister's, recent fractures of the patella, 66
McBurney's, incision for appendicectomy, 783
'Maas,' modified, for hare-lip, double, 264
Marro's, colostomy, 703
Maydl's, jejunostomy, 690
Mayo's, posterior gastro-enterosomy, 611
Miller's, for tuberculous disease of patella, 224
Mirault's, for hare-lip, 260
Monprofit's, for hour-glass stomach, 594
Moure's, removal of naso-pharyngeal benign growths, 314
Murphy's, arthroplasty of hip, 103
of joints, 23
of knee, 85

Operation, Murphy's, for tuberculous disease of patella, 225
for temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 531
Nélaton's, removal of malignant growths springing from base of skull, 314
Owen's, for hare-lip, 262
Pólya's, for partial gastrectomy, 576
Reisinger's, œsophago-plication, 546
Richardson's, plastic, for œsophageal stenosis, 528
Rodman's, partial gastrectomy, 574
Rose's, for hare-lip, 263
Roux's, gastro-enterostomy, 611
trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 545
Rovsing's, gastropexy, 633
Sauerbruch's, trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 540
Senn's, gastrostomy, 561
Sluder's, tonsillectomy, 497
Syme's, rhinoplastic, 381
Tavel's, gastrostomy, 565
Torek's, transpleural upon the œsophagus, 547
Treves's, for tuberculous lumbar abscess, 170
Tripier's, plastic, on the eyelids, 449
Von Hacker's, posterior gastro-enterostomy, 598
Von Mikulicz's, osteoplastic resection of the foot, 213
trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 542
Watson's, complete anterior tarsectomy, 200
Whitehead's, excision of one half of the tongue, 469-472
Witzel's, gastrostomy, 563
Opium, use of, in diarrhœa after gastro-enterostomy, 620
Orbicular ligament, importance of integrity of the, 21
Orbicularis oris, septal origin of the, easy pathway for spread of cancer of upper lip, 293
detachment of the, 293
Orbital plate of maxilla if possible left intact in removal of the upper jaw, 311
Organs, internal, plastic operations upon, 353
Oropharyngeal tumours, operations for the removal of, 566
Orthodontic appliances, use of, in cleft-palate, 276
measures, importance of, in the correction of deformities of the lower jaw, 339
Os calcis, articular surface of the, chiselling away the, in tuberculosis disease of the ankle-joint, 210
a caseous tuberculous focus in the, skiagram showing, 203
excision of the, 54
operations for tuberculous disease of the, 202
and astragalus together with soft parts of the heel, removal of the, 213
Osteitis or osteomyelitis of the mandible, extension of, cause of temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 332
Osteo-arthritis of knee, removal of the synovial membrane for, 62
Osteoclasis for deformity of femur following excision of knee, 230
Osteomyelitis, tuberculous, primary, of diaphysis, operations for, 122
after-treatment, 127
of the diaphyses of the long bones, operations for, 121
femur, 141
fibula, 146
humerus, 127
diffuse, of the lower third, skiagram showing, 129
radius, 133
tibia, 147
long-bones, short, operations for, 151
phalanges of the foot, 153
hand, 151
interphalangeal joints, 152
jaw, lower, 156
jaw, upper, and malar bone, 159
metacarpal bones, 152
metacarpo-phalangeal joint, 152
metatarsal bones, 154
ribs, operations for, 173
skull, operations for, 155
spine, operations for, 160
upper two-thirds of the diaphysis of, resected for, cut showing, 123
ulna, 139

Osteoperiosteal grafts, use of, in face injuries, 447
Osteoplastic resection of the foot, Mikulicz's, 213
jaw, lower, 327
jaw, upper, 314
Osteotomy, cuneiform, for osseous ankylosis after hip-joint disease, Cheyne's, 252
Stiles's, 252
of the femur, for ankylosis with malposition, 250
deformity following excision of the knee, 230
neck of the femur, 94
simple, 94
cuneiform, 94
neck of the mandible to overcome closure of the jaws, 329
Ovarian cyst, *see* Cyst, ovarian
Owen, Edmund, on Operations for Hare-lip and Cleft-palate, 257
Owen's method of operation for double hare-lip, 264
suturing in operation for hare-lip, 270
for relief of tension of the velum after operation for cleft-palate, 283

Packing of cavity after complete removal of the upper jaw, 308
Pagenstecher's thread, use of, for intestinal sutures, 655
Pain, abdominal, confusion of thought in relation to, 643
serious, significance of, 638
of burns, reduced by modern treatment, 442
in cancer of the stomach, 640
cancerous ulcers of the stomach, characteristics of, 641
importance of, as indication for surgical treatment of gastric disorders, 634
perforation of gastric ulcer, 637
a symptom of chronic gastric ulcer, 638
relation of, to food, 638, 639
relief of, 638, 639
characteristic of gall-stones, 642
a symptom of intussusception, 814
Pain, in nasal paraffin injection, not usual, 380
a symptom of obstruction produced by intraperitoneal adhesions, 825
an indication of perforation of the duodenum, 675
a symptom of perforation of the œsophagus, 530
in pyloric ulcer, 639
relation of, to food, 639
relief of, by colostomy, 693, 695
Palate, cleft-, *see* Cleft-palate
hard, muco-periosteal covering of the, preservation of the, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 310, 311
in removal of malignant growths springing from the base of the skull, 314
syphilitic necrosis of the, 416
and soft, cleft of, single operation for entire cleft desirable in, 279, 280
junction of the, diagrammatic representation of the, 279
plastic operations on the, in syphilis, 416
single cleft of the, diagrammatic reproduction of a section of a frozen head of an infant with, 274
soft, syphilitic affections of the, 416
syphilitic affections of the, medicinal treatment in, 417
Papillary outgrowths, removal of the synovial membrane of the knee for, 62
Papillomata, lingual, removal of, 458
Paracolic lymphatic glands, 743
Paraffin, hot, injection of, accidents from, 380
in the treatment of burns, 441
blocks of, in the treatment of face injuries, 446
injection of, in obliquity of the chin, 347
subcutaneous, for restoration of nasal bridge, 380
for the elevation of depressed scars and filling of bony cavities, 381
treatment of prolapse of rectum and vagina, 381

Paraffin wax (No. 7) dressing, in the treatment of face injuries, 451
Paralysis, infantile, *see* Infantile paralysis
of shoulder muscles, arthrodesis of shoulder-joint in, 41
Paraplegia, disappearance of, after opening of prevertebral cervical abscess, 166, 168
Park, Roswell, *see* Roswell Park
Parotid duct, avoidance of injury to, in cutting flaps from cheek, 408
gland, avoidance of injury to, in operation for retraction of the lower jaw, 344, 345
glands, question of removal in operation for cancer of upper lip, 293
lymphatics most usually affected in cancer of forehead and eyelids, 297
Partial gastrectomy, 567
operation, 568
for hour-glass stomach, 592, 596
simple ulcer of stomach, 574
Rodman's operation, 574
Pólya operation, 576
Balfour operation, 580
Patella, excision of the (after Murphy), cuts showing, 226, 227
fracture of the, approximation of the fragments in two stages, 74
marked by wide gap, operation for, indications and contraindications for, 72
operations for, 64
of long standing, 72
recent, 65
methods of inserting sutures in comminuted fractures of the, cuts showing, 67
prevention of adherence to front of condyles after drainage of knee-joint, 61
refracture of, after previous wiring, operation for, 72
tuberculous disease of the, primary, operations for, 224
without involvement of the knee-joint, Murphy's operation for, 225, 226
Paterson's needle for intestinal sutures, 655
Patient after operations upon the stomach, position of the, 558; cut showing, 558
preparation of, for operation for intestinal obstruction, 807
upon the stomach, 555
Paul's enterostomy tubes, 687, 693
Pedicle of flap taken from distal part, width of, 360
Pelvic abscess, operations upon, 800
Peptic ulcer, a sequela of gastro-enterostomy, 621
Peptonized milk, *see* Milk peptonized
Perforating ulcer of the stomach or duodenum, 588
Perforation of the appendix, 793
of the colon, colostomy for, 697
duodenum, 675
in enteric fever, 679
most common site of, 680
gastric, artificial, production and closing of, 587
of gastric ulcer, 637
of the intestine of an infective and inflammatory nature, 683
in malignant disease, operation for, 684
pathological, operations for, 674
subacute, 678
stercoral ulcers and in diverticular disease, 683
Peri-appendical abscesses, operations for, 797
Periosteotome Murphy's, side and back view, cuts showing, 334
Periostitis, osteoplastic, tuberculous, 122
Perisplenic abscess, operation for, 803
Peritoneal cavity, cleansing of, 668
in operation for perforation of the duodenum, 677
in perforations in enteric fever, 681
infection, *see also* Infection, peritoneal
diffuse, general lines of treatment of, 843
following enterectomy, 758
Peritoneum, lesser sac of the, hernia into, 832
posterior parietal, closure of defect in the, in removal of cæcum or ascending colon, 749

Peritoneum, toilet of the, Moynihan's description of the, in operation for perforating ulcer of stomach or duodenum, 589
Peritonitis, gonococcal, adhesions in, 845
Petit's triangle, tuberculous abscess in, 169
Phalanges of the foot, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 153
of the hand, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 151
Phalanx, terminal bifid, operation for, 424
Pharyngeal abscess arising from disease of the vertebral column, operations for, 499
tumours, principles guiding the designing of operations for, 504
epilaryngeal group, 506
hypopharyngeal group, 506
oropharyngeal group, 505
recessus piriformis, 506
Pharyngo-palatine fold, avoidance of direct traction upon the, in tonsillectomy, 496, 497
Pharyngotomy, lateral transthyreoid, 511
subhyoid, question of advantage of, in lingual carcinoma, 467, 468
Pharynx, abscess of, 599
malignant disease of the oral and laryngeal parts of the, operations for, dangers of, 503; difficulties of, 502
packing of the, after preliminary laryngotomy in complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
reconstituting the, method of, 517
after removal of a tumour of the hypopharyngeal group, diagrams used to show the arrangements of the skin flaps in, 518
tumours of, varieties, 505
Phosphorus poisoning, extensive necrosis of lower jaw following, partial removal for, 321
Pichler and Ranzi theories concerning prosthesis of the lower jaw, 324
Picric acid solution in the treatment of burns, 441
Pigmentation following removal of graft, 369
'Pillow-maker's stitch' in posterior gastro-enterostomy, 608
Pillow, use of, after operations upon the stomach, 558
Pins for fixation of fragments in operation for fracture of the neck of the femur, 98
Plaster of Paris case, use of, following that of abduction splint, after excision of the hip-joint, 244
Plastic operations upon the auricle, 388
bone cavities, 447
on the cheek, 404
closure of a large defect, 409
small defect, 414
for defects in the mucous membrane, 415
by flaps from the arm, 415
a flap from the forehead, 412
neck, 412
König's, for the prevention of downward displacement of the eyeball, in removal of the upper jaw, 303, 309
upon the face, for cancer, 296
jaw, for supplying deficiency after partial removal of the lower, 323
lip, lower, for cancer, 290
upper, for cancer, 204, 295
for large cancers, 296
lips for sloughing, 400
mouth, at the angle of the, for cancer, 292
lips, mouth, and face, 391
fat transplantation, 392
for microstoma, 402
upon the nose, 373
palate, for syphilitic affections of the, 416
stage of operations upon the lower lip, 290
angle of the mouth, 292
surgery, 351
see also Rhinoplastic operations
general principles, 353-362
flaps, double, 356
gliding, 356

Plastic surgery, flaps, granulating, 356
reversed, 356
superimposed, 356
transplanted, 356
methods of cutting and using, 355
suturing, 357
gaps, closure of elliptical, 362
quadrilateral, 361
triangular, 360
history of, 353
principles of, 443
skin-grafting, 363
disinfection of the skin, 365-367
dressing and after-treatment, 371
method of grafting, 367
preparation of the area to be grafted, 365
Reverdin's method, 371
Thiersch's method, 368
Wolfe's method, 371
Plate, lead, *see* Lead plate
metal, use of, after partial removal of the lower jaw, 323
Plates, buried metallic or vulcanite, results of use of, in face injuries, 446, 451
lead, for supporting wire sutures in the operation for cleft-palate, 275
Pleura, risks of injury to, in transmediastinal œsophagectomy, 544
Pleurisy a sequela of appendicectomy, 797
Plication of the mesentery, 721
Pneumonia, a sequela of appendicectomy, 797
aspiration, a cause of high mortality in complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
following removal of pharyngeal epitheliomata, 503
inhalation, avoidance of, after Whitehead's operation, 472
not infrequent sequela of removal of the upper jaw, 312
value of preliminary laryngotomy in eliminating risk of, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
Pneumococcus, peritoneal adhesions in relation to infection by the, 845
peritoneal infection, prognosis of, 852
Poirier's forceps, use of, 727
Pólya operation, Mayo's description of the, 576
Polyp, intestinal, a cause of intussusception, 818
Polypi, excision of, cervical œsophagotomy for, 529
Polypus, removal of, transmediastinal œsophagotomy for, 539
Popliteal structures, care of, during excision of the knee, 85
Position of child after operation for cleft-palate, 280, 281
during operation for cleft-palate, 277
of patient in colectomy, influence of, 742
for removal of cæcum or ascending colon, 748
after complete removal of the upper jaw, 311
for complete removal of upper jaw, 304
after operation for peritoneal infection (Fowler's), 847
for removal of the sigmoid flexure, 755
after operations upon the stomach, 558
Posterior gastro-enterostomy (Von Hacker), 598, 600-612
Mayo's modification, 611
Roux's operation, 611
and anterior gastro-enterostomy, the relative merits of, 620
interosseous nerve, avoidance of injury to, in operation for tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 194
tibial nerve, dissection of, during osteoplastic resection of the foot, 214
suturing of divided ends of, after osteoplastic resection of the foot, 214
and vessels, avoidance of injury to, in excision of the ankle-joint, 208, 210
in operations for tuberculous disease of the os calcis, 203

Post-operative treatment of congenital pyloric stenosis, 628
Potarca's method of trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 539
Potassium permanganate lotion, gargling with, after removal of the upper jaw, 311
Pott's disease, Albee operation for, 160
Hibb's operation for, 163
fracture, compound, operations for, 47
recent, arthrotomy in, 46
simple, of long standing, operations for, 48
recent, operations for, 47
Preparation for operations for intestinal obstruction, 807
and after-treatment of patients operated upon for diseases of the stomach, 555
Pressure clamp, in the treatment of cleft-palate, 271
use of, in hæmorrhage following tonsillectomy, 497
firm, an essential for the success of skin-grafting, 365
most efficient means of arresting hæmorrhage in skin-grafting, 367
'Pressure necrosis' in enterectomy, 738, 741
Prevertebral cervical abscess, operation for, 165
thoracic abscess, operation for, 166
Prolabium, formation of, in the operation for hare-lip, 260
removal of the, in the operation for cleft-palate, 275
Prolapse of intestinal mucous membrane a complication of colostomy, 709
Pronation and supination, movements of, preservation of, in operation for tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 192
Proptosis, determination of presence or absence of, before operation for complete removal of upper jaw, 302
Prosthesis, use of, after removal of a section of the lower jaw, 323
secondary, after removal of a section of the lower jaw, 323
Protrusion of lower jaw, forward, 339
Pseudo-arthrosis of the hip without disarticulation of the head, operation for the production of, 251
Psoas muscle, right, contraction of the, a sequela of appendicectomy, 797
Pulmonary complications of appendicectomy, 797
tuberculosis, *see* Tuberculosis, pulmonary
Pulse, a steadily rising, an indication for exploration in intestinal injury, 663
Puncture, exploratory, through canine fossa into antrum, often necessary to determine conditions before operation for malignant growth of upper jaw, 301
Purgatives, contra-indicated preliminary to tonsillectomy, 492
use of, preparatory to operation for stercoral fistulæ, 774
Purse-string suture, 654
passed for closure of the cut ends in enterectomy, 730
Pyæmia after appendicectomy, 796
Pybus and Willis's modification of Sluder's method of tonsillectomy, 497
Pylephlebitis after appendicectomy, 796
Pyloric ulcer, maximum point of hyperalgesia for, 647
Pyloroplasty, 622
modified form of (Finney), 623
for pyloric stricture, 635
Pylorotomy (Rammstedt), for congenital pyloric stenosis, 625
Pylorus, carcinoma of the, jejunostomy for, 688
cancer involving the, removal of, 567
formation of new, in posterior gastro-enterostomy, 612
resection of the, for ulcer, 574
stenosis of, in infants, 634
congenital, operation for, 625
hypertrophic, gastro-enterostomy or pyloroplasty for, 599
Pyo-stercoral fistula, operation for, 775
fistulæ, unilateral exclusion for, 768

Quadriceps extensor muscle, division and lengthening of the, in operations for fracture of the patella, 74
tendon, division of the, in operations for fracture of the patella, 74
Quadrilateral gaps, the closure of, 361
method of closing a large, 364
small, cuts showing, 363
Quénu and Hartmann's (Nasiloff's) method of trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 539
Quervain's (De) reports on results of cervical œsophagectomy, 537
Quiescent intervals, appendicectomy in, 787

Radial artery and nerve, avoidance of injury to, in operation on the wrist, 184, 185
nerve, avoidance of injury to, in operation for tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 190, 194
in operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the metacarpal bones, 152
Radiogram, importance of, in the diagnosis of tuberculous focus of bone, 122, 124
dislocation of elbow-joint, 16
dislocations of the shoulder, 30
Radiograms, stereoscopic, in the diagnosis of fracture of the astragalus, 46
fractures of the elbow, intra-articular, 14
fractures of the neck of the femur, 96
dislocation of the hip-joint complicated by fracture, 111
fractures of the anatomical neck of the humerus or great trochanter, 29
simple Pott's fracture of long standing, 48
in the examination of the neck of the femur, 95
dislocations of hip, congenital, in which Lorenz's method is attempted, 114
Radiography, value of, in demonstrating primary tuberculous osseous focus in the lower part of the neck of femur, 238
Radium in the treatment of burns, 442
Radius, dislocation of, unreduced, partial excision of elbow-joint in, 18
fracture of the head of the, partial excision of elbow-joint in, 18
tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis of the, operations for, 133
after-treatment, 138
results, 139
removal of greater part of neck of, in operation for tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, advantage of, 191, 192
resection of the lower third of the diaphysis of the, 133, 134
of the upper third of the diaphysis of the, 138
Rammstedt's modification of Weber's operation for congenital pyloric stenosis, 625-628
Ramus, subcutaneous section of the (Blair), cut showing, 345
Ranzi, *see* Pichler and Ranzi
Raspatories for operation for cleft-palate, description of, 277
Razor, Thiersch's, for skin-grafting, 369; cut showing, 370
Recession of the jaw, backward, operation for, 343
Recessus piriformis, operations for tumours of the, 514
epithelioma of, diagram of mode of spread of, 514
Rectal feeding, after operation for cleft-palate, 281
cervical œsophagotomy, 534
infusion after operation for peritoneal infection, 847
continuous, after operation for perforating ulcer of stomach or duodenum, 590
Rectum, prolapse of, paraffin injection for, 381
Rectus-sheath incision for appendical abscesses, 799
appendicectomy, 785
Recurrence of cancer of the lip due to V-shaped incisions, 290
Recurrent appendicitis, 781

Recurrent hæmorrhage after removal of upper jaw, 312
laryngeal nerve, avoidance of injury to, in cervical œsophagotomy, 533
Reduction of dislocation of elbow-joint, limit of safety for, 16
hip-joint (Bigelow), 112, 113
congenital, 116
of Pott's fracture, 47
simple Pott's fracture of long standing, 48
dislocation of shoulder of long standing, 33
Reeves's recommendation of the pressure-method of dealing with cleft-palate, 271
Regeneration of inferior dental nerve after division, 339
Regurgitant vomiting, after gastro-enterostomy, 616, 620
Rehfuss stomach tube, Kanavel's modification of the, 850
Rehn's method of trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 539
Reisinger's œsophago-plication, 546
Relaxation cuts in the treatment of face injuries, 450
sutures, *see* Sutures relaxation
Repair of injuries to the intestines, 663
mesentery, 673
rupture of large intestine, 668
small intestine, 666
Resection of the foot, Mikulicz's osteoplastic, 213
gastric ulcer-bearing area, 574
hip, question of drainage after, 241
intestine, small, for artificial anus, 779
obstruction by Meckel's diverticulum, 830
sigmoid volvulus, 824
jaw for correction of deformity, 348
lower, osteoplastic, 327
upper, osteoplastic, 314
knee (cuneiform), for ankylosis, in the flexed position, 84, 230
œsophagus, Mikulicz's observations concerning, 542
Resorcin lotion, gargling with, after removal of the upper jaw, 311
Rest an essential for the success of skin-grafting, 365, 372
in the after-treatment of operation for tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 256
treatment of chronic gastric ulcer, 638
Restoration of the lip and nostril by the Rose operation for hare-lip, 263
Retraction of the lower jaw, operation for, 343
Retrocæcal abscess, incision for, 799
pouches (two) ascending behind the colon, cut showing, 837
Retrocolic suppurations, operation for, 803
Retroperitoneal pouches, hernia into, 832
Retro-pharyngeal abscess, acute, operations for, 500
Reverdin's method of skin-grafting, 371
published in 1869, 353
Rhinoplastic operations, 373
complete, 374
for formation of columella, 387
general principles, 373
Indian method, 374
Italian method, 377
for restoration of the alæ nasi and side of the nose, 384
Langenbeck's, 384
soft parts, 381
Keegan's, 382
Syme's, 381
partial, 377
for defects of the bridge, 377
bone transplant, 379
paraffin injection, 380
saddle-back nose, 377
Sir Watson Cheyne's method, 377
Rhinoplasty, known to Egyptians, 353
Rhinoscopy, use of, for determining condition of malignant growth of upper jaw, 302
Ribs, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 173
Richardson's case of œsophageal diverticulum, 523
report of 56 cases, 523, 524
investigations concerning mediastinal œsophagotomy, 538
plastic operation for œsophageal stenosis, 528

Richardson's theory concerning accessibility of various parts of the œsophagus, 532
Richter's method for trans-pleural operation upon the œsophagus, 548
statistics for operation for congenital pyloric stenosis, 625, 626
Rigidity of muscles of hip-joint in tuberculous disease, 232
a sign of ruptured, leaking, gastric ulcer, 640
muscular, a sign of ruptured leaking gastric ulcer, 638
of rectus muscle a sign of chronic gastric ulcer, 640
Ring forceps, use of, in tonsillectomy, 494
Robertson's (W. L.) table showing degree of shortening in Stiles's cases of excision of the knee in children, 228
Robson's (Mayo) repair of the crucial ligaments, 61
Rochet's method for overcoming closure of the jaws, 329
Rod, glass, for colostomy, cut showing, 702
Rodent ulcer of the face, method of extension of, 287
Rodman's operation, partial gastrectomy, 574
Röntgen rays, *see* X-rays
Rolleston and Jones's collection of cases of malignant disease of the appendix, 783
Roosevelt's intestinal clamp, 657
Moynihan's modification of, 657
Rose operation for hare-lip, 263
diagrams illustrating steps in, 268,
photographs showing results of, 267
double, complete or incomplete, 269
diagrams and photographs illustrating, 265
single, 264
complete, photographs showing incisions for, 266
Roswell Park's statistics of enterectomy for strangulation of the bowel, 762
Rotation of leg for breaking up adhesions about hip-joint after dislocation, 113
Rotation, preservation of, after operation for tuberculous disease of the shoulder-joint, 199
Routes by which suppuration may travel from the right iliac fossa, cut showing, 801
Roux's case of substitution of piece of jejunum for œsophagus, 566
operation for simple lateral anastomosis, 765
posterior gastro-enterostomy, 611
statistics after interval appendicectomy, 804
trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 545
Rovsing's operation for gastroptosis, 633
report of cases, 629
Rowntree's report on recurrence of cancer of the lower lip after V-shaped incision, 291
Ruptures of the large intestine, repair of, 668
small intestine, repair of, 666
main types of injury, 666
involving nearly half the circumference, 669
three-fourths of the circumference, 669
mesentery, treatment of, 673
extra-peritoneal, treatment of, 669
Rydigier, *see* Jessett-Barker-Rydigier

Sacro-iliac joint, operation for tuberculous disease of the, 255
Saddle-back nose, operations for, 377
Saline solution, administration of, preparatory to abdominal operations, 556
burns, treatment of, 440
for gastric lavage, 556
lavage of peritoneum, 845
shock, injection of, 255
Salmon gut, use of, after removal of half of lower jaw, 327
Salol, use of, preparatory to operation for stercoral fistulæ, 774
Salivary gland, submaxillary, *see* Submaxillary salivary gland
Salzer's method of exclusion, 766
Sandfort's (de) introduction of 'ambrine' in the treatment of burns, 441

Sanitas, use of, after removal of the upper jaw, 311
and water, use of, after operation for cleft-palate, 281
Sarcoma, a cause of intussusception, 819
of the appendix, 783
bone, excision of the scapula in, 42
intestine, enterectomy for, 717
of the maxilla, periosteal, complete removal of the upper jaw for, 301
myeloid, partial removal of the lower jaw for, 321
periosteal, complete removal of lower jaw for, 327
an indication for removal of one-half of the lower jaw, 325
Sauerbruch's chamber, 543
trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 540, 542
Scabs or crusts, removal of, after operation for hare-lip, 270
Scapula, excision of the, 42
difficulties and dangers, 44
Scar of face following osteoplastic resection of the jaw, 317
keloidal, following burns, 440
problems concerning, in the treatment of face injuries, 450
sound, conditions essential for, after skin-grafting, 372
supple, attainment by skin-grafting, 363
Scarring after burns, hypertrophic, reduction of, by applications of radium or the X-rays, 442
at umbilicus, marked, in obstruction by Meckel's diverticulum, 828
means of minimizing, after removal of tonsillar tumours, 507
Scars, effects of, on flaps, 448
elevation of depressed, paraffin injection for, 381
prevention of, after operation for hare-lip, 270
Scar-tissue from use of hare-lip pins, apt to result, 261
in contractions of the fingers, excision of, 424
diminished greatly by Wolfe's method of skin-grafting, 371
Scar-tissue an obstacle to success in plastic surgery, 353
removal of, before placing flap, 357
Screws, for fixation of fragments in operation for fracture of the neck of the femur, 98
Section of the face, transverse, at the level of the occlusal surfaces of the molars (Blair), 344
Semilunar cartilage, internal, technique of removal of, 57
cartilages, displaced, removal of, 56
removal of, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 219
Senn's simple lateral anastomosis, 764
method of gastrostomy, 561
Sepsis, avoidance of, in operation for cancer of the lips, 288
following suturing of flaps, 358
oral, gravity of, 492
measures to diminish risk of, before complete removal of the upper jaw, 304
in removal of semilunar cartilages, 58
Septic infection in relation to plastic surgery, 354
inflammation a complication of operation for cleft-palate, 282
Septicæmia, acute, following operations for malignant pharyngeal tumours, 503
a sequela of cervical œsophagotomy, 535
Septum, nasal, formation of, by Indian method, 376
Syme's operation, 382
Sequestrum, removal of, in tuberculous hip-disease, 240
in operations for pharyngeal abscess, 500
Sera and vaccines for diffuse peritoneal infection, 851
Serum, anti-colon bacillus, injection of, after appendicectomy, 795
Sex in relation to hypopharyngeal tumours, 519
intestinal calculi, 840
perforations of the duodenum, 675
persistence of the omphalo-mesenteric duct, 827
Shells, intestinal injuries caused by, nature of, 671

Sherren's case of left duodenal hernia, 836
Shock, an indication for exploration in intestinal injury, 663
due to burns, 439, 440
means of decreasing, in removal of the upper jaw, 312
Shoemaker's method of treating the mesenteric angle, 723, 724
Shortening, abduction a means of compensation for, after tenotomy of adductors, 249
after excision of the hip, means of compensation for, 247
knee in children, method of compensation of, 228
due to osseous ankylosis following hip-joint disease, operations for, 250
of the arm after excision of the elbow, 196
foot after complete anterior tarsectomy, 202
Shoulder, arthroplasty (Coville), of the, 42; (Murphy), of the, 42
excision of the, 34
by Kocher's posterior incision, 39
for ankylosis, 35, 38
Shoulder-joint, arthrodesis of the, 41
arthroplasty (Coville), (Murphy), on the, 42
arthrotomy and drainage of the, 28
disarticulation of the head of the humerus in excision of the, cuts showing, 36
dislocations of the, operations for, 30
complicated by fracture, operation for, 30
recent cases, 31
unreduced, 32, 38
Keetley's incision for, 32
fractures involving joint, 29
tuberculous disease, 197
incision for, 34, 35
preservation of the biceps tendon in, cut showing, 35
sawing the head of the humerus in, cut showing, 37
fractures involving the, 29
operations upon the, 28
for tuberculous disease of the, 197
after-treatment, 199
Sigmoid flexure, annular malignant stricture of the, 718
growths of the, methods of diagnosis of, 755
peridiverticulitis of the, 716
removal of the, 754
notch entirely filled with new-formed bone (Murphy), 337
volvulus of the, 822
'Signe de Dance,' 814
Silk as intestinal suture material, 654
not suitable for sutures in the operation for hare-lip, 261
sutures, superficial, interrupted, in Rose operation for hare-lip, 268
Silver foil as covering after skin-grafting, 371
wire, use of, for suturing flaps, 357, 359
in operations for syphilitic affections of the palate, 417
webbed fingers, 419
suture, in the operation for cleft-palate, 274, 275, 279
hare-lip, 261
Rose, 269, 270
Simplicity in technique of intestinal operations keynote of success, 651
Sinus a complication of tuberculous disease of the os calcis, 204
frontal, *see* Frontal sinus
tuberculous, of bone, disinfection of, with carbolic acid, 127
chronic, formation of, 123, 124
following excision of the elbow, 196
Sinuses, excision of, in operation for tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 194, 195
operations for ankylosis with, after hip-joint disease, 253
resulting from tuberculous disease of the hip-joint, not a contra-indication to excision, 255
osteomyelitis of the ribs, 173-175
treatment of, in tuberculous disease of the shoulder-joint, 198, 199
and abscesses, the result of tuberculous disease of the hip-joint, operations for, 254
Skin a source of infection in abdominal operations, 555

Skin, cleansing of, preparatory to operation for intestinal obstruction, 807
covering in the treatment of face injuries, 447
disinfection of, preparatory to skin-grafting, 365-367
arthroplasty, 5
arthrotomy, 4
preparatory to operation upon the hip-joint, 234
for stercoral fistulæ, 774
tenotomy of the adductors, 248
of face, involvement of, in malignant growths of upper jaw, not absolute contra-indication to operation, 302
preservation of, in the operation for hare-lip, 260
stretching of the, for the cutting of grafts, 369
transplants, in operations for contractions of the fingers, 424-426, 429-431
Skin-grafting, conditions for successful, 363-365
disinfection of the skin, 365-367
dressing and after-treatmennt, 371
indications for, 363
method of grafting, 367
preparation of the area from which the grafts are to be taken, 367
to be grafted, 365
principles of the operation of, 365
Reverdin's method, 371
Thiersch's method, 368
value of, 363
in face injuries, question of, 447
operations for webbed fingers, 423
Wolfe's method, 371
Skin-grafts, use of same site for second series of, 369
Skull, operation for tuberculous abscess of the, 155, 156
operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, 155
Sleep, means for producing, after operation for peritoneal infection, 851
Sloughing due to pressure of stitches in placing flaps, 358
of the lips, restoration after, 400
Sluder's method of tonsillectomy, 497
Small intestine, *see* Intestine, small
Snare, use of, for removal of naso-pharyngeal benign growths, 314
Soda mint, use of, for relief of pain of chronic gastric ulcer, 639
Sodium bicarbonate in the after-treatment of intestinal obstruction, 809
diffuse peritoneal infection, 847
in the treatment of burns, 441
Soft palate, suturing of the halves of the, in operation for cleft-palate, 274
'Spasms, stomach,' *see* 'Stomach spasms'
Speech, means for improvement of after operation for cleft palate, 282
Spermatic vessels, avoidance of injury to, in the removal of the sigmoid flexure, 757
Spinal abscess, aspiration of, 173
curettage of, 172, 173
accessory nerve, avoidance of injury to, in operation on prevertebral cervical abscess, 165
Spine, tuberculous osteomyelitis of the, operations for, 160
Spinous processes, depth to which split, dependent upon various factors, in Albee operation for Pott's disease, 162
Splashing on succussion a sign of obstructed pylorus, 640
Splenic flexure, removal of, 752
Splint, abduction, use of, after operation for osseous ankylosis after hip-joint disease, 253
after tenotomy of the adductors, 249
angle, *see* Angle splint
box-, use of, after operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the tibia, 148
cartilage, use of, after operation for bone transplant in nasal depressions, 379
gunning, *see* Gunning splint
hip-, *see* Hip-splint
Lister's anterior, use of, after Kocher's excision of wrist-joint, 188
Liston's, use of, after operation for dislocation of hip, 113

Splint, metal interdental, use of, after removal of a section of the lower jaw, 323
plaster of Paris, application of, after operation for fracture of neck of femur, 99
posterior, with foot-piece, use of, after excision of ankle for tuberculous disease of the ankle-joint, 212
stirrup, use of, after complete anterior tarsectomy, 202
Thomas's hip-, use of, after operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the femur, 142
after excision of the hip, 103
knee-, use of, after operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the femur, 144
fibula, 147
tibia, 149
Travois, use of, after arthroplasty of hip, 109
use of, after osteoplastic resection of the foot, 214
operations for hammer-toe, 437
resection of the lower jaw, 324
excision of the knee, 82
for tuberculous disease, 222, 223
operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the metacarpal bones, 153
disease of the os calcis, 204
Murphy's operation for primary tuberculous disease of the patella, 226
skin-grafting, 372
operation for supernumerary digits, 424
webbed fingers, 419
Splints, use of, after operation for Dupuytren's contraction, 427
in the treatment of face injuries, 444
Splintage, Stiles's method of, after Kocher's excision of wrist-joint, 188
Spray, use of, before and after operation for cleft-palate, 276, 277, 281
Sprengel's classification of acute stages of appendicitis, 804
'Spur' in artificial anus, treatment of, 776-778
Spur, retraction of the, a complication of colostomy, 709
Squamous epithelioma, *see* Epithelioma, squamous
Stabb's case of obstruction due to strangulation in an aperture in the mesentery, 831
Staphylococcus peritoneal infection, prognosis of, 852
Staphylorrhaphy after infancy, 276
Stasis, venous and lymphatic, in face injuries, treatment of, 452
Stenosis at the seat of union, after enterectomy, 761
cicatricial, œsophagostomy for, 535
œsophageal, gastrostomy for, 561
Roux's operation for, 545, 566
pyloric, *see also* Pylorus
gastro-enterostomy for, 625
in infants, 634
tuberculous, Caird's rules for enterectomy for, 714
Stenoses, intestinal, acquired, 838
operation, 838
prognosis and results, 839
Stercolith an indication for appendicectomy, 782
cause of perforation of a diverticulum, 683
Stercoral fistulæ, operations for, 773
Sterilization of needle, paraffin, and syringe, 380
parts before operation for unreduced dislocation of the shoulder, 32
skin before operation for removal of displaced semi-lunar cartilages, 56
Stiffness at elbow, prevention of, after resection of lower half of diaphysis of humerus, 132
of elbow, avoidance of, after excision, 21
after operation for intra-articular fractures, avoidance of, 14
of shoulder-joint, avoidance of, after operation for dislocation, 32, 34
thumb, avoidance of, after excision of the wrist, 12
Stiles, Harold J., on Operations for Tuberculous Affections of the Bones, 121
Joints, 179
Stiles's abduction hip-splint, photograph of, 242

Stiles's method of fixation of the parts in operation for tuberculous disease of the ankle-joint, 210
nailing together the bones after excision of the knee, 222
operation for osseous ankylosis after hip-joint disease, 252
acute infective osteomyelitis of the neck of the femur, 238
splintage after Kocher's excision of wrist-joint, 188
subperiosteal resection for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis, 124
results after excision of the elbow, 196
Stimulation in the treatment of burns, 440
Stirrup splint, use of, after complete anterior tarsectomy, 202
Stitches, apposition, use of, in suturing flaps, 359
deep, or 'relief of tension,' use of, in attaching flaps, 359
removal of, 359
superficial, use of, in suturing flaps, 359
Stomach, acute dilatation of the, an indication for gastro-enterostomy, 599
and jejunum, anastomosis of, 573, 577
cancer of the, 640
jejunostomy for, 688, 691
closure of, after gastrotomy, 561
wound in the, in partial gastrectomy, cut showing, 573
disease of the, difficulties of diagnosis of, 634
preparation and after-treatment of patients operated upon for, 555
disorders of the, primary, 634
secondary, 634
hour-glass, etiology of, 590
operation for, 590
lavage of the, after operation for intestinal obstruction, 809
preparatory to operation for intestinal obstruction, 807
lavage tube, bulb, and wire carrier, cut showing (Kanavel), 850
lymphatic system of the, 567
Stomach, obstruction at the cardiac inlet of the, treatment of, 635
operations upon the, 555; *see also* Surgery of the stomach
after-treatment, 557
congenital pyloric stenosis, 625
digital divulsion, 592, 596
duodenostomy or jejunostomy, 592, 597
gastrectomy, partial, 592, 596
gastro-duodenostomy, 622
gastro-enterostomy, 592
anterior, 613
double (Weir and Foote), 592, 594
in Y (Monprofit), 592, 594
gastro-gastrostomy or gastro-anastomosis, 592, 596
gastropexy, 629
gastroplasty, 594
gastro-pyloro-duodenostomy, 623
for ulcers of the, 583
or duodenum, operation for perforating ulcer of the, 588
resection of the ulcer-bearing area of the, 574
surgery of the, 634
ulcer of the, treatment by cautery of (Balfour), 587
lesser curvature of the, excision of, 583
ulcer and carcinoma, points of difference between operations for removal of, 575
simple ulcer of the, 635-640
acute, 635
complications of, 636, 637
physical signs, 638
treatment, 638
chronic, 638
diagnosis, methods of, 640
physical signs of, 640
treatment, 638-640
X-ray examination of the stomach contents, 640
pyloric, 639
'Stomach spasms' in gall-stone dyspepsia, 642
Stoppany-Schröder and Fritzsche's apparatus, use of, after resection of the lower jaw, 324
Strangulation in abnormal abdominal openings, obstruction due to, 831

Strangulation of the intestine, enterectomy for, statistics of, 762
by the Fallopian tube, or by a long pedicle of an ovarian cyst, 830
Meckel's diverticulum, cut showing, 828
Strapping, adhesive, in Rose operation for hare-lip, 269, 270
Strauss's (Alfred) modification of the Rammstedt operation for congenital pyloric stenosis, 628
statistics for operation for congenital pyloric stenosis, 626, 628
Streptococcus peritoneal infection, adhesions in relation to, 845
prognosis of, 852
Stricture, cardiac, treatment of, 635
pyloric, treatment of, 635
Strictures of the intestines, 837
tuberculous, an indication for enterectomy, 713
Strychnine, injection of, after operations for intestinal obstruction, 809
before operation for intestinal obstruction, 807
Styptics, use of, in hæmorrhage following tonsillectomy, 497
Subcuticular suture in the treatment of face injuries, 451
Subhepatic abscess, operation for, 801
Subhyoid pharyngotomy, *see* Pharyngotomy, subhyoid
Subluxation of the interarticular fibrocartilage of the temporomaxillary joint, operation for, 318
Submaxillary lymphatic glands, exposure of, in operations upon the angle of the mouth, 292
removal of, in operation for cancer of the lower lip, 290
the formation of a new upper lip after operation for cancer, 294
in operation for small cancer in the centre of one side of the upper lip, 295
secondary deposits in, generally a contra-indication to operation for complete removal of upper jaw, 303
Submaxillary region, drainage of skin lymphatics near inner canthus of the eye into, 297
flap derived from the, 411
salivary gland, removal of, in operation for cancer of the lower lip, 290
triangle, glandular contents of the, exposure of the, in removal of one half of the lower jaw, 325
Submental lymphatic glands, exposure of, in operations upon the angle of the mouth, 292
Submucoperiosteal operation for protrusion of the lower jaw, 341
Subperiosteal resection for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis, 124
Subphrenic abscess, operation for, 802, 803
Sulphur in glycerine, emulsion of, use of, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 309
Superior maxillary nerve, division of, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 307
Supernumerary digits, operations for, 423
Supination and pronation, movements of, preservation of, in operation for tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 192
Suppuration after appendicectomy, 796
spreading, 795
following burns, treatment of, 441
from the right iliac fossa, routes of travel by, cut showing, 801
injection of Beck's bismuth paste in, 348
of operation wound of the face, treatment of, 452
Supramaxillary glands, removal of, in excision of small cancer in the centre of one side of the upper lip, 295
lymphatic glands, exposure of, in operations upon the angle of the mouth, 292
removal of, in the formation of a new upper lip after operation for cancer, 294
Surgeon, covering of mouth and nose of the, before operation for cleft-palate, 272

Surgeon and dental-surgeon, necessity of cooperation between, in face injuries, 444
oral dental, advice of, essential in correction of deformities of the alveolar process, 349
plastic, desirable qualities in the, 443
Surgery of the stomach, 634
appendix dyspepsia, 641
gall-stone dyspepsia, 642
gastric cancer, 640
physical signs, 641
treatment, 641
gastric ulcer, simple, acute, 635
acute, complications (hæmatemesis and melæna and perforation), 636, 637
pyloric, 639
physical signs, 638
treatment, 638
chronic, 638
physical signs, 640
treatment, 638-640
X-ray examination of the stomach contents, 640
obstruction at the cardiac inlet, 635
pyloric stenosis of infants, 634
stricture, 635
Suture and sutures:
after enterectomy, failure of the, 760
gastrectomy, partial, description of, 569
operation for hare-lip, 'breaking down' of, measures for meeting, 263
continuous or interrupted, comparative advantages of, 651
in the treatment of face injuries, 450, 451
the gastro-enterostomy, 573
in Senn's method of gastrostomy, 562
operation for hare-lip, description of, 261
Rose, description of, 267-270
hour-glass stomach, inner and outer, cuts showing, 594, 595
intestinal, materials fc 654
Lembert's intestinal, 653
mattress, 654
purse-string, 654
materials in the treatment of face injuries, 450, 451
Suture, methods of using, different, cut showing, 358
in operations upon the intestines, 651
inserting, in comminuted fractures of the patella, 67
of the abdominal wound, 556
lateral capsule for fracture of the patella, 71
œsophagus after excision of the diverticulum (Richardson), cut showing, 526
pilot, use of, in the operation for cleft-palate, 274
placing of, after excision of a gastric ulcer, 585-587
after lingual ulcers, chronic, 457
after operation for perforating ulcer, 588
for closure of cut ends of bowel in enterectomy, cuts showing, 730, 731
in the Balfour operation, cuts showing, 579, 581
in Finney's gastro-duodenostomy, 623, 624
gastrectomy, partial, 577
gastro-enterostomy, anterior, 614, 615
posterior, 604-611
gastropexy, 631-633
lateral implantation in enterectomy, 736, 737
operation for cleft-palate, 279, 280
Rose operation for double hare-lip, 269, 270
relaxation, use of, in face injuries, 448
'relief of tension,' the method of using india-rubber tubing and silkworm-gut as, 359
removal of, after operation for hare-lip, 261, 262
silver-wire, in the operation for cleft-palate, 274, 275
Suturing, care in, after complete removal of the upper jaw, 308
the parts, Stiles's method of, after operation for osteomyelitis of the diaphysis, 126
flaps, materials used for, 357
Swaged splint, use of, after resection of alveolar process, 349

Swallowing and speaking, avoidance of disturbance of, in removal of half of lower jaw, 326, 327
reflex, abolishment of, preparatory to tonsillectomy, 493
Swinging flaps in the treatment of face injuries, 448
Syme's operation for the restoration of the soft parts of nose, 381
Syme and Kocher's operation upon the lower jaw, 328
Synovial membrane and capsule of joint, separate incision of, in arthrotomy, 4
of the knee-joint, removal of the, 62
operation for tuberculous disease of the, localized, 215
diffuse, 216
removal of, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 218-220
Synovitis, papillary non-tuberculous, of the knee, removal of synovial membrane for, 63
Syphilis, cause of nasal deformity, 373
congenital, of bone, differentiation of, from tuberculosis, 122
lingual, operations for, 455
in relation to plastic surgery, 354
tertiary, in relation to skin-grafting, 364
Syphilitics generally present most quickly growing varieties of lingual carcinoma, 466, 467
Syringing the mouth and naso-pharynx after operation for cleft-palate, 281, 282

Table, operating, for cleft-palate operation, 277

Tagliacotian method of plastic surgery of ancient origin, 353
retentive apparatus used in, 357
source of flap, 357
rhinoplasty, derivation of flaps in, 373
Talc in the treatment of burns, 440
Talipes equinus, extreme, following infantile paralysis, excision of the astragalus in, 50
Talipes varus, extreme, congenital, excision of the astragalus in, 51
Tarsal bones and joints, operations upon the, 50
Tarsectomy, complete, 214
anterior, 200
after-treatment, 202
Tarso-metatarsal joints, operations for tuberculous disease of the, 200
Tarsus, posterior, operation for tuberculous disease of the, 213
Tavel's method of gastrostomy, 565
Tea, use of, after operations upon the stomach, 559
Teeth:
attention to the, preparatory to abdominal operations, 556
plastic operations on the face, 392
upon the tongue, 455
for carcinoma, 468
operation for cancer of the lips, 288
tonsillectomy, 492
carious, extraction of, before staphylorrhaphy after infancy, 276
removal of a section of the lower jaw, 323
complete, of the upper jaw, 304
effect of operation for cleft-palate on position of the, 272
preliminary to excision of carcinoma of the floor of the mouth, 480
extraction of, submuco-periosteal operation for protrusion of the lower jaw, 341
operations upon the pharynx, 503, 504
preservation of, in face injuries, 445
preparatory to the removal of lingual carcinoma, 466
replacement of, after partial removal of the upper jaw, 314
Temperature, rise in, an indication for exploration in intestinal injury, 663
of room for operation for intestinal obstruction, 807
Temporal fascia and fat flap freed and ready for insertion (Murphy), cut showing, 336

Temporo-mandibular articulation, routes of infection invasion into the, 332
vein, avoidance of injury to, in operation for retraction of the lower jaw, 345
Temporo-maxillary ankylosis (Murphy), 331
(extra-articular fibrous fixation), Murphy's operation for, 338
joint, diseased, inter-articular fibro-cartilage of the, excision of the, 320
formation of new articulation after excision of, more successful in children than in adults, 320
operations upon the, 318
subluxation of the interarticular fibro-cartilage of, operation for, 318
articulation, excision of the, 319
prevention of recurrence of bony ankylosis after, 321
'Tender' abdominal organs, meaning of, 643
Tenderness, extreme localized, an indication for exploration in intestinal injury, 664
following gall-stone colic, 642
of epigastrium a sign of chronic gastric ulcer, 640
sign of gastric ulcer, 638
Tendons, avoidance of injury to, in excision of the ankle-joint, 208, 210
exposed in scar tissue or after suture, Kanavel's use of free fat transplants about, 393
Tenotomy for flexion deformity, 250
of the adductor muscles, 247
Tension, avoidance of, in the treatment of face injuries, 450
on flap, 357
in the operation for hare-lip, 259
sutures in the treatment of face injuries, 450, 451
'Tension sutures, relief of,' use of, 359
Test-meals, use of, preparatory to abdominal operations, 556
'Tetra' cloths, use of, in gastrotomy, 560
material, use of, in abdominal operations, 555, 556
Thermo-cautery, use of, for obliteration of perforation after operation for cleft-palate, 282
making a section of the intestine, 721
in the excision of the tongue, 474
Thiersch grafts, not suitable in face injuries, 447
grafting in the treatment of extensive burns, 442
Thiersch's additions to the advancement of plastic surgery, 353
knife or razor, for cutting skin grafts, 369
method of skin-grafting, 368
Thomas's abduction hip-splint, use of, after tenotomy of the adductors, 249
abduction splint, use of, after excision of the hip-joint, 245
use of, after operation for osseous ankylosis after hip-joint disease, 253
hip-splint, use of, after excision of the hip, 103
use of, after operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the femur, 142
knee-splint, use of, after operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the femur, 144
fibula, 147
tibia, 149
Thoracic abscess, prevertebral, operation for, 166
Thyreo-glossal duct, persistent, removal of, a lingual cyst due to, 461
Thrombosis, ascending, a cause of intestinal obstruction, 812
descending, a cause of intestinal obstruction, 812
femoral, a sequela of appendicectomy, 797
intestinal obstruction due to, operation for, 813
Thumb, avoidance of stiffness of, after excision of the wrist, 12
Thyreoids, lingual, operation for, 461
Tibia, Blair's use of, for improvement of obliquity of the chin, 348
grafts from, Albee's method of obtaining, in operation for Pott's disease, 162
operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis of the, 147

Tibia, resection of the lower third of the diaphysis of the, 148
sawing off the, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 219
and femur, fixation of the, in excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, 220, 222
Time for operation in appendicitis, 780
for recent fracture of the patella, 65
Tissues in face injuries, replacing into normal position of, 444
Toes, supernumerary, operations for, 424
Tongue, carcinoma of the, question as to area to be removed, 487
effectiveness of removal of the contents of the anterior triangle in, 491
of operation in every case of, 489
postponing removal of glands until enlarged in, 490
removal of the tissues between the primary disease and the lymph glands in, 491
time for operation on lymph glands in, 490
chronic ulcer of the, 455
excision of chronic disease limited to the border of the (Butlin), cuts showing, 457
one half of the, through the mouth, 649
falling back of the, prevention of, in excision of the lower jaw, 322
fixation of, in operation for cleft-palate, 278
malignant disease of the, choice of operation for the removal of, 465
non-malignant affections of the, operations for, 455
operations for acute abscess, 455
cellulitis, 455
cyst due to persistent thyreoglossal duct, 461
leukoplakial patches, 455
lymphangioma or macroglossia, 460
malignant disease, 463
Tongue, operations for preliminary laryngotomy, 469
syphilis, 455
thyreoids, lingual, 461
tumours, non-malignant, 458
ulcers, chronic, 455
preliminary preparations, 468
papillomata of the, removal of, 458
Tonsil, main artery of the, clipping the, in tonsillectomy, 495
endothelioma of the, operations for, 506
epithelioma of the, operations for, 506
lymphosarcomata of the, operations for, 506
Tonsils, enlarged, amputation of, before staphylorrhaphy after infancy, 276
operations upon the, 492
Tonsillar tumours, 506
excision of, intra-buccal, 507
transmandibular, 508
results of, 510
question of priority of removal of primary growth or glands in excision of, 508
Tonsillectomy by dissection, 492
operation, 493
post-operative hæmorrhage, treatment of, 497
time necessary for double, 496
Tonsillotomy, 492
Tooth-plates, removal of, cervical œsophagotomy for the, 529
Torek's case of trans-pleural œsophagectomy, 547
method of trans-pleural operation upon the œsophagus, 547-552
Torsion-forceps, use of, in operation for cleft-palate, 279
Torsion, gangrene of appendix due to, 782
of omentum, intestinal obstruction from, 811
Tourniquet, advantage of, in operation for tuberculous disease of the wrist-joint, 179
'Towel method' of Murphy for replacing distended intestine, 808
Toxæmia in intestinal obstruction due to adhesions, 826
Tracheotomy during operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the lower jaw, 158

Tracheotomy during operations for tumours of the hypopharyngeal group, 518
transthyreoid pharyngotomy, 515
preliminary to operations upon the pharynx, 503
pharyngotomy for a tumour of the epilaryngeal group, 511
Trans-mediastinal œsophagectomy, 539
Bircher's modification, 545
Roux's modification, 545
Sauerbruch's modification, 540
Von Mikulicz's modification, 541
œsophagotomy, 538
operations upon the œsophagus, 538
Transmucoperiosteal operation for protrusion of the lower jaw, 340
Transplantation of bone or cartilage in obliquity of the chin, 347
Trans-pleural operations upon the œsophagus, 547
Transthyreoid pharyngotomy, lateral, 511
Trans-trochanteric incision for osteotomy of the neck of the femur, 94
Transposed flaps in the treatment of face injuries, 448
Transverse colon, removal of, 752
and the flexures, removal of, 751
colostomy, 699
Trauma (transmitted) cause of temporo-maxillary ankylosis, 332
Traumatic dislocations of the hip, operations for, 110
Trendelenburg position for mesial division of the jaw, 328
operation for removal of one half of the lower jaw, 325
removal, complete, of the upper jaw, 304
resection, osteoplastic, of upper jaw, 316
Trephine, use of, in operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the skull, 156
Treves's advocacy of 'interval operations' for appendicitis, 781
case of hernia through the foramen of Winslow, 833, 837
collapsible rubber bag an aid to enterectomy, 738
Treves's operation for tuberculous lumbar abscess, 170
Triangle, anterior, *see* Anterior triangle
Triangular gaps, closure of, 360
large, method of closing, by means of flaps, cut showing, 362
Triceps tendon, lengthening of, 16
Trigone, exposure of the, in operation for osteomyelitis of the femur, 144
Tripier's operation, 449
Trocar, use of, for aspiration of spinal abscess, 173
Trochanter, removal of, in tuberculous hip-disease, 240
Trotter (Wilfred) on Operations for Malignant Disease of the Oral and Laryngeal Parts of the Pharynx, 502
Trotter's statistics for excision of epilaryngeal tumours, 513
tonsillar tumours, 510
Tube, use of, after gastrostomy, 566
Moynihan's intestinal drainage, 686
Tubes, Paul's enterostomy, 687, 693
Tubercle, lingual, operations for, 455
in relation to plastic surgery, 354
Tuberculosis of bone, circumscribed, characteristics of, 122
differentiation of, from congenital syphilis, 122
of the long bones, metaphyseal, 122
general, following operation for tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 256
pulmonary, associated with tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 255
Tuberculous disease of appendix, an indication for appendicectomy, 783
elbow, excision for, 17
hip, quiescent, 248
hip-joint, operations for abscesses and sinuses, the result of, 254
intestine, an indication for enterectomy, 713
enterectomy for, statistics of, 762
lateral anastomosis for, 765
unilateral exclusion for, 768

Tuberculous disease of knee-joint, secondary to a focus in one of the bones, operations for, 223
patella, operations for primary, 224
sacro-iliac point, 255
hip-disease in a child aged 5 years, skiagram showing, 233
hip-joint disease, operations for the correction of deformities resulting from, 247
infiltration of the cæcum, 747
osteomyelitis, *see also* Osteomyelitis, tuberculous
of the diaphyses of the long bones, operations for, 121
primary, of the diaphysis, operations for, 122
Tubular needle with reel of wire for cleft-palate operations, 277, 278
Tumour and tumours:
in cancer of the stomach, significance of, 641
tender, a sign of chronic gastric ulcer, 640
a sign of intussusception, 814, 818
pyloric stenosis of infants, 635
of the hypopharyngeal group, operations for, 517
ovarian, a cause of intestinal obstruction, 831
pelvic, obstruction due to, colostomy for, 696
pharyngeal, varieties of, 505
epilaryngeal group, 506
hypopharyngeal group, 506
oropharyngeal group, 505
pharynx, exposure of, 504
local removal of, 504
recessus piriformis, 506
operations for, 514
splenic flexure, localization difficult, 752
tongue, non-malignant, operations for, 458
types of, 458
tonsil, operations for, 506
tuberculous, of the ileum, removal of (McCosh and Thacher), 713
Turbinate grafts, use of, in face injuries, 447
Turpentine, use of, in the disinfection of sinuses, 253
Turpentine, use of, in operation for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the lower jaw, 158
upper jaw and malar bone, 159
Typhlostomy, 697

Ulceration of the duodenum a complication of burns, 439
of the lips, restoration after, 400
'Ulcer-bearing area' of the stomach, resection of the, 575
Ulcer, cicatricial constriction of, a cause of hour-glass stomach, 590
of the stomach, resection of the, 574
or duodenum, perforating, operation for, 588
gastric, treatment by cautery (Balfour), 587
excision of, from the lesser curvature, 583
chronic, partial gastrectomy for, 596
or duodenal, an indication for gastro-enterostomy, 598
simple, 635
acute, 635
complications of, 636,
chronic, 638
diagnosis of, from cancer of the stomach, 640, 641
diagnosis of, from gall-stone dyspepsia, 642
and sequelæ, operations for, 583
on anterior gastric wall with gastrohepatic omentum dissected from lesser curvature, cut showing (Balfour), 585
jejunal, a complication of gastro-enterostomy, 618
peptic, a sequela of gastro-enterostomy, 621
pyloric, 639; treatment, 640
rodent, *see* Rodent ulcer
septic, attempt to graft, useless, 364
final preparation of the, preparatory to skin-grafting, 367
of the tongue, chronic, 456
Ulcers, chronic, lingual, operations for, 455
stercoral, and diverticular disease, perforation in, 683

Ulna, operations for tuberculous osteomyelitis of the diaphysis of the, 139
tuberculous foci in the upper end of the, 193
Ulnar nerve, care of, in arthroplasty of elbow, *23*, *27*
avoidance of injury to, in operation for tuberculous disease of the elbow-joint, 194
osteomyelitis of the metacarpal bones, 153
branches of the, avoidance of injury to, in operation on wrist, 181, 183
and capsule of elbow-joint, exposure of the, from the ulnar side (Murphy), 24
Unilateral exclusion, intestinal, 766-772
Union of granulating flaps, period required for, 357
Ureter, avoidance of injury to, in colectomy, 749, 750
operation for tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 256
removal of the sigmoid flexure, 757
sloughing of the, a sequela of appendicectomy, 796
Urine, incontinuance of, relief of, after operation for vertebral thoracic abscess, 169

Vaccines for diffuse peritoneal infection, 851
Vagino-intestinal fistula, bilateral exclusion for, 769
Valadier's principle concerning preservation of mucous membrane tags in face injuries, 444
Vascular supply, influence of obliteration of, in colectomy, 742
position of growth with regard to, in colectomy, 745
Velocity of bullets, influence of, in intestinal injuries, 671
Vermiform appendix, 780; *see also* Appendix
operations upon the, 780
Vertebral column, disease of the, operations for pharyngeal abscesses arising from, 499
Vesicles, *see* Bullæ
Vesico-intestinal fistula, 769, 778
Vessels, exposed, fat transplants about, 392
Viscera, abdominal, 'tender,' meaning of, 643
clamped and surrounded by gauze in posterior gastro-enterostomy, 602-604
grasped by clamps in anterior gastro-enterostomy, 614
Viscerosensory arc, point of completion of, 648
equilibrium of, disturbance of, 644
reflex, 643-648
Vocalization, improvement of, by early operation for cleft-palate, *271*, *272*
Voice, condition of, in syphilitic affections of the palate, 416
improvement of, after operation for cleft-palate, 282
by early operation for cleft-palate, *271*, *272*
natural, prospects of securing, increased by pressure operation for cleft-palate, *274*
preservation of the, in the removal of tonsillar tumours, 507
Volvulus, 820
cæcal, 822
colostomy for, 694
gangrene of appendix due to, 782
of the large intestine, 821
of the small intestine, 821
operation, 820
sigmoid, 822
Vomiting due to gall-stones, 642
a symptom of intestinal obstruction due to embolism, 812
chronic gastric ulcer, 638
relation of, to pain, 638, 639
intussusception, 814
pyloric ulcer, 639
after operation for intestinal obstruction, control of, 809
diffuse peritoneal infection, treatment of, 847
regurgitant, after gastro-enterostomy, 616, 620
in cancer of the stomach, 640
relief of, by use of Kanavel's gastric tube, 850
'Vomiting' in obstruction at the cardiac inlet of the stomach, 635

Von Mikulicz, *see* Mikulicz
V-shaped incisions, abolishment of, in operation for cancer of the lower lip, 290
Vulcanite plates, *see* Plates

Waring (H. J.) on Operations for Malignant Disease of the Tongue and Floor of the Mouth, 463
Non-malignant Affections of the Tongue, 455
Warts, lingual, removal of, 458
Washington University operation for double hare-lip, diagrams and photographs illustrating, 264
Water, cold, use of, after removal of half of lower jaw, 327
use of, after removal of the upper jaw, 311
after operation for congenital pyloric stenosis, 628
upon the stomach, 558, 563, 566
Waterproof strapping, use of, after operation for hare-lip, 262, 263
Watson's (P. H.) complete anterior tarsectomy, 200
Waugh (George E.) on Operations for Pharyngeal Abscess, 499
on Operations upon the Tonsil, 492
Waugh's method of tonsillectomy, 493
observations on absence of hæmorrhage in tonsillectomy, in a series of 7,000 cases, 495
Waxy disease resulting from persistent sinuses in tuberculous disease of the sacro-iliac joint, 256
Webbed fingers, condition of hand with, 418
operations for, 418
Didot's operation (dorsal and palmar flaps), 422
division of the web, 419
with formation of triangular flap at its base, 421
combination of one of the preceding with skin-grafting, 423
removal of bones in osseous union, 423
after-treatment, 419
Weber's operation, Rammstedt's modification of, for congenital pyloric stenosis, 625
Wedge, interdental (Murphy), 334
Weight extension, for flexion deformity, 250
Weir and Foote's operation for hour-glass stomach, 592, 594
Whitehead's operation, for excision of tongue, 469-472
varnish, use of, in complete removal of the upper jaw, 308
Wire, iron, *see* Iron wire
passing the, in fracture of the patella, 69
silver, use of, in fastening fractured bone, 15
suture, in the operation for cleft-palate, 274, 275
in Rose operation for hare-lip, 269, 270
type of, in suturing fragments of fractured patella, 67
Wires, through-and-through, for approximating the maxillæ, 273
Witzel's method of gastrostomy, 563
introduction of tube, in jejunostomy, 689; use of, in peritoneal infection, 847
Wolfe's method of skin-grafting, 371
Wölfler's method of gastro-gastrostomy or gastro-anastomosis for hour-glass stomach, 596
operation, 'anterior gastro-enterostomy,' 598, 613
Wound and wounds:
abdominal, suture of the, 556
after excision of the knee for tuberculous disease, closure of the, 222
external, cervical œsophagotomy for suture and drainage of, 530
extra-peritoneal, treatment of, 669
facial, suppurating, treatment of, 452
of the great omentum, treatment of, 674
intestinal, incised, treatment of, 666
lacerated, treatment of, 666
punctured, treatment of, 666
union of, 760
of the large intestine, repair of, 668

Wounds, mesentery, treatment of, 673
septic, attempt to graft, useless, 364
Wrist-joint, excision of the, 9
by Kocher's single dorso-ulnar incision, 180
by Lord Lister's method, 9
parts removed in, cut showing, 11
structures concerned in, cut showing, 10
extensive tuberculous disease of the, skiagram showing, 186
operations upon the, 9
for tuberculous disease of the, 179
after-treatment, 188
technique, 179

X-rays in the after-treatment of face injuries, 452
in the treatment of burns, 442
value of, in showing condition of ramus some time after section of jaw, 346
in determining extent of lumbar abscess, 170
diagnosis of cancer of the stomach, 641
X-rays, value of, in showing condition of webbed fingers, 418
for localizing foreign bodies in the œsophagus, 530, 531, 532, 538
in examination of œsophageal diverticula, 523
importance of, in determining the type in fracture of the patella, 64
examination of the stomach contents in the diagnosis of chronic gastric ulcer, 640
use of, in obstruction at the cardiac inlet of the stomach, 635

Zesas's statistics of operation for perforation in enteric fever, 682
Zinc chloride, use of, in operation upon the hip-joint, 241
in complete removal of the upper jaw, 308
oxide in the treatment of burns, 440
Zones, abdominal, description of, 659
Z-shaped surfaces of bone, sawing of, in tuberculous disease of the knee-joint, 223